

# Stormwater Management Manual 2012 Edition



**CITY OF TACOMA**

---

**Public Works/Environmental Services**

© City of Tacoma  
Public Works/Environmental Services  
Maintenance Division  
2201 Portland Ave.  
Tacoma, WA 98421-2711



City of Tacoma

---

Public Works, Environmental Services

# **Stormwater Management Manual 2012 Edition**

© City of Tacoma  
Public Works/Environmental Services  
Science and Engineering Division  
326 East D Street  
Tacoma WA 98421-1801

**Notice:**

This manual was developed and written by the Environmental Services Maintenance Division and Science and Engineering Division staff.

The Stormwater Management Manual is also referred to as the Surface Water Management Manual.

© Copyright 2012 City of Tacoma

All rights reserved. This manual is intended for use by development and redevelopment project proponents, planners and developers, and by City of Tacoma employees and their designees. Any unauthorized use or distribution of this manual or dispersal of its contents is prohibited. This manual may not be reproduced in whole or in part without written permission from the City of Tacoma Public Works Department.

---

# Preface

This manual provides guidance on the measures necessary to control the quantity and quality of stormwater produced by new development and redevelopment. This guidance contributes to the protection of receiving waters and is in compliance with the Washington State Department of Ecology (Ecology) water quality standards. These water quality standards include:

- Chapter 173-200 WAC, Water Quality Standards for Groundwaters of the State of Washington
- Chapter 173-201A, Water Quality Standards for Surface Waters of the State of Washington
- Chapter 173-204, Sediment Management Standards

## Objective

The objective of this manual is to establish minimum requirements for development and redevelopment projects of all sizes in the City of Tacoma. The minimum requirements are satisfied by the application of Best Management Practices (BMPs). This manual is applicable to all types of land development – including residential, commercial, industrial, and roads. Volume 4 of this manual is used for source control of ongoing operations and everyday activities.

The primary reason for using BMPs is to protect beneficial uses of water resources through the reduction of pollutant loads and concentrations, and through reduction of discharges (volumetric flow rates) causing stream channel erosion. If it is found that, after the implementation of BMPs advocated in this manual, beneficial uses are still threatened or impaired, additional controls may be appropriate.

This manual is designed to be equivalent to Ecology's 2005 Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington. Ecology considers its manual to include all known, available and reasonable methods of prevention, control, and treatment (AKART). Ecology's manual has no independent regulatory authority. However, Ecology has required as a condition of the City's NPDES General Permit for Discharges from Municipal Separate Storm Sewers, the adoption of stormwater program components that are the substantial equivalent to the minimum requirements found in Ecology's 2005 manual.

This manual can also be helpful in identifying options for retrofitting BMPs at existing development sites where appropriate. In such situations, application of BMPs from this manual is encouraged. The City recognizes, however, that there can be site constraints that make the strict application of these BMPs difficult in retrofit applications.

It is not the intent of this manual to make the City of Tacoma a guarantor or protector of public or private property with regard to land development activities.

## Organization of this Manual

The Stormwater Management Manual is divided into six volumes:

- **Volume 1** defines the geographic scope of the manual, provides reference information for the stormwater system, and outlines the minimum requirements for development and redevelopment.
- **Volume 2** describes BMPs for short-term stormwater management during construction activities.
- **Volume 3** covers hydrologic analysis and BMPs to control flow volumes from developed sites.
- **Volume 4** describes BMPs to minimize pollution generated by typical ongoing activities.
- **Volume 5** presents BMPs for water quality treatment.
- **Volume 6** presents BMPs for low impact development.
- A **Glossary** at the end of the manual defines terminology used in all six volumes.
- A list of **References** provides both source documentation and a list of additional information resources.

## How to Use this Manual

This manual is designed for a variety of users.

- Project proponents should start by reviewing the minimum requirements described in Volume 1. Volume 1 also describes the various components needed to comply with the Minimum Requirements, and provides guidance on how to develop these documents.
- City staff will use this manual to review Stormwater Site Plans, check BMP designs and provide technical advice to project proponents. All development and redevelopment projects within the City of Tacoma shall meet the requirements of this manual unless specifically exempted by this manual or the Director.
- The Director shall have authority to modify requirements to protect the health, safety or welfare of the public on the basis of information regarding threatened water quality, erosion problems or potential habitat destruction, flooding, protection of uninterrupted services, or endangerment to property. The Director shall also have the authority to modify requirements based upon increases in requirements imposed by state or federal agencies, where existing requirements are not applicable to the particular site, or other pertinent factors.
- Permits may refer to this manual or the BMPs contained in this manual. In those cases, affected permit-holders or applicants should use this manual for specific guidance on how to comply with those permit conditions.

Where requirements in this manual are also mandated by any other law, ordinance, resolution, rule or regulation, the more restrictive requirement shall apply.

Minor revisions to the manual may occur on an ongoing basis. It is the applicant's responsibility to verify the requirements when developing stormwater mitigation plans. As needs are identified, additional policies shall be developed and posted to the City website at:

[www.cityoftacoma.org/stormwater](http://www.cityoftacoma.org/stormwater)

## **Development of Best Management Practices (BMPs) for Stormwater Management**

The method by which this manual controls the adverse impacts of development and redevelopment is through the application of Best Management Practices.

### **Best Management Practices (BMPs)**

Best Management Practices are defined as schedules of activities, prohibitions of practices, maintenance procedures, and structural and/or managerial practices, that when used singly or in combination, prevent or reduce the release of pollutants and other adverse impacts to waters of Washington State. The types of BMPs include source control, treatment, and flow control.

## **Related Documentation**

### **Department of Ecology's Stormwater Management Manual**

This manual was modeled after the Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington, published by the Department of Ecology in February, 2005. Ecology's stormwater manual was originally developed in response to a directive of the Puget Sound Water Quality Management Plan (PSWQA 1987 et seq.). The Puget Sound Water Quality Authority (since replaced by the Puget Sound Partnership) recognized the need for overall guidance for stormwater quality improvement. It incorporated requirements in its plan to implement a cohesive, integrated stormwater management approach through the development and implementation of programs by local jurisdictions, and the development of rules, permits and guidance by Ecology.

The Puget Sound Water Quality Management Plan included a stormwater element (SW-2.1) requiring Ecology to develop a stormwater technical manual for use by local jurisdictions. Ecology's original stormwater manual (the Stormwater Management Manual for the Puget Sound Basin, published in 1992) was developed to meet this requirement.

### **Applicable Federal, State and Local Regulatory Requirements**

Refer to Volume 1, Appendix A for applicable federal, state, and local regulatory requirements for this manual. Additional requirements not outlined below may apply to specific projects. The applicant is responsible for identifying and complying with all applicable regulatory requirements.

- Endangered Species Act
- Section 401 Water Quality Certifications
- Puget Sound Water Quality Management Plan
- Ecology NPDES Program
- Hydraulic Project Approvals
- Aquatic Lands Use Authorizations
- Watershed/Basin Planning
- Total Maximum Daily Loads
- Underground Injection Control Authorization





# Table of Contents

## Volume 1 - Stormwater Site Planning

Purpose of this Volume . . . . .	1-1
Content and Organization of this Volume. . . . .	1-1
<b>Chapter 1 Development and Redevelopment Impacts . . . . .</b>	<b>1-2</b>
1.1 Hydrologic Changes . . . . .	1-2
1.2 Water Quality Changes . . . . .	1-2
1.3 Biological Changes. . . . .	1-3
<b>Chapter 2 Watershed Designations . . . . .</b>	<b>1-4</b>
2.1 City of Tacoma Watersheds . . . . .	1-4
2.2 Land Use . . . . .	1-6
2.3 Impaired Water Bodies . . . . .	1-7
2.4 Floodplains . . . . .	1-7
2.5 Tacoma’s Watersheds and Other Basins – Summary Descriptions. . . . .	1-7
2.6 Watershed Flow Control and Water Quality Requirements . . . . .	1-16
<b>Chapter 3 Minimum Requirements for New Development and Redevelopment . . . . .</b>	<b>1-22</b>
3.1 Overview of the Minimum Requirements . . . . .	1-22
3.2 Exemptions. . . . .	1-23
3.3 Applicability of the Minimum Requirements . . . . .	1-24
3.4 Description of Minimum Requirements. . . . .	1-32
3.5 Exceptions . . . . .	1-43
<b>Chapter 4 Preparation of Stormwater Site Plans . . . . .</b>	<b>1-45</b>
4.1 Stormwater Site Plan Checklist . . . . .	1-45
4.2 Plans Required After Approval . . . . .	1-57
4.3 Land Use Submittal Requirements. . . . .	1-58
<b>Appendix A Stormwater Site Plan Short Form . . . . .</b>	<b>1-61</b>
<b>Appendix B Hydraulic Analysis Worksheet . . . . .</b>	<b>1-70</b>
<b>Appendix C Maintenance Standards for Drainage Facilities . . . . .</b>	<b>1-73</b>
<b>Appendix D Wetlands and Stormwater Management Guidelines . . . . .</b>	<b>1-150</b>
D.1 Approach and Organization of the Management Guidelines. . . . .	1-150
D.2 Guide Sheet 1: Comprehensive Landscape Planning for Wetlands and Stormwater Management. . . . .	1-152
D.3 Guide Sheet 2: Wetland Protection Guidelines. . . . .	1-158
D.4 Wetlands Guidance Appendix 1: Information Needed to Apply Guidelines . . . . .	1-165
D.5 Wetlands Guidance Appendix 2: Definitions . . . . .	1-167
D.6 Wetlands Guidance Appendix 3: Native and Recommended Noninvasive Plant Species for Wetlands in the Puget Sound Basin . . . . .	1-170

D.7 Wetlands Guidance Appendix 4: Comparison of Water Chemistry  
 Characteristics In Sphagnum Bog And Fen Versus More Typical Wetlands 1-173  
 D.8 Wetland Protection Guidelines References . . . . . 1-174

**Appendix E Bond Quantity Worksheet . . . . . 1-175**

**Volume 2 - Stormwater Management for Construction Sites**

Purpose of this Volume . . . . . 2-1  
 Content and Organization of this Volume. . . . . 2-1

**Chapter 1 The 12 Elements of Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention . 2-3**

**Chapter 2 Developing a Construction Stormwater**

**Pollution Prevention Plan (SWPPP) . . . . . 2-11**  
 2.1 General Requirements and Guidelines . . . . . 2-11  
 2.2 BMP Standards and Specifications . . . . . 2-12  
 2.3 Step-by-Step Procedure. . . . . 2-12

**Chapter 3 Standards and Specifications for Best Management**

**Practices (BMPs). . . . . 2-21**  
 3.1 Source Control BMPs. . . . . 2-22  
 3.2 Runoff, Conveyance and Treatment BMPs . . . . . 2-81

**Appendix A Standard Notes for Temporary Erosion and Sedimentation**

**Control Plans. . . . . 2-152**

**Appendix B Construction SWPPP Short Form . . . . . 2-153**

**Volume 3 - Onsite Stormwater Management, Flow Control & Conveyance**

Purpose of this Volume . . . . . 3-1  
 Content and Organization of this Volume. . . . . 3-1

**Chapter 1 Hydrologic Analysis. . . . . 3-2**

1.1 Minimum Computational Standards . . . . . 3-2  
 1.2 Western Washington Hydrology Model . . . . . 3-2  
 1.3 Single-Event Hydrograph Method . . . . . 3-2  
 1.4 Closed Depression Analysis . . . . . 3-4

**Chapter 2 Roof Downspout Controls. . . . . 3-6**

2.1 Description . . . . . 3-6  
 2.2 Selection of Roof Downspout Controls. . . . . 3-6  
 2.3 Roof Downspout Infiltration Setbacks and Site Controls . . . . . 3-7  
 2.4 Procedure for Evaluating Feasibility of Downspout Infiltration . . . . . 3-7  
 2.5 Roof Downspout Rain Gardens . . . . . 3-8  
 2.6 Downspout Infiltration Systems . . . . . 3-12  
 2.7 Downspout Dispersion Systems. . . . . 3-18  
 2.8 Collect and Convey . . . . . 3-21

<b>Chapter 3 Dispersion BMPs</b> .....	<b>3-23</b>
3.1 BMP L611 Concentrated Flow Dispersion .....	3-23
3.2 BMP L612 Sheet Flow Dispersion .....	3-26
3.3 BMP L614 Full Dispersion .....	3-29
<b>Chapter 4 Soil Quality BMPs</b> .....	<b>3-32</b>
4.1 BMP L613 Post-Construction Soil Quality and Depth .....	3-32
<b>Chapter 5 Tree Retention &amp; Transplanting BMPs</b> .....	<b>3-34</b>
5.1 Applications and Limitations .....	3-34
5.2 Retained Trees .....	3-34
5.3 Newly Transplanted Trees .....	3-37
5.4 Design Criteria .....	3-37
<b>Chapter 6 Infiltration Facilities for Stormwater Flow Control</b> .....	<b>3-39</b>
6.1 Purpose .....	3-39
6.2 Description .....	3-39
6.3 Design Methodology .....	3-41
6.4 Site Characterization Criteria .....	3-43
6.5 Design Infiltration Rate Determination – Guidelines and Criteria .....	3-46
6.6 Site Suitability Criteria .....	3-54
6.7 Design Criteria for Infiltration Facilities .....	3-55
6.8 Infiltration Basins .....	3-57
6.9 Infiltration Trenches .....	3-58
<b>Chapter 7 Detention Facilities for Stormwater Flow Control</b> .....	<b>3-61</b>
7.1 Detention Facility Design Criteria .....	3-61
7.2 Detention Ponds .....	3-63
7.3 Detention Tanks .....	3-73
7.4 Detention Vaults .....	3-77
7.5 Control Structures .....	3-80
<b>Chapter 8 Other Detention Options</b> .....	<b>3-92</b>
8.1 Use of Parking Lots for Additional Detention .....	3-92
8.2 Use of Roofs for Detention .....	3-92
<b>Chapter 9 Conveyance System Design and Hydraulic Analysis</b> .....	<b>3-93</b>
9.1 Design Methods for Conveyance Systems .....	3-93
9.2 Methods of Analysis .....	3-94
9.3 Hydrologic Modeling .....	3-95
9.4 Inlet Grate Capacity .....	3-104
9.5 Gutter Capacity Analysis .....	3-112
9.6 Capacity Analysis .....	3-114
9.7 Basis of Design .....	3-114
<b>Chapter 10 Material Specifications</b> .....	<b>3-115</b>
10.1 Pipe Specifications .....	3-115
10.2 Culvert Specifications .....	3-119
10.3 Open Channel Specifications .....	3-120

- 10.4 Structures . . . . . 3-121
- 10.5 System Connections. . . . . 3-123
- 10.6 Debris Barriers . . . . . 3-124
- 10.7 Riprap Design. . . . . 3-125
- Chapter 11 Outfall Systems . . . . . 3-129**
- 11.1 Outfall Design Criteria . . . . . 3-129
- 11.2 Tightline Systems . . . . . 3-136
- 11.3 Habitat Considerations . . . . . 3-137
- Chapter 12 Pump Systems . . . . . 3-138**
- 12.1 Design Criteria . . . . . 3-138
- 12.2 Pump Requirements. . . . . 3-138
- 12.3 Additional Requirements . . . . . 3-138
- 12.4 Sump Pumps . . . . . 3-140
- Chapter 13 Easements, Access, and Dedicated Tracts . . . . . 3-141**
- 13.1 Stormwater Facilities . . . . . 3-141
- 13.2 Conveyance Systems. . . . . 3-141
- 13.3 Maintenance Access . . . . . 3-143
- Appendix A Tacoma Design Storm . . . . . 3-144**
- Appendix B Procedure for Conducting a Pilot Infiltration Test. . . . . 3-145**
- B.1 Infiltration Test . . . . . 3-145
- B.2 Data Analysis . . . . . 3-146
- B.3 Example . . . . . 3-146

**Volume 4 - Source Control BMPs**

- Purpose of this Volume . . . . . 4-1
- Content and Organization of this Volume. . . . . 4-1
- Chapter 1 Frequently Asked Questions. . . . . 4-2**
- 1.1 Applicability. . . . . 4-2
- 1.2 Pollutants of Concern . . . . . 4-2
- 1.3 Types of Source Control BMPs . . . . . 4-4
- Chapter 2 Worksheet for Commercial and Industrial Activities . . . . . 4-5**
- Chapter 3 BMPs for Homeowners . . . . . 4-9**
- 3.1 Automobile Washing (for Single-Family Residences) . . . . . 4-9
- 3.2 Automobile Maintenance . . . . . 4-10
- 3.3 Storage of Solid Wastes and Food Wastes . . . . . 4-11
- 3.4 Composting . . . . . 4-11
- 3.5 Yard Maintenance and Gardening . . . . . 4-12
- 3.6 Swimming Pool and Spa Cleaning and Maintenance. . . . . 4-13
- 3.7 Household Hazardous Material Use, Storage, and Disposal . . . . . 4-14
- 3.8 General Home Maintenance. . . . . 4-15
- 3.9 Pet Waste . . . . . 4-16

<b>Chapter 4 BMPs for Commercial and Industrial Activities</b> .....	<b>4-17</b>
4.1 BMPs To Consider for all Activities .....	4-17
4.2 Washing Best Management Practices .....	4-18
4.3 Transfer of Liquid or Solid Materials .....	4-25
4.4 Production and Application Activities .....	4-34
4.5 Storage and Stockpiling Activities .....	4-49
4.6 Construction and Demolition Activities .....	4-66
4.7 Dust Control, and Soil and Sediment Control .....	4-69
4.8 Other Activities .....	4-73
4.9 Cover and Surround Activities .....	4-96
<b>Chapter 5 Regulations and Requirements</b> .....	<b>4-103</b>
5.1 City of Tacoma Codes and Ordinances .....	4-103
5.2 State, Federal, and Other Regulations and Requirements .....	4-104
<b>Appendix A Quick Reference Phone Numbers</b> .....	<b>4-108</b>
<b>Appendix B Recycling/Disposal of Vehicle Fluids and Other Wastes</b> .....	<b>4-109</b>
<b>Appendix C Example of an Integrated Pest Management Program</b> .....	<b>4-111</b>
<b>Appendix D Management of Street Wastes</b> .....	<b>4-114</b>
D.1 Street Waste Liquids .....	4-114
D.2 Street Waste Solids .....	4-115

## Volume 5 - Water Quality Treatment BMPs

Purpose of this Volume .....	5-1
Content and Organization of this Volume .....	5-1
<b>Chapter 1 Treatment Facility Selection Process</b> .....	<b>5-2</b>
1.1 Step-by-Step Selection Process for Treatment Facilities .....	5-2
<b>Chapter 2 Treatment Facility Menus</b> .....	<b>5-5</b>
2.1 Oil Control Menu .....	5-5
2.2 Phosphorus Treatment Menu .....	5-6
2.3 Enhanced Treatment Menu .....	5-7
2.4 Basic Treatment Menu .....	5-8
<b>Chapter 3 General Requirements for Stormwater Facilities</b> .....	<b>5-10</b>
3.1 Design Flow Volume and Flow Rate .....	5-10
3.2 Sequence of Facilities .....	5-11
3.3 Setbacks .....	5-12
3.4 Easements, Access, and Dedicated Tracts .....	5-13
3.5 Materials .....	5-13
3.6 Maintenance of Stormwater Facilities .....	5-13
<b>Chapter 4 Facility Liners</b> .....	<b>5-14</b>
4.1 General Design Criteria .....	5-14
4.2 Design Criteria for Low Permeability Liner Options .....	5-16

<b>Chapter 5 Hydraulic Structures</b> .....	<b>5-18</b>
5.1 Flow Splitter Designs .....	5-18
5.2 Flow Spreading Options .....	5-21
<b>Chapter 6 Pretreatment</b> .....	<b>5-27</b>
6.1 Purpose .....	5-27
6.2 Application .....	5-27
6.3 Best Management Practices (BMPs) for Pretreatment .....	5-27
<b>Chapter 7 Infiltration and Bio-infiltration Treatment Facilities</b> .....	<b>5-28</b>
7.1 Purpose .....	5-28
7.2 Application .....	5-28
7.3 Site Suitability .....	5-28
7.4 Site Characterization .....	5-31
7.5 Best Management Practices (BMPs) for Infiltration Treatment .....	5-35
<b>Chapter 8 Sand Filtration Treatment Facilities</b> .....	<b>5-38</b>
8.1 Purpose .....	5-38
8.2 Description .....	5-38
8.3 Applications and Limitations .....	5-43
8.4 Site Suitability .....	5-43
8.5 Design Criteria .....	5-43
8.6 Construction Criteria .....	5-46
8.7 Maintenance Criteria .....	5-46
<b>Chapter 9 Biofiltration Treatment Facilities</b> .....	<b>5-52</b>
9.1 Purpose .....	5-52
9.2 Applications .....	5-52
9.3 Site Suitability .....	5-52
9.4 Best Management Practices .....	5-52
<b>Chapter 10 Wetpool Facilities</b> .....	<b>5-78</b>
10.1 Purpose .....	5-78
10.2 Best Management Practices .....	5-78
10.3 Combined Detention and Wetvault .....	5-103
10.4 Combined Detention and Stormwater Wetland .....	5-105
<b>Chapter 11 Oil Water Separators</b> .....	<b>5-106</b>
11.1 Purpose .....	5-106
11.2 Description .....	5-106
11.3 Applications/Limitations .....	5-106
11.4 Site Suitability .....	5-109
11.5 Design Criteria .....	5-110
11.6 Oil Water Separator BMPs .....	5-111
<b>Chapter 12 Emerging Technologies</b> .....	<b>5-117</b>
12.1 Background .....	5-117
12.2 Emerging Technology and the City of Tacoma .....	5-117
12.3 Ecology Role in Evaluating Emerging Technologies .....	5-117
12.4 Evaluation of Emerging Technologies .....	5-117

12.5 Assessing Levels of Development of Emerging Technologies . . . . .	5-118
12.6 Examples of Emerging Technologies for Stormwater Treatment and Control. . . . .	5-119
12.7 Maintenance . . . . .	5-119
<b>Appendix A Basic Treatment Receiving Waters . . . . .</b>	<b>5-120</b>
<b>Appendix B Procedure for Conducting a Pilot Infiltration Test. . . . .</b>	<b>5-122</b>
B.1 Infiltration Test . . . . .	5-122
B.2 Data Analysis . . . . .	5-122
B.3 Example . . . . .	5-123
<b>Appendix C Geotextile Specifications . . . . .</b>	<b>5-124</b>
C.1 Applications . . . . .	5-125
<b>Appendix D Turbulence and Short-Circuiting Factor. . . . .</b>	<b>5-126</b>

## Volume 6 - Low Impact Development

Purpose of this Volume . . . . .	6-1
Content and Organization of this Volume. . . . .	6-1
<b>Chapter 1 General Requirements . . . . .</b>	<b>6-2</b>
1.1 Objectives. . . . .	6-2
1.2 Site Assessment. . . . .	6-2
1.3 Site Planning and Layout . . . . .	6-2
1.4 Retain Native Vegetation . . . . .	6-2
1.5 Minimize Clearing and Grading Impacts. . . . .	6-3
<b>Chapter 2 Low Impact Development Best Management Practices . . . . .</b>	<b>6-4</b>
2.1 Application . . . . .	6-4
2.2 Best Management Practices. . . . .	6-4





# Volume 1 - Stormwater Site Planning

## Table of Contents

Purpose of this Volume . . . . .	1-1
Content and Organization of this Volume . . . . .	1-1
<b>Chapter 1 Development and Redevelopment Impacts . . . . .</b>	<b>1-2</b>
1.1 Hydrologic Changes . . . . .	1-2
1.2 Water Quality Changes . . . . .	1-2
1.3 Biological Changes . . . . .	1-3
<b>Chapter 2 Watershed Designations . . . . .</b>	<b>1-4</b>
2.1 City of Tacoma Watersheds . . . . .	1-4
2.2 Land Use . . . . .	1-6
2.2.1 Land Use Regulations . . . . .	1-6
2.2.2 Land Use Plans . . . . .	1-6
2.3 Impaired Water Bodies . . . . .	1-7
2.4 Floodplains . . . . .	1-7
2.5 Tacoma’s Watersheds and Other Basins – Summary Descriptions . . . . .	1-7
2.5.1 Flett Creek . . . . .	1-7
2.5.1.1 Wapato Lake . . . . .	1-8
2.5.1.2 Snake Lake . . . . .	1-8
2.5.1.3 Former South Tacoma Channel Superfund Site . . . . .	1-9
2.5.2 Leach Creek . . . . .	1-9
2.5.2.1 Leach Creek Holding Basin . . . . .	1-9
2.5.2.2 Landfill Superfund Site . . . . .	1-9
2.5.3 Northeast Tacoma . . . . .	1-9
2.5.4 Joe’s Creek . . . . .	1-10
2.5.5 North Tacoma . . . . .	1-10
2.5.5.1 Puget Creek . . . . .	1-10
2.5.6 Thea Foss Waterway . . . . .	1-10
2.5.7 Tideflats . . . . .	1-10
2.5.8 Lower Puyallup . . . . .	1-11
2.5.8.1 Puyallup River . . . . .	1-11
2.5.8.2 Swan Creek . . . . .	1-11
2.5.8.3 First Creek (formerly T-Street Gulch) . . . . .	1-11
2.5.9 Western Slopes Watershed . . . . .	1-12
2.5.10 South Tacoma Groundwater Protection District . . . . .	1-12
2.5.11 Sensitive Habitat Areas . . . . .	1-12
2.6 Watershed Flow Control and Water Quality Requirements . . . . .	1-16
2.6.1 Flett Creek . . . . .	1-16
2.6.1.1 Requirements . . . . .	1-16
2.6.1.2 Additional Considerations . . . . .	1-16
2.6.2 Leach Creek . . . . .	1-16
2.6.2.1 Requirements . . . . .	1-16
2.6.2.2 Additional Considerations . . . . .	1-17
2.6.3 Northeast Tacoma . . . . .	1-17
2.6.3.1 Requirements . . . . .	1-17

- 2.6.3.2 Additional Considerations . . . . . 1-17
- 2.6.4 Joe’s Creek . . . . . 1-17
  - 2.6.4.1 Requirements . . . . . 1-17
  - 2.6.4.2 Additional Considerations . . . . . 1-18
- 2.6.5 North Tacoma . . . . . 1-18
  - 2.6.5.1 Requirements . . . . . 1-18
  - 2.6.5.2 Additional Considerations . . . . . 1-18
- 2.6.6 Thea Foss Waterway . . . . . 1-18
  - 2.6.6.1 Requirements . . . . . 1-18
  - 2.6.6.2 Additional Considerations . . . . . 1-19
- 2.6.7 Tidelats . . . . . 1-19
  - 2.6.7.1 Requirements . . . . . 1-19
  - 2.6.7.2 Additional Considerations . . . . . 1-19
- 2.6.8 Lower Puyallup . . . . . 1-20
  - 2.6.8.1 Requirements . . . . . 1-20
- 2.6.9 Western Slopes Watershed . . . . . 1-20
  - 2.6.9.1 Requirements . . . . . 1-20
  - 2.6.9.2 Additional Considerations . . . . . 1-21
- Chapter 3 Minimum Requirements for New Development and Redevelopment . . . . . 1-22**
- 3.1 Overview of the Minimum Requirements . . . . . 1-22
- 3.2 Exemptions . . . . . 1-23
  - 3.2.1 Road Maintenance . . . . . 1-23
  - 3.2.2 Parking Lots and Parking Lot Maintenance . . . . . 1-23
  - 3.2.3 Underground Utility Projects . . . . . 1-23
  - 3.2.4 Minor Clearing and Grading . . . . . 1-23
  - 3.2.5 Emergencies . . . . . 1-24
- 3.3 Applicability of the Minimum Requirements . . . . . 1-24
  - 3.3.1 New Development . . . . . 1-27
  - 3.3.2 Redevelopment . . . . . 1-27
  - 3.3.3 Equivalent Areas . . . . . 1-28
  - 3.3.4 Roads . . . . . 1-28
  - 3.3.5 Cumulative Impact Mitigation Requirement . . . . . 1-29
  - 3.3.6 Grade and Fill Projects . . . . . 1-29
  - 3.3.7 Separation of Public and Private Water Quality and Flow Control . . . . . 1-29
- 3.4 Description of Minimum Requirements . . . . . 1-32
  - 3.4.1 Minimum Requirement #1: Preparation of a Stormwater Site Plan . . . . . 1-32
    - 3.4.1.1 Objective . . . . . 1-32
  - 3.4.2 Minimum Requirement #2: Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention (SWPP) . . . . . 1-32
    - 3.4.2.1 Objective . . . . . 1-33
  - 3.4.3 Minimum Requirement #3: Source Control of Pollution . . . . . 1-33
    - 3.4.3.1 Objective . . . . . 1-33
  - 3.4.4 Minimum Requirement #4: Preservation of Natural Drainage Systems and Outfalls . . . . . 1-33
    - 3.4.4.1 Objective . . . . . 1-33
    - 3.4.4.2 Supplemental Guidelines . . . . . 1-34
  - 3.4.5 Minimum Requirement #5: Onsite Stormwater Management . . . . . 1-34
    - 3.4.5.1 Objective . . . . . 1-35
  - 3.4.6 Minimum Requirement #6: Water Quality Treatment . . . . . 1-35
    - 3.4.6.1 Thresholds . . . . . 1-35
    - 3.4.6.2 Treatment Facility Selection, Design, and Maintenance . . . . . 1-35

- 3.4.6.3 Additional Requirements .....1-35
- 3.4.6.4 Objective .....1-36
- 3.4.7 Minimum Requirement #7: Flow Control .....1-36
  - 3.4.7.1 Applicability .....1-36
  - 3.4.7.2 Thresholds .....1-36
  - 3.4.7.3 Standard Requirement .....1-37
  - 3.4.7.4 Infrastructure Protection Requirement .....1-37
  - 3.4.7.5 Flow Control Exempt Water Bodies .....1-38
  - 3.4.7.6 Objective .....1-38
  - 3.4.7.7 Modeling Requirements .....1-38
- 3.4.8 Minimum Requirement #8: Wetlands Protection .....1-39
  - 3.4.8.1 Applicability .....1-39
  - 3.4.8.2 Thresholds .....1-39
  - 3.4.8.3 Standard Requirement .....1-39
  - 3.4.8.4 Additional Requirements .....1-39
  - 3.4.8.5 Objective .....1-40
  - 3.4.8.6 Supplemental Guidelines .....1-40
- 3.4.9 Minimum Requirement #9: Basin/Watershed Planning .....1-40
  - 3.4.9.1 Objective .....1-41
- 3.4.10 Minimum Requirement #10: Operation and Maintenance .....1-41
  - 3.4.10.1 Objective .....1-41
  - 3.4.10.2 Supplemental Guidelines .....1-41
- 3.4.11 Minimum Requirement #11: Offsite Analysis and Mitigation .....1-41
  - 3.4.11.1 Qualitative Analysis: .....1-41
  - 3.4.11.2 Quantitative Analysis .....1-42
  - 3.4.11.3 Objective .....1-42
- 3.4.12 Minimum Requirement #12: Financial Liability .....1-42
  - 3.4.12.1 Objective .....1-42
- 3.5 Exceptions .....1-43
  - 3.5.1 Exceptions to the Minimum Requirements .....1-43
  - 3.5.2 Other Exceptions .....1-44
- Chapter 4 Preparation of Stormwater Site Plans .....1-45**
  - 4.1 Stormwater Site Plan Checklist .....1-45
  - 4.2 Plans Required After Approval .....1-57
    - 4.2.1 Revisions .....1-57
    - 4.2.2 Record Drawing Submittal .....1-57
    - 4.2.3 Engineer’s Certification .....1-57
  - 4.3 Land Use Submittal Requirements .....1-58
- Appendix A Stormwater Site Plan Short Form .....1-61**
- Appendix B Hydraulic Analysis Worksheet .....1-70**
- Appendix C Maintenance Standards for Drainage Facilities .....1-73**
  - #1 - Maintenance Checklist for Detention Ponds .....1-74
  - #2 - Maintenance Checklist for Infiltration Ponds/Basins .....1-78
  - #3 - Maintenance Checklist for Infiltration Trenches .....1-82
  - #4 - Maintenance Checklist for Closed Detention Systems (Tanks/Vaults) .....1-84
  - #5 - Maintenance Checklist for Control Structure/Flow Restrictor .....1-86
  - #6 - Maintenance Checklist for Catch Basins/Manholes .....1-88
  - #7 - Maintenance Checklist for Debris Barriers (e.g., Trash Racks) .....1-92

#8 - Maintenance Checklist for Energy Dissipaters . . . . . 1-93

#9 - Maintenance Checklist for Typical Biofiltration Swale . . . . . 1-97

#10 - Maintenance Checklist for Wet Biofiltration Swales . . . . . 1-100

#11 - Maintenance Checklist for Filter Strips . . . . . 1-102

#12 - Maintenance Checklist for Wet Ponds . . . . . 1-104

#13 - Maintenance Checklist for Treatment Wetlands . . . . . 1-107

#14 - Maintenance Checklist for Wet Vaults . . . . . 1-113

#15 - Maintenance Checklist for Sand Filters (above ground/open) . . . . . 1-115

#16 - Maintenance Checklist for Sand Filters (below ground/enclosed) . . . . . 1-117

#17 - Maintenance Checklist for Baffle Oil/Water Separators - American Petroleum Institute (API) Type  
1-120

#18 - Maintenance Checklist for Coalescing Plate Oil/Water Separators . . . . . 1-122

#19 - Maintenance Checklist for Fencing/Shrubbery Screen/Other Landscaping . . . . . 1-124

#20 - Maintenance Checklist for Gates . . . . . 1-125

#21 - Maintenance Checklist for Grounds (Landscaping) . . . . . 1-126

#22 - Maintenance Checklist for Rain Gardens (Cells) . . . . . 1-128

#23 - Maintenance Checklist for Rain Gardens (Planters) . . . . . 1-133

#24 - Maintenance Checklist for Cisterns . . . . . 1-137

#25 - Maintenance Checklist for Compost Amended Soil . . . . . 1-139

#26 - Maintenance Checklist for Vegetated Roof . . . . . 1-141

#27 - Maintenance Checklist for Pervious Pavement . . . . . 1-144

#28 - Proprietary Stormwater Devices . . . . . 1-146

#29 - General Maintenance Concerns for Stormwater Facilities . . . . . 1-147

#30 - Maintenance Checklist for Trees . . . . . 1-149

**Appendix D Wetlands and Stormwater Management Guidelines . . . . . 1-150**

D.1 Approach and Organization of the Management Guidelines . . . . . 1-150

D.2 Guide Sheet 1: Comprehensive Landscape Planning for Wetlands and Stormwater Management  
1-152

D.3 Guide Sheet 2: Wetland Protection Guidelines . . . . . 1-158

D.4 Wetlands Guidance Appendix 1:  
Information Needed to Apply Guidelines . . . . . 1-165

D.5 Wetlands Guidance Appendix 2: Definitions . . . . . 1-167

D.6 Wetlands Guidance Appendix 3: Native and Recommended Noninvasive Plant Species for Wet-  
lands in the Puget Sound Basin . . . . . 1-170

D.7 Wetlands Guidance Appendix 4: Comparison of Water Chemistry Characteristics In Sphagnum  
Bog And Fen Versus More Typical Wetlands . . . . . 1-173

D.8 Wetland Protection Guidelines References . . . . . 1-174



# Stormwater Site Planning

## **Purpose of this Volume**

This volume provides a discussion of the Minimum Requirements for stormwater management, and information and guidance for preparing a Stormwater Site Plan. This includes an overview of the impacts of development on stormwater flow and quality, an overview of the affected watershed areas, procedures for preparing the plan, and information helpful for selecting BMPs and facilities for permanent stormwater management.

## **Content and Organization of this Volume**

Volume 1 addresses key information to consider for Stormwater Site Planning.

- Chapter 1 describes the impacts of development and redevelopment on stormwater runoff and water quality.
- Chapter 2 identifies the geographic scope of the watersheds and basins within the City of Tacoma, and describes the requirements specific to each.
- Chapter 3 defines the Minimum Requirements for stormwater management for development and redevelopment projects.
- Chapter 4 describes the Stormwater Site Plan, and provides step-by-step guidance for preparing the plan.
- The Appendices provide reference information that may be useful for developing the Stormwater Site Plan, Operations and Maintenance manual and other documents.

# Chapter 1 Development and Redevelopment Impacts

## 1.1 Hydrologic Changes

As development occurs and the population grows, trees are logged and land is cleared for the addition of impervious surfaces such as rooftops, roads, parking lots, and sidewalks. Maintained landscapes that have much higher runoff characteristics typically replace the natural vegetation. The natural soil structure is also changed due to grading and compaction during construction. Roads are cut through slopes and low spots are filled. Drainage patterns are irrevocably altered. All of this can result in drastic changes in the natural hydrology, including:

- Increased volumetric flow rates of runoff
- Increased volume of runoff
- Decreased time for runoff to reach a natural receiving water
- Reduced groundwater recharge
- Increased frequency and duration of high stream flows and wetlands inundation during and after wet weather
- Reduced stream flows and wetlands water levels during the dry season
- Greater stream velocities
- Adverse impacts on existing City infrastructure and capacity

## 1.2 Water Quality Changes

Urbanization also can cause an increase in the types and quantities of pollutants in surface and groundwaters. Runoff from urban areas has been shown to contain many different types of pollutants, depending on the nature of the activities in those areas. The runoff from roads and highways can be contaminated with pollutants from vehicles. Oil and grease, polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs), lead, zinc, copper, cadmium, as well as sediments (soil particles) and road salts can be typical pollutants in road runoff. Runoff from industrial areas can contain many types of heavy metals, sediments, and a broad range of man-made organic pollutants, including phthalates, PAHs, and other petroleum hydrocarbons. Residential areas can contribute the same road-based pollutants to runoff, as well as herbicides, pesticides, nutrients (from fertilizers), bacteria and viruses (from animal waste). All of these contaminants can seriously impair beneficial uses of receiving waters.

Regardless of the eventual land use conversion, the sediment load produced by a construction site can turn the receiving waters turbid and be deposited over the natural sediments of the receiving water. The addition of sediment loads also impacts existing City systems, causing localized flooding and increases in the cost and frequency of maintenance.

Urbanization can cause changes in water temperature. Heated stormwater from impervious surfaces and exposed treatment and detention ponds may discharge to streams with less riparian vegetation for shade. Urbanization also reduces groundwater recharge, which reduces sources of cool groundwater inputs to streams. In winter, stream temperatures may lower due to loss of riparian cover. There is also concern that the replacement of warmer groundwater inputs with colder surface runoff during colder periods may have biological impacts.

### **1.3 Biological Changes**

Hydrologic and water quality changes can result in changes to the biological systems that were supported by the natural hydrologic system. In particular, aquatic life is greatly affected by urbanization. Habitats are altered when a stream changes its physical configuration and substrate due to increased flows. Natural riffles, pools, gravel bars and other areas can be altered or destroyed. These and other alterations produce a habitat structure that is very different from the one in which the resident aquatic life evolved.

The biological communities in wetlands also can be severely impacted and altered by the hydrological changes. Relatively small changes in the natural water elevation fluctuations can cause dramatic shifts in vegetative and animal species composition.

## Chapter 2 Watershed Designations

This chapter identifies and describes the water resource inventory areas (WRIAs), watersheds, basins and sub-basins within the City of Tacoma, and the requirements that are specific to each. Where requirements have been developed for a particular geographic area, these requirements shall be in addition to the Minimum Requirements found in Chapter 3 of this volume unless the text in this chapter specifically indicates that the area-specific requirement supersedes or replaces a Minimum Requirement.

Water Resource Inventory Areas (WRIAs) and watersheds are defined as follows:

- **WRIAs** – These are large watersheds based on geographic areas usually associated with large river systems. There are 62 of them which have been identified throughout the state by the Department of Ecology. Portions of two WRIAs are located in Tacoma. They are the Puyallup WRIA (#10) and the Chambers-Clover WRIA (#12).
- **Watersheds** – Nine smaller watersheds have been identified in Tacoma. Some of these watersheds are associated with stream systems and some of them are identified geographically. Many of these watersheds cross political boundaries and are shared by one or more of the municipalities surrounding Tacoma.

Information in this document will refer to Tacoma's nine watersheds and not to the WRIA's. Information on the WRIA's can be found at

<http://www.ecy.wa.gov/apps/watersheds/wriapages>

### 2.1 City of Tacoma Watersheds

The information in this manual covers the following nine watershed areas (see Figure 1 - 1).

- Flett Creek
- Leach Creek
- Northeast Tacoma
- Joe's Creek
- North Tacoma
- Thea Foss Waterway
- Tideflats
- Lower Puyallup
- Western Slopes



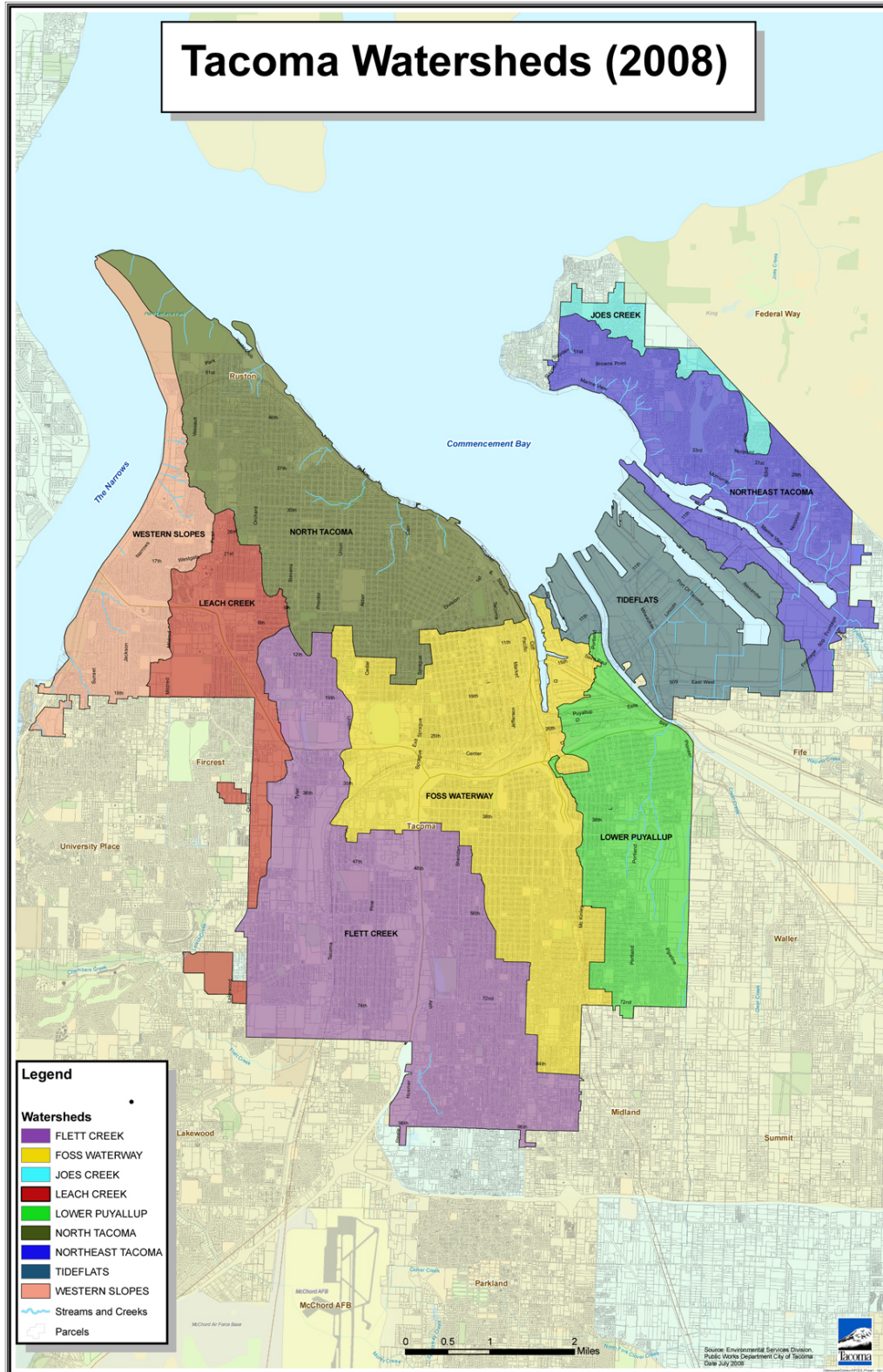


Figure 1 - 1. City of Tacoma Watersheds

The City shares watersheds with both Pierce and King Counties, and with various municipalities within these counties. With regard to terminology for smaller areas within a watershed, the term “**basin**” correlates to an area draining to a particular outfall. A “**sub-basin**” is a portion of a basin and is defined by a change in land use or is geographically separated from the rest of the basin by branching of the stormwater infrastructure, or piping system.

## **2.2 Land Use**

One of the factors determining the need for, and type of, area-specific controls, is the existing level of development and the types of land uses within a particular basin. Within the City of Tacoma, a majority of the available land has been subjected to some level of development and may be subject to land use requirements in addition to the requirements of this manual. All areas experiencing development create increased amounts of impervious surface.

### **2.2.1 Land Use Regulations**

In accordance with the Growth Management Act, the City has developed a comprehensive planning effort which includes the adoption of comprehensive land use plans and consistent regulations for implementation. Regulations adopted consistent with the Growth Management Act and Shoreline Management Act, as well as zoning, influence what development and redevelopment will be allowed in specific areas. Zoning regulations limit land use types and densities. Growth Management Act regulations include land use designations and protections such as wetlands and other critical areas, groundwater protection areas, and other resource lands. The City’s Building Code also prescribes parameters that affect: the design of new development and redevelopment; what offsite improvements may be permitted; and excavation, grading, and erosion and sediment control requirements for a given site. Tacoma’s Building and Land Use Services Department maintains a City Generalized Land Use Map, and other resources from which these designations and regulations can be obtained.

### **2.2.2 Land Use Plans**

The comprehensive plans developed under GMA address, at a minimum, land use, transportation, housing, capital facilities and utilities. Tacoma has developed a Capital Facilities Program to address utilities and their relationship to the adequate provision of services for existing and future land uses. These documents focus on the provision of adequate utilities, including storm drainage, provided City-wide and within the City’s Urban Growth Boundaries. The Capital Facilities Program demonstrates how the stormwater projects to be developed over the next six years provide the required amount of capacity at the adopted level of service standard to meet the needs of the existing population and projected growth.

The City also has developed an Environmental Policy Element as part of its comprehensive planning process. In addition to generalized goals to provide an aesthetic and healthful environment and to ensure conservation, protection, enhancement and proper management of natural resources, this Element specifies a number of more specific policies with respect to natural features of the environment, growth and development, pollution, recreation and open space, energy, land use, air quality, water quality, scenic areas, solid waste recycling and environmental remediation, stormwater runoff, and low impact development.

In addition, the Element includes specific policies related to each of the various critical areas, including wetlands and stream corridors, fish and wildlife habitat conservation areas, aquifer recharge areas, flood hazard areas, erosion hazard areas, landslide hazard areas, seismic hazard areas and mineral resource lands.

## 2.3 Impaired Water Bodies

Section 305(b) of the Federal Clean Water Act (CWA) requires Ecology to prepare a report every two years on the status of the overall condition of the state's waters. Section 303(d) of the CWA requires Ecology to prepare a list every two years containing water bodies not expected to meet state surface water quality standards after implementation of technology-based controls. The State is then required to complete a Total Maximum Daily Load (TMDL) for all waters on that list. The existing list and other related information is available on Ecology's water quality website:

[http://www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wq/links/wq\\_assessments.html](http://www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wq/links/wq_assessments.html)

If a project site discharges to one of these listed waterbodies, additional treatment or flow control requirements may apply.

## 2.4 Floodplains

Floodplains are not regulated through the Stormwater Management Manual. However, surface water facilities proposed within flood plains will be reviewed on a case-by-case basis to determine if the facilities are acceptable.

Additional analysis and requirements may be needed for surface water facilities located within flood plains.

## 2.5 Tacoma's Watersheds and Other Basins – Summary Descriptions

### 2.5.1 Flett Creek

This watershed is 7,153 acres and is the second largest watershed in the City. The area is predominately residential with commercial and light industrial uses in localized areas. The watershed is bordered by Foss Watershed on the east, Leach Creek Watershed on the west and Pierce County to the south. This watershed includes Snake Lake, Wapato Lake, portions of Interstate 5, the South Tacoma Groundwater Protection District and the former South Tacoma Channel Superfund Site. A portion of the Tacoma Landfill Superfund site is also included in this watershed. For information regarding the Landfill Superfund site, see the description under Leach Creek Watershed below.

The east side of the watershed flows through a series of holding ponds known as the Hosmer system, prior to reaching the Flett Creek holding ponds. The Hosmer system consists of the Hosmer holding basin (near South 84<sup>th</sup> Street on the east side of I-5); Ward's Lake (directly across I-5 from Hosmer); and the "Gravel Pit" holding basin (just north of Ward's Lake). In addition to Tacoma's flow contributions, approximately 800 acres of Pierce County flows into the Hosmer Holding Basin. A small tributary area of Lakewood flows into Ward's Lake, and WSDOT has a direct discharge to Ward's Lake. Wapato Lake is also located in the east side of the watershed; however it is not considered part of the Hosmer system. The 900 acre tributary area discharges into the north cell of Wapato Lake and is then piped from the north cell around the main lake to Ward's Lake. Typical storm events are bypassed in this manner, although during intense rain events stormwater overflows from the north cell into the main lake.

The west side of the watershed flows directly into the Flett Creek holding ponds and does not go through the Hosmer system.

The entire Flett Creek Basin drains through the four Flett Creek holding ponds (located in the vicinity of South 85<sup>th</sup> and Tyler Streets) prior to discharge to the Flett wetland and creek. A pump station located at the last Flett Creek holding pond pumps stormwater to the Flett Dairy wetlands from which it drains into Flett Creek.

Flett Creek is approximately 3.0 miles long and is located in the City of Lakewood. The historic headwaters of the creek were located at least partially in Tacoma but were ditched and/or piped long ago. The lower portion of the creek in the City of Lakewood provides for salmonid spawning. Flett Creek flows into Chambers Creek, which is also a salmonid bearing stream, which discharges to the Narrows Passage. There are two salmon hatcheries on Chambers Creek

### **2.5.1.1 Wapato Lake**

Wapato Lake is a 30-acre urban lake and is the central feature of Wapato Park. This park is an 80-acre facility owned by Metro Parks Tacoma. The surrounding land uses are predominantly residential but include commercial uses and portions of Interstate 5. Its valued uses have included recreation (fishing and swimming), wildlife habitat and flood control. Historically, aquatic weed growth, algae blooms, siltation, waterfowl related "swimmers' itch" and other problems have limited the recreational enjoyment of the lake. Currently the lake is closed to fishing and swimming.

In the 1970s, a dike was constructed across the northern portion of the lake and a bypass storm pipe was constructed along its west side. Currently stormwater enters the north cell and exits via the bypass pipe for conveyance to Ward's Lake. During intense storms, stormwater in the north cell will overflow into the main lake; otherwise stormwater is generally bypassed around the lake.

Two major drainage basins (approximately 900 acres total), including stormwater from Interstate 5 discharge into the north cell of the lake. For overflow conditions, there is a stormwater outlet at the south end of the main lake that is piped to the Ward's Lake holding basin.

### **2.5.1.2 Snake Lake**

Snake Lake is a 17-acre urban lake and wetland. It is the central feature of the Tacoma Nature Center, a 54-acre facility dedicated to nature education, research and appreciation, operated by Metro Parks Tacoma. Approximately 100,000 people visit this Center each year. Valued recreational uses include walking the trails and viewing wildlife. The lake does not support fishing or swimming. Local high schools have been involved in water quality sampling and educational efforts associated with this lake/facility. Also, watershed signs have been posted and catch basins have been stenciled in the associated drainage basin. The City has conducted water quality monitoring and public educational programs in this basin.

The lake drains an urban residential watershed of approximately 584 acres and the associated urban stormwater contributes approximately 80% of the annual flow. Large impervious areas in this drainage basin include Cheney Stadium, Foss High School and a Fred Meyer shopping center.

Snake Lake sustains large seasonal fluctuations in its surface area; from 17 acres during wet weather to less than 4 acres during the summer. The water from Snake Lake discharges to the Flett Creek holding basins.

Also located in this drainage basin (northeast of Snake Lake) is the DeLong Pond wetland. It currently is an isolated water body (in the past it had a pumped outlet to the storm drainage system). It drains a small tributary area in the basin. Recently, the Pierce County Conservations

Futures Program purchased part of the wetland and buffer to be preserved as wildlife habitat and open space.

### **2.5.1.3 Former South Tacoma Channel Superfund Site**

The former South Tacoma Channel Superfund site has recently been delisted but continues to be subject to deed restrictions. The site is located between South Tacoma Way and Tyler Street and extends between South 56<sup>th</sup> and South 38<sup>th</sup> streets. Applicants are advised to contact EPA, Region 10 at (206) 553-1200, for additional development restrictions and guidance.

## **2.5.2 Leach Creek**

Tacoma's portion of this watershed covers 1,728 acres and comprises residential and commercial land uses. It is located in the west-central section of Tacoma and is bordered by the Western Slopes and North Tacoma Watersheds to the north, the Flett Creek Watershed to the east, and the Cities of Fircrest and University Place to the west. Included in this watershed is a portion of Westgate Shopping Center, James Center, Highland Hills Shopping Center, and Tacoma Community College. A portion of the Tacoma Landfill Superfund site is also included in this watershed. China Lake is also a part of the watershed.

Leach Creek is a little over 2 miles long. Salmonid spawning habitat can be found from Chambers Creek up to Bridgeport Way (the lower portion of the Creek). The upper portions of the Creek also have pockets of spawning grounds; however, the elimination of vegetation and channelization by streamside homeowners and erosion during storm events have impacted these areas. Leach Creek flows into Chambers Creek just downstream of the confluence of Flett and Chambers Creek. Chambers Creek is a fish bearing creek and there are two fish hatcheries located on the creek.

### **2.5.2.1 Leach Creek Holding Basin**

Stormwater within the watershed is piped to the Leach Creek Holding Basin (near S 35<sup>th</sup> & Orchard St.), which discharges into Leach Creek, a highly urbanized stream. The WSDOT and the cities of Tacoma, Fircrest and University Place discharge to the holding basin.

The Leach Creek Holding Basin was constructed by the City of Tacoma in 1961. In 1991, the City completed major improvements to the Leach Creek Holding Basin. During heavy rainfall events, stormwater is pumped from the holding basin into the Thea Foss drainage basin to avoid sending high flows to Leach Creek. The City also uses the Holding Basin to augment the flow in the Creek during periods of low flow as part of current Landfill remediation efforts.

### **2.5.2.2 Landfill Superfund Site**

The Solid Waste Management Division of the City of Tacoma-Public Works Department operates the Tacoma Landfill which is located near Tacoma's border with the City of Fircrest.

## **2.5.3 Northeast Tacoma**

This watershed covers 2,641 acres and consists primarily of residential land uses with open spaces and undeveloped land. The area borders Commencement Bay and the Tideflats Watershed on the west. Many steep bluffs are located between the uplands areas, Commencement Bay and the Hylebos Waterway. Pierce County and the City of Federal Way border the area to the north and east. The City of Fife is located to the south.

Most of the stormwater from this watershed is discharged directly into Commencement Bay or the Hylebos Waterway. Some stormwater is discharged to Dry Gulch – an intermittent stream

that discharges to Puget Sound through unincorporated Pierce County. A capital improvement project was completed in Dry Gulch in 1993 to control flooding and associated erosion and sediment problems. Stormwater is discharged to other gulch systems as well.

#### **2.5.4 Joe's Creek**

This watershed covers 157 acres and is the smallest of the City's nine watersheds. It is bordered on the north and east by Pierce County and the City of Federal Way, respectively. The area is comprised of single and multiple-family residential land uses with some open space and undeveloped land. Most of Joe's Creek is located in Federal Way. Drainage in this area discharges to Federal Way and eventually to Puget Sound at Dumas Bay. Joe's Creek is utilized by salmonids.

#### **2.5.5 North Tacoma**

This watershed covers 4,766 acres and is located in the northern portion of Tacoma. The area includes the east side of Point Defiance Park extending to North 30th and Pearl Street, and the area from approximately 6th Avenue and Stevens Street to Commencement Bay. The area is predominately residential in nature with some commercial areas such as the 6th Avenue District, the Proctor District and Ruston Way. It also contains the North End Wastewater Treatment Plant and the former ASARCO smelting site. The nearshore area along Commencement Bay north to the former ASARCO copper smelting site has been designated as part of the Commencement Bay Nearshore/Tideflats Superfund Site. Steep slopes are located along the northern edge of the watershed.

Water bodies within this watershed include Commencement Bay, Ruston Creek, Asarco Creek, Puget Creek, Mason Creek and the stream associated with Garfield Gulch. Puget Creek, Mason Creek and Garfield Creek are all regularly monitored as part of the City's creek monitoring program. Puget and Mason Creeks are perennial and have steep slopes associated with them.

##### **2.5.5.1 Puget Creek**

Puget Creek passes through an underground fish ladder/culvert, and combines with the city's storm sewer system to pass under Ruston Way just upstream of its discharge point to Commencement Bay. Several community groups have worked to reintroduce salmon to Puget Creek by improving fish access and vegetative cover in Puget Creek. A fish ladder was installed in 1997 to provide fish access to the creek. None of the other creeks are fish bearing.

#### **2.5.6 Thea Foss Waterway**

This watershed covers approximately 5,751 acres and is comprised of drainage basins located in the south-central portion of Tacoma. The area borders the North Tacoma Watershed on the north, the Flett Watershed on the west and south, and the Tideflats and Lower Puyallup Watersheds on the east. The area extends as far south as 86th Street and also includes portions of the tideflats (including Middle and St. Paul Waterway) on the east side of Foss Waterway. Land use is predominately residential, although most of Tacoma's commercial businesses are located in this watershed. There are some industrial uses, concentrated mainly in the tideflats and Nalley Valley portions of the watershed.

#### **2.5.7 Tideflats**

This watershed covers 2,112 acres and is the most highly industrialized and commercialized portion of the City. The majority of the City's heavy industrial facilities are located here. The area

is bordered by the Lower Puyallup Watershed on the west, Northeast Tacoma to the east and Commencement Bay and the City of Fife to the north and south, respectively. Included in this watershed are the Sitcum, Blair, and Hylebos Waterways and Hylebos and Wapato Creeks. The Milwaukee Waterway was filled and capped during 1993-1995.

### **2.5.8 Lower Puyallup**

This watershed covers 2,971 acres and is located in the southeast portion of Tacoma. The area borders the Foss Waterway Watershed on the west and the Tideflats Watershed and Pierce County on the east, and funnels north along the Puyallup River. The southern portion of the watershed is predominately residential with some undeveloped open space and a few small commercial areas. Included in this watershed are Interstate 5 from Fife to the Tacoma Dome, Salishan, Portland Avenue, the First Creek area, and the area east of the Tacoma Dome. The northern portion of the watershed consists of industrial and commercial areas. Water bodies within this watershed include the Puyallup River, Swan Creek and First Creek.

#### **2.5.8.1 Puyallup River**

The Puyallup River is of area-wide significance. The associated drainage basin occupies approximately 972 square miles in the Puget Lowlands. Its two major tributaries are the White and Carbon Rivers which contribute 50% and 30% of the Puyallup River flow, respectively. The lower portion of the river from its mouth to approximately two miles upstream is located within the City of Tacoma. The lower Puyallup at Commencement Bay is a salt-wedge estuary, with deeper marine water overlain by a layer of fresh water. This estuary has been extensively modified, losing up to 99% of its estuarine wetland area. Recent habitat restoration efforts have resulted in increased wetland acreage including a project at the Simpson pulp mill site and the creation of the Gog-le-hi-te wetland located near the mouth of the river on the east side across from the City's main wastewater treatment plant. Below River Mile 2.0 in the tideflats area, industrial activity is dominant. The river along with its tributaries serve as major migration routes for a variety of salmonids, including Spring, Chinook and bull trout which have both been listed as endangered species. There are four fish hatcheries located in this system upstream of Tacoma.

#### **2.5.8.2 Swan Creek**

Swan Creek originates in Pierce County south of Highway 512. It flows north towards the Puyallup River and along the City of Tacoma-Pierce County boundary. It enters a narrow canyon at approximately creek mile three and leaves the canyon just upstream of Pioneer Road (approximately creek mile 0.5). The creek then flows north then east to its confluence with Clear Creek. Clear Creek then flows into the Puyallup River. This discharge point is located in unincorporated Pierce County. This creek is used by salmonids.

Its associated drainage basin is large, encompassing hundreds of acres. Most of the area is located in unincorporated Pierce County. A small portion of the basin lies along the City of Tacoma's eastern border. Much of the land located within the lower portion of the drainage basin is located within Swan Creek Park, which is owned and operated by Metro Parks Tacoma. The City restored a large habitat site near the mouth of Swan Creek through the Natural Resource Damages Assessment Program (NRDA). Stream Team volunteers monitor water quality in Swan Creek for the City.

#### **2.5.8.3 First Creek (formerly T-Street Gulch)**

The First Creek drainage basin encompasses approximately 2,500 acres of residential/commercial area. The majority of the basin is within the City of Tacoma, although approximately 600 acres lie within unincorporated Pierce County.

### **2.5.9 Western Slopes Watershed**

This watershed covers 2,090 acres and is located in the northwest portion of Tacoma. This area drains to the Narrows Passage. The watershed borders the North Tacoma Watershed and Leach Creek Watershed on the east and the Narrows Passage on the west. With the exception of the west end of 6th Avenue and a portion of Point Defiance Park, the area is predominately residential with many steep slopes. Residential development continues in this area. Underground springs and near surface groundwater are characteristic of the steep slopes in this area. There are several small creeks in this area. They are Gold Creek, Narrows Creek, Crystal Creek, Crystal Springs Creek, Marinera Creek and Titlow Park Gulch Creek. There are also some gulch/creek systems that have very little flow.

### **2.5.10 South Tacoma Groundwater Protection District**

In 1985, the City of Tacoma adopted the South Tacoma Plan which formally designates the South Tacoma Groundwater Protection District (STGPD) as an “environmentally sensitive” area (see Figure 1 - 2). The plan specifically listed several action steps designed to protect the South Tacoma Aquifer. One of the steps mandated that a local groundwater protection program be developed for the STGPD. The ordinance is set out in City Code Chapter 13.09.010 through 13.09.200.

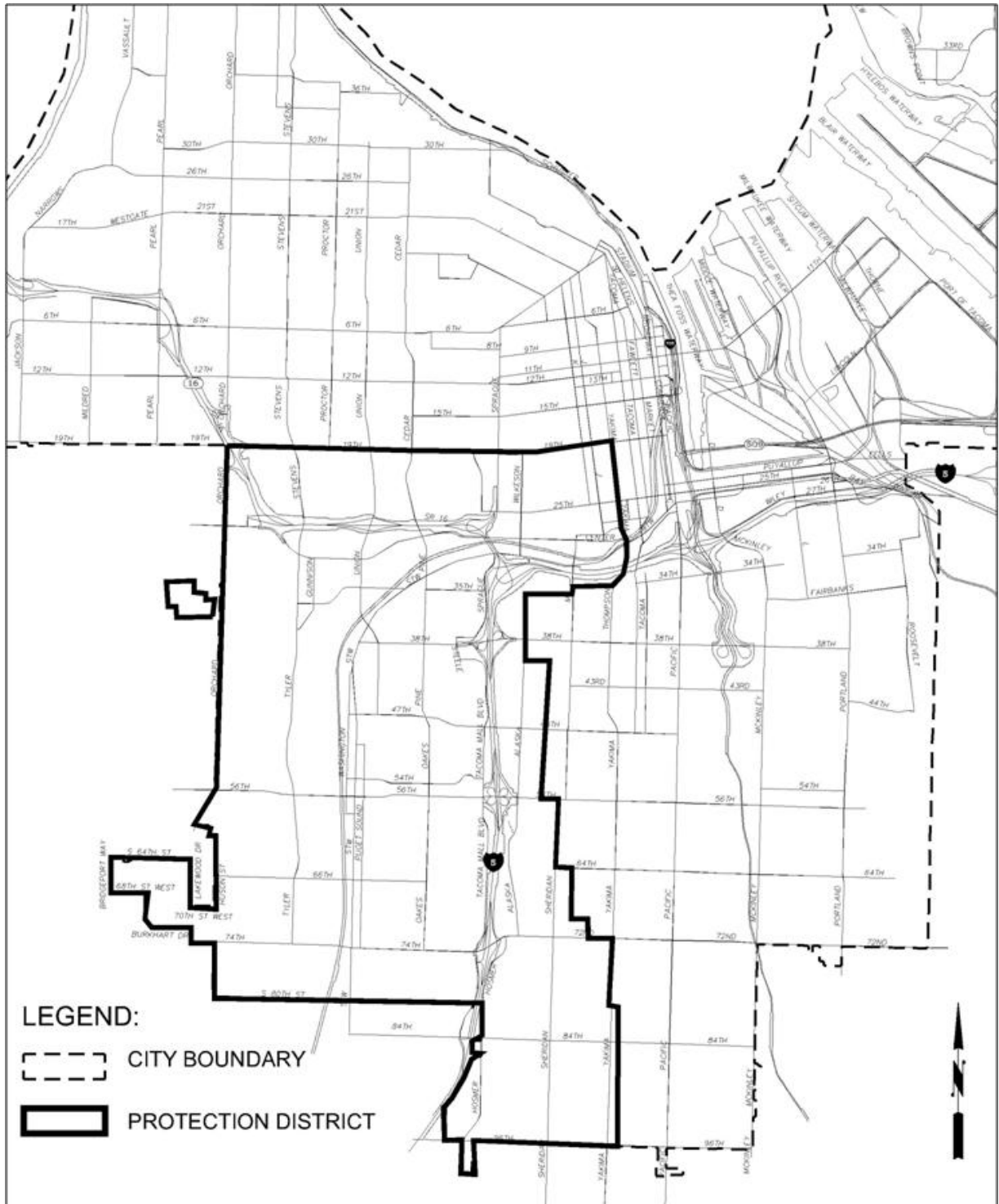
The purpose of the STGPD is to stop potential pollution problems before they create serious environmental contamination. This program is administered by the Tacoma-Pierce County Health Department (TPCHD) in coordination with Environmental Services, Tacoma Water and the Fire Department. TPCHD is responsible for reviewing, authorizing, and issuing permits for business and industrial operations that are regulated under the program. Staff also performs site inspections. However, the Tacoma Public Works Department is responsible for the review and approval of all stormwater and sanitary sewer plans. Private infiltration facilities systems used in the STGPD that receive stormwater from pollution-generating surfaces may be allowed on a case-by-case basis and are subject to additional treatment and monitoring.

The City of Tacoma Public Works Department and Tacoma-Pierce County Health Department developed a guidance document that provides the circumstances and requirements for approval of infiltration facilities for managing pollution-generating stormwater runoff in the STGPD. The document, “Implementation of Stormwater Infiltration for Pollution-Generating Surfaces in the South Tacoma Groundwater Protection District” is available at [www.cityoftacoma.org/stormwater](http://www.cityoftacoma.org/stormwater).

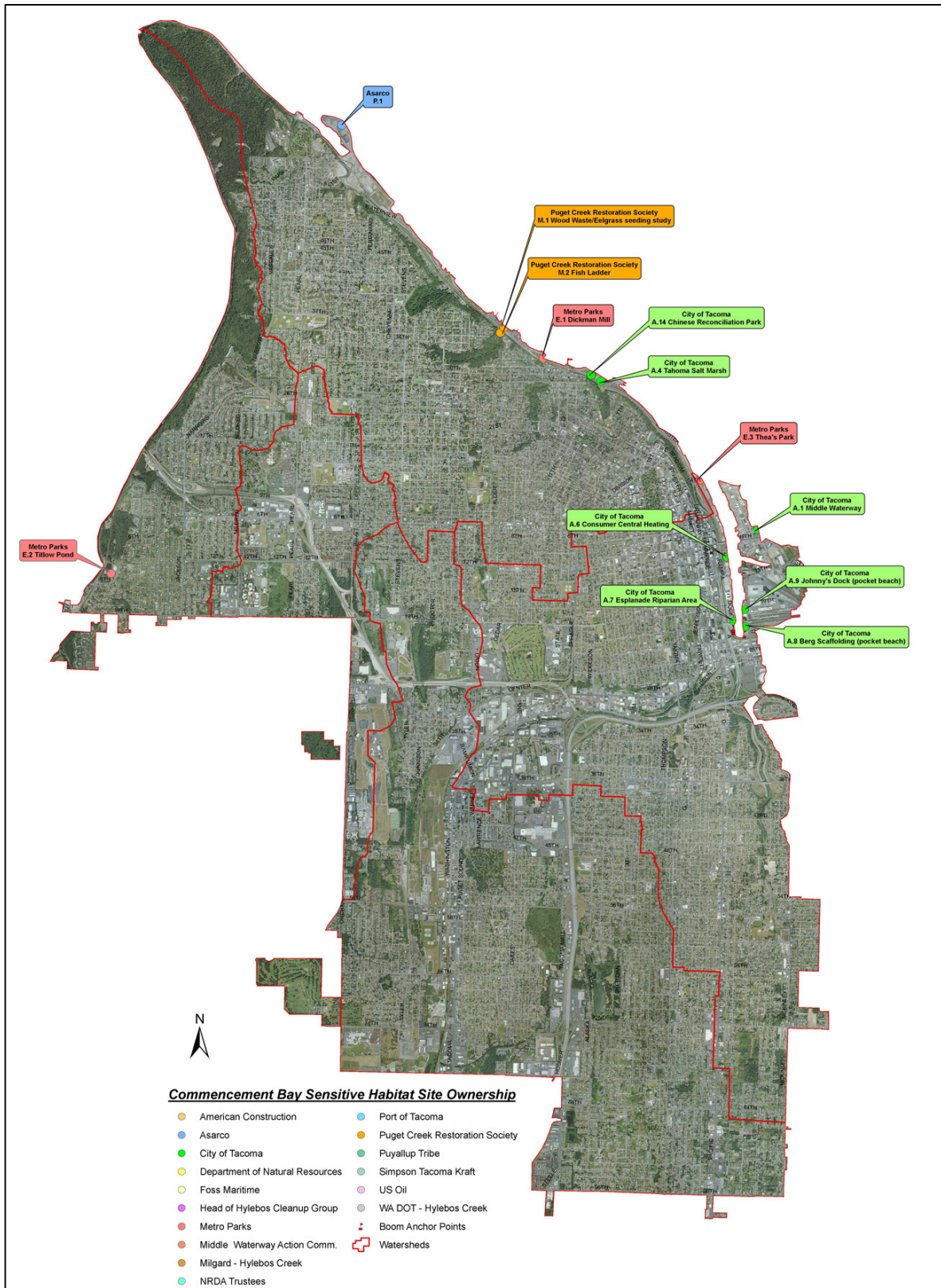
### **2.5.11 Sensitive Habitat Areas**

Natural Resource Damage Assessment (NRDA) areas and other sensitive habitat areas are shown in Figure 1 - 3 and Figure 1 - 4. These sites may require a higher level of stormwater mitigation. Typically, enhanced treatment is required for projects that meet or exceed the threshold for water quality treatment and discharge to sensitive habitat areas. Additional water quality treatment may be required on a case-by-case basis. Contact Environmental Services for more information on these and other sensitive habitat sites.





**Figure 1 - 2. South Tacoma Groundwater Protection District (STGPD)**



**Figure 1 - 3. NRDA Areas and Sensitive Habitat Sites (West Tacoma Area)**

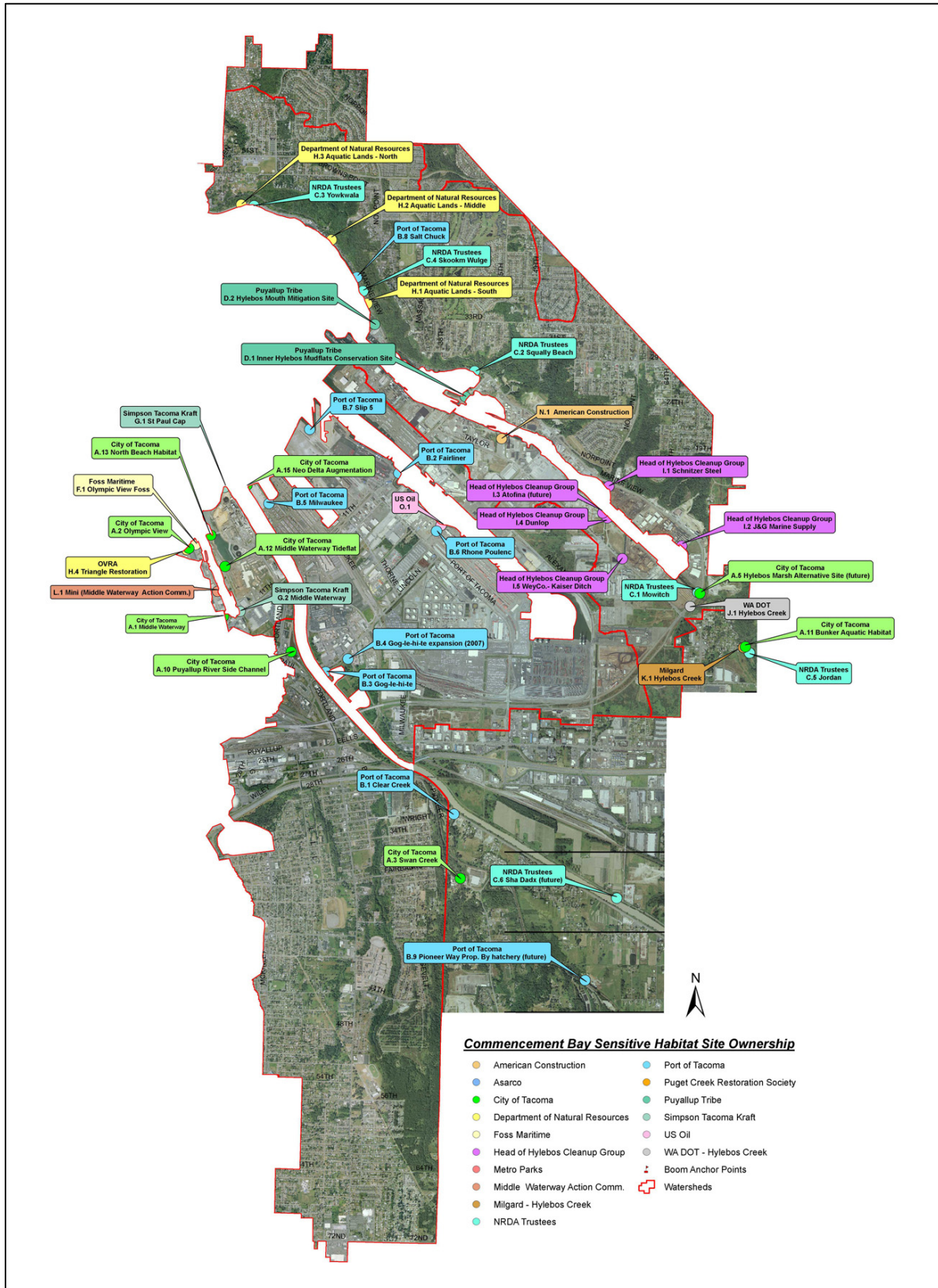


Figure 1 - 4. NRDA Areas and Sensitive Habitat Sites (East Tacoma Area)

## 2.6 Watershed Flow Control and Water Quality Requirements

The flow control and water quality requirements outlined in Chapter 3 typically apply to new and redeveloped sites that meet the thresholds regardless of watershed. However, the following guidance must also be considered when determining Minimum Requirements.

The following sections include a description of watershed specific requirements for flow control and treatment at time of manual writing. The requirements of this manual can be superseded or modified by the adoption of policies, ordinances and rules to implement the recommendations of watershed plans or basin plans or changes in requirements, procedures or policies.

The applicant is directed to the City's webpage for watershed requirement updates:  
[www.cityoftacoma.org/stormwater](http://www.cityoftacoma.org/stormwater).

### 2.6.1 Flett Creek

#### 2.6.1.1 Requirements

**Flow Control:** Flow control per the Standard Requirement is required for those sites that meet or exceed the thresholds for flow control in the Flett Creek watershed.

**Water Quality:** Basic water quality treatment is required for those sites that meet or exceed the threshold for water quality treatment. Additional water quality treatment BMPs, including phosphorus treatment, enhanced treatment or oil treatment will be required for sites and land uses which meet or exceed the thresholds outlined in Volume 5, Chapter 1. Sites that discharge stormwater directly or indirectly to Wapato Lake and meet or exceed the thresholds for water quality treatment as described in Volume 5, Chapter 1 require phosphorus treatment in addition to other water quality treatment required.

#### South Tacoma Groundwater Protection District (STGPD)

Private infiltration facilities used in the STGPD that receive stormwater from pollution-generating surfaces may be allowed on a case-by-base basis and are subject to additional treatment and monitoring. Environmental Services and the Tacoma Pierce County Health Department will make final determination of treatment requirements and monitoring requirements.

#### 2.6.1.2 Additional Considerations

Due to steadily decreasing ability to pump stormwater from the Flett Holding basins downstream to the Flett Wetlands, the in-lieu-of-detention program is no longer available in the Flett Creek Watershed. Flow control is required for all new development and redevelopment projects that meet the threshold for flow control.

Portions of the Flett Creek watershed discharge to adjacent municipalities. In these cases, the more stringent requirements between the City of Tacoma Stormwater Management Manual and the receiving municipality will be applied for determining stormwater mitigation requirements.

### 2.6.2 Leach Creek

#### 2.6.2.1 Requirements

**Flow Control:** Flow control per the Standard Requirement is typically required for those sites that meet or exceed the thresholds for flow control in the Leach Creek Watershed.

**Water Quality:** Basic water quality treatment is required for those sites that meet or exceed the threshold for water quality treatment. Additional water quality treatment BMPs, including phosphorus treatment, enhanced treatment or oil treatment, will be required for sites and land uses which meet or exceed the thresholds outlined in Volume 5, Chapter 1.

### **South Tacoma Groundwater Protection District (STGPD)**

Private infiltration facilities used in the STGPD that receive stormwater from pollution-generating surfaces may be allowed on a case-by-base basis and are subject to additional treatment and monitoring. Environmental Services and the Tacoma Pierce County Health Department will make final determination of treatment requirements and monitoring requirements.

#### **2.6.2.2 Additional Considerations**

The City has an extensive ongoing groundwater and surface water quality monitoring plan in place at the Landfill Superfund Site. Any project that is in the vicinity of the Landfill shall be reviewed for possible impacts to groundwater that might interfere with or affect operations at the Landfill. If necessary, the application shall provide additional information as requested by Environmental Services. In addition, under City ordinance, no wells may be installed in the vicinity of the landfill.

Portions of the Leach Creek watershed discharge to adjacent municipalities. In these cases, the more stringent requirements between the City of Tacoma Stormwater Management Manual and the receiving municipality will be applied for determining stormwater mitigation requirements.

### **2.6.3 Northeast Tacoma**

#### **2.6.3.1 Requirements**

**Flow Control:** Flow control per the Standard Requirement is required for all those sites that meet or exceed the minimum threshold for flow control AND that discharge directly or indirectly to a freshwater or gulch system.

Sites that meet or exceed the minimum threshold for flow control but do not discharge to a creek or gulch system and are instead piped all the way to a marine outfall are required to conduct a quantitative downstream analysis for capacity. If the quantitative analysis shows capacity issues, see Volume 1, Section 3.4.7.4 for more information on Infrastructure Protection requirements.

**Water Quality:** Basic water quality treatment is required for those sites that meet or exceed the threshold for water quality treatment. Additional water quality treatment BMPs, including phosphorus treatment, enhanced treatment or oil treatment will be required for sites and land uses which meet or exceed the thresholds outlined in Volume 5, Chapter 1. Enhanced water quality treatment is required for projects discharging to sensitive habitat sites (see Figure 1 - 3 and Figure 1 - 4 for locations), if the thresholds for water quality treatment are met or exceeded.

#### **2.6.3.2 Additional Considerations**

Portions of the northeast Tacoma watershed discharge to adjacent municipalities. In these cases, the more stringent requirements between the City of Tacoma Stormwater Management Manual and the receiving municipality will be applied for determining stormwater mitigation requirements.

### **2.6.4 Joe's Creek**

#### **2.6.4.1 Requirements**

**Flow Control:** Flow control per the Standard Requirement is typically required for those sites that meet or exceed the thresholds for flow control in the Joe's Creek watershed.

**Water Quality:** Basic water quality treatment is required for those sites that meet or exceed the threshold for water quality treatment. Additional water quality treatment BMPs, including

phosphorus treatment, enhanced treatment or oil treatment will be required for sites and land uses which meet or exceed the thresholds outlined in Volume 5, Chapter 1.

#### **2.6.4.2 Additional Considerations**

Portions of the Joe's Creek watershed discharge into adjacent municipalities. In these cases, the more stringent requirements between the City of Tacoma Stormwater Management Manual and the receiving municipality will be applied for determining stormwater mitigation requirements.

### **2.6.5 North Tacoma**

#### **2.6.5.1 Requirements**

**Flow Control:** Flow control per the Standard Requirement is required for those sites that meet or exceed the Minimum Requirements for flow control AND that discharge directly or indirectly to a freshwater or gulch system.

Sites that meet or exceed the minimum threshold for flow control but do not discharge to a creek or gulch system and are instead piped all the way to a marine outfall are required to conduct a quantitative downstream analysis for capacity. If the quantitative analysis shows capacity issues, see Volume 1, Section 3.4.7.4 for more information on Infrastructure Protection requirements.

**Water Quality:** Basic water quality treatment is required for those sites that meet or exceed the threshold for water quality treatment. Additional water quality treatment BMPs, including phosphorus treatment, enhanced treatment or oil treatment will be required for sites and land uses which meet or exceed the thresholds outlined in Volume 5, Chapter 1. Enhanced water quality treatment is required for projects discharging to sensitive habitat sites (see Figure 1 - 3 and Figure 1 - 4 for locations), if the thresholds for water quality treatment are met or exceeded.

#### **2.6.5.2 Additional Considerations**

Portions of North Tacoma are located in areas that have a high probability to contain high levels of arsenic and lead caused by the Tacoma Smelter Plume. Consult the Washington State Department of Ecology (Ecology) Soil Safety Program Coordinator at 253.407.6262 for additional information on contaminated soil cleanup requirements. Coordinate with Ecology and the City of Tacoma to determine if the site is amenable to infiltration or dispersion BMPs.

### **2.6.6 Thea Foss Waterway**

#### **2.6.6.1 Requirements**

**Flow Control:** Flow control per the Standard Requirement is required for those sites that meet or exceed the minimum threshold for flow control AND that discharge directly or indirectly to a freshwater or gulch system.

Sites that meet or exceed the minimum threshold for flow control but do not discharge to a creek or gulch system and are instead piped all the way to a marine outfall are required to conduct a quantitative downstream analysis for capacity. If the quantitative analysis shows capacity issues, see Volume 1, Section 3.4.7.4 for more information on Infrastructure Protection requirements.

**Water Quality:** Basic water quality treatment is required for those sites that meet or exceed the threshold for water quality treatment. Additional water quality treatment BMPs, including phosphorus treatment, enhanced treatment or oil treatment will be required for sites and land uses which meet or exceed the thresholds outlined in Volume 5, Chapter 1. Enhanced water quality treatment is required for projects discharging to sensitive habitat sites (see Figure 1 - 3 and Figure 1 - 4 for locations), if the thresholds for water quality treatment are met or exceeded.

### **South Tacoma Groundwater Protection District (STGPD)**

Private infiltration facilities used in the STGPD that receive stormwater from pollution-generating surfaces may be allowed on a case-by-base basis and are subject to additional treatment and monitoring. Environmental Services and the Tacoma Pierce County Health Department will make final determination of treatment requirements and monitoring requirements.

#### **2.6.6.2 Additional Considerations**

The superfund cleanup action in Thea Foss and Wheeler-Osgood Waterways has been completed. To prevent possible recontamination it is necessary that potential sources of pollutants (stormwater and other ongoing sources) are adequately controlled. The City is engaged in an aggressive source control program and a detailed monitoring effort to detect any recontamination. The City may impose more stringent water quality treatment requirements on new development and redevelopment projects within the watershed if monitoring results show recontamination is occurring in the waterways.

### **2.6.7 Tideflats**

#### **2.6.7.1 Requirements**

**Flow Control:** Flow control per the Standard Requirement is required for those sites that meet or exceed the thresholds for flow control AND that discharge directly or indirectly to a freshwater or gulch system. The Puyallup River is considered a “Flow-Control Exempt Waterbody”, see Volume 1, Section 3.4.7.5 for additional information.

Sites that meet or exceed the minimum threshold for flow control but do not discharge to a creek or gulch system and are instead piped all the way to a marine outfall are required to conduct a quantitative downstream analysis for capacity. If the quantitative analysis shows capacity issues, see Volume 1, Section 3.4.7.4 for more information on Infrastructure Protection requirements.

**Water Quality:** Basic water quality treatment is required for those sites that meet or exceed the threshold for water quality treatment. Additional water quality treatment BMPs, including phosphorus treatment, enhanced treatment or oil treatment will be required for sites and land uses which meet or exceed the thresholds outlined in Volume 5, Chapter 1. Enhanced water quality treatment is required for projects discharging to sensitive habitat sites (see Figure 1 - 3 and Figure 1 - 4 for locations), if the thresholds for water quality treatment are met or exceeded.

#### **2.6.7.2 Additional Considerations**

Discharges to the Puyallup River are exempted in accordance with Special Condition S2.E of the General Permit which states that the permit does not authorize discharges of stormwater to waters within Indian Reservations except where authority has been specifically delegated to Ecology by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency. The exclusion of such discharges from the general permit does not waive any rights the State or City may have with respect to the regulation of the discharges.

Many large diameter pipes in this watershed are not considered trunk mains due to their flat slopes and potential for tidal influence.

## **2.6.8 Lower Puyallup**

### **2.6.8.1 Requirements**

#### ***Puyallup River***

**Flow Control:** The Puyallup River is considered a “Flow-Control Exempt Waterbody”, see Volume 1, Section 3.4.7.5 for additional information.

**Water Quality:** Basic water quality treatment is required for those sites that meet or exceed the threshold for water quality treatment. Enhanced treatment is not required for discharges to the Puyallup River. Additional water quality treatment BMPs, including oil treatment will be required for sites and land uses which meet the thresholds outlined in Volume 5, Chapter 1. Enhanced water quality treatment is required for projects discharging to sensitive habitat sites (see Figure 1 - 3 and Figure 1 - 4 for locations), if the thresholds for water quality treatment are met or exceeded.

#### ***Swan Creek***

**Flow Control:** Flow control per the Standard Requirement is typically required for those sites that meet or exceed the thresholds for flow control and discharge to Swan Creek.

**Water Quality:** Basic water quality treatment is required for those sites that meet or exceed the threshold for water quality treatment. Additional water quality treatment BMPs, including phosphorus treatment, enhanced treatment or oil treatment will be required for sites and land uses which meet or exceed the thresholds outlined in Volume 5, Chapter 1. Enhanced water quality treatment is required for projects discharging to sensitive habitat sites (see Figure 1 - 3 and Figure 1 - 4 for locations), if the thresholds for water quality treatment are met or exceeded.

#### ***First Creek***

**Flow Control:** Flow control per the Standard Requirement is not required for projects that discharge stormwater directly or indirectly to First Creek.

Sites that meet or exceed the minimum threshold for flow control are required to conduct a quantitative downstream analysis for capacity. If the quantitative analysis shows capacity issues, see Volume 1, Section 3.4.7.4 for more information on Infrastructure Protection requirements.

**Water Quality:** Basic water quality treatment is required for those sites that meet or exceed the threshold for water quality treatment. Additional water quality treatment BMPs, including phosphorus treatment, enhanced treatment or oil treatment will be required for sites and land uses which meet or exceed the thresholds outlined in Volume 5, Chapter 1. Enhanced water quality treatment is required for projects discharging to sensitive habitat sites (see Figure 1 - 3 and Figure 1 - 4 for locations), if the thresholds for water quality treatment are met or exceeded.

## **2.6.9 Western Slopes Watershed**

### **2.6.9.1 Requirements**

**Flow Control:** Flow control per the Standard Requirement is required for those sites that meet or exceed the minimum threshold for flow control AND that discharge directly or indirectly to a freshwater or gulch system.

Sites that meet or exceed the minimum threshold for flow control but do not discharge to a creek or gulch system and are instead piped all the way to a marine outfall are required to conduct a



quantitative downstream analysis for capacity. If the quantitative analysis shows capacity issues, see Volume 1, Section 3.4.7.4 for more information on Infrastructure Protection requirements.

**Water Quality:** Basic water quality treatment is required for those sites that meet or exceed the threshold for water quality treatment. Additional water quality treatment BMPs, including phosphorus treatment, enhanced treatment or oil treatment will be required for sites and land uses which meet or exceed the thresholds outlined in Volume 5, Chapter 1. Enhanced water quality treatment is required for projects discharging to sensitive habitat sites (see Figure 1 - 3 and Figure 1 - 4 for locations), if the thresholds for water quality treatment are met or exceeded.

#### **2.6.9.2 Additional Considerations**

Portions of the Western Slopes watershed discharge to adjacent municipalities. In these cases, the more stringent requirements between the City of Tacoma Stormwater Management Manual and the receiving municipality will be applied for determining stormwater mitigation requirements.

## **Chapter 3 Minimum Requirements for New Development and Redevelopment**

This Chapter identifies the Minimum Requirements for stormwater management applicable to new development and redevelopment sites. These requirements are codified in Chapter 12.08 of the Tacoma Municipal Code (TMC). New development and redevelopment projects also may be subject to other City code requirements, depending on the nature and location of the project. These code requirements may include, but are not limited to, the subdivision and land use permit procedures in Chapters 13.04 and 13.05 TMC; excavation and grading and offsite improvement Chapter 2.02 TMC; driveway control Chapter 10.14 TMC; groundwater protection, Chapter 12.09 TMC; shoreline regulation, Chapter 13.10 TMC; and critical areas preservation Chapter 13.11 TMC.

### **3.1 Overview of the Minimum Requirements**

The Minimum Requirements are:

1. Preparation of Stormwater Site Plans
2. Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention
3. Source Control of Pollution
4. Preservation of Natural Drainage Systems and Outfalls
5. Onsite Stormwater Management
6. Runoff Treatment
7. Flow Control
8. Wetlands Protection
9. Basin/Watershed Planning
10. Operation and Maintenance

The City also has two additional requirements beyond those required in Ecology's 2005 Manual:

11. Offsite Analysis and Mitigation
12. Financial Liability

Depending on the type and size of the proposed project, different combinations of these Minimum Requirements apply. In general, small sites are required to control erosion and sedimentation from construction activities and to apply simpler approaches to treatment and flow control of stormwater runoff from the developed site. Large sites must provide erosion and sedimentation control during construction and permanent control of stormwater runoff from the developed site.

Section 3.4 provides additional information on applicability of the Minimum Requirements to different types of sites.

This manual is designed to be equivalent to Ecology's 2005 Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington. Ecology considers its manual to include all known, available and reasonable methods of prevention, control, and treatment (AKART). Ecology's Manual has no independent regulatory authority. However, Ecology has required as a condition of the City's General Permit for Discharges from Municipal Separate Storm Sewers, the adoption of stormwater program components that are the substantial equivalent to the Minimum Requirements found in Ecology's 2005 Manual.

The Minimum Requirements of this Chapter are conditions of the City's stormwater NPDES permit, and are required under Tacoma's Municipal Code, Chapter 12.08 *Wastewater and Surface Water Management – Regulations and Rates*.

## **3.2 Exemptions**

The following are exempt from complying with the Minimum Requirements. All other new development or redevelopment projects are subject to one or more of the Minimum Requirements (see Section 3.4).

### **3.2.1 Road Maintenance**

The following road maintenance practices are exempt:

- Pothole and square cut patching
- Overlaying existing asphalt or concrete pavement with asphalt or concrete without expanding the area of coverage
- Shoulder grading
- Reshaping/regrading drainage systems
- Crack sealing
- Resurfacing with in-kind material without expanding the road prism
- Vegetation maintenance

### **3.2.2 Parking Lots and Parking Lot Maintenance**

Parking lots are considered pollution generating impervious surfaces and must comply with all relevant Minimum Requirements. Parking lot surfacing material requirements are regulated through the City's Land Use code. No special consideration will be given to "temporary" parking areas as the impacts resulting from the proposed impervious surface must be mitigated as part of the construction.

The following parking lot maintenance practices are exempt:

- Pothole and square cut patching
- Overlaying existing asphalt or concrete pavement with asphalt or concrete without expanding the area of coverage
- Crack sealing
- Catch basin, pipe and vegetation maintenance

### **3.2.3 Underground Utility Projects**

Underground utility projects that replace the ground surface with in-kind material or materials with similar runoff characteristics are only subject to Minimum Requirement #2, Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention.

### **3.2.4 Minor Clearing and Grading**

The following minor clearing and grading activities are exempt from all the Minimum Requirements except for Minimum Requirement #2; unless located within a critical or sensitive

area governed by the City's Critical Areas Preservation Ordinance. The location of Critical Areas can be found on the City's GovMe website located at: [www.govme.org](http://www.govme.org).

- Excavation for wells, except that fill made with the material from such excavation shall not be exempt;
- Exploratory excavations under the direction of soil engineers or engineering geologists, except that fill made with the material from such excavation shall not be exempt;
- Removal of hazardous trees;
- Removal of trees or other vegetation which cause sight distance obstructions at intersections as determined by the City of Tacoma traffic engineer;
- Minor clearing and grading associated with cemetery graves;
- Land clearing associated with routine maintenance by public utility agencies, as long as appropriate vegetation management practices are followed as described in the Best Management Practices of the Regional Road Maintenance Endangered Species Act Program Guidelines located at <http://www.wsdot.wa.gov/maintenance/roadside/esa.htm>

### 3.2.5 Emergencies

Emergency projects which, if not performed immediately would substantially endanger life or property, are exempt only to the extent necessary to meet the emergency. Emergency activities may include but are not limited to: sandbagging, diking, ditching, filling or similar work during or after periods of extreme weather. Permits authorizing the emergency work may be required after completion of the emergency project.

## 3.3 Applicability of the Minimum Requirements

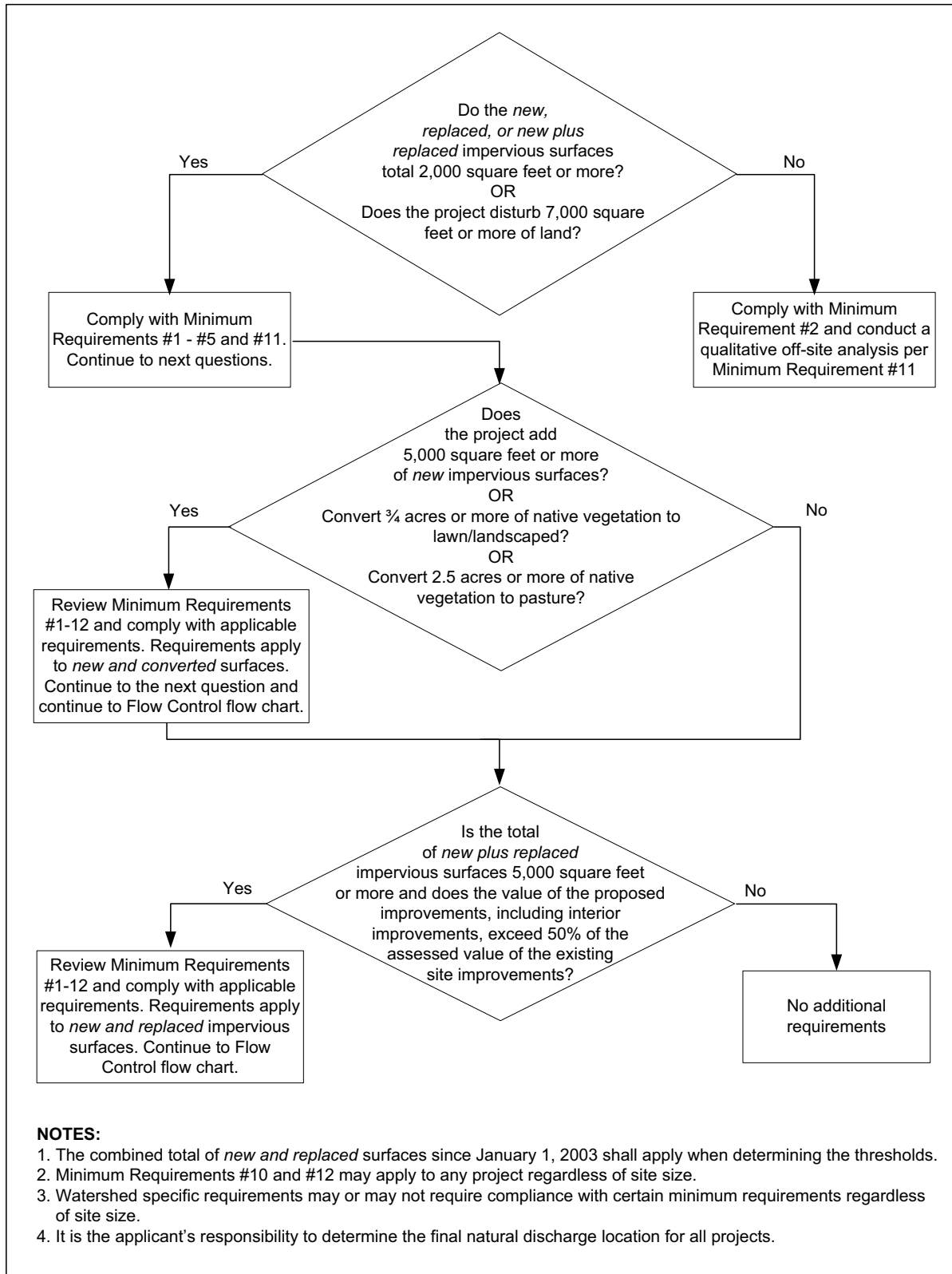
**NOTE:** Throughout this Section, **requirements are written in bold print**. Supplemental guidelines that serve as advice and other materials are not bolded.

Not all of the Minimum Requirements apply to every development or redevelopment project. The applicability varies depending on the type and size of the project. This section identifies thresholds that determine the applicability of the Minimum Requirements to different projects. The thresholds shall be determined using the proposed improvements for the entire project site.

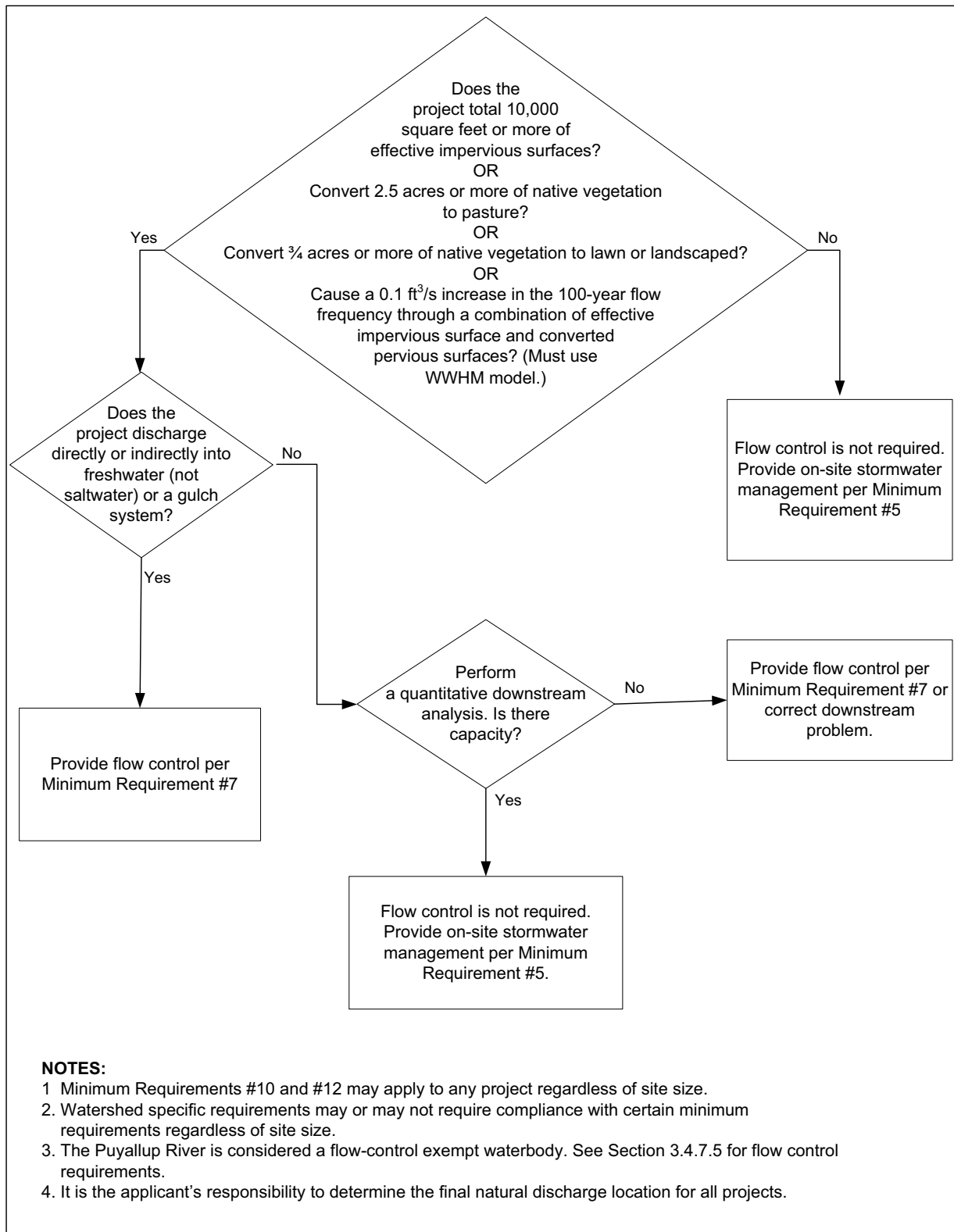
The Minimum Requirements shall be based on the most sensitive receiving waterbody along the discharge route. Environmental Services shall make the final determination of the applicability of the Minimum Requirements.

Runoff credits are considered when determining project thresholds for flow control requirements. The design criteria in this manual must be used in order to obtain runoff credits.

The flow charts in Figures 1 - 5, 1 - 6 and 1 - 7 are intended as guidance for determining Minimum Requirements. The figures do not provide a complete analysis of each Minimum Requirement. The applicant must review the text of each Minimum Requirement in order to determine the stormwater mitigation requirements for their project. The written text shall take precedence over the flowcharts.



**Figure 1 - 5. Determining Minimum Requirements for New and Redevelopment Project Sites**



**Figure 1 - 6. Determining Minimum Requirements for Flow Control**

### 3.3.1 New Development

All new development shall be required to comply with Minimum Requirements #2 and #11. Minimum Requirements #10 and #12 may apply to any project.

The following new development shall comply with Minimum Requirements #1 through #5 for the new and replaced impervious surfaces and the land disturbed:

- Creates or adds 2,000 square feet, or greater, of new, replaced, or new plus replaced impervious surface area, or
- Has land disturbing activity of 7,000 square feet or greater.

The following new development shall comply with Minimum Requirements #1 through #10 for the new impervious surfaces and the converted pervious surfaces.

- Creates or adds 5,000 square feet , or more, of new impervious surface area, or
- Converts  $\frac{3}{4}$  acres, or more, of native vegetation to lawn or landscaped areas, or
- Converts 2.5 acres, or more, of native vegetation to pasture.

### 3.3.2 Redevelopment

Redevelopment is development on a site that is already substantially developed (i.e. has 35% or more existing impervious surface coverage). See the Glossary at the back of this manual for definitions.

Redevelopment projects have the same requirements as new development projects in order to minimize the impacts from new surfaces. To not discourage redevelopment projects, replaced surfaces aren't required to be brought up to new stormwater standards unless the monetary thresholds noted in this section are exceeded. If the redevelopment project scope is sufficiently large such that the thresholds are exceeded, it is reasonable to require the replaced surfaces to be brought up to current stormwater standards.

All redevelopment shall be required to comply with Minimum Requirements #2 and #11. Minimum Requirements #10 and #12 may apply to any project regardless of size.

The following redevelopment shall comply with Minimum Requirements #1 through #5 for the new and replaced impervious surfaces and the land disturbed:

- The new, replaced, or total of new plus replaced impervious surfaces is 2,000 square feet or more, or
- 7,000 square feet or more of land disturbing activities.

In addition to meeting Minimum Requirements #1 through #5, the following redevelopment shall comply with Minimum Requirements #6 through #10 for the new impervious surfaces and converted pervious areas:

- Adds 5,000 square feet or more of *new* impervious surfaces or,
- Converts  $\frac{3}{4}$  acres, or more, of native vegetation to lawn or landscaped areas, or
- Converts 2.5 acres, or more, of native vegetation to pasture.

In addition to meeting Minimum Requirements #1 through #12 for the *new* and *converted* surfaces, the following shall comply with all the Minimum Requirements for the *new*, *converted* and *replaced* impervious surfaces:

- **The total of new plus replaced impervious surfaces is 5,000 square feet or more and the valuation of the proposed improvements (materials plus labor to construct) - including interior improvements - exceeds 50% of the assessed value of the existing site improvements as determined from the latest available building valuation data published by the International Code Council, available at <http://www.iccsafe.org/>.**

The Building Valuation Data provided by the International Code Council may not include all improvements that can occur on a site. All site improvements must be included when determining if the improvements exceed 50% of the assessed value. These might include improvements such as parking lots, driveways, sport courts, swimming pools, etc. in addition to the valuation of any proposed or existing buildings.

### **3.3.3 Equivalent Areas**

The City may allow the Minimum Requirements to be applied to an equivalent area (flow and pollution characteristics) within the same site. For public road projects, the equivalent area does not have to be within the project limits, but must drain to the same receiving water within the watershed. Environmental Services shall approve the use of equivalent areas.

### **3.3.4 Roads**

All new/redevelopment shall be required to comply with Minimum Requirements #2 and #11. Minimum Requirements #10 and #12 may apply to any project regardless of site size. In addition, all new/redevelopment that exceeds certain thresholds shall be required to comply with the additional Minimum Requirements as follows.

The following new/redevelopment shall comply with Minimum Requirements #1 through #5 for the *new and replaced impervious surfaces* and the *land disturbed*:

- The new, replaced, or total of new plus replaced impervious surfaces is 2,000 square feet or more, or
- 7,000 square feet or more of land disturbing activities.

In addition to meeting Minimum Requirements #1 through #5, the following new/redevelopment shall comply with Minimum Requirements #6 through #10 for the *new impervious surfaces* and *converted pervious areas*:

- Adds 5,000 square feet or more of new impervious surfaces or,
- Converts 3/4 acres or more of native vegetation to pasture.

In addition to meeting Minimum Requirements #1 through #12 for the *new and converted surfaces*, the following road-related projects shall comply with all Minimum Requirements for the *new, converted and replaced impervious surfaces*:

- The total of the new impervious surfaces is 5,000 square feet or more and the new impervious surfaces add 50% or more to the existing impervious surfaces within the site.

See Figure 1 - 7. Determining the Minimum Requirements for Road-Related Projects.

The site shall be defined by the length of the project and the width of the right-of-way. Public road improvements (offsite improvements) required as part of a private development project will be considered part of the project site used for determining the project thresholds of the private project and shall not be considered road-related projects.



**The following road maintenance practices are considered redevelopment.** The extent to which the manual applies is explained for each circumstance.

- Removing and replacing a paved surface to base course or lower, or repairing the roadway base. These are considered replaced surfaces and are subject to the Minimum Requirements that are triggered when the thresholds for redevelopment are met.
- Extending the pavement edge without increasing the size of the road prism, or paving graveled shoulders: These are considered new impervious surfaces and are subject to the Minimum Requirements that are triggered when the thresholds identified for redevelopment projects are met.
- Resurfacing by upgrading from dirt to gravel, asphalt, or concrete; upgrading from gravel to asphalt or concrete; or upgrading from a bituminous surface treatment (“chip seal”) to asphalt or concrete. These are considered new impervious surfaces and are subject to the Minimum Requirements that are triggered when the thresholds identified for redevelopment projects are met.

### **3.3.5 Cumulative Impact Mitigation Requirement**

**The determination of thresholds for a project site shall be based on the total increase or replacement of impervious surfaces that occurred after adoption of the 2003 SWMM (January 1, 2003).**

**Under this provision, the City will consider the cumulative impacts of all permits issued on or after January 1, 2003. The combined total of new or replaced surfaces will be applied to the thresholds that determine applicability of the Minimum Requirements.**

The intent of this Cumulative Impact Mitigation Requirement is to adequately mitigate the stormwater from improvements on a project site that are submitted under separate permits. The separate submittals could have project areas that do not meet the thresholds, but would meet the thresholds if the projects were combined as one project.

### **3.3.6 Grade and Fill Projects**

Grade and fill projects are those projects that do not include clearing or adding or replacing impervious surfaces. Grade and fill projects require stormwater pollution prevention during grading and filling to protect downstream systems.

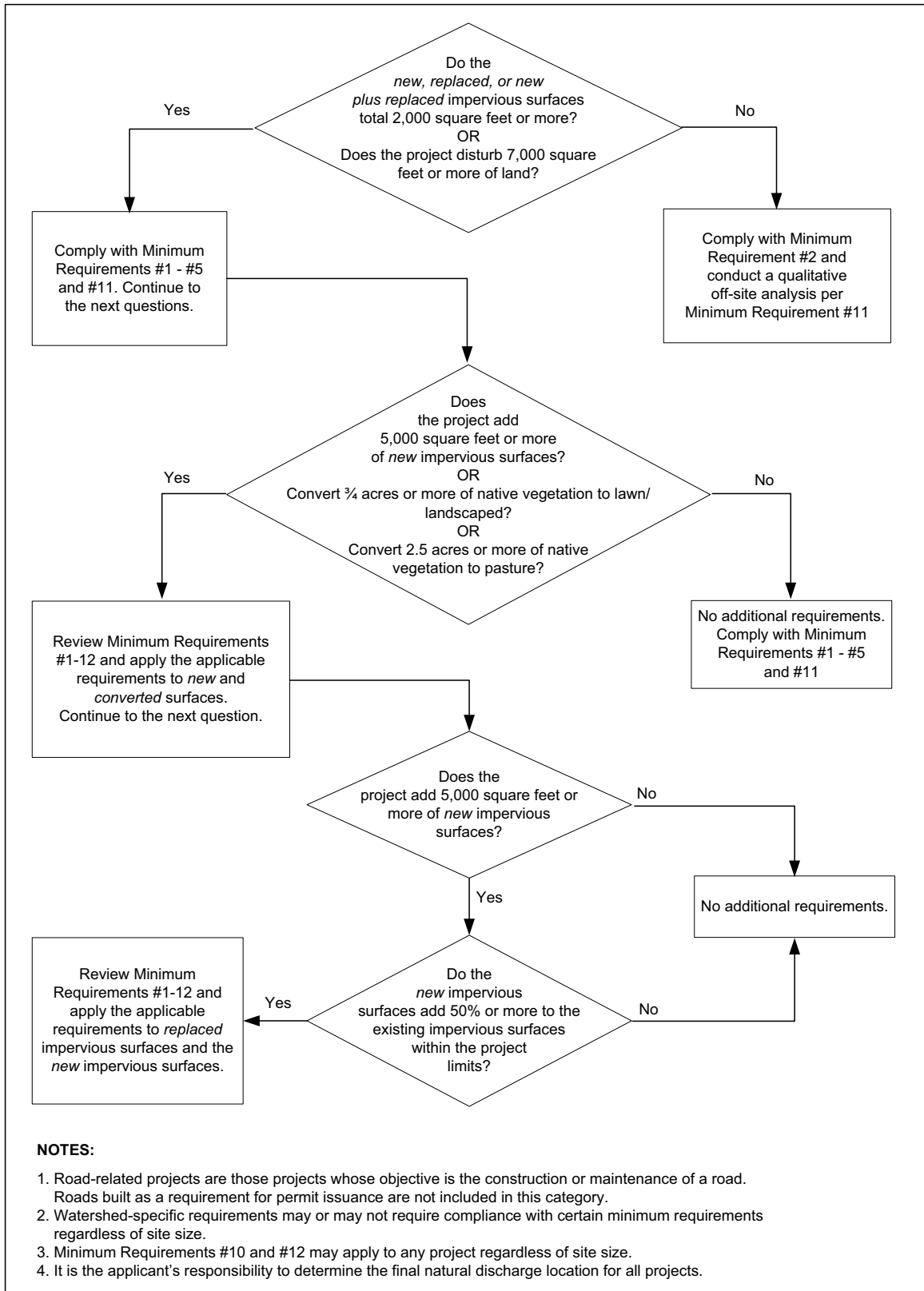
Projects grading/filling greater than 50 cubic yards of material are required to submit a Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan (SWPPP) per Volume 2 of this manual. Projects grading/filling between 50 and 499 cubic yards of material may submit a short form SWPPP as outlined in Volume 2, Appendix C. Projects grading/filling 500 cubic yards or more of material are required to submit a formal SWPPP per Volume 2.

### **3.3.7 Separation of Public and Private Water Quality and Flow Control**

Typically, private and public stormwater are separated for purposes of water quality treatment and flow control. However, the City recognizes that this is not always practical. Therefore, the City has developed the following guidance:

- For commercial new development and redevelopment, typically public and private stormwater runoff shall be separated. The City may allow incidental amounts of private stormwater runoff to enter the City system with written approval from Environmental Services.

- Under certain circumstances, small amounts of public stormwater may be allowed to discharge to private flow control systems with written approval from Environmental Services. A written agreement between the City and owner, and Notice to Title may be required.
- For residential new development and redevelopment, for areas adjacent to public roads, such as driveways, the City will typically allow driveway runoff to drain to the street if onsite management is not feasible, and the amount of driveway is small compared to public road with written approval from Environmental Services. Private accessway runoff shall be handled in separate private water quality and/or flow control devices.



**Figure 1 - 7. Determining Minimum Requirements for Road-Related Projects**

### **3.4 Description of Minimum Requirements**

**NOTE:** Throughout this Section, **requirements are written in BOLD print**. Supplemental guidelines that serve as recommendations and other materials are not written in bold.

This section describes the Minimum Requirements for stormwater management at new development and redevelopment sites. Consult Section 3.3 to determine which requirements apply to any given project.

Volumes 2 through 6 of this manual present Best Management Practices (BMPs) for use in meeting the Minimum Requirements.

#### **3.4.1 Minimum Requirement #1: Preparation of a Stormwater Site Plan**

**All projects meeting the thresholds in Section 3.3 shall prepare a Stormwater Site Plan for Environmental Services review. Stormwater Site Plans shall be prepared in accordance with Chapter 4 of this Volume.**

**A Stormwater Site Plan consists of an assessment of both temporary and permanent stormwater and drainage impacts.**

##### **3.4.1.1 Objective**

To outline the existing and post-developed conditions of the project site, describe the proposed stormwater facilities, and present the stormwater analysis.

#### **3.4.2 Minimum Requirement #2: Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention (SWPP)**

**All new development and redevelopment shall comply with Construction SWPP Elements #1 through #12. A full description of these elements can be found in Volume 2 – Chapter 2.**

**Projects which meet or exceed the thresholds of Volume 1, Section 3.3 must prepare a Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan (SWPPP). Each of the twelve elements must be considered and included in the Construction SWPPP unless site conditions render the element unnecessary and the exemption from that element is clearly justified in the narrative of the SWPPP.**

**The City has developed a Construction SWPPP Short Form which is available in Volume 2, Appendix C. The form may be used for projects that:**

- **Add or replace between 2,000 and 5,000 square feet of impervious surface.**
- **Clear or disturb between 7,000 square feet and 1 acre of land.**
- **Grade/fill 50 - 499 cubic yards of material.**

**If project quantities exceed any of the above thresholds, a formal Construction SWPPP as described in Volume 2, Chapter 2 must be prepared.**

**Unless located in a Critical Area, projects below the new and redevelopment thresholds are not required to prepare a Construction SWPPP, but must consider all twelve Elements of Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention and develop controls for all elements that pertain to the project site.**

**SWPP Elements are:**

- Element 1: Mark Clearing Limits*
- Element 2: Establish Construction Access*
- Element 3: Control Flow Rates*
- Element 4: Install Sediment Controls*
- Element 5: Stabilize Soils*
- Element 6: Protect Slopes*
- Element 7: Protect Drain Inlets*
- Element 8: Stabilize Channels and Outlets*
- Element 9: Control Pollutants*
- Element 10: Control De-Watering*
- Element 11: Maintain BMPs*
- Element 12: Manage the Project*

These Elements are described in detail in Volume 2.

**3.4.2.1 Objective**

To control erosion and prevent sediment and other pollutants from leaving the site during the construction phase of a project

**3.4.3 Minimum Requirement #3: Source Control of Pollution**

**All known, available and reasonable source control BMPs shall be applied to all projects. Source control BMPs shall be selected, designed, and maintained according to this manual. Structural source control BMPs shall be identified in the stormwater site plan and shall be shown on construction plans submitted for City review.**

Source Control BMPs include Operational BMPs and Structural Source Control BMPs. See Volume 4 for design details of these BMPs. For construction sites, see Volume 2, Chapter 3.

**3.4.3.1 Objective**

The intent of source control BMPs is to prevent stormwater from coming in contact with pollutants. They are a cost-effective means of reducing pollutants in stormwater, and, therefore, should be a first consideration in all projects.

**3.4.4 Minimum Requirement #4: Preservation of Natural Drainage Systems and Outfalls**

**Natural drainage patterns shall be maintained, and discharges from the project site shall occur at the natural location, to the maximum extent practicable. The manner by which runoff is discharged from the project site must not cause a significant adverse impact to downstream receiving waters and downgradient properties. All outfalls require energy dissipation.**

**As part of a submittal, the applicant shall identify the location of natural drainage, topography, historic drainage information and any potential impacts.**

**3.4.4.1 Objective**

To preserve and utilize natural drainage systems to the fullest extent practicable because of the multiple stormwater benefits these systems provide; and to prevent erosion at and downstream of the discharge location.

### **3.4.4.2 Supplemental Guidelines**

Where stormwater must be discharged offsite, an applicant may discharge surface flow onto neighboring properties if the surface flow has not been concentrated or increased as a result of the project development. An applicant may be allowed to discharge concentrated or increased flows beyond the guidelines in this section only if the applicant has obtained the legal rights to discharge onto neighboring properties.

The following are guidelines to use when discharging increased or concentrated flows onto downgradient properties. Environmental Services shall determine which of the following discharge scenarios will be allowed.

- a. Conveyance to the City system at the direction of or with written approval from Environmental Services. If necessary, the City may require the City storm system to be extended to serve the project site.
- b. If the 100-year peak discharge, as determined by an approved continuous simulation model, is less than or equal to 0.2 cfs under existing conditions and will remain less than or equal to 0.2 cfs under developed conditions, then the concentrated runoff may be discharged onto a rock pad or to any other system that serves to disperse flows.
- c. If the 100-year peak discharge, as determined by an approved continuous simulation model, is less than or equal to 0.5 cfs under existing conditions and will remain less than or equal to 0.5 cfs under developed conditions, then the concentrated runoff may be discharged through a dispersal trench or other dispersal system, provided the applicant can demonstrate that there is no adverse impact to downhill properties or drainage systems.
- d. If the 100-year peak discharge, as determined by an approved continuous simulation model, is greater than 0.5 cfs for either existing or developed conditions, or if a significant adverse impact to downgradient properties or drainage systems is likely, then a conveyance system must be provided to convey the concentrated runoff across the downstream properties to an acceptable discharge point.

### **3.4.5 Minimum Requirement #5: Onsite Stormwater Management**

**Projects shall employ, where feasible and appropriate, Onsite Stormwater Management BMPs to infiltrate, disperse, and retain stormwater runoff onsite to the maximum extent feasible without causing flooding, erosion, water quality or groundwater impacts. All projects required to comply with Minimum Requirement #5 shall employ all of the following BMPs as applicable:**

- **Roof Downspout Control BMPs, functionally equivalent to those described in Volume 3, Chapter 2, and**
- **Dispersion, functionally equivalent to those described in Volume 3, Chapter 3.**
- **Soil Quality BMPs, functionally equivalent to those in Volume 3, Chapter 4.**
- **Tree Retention and Transplanting BMPs equivalent to those in Volume 3, Chapter 5,**

**Where roof downspout controls are planned, the following three types shall be considered in descending order of preference:**

- **Downspout infiltration systems including rain gardens (Volume 3, Section 2.5 and Section 2.6, and Volume 6, Section 2.2.3).**

- Downspout dispersion systems (Volume 3, Section 2.7), only if infiltration is not feasible.
- Collect and convey to City system (Volume 3, Section 2.8) if other alternatives are not feasible.

#### **3.4.5.1 Objective**

To use stormwater management practices on individual properties to reduce the amount of disruption to the natural hydrologic characteristics of the site

### **3.4.6 Minimum Requirement #6: Water Quality Treatment**

#### **3.4.6.1 Thresholds**

The following require construction of stormwater treatment facilities:

- Projects in which the total of effective pollution-generating impervious surface (PGIS) is 5,000 square feet or more in a threshold discharge area of the project, or
- Projects in which the total of pollution-generating pervious surfaces (PGPS) is three-quarters (3/4) of an acre or more in a threshold discharge area, and from which there is a surface discharge in a natural or man-made conveyance system from the site.

Total effective pollution-generating impervious surface shall include all new plus replaced PGIS. That portion of any development project in which the above PGIS or PGPS thresholds are not exceeded in a threshold discharge area shall apply Onsite Stormwater Management BMPs, where feasible, in accordance with Minimum Requirement #5.

If a project meets or exceeds the threshold for water quality treatment, all pollution generating surfaces shall be treated.

#### **3.4.6.2 Treatment Facility Selection, Design, and Maintenance**

Stormwater treatment facilities shall be:

- Selected in accordance with the process identified in Volume 5, Chapter 1;
- Designed in accordance with the design criteria in Volume 5; and
- Sized for the entire flow that is directed to them. Runoff from non-pollutant generating surfaces that commingles with runoff from pollutant-generating surfaces shall be treated. Non-pollution generating surface runoff may be directed around the treatment facility.
- Maintained in accordance with the maintenance standards in Volume 1, Appendix C that shall be incorporated in the design as part of a facility operation and maintenance manual.

#### **3.4.6.3 Additional Requirements**

- Direct discharge of untreated stormwater from pollution-generating surfaces above the thresholds given in Section 3.4.6.1 to groundwater is prohibited.
- The City of Tacoma Public Works Department and Tacoma-Pierce County Health Department developed a guidance document that provides the circumstances and requirements for approval of infiltration facilities for managing pollution-generating stormwater runoff in the South Tacoma Groundwater Protection District. This document, "Implementation of Stormwater Infiltration for Pollution-Generating Surfaces in the South Tacoma Groundwater Protection District" is available at [www.cityoftacoma.org/stormwater](http://www.cityoftacoma.org/stormwater).

- The above thresholds apply to both a project's onsite and offsite improvements. Once the project is required to meet this Minimum Requirement, all new and replaced pollution generating impervious surfaces are required to provide treatment. No net or average is permitted between non-pollution generating surfaces and pollution generating.

#### **3.4.6.4 Objective**

The purpose of runoff treatment is to reduce pollutant loads and concentrations in stormwater runoff using physical, biological, and chemical removal mechanisms so that beneficial uses of receiving waters are maintained and, where applicable, restored. When site conditions are appropriate, infiltration can potentially be the most effective BMP for runoff treatment.

### **3.4.7 Minimum Requirement #7: Flow Control**

#### **3.4.7.1 Applicability**

Projects must provide flow control to reduce the impacts of stormwater runoff from impervious surfaces and land cover conversions. For watershed-specific flow control requirements refer to Chapter 2.

Portions of projects discharging to a wetland shall also be subject to Minimum Requirement #8.

The flow control requirement thresholds apply to projects that discharge directly or indirectly:

- Through a conveyance system into fresh water; or
- Through a conveyance system into a gulch; or
- To a City identified capacity problem existing downstream of the development; or
- To a manmade conveyance system (ditch, swale, etc.) which has not been adequately stabilized to prevent erosion; or
- To a conveyance system without capacity to convey the fully developed design event as defined in Volume 3, Chapter 9.

#### **3.4.7.2 Thresholds**

Projects that meet or exceed the following thresholds and discharge as described in Section 3.4.7.1 above require construction of flow control facilities and/or onsite management BMPs.

- Project sites in which the total of effective impervious surfaces is 10,000 square feet or more in a threshold discharge area, or
- Projects that convert  $\frac{3}{4}$  acres or more of native vegetation to lawn or landscape, or convert 2.5 acres or more of native vegetation to pasture in a threshold discharge area, and from which there is a surface discharge in natural or man-made conveyance system from the site, or
- Projects that, through a combination of effective impervious surfaces and converted pervious surfaces, cause a 0.1 cfs increase in the 100-year flow frequency from a threshold discharge area as estimated using the Western Washington Hydrology Model or other approved model. Comparison will be between existing and proposed site conditions.



That portion of any development project in which the thresholds listed above are not exceeded in a threshold discharge area, shall apply Onsite Stormwater Management BMPs in accordance with Minimum Requirement #5. Refer to Figure 1 - 5 and Figure 1 - 6 to aid in determining project requirements.

#### **3.4.7.3 Standard Requirement**

The standard requirement applies to projects that meet the thresholds as described in Section 3.4.7.2 and discharge directly or indirectly:

- Through a conveyance system into fresh water; or
- Through a conveyance system into a gulch; or
- As required by Environmental Services.

Using WWHM for design, stormwater discharges shall match developed discharge durations to predeveloped durations for the range of predeveloped discharge rates from 50% of the 2-year peak flow up to the full 50-year peak flow. The predeveloped condition to be matched shall be a forested land cover.

Flow control facilities shall be sized for the entire flow that is directed to them. Flow control facilities that accept offsite inflow shall be sized for fully-developed conditions per Volume 3, Section 9.1.1. Offsite inflow may be bypassed around the flow control facility. Bypassed stormwater discharges shall not cause damage to downstream systems or properties and shall meet the requirements of Section 3.4.4.2.

This standard requirement is waived for sites that will reliably infiltrate all the runoff from impervious surfaces and converted pervious surfaces.

#### **3.4.7.4 Infrastructure Protection Requirement**

The infrastructure protection requirement is intended to mitigate stormwater impacts from projects that meet the thresholds described in Section 3.4.7.2 and are not required to provide flow control per the standard requirement discussed in Section 3.4.7.3, but discharge directly or indirectly:

- To a City identified capacity problem existing downstream of the development; or
- To a manmade conveyance system (ditch, swale, etc.) which has not been adequately stabilized to prevent erosion; or
- To a conveyance system without capacity to convey the fully-developed design event as defined in Volume 3, Chapter 9.

The applicant may resolve the downstream capacity problem or provide onsite infiltration or detention. Where infiltration or detention is provided, stormwater discharges for the developed condition shall not exceed the discharges under existing conditions.

Stormwater systems shall be sized according to the specific sizing requirements of each BMP (see Volume 3 or Volume 5) though the predeveloped condition to be matched shall be the existing land cover.

The engineer shall conduct a quantitative downstream analysis per Minimum Requirement #11 to verify that onsite detention or infiltration would be required. If onsite detention or infiltration is proposed instead of upsizing the downstream system, the owner must provide a signed letter stating that they understand the proposal and accept the operation and maintenance of the onsite system.

### 3.4.7.5 Flow Control Exempt Water Bodies

If the following requirements are met, flow control is not required for projects that discharge directly or indirectly to the Puyallup River. If all the following requirements are not met, flow control per the Standard Requirement in Section 3.4.7.3 is required.

- Direct discharge to the exempt receiving water does not result in the diversion of drainage from any perennial stream classified as Types 1,2,3, or 4 in the State of Washington Interim Water Typing System, or from any category I, II, or III wetland; and
- Flow splitting devices or drainage BMPs are applied to route natural runoff volumes from the project site to any downstream Type 5 stream or category IV wetland:
  - Design of flow splitting devices or drainage BMPs will be based on continuous hydrologic modeling analysis. The design will assure that flows delivered to Type 5 stream reaches will approximate, but in no case exceed, durations ranging from 50% of the 2-year to the 50-year peak flow.
  - Flow splitting devices or drainage BMPs that deliver flow to Category IV wetlands will also be designed using continuous hydrologic modeling to preserve existing wetland hydrologic conditions unless specifically waived by the City of Tacoma; and
- The project site must discharge through a conveyance system that is comprised entirely of manmade conveyance elements (e.g., pipes, ditches, outfall protection, etc.) and extends to the ordinary high water line of the exempt receiving water; and
- The conveyance system between the project site and the exempt receiving water shall have sufficient hydraulic capacity to convey discharges from future build-out conditions of the site (see Volume 3, Chapter 9), and the existing conditions from non-project areas from which runoff is or will be collected. Minimum Requirement #11 applies from the project to 1/4 mile downstream from the site. Minimum Requirement #11 requires that the conveyance system within 1/4 mile of the site have sufficient capacity to convey discharges from future build-out conditions of the site and future build-out conditions from the non-project areas from which runoff is, or will be collected. This section requires an analysis of the entire conveyance system between the project site and the flow control exempt water body. This area may extend beyond 1/4 mile downstream from the site; and
- Any erodible elements of the manmade conveyance system must be adequately stabilized to prevent erosion under the conditions noted above.

### 3.4.7.6 Objective

The purpose of flow control is to prevent increases in natural (prior to the European settlement) stream channel erosion rates. The standard intends to maintain the total amount of time that a receiving stream exceeds an erosion-causing threshold based upon historic rainfall and natural land cover conditions. That threshold is assumed to be 50% of the 2-year peak flow. Maintaining the naturally occurring erosion rates within streams is vital, though by itself insufficient, to protect fish habitat and production.

### 3.4.7.7 Modeling Requirements

To meet the Standard Requirement in Section 3.4.7.3 or the Infrastructure Protection Requirement in 3.4.7.4, the applicant shall use the Western Washington Hydrology Model or an equivalent Washington State Department of Ecology and City of Tacoma approved

continuous simulation model to size the flow control facilities. The applicant must use a single-event model to model conveyance systems if upsizing infrastructure to meet the Infrastructure Protection Requirement.

There are several acceptable computer models available, however, the designer shall use the most recent version of any proposed software that has been updated with any substantive changes. The designer shall provide a copy of the completed hydrology analysis worksheet (Appendix C) and a copy of the electronic project file.

**NOTE:** Hand-calculated hydrographs and flow routing will no longer be accepted because of the wide availability of various software programs.

### **3.4.8 Minimum Requirement #8: Wetlands Protection**

Wetlands are regulated by the City of Tacoma through this requirement and the Critical Areas Preservation Ordinance, Tacoma Municipal Code 13.11. For more information about wetlands, wetland permits and development close to wetlands, please contact the Land Use Services Desk at (253) 591-5577.

#### **3.4.8.1 Applicability**

Stormwater discharges to wetlands may require a wetland permit as detailed under the City's Critical Areas Preservation Ordinance (TMC 13.11).

The requirements below are in addition to requirements given in TMC 13.11 and apply only to projects whose stormwater discharges into a wetland, either directly or indirectly through a conveyance system. These requirements must be met in addition to meeting Minimum Requirement #6, Water Quality Treatment, when the threshold for treatment is met. All pollution generating surfaces subject to the thresholds and discharging to wetlands shall require water quality treatment prior to discharge to the wetlands.

Streams may also be regulated under this requirement as part of the wetland permit.

#### **3.4.8.2 Thresholds**

When either of the thresholds identified in Minimum Requirement #6 – Runoff Treatment, or Minimum Requirement #7 – Flow Control are met or exceeded, this requirement shall also be applied.

#### **3.4.8.3 Standard Requirement**

Discharges to wetlands shall maintain the hydrologic conditions, hydrophytic vegetation, and substrate characteristics necessary to support existing and designated uses. The hydrologic analysis shall use the existing land cover condition to determine the existing hydrologic conditions unless directed otherwise by a regulatory agency with jurisdiction. A wetland can be considered for hydrologic modification and/or stormwater treatment in accordance with Guidesheet 1B in Appendix E. Modeling shall be completed with a continuous simulation model. Model calibration and pre- and post-development monitoring of wetland levels, groundwater levels, and water quality may be required by Environmental Services.

#### **3.4.8.4 Additional Requirements**

The standard requirement does not override the obligation to apply whatever technology is necessary to comply with state water quality standards, Chapter 173-201A WAC, or state groundwater standards, Chapter 173-200 WAC. Additional treatment requirements to meet those standards may be required by federal, state, or local governments.

**Stormwater treatment and flow control facilities shall not be constructed within a natural vegetated buffer, except for:**

- **Necessary conveyance systems as approved by the City; or**
- **As allowed in wetlands approved for hydrologic modification and/or treatment in accordance with Guidesheet 1B in Appendix E of this Volume.**

**Natural runoff volumes from the project site shall be maintained to any downstream stream or wetland.**

**Design of flow splitting devices or drainage BMPs that deliver flows to streams will be based on continuous simulation modeling. The design will assure that flows delivered to stream reaches will approximate, but in no case exceed, durations ranging from 50% of the 2-year to the 50-year peak flow. Specific streams or locations may require an alternative mitigation as directed by Environmental Services.**

**Flow splitting devices or drainage BMPs that deliver flow to wetlands shall be designed using continuous hydrologic modeling to preserve pre-project wetland hydrologic conditions unless specifically waived or exempted by Environmental Services.**

**An adopted and implemented basin plan (Minimum Requirement #9), or a Total Maximum Daily Load (TMDL, also known as a Water Clean-up Plan) may be used to develop requirements for wetlands that are tailored to a specific basin. Requirements for specific basins within Tacoma are listed in Chapter 2 of this volume.**

#### **3.4.8.5 Objective**

Wetlands are extremely important natural resources which provide multiple stormwater benefits, including groundwater recharge, flood control, and stream channel erosion protection. They are easily impacted by development unless careful planning and management are conducted.

Wetlands can be severely degraded by stormwater discharges from urban development due to pollutants in the runoff and also due to disruption of natural hydrologic functioning of the wetland system. Changes in water levels and the frequency and duration of inundations are of particular concern. This requirement ensures wetlands are protected.

#### **3.4.8.6 Supplemental Guidelines**

Appendix E contains guidance for wetlands when interacting with stormwater. **Environmental Services may require applicants to utilize portions or all of the guidance in analyzing and mitigating wetland impacts.**

#### **3.4.9 Minimum Requirement #9: Basin/Watershed Planning**

**Projects may be subject to equivalent or more stringent Minimum Requirements for erosion control, source control, treatment, and operation and maintenance, and alternative requirements for flow control and wetlands hydrologic control as identified in changes to existing and new Basin/Watershed Plans. City and Regional Basin/Watershed plans shall evaluate and include, as necessary, retrofitting urban stormwater BMPs into existing development and/or redevelopment in order to achieve watershed-wide pollutant reduction and flow control goals that are consistent with requirements of the federal Clean Water Act. Standards developed from basin plans shall not modify any of the above Minimum Requirements until the basin plan is formally adopted and implemented by the local governments within the basin, and approved or concurred with by Ecology. Where geographic specific requirements have been identified, they appear in Chapter 2. Future**

additional requirements developed as a result of Basin Planning will be added to Chapter 2.

#### **3.4.9.1 Objective**

To promote watershed-based planning as a means to develop and implement comprehensive, water quality protection measures. Primary objectives of basin planning are to reduce pollutant loads and hydrologic impacts to surface and groundwaters in order to protect beneficial uses.

#### **3.4.10 Minimum Requirement #10: Operation and Maintenance**

An Operation and Maintenance (O&M) Manual that is consistent with the provisions in Chapter 4 of this Volume shall be provided for all proposed stormwater BMPs at the time construction plans are submitted for review. The party (or parties) responsible for maintenance and operation shall be identified.

For private facilities, a copy of the O&M Manual shall be retained onsite or within reasonable access to the site, and shall be transferred with the property to the new owner. For private systems serving multiple lots within residential developments or other developments, a separate covenant or other guarantee of proper maintenance that can be recorded on title shall be provided and recorded. For public facilities, a copy of the manual shall be retained by the appropriate department.

For all facilities (public and private), a log of maintenance activities outlining all inspections and routine or corrective actions completed shall be kept and be available for inspection by the City.

##### **3.4.10.1 Objective**

To ensure that stormwater control facilities are adequately maintained and operated properly.

##### **3.4.10.2 Supplemental Guidelines**

Inadequate maintenance is a common cause of failure for stormwater control facilities. The description of each BMP in Volumes 2, 3, 5 and 6 includes a section on maintenance. Appendix C of Volume 1 includes a schedule of maintenance standards for drainage facilities.

#### **3.4.11 Minimum Requirement #11: Offsite Analysis and Mitigation**

As required by the Minimum Requirements of this Chapter and the Watershed Specific Requirements of Chapter 2, development projects that discharge stormwater offsite shall submit as part of their Stormwater Site Plan and Report an offsite analysis that assesses the potential offsite impacts of stormwater discharge.

##### **3.4.11.1 Qualitative Analysis:**

All project applicants shall perform and submit a *qualitative* analysis of each upstream system entering a site (run-on) and each downstream system leaving a site (run-off). The qualitative analysis shall extend downstream for the entire flow path, from the project site to the receiving water, or up to one-quarter mile, whichever is less. The upstream analysis shall identify and describe points where water enters the site and the tributary area. A basin map delineating the onsite and offsite basins tributary to the site shall be provided. The basin map shall be to a defined scale. The City's GovMe website may be used as a base for the basin map, and to obtain contours and existing stormwater facility information. However, field verification may be required.

Upon review of this analysis, the City may require a qualitative analysis further downstream, mitigation measures adequate to address the problems, or a quantitative analysis, depending upon the presence of existing or predicted flooding, erosion, or water quality problems, and on the proposed design of the onsite drainage facilities. Details on how to perform this analysis are located in Volume 1, Chapter 4 and Volume 1, Appendix B.

### **3.4.11.2 Quantitative Analysis**

A *quantitative* analysis will be required for all projects that meet the flow control thresholds as described in Section 3.4.7.2. except those required to provide detention per the Standard Requirement as described in Section 3.4.7.3. The City may also require a quantitative analysis for any project deemed to need additional downstream information. Details on how to perform this analysis are outlined in Volume 3 Section 9.2.

### **3.4.11.3 Objective**

To identify and evaluate offsite water quantity, erosion, slope stability, and drainage impacts that may be caused or aggravated by a proposed project, and to determine measures for preventing impacts and for not aggravating existing impacts. Aggravating shall mean increasing the frequency of occurrence and/or severity of a problem. Some of the most common and potentially destructive impacts of land development are erosion of downgradient properties, localized flooding, and slope failures. These are caused by increased surface water volumes and changed runoff patterns. In addition the applicant will evaluate types and locations of surface run-on to the project site. These must be safely conveyed across the project site.

### **3.4.12 Minimum Requirement #12: Financial Liability**

Performance bonding or other appropriate financial guarantees may be required for certain projects to ensure construction of drainage facilities in compliance with these standards. In addition, a project applicant may be required to post a financial guarantee of the satisfactory performance and maintenance of any drainage facilities.

Where required, the proponent shall submit a bond or other financial surety acceptable to the City to guarantee that the proponent will correct any defect or subsequent problem in a dedicated improvement, including the satisfactory functioning of the project's drainage system caused by improper design, faulty construction, poor housing construction practices, or other reasons as determined by the City. The guarantee shall not exceed 10% of the construction cost of the project as determined by the City through review of the Engineer's submitted cost estimate. The guarantee shall remain in effect for a period of 24 months from the time that the City accepts the storm drainage system for maintenance. The proponent shall remain financially responsible for any and all costs exceeding the amount of the original financial guarantee for the guarantee time period.

The guarantee shall be submitted to the City before the improvements are dedicated to the City or, if applicable, before the posted construction bond is released back to the proponent at the proponent's option.

#### **3.4.12.1 Objective**

To ensure that development projects have adequate financial resources to fully implement stormwater management plan requirements and that liability is not unduly incurred by the City.

## 3.5 Exceptions

### 3.5.1 Exceptions to the Minimum Requirements

**NOTE:** Throughout this Section, **guidance to meet the requirements is written in BOLD**. Supplemental guidelines that serve as recommendations and other information are not written in bold.

Exceptions to the Minimum Requirements may be requested, in writing, in accordance with TMC 12.08.095 to allow a waiver of a requirement, a reduction or modification of a requirement, or to permit an alternative requirement. Public notice of application for an exception, draft decision and written findings will be published in accordance with TMC 12.08.095, with an opportunity for public comment. Exceptions must meet the following criteria:

- **Application of the Minimum Requirements would impose a severe and unexpected economic hardship; and**
- **The exception will not increase risk to the public health and welfare, nor be injurious to other properties in the vicinity and/or downstream, and to the quality of waters of the state; and**
- **The exception is the least possible exception that could be granted to comply with the intent of the Minimum Requirements.**

In accordance with TMC 12.08.095, the Public Works Director may grant an exception following a documented finding that:

- **The exception is likely to be equally protective of public health, safety and welfare, the environment, and public and private property, as the requirement from which an exception is sought.**

**OR**

- **Substantial reasons exist under TMC 12.08.095 C., for approving the requested exception and the exception will not cause significant harm. The substantial reasons may include, but are not limited to:**
  - **The requirement to be imposed is not technically feasible; or**
  - **An emergency situation necessitates approval of the exception; or**
  - **No reasonable use of the property is possible unless the exception is approved; or**
  - **The requirement would cause significant harm or a significant threat of harm to public health, safety and welfare, the environment, or to public and private property, or would cause extreme financial hardship which substantially outweighs its benefits.**

The decision to grant an exception is within the sole discretion of the City, and the Director shall only approve an exception to the extent it is necessary. The Director may impose new or additional requirements to offset or mitigate harm that may be caused by approving the exception. The Director may require the applicant to submit a licensed engineer's report or analysis along with a request, in writing, for an exception.

The approval of an exception shall not be construed to be an approval of any violation of any of the other provisions of the City's Municipal Code, or of any other valid law of any governmental entity having jurisdiction.

**Applications for an exception from the Minimum Requirements of TMC 12.08.090 must be in writing and include the following information:**

- **The current (pre-project) use of the site, and**
- **How the application of the Minimum Requirement(s) restricts the proposed use of the site compared to the restrictions that existed prior to the adoption of the Minimum Requirements; and**
- **The possible remaining uses of the site if the exception were not granted; and**
- **The uses of the site that would have been allowed prior to the adoption of the Minimum Requirements; and**
- **A comparison of the estimated amount and percentage of value loss as a result of the Minimum Requirements versus the estimated amount and percentage of value loss as a result of requirements that existed prior to adoption of the Minimum Requirements; and**
- **The feasibility for the owner to alter the project to apply the Minimum Requirements.**

### **3.5.2 Other Exceptions**

Exceptions to the requirements in this manual, not including exceptions to the Minimum Requirements, may be requested in writing to Environmental Services. The exception request must describe why the requirement in the manual cannot be met and why it will not likely affect downstream properties, the quality of waters of the state, and the health and welfare of the public. Environmental Services will make the final determination on whether to approve or deny the exception and inform the applicant.



## Chapter 4 Preparation of Stormwater Site Plans

The Stormwater Site Plan (SSP) is a comprehensive report containing all of the technical information and analysis necessary for the City to evaluate a proposed new development or redevelopment project for compliance with stormwater requirements. The contents of the Stormwater Site Plan will vary with the type and size of the project, and individual site characteristics. The scope of the Stormwater Site Plan also varies depending on the applicability of Minimum Requirements (see Section 3.4). Typical Stormwater Site Plans will contain both a report and detailed plans.

This chapter describes the contents of a Stormwater Site Plan and provides a general procedure for how to prepare the plan. The goal of this chapter is to provide a framework for uniformity in plan preparation. Such uniformity will promote predictability and help expedite review. Properly drafted engineering plans and supporting documents will also facilitate the operation and maintenance of the proposed system after construction is complete.

State law requires that engineering work be performed by or under the direction of a professional engineer licensed to practice in Washington State. Plans and documents that include an engineered design shall be prepared by or under the direction of a licensed engineer. Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plans (SWPPPs) that involve engineering calculations must also be prepared by or under the direction of a licensed engineer. All engineered documents shall be signed, stamped and dated prior to review by the City.

### 4.1 Stormwater Site Plan Checklist

To aid the design engineer, this chapter is formatted as a checklist containing submittal requirements. This checklist shall be completed by the design engineer and included within the SSP. All items included in the checklist must be addressed as part of any stormwater site plan. The City recommends the design engineer follow the order and structure of the checklist to facilitate review, which in turn will expedite permit issuance.

#### ***Title Page***

- Provide applicant, engineer and property owner information including name, address, telephone number and email address for all parties
- Provide date of document preparation.

#### ***Table of Contents***

- Include a Table of Contents.

#### ***List of Figures***

- Include a List of Figures.

#### ***Numbering***

- Number all pages, figures, maps and appendices.

## Chapter 1 – Project Overview

The project overview must provide a general description of the project including the existing condition of the site, the proposed developed condition of the site, the site area, and the extent of the improvements.

- Identify type of permit requested and all associated permit numbers
- Identify other permits required (e.g. hydraulic permits, Army Corps 404 permits, wetlands, etc.)
- Identify the project location (including address, legal description and parcel number).
- Brief description of project to include the following:
  - Current and proposed condition/land-use
  - Size of parcel
  - Watershed
  - Critical areas on or adjacent to the project site

Reference appropriate Sections/Chapters/Appendices of the document for detailed descriptions.

## Chapter 2 – Existing Condition Summary

The Existing Condition Summary is intended to provide a complete understanding of the project site in its existing condition and must be based on thorough site research and investigation.

- Describe, discuss and identify the following for the project site in its existing condition:
  - Topography
  - Land use and ground cover
  - Natural and man-made drainage patterns
  - Points of entry and exit for existing drainage to and from the site
  - Ultimate discharge location (i.e., Commencement Bay, Puyallup River, wetland, closed depression, etc.)
  - Any known historical drainage problems such as flooding, erosion, etc.
  - Existing utilities (storm, water, sewer)
  - Areas with high potential for erosion and sediment deposition
  - Locations of sensitive and critical areas (i.e. vegetative buffers, wetlands, steep slopes, floodplains, geologic hazard areas, streams, creeks, ponds, ravines, springs, etc.)
  - Existing fuel tanks
  - Groundwater wells onsite and/or within 100 feet of the site
  - Septic systems onsite and/or within 100 feet of the site
- Identify difficult site conditions.
- State whether the project is located in an aquifer recharge area or wellhead protection area as defined by the Tacoma-Pierce County Health Department, the Environmental Protection Agency or by the City.
- Identify any Superfund areas in the vicinity, and state whether they are tributary to, or receive drainage from, the project site.
- Identify any specific requirements included in a basin plan for the area.
- Include references to relevant reports such as basin plans, flood studies, groundwater studies, wetland designations, sensitive area designations, environmental impact statements, environmental checklists, lake restoration plans, water quality reports, etc. Where such reports impose additional conditions on the Proponent, state these conditions and describe any proposed mitigation measures.

- Include a Grading Plan.
- Include a soil report that identifies the following (See Volume 3 for more information on soils reports):
  - Soil types
  - Hydrologic soil group classification
  - Groundwater elevation
  - Presence of perched aquifers, aquitards and confined aquifers
  - Location of test pits
  - Infiltration rates determined per the requirements of Volume 3 (where applicable)
  - Discussion of critical areas or geologic hazards, where present
- Soil reports should be contained in Appendix A of the Stormwater Site Plan or as a separate document.
- Describe the location of the 100-year flood hazard zone.
- Other information as necessary to fully describe the existing site and its surroundings.

### **Chapter 3 – Offsite Analysis**

The City requires a qualitative discussion of the offsite upstream and downstream system for all projects. A quantitative analysis will be required for all projects that meet the flow control thresholds as described in Section 3.4.7.2 except those required to provide detention per the Standard Requirement as described in Section 3.4.7.3. Detailed calculations will be contained in Appendix B of the Stormwater Site Plan. Volume 1, Chapter 4 of the SWMM describes the Offsite Analysis. In addition, a list of elements to be included is provided as follows.

#### ***Qualitative Analysis***

The City requires a qualitative discussion of the offsite upstream and downstream system for all projects. The qualitative analysis shall extend downstream for the entire flow path, from the project site to the receiving water, or up to ¼ mile, whichever is less. Upon review of this analysis, the City may require a qualitative analysis further downstream, mitigation measures deemed adequate to address any identified problems, or a quantitative analysis, depending upon the proposed design of the onsite drainage facilities and the presence of existing or predicted flooding, erosion, or water quality problems.

- Review all available plans, studies and maps pertaining to the offsite study area.
- Provide a basin map which:
  - Defines onsite and offsite basin tributary to the site
  - Is on a defined scale (the City's GovMe site may be used as a basis for the map, as well as to obtain contours and existing stormwater facility information)
- Investigate the upstream system, including the points where water enters the site and the tributary area.
- Investigate the drainage system ¼ mile downstream from the project by site visit, including the following items:
  - Problems reported or observed during the resource review
  - Existing/potential constrictions or capacity deficiencies in the drainage system
  - Existing/potential flooding problems
  - Existing/potential overtopping, scouring, bank sloughing or sedimentation
  - Upland erosion impacts, including landslide hazards
  - Significant destruction of aquatic habitat (e.g. siltation, stream incision)

- Existing public and private easements through the project site and their corresponding widths
- Qualitative data on features such as land use, impervious surface, topography, soils, presence of streams and wetlands.
- Information on pipe sizes, channel characteristics and drainage structures
- Verification of tributary drainage areas
- Date and weather at the time of the inspection
- Impacts to surface water, groundwater, or sediment quality
- Ultimate discharge location even if beyond ¼ mile (i.e. Commencement Bay, Puyallup River, wetland, closed depression, etc)
- Describe the drainage system and its existing and predicted problems through observation. Describe all existing or potential problems as listed above (e.g. pooling water or erosion). The following information shall be provided for each existing or potential problem:
  - Magnitude of or damage caused by the problem
  - Names and concerns of the parties involved
  - Current mitigation of the problem
  - Possible cause of the problem
  - Whether the project is likely to aggravate the problem or create a new one

### ***Quantitative Analysis***

A quantitative analysis will be required for all projects that meet the flow control thresholds as described in Volume 1, Section 3.4.7.2 except those required to provide detention per the Standard Requirement as described in Volume 1, Section 3.4.7.3. The City may also require a quantitative analysis for any project deemed to need additional downstream information. Details on how to perform this analysis are located in Volume 3, Section Section 9.2.2. The offsite analysis shall extend downstream of the site for a minimum of ¼ mile from the point of connection to the existing public drainage system, or until a trunk main is reached.

- Include all model assumptions, outputs, and equations used.
- Clearly describe tailwater assumptions.
- Summarize results in text.
- Include copies of all calculations in Appendix B of the SSP.
- Discuss potential fixes for capacity problems.
- Provide hydraulic gradeline.
- ¼ mile field survey, if required by Environmental Services.
- Include all standardized graphs and tables, and indicate how they were used.
- Provide details on references and sources of information used.

### **Chapter 4 – Permanent Stormwater Control Plan**

Chapter 4 will contain the information used to select, size and locate permanent stormwater control BMPs for the project site. Previous stormwater reports may be referenced. Environmental Services may request submission of all reference reports in their entirety. The Stormwater Control Plan shall contain the following sections, as applicable:

**Section 1 - Threshold Discharge Areas and Applicable Requirements for Treatment, Flow Control, and Wetlands or other Critical Areas Protection**

Complete the following steps in order to determine the applicable Minimum Requirements.

- Outline the threshold discharge area(s) of the project site. Include a map labeling the threshold discharge area(s). Please see the Glossary of the SWMM for appropriate definitions.
- Complete all applicable portions of the following table for each threshold discharge area. Compare the values in the table with Section 3.3 and use the flow charts (Figure 1 - 5 to Figure 1 - 7) to determine which requirements apply to your project site. Note any watershed specific requirements, per Volume 1, Section 2.6.

**Table 1 - 1: Project Threshold Worksheet**

Description	Onsite	Offsite	Total
Total Project Area (ft <sup>2</sup> )			
Existing Impervious (ft <sup>2</sup> )			
Existing Pervious (ft <sup>2</sup> )			
Amount of new impervious (ft <sup>2</sup> )			
Amount of replaced impervious (ft <sup>2</sup> )			
Amount of new plus replaced impervious (ft <sup>2</sup> )			
Amount of new PGIS (ft <sup>2</sup> )			
Amount of replaced PGIS (ft <sup>2</sup> )			
Amount of new + replaced PGIS (ft <sup>2</sup> )			
Impervious surfaces to Pervious Surface (ft <sup>2</sup> )			
Amount of Land Disturbed (ft <sup>2</sup> )			
Native Vegetation to Lawn/Landscaped (acres)			
Native Vegetation to Pasture (acres)			
Value of proposed improvements (\$)			
Assessed Value of Existing Site Improvements(\$)			
Amount to be Graded/Filled (cubic feet)			

**Section 2 - Pre-Developed or Existing Site Hydrology**

Describe in as much detail as possible the predeveloped or existing site hydrology as applicable. For projects requiring flow control per the Standard Requirement, the predeveloped condition to be matched shall be forested land cover. For projects requiring flow control per the Infrastructure Protection Requirement, the predeveloped condition to be matched shall be the existing site condition.

- Provide a list of assumptions and site parameters for the predeveloped or existing condition.
- Identify all sub-basins within, or flowing through, the site. Use consistent labeling for all sub-basins throughout figures, calculations and text.

- For each sub-basin, identify current land use, acreage, hydrologic soil group and land use to be modeled under predeveloped or existing conditions. The format used in Volume 1, Appendix B is recommended.
- Provide justification for land uses type. (Note: Forested conditions are required for meeting the Standard Flow Control Requirement).
- Provide a basin map drawn to scale showing the following:
  - Delineation and acreage of areas contributing runoff to the site, including land use type
  - Delineation and acreage of areas contributing runoff from the site, including land use type
  - The location of basin discharge and ultimate discharge
  - All natural streams and drainage features
  - The limits of development
- Summarize output data from the predeveloped or existing condition. The format used in Volume 1, Appendix B is recommended.
- Include completed Hydraulic Analysis worksheet (see Volume 1, Appendix B) and hydrologic calculations in Appendix D of the SSP.
- For WWHM models, provide model files electronically. Do not provide printouts of WWHM model outputs.
- Provide other information as necessary to provide a detailed description of the basins and subbasins affected by the project.

### ***Section 3 - Developed Site Hydrology***

Describe in as much detail as possible the proposed developed site hydrology.

- Provide a list of assumptions and site parameters for the developed condition.
- Identify all sub-basins within, or flowing through, the site. Use consistent labeling for all sub-basins throughout figures, calculations and text. If boundaries of the basin are modified by the project, clearly show the new boundaries on the map.
- For each sub-basin, identify current land use, acreage, hydrologic soil group and land use to be modeled under developed conditions. The format used Volume 1, Appendix B is recommended.
- Provide a basin map drawn to scale showing the following:
  - Delineation and acreage of areas contributing runoff to the site, including land use type
  - The location of basin discharge and ultimate discharge
  - All natural streams and drainage features
  - The limits of development
- Final grade site plan showing finish floor elevations, where appropriate.
- Summarize output data from the developed condition. The format used in Volume 1, Appendix B is recommended.
- Include completed Hydraulic Analysis worksheet (see Volume 1, Appendix B) and hydrologic calculations in Appendix D of the SSP.
- For WWHM models and other approved continuous simulation, provide model files electronically. Do not provide printouts of WWHM model outputs.
- Provide other information as necessary to provide a detailed description of the basins and subbasins affected by the project.

### **Section 4 - Performance Goals and Standards**

Use the information obtained in Chapter 4, Section 1 of the report to complete this section.

- Include applicable flow chart (Figure 1 - 5, Figure 1 - 6, or Figure 1 - 7) with decision path clearly marked and supported. If flow control facilities are required, indicate that they are required.
- State conclusions from decision and flow charts.
- If water quality treatment is required, provide treatment type required per Volume 5.
- If flow control is required, provide a confirmation of the flow control standard being achieved (the Standard Requirement or the Infrastructure Protection Requirement).
- Provide basin specific requirements.
- Identify South Tacoma Groundwater Protection District requirements, if applicable.

### **Section 5 - Flow Control System (where required)**

Provide as much detailed information as possible to describe the proposed flow control system.

- Identify sizing used.
- Summarize model results. Include an explanation of all assumptions made, equations used, input parameters, etc.
- Describe proposed flow control system and appurtenances, including size, type and characteristics of storage facility and control structure.
- Provide a drawing of the flow control facility and its appurtenances, including:
  - Dimensions
  - Location of inflow, outflow, and overflow
  - Orifice/restrictor sizes and elevations
  - Control structure location
  - Location of the facility on the project site
  - Applicable water surface elevations
- Include Hydraulic Analysis Worksheet per Volume 1, Appendix B, calculations, and computer printouts (including stage storage tables) for the flow control system to be included in Appendix D of the SSP.
- Include all WWHM and other continuous simulation model files electronically. Do not provide printouts of WWHM model outputs.
- Provide all applicable manufacturer information.

### **Section 6 - Water Quality System (where required)**

- Identify the sizing method used.
- Summarize model results. Include an explanation of all assumptions made, equations used, etc.
- Identify treatment methods used, including size, type and characteristics of treatment facility and appurtenances.
- Provide a drawing of the treatment facility and its appurtenances, including:
  - Dimensions
  - Inlet/outlet sizes and elevations
  - Location and size of bypass
  - Location of the facility on the project site

- Appurtenances/fittings
- Calculations for the water quality design storm and facility sizing calculations must be included in Appendix D of the SSP. Provide all WWHM files electronically. Do not provide printouts of WWHM model outputs.
- Where appropriate, include manufacturer's specifications in Appendix E of the SSP.

### **Section 7 - Conveyance System Analysis and Design**

- Provide a site plan showing the conveyance system including:
  - Existing conveyance system components including all pipes, culverts, channels, swales, catch basins, manholes, etc. Include sizes, types, and slopes of all components.
  - Proposed conveyance system components including all pipes, culverts, channels, swales, catch basins, manholes, etc. Include sizes, types, and slopes of all components.
  - Invert elevations of all proposed and existing components.
  - All crossing information to ensure vertical and horizontal separation (this may require a profile view).
- Describe capacities, design flows and velocities for each reach.
- Include conveyance calculations in Appendix D of the SSP. Analysis shall be based on Volume 3, Chapter 9 of the SWMM.
- Other information as necessary to fully describe the existing and proposed conveyance system.

### **Chapter 5 – Discussion of Minimum Requirements**

Chapter 5 is intended as a checklist for the applicant and reviewer to verify that the applicable Minimum Requirements have been met within the project submittal.

- List the Minimum Requirements that apply to the project.
- Discuss how the project satisfies each Minimum Requirement.

### **Operation and Maintenance Manual**

The Operation and Maintenance Manual may be included as an appendix to the Stormwater Site Plan, however it shall be written with the intention of becoming a stand-alone document for the project owner once the project is complete. Please see Volume 1, Appendix C of the SWMM for additional information. The Operation and Maintenance Manual must include:

- A narrative description of the stormwater facilities.
- An 11 x 17 inch site plan, with the locations of the stormwater facilities (including conveyance) prominently noted. This is needed to enable the Operation and Maintenance Manual to be a stand-alone document.
- Detail drawings of the proposed facilities including overall dimensions and locations of inflow, bypass, and discharge.
- The person or organization responsible for maintenance of the onsite storm system, including the phone number and current responsible party.
- Where the Operation and Maintenance Manual is to be kept. Note that it must be made available to the City for inspection. The Operation and Maintenance Manual shall be onsite prior to Certificate of Occupancy.
- A description of each stormwater facility, including what it does and how it works. Include any manufacturer's documentation and recommendations.



- A description of all maintenance tasks and the frequency of each task for each facility. Include any manufacturer's recommendations.
- A sample maintenance activity log indicating emergency and routine actions to be taken.
- A cost estimate for maintenance of each facility

### **Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan**

- Short-Form – Please refer to Volume 2 – Appendix B of the SWMM for a complete checklist, or
- Formal/Long-Form – Please refer to Volume 2 – Chapter 2 of the SWMM for a complete checklist.

### **Appendices**

- Appendix A – Operations and Maintenance Manual – See Description Above
- Appendix B – Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan – See Description Above
- Appendix C – Submittal Requirements Checklist – A copy of the checklist shall be submitted as part of SSP.
- Appendix D – Hydraulic Analysis Worksheet – A copy can be found in Volume 1, Appendix B of SWMM.
- Appendix E – Other reports, as required

### **Required Drawings**

Project drawings shall be provided and include the following as applicable for the project.

11" by 17" drawings must be included in the Stormwater Site Plan Report.

- The first sheet or cover sheet shall include:
  - Name, address, email and telephone number of the applicant, agent or owner.
  - Name, address, email and telephone number of the person preparing the plans.
  - Name, address, email and telephone number of the Project Engineer.
  - Building Permit Number (an 11 digit number starting with 40000\_\_\_\_\_) or Work Order Permit Number (an 11 digit number starting with 60000\_\_\_\_\_).
  - Permit numbers for other City of Tacoma Permits associated with the project (Work Order, Grade and Fill, Building, Demolition).
  - North arrow
  - Vicinity Map showing project boundaries and of sufficient clarity to locate the property; streets with street names, shorelines, if any; city limit boundaries, if any.
  - Parcel numbers and legal description of the project site.
  - Property boundaries, dimensions and area (in square feet or acres).
  - Datum for the project.
  - Legend, if symbols are used that are not labeled in the plan.
- At least one sheet must contain a plan view of the entire project site. In the event the project site is sufficiently large that detailed drainage plans on any given sheet do not encompass the entire project site, then the sheet containing the plan view of the entire site must serve as an index to subsequent detailed plan sheets.
- All sheets shall contain a scale and north arrow.

- The overall plan view shall be no smaller than 1" = 100'. Recommended scales for individual sheets are 1" = 20' (Horizontal); 1" = 5' or 1" = 10' (Vertical).
- Cross sections shall be provided for roadways, including access roads, and stormwater facilities.
- Identify FEMA flood zones
- Identify any onsite or adjacent critical areas, associated buffers (e.g. wetlands, water-courses and natural drainage channels, water bodies, steep slopes, streams, shorelines etc) significant trees and natural vegetation easements, if any.
- Existing Site Information Including:
  - Existing topography for the site and extending 50' beyond project boundaries. Existing topography for adjacent rights-of-way for the full width of right-of-way.
    - Contours at a maximum 5' vertical elevation intervals.
    - Engineered designs require field verification of contours (field survey).
    - Depending on the site, a standalone topographic survey sheet may be required.
  - Existing lot boundaries, right of way boundaries, tracts, and easements. Documentation of public and private easements may be required.
  - Existing structures, including all structures within 50 feet of project boundaries, including:
    - All impervious surfaces such as roads, parking lots, driveways, patios, buildings, garages, walkways, etc.
    - Existing structures to be removed.
    - Existing storage tanks (above and below ground).
    - Existing oil water separators, grease interceptors or other sanitary pretreatment facilities.
    - Existing wells, sanitary sewer systems, septic tanks and drain fields onsite and/or within 50' of the project boundaries.
  - Existing site access points.
  - Existing utilities including:
    - Any franchised utilities located above or below ground
    - Drainage facilities, which transport surface water onto, across, or from the project site.
      - Invert or flow line elevation of existing drainage pipes, culverts, and channels
      - Rim elevations of any existing conveyance structures (catch basins, manholes, etc.)
    - Invert elevations for connections to existing public utilities.
    - Existing sanitary sewers, including private sanitary laterals, showing their connections to the main.
- Proposed site information, including:
  - Finished grade contours for the site showing catch points to existing topography at the limits of grading.
    - Contours at a maximum 5' vertical elevation intervals.
    - Engineered designs require field verification of contours (field survey).
    - Depending on the site, a standalone topographic survey sheet may be required.
  - Contours, spot elevations and flow arrows to clearly indicate how driveways, parking areas and other impervious surfaces will be graded.
  - Proposed lot boundaries, right of way boundaries, tracts, and easements. Documentation of public and private easements may be required.
  - Proposed structures including:
    - Proposed storage tanks (above and below ground).

- Location and details for oil water separators, grease interceptors or other sanitary pre-treatment facilities.
- Proposed impervious surfaces such as roads, parking lots, driveways, patios, buildings, garages, walkways, etc.
- Proposed drainage structures, including all flow control and water quality devices. Details shall be provided for all proposed drainage structures for which there is insufficient information in the plan view.
- Proposed utilities including:
  - Exact line and grade of all proposed utilities at crossings with other utilities.
  - Any franchised utilities located above or below ground
  - Drainage facilities, which transport surface water onto, across, or from the project site.
    - Invert or flow line elevation of proposed drainage pipes, culverts, and channels
    - Rim elevations of any proposed conveyance structures (catch basins, manholes, etc.)
  - Invert elevations for connections to public utilities.
  - Proposed sanitary sewers, including private sanitary laterals, showing their connections to the main.
- Finish floor elevations for all proposed buildings.
- Plan views of drainage conveyance facilities for which there is no accompanying profile view shall include the following information: pipe sizes, pipe types and materials, lengths of runs, pipe slope and exact locations of pipes or channels, structure identifier (e.g. catch basin/manhole number), type of structure (e.g. Type 2 CB), exact location of structures (e.g. station and offset, or dimensioning), invert elevations in/out of structures, and top elevations of structures. Notes and/or labels shall be included referencing details, cross-sections, profiles, etc.
- In existing and proposed rights-of-way, drainage conveyance facilities shall be shown in profile view. Profile views shall include:
  - Existing and finish grades.
  - Proposed drainage pipes, channels and structures.
  - Existing underground utilities where such utilities cross proposed drainage facilities.
  - Profile views shall include the following information: pipe sizes, pipe types and materials, lengths of runs, gradients and exact locations of pipes or channels, structure identifier (e.g. catch basin/manhole number), type of structure (e.g. Type 2 CB), exact location of structures (e.g. station and offset, or dimensioning), invert elevations in/out of structures, and top elevations of structures. Plan and profile views shown on the same sheet shall be aligned, duplicate information should be avoided for plan and profile views on the same sheet.
- Location of and details associated with all stormwater mitigation facilities. If the predesigned systems from the SWMM are used, the details from the SWMM shall be included.
- Stormwater Standard Notes (only include those applicable to the project).

### ***Temporary Erosion and Sedimentation Drawings***

The Temporary Erosion and Sedimentation Drawings shall include the following information, at a minimum:

- Vicinity map with roads and waters of the state within one mile of the site.
- Address, Parcel Number, and Street names labels

- Erosion and Sediment Control Notes, at a minimum, those contained in SWMM Volume 2, Appendix A, as applicable
- Name, address and 24-hour contact telephone number(s) of the designated emergency contact person. The emergency contact information may be supplied at the pre-construction meeting.
- Name, address, and phone number of the Certified Erosion and Sediment Control Lead (CESCL), as applicable
- Name, address, telephone number, and email address of the project owner and the Project Engineer.
- Detailed listing of the construction sequence.
- Detailed listing of the phasing of any erosion and sedimentation control work
- Legal description of subject property.
- North Arrow
- Boundaries of existing vegetation, e.g. tree lines, pasture areas, etc.
- Areas of potential erosion problems.
- Onsite or adjacent surface waters, critical areas and associated buffers.
- FEMA base flood boundaries and Shoreline Management boundaries, (if applicable).
- Existing and proposed contours.
- Drainage basins and direction of flow for individual drainage areas.
- Label final grade contours and identify developed condition drainage basins.
- Delineation of areas that are to be cleared and graded.
- Areas where vegetation will be undisturbed.
- All cut and fill slopes indicating top and bottom of slope catch lines.
- Soil types, together with the location of any soil test pits or infiltration test sites.
- Location of stockpiles, haul roads and disposal sites.
- Locations for swales, interceptor trenches, or ditches.
- All temporary and permanent drainage pipes, ditches, or cutoff trenches required for erosion and sediment control.
- Provide minimum slope and cover for all temporary pipes or call out pipe inverts.
- Show grades, dimensions, and direction of flow in all ditches, swales, culverts and pipes.
- Details for bypassing offsite runoff around disturbed areas.
- Locations and outlets of any dewatering systems
- Locations of all existing and proposed channels, swales or drainage pipes which either convey offsite stormwater through or route stormwater around the construction area.
- Locations of all ESC facilities with dimensions and details as appropriate.
- When sedimentation ponds and traps are proposed, at least one cross section detail shall be shown.
- Details and notes for mulching and revegetation, including detailed planting procedures, seed/plant specifications, and plant maintenance specifications.
- Any best management practices used that are not referenced in the SWMM shall be explained and illustrated with detailed drawings.
- Locations of BMPs to be used for the control of pollutants other than sediment, e.g. concrete wash water.
- Water quality sampling locations to be used for monitoring water quality on the construction site, if applicable.
- Description of inspection reporting responsibility, documentation, and filing.

## 4.2 Plans Required After Approval

This section includes the specifications and contents required of those plans submitted after the City has approved the permit.

### 4.2.1 Revisions

If the designer wishes to make changes or revisions to the originally approved permit submittal documents, the proposed revisions shall be submitted to the City prior to construction. The submittals shall include the following:

1. Substitute pages of the originally approved Stormwater Site Plan that include the proposed changes.
2. Revised drawings showing all proposed changes.
3. Any other supporting information that explains and supports the reason for the change.

**NOTE:** *Submittals shall comply with Building and Land Use and/or Construction Division requirements, as applicable.*

### 4.2.2 Record Drawing Submittal

If the project included construction of conveyance systems, treatment facilities, flow control facilities, or structural source control BMPs (i.e., this does not extend to construction of Onsite Stormwater Management BMPs unless required by Environmental Services), the applicant shall submit record drawings (“as-builts”) to the City when the project is completed. These shall be engineering drawings that accurately represent the project as constructed. Record Drawings shall show the invert and rim elevations to the nearest 0.01 foot for all storm structures. Record drawings shall be received and accepted after facility installation and prior to final inspection and/or closeout. See the work order general notes for record drawing requirements for work order projects. Contact Environmental Services for submittal format.

### 4.2.3 Engineer’s Certification

The Engineer of Record shall provide an Engineer’s Certification to the City of Tacoma after facility installation and prior to permit final inspection and/or closeout. The Engineer’s Certification shall include, as applicable:

1. The permit number
2. Statements to attest:
  - a. That all stormwater facilities have been installed according to the approved permit documents.
  - b. Record drawings have been provided to the City electronically. See Section 4.2.2 for record drawing requirements.
  - c. The soils at the bottom of the infiltration facility are as indicated in the plans. The designer or soils professional that classified the soils will need to be onsite during construction to verify the soil types.
  - d. The Operations and Maintenance Manual is located onsite.

### 4.3 Land Use Submittal Requirements

At the discretion of Environmental Services, the following items shall be submitted as part of the land use process:

- Preliminary Stormwater Site Plan.
  - For land use actions that are proposing only the construction of one single-family residence or duplex with minimal additional onsite impervious surfaces and offsite improvements, the applicant shall follow the Procedure for Evaluating Feasibility of Downspout Infiltration as provided in Volume 3, Section 2.4. If the proposed infiltration facility can fit on the lot, the applicant can either conduct a soil evaluation using criteria in Volume 3, Section 2.4 and show a viable infiltration design or show alternative mitigation through dispersion per Volume 3, Section 2.7, or show the feasibility of Collect and Convey, Volume 3, Section 2.8. Environmental Services shall have the final decision to determine if this process is applicable to a particular project.
- Preliminary Utility Plan, which shall include:
  - Title block, including name of the proposed project/development
  - North arrow indicator, drawing scale, Section-Township-Range
  - Legal description of project site, including parcel number
  - The plan view of detailed drainage plans – must be drawn at an engineering scale no smaller than 1" = 100'
  - Professional Engineer's seal, signed and dated, for an engineered system.
  - Vicinity map showing project boundaries, streets with street names, shorelines (if any), city limit boundaries (if any), and distance to nearest intersection
  - Permit number(s)
  - Name, address and telephone number of project developer and property owner
  - Name, address and telephone number of Professional Engineer
  - Symbol legend
  - Property boundaries, dimensions, and area (in square feet or acres)
  - Contour lines, at maximum 5' intervals, with source of datum identified (GovMe contours are acceptable)
  - Adjoining street names and right-of-way widths
  - Existing conditions onsite (include all existing impervious and pervious surfaces and their applicable square footage).
  - Proposed conditions onsite (include all proposed impervious and pervious surfaces and their applicable square footage).
  - Show on plans and quantify in a table the proposed impervious surfaces and disturbed areas, as shown in the example in Table 1 - 2, below.
  - Show how all stormwater runoff from the proposed accessway will be managed onsite or conveyed to the City system. Grading of accessways can be shown with spot elevations, a profile, and/or cross-section of the proposed accessway. See Volume 1, Section 3.4.5.

- Indicate how public street runoff will be prevented from entering the private drainage system.
- Show existing drainage facilities such as pipes, catch basins, channels, ponds, etc.
- Location of onsite and adjacent offsite waste treatment systems, such as septic tanks and distribution systems
- Existing and proposed utilities, with easements identified
- Existing private storm sewer lines with easements identified.
- Offsite street and storm improvements
- Established buffers, significant trees, and natural vegetation easements, if any
- Natural drainage channels, wetlands, water bodies, etc.
- Areas where natural vegetation is to be left undisturbed
- The location of onsite and adjacent offsite wells and underground storage tanks
- An approximate plan for the collection and conveyance of stormwater through the project site. At a minimum, provide arrows showing the direction of proposed stormwater flow and indicate the method of conveyance (pipe, ditch, biofiltration swale, overland flow, etc.)
- Proposed locations and sizes of stormwater quantity and quality control facilities, if required.
- Proposed sewer lines and side sewers
- Proposed easement locations and widths

Additional submittal requirements may be imposed by Environmental Services.

**Table 1 - 2: Project Threshold Worksheet**

Description	Onsite	Offsite	Total
Total Project Area (ft <sup>2</sup> )			
Existing Impervious (ft <sup>2</sup> )			
Existing Pervious (ft <sup>2</sup> )			
Amount of new impervious (ft <sup>2</sup> )			
Amount of replaced impervious (ft <sup>2</sup> )			
Amount of new plus replaced impervious (ft <sup>2</sup> )			
Amount of new PGIS (ft <sup>2</sup> )			
Amount of replaced PGIS (ft <sup>2</sup> )			
Amount of new + replaced PGIS (ft <sup>2</sup> )			
Impervious surfaces to Pervious Surface (ft <sup>2</sup> )			
Amount of Land Disturbed (ft <sup>2</sup> )			
Native Vegetation to Lawn/Landscaped (acres)			
Native Vegetation to Pasture (acres)			
Value of proposed improvements (\$)			
Assessed Value of Existing Site Improvements(\$)			
Amount to be Graded/Filled (cubic feet)			



# Appendix A Stormwater Site Plan Short Form

This Stormwater Site Plan Short Form may be used if the proposed drainage system is a non-engineered design and project quantities are within or below the following thresholds:

- The project adds or replaces between 2,000 and 5,000 square feet of impervious surface
- The project clears or disturbs between 7,000 and 1 acre of land.

**If the project quantities exceed any of the above thresholds, prepare a formal Stormwater Site Plan per Volume 1, Chapter 4 of the City of Tacoma Stormwater Management Manual.**

Environmental Services may also require additional information if warranted by project parameters.

## Chapter 1 – Project Overview

Work Order/Building Permit Number(s): \_\_\_\_\_

Associated Permit Number(s): \_\_\_\_\_

Applicant Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Applicant Address: \_\_\_\_\_

Applicant Phone Number: \_\_\_\_\_

Applicant E-mail: \_\_\_\_\_

Property Owner: \_\_\_\_\_

Property Owner Address: \_\_\_\_\_

Property Owner Phone Number: \_\_\_\_\_

Property Owner E-mail: \_\_\_\_\_

Project Address: \_\_\_\_\_

Parcel Number: \_\_\_\_\_

Size of Parcel (acres or square feet): \_\_\_\_\_

Identify other permits required or associated with the subject parcel (e.g. hydraulic permits, Army Corps 404 permits, wetlands, work order, short plat, boundary line adjustment, etc.). Provide Permit numbers if available: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

Brief description of the project to include the following:

Current site condition and/or use: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

Proposed site condition and/or use: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

Have any other site improvements (include all new impervious surfaces and areas cleared) occurred on the site after January 1, 2003? List square footages and description: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

Project impacts. Please fill in the following table (include onsite and offsite):

Threshold Discharge Area ID:	Onsite	Offsite
Total new impervious surfaces (ft <sup>2</sup> )		
Total replaced impervious surfaces (ft <sup>2</sup> )		
Total new pollution generating pervious surfaces (PGPS) (ft <sup>2</sup> )		
Total new pollution generating impervious surfaces (PGIS) (ft <sup>2</sup> )		
Total replaced pollution generating pervious surfaces (PGPS) (ft <sup>2</sup> )		
Total replaced pollution generating impervious surfaces (PGIS) (ft <sup>2</sup> )		
Native vegetation converted to lawn/landscape (ft <sup>2</sup> )		
Total effective impervious surface (ft <sup>2</sup> )		
Total disturbed area (ft <sup>2</sup> )		

## Chapter 2 – Existing Condition Summary

### **Existing Site Conditions (Check all that apply)**

1. Describe the existing site conditions. (Check all that apply)
  - Forest     Pasture/prairie grass     Pavement     Landscaping     Brush
  - Trees     Other
2. Describe how surface water (stormwater) drainage flows across/from the site. (Check all that apply)
  - Sheet Flow     Gutter     Catch Basin     Ditch/Swale     Storm sewer pipes
  - Stream/Creek     Other
3. Describe, discuss and identify the following for the project site:
  - a. Topography – is the site:  Flat     Rolling     Steep
  - b. Natural and man-made drainage patterns (which direction does stormwater flow and how): \_\_\_\_\_

---



---



---

c. Are there any known historical drainage problems such as flooding, erosion, etc.

---



---



---

d. Existing utilities (Check all that are on the site and show on site map with legend)

Storm  Water  Sewer  Other \_\_\_\_\_

e. Are sensitive and critical areas present on or near the site (i.e. vegetative buffers, wetlands, steep slopes, floodplains, geologic hazard areas, streams, creeks, ponds, ravines, springs, etc.)?

Yes (show on site map)  No

f. Are existing fuel tanks present on the site?

Yes (show on site map)  No

g. Is this site within the South Tacoma Groundwater Protection District (on GovMe or SWMM Volume 1, Chapter 2, Figure 1 - 2)?

Yes  No

h. Is the site within the aquifer recharge area (on GovMe under Building and Land Use/ Critical Areas)?

Yes  No

i. Are groundwater wells present onsite and/or within 100 feet of the site?

Yes (show on site map)  No

j. Are septic systems present onsite and/or within 100 feet of the site?

Yes (show on site map)  No

k. Are there existing public and/or private easements on the project site?

Yes (show on site map & provide recording numbers)  No

4. Provide a soils report to identify the following:

a. Date of soil investigation: \_\_\_\_\_

b. Soil type and/or infiltration rate:

**NOTE:** To use the pre-sized facilities in Volume 3, Chapter 2, soils need to be classified as outlined in Volume 3, Section 2.4).

---



---



---

- c. Groundwater elevation: \_\_\_\_\_
- d. Location of test pits (show on site map).
- e. Attach the soils report (with soil log) to this document.

**Adjacent Areas**

- 1. Check any adjacent areas that may be affected by site disturbance and describe in item 2 below (check all that apply):

- Streams\*       Lakes\*       Wetlands\*       Steep Slopes\*
- Residential Areas    Roads       Ditches, pipes, culverts
- Other \_\_\_\_\_

*\* If site is on or adjacent to a critical area, the City of Tacoma may require additional information, engineering, and other permits to be submitted with this short-form.*

---



---



---

- 2. Describe how and where surface water enters the site from upstream properties:

---



---



---

Describe how and where surface water exits the site:

---



---



---

### Chapter 3 – Offsite Analysis

1. Describe the downstream drainage path leading from the site to the receiving body of water. (Minimum distance of ¼-mile (1320 feet)) {E.g. water flows from site, into curb-line to catch basin at intersection of X and Y streets. A 12-inch pipe system conveys water another 1000 feet to a ravine/wetland.}

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

2. Investigate the drainage system ¼ mile downstream from the project by site visit, including the following items:

- a. Problems reported or observed during the site visit:

---

---

---

- b. Existing/potential constrictions or capacity deficiencies in the drainage system:

---

---

---

- c. Existing/potential flooding problems:

---

---

---

- d. Existing/potential overtopping, scouring, bank sloughing, or sedimentation:

---

---

---

- e. Qualitative data on features such as land use, impervious surface, topography, soils, presence of streams, and wetlands:

---

---

---

- f. Information on pipe sizes, channel characteristics and drainage structures:

---

---

---

- g. Date and weather at the time of the inspection (was it raining during site visit?):

---

---

---

### **Chapter 4 – Permanent Stormwater Control Plan**

**(see Volume 1, Section 3.4.5)**

- 1. How will the stormwater from rooftops be managed? (See Volume 3, Chapter 2). Stormwater from rooftops must be managed onsite if feasible:

---

---

---

---

- 2. How will the stormwater from other impervious surfaces (driveways, sidewalks, paths, sports courts, etc) be managed? (See Volume 3, Chapter 3). Stormwater from other impervious surfaces must be managed onsite if feasible:

---

---

---

---

- 3. How will areas disturbed during construction that will be lawn/landscaping or other pervious surfaces be mitigated? The applicant shall choose one of the implementation options described and indicate that method. (See BMP L613, Volume 3, Chapter 4):

---

---

---

---

**Conveyance System (Piping of Stormwater) Analysis and Design**

- Show the proposed conveyance system on a project site plan.
- Identify pipe sizes, types and slopes (pipes must meet the requirements described in Volume 3, Chapter 10).

**Chapter 5 – Discussion of Minimum Requirements**

1. Check the minimum requirements that apply to the project. Refer to the flowchart (see SWMM Volume 1, Chapter 3) for determining minimum requirements.

- MR #1 – Preparation of Stormwater Site Plans
- MR #2 – Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention
- MR #3 – Source Control of Pollution
- MR #4 – Preservation of Natural Drainage Systems and Outfalls
- MR #5 – Onsite Stormwater Management
- MR #6 – Runoff Treatment
- MR #7 – Flow Control
- MR #8 – Wetlands Protection
- MR #9 – Basin/Watershed Planning
- MR #10 – Operation and Maintenance
- MR #11 – Offsite Analysis and Mitigation
- MR #12 – Financial Liability

**NOTE: If MR #6, 7 or 8 apply – this short form cannot be used.**

2. Describe how each of the minimum requirements will be satisfied.

---

---

---

---

---

**Chapter 6 – Operation and Maintenance Manual**

- 1. Describe the onsite storm system. Include each type of facility, including its function and operation. Include any manufacturer’s documentation.

---

---

---

---

- 2. Indicate the person or organization responsible for maintenance of the onsite storm system, including phone number and address.

---

---

---

---

- 3. Note where the Operation and Maintenance manual is to be kept. Note that it must be made available to the City for inspection.

---

---

---

---

- 4. Attach the maintenance schedules from Volume 1, Appendix C for all facilities used on the site, or create maintenance schedules.
- 5. Provide a sample maintenance activity log indicating emergency and routine actions to be taken. Attach to this document.



## Chapter 7 – Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan

The Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan Short-Form may be used – Please refer to the SWMM Volume 2, Appendix C.

### Drawings Required

- Vicinity Map –GovMe map may be used for an SSP or provide the nearest cross-streets on the site plan with a North arrow.
- Site Map showing new and existing improvements and Grading Plan (this may be on a 8 ½ “ x 11” or 11” x 17” sheet). Include as much detail as possible, including:
  - Elevation contours
  - All existing improvements (including utilities)
  - All proposed improvements

---

Prepared By:

---

Date Prepared:

## Appendix B Hydraulic Analysis Worksheet

Provide the following information for the project, as applicable.

Permit Number \_\_\_\_\_

Project Name \_\_\_\_\_

Address \_\_\_\_\_

Parcel Number \_\_\_\_\_

### WWHM or Other Approved Continuous Simulation Model Input

All continuous simulation model files must be provided electronically. Provide separate basin maps for predeveloped or existing conditions and developed conditions. Clearly delineate surface types.

#### *Predeveloped or Existing Basin Conditions (WWHM)*

Basin ID	WWHM Input (ex. C, Forest Flat)	Acreage

#### *Predeveloped or Existing Hydrology (WWHM)*

Basin ID	
Return Interval	Flow (cfs)
2-year	
10-year	
25-year	
100-year	

#### *Developed Basin Conditions (WWHM)*

Basin ID	WWHM Input (ex. C, Forest Flat)	Acreage

**Developed Hydrology (WWHM)**

Basin ID	
Return Interval	Flow (cfs)
2-year	
10-year	
25-year	
100-year	
Water Quality Design Flowrate*	

\* Provide for water quality facilities located upstream of detention.

**SBUH Input**

Provide separate basin maps for predeveloped or existing conditions and developed conditions. Clearly delineate surface types. For the time of concentration, for each sub-basin, provide a figure that shows flowpath used to calculate the time of concentration.

**Predeveloped or Existing Basin Conditions (SBUH)**

Basin ID	Land Use and Cover Condition	Acreage	CN Value	Time of Concentration	Comments

**Predeveloped or Existing Site Hydrology (SBUH)**

Basin ID		
Storm Event	Peak Flow (cfs)	Volume (ac-ft)
6-month, 24-hour		
2-year, 24-hour		
10-year, 24-hour		
25-year, 24-hour		
100-year, 24-hour		

**Developed Basin Conditions (SBUH)**

Basin ID	Land Use and Cover Condition	Acreage	CN Value	Time of Concentration	Comments

**Developed Site Hydrology (SBUH)**

Basin ID		
Storm Event	Peak Flow (cfs)	Volume (ac-ft)
6-month, 24-hour		
2-year, 24-hour		
10-year, 24-hour		
25-year, 24-hour		
100-year, 24-hour		

## **Appendix C Maintenance Standards for Drainage Facilities**

The following pages contain maintenance standards for typical stormwater facilities that may be required for stormwater mitigation. The maintenance standards should be included in the project Operations and Maintenance Manual. If the proposed stormwater system contains facilities or components that are not contained within this Appendix, the applicant is responsible for developing additional maintenance standards and checklists for the proposed facility or component. Stormwater facilities and components should be inspected as specified in the applicable maintenance standards.

The maintenance standards can be used as inspection forms for the system and associated components. Record the date each time an inspection is completed and note any problems and actions taken. Keep completed forms with the Operations and Maintenance Manual. City staff may request to review the maintenance forms as a part of their inspection process. Some components or facilities do not need to be looked at every time an inspection is conducted. Use the suggested frequency at the left of each item as a guideline for activities to be completed with each inspection.

The facility-specific maintenance standards contained in this section are intended to be conditions for determining if maintenance actions are required as identified through inspection. They are not intended to be measures of the facility's required condition at all times between inspections. In other words, exceeding these conditions at any time between inspections and/or maintenance does not automatically constitute a violation of these standards. However, based upon inspection observations, the inspection and maintenance schedules shall be adjusted to minimize the length of time that a facility is in a condition that requires a maintenance action.

**NOTE:** Maintenance checklist #29 contains maintenance concerns that may be applicable to any stormwater facility. This checklist must be included in all Operation and Maintenance manuals as applicable.

**#1 - Maintenance Checklist for Detention Ponds**

Frequency	Drainage System Feature	Date	Problem	Conditions to Check For	Maintenance Activities and Conditions that Should Exist
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1" in 24 hours)	General		Trash and Debris	Any trash and debris which exceed 5 cubic feet per 1,000 square feet (this is about equal to the amount of trash it would take to fill up one 32 gallon garbage can). In general, there should be no visual evidence of dumping. If less than threshold all trash and debris will be removed as part of next scheduled maintenance.	Trash and debris cleared from site.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	General		Poisonous Vegetation and noxious weeds	Any poisonous or nuisance vegetation which may constitute a hazard to maintenance personnel or the public. Any evidence of noxious weeds as defined by State or Local Regulations (Apply requirements of adopted integrated pest management policies for the use of herbicides.)	No danger of poisonous vegetation where maintenance personnel or the public might normally be. (Coordinate with Tacoma-Pierce County Health Department.) Complete eradication of noxious weeds may not be possible. Compliance with state or local eradication policies required.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1" in 24 hours)	General		Contaminants and Pollution	Any evidence of oil, gasoline, contaminants or other pollutants.	No contaminants or pollutants present. (Coordinate removal/cleanup with Environmental Service at 253.591.5588 and/or DOE Spill Response 800.424.8802.)
Monthly from Oct. – Apr.	General		Rodent Holes	If the facility is constructed with a dam or berm, look for rodent holes or any evidence of water piping through the dam or berm.	Rodents removed and dam or berm repaired. (Coordinate with Tacoma-Pierce County Health Department; coordinate with Ecology Dam Safety Office if pond exceeds 10 acre-feet.)

Frequency	Drainage System Feature	Date	Problem	Conditions to Check For	Maintenance Activities and Conditions that Should Exist
Monthly from Oct. – Apr.	General		Beaver Dams	Beaver dam results in an adverse change in the functioning of the facility.	Facility is returned to design function. (Contact WDFW Region 6 to identify the appropriate Nuisance Wildlife Control Operator)
Annually (preferably Sept.)	General		Insects	When insects such as wasps and hornets interfere with maintenance activities.	Insects destroyed or removed from site in compliance with adopted integrated pest management policies.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	General		Tree Growth and Dense Vegetation	Tree growth and dense vegetation which impedes inspection, maintenance access or interferes with maintenance activity (i.e., slope mowing, silt removal, vactoring, or equipment movements).	Trees and vegetation that does not hinder inspection or maintenance activities. Harvested trees should be recycled into mulch or other beneficial uses (e.g., alders for firewood).
Annually (preferably Sept.)	General		Hazard Trees	If dead, diseased, or dying trees are identified (Use a certified Arborist to determine health of tree or removal requirements).	Remove hazard trees
Monthly from Oct. – Apr.	Side Slopes of Pond		Erosion	Erosion damage over 2 inches deep where cause of damage is still present or where there is potential for continued erosion.	Slopes should be stabilized using appropriate erosion control measure(s); e.g., rock reinforcement, planting of grass, compaction.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1" in 24 hours)	Side Slopes of Pond		Erosion	Any erosion observed on a compacted berm embankment.	If erosion is occurring on compacted berms a licensed Civil Engineer should be consulted to resolve source of erosion.

Frequency	Drainage System Feature	Date	Problem	Conditions to Check For	Maintenance Activities and Conditions that Should Exist
Monthly from Oct. – Apr.	Storage Area		Sediment	Accumulated sediment that exceeds 10 percent of the designed pond depth unless otherwise specified or affects inletting or outletting condition of the facility.	Sediment cleaned out to designed pond shape and depth; pond reseeded if necessary to control erosion. (If sediment contamination is a potential problem, sediment should be tested regularly to determine leaching potential prior to disposal.)
Monthly from Oct. – Apr.	Storage Area		Liner (If Applicable)	Liner is visible and has more than three 1/4 inch holes in it.	Liner repaired or replaced. Liner is fully covered.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Pond Berms (Dikes)		Settlements	Any part of berm which has settled 4 inches lower than the design elevation. If settlement is apparent, measure berm to determine amount of settlement. Settling can be an indication of more severe problems with the berm or outlet works. A licensed Civil Engineer should be consulted to determine the source of the settlement.	Dike is restored to the design elevation.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Pond Berms Over 4 ft in height (Dikes)		Tree Growth	Tree growth on berms over 4 feet in height may lead to piping through the berm which could lead to failure of the berm.	Trees should be removed. If root system is small (base less than 4 inches) the root system may be left in place. Otherwise the roots should be removed and the berm restored. A licensed Civil Engineer should be consulted for proper berm/spillway restoration.



Frequency	Drainage System Feature	Date	Problem	Conditions to Check For	Maintenance Activities and Conditions that Should Exist
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Pond Berms (Dikes)		Piping	Discernable water flow through pond berm. Ongoing erosion with potential for erosion to continue. (Recommend a Geotechnical Engineer be called in to inspect and evaluate condition and recommend repair of condition.	Piping eliminated. Erosion potential eliminated.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Emergency Overflow/ Spillway		Tree Growth	Tree growth on emergency spillways creates blockage problems and may cause failure of the berm due to uncontrolled overtopping.	Trees should be removed. If root system is small (base less than 4 inches) the root system may be left in place. Otherwise the roots should be removed and the berm restored. A licensed Civil Engineer should be consulted for proper berm/spillway restoration.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Emergency Overflow/ Spillway		Rock Missing	Only one layer of rock exists above native soil in area 5 square feet or larger, or any exposure of native soil at the top of outflow path of spillway. (Riprap on inside slopes need not be replaced.)	Rocks and pad depth are restored to design standards.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Emergency Overflow/ Spillway		Erosion	Erosion damage over 2 inches deep where cause of damage is still present or where there is potential for continued erosion. Any erosion observed on a compacted berm embankment.	Slopes should be stabilized using appropriate erosion control measure(s); e.g., rock reinforcement, planting of grass, compaction. If erosion is occurring on compacted berms a licensed Civil Engineer should be consulted to resolve source of erosion.

If you are unsure whether a problem exists, please contact Environmental Services at 253.591.5588.

Comments:

**#2 - Maintenance Checklist for Infiltration Ponds/Basins**

Frequency	Drainage System Feature	Date	Problem	Conditions to Check For	Maintenance Activities and Conditions that Should Exist
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1" in 24 hours)	General		Trash and Debris	Any trash and debris which exceed 5 cubic feet per 1,000 square feet (this is about equal to the amount of trash it would take to fill up one 32 gallon garbage can). In general, there should be no visual evidence of dumping. If less than threshold all trash and debris will be removed as part of next scheduled maintenance.	Trash and debris cleared from site.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	General		Poisonous Vegetation and noxious weeds	Any poisonous or nuisance vegetation which may constitute a hazard to maintenance personnel or the public. Any evidence of noxious weeds as defined by State or Local Regulations. (Apply requirements of adopted integrated pest management policies for the use of herbicides.)	No danger of poisonous vegetation where maintenance personnel or the public might normally be. (Coordinate with Tacoma-Pierce County Health Department) Complete eradication of noxious weeds may not be possible. Compliance with state or local eradication policies required
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1" in 24 hours)	General		Contaminants and Pollution	Any evidence of oil, gasoline, contaminants or other pollutants	No contaminants or pollutants present. (Coordinate removal/cleanup with Environmental Services at 253.591.5588 and/or DOE Spill Response 800.424.8802.)
Monthly from Oct. – Apr.	General		Rodent Holes	If the facility is constructed with a dam or berm, look for rodent holes or any evidence of water piping through the dam or berm.	Rodents removed and dam or berm repaired. (Coordinate with Tacoma-Pierce County Health Department; coordinate with Ecology Dam Safety Office if pond exceeds 10 acre-feet.)

Frequency	Drainage System Feature	Date	Problem	Conditions to Check For	Maintenance Activities and Conditions that Should Exist
Monthly from Oct. – Apr.	General		Beaver Dams	Beaver dam results in an adverse change in the functioning of the facility.	Facility is returned to design function. (Contact WDFW to identify the appropriate Nuisance Wildlife Control Operator)
Annually (preferably Sept.)	General		Insects	When insects such as wasps and hornets interfere with maintenance activities.	Insects destroyed or removed from site. Apply insecticides in compliance with adopted integrated pest management policies.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr.	Storage Area		Water Not Infiltrating	Water ponding in infiltration pond after rainfall ceases and appropriate time allowed for infiltration (24 hours or design infiltration time). (A percolation test pit or test of facility indicates facility is only working at 90 percent of its designed capabilities. If 2 inches or more sediment is present, remove).	Sediment is removed and/or facility is cleaned so that infiltration system works according to design.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1" in 24 hours)	Rock Filters		Sediment and Debris	By visual inspection, little or no water flows through filter during heavy rain storms.	Gravel in rock filter is replaced.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr.	Ponds		Vegetation	Exceeds 18 inches.	Mow or remove vegetation as necessary. Remove all clippings.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr.	Ponds		Vegetation	Bare spots.	Revegetate and stabilize immediately. Do not apply fertilizers.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr.	Side Slopes of Pond		Erosion	Erosion damage over 2 inches deep where cause of damage is still present or where there is potential for continued erosion.	Slopes should be stabilized using appropriate erosion control measure(s); e.g., rock reinforcement, planting of grass, compaction.

Frequency	Drainage System Feature	Date	Problem	Conditions to Check For	Maintenance Activities and Conditions that Should Exist
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Pond Berms (Dikes)		Settlements	Any part of berm which has settled 4 inches lower than the design elevation. If settlement is apparent, measure berm to determine amount of settlement. Settling can be an indication of more severe problems with the berm or piping. A licensed Civil Engineer should be consulted to determine the source of the settlement.	Dike is built back to the design elevation.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Pond Berms (Dikes)		Piping	Discernable water flow through pond berm. Ongoing erosion with potential for erosion to continue. (Recommend a Geotechnical Engineer be called in to inspect and evaluate condition and recommend repair of condition.	Piping eliminated. Erosion potential eliminated.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	General		Hazard Trees	If dead, diseased, or dying trees are identified (Use a certified Arborist to determine health of tree or removal requirements)	Remove hazard trees
Annually (preferably Sept.)	General		Tree Growth and Dense Vegetation	Tree growth and dense vegetation which impedes inspection, maintenance access or interferes with maintenance activity (i.e., slope mowing, silt removal, vactoring, or equipment movements).	Trees and vegetation that does not hinder inspection or maintenance activities. Harvested trees should be recycled into mulch or other beneficial uses (e.g., alders for firewood).

Frequency	Drainage System Feature	Date	Problem	Conditions to Check For	Maintenance Activities and Conditions that Should Exist
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Pond Berms (Dikes)		Tree Growth	Tree growth on berms over 4 feet in height may lead to piping through the berm which could lead to failure of the berm.	Trees should be removed. If root system is small (base less than 4 inches) the root system may be left in place. Otherwise the roots should be removed and the berm restored. A licensed Civil Engineer should be consulted for proper berm/spillway restoration.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Emergency Overflow/ Spillway		Tree Growth	Tree growth on emergency spillways creates blockage problems and may cause failure of the berm due to uncontrolled overtopping.	Trees should be removed. If root system is small (base less than 4 inches) the root system may be left in place. Otherwise the roots should be removed and the berm restored. A licensed Civil Engineer should be consulted for proper berm/spillway restoration.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Emergency Overflow/ Spillway		Rock Missing	Only one layer of rock exists above native soil in area 5 square feet or larger, or any exposure of native soil at the top of out flow path of spillway. (Riprap on inside slopes need not be replaced.)	Rocks and pad depth are restored to design standards.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Emergency Overflow/ Spillway		Erosion	Erosion damage over 2 inches deep where cause of damage is still present or where there is potential for continued erosion. Any erosion observed on a compacted berm embankment.	Slopes should be stabilized using appropriate erosion control measure(s); e.g., rock reinforcement, planting of grass, compaction. If erosion is occurring on compacted berms a licensed Civil Engineer should be consulted to resolve source of erosion.

If you are unsure whether a problem exists, please contact Environmental Services at 253.591.5588.

Comments:

**#3 - Maintenance Checklist for Infiltration Trenches**

Frequency	Drainage System Feature	Date	Problem	Conditions to Check For	Maintenance Activities and Conditions that Should Exist
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1" in 24 hours)	General		Trash and Debris	Trash and debris in presettling basin, sump, or observation well/port.	Trash and debris cleared from site.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	General		Poisonous Vegetation and noxious weeds	Any poisonous or nuisance vegetation which may constitute a hazard to maintenance personnel or the public. Any evidence of noxious weeds as defined by State or Local Regulations. (Apply requirements of adopted integrated pest management policies for the use of herbicides.)	No danger of poisonous vegetation where maintenance personnel or the public might normally be. (Coordinate with Tacoma-Pierce County Health Department) Complete eradication of noxious weeds may not be possible. Compliance with state or local eradication policies required.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1" in 24 hours)	General		Contaminants and Pollution	Any evidence of oil, gasoline, contaminants or other pollutants	No contaminants or pollutants present. (Coordinate removal/cleanup with Environmental Services at 253.591.5588 and/or DOE Spill Response 800.424.8802.)
Annually (preferably Sept.)	General		Insects	When insects such as wasps and hornets interfere with maintenance activities.	Insects destroyed or removed from site. Apply insecticides in compliance with adopted integrated pest management policies.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr.	General		Water Not Infiltrating	Water ponding on surface or visible in observation well 24 hours after storm event.	Sediment is removed and/or facility is cleaned so that infiltration system works according to design. Remove any sediment from surface inlet if applicable.

Frequency	Drainage System Feature	Date	Problem	Conditions to Check For	Maintenance Activities and Conditions that Should Exist
Annually (preferably Sept.) and After any major storm event (1" in 24 hours)	Trenches		Observation Well (Use surface of trench if well is not present)	Water ponds at surface during storm events. Water visible in observation well 48 hours after storm event.	Remove and Replace rock layer and geomembrane or clean rock and geomembrane. Check underdrain pipe for sediment accumulation and remove sediment.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	General		Tree Growth and Dense Vegetation	Tree growth and dense vegetation which impedes inspection, maintenance access or interferes with maintenance activity (i.e., slope mowing, silt removal, vactoring, or equipment movements).	Trees and vegetation that does not hinder inspection or maintenance activities. Harvested trees should be recycled into mulch or other beneficial uses (e.g., alders for firewood).
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Emergency Overflow/ Spillway		Erosion	Erosion damage over 2 inches deep where cause of damage is still present or where there is potential for continued erosion. Any erosion observed on a compacted berm embankment.	Slopes should be stabilized using appropriate erosion control measure(s); e.g., rock reinforcement, planting of grass, compaction. If erosion is occurring on compacted berms a licensed Civil Engineer should be consulted to resolve source of erosion.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr.	Presettling Sump		Facility or sump filled with sediment and/or debris	6 inches or designed sediment trap depth of sediment.	Sediment is removed.

If you are unsure whether a problem exists, please contact Environmental Services at 253.591.5588.

Comments:

**#4 - Maintenance Checklist for Closed Detention Systems (Tanks/Vaults)**

Frequency	Drainage System Feature	Date	Problem	Conditions to Check For	Maintenance Activities and Conditions that Should Exist
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1" in 24 hours)	Storage Area		Plugged Air Vents	One-half of the cross-section of a vent is blocked at any point or the vent is damaged.	Vents open and functioning.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1" in 24 hours)	Storage Area		Debris and Sediment	Accumulated sediment depth exceeds 10 percent of the diameter of the storage area for one-half length of storage vault or any point depth exceeds 15 percent of diameter.  (Example: 72-inch storage tank would require cleaning when sediment reaches depth of 7 inches for more than one-half length of tank.)	All sediment and debris removed from storage area.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Storage Area		Joints Between Tank/Pipe Section	Any openings or voids allowing material to be transported into facility. (Will require engineering analysis to determine structural stability.)	All joint between tank/pipe sections are sealed.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Storage Area		Tank Pipe Bent Out of Shape	Any part of tank/pipe is bent out of shape more than 10 percent of its design shape. (Will require engineering analysis to determine structural stability.)	Tank/pipe repaired or replaced to design.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Storage Area		Vault Structure Includes Cracks in Wall, Bottom, Damage to Frame and/or Top Slab	Cracks wider than one-half inch and any evidence of soil particles entering the structure through the cracks, or maintenance/inspection personnel determines that the vault is not structurally sound.	Vault replaced or repaired to design specifications and is structurally sound.



Frequency	Drainage System Feature	Date	Problem	Conditions to Check For	Maintenance Activities and Conditions that Should Exist
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Storage Area		Vault Structure Includes Cracks in Wall, Bottom, Damage to Frame and/or Top Slab	Cracks wider than one-half inch at the joint of any inlet/outlet pipe or any evidence of soil particles entering the vault through the walls	No cracks more than one-fourth inch wide at the joint of the inlet/outlet pipe.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Manhole		Cover Not in Place	Cover is missing or only partially in place. Any open manhole requires maintenance.	Manhole is closed.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Manhole		Locking Mechanism Not Working	Mechanism cannot be opened by one maintenance person with proper tools. Bolts into frame have less than one-half inch of thread (may not apply to self-locking lids).	Mechanism opens with proper tools.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Manhole		Cover Difficult to Remove	One maintenance person cannot remove lid after applying normal lifting pressure. Intent is to keep cover from sealing off access to maintenance.	Cover can be removed and reinstalled by one maintenance person.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Manhole		Ladder Rungs Unsafe	Ladder is unsafe due to missing rungs, misalignment, not securely attached to structure wall, rust, or cracks.	Ladder meets design standards. Allows maintenance person safe access.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	General		Insects	When insects such as wasps and hornets interfere with maintenance activities.	Insects destroyed or removed from site. Apply insecticides in compliance with adopted integrated pest management policies.

If you are unsure whether a problem exists, please contact Environmental Services at 253.591.5588.

Tanks and vaults are a confined space. Visual inspections should be performed aboveground. If entry is required it should be performed by qualified personnel.

Comments:

**#5 - Maintenance Checklist for Control Structure/Flow Restrictor**

Frequency	Drainage System Feature	Date	Problem	Conditions to Check For	Maintenance Activities and Conditions that Should Exist
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1" in 24 hours)	General		Trash and Debris (Includes Sediment)	Material exceeds 25 percent of sump depth or 1 foot below orifice plate.	Control structure orifice is not blocked. All trash and debris removed.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	General		Structural Damage	Structure is not securely attached to manhole wall.	Structure securely attached to wall and outlet pipe.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	General		Structural Damage	Structure is not in upright position (allow up to 10 percent from plumb).	Structure in correct position.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	General		Structural Damage	Connections to outlet pipe are not watertight and show signs of rust.	Connections to outlet pipe are water tight; structure repaired or replaced and works as designed.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	General		Structural Damage	Any holes—other than designed holes—in the structure.	Structure has no holes other than designed holes.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Cleanout Gate		Damaged or Missing	Cleanout gate is not watertight or is missing.	Gate is watertight and works as designed.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Cleanout Gate		Damaged or Missing	Gate cannot be moved up and down by one maintenance person.	Gate moves up and down easily and is watertight.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Cleanout Gate		Damaged or Missing	Chain/rod leading to gate is missing or damaged.	Chain is in place and works as designed.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Cleanout Gate		Damaged or Missing	Gate is rusted over 50 percent of its surface area.	Gate is repaired or replaced to meet design standards.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Orifice Plate		Damaged or Missing	Control device is not working properly due to missing, out of place, or bent orifice plate.	Plate is in place and works as designed.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1" in 24 hours)	Orifice Plate		Obstructions	Any trash, debris, sediment, or vegetation blocking the plate.	Plate is free of all obstructions and works as designed.

Frequency	Drainage System Feature	Date	Problem	Conditions to Check For	Maintenance Activities and Conditions that Should Exist
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1" in 24 hours)	Overflow Pipe		Obstructions	Any trash or debris blocking (or having the potential of blocking) the overflow pipe.	Pipe is free of all obstructions and works as designed.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Manhole		Cover Not in Place	Cover is missing or only partially in place. Any open manhole requires maintenance.	Manhole is closed.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Manhole		Locking Mechanism Not Working	Mechanism cannot be opened by one maintenance person with proper tools. Bolts into frame have less than one-half inch of thread (may not apply to self-locking lids).	Mechanism opens with proper tools.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Manhole		Cover Difficult to Remove	One maintenance person cannot remove lid after applying normal lifting pressure. Intent is to keep cover from sealing off access to maintenance.	Cover can be removed and reinstalled by one maintenance person.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Manhole		Ladder Rungs Unsafe	Ladder is unsafe due to missing rungs, misalignment, not securely attached to structure wall, rust, or cracks.	Ladder meets design standards. Allows maintenance person safe access.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	General		Insects	When insects such as wasps and hornets interfere with maintenance activities.	Insects destroyed or removed from site. Apply insecticides in compliance with adopted integrated pest management policies.

If you are unsure whether a problem exists, please contact Environmental Services at 253.591.5588.

Control structures are usually considered a confined space. Visual inspections should be performed aboveground. If entry is required it should be performed by qualified personnel.

Comments:

**#6 - Maintenance Checklist for Catch Basins/Manholes**

Frequency	Drainage System Feature	Date	Problem	Conditions to Check For	Maintenance Activities and Conditions that Should Exist
Annually (preferably Sept.)	General		"Dump no pollutants" Stencil or stamp not visible	Stencil or stamp should be visible and easily read	Warning signs (e.g., "Dump No Waste-Drains to Stream") shall be painted or embossed on or adjacent to all storm drain inlets.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1" in 24 hours)	General		Trash and Debris	Trash or debris which is located immediately in front of the catch basin opening or is blocking inletting capacity of the basin by more than 10 percent.	No trash or debris located immediately in front of catch basin or on grate opening.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1" in 24 hours)	General		Trash and Debris	Trash or debris (in the basin) that exceeds 60 percent of the sump depth as measured from the bottom of basin to invert of the lowest pipe into or out of the basin, but in no case less than a minimum of 6 inches clearance from the debris surface to the invert of the lowest pipe.	No trash or debris in the catch basin.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1" in 24 hours)	General		Trash and Debris	Trash or debris in any inlet or outlet pipe blocking more than one-third of its height.	Inlet and outlet pipes free of trash or debris.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1" in 24 hours)	General		Trash and Debris	Dead animals or vegetation that could generate odors that could cause complaints or dangerous gases (e.g., methane).	No dead animals or vegetation present within the catch basin.

Frequency	Drainage System Feature	Date	Problem	Conditions to Check For	Maintenance Activities and Conditions that Should Exist
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1" in 24 hours)	General		Sediment	Sediment (in the basin) that exceeds 60 percent of the sump depth as measured from the bottom of basin to invert of the lowest pipe into or out of the basin, but in no case less than a minimum of 6 inches clearance from the sediment surface to the invert of the lowest pipe.	No sediment in the catch basin.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	General		Structure Damage to Frame and/or Top Slab	Top slab has holes larger than 2 square inches or cracks wider than one-fourth inch (intent is to make sure no material is running into basin).	Top slab is free of holes and cracks.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	General		Structure Damage to Frame and/or Top Slab	Frame not sitting flush on top slab, i.e., separation of more than three-fourth inch of the frame from the top slab. Frame not securely attached.	Frame is sitting flush on the riser rings or top slab and firmly attached.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	General		Fractures or Cracks in Basin Walls/ Bottom	Maintenance person judges that structure is unsound.	Basin replaced or repaired to design standards.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	General		Fractures or Cracks in Basin Walls/ Bottom	Grout fillet has separated or cracked wider than one-half-inch and longer than 1 foot at the joint of any inlet/outlet pipe or any evidence of soil particles entering catch basin through cracks.	Pipe is regouted and secure at basin wall.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	General		Settlement/ Misalignment	If failure of basin has created a safety, function, or design problem.	Basin replaced or repaired to design standards.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1" in 24 hours)	General		Vegetation	Vegetation growing across and blocking more than 10 percent of the basin opening.	No vegetation blocking opening to basin.

Frequency	Drainage System Feature	Date	Problem	Conditions to Check For	Maintenance Activities and Conditions that Should Exist
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1” in 24 hours)	General		Vegetation	Vegetation growing in inlet/outlet pipe joints that is more than 6 inches tall and less than 6 inches apart.	No vegetation or root growth present.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1” in 24 hours)	General		Contamination and Pollution	Any evidence of oil, gasoline, contaminants or other pollutants.	No contaminants or pollutants present. (Coordinate removal/cleanup with Environmental Services at 253.591.5588 and/or DOE Spill Response 800.424.8802.)
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Catch Basin Cover		Cover Not in Place	Cover is missing or only partially in place.	Any open catch basin requires maintenance. Catch basin cover is closed
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Catch Basin Cover		Locking Mechanism Not Working	Mechanism cannot be opened by one maintenance person with proper tools. Bolts into frame have less than one-half-inch of thread.	Mechanism opens with proper tools.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Catch Basin Cover		Cover Difficult to Remove	One maintenance person cannot remove lid after applying normal lifting pressure. (Intent is keep cover from sealing off access to maintenance.)	Cover can be removed by one maintenance person.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Ladder		Ladder Rungs Unsafe	Ladder is unsafe due to missing rungs, not securely attached to basin wall, misalignment, rust, cracks, or sharp edges.	Ladder meets design standards and allows maintenance person safe access.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Grates		Grate opening Unsafe	Grate with opening wider than seven-eighths of an inch.	Grate opening meets design standards.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1” in 24 hours)	Grates		Trash and Debris	Trash and debris that is blocking more than 20 percent of grate surface inletting capacity.	Grate free of trash and debris.

Frequency	Drainage System Feature	Date	Problem	Conditions to Check For	Maintenance Activities and Conditions that Should Exist
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Grates		Damaged or Missing.	Grate missing or broken member(s) of the grate.	Grate is in place and meets design standards.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	General		Insects	When insects such as wasps and hornets interfere with maintenance activities.	Insects destroyed or removed from site. Apply insecticides in compliance with adopted integrated pest management policies.

If you are unsure whether a problem exists, please contact Environmental Services at 253.591.5588.

Comments:

**#7 - Maintenance Checklist for Debris Barriers (e.g., Trash Racks)**

Frequency	Drainage System Feature	Date	Problem	Conditions to Check For	Maintenance Activities and Conditions that Should Exist
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1” in 24 hours)	General		Trash and Debris	Trash or debris that is plugging more than 20 percent of the openings in the barrier.	Barrier cleared to design flow capacity.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	General		Damaged/ Missing Bars.	Bars are bent out of shape more than 3 inches.	Bars in place with no bends more than three-fourth inch.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	General		Damaged/ Missing Bars.	Bars are missing or entire barrier missing.	Bars in place according to design.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	General		Damaged/ Missing Bars.	Bars are loose and rust is causing 50 percent deterioration to any part of barrier.	Barrier replaced or repaired to design standards.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	General		Inlet/Outlet Pipe	Debris barrier missing or not attached to pipe.	Barrier firmly attached to pipe.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	General		Insects	When insects such as wasps and hornets interfere with maintenance activities.	Insects destroyed or removed from site. Apply insecticides in compliance with adopted integrated pest management policies.

If you are unsure whether a problem exists, please contact Environmental Services at 253.591.5588.

Comments:



**#8 - Maintenance Checklist for Energy Dissipaters**

Frequency	Drainage System Feature	Date	Problem	Conditions to Check For	Maintenance Activities and Conditions that Should Exist
<b>External:</b>					
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1” in 24 hours)	Rock Pad		Erosion	Soil erosion in or adjacent to rock pad.	Rock pad replaced to design standards.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1” in 24 hours)	Dispersion Trench		Pipe Plugged with Sediment	Accumulated sediment that exceeds 20 percent of the design depth.	Pipe cleaned/flushed so that it matches design.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1” in 24 hours)	Dispersion Trench		Not Discharging Water Properly	Visual evidence of water discharging at concentrated points along trench (normal condition is a "sheet flow" of water along trench). Intent is to prevent erosion damage.	Trench redesigned or rebuilt to standards.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1” in 24 hours)	Dispersion Trench		Perforations Plugged	Over 1/2 of perforations in pipe are plugged with debris and sediment.	Perforated pipe cleaned or replaced.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1” in 24 hours)	Dispersion Trench		Water Flows Out Top of "Distributor" Catch Basin.	Maintenance person observes or receives credible report of water flowing out during any storm less than the design storm or its causing or appears likely to cause damage.	Facility rebuilt or redesigned to standards.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1” in 24 hours)	Dispersion Trench		Receiving Area Over-Saturated	Water in receiving area is causing or has potential of causing landslide problems.	No danger of landslides.

Frequency	Drainage System Feature	Date	Problem	Conditions to Check For	Maintenance Activities and Conditions that Should Exist
<b>Internal:</b>					
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1” in 24 hours)	Manhole/ Chamber		Worn or Damaged Post, Baffles, Side of Chamber	Structure dissipating flow deteriorates to one-half of original size or any concentrated worn spot exceeding 1 square foot which would make structure unsound	Structure replaced to design standards.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1” in 24 hours)	Manhole/ Chamber		Trash and Debris	Trash or debris (in the basin) that exceeds 60 percent of the sump depth as measured from the bottom of basin to invert of the lowest pipe into or out of the basin, but in no case less than a minimum of 6 inches clearance from the debris surface to the invert of the lowest pipe.	No trash or debris in the catch basin.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1” in 24 hours)	Manhole/ Chamber		Trash and Debris	Trash or debris in any inlet or outlet pipe blocking more than one-third of its height.	Inlet and outlet pipes free of trash or debris.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1” in 24 hours)	Manhole/ Chamber		Trash and Debris	Dead animals, trash or vegetation that could generate odors that could cause complaints or dangerous gases (e.g., methane).	No dead animals, trash or vegetation present within the catch basin.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1” in 24 hours)	Manhole/ Chamber		Sediment	Sediment (in the basin) that exceeds 60 percent of the sump depth as measured from the bottom of basin to invert of the lowest pipe into or out of the basin, but in no case less than a minimum of 6 inches clearance from the sediment surface to the invert of the lowest pipe.	No sediment in the catch basin.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Manhole/ Chamber		Structure Damage to Frame and/or Top Slab	Top slab has holes larger than 2 square inches or cracks wider than one-fourth inch (intent is to make sure no material is running into basin).	Top slab is free of holes and cracks.

Frequency	Drainage System Feature	Date	Problem	Conditions to Check For	Maintenance Activities and Conditions that Should Exist
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Manhole/ Chamber		Structure Damage to Frame and/or Top Slab	Frame not sitting flush on top slab, i.e., separation of more than three-fourth inch of the frame from the top slab. Frame not securely attached.	Frame is sitting flush on the riser rings or top slab and firmly attached.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Manhole/ Chamber		Fractures or Cracks in Basin Walls/ Bottom	Maintenance person judges that structure is unsound.	Basin replaced or repaired to design standards.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Manhole/ Chamber		Fractures or Cracks in Basin Walls/ Bottom	Grout fillet has separated or cracked wider than one-half-inch and longer than 1 foot at the joint of any inlet/outlet pipe or any evidence of soil particles entering catch basin through cracks.	Pipe is regouted and secure at basin wall.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Manhole/ Chamber		Settlement/ Misalignment	If failure of basin has created a safety, function, or design problem.	Basin replaced or repaired to design standards.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1" in 24 hours)	Manhole/ Chamber		Contamination and Pollution	Any evidence of oil, gasoline, contaminants or other pollutants.	No contaminants or pollutants present. (Coordinate removal/ cleanup with Environmental Services at 253.591.5588 and/or DOE Spill Response 800-424-8802.)
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Catch Basin/ Manhole Cover		Cover Not in Place	Cover is missing or only partially in place.	Any open catch basin/ manhole requires maintenance. Catch basin cover is closed.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Catch Basin/ Manhole Cover		Locking Mechanism Not Working	Mechanism cannot be opened by one maintenance person with proper tools. Bolts into frame have less than one-half-inch of thread.	Mechanism opens with proper tools.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Catch Basin/ Manhole Cover		Cover Difficult to Remove	One maintenance person cannot remove lid after applying normal lifting pressure. (Intent is keep cover from sealing off access to maintenance.)	Cover can be removed by one maintenance person.

Frequency	Drainage System Feature	Date	Problem	Conditions to Check For	Maintenance Activities and Conditions that Should Exist
Annually (preferably Sept.)	General		Insects	When insects such as wasps and hornets interfere with maintenance activities.	Insects destroyed or removed from site. Apply insecticides in compliance with adopted integrated pest management policies.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1" in 24 hours)	Manhole/ Chamber		Contamination and Pollution	Any evidence of oil, gasoline, contaminants or other pollutants.	No contaminants or pollutants present. (Coordinate removal/cleanup with Environmental Services at 253.591.5588 and/or DOE Spill Response 800-424-8802.)

If you are unsure whether a problem exists, please contact Environmental Services at 253.591.5588.

Comments:

**#9 - Maintenance Checklist for Typical Biofiltration Swale**

Frequency	Drainage System Feature	Date	Problem	Conditions to Check For	Maintenance Activities and Conditions that Should Exist
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1" in 24 hours)	General		Sediment Accumulation on Grass	Sediment depth exceeds 2 Inches or inhibits vegetation growth in 10 percent or more of swale.	Remove sediment deposits on grass treatment area of the bioswale. When finished, swale should be level from side to side and drain freely toward outlet.  There should be no areas of standing water once inflow has ceased.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1" in 24 hours)	General		Standing Water	Water stands in the swale between storms and does not drain freely.	Any of the following may apply: remove sediment or trash blockages, improve grade from head to foot of swale, remove clogged check dams, add underdrains or convert to a wet biofiltration swale.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1" in 24 hours)	General		Flow spreader	Flow spreader uneven or clogged so that flows are not uniformly distributed through entire swale width.	Level the spreader and clean so that flows are spread evenly over entire swale width.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1" in 24 hours)	General		Constant Baseflow	When small quantities of water continually flow through the swale, even when it has been dry for weeks, and an eroded, muddy channel has formed in the swale bottom.	Add a low-flow pea-gravel drain the length of the swale or by-pass the baseflow around the swale.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1" in 24 hours)	General		Poor Vegetation Coverage	When grass is sparse or bare or eroded patches occur in more than 10 percent of the swale bottom.	Determine why grass growth is poor and correct that condition. Re-plant with plugs of grass from the upper slope: plant in the swale bottom at 8-inch intervals. Or re-seed into loosened, fertile soil.

Frequency	Drainage System Feature	Date	Problem	Conditions to Check For	Maintenance Activities and Conditions that Should Exist
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1" in 24 hours)	General		Vegetation	When the grass becomes excessively tall (greater than 10 inches); when nuisance weeds and other vegetation start to take over.	Mow vegetation or remove nuisance vegetation so that flow not impeded. Grass should be mowed to a height of 3 to 8 inches, but not below design flow level. Remove grass clippings.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1" in 24 hours)	General		Excessive Shading	Grass growth is poor because sunlight does not reach swale.	If possible, trim back over-hanging limbs and remove brushy vegetation on adjacent slopes.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1" in 24 hours)	General		Inlet/Outlet/ Underdrain	Inlet/outlet areas clogged with sediment and/or debris.	Remove material so that there is no clogging or blockage in the inlet and outlet area. If underdrain, avoid vehicular traffic on swale bottom.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1" in 24 hours)	General		Trash and Debris Accumulation	Trash and debris accumulated in the bioswale.	Remove leaves, litter, and oily materials, and re-seed or resod, and regrade, as needed. Clean curb cuts and level spreaders as needed.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1" in 24 hours)	General		Erosion/ Scouring	Eroded or scoured swale bottom due to flow channelization, or higher flows.	For ruts or bare areas less than 12 inches wide, repair the damaged area by filling with crushed gravel. If bare areas are large, generally greater than 12 inches wide, the swale should be re-graded and re-seeded. For smaller bare areas, overseed when bare spots are evident, or take plugs of grass from the upper slope and plant in the swale bottom at 8-inch intervals.

Frequency	Drainage System Feature	Date	Problem	Conditions to Check For	Maintenance Activities and Conditions that Should Exist
Annually (preferably Sept.)	General		Insects	When insects such as wasps and hornets interfere with maintenance activities.	Insects destroyed or removed from site. Apply insecticides in compliance with adopted integrated pest management policies.

If you are unsure whether a problem exists, please contact Environmental Services at 253.591.5588.

Comments:

**#10 - Maintenance Checklist for Wet Biofiltration Swales**

Frequency	Drainage System Feature	Date	Problem	Conditions to Check For	Maintenance Activities and Conditions that Should Exist
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1” in 24 hours)	General		Sediment Accumulation	Sediment depth exceeds 2 inches in 10 percent of the swale treatment area.	Remove sediment deposits in treatment area.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1” in 24 hours)	General		Water Depth	Water not retained to a depth of about 4 inches during the wet season.	Build up or repair outlet berm so that water is retained in the wet swale.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1” in 24 hours)	General		Wetland Vegetation	Vegetation becomes sparse and does not provide adequate filtration, OR vegetation is crowded out by very dense clumps of cattail, which do not allow water to flow through the clumps.	Determine cause of lack of vigor of vegetation and correct. Replant as needed. For excessive cattail growth, cut cattail shoots back and compost offsite. Dig out roots as necessary. Note: normally wetland vegetation does not need to be harvested unless die-back is causing oxygen depletion in downstream waters. Fall harvesting of Juncus species is not recommended.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1” in 24 hours)	General		Inlet/Outlet	Inlet/outlet area clogged with sediment and/or debris.	Remove clogging or blockage in the inlet and outlet areas.



Frequency	Drainage System Feature	Date	Problem	Conditions to Check For	Maintenance Activities and Conditions that Should Exist
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1" in 24 hours)	General		Trash and Debris Accumulation	Any trash and debris which exceed 5 cubic feet per 1,000 square feet (this is about equal to the amount of trash it would take to fill up one 32 gallon garbage can). In general, there should be no visual evidence of dumping. If less than threshold all trash and debris will be removed as part of next scheduled maintenance.	Remove trash and debris from wet swale.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1" in 24 hours)	General		Erosion/ Scouring	Swale has eroded or scoured due to flow channelization, or higher flows.	Check design flows to assure swale is large enough to handle flows. By-pass excess flows or enlarge swale. Replant eroded areas with fibrous-rooted plants such as Juncus effusus (soft rush) in wet areas or snowberry (Symphoricarpos albus) in drier areas, or as recommended by a wetland specialist.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	General		Insects	When insects such as wasps and hornets interfere with maintenance activities.	Insects destroyed or removed from site. Apply insecticides in compliance with adopted integrated pest management policies.

If you are unsure whether a problem exists, please contact Environmental Services at 253.591.5588.

Comments:

**#11 - Maintenance Checklist for Filter Strips**

Frequency	Drainage System Feature	Date	Problem	Conditions to Check For	Maintenance Activities and Conditions that Should Exist
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1" in 24 hours)	General		Sediment Accumulation on Grass	Sediment depth exceeds 2 inches.	Remove sediment deposits, re-level so slope is even and flows pass evenly through strip.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1" in 24 hours)	General		Vegetation	When the grass becomes excessively tall (greater than 10 inches); when nuisance weeds and other vegetation start to take over.	Mow grass, control nuisance vegetation, such that flow not impeded. Grass should be mowed to a height between 3-4 inches.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1" in 24 hours)	General		Trash and Debris Accumulation	Trash and debris accumulated on the filter strip.	Remove trash and Debris from filter.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1" in 24 hours)	General		Erosion/ Scouring	Eroded or scoured areas due to flow channelization, or higher flows.	For ruts or bare areas less than 12 inches wide, repair the damaged area by filling with crushed gravel. The grass will creep in over the rock in time. If bare areas are large, generally greater than 12 inches wide, the filter strip should be re-graded and re- seeded. For smaller bare areas, overseed when bare spots are evident.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1" in 24 hours)	General		Flow spreader	Flow spreader uneven or clogged so that flows are not uniformly distributed through entire filter width.	Level the spreader and clean so that flows are spread evenly over entire filter width

Frequency	Drainage System Feature	Date	Problem	Conditions to Check For	Maintenance Activities and Conditions that Should Exist
Annually (preferably Sept.)	General		Insects	When insects such as wasps and hornets interfere with maintenance activities.	Insects destroyed or removed from site. Apply insecticides in compliance with adopted integrated pest management policies.

If you are unsure whether a problem exists, please contact Environmental Services at 253.591.5588.

Comments:

**#12 - Maintenance Checklist for Wet Ponds**

Frequency	Drainage System Feature	Date	Problem	Conditions to Check For	Maintenance Activities and Conditions that Should Exist
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1" in 24 hours)	General		Water level	First cell is empty, doesn't hold water.	Line the first cell to maintain at least 4 feet of water. Although the second cell may drain, the first cell must remain full to control turbulence of the incoming flow and reduce sediment resuspension.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1" in 24 hours)			Trash and Debris	Accumulation that exceeds 1 cubic foot per 1000 square feet of pond area.	Trash and debris removed from pond
Biannually (Spring & Fall)	General		Poisonous Vegetation and Noxious Weeds	Any poisonous or nuisance vegetation which may constitute a hazard to maintenance personnel or the public. Any evidence of noxious weeds as defined in State and Local Regulations. (Apply requirements of adopted integrated vegetation management (IVM) policies for the use of herbicides.)	No danger of poisonous vegetation where maintenance personnel or the public might normally be. (Coordinate the Tacoma-Pierce County Health Department.) Complete eradication of noxious weeds may not be possible, however compliance with state or local eradication policies are required.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1" in 24 hours)			Inlet/Outlet Pipe	Inlet and/or outlet pipe clogged with sediment and/or debris material	No clogging or blockage in the inlet and outlet piping.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1" in 24 hours)			Sediment Accumulation in Pond Bottom	Sediment accumulations in pond bottom that exceeds the depth of sediment zone plus 6 inches, usually in the first cell.	Sediment removed from pond bottom. (If sediment contamination is a potential problem, sediment should be tested regularly to determine leaching potential prior to disposal.)

Frequency	Drainage System Feature	Date	Problem	Conditions to Check For	Maintenance Activities and Conditions that Should Exist
Monthly			Vegetation	Vegetation is overgrown or sparse.	Trim vegetation as necessary to keep pond free of leaves and maintain aesthetic appearance. Revegetate bare sloped areas. Regrade before revegetation as needed.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1" in 24 hours)			Oil Sheen on Water	Prevalent and visible oil sheen.	Oil removed from water using oil- absorbent pads or vactor truck. Source of oil located and corrected. If chronic low levels of oil persist, plant wetland plants such as Juncus effusus (soft rush) which can uptake small concentrations of oil.
Annually (preferably Sept.)			Erosion	Erosion of the pond's side slopes and/or scouring of the pond bottom that exceeds 6 inches, or where continued erosion is prevalent.	Slopes stabilized using proper erosion control measures and repair methods.
Annually (preferably Sept.)			Settlement of Pond Dike/ Berm	Any part of these components that has settled 4 inches or lower than the design elevation, or inspector determines dike/berm is unsound.	Dike/berm is repaired to specifications
Annually (preferably Sept.)			Internal Berm	Berm dividing cells should be level.	Berm surface is leveled so that water flows evenly over entire length of berm.
Annually (preferably Sept.)			Overflow Spillway	Rock is missing and soil is exposed at top of spillway or outside slope.	Rocks replaced to specifications.

Frequency	Drainage System Feature	Date	Problem	Conditions to Check For	Maintenance Activities and Conditions that Should Exist
Annually (preferably Sept.)	General		Insects	When insects such as wasps and hornets interfere with maintenance activities.	Insects destroyed or removed from site. Apply insecticides in compliance with adopted integrated pest management policies.

If you are unsure whether a problem exists, please contact Environmental Services at 253.591.5588.

Comments:

**#13 - Maintenance Checklist for Treatment Wetlands**

Frequency	Drainage System Feature	Date	Problem	Conditions to Check For	Maintenance Activities and Conditions that Should Exist
Biannually (Spring & Fall)	General		Trash and Debris	Any trash and debris accumulations which exceed 5 cubic feet per 1,000 square feet (this is a little more than the amount of trash it would take to fill up one standard 32 gallon garbage can). In general, there should be no visual evidence of dumping. If there is less than the threshold, remove all trash and debris as part of the next scheduled maintenance.	Trash and debris cleared from site.
Biannually (Spring & Fall)	General		Poisonous Vegetation and Noxious Weeds	Any poisonous or nuisance vegetation which may constitute a hazard to maintenance personnel or the public. Any evidence of noxious weeds as defined in State and Local Regulations. (Apply requirements of adopted integrated vegetation management (IVM) policies for the use of herbicides.)	No danger of poisonous vegetation where maintenance personnel or the public might normally be. (Coordinate the Tacoma-Pierce County Health Department.) Complete eradication of noxious weeds may not be possible, however compliance with state or local eradication policies are required.
Biannually (Spring & Fall)	General		Oil Sheen on Water	Prevalent and visible oil sheen.	Oil removed from water using oil- absorbent pads or vacor truck. Source of oil located and corrected. If chronic low levels of oil persist, plant emergent wetland plants such as Juncus effusus (soft rush) which can assist filtering small concentrations of oil.
Biannually (Spring & Fall) and After any major storm event (1" in 24 hours)	General		Inlet/Outlet Pipe	Inlet/Outlet pipe clogged with sediment and/or debris material or damaged.	No clogging or blockage in the inlet and outlet piping.

Frequency	Drainage System Feature	Date	Problem	Conditions to Check For	Maintenance Activities and Conditions that Should Exist
Biannually (Spring & Fall)	General		Rodent Holes	If the facility is constructed with a dam or berm, look for rodent holes or any evidence of water piping through the dam or berm.	Rodents removed and dam or berm repaired. (Coordinate with Tacoma-Pierce County Health Department; coordinate with Ecology Dam Safety Office if pond exceeds 10 acre-feet.)
Biannually (Spring & Fall)	General		Beaver Dams	Beaver dam results in an adverse change in the functioning of the facility.	Facility is fully functioning. Evaluate using beaver deceiver and leveler devices. If beaver removal is necessary, contact WDFW to coordinate with a Nuisance Wildlife Control Operator.
Biannually (Spring & Fall)	General		Tree Growth and Hazard Trees	Tree growth that impedes maintenance access.	Trees do not hinder maintenance activities. Harvested trees should be recycled into mulch or other beneficial uses (e.g., firewood or construction).
Biannually (Spring & Fall)	General		Tree Growth and Hazard Trees	If dead, diseased, or dying trees are identified, use a certified Arborist to determine the health of tree and whether removal is required.	Remove hazard trees.
Biannually (Spring & Fall)	General		Liner	Liner is visible and has more than three one-fourth inch holes in it.	Liner is repaired or replaced. Liner is fully covered.
Biannually (Spring & Fall)	Forebay		Sediment Accumulation	Sediment accumulation in forebay exceeds the design depth of the sediment zone plus 6 inches.	Accumulated sediment is removed from forebay bottom to the design depth of the sediment zone.
Biannually (Spring & Fall)	Side Slopes of Wetland		Erosion	Erosion damage over 2 inches deep where cause of damage is still present or where there is potential for continued erosion.	Slopes should be stabilized using appropriate erosion control measure(s) such as rock reinforcement, planting of grass, or additional compaction.



Frequency	Drainage System Feature	Date	Problem	Conditions to Check For	Maintenance Activities and Conditions that Should Exist
Biannually (Spring & Fall) and After any major storm event (1" in 24 hours)	Side Slopes of Wetland		Erosion	Any erosion observed on a compacted berm embankment.	If erosion is occurring on compacted berms a licensed Civil Engineer should be consulted to resolve source of erosion.
Biannually (Spring & Fall)	Wetland Cell		Wetland Vegetation	20 percent or more of the constructed wetland area has dead or dying vegetation, as measured by stem counts relative to the design plant coverage.	Dead or dying vegetation is replaced by like species, unless recommended otherwise by the Wetlands Consultant and approved by the county. (Watering, physical support, mulching, and weed removal may be required on a regular basis especially during the first 3 years.)
Biannually (Spring & Fall)	Wetland Cell		Wetland Vegetation	Percent vegetated cover of constructed wetland bottom area, excluding exotic and invasive species, is less than 50 percent after 2 years.	Remove exotic/ invasive species, additional plantings may be required.
Biannually (Spring & Fall)	Wetland Cell		Wetland Vegetation	Decaying vegetation produces foul odors.	Decaying vegetation is removed, preferably in late summer.
Once in mid summer (July or August)	Wetland Cell		Wetland Vegetation	Wetland vegetation is blocking flow paths causing flow back-up and flooding.	Areas of blocking vegetation are cut back sufficient to allow design flows and prevent flooding.

Frequency	Drainage System Feature	Date	Problem	Conditions to Check For	Maintenance Activities and Conditions that Should Exist
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Wetland Cell		Wetland Vegetation	Water quality monitoring indicates that wetland vegetation is contributing phosphorus and metals to downstream waters rather than sequestering them.	To maximize removal of wetland pollutants, vegetation must be periodically harvested, particularly with respect to phosphorus and metals removal. Harvesting should occur by mid-summer before plants begin to transfer phosphorus from the aboveground foliage to subsurface roots, or begin to lose metals that desorb during plant die off. Every 3 to 5 years the entire plant mass including roots should be harvested because the below ground biomass constitutes a significant reservoir (as much as half) of the nutrients and metals that are removed from stormwater by plants.
Biannually (Spring & Fall)	Wetland Cell		Sediment Accumulation	Sediment accumulation inhibits growth of wetland plants or reduces wetland volume (greater than 1 feet of sediment accumulation).	Dredge.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Wetland Berms (Dikes)		Settlements	Any part of berm which has settled 4 inches lower than the design elevation. If settlement is apparent, measure berm to determine amount of settlement. Settling can be an indication of more severe problems with the berm or outlet works. A licensed Civil Engineer should be consulted to determine the source of the settlement.	Dike restored to the design elevation.

Frequency	Drainage System Feature	Date	Problem	Conditions to Check For	Maintenance Activities and Conditions that Should Exist
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Wetland Berms (Dikes)		Piping	Discernable water flow through pond berm. Ongoing erosion with potential for erosion to continue. (Recommend a Geotechnical Engineer be called in to inspect and evaluate condition and recommend repairs.	Piping eliminated. Erosion potential eliminated.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Wetland Berms Over 4 ft in height (Dikes)		Tree Growth	Tree growth on berms over 4 feet in height may lead to piping through the berm which could lead to failure of the berm.	Trees should be removed. If root system is small (base less than 4 inches) the root system may be left in place. Otherwise the roots should be removed and the berm restored. A licensed Civil Engineer should be consulted for proper berm/spillway restoration.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Emergency Overflow/ Spillway		Obstruction	Tree growth or other blockage on emergency spillways may cause failure of the berm due to uncontrolled overtopping.	Obstruction should be removed. A licensed Civil Engineer should be consulted for proper berm/spillway restoration.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Emergency Overflow/ Spillway		Rock Missing	Only one layer of rock exists above native soil in an area 5 square feet or larger, or any exposure of native soil at the top of out flow path of spillway. (Riprap on inside slopes need not be replaced.)	Rocks and pad depth are restored to design standards.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Emergency Overflow/ Spillway		Erosion	Erosion damage over 2 inches deep where cause of damage is still present or where there is potential for continued erosion. Any erosion observed on a compacted berm embankment.	Slopes should be stabilized using appropriate erosion control measure(s); e.g., rock reinforcement, planting of grass, compaction. If erosion is occurring on compacted berms a licensed Civil Engineer should be consulted to resolve source of erosion.

Frequency	Drainage System Feature	Date	Problem	Conditions to Check For	Maintenance Activities and Conditions that Should Exist
Annually (preferably Sept.)	General		Insects	When insects such as wasps and hornets interfere with maintenance activities.	Insects destroyed or removed from site. Apply insecticides in compliance with adopted integrated pest management policies.

If you are unsure whether a problem exists, please contact Environmental Services at 253.591.5588.

Comments:

**#14 - Maintenance Checklist for Wet Vaults**

Frequency	Drainage System Feature	Date	Problem	Conditions to Check For	Maintenance Activities and Conditions that Should Exist
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1" in 24 hours)	General		Trash/Debris Accumulation	Trash and debris accumulated in vault, pipe or inlet/outlet (includes floatables and non-floatables).	Remove trash and debris from vault.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1" in 24 hours)	General		Sediment Accumulation in Vault	Sediment accumulation in vault bottom exceeds the depth of the sediment zone plus 6 inches.	Remove sediment from vault. (If sediment contamination is a potential problem, sediment should be tested regularly to determine leaching potential prior to disposal.)
Annually (preferably Sept.)	General		Damaged Pipes	Inlet/outlet piping damaged or broken and in need of repair.	Pipe repaired and/or replaced.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	General		Access Cover Damaged/Not Working	Cover cannot be opened or removed, especially by one person.	Pipe repaired or replaced to proper working specifications.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1" in 24 hours)	General		Ventilation	Ventilation area blocked or plugged.	Blocking material removed or cleared from ventilation area. A specified percentage of the vault surface area must provide ventilation to the vault interior (see design specifications).
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Vault Structure		Damage - Includes Cracks in Walls Bottom, Damage to Frame and/or Top Slab	Maintenance/inspection personnel determine that the vault is not structurally sound	Vault replaced or repairs made so that vault meets design specifications and is structurally sound.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Vault Structure		Damage - Includes Cracks in Walls Bottom, Damage to Frame and/or Top Slab	Cracks wider than one-half-inch at the joint of any inlet/outlet pipe or evidence of soil particles entering through the cracks.	Vault repaired so that no cracks exist wider than one-fourth inch at the joint of the inlet/outlet pipe.

Frequency	Drainage System Feature	Date	Problem	Conditions to Check For	Maintenance Activities and Conditions that Should Exist
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Vault Structure		Baffles	Baffles corroding, cracking, warping and/or showing signs of failure as determined by maintenance/inspection staff.	Baffles repaired or replaced to specifications.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Access Ladder		Damage	Ladder is corroded or deteriorated, not functioning properly, not attached to structure wall, missing rungs, has cracks and/or misaligned. Confined space warning sign missing.	Ladder replaced or repaired to specifications, and is safe to use as determined by inspection personnel. Replace sign warning of confined space entry requirements.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	General		Insects	When insects such as wasps and hornets interfere with maintenance activities.	Insects destroyed or removed from site. Apply insecticides in compliance with adopted integrated pest management policies.

If you are unsure whether a problem exists, please contact Environmental Services at 253.591.5588.

A vault is a confined space. Visual inspections should be performed aboveground. If entry is required it should be performed by qualified personnel.

Comments:

**#15 - Maintenance Checklist for Sand Filters (above ground/open)**

Frequency	Drainage System Feature	Date	Problem	Conditions to Check For	Maintenance Activities and Conditions that Should Exist
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1" in 24 hours)	Above ground (open sand filter)		Sediment Accumulation on top layer	Sediment depth exceeds one-half inch.	No sediment deposit on grass layer of sand filter that would impede permeability of the filter section.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1" in 24 hours)	Above ground (open sand filter)		Trash and Debris Accumulations	Trash and debris accumulated on sand filter bed.	Trash and debris removed from sand filter bed.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1" in 24 hours)	Above ground (open sand filter)		Sediment/ Debris in Clean-Outs	When the clean-outs become full or partially plugged with sediment and/or debris.	Sediment removed from clean-outs.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1" in 24 hours)	Above ground (open sand filter)		Sand Filter Media	Drawdown of water through the sand filter media takes longer than 24-hours, and/or flow through the overflow pipes occurs frequently.	Top several inches of sand are scraped. May require replacement of entire sand filter depth depending on extent of plugging (a sieve analysis is helpful to determine if the lower sand has too high a proportion of fine material). Other options include removal of thatch, aerating the filter surface, tilling the filter surface, replacing the top 4 inches of filter media, and inspecting geotextiles for clogging.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1" in 24 hours)	Above ground (open sand filter)		Prolonged Flows	Sand is saturated for prolonged periods of time (several weeks) and does not dry out between storms due to continuous base flow or prolonged flows from detention facilities. (Consider 4-8 hour drawdown tests)	Low, continuous flows are limited to a small portion of the facility by using a low wooden divider or slightly depressed sand surface.

Frequency	Drainage System Feature	Date	Problem	Conditions to Check For	Maintenance Activities and Conditions that Should Exist
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1" in 24 hours)	Above ground (open sand filter)		Short Circuiting	Drawdown greater than 12 inches per hour. When flows become concentrated over one section of the sand filter rather than dispersed. (Consider 4-8 hour drawdown tests)	Flow and percolation of water through sand filter is uniform and dispersed across the entire filter area. Inspect periphery and cleanouts for leakage.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1" in 24 hours)	Above ground (open sand filter)		Erosion Damage to Slopes	Erosion over 2 inches deep where cause of damage is prevalent or potential for continued erosion is evident.	Slopes stabilized using proper erosion control measures.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Above ground (open sand filter)		Rock Pad Missing or Out of Place	Soil beneath the rock is visible.	Rock pad replaced or rebuilt to design specifications.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1" in 24 hours)	Above ground (open sand filter)		Flow Spreader	Flow spreader uneven or clogged so that flows are not uniformly distributed across sand filter. Rills and gullies on the surface of the filter can indicate improper function of the inlet flow spreader.	Spreader leveled and cleaned so that flows are spread evenly over sand filter. Refill rills and gullies with sand.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1" in 24 hours)	Above ground (open sand filter)		Damaged Pipes	Any part of the piping that is crushed or deformed more than 20 percent or any other failure to the piping.	Pipe repaired or replaced.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	General		Insects	When insects such as wasps and hornets interfere with maintenance activities.	Insects destroyed or removed from site. Apply insecticides in compliance with adopted integrated pest management policies.
Every other year	General		Drawdown		Every two years conduct a drawdown test by filling the filter with water and measuring the decline in water level over a 4 - 8 hour period.

If you are unsure whether a problem exists, please contact Environmental Services at 253.591.5588.

Comments:



**#16 - Maintenance Checklist for Sand Filters (below ground/enclosed)**

Frequency	Drainage System Feature	Date	Problem	Conditions to Check For	Maintenance Activities and Conditions that Should Exist
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1" in 24 hours)	Below Ground Vault		Sediment Accumulation on Sand Media Section	Sediment depth exceeds one-half inch.	No sediment deposits on sand filter section that which would impede permeability of the filter section.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1" in 24 hours)	Below Ground Vault		Sediment Accumulation in Presettling Portion of Vault	Sediment accumulation in vault bottom exceeds the depth of the sediment zone plus 6 inches.	No sediment deposits in first chamber of vault.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1" in 24 hours)	Below Ground Vault		Trash/Debris Accumulation	Trash and debris accumulated in vault, or pipe inlet/outlet, floatables and non-floatables.	Trash and debris removed from vault and inlet/outlet piping.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1" in 24 hours)	Below Ground Vault		Sediment in Drain Pipes/ Cleanouts	When drain pipes, cleanouts become full with sediment and/or debris.	Sediment and debris removed.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1" in 24 hours)	Below Ground Vault		Clogged Sand Filter Media	Drawdown of water through the sand filter media takes longer than 24-hours, and/or flow through the overflow pipes occurs frequently. (Consider 4-8 hour drawdown tests.)	Top several inches of sand are scraped. May require replacement of entire sand filter depth depending on extent of plugging (a sieve analysis is helpful to determine if the lower sand has too high a proportion of fine material). Other options include removal of thatch, aerating the filter surface, tilling the filter surface, and replacing the top 4 inches of filter media.

Frequency	Drainage System Feature	Date	Problem	Conditions to Check For	Maintenance Activities and Conditions that Should Exist
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1” in 24 hours)	Below Ground Vault		Short Circuiting	Drawdown greater than 12 inches per hour. When seepage/flow occurs along the vault walls and corners. Sand eroding near inflow area. (Consider 4-8 hour drawdown tests.)	Sand filter media section re-laid and compacted along perimeter of vault to form a semi-seal. Erosion protection added to dissipate force of incoming flow and curtail erosion.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Below Ground Vault		Damaged Pipes	Inlet or outlet piping damaged or broken and in need of repair.	Pipe repaired and/or replaced.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1” in 24 hours)	Below Ground Vault		Flow Spreader	Flow spreader uneven or clogged so that flows are not uniformly distributed across sand filter.	Spreader leveled and cleaned so that flows are spread evenly over sand filter.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1” in 24 hours)	Below Ground Vault		Ventilation	Ventilation area blocked or plugged	Blocking material removed or cleared from ventilation area. A specified percentage of the vault surface area must provide ventilation to the vault interior (see design specifications).
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Below Ground Vault		Access Cover Damaged/Not Working	Cover cannot be opened, corrosion/deformation of cover. Maintenance person cannot remove cover using normal lifting pressure.	Cover repaired to proper working specifications or replaced.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Below Ground Vault		Vault Structure Damaged; Includes Cracks in Walls, Bottom, Damage to Frame and/or Top Slab.	Cracks wider than one-half inch or evidence of soil particles entering the structure through the cracks, or maintenance/inspection personnel determine that the vault is not structurally sound.	Vault replaced or repairs made so that vault meets design specifications and is structurally sound.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Below Ground Vault		Vault Structure Damaged; Includes Cracks in Walls, Bottom, Damage to Frame and/or Top Slab.	Cracks wider than one-half inch at the joint of any inlet/outlet pipe or evidence of soil particles entering through the cracks.	Vault repaired so that no cracks exist wider than one-fourth inch at the joint of the inlet/outlet pipe.

Frequency	Drainage System Feature	Date	Problem	Conditions to Check For	Maintenance Activities and Conditions that Should Exist
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Below Ground Vault		Baffles/Internal walls	Baffles or walls corroding, cracking, warping and/or showing signs of failure as determined by maintenance/inspection person.	Baffles repaired or replaced to specifications.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Below Ground Vault		Access Ladder	Damaged Ladder is corroded or deteriorated, not functioning properly, not securely attached to structure wall, missing rungs, cracks, and misaligned.	Ladder replaced or repaired to specifications, and is safe to use as determined by inspection personnel.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	General		Insects	When insects such as wasps and hornets interfere with maintenance activities.	Insects destroyed or removed from site. Apply insecticides in compliance with adopted integrated pest management policies.

If you are unsure whether a problem exists, please contact Environmental Services at 253.591.5588.

A below ground enclosed sand filter is a confined space. Visual inspections should be performed aboveground. If entry is required it should be performed by qualified personnel.

Comments:

### #17 - Maintenance Checklist for Baffle Oil/Water Separators - American Petroleum Institute (API) Type

Frequency	Drainage System Feature	Date	Problem	Conditions to Check For	Maintenance Activities and Conditions that Should Exist
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1" in 24 hours)	Monitoring		Inspection of discharge water for obvious signs of poor water quality.	Sheen, obvious oil present.	Effluent discharge from vault should be clear without thick visible sheen.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1" in 24 hours)	Monitoring		Sediment Accumulation	Sediment depth in bottom of vault exceeds 6 inches in depth.	No sediment deposits on vault bottom that would impede flow through the vault and reduce separation efficiency.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1" in 24 hours)	Monitoring		Trash and Debris Accumulation	Trash and debris accumulation in vault, or pipe inlet/outlet, floatables and non-floatables.	Trash and debris removed from vault, and inlet/outlet piping.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1" in 24 hours)	Monitoring		Oil Accumulation	Oil accumulations that exceed 1 inch, at the surface of the water or 6 inches of sludge in the sump.	Extract oil/sludge from vault by vactoring. Disposal in accordance with state and local rules and regulations. Clean separators by October 15 to remove material accumulated during the dry season. Clean separators after spills. Replace wash water with clean water before returning to service.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Structure		Damaged Pipes	Inlet or outlet piping damaged or broken and in need of repair.	Pipe repaired or replaced.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Structure		Access Cover Damaged/Not Working	Cover cannot be opened, corrosion/deformation of cover.	Cover repaired to proper working specifications or replaced.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Structure		Vault Structure Damage Includes Cracks in Walls Bottom, Damage to Frame and/or Top Slab	Maintenance person judges that structure is unsound.	Vault replaced or repairs made so that vault meets design specifications and is structurally sound.

Frequency	Drainage System Feature	Date	Problem	Conditions to Check For	Maintenance Activities and Conditions that Should Exist
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Structure		Vault Structure Damage Includes Cracks in Walls Bottom, Damage to Frame and/or Top Slab	Cracks wider than one-half inch at the joint of any inlet/outlet pipe or evidence of soil particles entering through the cracks.	Vault repaired so that no cracks exist wider than one-fourth inch at the joint of the inlet/outlet pipe.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Structure		Baffles	Baffles corroding, cracking, warping and/or showing signs of failure as determined by maintenance/inspection person.	Baffles repaired or replaced to specifications.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Structure		Access Ladder Damaged	Ladder is corroded or deteriorated, not functioning properly, not securely attached to structure wall, missing rungs, cracks, and misaligned.	Ladder replaced or repaired and meets specifications, and is safe to use as determined by inspection personnel.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	General		Insects	When insects such as wasps and hornets interfere with maintenance activities.	Insects destroyed or removed from site. Apply insecticides in compliance with adopted integrated pest management policies.

If you are unsure whether a problem exists, please contact Environmental Services at 253.591.5588.

An oil/water separator vault is a confined space. Visual inspections should be performed aboveground. If entry is required it should be performed by qualified personnel.

Comments:

**#18 - Maintenance Checklist for Coalescing Plate Oil/Water Separators**

Frequency	Drainage System Feature	Date	Problem	Conditions to Check For	Maintenance Activities and Conditions that Should Exist
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1" in 24 hours)	General		Monitoring	Inspection of discharge water for obvious signs of poor water quality.	Effluent discharge from vault should be clear with no visible sheen.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1" in 24 hours)	General		Sediment Accumulation	Sediment depth in bottom of vault exceeds 6 inches in depth and/or visible signs of sediment on plates.	No sediment deposits on vault bottom and plate media, which would impede flow through the vault and reduce separation efficiency.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1" in 24 hours)	General		Trash and Debris Accumulation	Trash and debris accumulated in vault, or pipe inlet/outlet, floatables and non-floatables.	Trash and debris removed from vault, and inlet/outlet piping.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1" in 24 hours)	General		Oil Accumulation	Oil accumulation that exceeds 1 inch at the water surface.	Oil is extracted from vault using vactoring methods. Dispose of in accordance with state and local rules and regulations.  Coalescing plates are cleaned by thoroughly rinsing and flushing. Direct wash-down effluent to the sanitary sewer system where permitted. Should be no visible oil depth on water. Clean separators by October 15 to remove material accumulated during the dry season. Clean separators after spills. Replace wash water with clean water before returning to service.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Structure		Damaged Coalescing Plates	Plate media broken, deformed, cracked and/or showing signs of failure.	A portion of the media pack or the entire plate pack is replaced depending on severity of failure.

Frequency	Drainage System Feature	Date	Problem	Conditions to Check For	Maintenance Activities and Conditions that Should Exist
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Structure		Damaged Pipes	Inlet or outlet piping damaged or broken and in need of repair.	Pipe repaired and or replaced.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Structure		Baffles	Baffles corroding, cracking, warping and/or showing signs of failure as determined by maintenance/inspection person.	Baffles repaired or replaced per specifications.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Structure		Vault Structure Damage - Includes Cracks in Walls, Bottom, Damage to Frame and/or Top Slab	Cracks wider than one-half inch or evidence of soil particles entering the structure through the cracks, or maintenance/inspection personnel determine that the vault is not structurally sound.	Vault replaced or repairs made so that vault meets design specifications and is structurally sound.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Structure		Vault Structure Damage - Includes Cracks in Walls, Bottom, Damage to Frame and/or Top Slab	Cracks wider than one-half inch at the joint of any inlet/outlet pipe or evidence of soil particles entering through the cracks.	Vault repaired so that no cracks exist wider than one-fourth inch at the joint of the inlet/outlet pipe.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Structure		Access Ladder Damaged	Ladder is corroded or deteriorated, not functioning properly, not securely attached to structure wall, missing rungs, cracks, and misaligned.	Ladder replaced or repaired and meets specifications, and is safe to use as determined by inspection personnel.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	General		Insects	When insects such as wasps and hornets interfere with maintenance activities.	Insects destroyed or removed from site. Apply insecticides in compliance with adopted integrated pest management policies.

If you are unsure whether a problem exists, please contact Environmental Services at 253.591.5588.

An oil/water separator vault is a confined space. Visual inspections should be performed aboveground. If entry is required it should be performed by qualified personnel.

Comments:

**#19 - Maintenance Checklist for Fencing/Shrubbery Screen/Other Landscaping**

Frequency	Drainage System Feature	Date	Problem	Conditions to Check For	Maintenance Activities and Conditions that Should Exist
Monthly from Oct. – Apr.	General		Missing or broken parts/dead shrubbery	Any defect in the fence or screen that permits easy entry to a facility.	Fence is mended or shrubs replaced to form a solid barrier to entry.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1" in 24 hours)	General		Erosion	Erosion has resulted in an opening under a fence that allows entry by people or pets.	Replace soil under fence so that no opening exceeds 4 inches in height.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr.	General		Unruly Vegetation	Shrubbery is growing out of control or is infested with weeds.	Shrubbery is trimmed and weeded to provide appealing aesthetics. Do not use chemicals to control weeds.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Fences		Damaged Parts	Posts out of plumb more than 6 inches.	Posts are within 1.5 inches of plumb.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Fences		Damaged Parts	Top rails bent more than 6 inches.	Top rail free of bends greater than 1 inch.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Fences		Damaged Parts	Any part of fence (including posts, top rails, and fabric) more than 1 foot out of design alignment.	Fence is aligned and meets design standards.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Fences		Damaged Parts	Missing or loose tension wire.	Tension wire in place and holding fabric.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Fences		Damaged Parts	Missing or loose barbed wire that is sagging more than 2.5 inches between posts.	Barbed wire in place with less than three-fourth inch sag between posts.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Fences		Damaged Parts	Extension arm missing, broken, or bent out of shape more than 1.5 inches.	Extension arm in place with no bends larger than three-fourth inch.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Fences		Deteriorated Paint or Protective Coating	Part or parts that have a rusting or scaling condition that has affected structural adequacy.	Structurally adequate posts or parts with a uniform protective coating.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	General		Insects	When insects such as wasps and hornets interfere with maintenance activities.	Insects destroyed or removed from site. Apply insecticides in compliance with adopted integrated pest management policies.

If you are unsure whether a problem exists, please contact Environmental Services at 253.591.5588.

Comments:



**#20 - Maintenance Checklist for Gates**

Frequency	Drainage System Feature	Date	Problem	Conditions to Check For	Maintenance Activities and Conditions that Should Exist
Monthly from Oct. – Apr.	General		Damaged or Missing Components	Gate is broken, jammed, or missing.	Pond has a functioning gate to allow entry of people and maintenance equipment such as mowers and backhoe. If a lock is used, make sure the City field staff have a key.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr.	General		Damaged or Missing Components	Broken or missing hinges such that gate cannot be easily opened and closed by one maintenance person.	Hinges intact and lubed. Gate is working freely.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	General		Damaged or Missing Components	Gate is out of plumb more than 6 inches and more than 1 foot out of design alignment.	Gate is aligned and vertical.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	General		Damaged or Missing Components	Missing stretcher bands, and ties.	Stretcher bar, bands, and ties in place.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	General		Insects	When insects such as wasps and hornets interfere with maintenance activities.	Insects destroyed or removed from site. Apply insecticides in compliance with adopted integrated pest management policies.

If you are unsure whether a problem exists, please contact Environmental Services at 253.591.5588.

Comments:

**#21 - Maintenance Checklist for Grounds (Landscaping)**

Frequency	Drainage System Feature	Date	Problem	Conditions to Check For	Maintenance Activities and Conditions that Should Exist
Monthly from Oct. – Apr.	General		Weeds (non-poisonous)	Weeds growing in more than 20 percent of the landscaped area (trees and shrubs only).	Weeds present in less than 5 percent of the landscaped area.
Biannually (Spring & Fall)	General		Poisonous Vegetation and Noxious Weeds	Any poisonous or nuisance vegetation which may constitute a hazard to maintenance personnel or the public. Any evidence of noxious weeds as defined in State and Local Regulations. (Apply requirements of adopted integrated vegetation management (IVM) policies for the use of herbicides.)	No danger of poisonous vegetation where maintenance personnel or the public might normally be. (Coordinate the Tacoma-Pierce County Health Department.) Complete eradication of noxious weeds may not be possible, however compliance with state or local eradication policies are required.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	General		Insects	When insects such as wasps and hornets interfere with maintenance activities.	Insects destroyed or removed from site. Apply insecticides in compliance with adopted integrated pest management policies.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1" in 24 hours)	General		Trash and Debris	Any trash and debris which exceed 5 cubic feet per 1,000 square feet (this is about equal to the amount of trash it would take to fill up one 32 gallon garbage can). In general, there should be no visual evidence of dumping.	Trash and debris cleared from site.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr. and After any major storm event (1" in 24 hours)	General		Erosion of Ground Surface	Noticeable rills are seen in landscaped areas.	Causes of erosion are identified and steps taken to slow down/ spread out the water. Eroded areas are filled, contoured, and seeded.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Trees and shrubs		Damage	Limbs or parts of trees or shrubs that are split or broken which affect more than 25 percent of the total foliage of the tree or shrub.	Trim trees/shrubs to restore shape. Replace trees/shrubs with severe damage.

Frequency	Drainage System Feature	Date	Problem	Conditions to Check For	Maintenance Activities and Conditions that Should Exist
Monthly from Oct. – Apr.	Trees and shrubs		Damage	Trees or shrubs that have been blown down or knocked over.	Replant tree, inspecting for injury to stem or roots. Replace if severely damaged.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Trees and shrubs		Damage	Trees or shrubs which are not adequately supported or are leaning over, causing exposure of the roots.	Place stakes and rubber-coated ties around young trees/shrubs for support.

If you are unsure whether a problem exists, please contact Environmental Services at 253.591.5588.

Comments:

**#22 - Maintenance Checklist for Rain Gardens (Cells)**

Frequency	Drainage System Feature	Date	Problem	Conditions to Check For	Maintenance Activities and Conditions that Should Exist
Biannually (Spring & Fall)	Ponding Area		Failure in earthen reservoir (embankments, dikes, berms, and side slopes)	Erosion (gullies/rills) greater than 2 inches around inlets, outlet, and along side slopes.	Eliminate source of erosion and stabilize damaged area (regrade, rock, vegetation, erosion control blanket).
Biannually (Spring & Fall)	Ponding Area		Failure in earthen reservoir embankments, dikes, berms, and side slopes)	Settlement greater than 4 inches (relative to undisturbed sections of berm)	Restore to design height.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Ponding Area		Failure in earthen reservoir (embankments, dikes, berms, and side slopes)	Downstream face of berm or embankment wet, seeps or leaks evident	Plug holes. Contact Geotechnical Engineer ASAP.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Ponding Area		Failure in earthen reservoir (embankments, dikes, berms, and side slopes)	Any evidence of rodent holes or water piping around holes if facility acts as dam or berm	Eradicate rodents/ repair holes (fill and compact).
Quarterly	Ponding Area		Sediment or debris accumulation	Accumulation of sediment or debris	Remove excess sediment or debris. Identify and control the sediment source, if feasible. Facility should be free of material. May contain standing water.
Biannually (Spring & Fall)	Ponding Area		Basin inlet via surface flow	Soil is exposed or signs of erosion are visible.	Repair and control erosion sources.
Biannually (Spring & Fall)	Ponding Area		Basin inlet via concentrated flow (e.g., curb cuts)	Sediment, vegetation, or debris partially or fully blocking inlet structure.	Clear the blockage. Identify the source of the blockage and take actions to prevent future blockages.
Biannually (Spring & Fall)	Ponding Area		Basin inlet splash block failure	Water disrupts soil media.	Reconfigure/repair blocks.
Biannually (Spring & Fall)	Ponding Area		Inlet/outlet pipe failure	Pipe is damaged.	Repair/replace.
Biannually (Spring & Fall)	Ponding Area		Inlet/outlet pipe failure	Pipe is clogged.	Remove roots or debris.

Frequency	Drainage System Feature	Date	Problem	Conditions to Check For	Maintenance Activities and Conditions that Should Exist
Biannually (Spring & Fall)	Ponding Area		Outlet pipe/ structure failure	Sediment, vegetation, or debris partially or fully blocking inlet structure	Clear the blockage. Identify the source of the blockage and take actions to prevent future blockages.
Biannually (Spring & Fall)	Ponding Area		Trash rack failure	Trash or debris present on trash rack.	Clean and dispose trash.
Biannually (Spring & Fall)	Ponding Area		Trash rack failure	Bar screen damaged or missing.	Replace.
Biannually (Spring & Fall)	Ponding Area		Check dams and Weirs failures	Sediment, vegetation, or debris partially or fully blocking check dam or weir.	Clear the blockage. Identify the source of the blockage and take actions to prevent future blockages.
Biannually (Spring & Fall)	Ponding Area		Check dams and Weirs failures	Erosion and/or undercutting is present	Repair and take preventative measures to prevent future erosion and/or undercutting.
Biannually (Spring & Fall)	Ponding Area		Flow Spreader problems	Sediment blocks 35% or more of ports/notches or, sediment fills 35% or more of sediment trap.	Remove and dispose.
Biannually (Spring & Fall)	Ponding Area		Flow Spreader problems	Grade board/baffle damaged or not level.	Remove and reinstall to level position.
Biannually (Spring & Fall)	Ponding Area		Overflow/ emergency spillway	Overflow spillway is partially or fully plugged with sediment or debris.	Remove/dispose.
Biannually (Spring & Fall)	Ponding Area		Overflow/ emergency spillway	Native soil is exposed or other signs of erosion damage are present.	Repair erosion and stabilize surface of spillway.
Biannually (Spring & Fall)	Ponding Area		Overflow/ emergency spillway	Spillway armament is missing.	Replace armament.
Biannually (Spring & Fall)	Ponding Area		Bioretention soil	Water remains in the basin 24 hours or longer after the end of a storm.	Ensure that underdrain (if present) is not clogged. If necessary, clear underdrain. If this is not the problem, the bioretention soil is likely clogged. Remove upper 2 to 3 inches of soil and replace with imported bioretention soil. Identify sources of clogging and correct.

Frequency	Drainage System Feature	Date	Problem	Conditions to Check For	Maintenance Activities and Conditions that Should Exist
Biannually (Spring & Fall)	Vegetation		Bottom swale vegetation	Less than 80% of swale bottom is covered with healthy wetland vegetation.	Plant additional vegetation. Ideally, planting should be performed in the fall or winter.
Biannually (Spring & Fall)	Vegetation		Upland slope vegetation	Less than 70% of upland slopes are covered with healthy vegetation.	Plant additional vegetation. Ideally, planting should be performed in the fall or winter.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Vegetation		Trees and shrubs	Large trees and shrubs interfere with operation of the basin or access for maintenance.	Prune or remove large trees and shrubs.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Vegetation		Trees and shrubs	Standing dead vegetation is present.	Remove standing dead vegetation when covering greater than 10% of basin area. Replace dead vegetation annually or immediately if necessary to control erosion (e.g., on a steep slope).
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Vegetation		Mulch	Bare spots (without much cover) are present or mulch covers less than 3 inches deep for compost or 4 inches deep for course woody mulch.	Replenish mulch to cover bare spots and augment to minimum depth.
As needed	Vegetation		Clippings	Grass or other vegetation clippings accumulate to 2 inches or greater in depth.	Remove clippings.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr.	Vegetation		Noxious weeds	Listed noxious vegetation is present. See State or Local Regulations concerning noxious weeds.	By law, noxious weeds must be removed and disposed immediately. It is strongly encouraged that herbicides and pesticides not be used in order to protect water quality, use an approved Integrated Pest Management Plan to manage noxious weeds.

Frequency	Drainage System Feature	Date	Problem	Conditions to Check For	Maintenance Activities and Conditions that Should Exist
Quarterly	Vegetation		Weeds	Weeds are present (unless on edge and providing erosion control)	Remove and dispose of weed material per Integrated Pest Management Plan. Herbicides and pesticides shall not be used.
Based on manufacturers instructions	Irrigation		Irrigation system (if any)	Irrigation system present.	Follow manufacturer's instructions for O&M.
Weekly (May – September)	Irrigation		Plant watering	Plant establishment period (1-3 years).	Water weekly during periods of no rain to ensure plant establishment.
As Needed	Irrigation		Plant watering	Longer term period (3+ years).	Water during drought conditions or more often if necessary to maintain plant cover.
Ongoing	Spill Prevention and Response		Spill prevention	Storage or use of potential contaminants in the vicinity of facility.	Exercise spill prevention measures whenever handling or storing potential contaminants.
As needed	Spill Prevention and Response		Spill response	Release of pollutants. Call to report any spill to the Washington Dept of Emergency Management 1-800-258-5990	Cleanup spills as soon as possible to prevent contamination of stormwater.
At startup	Training and Documentation		Training / written guidance	Training / written guidance is required for proper O&M.	Provide property owners and tenants with proper training and a copy of the O&M manual and Landscape and Maintenance Manual.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Safety		Safety (slopes)	Erosion of sides causes slope to exceed 1:4 or otherwise becomes a hazard.	Take actions to eliminate the hazard.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Safety		Safety (hydraulic structures)	Hydraulic structures (pipes, culverts, vaults, etc.) become a hazard to children playing in and around the facility.	Take actions to eliminate the hazard (such as covering and securing any openings).
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Safety		Line of sight	Vegetation causes some visibility (line of sight) or driver safety issues.	Prune.

Frequency	Drainage System Feature	Date	Problem	Conditions to Check For	Maintenance Activities and Conditions that Should Exist
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Aesthetics		Aesthetics	Damage/vandalism/debris accumulation.	Restore facility to original aesthetic conditions.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Aesthetics		Grass/vegetation	Less than 75% of planted vegetation is healthy with a generally good appearance.	Take appropriate maintenance actions. (e.g., remove/replace plants, amend soil, etc.).
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Aesthetics		Edging	Grass is starting to encroach on swale.	Repair edging.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	General		Insects	When insects such as wasps and hornets interfere with maintenance activities.	Insects destroyed or removed from site. Apply insecticides in compliance with adopted integrated pest management policies.
Biannually (Spring & Fall)	Pest Control		Mosquitoes	Standing water remains in the basin for more than 24 hours following storms.	Identify the cause of the standing water and take appropriate actions to address the problem (see Bioretention Soil above).
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Pest Control		Rodents	Rodent holes are present near the facility.	Fill and compact soil around the holes (refer to integrated pest management).

If you are unsure whether a problem exists, please contact Environmental Services at 253.591.5588.

Comments:



**#23 - Maintenance Checklist for Rain Gardens (Planters)**

Frequency	Drainage System Feature	Date	Problem	Conditions to Check For	Maintenance Activities and Conditions that Should Exist
Biannually (Spring & Fall)	Ponding Area		Cracks or Failure in concrete planter reservoir	Cracks wider than ½ inch, vault leaking, or maintenance/inspection personnel determine that the vault is not structurally sound	Vault repaired or replaced so that vaults meets design specifications, does not leak and is structurally sound.
Quarterly	Ponding Area		Sediment or debris accumulation	Accumulation of sediment or debris	Remove excess sediment or debris. Identify and control the sediment source, if feasible. Facility should be free of material. May contain standing water.
Biannually (Spring & Fall)	Ponding Area		Basin inlet via surface flow	Soil is exposed or signs of erosion are visible.	Repair and control erosion sources.
Biannually (Spring & Fall)	Ponding Area		Basin inlet via concentrated flow (e.g., curb cuts)	Sediment, vegetation, or debris partially or fully blocking inlet structure.	Clear the blockage. Identify the source of the blockage and take actions to prevent future blockages.
Biannually (Spring & Fall)	Ponding Area		Basin inlet splash block failure	Water splashes adjacent buildings.	Reconfigure/repair blocks.
Biannually (Spring & Fall)	Ponding Area		Basin inlet splash block failure	Water disrupts soil media.	Reconfigure/repair blocks.
Biannually (Spring & Fall)	Ponding Area		Inlet/outlet pipe failure	Pipe is damaged.	Repair/replace.
Biannually (Spring & Fall)	Ponding Area		Inlet/outlet pipe failure	Pipe is clogged.	Remove roots or debris.
Biannually (Spring & Fall)	Ponding Area		Outlet pipe/structure failure	Sediment, vegetation, or debris partially or fully blocking inlet structure.	Clear the blockage. Identify the source of the blockage and take actions to prevent future blockages.
Biannually (Spring & Fall)	Ponding Area		Trash rack failure	Trash or debris present on trash rack.	Clean and dispose trash.
Biannually (Spring & Fall)	Ponding Area		Trash rack failure	Bar screen damaged or missing.	Replace.

Frequency	Drainage System Feature	Date	Problem	Conditions to Check For	Maintenance Activities and Conditions that Should Exist
Biannually (Spring & Fall)	Ponding Area		Check dams and weir failures	Sediment, vegetation, or debris partially or fully blocking check dam or weir.	Clear the blockage. Identify the source of the blockage and take actions to prevent future blockages.
Biannually (Spring & Fall)	Ponding Area		Check dams and weir failures	Erosion and/or undercutting is present	Repair and take preventative measures to prevent future erosion and/or undercutting.
Biannually (Spring & Fall)	Ponding Area		Flow Spreader problems	Sediment blocks 35% or more of ports/notches or, sediment fills 35% or more of sediment trap.	Remove and dispose.
Biannually (Spring & Fall)	Ponding Area		Flow Spreader problems	Grade board/baffle damaged or not level.	Remove and reinstall to level position.
Biannually (Spring & Fall)	Ponding Area		Overflow/emergency spillway	Overflow spillway is partially or fully plugged with sediment or debris.	Remove/dispose.
Biannually (Spring & Fall)	Ponding Area		Overflow/emergency spillway	Native soil is exposed or other signs of erosion damage are present.	Repair erosion and stabilize surface of spillway.
Biannually (Spring & Fall)	Ponding Area		Overflow/emergency spillway	Spillway armament is missing.	Replace armament.
Biannually (Spring & Fall)	Ponding Area		Bioretention soil	Water remains in the basin 24 hours or longer after the end of a storm.	Ensure that underdrain (if present) is not clogged. If necessary, clear underdrain. If this is not the problem, the bioretention soil is likely clogged. Remove upper 2 to 3 inches of soil and replace with imported bioretention soil. Identify sources of clogging and correct.
Biannually (Spring & Fall)	Vegetation		Bottom swale vegetation	Less than 80% of swale bottom is covered with healthy wetland vegetation.	Plant additional vegetation. Ideally, planting should be performed in the fall or winter.
Biannually (Spring & Fall)	Vegetation		Upland slope vegetation	Less than 70% of upland slopes are covered with healthy vegetation.	Plant additional vegetation. Ideally, planting should be performed in the fall or winter.

Frequency	Drainage System Feature	Date	Problem	Conditions to Check For	Maintenance Activities and Conditions that Should Exist
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Vegetation		Trees and shrubs	Large trees and shrubs interfere with operation of the basin or access for maintenance.	Prune or remove large trees and shrubs.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Vegetation		Trees and shrubs	Standing dead vegetation is present.	Remove standing dead vegetation when covering greater than 10% of basin area. Replace dead vegetation annually or immediately if necessary to control erosion (e.g., on a steep slope).
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Vegetation		Mulch	Bare spots (without much cover) are present or mulch covers less than 3 inches deep for compost or 4 inches deep for course woody mulch.	Replenish mulch to cover bare spots and augment to minimum depth.
As needed	Vegetation		Clippings	Grass or other vegetation clippings accumulate to 2 inches or greater in depth.	Remove clippings.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr.	Vegetation		Noxious weeds	Listed noxious vegetation is present. See State or Local Regulations concerning noxious weeds.	By law, noxious weeds must be removed and disposed immediately. It is strongly encouraged that herbicides and pesticides not be used in order to protect water quality, use an approved Integrated Pest Management Plan to manage noxious weeds.
Quarterly	Vegetation		Weeds	Weeds are present (unless on edge and providing erosion control)	Remove and dispose of weed material per Integrated Pest Management Plan. Herbicides and pesticides shall not be used.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	General		Insects	When insects such as wasps and hornets interfere with maintenance activities.	Insects destroyed or removed from site. Apply insecticides in compliance with adopted integrated pest management policies.

Frequency	Drainage System Feature	Date	Problem	Conditions to Check For	Maintenance Activities and Conditions that Should Exist
Biannually (Spring & Fall)	Pest Control		Mosquitoes	Standing water remains in the basin for more than 24 hours following storms.	Identify the cause of the standing water and take appropriate actions to address the problem (see Bioretention Soil above).
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Pest Control		Rodents	Rodent holes are present near the facility.	Fill and compact soil around the holes (refer to integrated pest management).

If you are unsure whether a problem exists, please contact Environmental Services at 253.591.5588.

Comments:

**#24 - Maintenance Checklist for Cisterns**

Frequency	Drainage System Feature	Date	Problem	Conditions to Check For	Maintenance Activities and Conditions that Should Exist
Biannually (Spring & Fall)	Collection Facilities		Roof	Debris has accumulated.	Remove debris.
Biannually (Spring & Fall)	Collection Facilities		Gutter	Debris has accumulated.	Clean gutters (the most critical cleaning is in mid- to late-spring to flush the pollen deposits from surrounding trees) .
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Collection Facilities		Screens at the top of downspout and cistern inlet	Screen has deteriorated.	Replace.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr.	Collection Facilities		Screens at the top of downspout and cistern inlet	None. Preventative maintenance.	Clear screen of any accumulated debris.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr.	Collection Facilities		Low flow orifice	None. Preventative maintenance.	Clean low flow orifice.
Biannually (Spring & Fall)	Collection Facilities		Overflow pipe	Pipe is damaged.	Repair/replace.
Biannually (Spring & Fall)	Collection Facilities		Overflow pipe	Pipe is clogged.	Remove debris.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Collection Facilities		Cistern	Debris has accumulated at bottom of tank	Remove debris.
At startup	Training and Documentation		Training / written guidance	Training / written guidance is required for proper O&M.	Provide property owners and tenants with proper training and a copy of the O&M manual.
Ongoing	Safety		Access and Safety	Access to cistern required for maintenance or cleaning.	Any cistern detention systems opening that could allow the entry of people must be marked: "DANGER—CONFINED SPACE".

Frequency	Drainage System Feature	Date	Problem	Conditions to Check For	Maintenance Activities and Conditions that Should Exist
Annually (preferably Sept.)	General		Insects	When insects such as wasps and hornets interfere with maintenance activities.	Insects destroyed or removed from site. Apply insecticides in compliance with adopted integrated pest management policies.

If you are unsure whether a problem exists, please contact Environmental Services at 253.591.5588.

Comments:

**#25 - Maintenance Checklist for Compost Amended Soil**

Frequency	Drainage System Feature	Date	Problem	Conditions to Check For	Maintenance Activities and Conditions that Should Exist
Annually (preferably Sept.)	General Facility Requirements		Soil media (maintain high organic soil content)	Vegetation not fully covering ground surface.	Re-mulch landscape beds with 2-3 inches of mulch until the vegetation fully closes over the ground surface.
Ongoing	General Facility Requirements		Soil media (maintain high organic soil content)	None. Preventative maintenance	Return leaf fall and shredded woody materials from the landscape to the site as mulch.
Ongoing	General Facility Requirements		Soil media (maintain high organic soil content)	None. Preventative maintenance	On turf areas, "grasscycle" (mulch-mow or leave the clippings) to build turf health.
Ongoing	General Facility Requirements		Soil media (maintain high organic soil content)	None. Preventative maintenance	Do not use pesticides; instead implement an Integrated Pest Management Plan.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	General Facility Requirements		Soil media (maintain high organic soil content)	None. Preventative maintenance	Where fertilization is needed (mainly turf and annual flower beds), a moderate fertilization program which relies on natural organic fertilizers (like compost) or slow release synthetic balanced fertilizers.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	General Facility Requirements		Compaction	Soils become waterlogged, do not appear to be infiltrating.	To remediate, aerate soil, till or further amend soil. If drainage is still slow, consider investigating alternative causes (e.g., high wet-season groundwater levels, low permeability soils). Also consider land use and protection from compacting activities. If areas are turf, aerate compacted areas and top dress them with 1/4-1/2 inch of compost to renovate them.

Frequency	Drainage System Feature	Date	Problem	Conditions to Check For	Maintenance Activities and Conditions that Should Exist
Annually (preferably Sept.)	General Facility Requirements		Erosion/scouring	Areas of potential erosion are visible.	Take steps to repair or prevent erosion. Identify and address the causes of erosion.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	General Facility Requirements		Grass/vegetation	Less than 75% of planted vegetation is healthy with a generally good appearance.	Take appropriate maintenance actions (e.g., remove/replace plants).
Monthly from Oct. – Apr.	General Facility Requirements		Noxious weeds	Listed noxious vegetation is present. See State and Local Regulations concerning noxious weeds.	By law, noxious weeds must be removed and disposed immediately. Do not utilize pesticides and herbicides; instead implement an Integrated Pest Management Plan.
Quarterly	General Facility Requirements		Weeds	Weeds are present.	Remove and dispose of weed material. Do not utilize pesticides and herbicides; instead implement an Integrated Pest Management Plan.

If you are unsure whether a problem exists, please contact Environmental Services at 253.591.5588.

Comments:



**#26 - Maintenance Checklist for Vegetated Roof**

Frequency	Drainage System Feature	Date	Problem	Conditions to Check For	Maintenance Activities and Conditions that Should Exist
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Soil / Growth Medium		Growth medium	Water does not permeate growth media (runs off soil surface).	Aerate or replace media.
Biannually (Spring & Fall)	Soil / Growth Medium		Fallen leaves/debris	Fallen leaves or debris are present.	Remove/dispose.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Soil / Growth Medium		Erosion/scouring	Areas of potential erosion are visible.	Take steps to repair or prevent erosion. Stabilize with additional soil substrate/growth medium and additional plants.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	System Structural Components		General	Structural components are present.	Inspect structural components for deterioration or failure. Repair/replace as necessary.
Biannually (Spring & Fall)	System Structural Components		Outlet pipe	Sediment, vegetation, or debris blocks 35% or more of outlet structure.	Clear blockage. Identify and correct any problems that led to blockage.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	System Structural Components		Outlet pipe	Outlet pipe is in poor condition.	Repair/replace.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	System Structural Components		Outlet pipe	Pipe is clogged.	Remove roots or debris.
Biannually (Spring & Fall)	Vegetation		Coverage	Vegetative coverage falls below 75% (unless design specifications stipulate less than 75% coverage).	Install more vegetation.
Monthly from Oct. – Apr.	Vegetation		Noxious weeds	Listed noxious vegetation is present. See State and Local Regulations concerning noxious weeds.	By law, noxious weeds must be removed and disposed immediately. It is strongly encouraged that herbicides and pesticides not be used in order to protect water quality IPM.

Frequency	Drainage System Feature	Date	Problem	Conditions to Check For	Maintenance Activities and Conditions that Should Exist
Quarterly	Vegetation		Weeds	Weeds are present	Remove and dispose of weed material. It is strongly encouraged that herbicides and pesticides not be used in order to protect water quality IPM.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Vegetation		Plants	Dead vegetation is present.	Remove dead vegetation when covering greater than 10% of basin area. Replace dead vegetation annually or immediately if necessary to control erosion.
Based on manufacturer's instructions	Irrigation		Irrigation system (if any)	Irrigation system present.	Follow manufacturer's instructions for O&M.
Weekly (May – September)	Irrigation		Plant watering	Plant establishment period (1-3 years).	Water during periods of no rain to ensure plant establishment.
As Needed	Irrigation		Plant watering	Longer term period (3+ years).	Water during drought conditions or more often if necessary to maintain plant cover.
Ongoing	Spill Prevention and Response		Spill prevention	Storage or use of potential contaminants in the vicinity of facility.	Exercise spill prevention measures whenever handling or storing potential contaminants.
As needed	Spill Prevention and Response		Spill response	Release of pollutants. Call to report any spill to the Washington Dept of Emergency Management 1-800-258-5990	Cleanup spills as soon as possible to prevent contamination of stormwater.
At startup	Training and Documentation		Training / written guidance	Training / written guidance is required for proper O&M.	Provide property owners and tenants with proper training and a copy of the O&M manual and Landscape and Maintenance Manual.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Safety		Access and Safety	Egress and Ingress routes	Maintain egress and ingress routes to design standards and fire codes.

Frequency	Drainage System Feature	Date	Problem	Conditions to Check For	Maintenance Activities and Conditions that Should Exist
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Aesthetics		Aesthetics	Damage/vandalism/debris accumulation.	Restore facility to original aesthetic conditions.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Aesthetics		Grass/vegetation	Less than 75% of planted vegetation is healthy with a generally good appearance.	Take appropriate maintenance actions. (e.g., remove/replace plants, amend soil, etc.).
Biannually (Spring & Fall)	Pest Control		Mosquitoes	Standing water remains for more than 24 hours following storms.	Remove standing water. Identify the cause of the standing water and take appropriate actions to address the problem (improve drainage).

If you are unsure whether a problem exists, please contact Environmental Services at 253.591.5588.

Comments:

**#27 - Maintenance Checklist for Pervious Pavement**

Frequency	Drainage System Feature	Date	Problem	Conditions to Check For	Maintenance Activities and Conditions that Should Exist
Biannually (Spring & Fall)	Pervious asphalt or cement concrete		Sediment Buildup	None. Maintenance to prevent clogging with fine sediment.	Use conventional street sweepers equipped with vacuums, water, and brushes or pressure washer to restore permeability.
Ongoing	Pervious asphalt or cement concrete		Sediment Buildup or Stockpiling.	None. Maintenance to prevent clogging with fine sediment.	Prohibit use of sand and sealant application and protect from construction runoff. Prohibit stockpiling on pervious surfaces.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Pervious asphalt or cement concrete		Cracks	Major cracks or trip hazards.	Fill with patching mixes. Large cracks and settlement may require cutting and replacing the pavement section.
As needed	Pervious asphalt or cement concrete		Large utility cuts.	Utility cuts.	Any damage or change due to large utility cuts may require replacement in kind. Contact Environmental Services to determine if replacement in kind is required.
Biannually (Spring & Fall)	Pervious asphalt or cement concrete		Fallen leaves / debris	Fallen leaves or debris.	Remove/dispose.
Biannually (Spring & Fall)	Interlocking concrete paver blocks		Missing or damaged pavers.	Interlocking paving block missing or damaged.	Replace damaged paver block.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Interlocking concrete paver blocks		Sediment Buildup	Settlement of surface.	May require resetting.
Biannually (Spring & Fall)	Interlocking concrete paver blocks		Sediment Buildup	Sediment or debris accumulation between paver blocks.	Remove/dispose.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Interlocking concrete paver blocks		Missing material between pavers.	Loss of void material between paver blocks.	Refill per manufacturer's recommendations.
Varies	Interlocking concrete paver blocks		Other	Varied conditions.	Perform O&M per manufacturer's recommendations.

Frequency	Drainage System Feature	Date	Problem	Conditions to Check For	Maintenance Activities and Conditions that Should Exist
Biannually (Spring & Fall)	Open-celled paving grid with gravel		Sediment Buildup	Sediment or debris accumulation in grid voids.	Remove/dispose.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Open-celled paving grid with gravel		Loss of material in grid.	Loss of soil and/or grass material in grid.	Refill and/or replant per manufacturer's recommendations.
Varies	Open-celled paving grid with gravel		Other	Varied conditions.	Perform O&M per manufacturer's recommendations.
Biannually (Spring & Fall)	Open-celled paving grid with gravel		Sediment Buildup	Sediment or debris accumulation in grid voids.	Remove/dispose.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Open-celled paving grid with gravel		Loss of material in grid.	Loss of soil and/or grass material in grid.	Refill and/or replant per manufacturer's recommendations.
Varies	Open-celled paving grid with gravel		Other	Varied conditions.	Perform O&M per manufacturer's recommendations.
Ongoing	All pervious pavement types		Materials Storage	Storage or use of potential contaminants in the vicinity of facility.	Exercise spill prevention measures whenever handling or storing potential contaminants.
As needed	All pervious pavement types		Spills	Release of pollutants. Call to report any spill to the Washington Dept of Emergency Management 1-800-258-5990	Cleanup spills as soon as possible to prevent contamination of stormwater.

If you are unsure whether a problem exists, please contact Environmental Services at 253.591.5588.

Comments:

**#28 - Proprietary Stormwater Devices**

At a minimum all stormwater devices must be inspected every six months and after every major storm event. Use the manufacturer's recommendations as tailored to the use of the site and as outlined in the Operation and Maintenance Manual.

If you are unsure whether a problem exists, please contact Environmental Services at 253.591.5588.

Comments:

**#29 - General Maintenance Concerns for Stormwater Facilities**

Frequency	Drainage System Feature	Date	Problem	Conditions to Check For	Maintenance Activities and Conditions that Should Exist
Based on manufacturers instructions	Irrigation		Irrigation system (if any)	Irrigation system present.	Follow manufacturer's instructions for O&M.
Weekly (May – September)	Irrigation		Plant watering	Plant establishment period (1-3 years).	Water weekly during periods of no rain to ensure plant establishment.
As Needed	Irrigation		Plant watering	Longer term period (3+ years).	Water during drought conditions or more often if necessary to maintain plant cover.
Ongoing	Spill Prevention and Response		Spill prevention	Storage or use of potential contaminants in the vicinity of facility.	Exercise spill prevention measures whenever handling or storing potential contaminants.
As needed	Spill Prevention and Response		Spill response	Release of pollutants. Call to report any spill to the Washington Dept of Emergency Management 1-800-258-5990	Cleanup spills as soon as possible to prevent contamination of stormwater.
At startup	Training and Documentation		Training / written guidance	Training / written guidance is required for proper O&M.	Provide property owners and tenants with proper training and a copy of the O&M manual and Landscape and Maintenance Manual.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Safety		Safety (slopes)	Erosion of sides causes slope to exceed 1:4 or otherwise becomes a hazard.	Take actions to eliminate the hazard.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Safety		Safety (hydraulic structures)	Hydraulic structures (pipes, culverts, vaults, etc.) become a hazard to children playing in and around the facility.	Take actions to eliminate the hazard (such as covering and securing any openings).
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Safety		Line of sight	Vegetation causes some visibility (line of sight) or driver safety issues.	Prune.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Aesthetics		Aesthetics	Damage/vandalism/debris accumulation.	Restore facility to original aesthetic conditions.

Frequency	Drainage System Feature	Date	Problem	Conditions to Check For	Maintenance Activities and Conditions that Should Exist
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Aesthetics		Grass/vegetation	Less than 75% of planted vegetation is healthy with a generally good appearance.	Take appropriate maintenance actions. (e.g., remove/replace plants, amend soil, etc.).
Annually (preferably Sept.)	Aesthetics		Edging	Grass is starting to encroach on swale.	Repair edging.
Annually (preferably Sept.)	General		Poisonous Vegetation and noxious weeds	Any poisonous or nuisance vegetation may constitute a hazard to maintenance personnel or to the public. Any evidence of noxious weeds as defined by the State or local regulations. The Washington State Noxious Weed Control Board has a list of common noxious weeds at <a href="http://www.nwcb.wa.gov">www.nwcb.wa.gov</a>	No danger of poisonous vegetation. Compliance with state or local eradication policies is required. Apply requirements of adopted integrated pest management plan as necessary.

If you are unsure whether a problem exists, please contact Environmental Services at 253.591.5588.

Comments:



**#30 - Maintenance Checklist for Trees**

Frequency	Drainage System Feature	Date	Problem	Conditions to Check For	Maintenance Activities and Conditions that Should Exist
Once a year for the first three years	Trees		Future failure	Weak branch attachments; co-dominant stems	Structural Pruning <sup>a</sup>
As needed	Trees		Threat to public safety	Low branches that may cause safety concerns if they remain.	Crown Raising <sup>a</sup>
As needed, for safety	Trees		Threat to public safety	Dead, diseased and/or broken branches	Pruning to remove dead, diseased and/or broken branches.
As needed	Trees		Threat to public safety	Dead, severely damaged or declining	Replace per planting plan or acceptable substitute.

- a. Trees shall be pruned according to industry standards, ANSI A300 Part 1 and the International Society of Arboiculture's Best Management Practices - Tree Pruning.

If you are unsure whether a problem exists, please contact Environmental Services at 253.591.5588.

Comments:

## Appendix D Wetlands and Stormwater Management Guidelines

As Amended from Chapter 14 of "Wetlands and Urbanization, Implications for the Future," by Richard R. Horner, Amanda A. Azous, Klaus O. Richter, Sarah S. Cooke, Lorin E. Reinelt and Kern Ewing.

If you are unfamiliar with these guidelines, read the description of the approach and organization that follows. If you are familiar, proceed directly to the appropriate guide sheet(s) for guidelines covering your issue(s) or objective(s):

Guide Sheet 1: Comprehensive Landscape Planning for Wetlands and Stormwater Management

Guide Sheet 2: Wetlands Protection Guidelines

### D.1 Approach and Organization of the Management Guidelines

#### Introduction

The Puget Sound Wetlands and Stormwater Management Research Program performed comprehensive research with the goal of deriving strategies that protect wetland resources in urban and urbanizing areas, while also benefiting the management of urban stormwater runoff that can affect those resources. The research primarily involved long-term comparisons of wetland ecosystem characteristics before and after their watersheds urbanized, and between a set of wetlands that became affected by urbanization (treatment sites) and a set whose watersheds did not change (control sites). This work was supplemented by shorter term and more intensive studies of pollutant transport and fate in wetlands, several laboratory experiments, and ongoing review of relevant work being performed elsewhere. These research efforts were aimed at defining the types of impacts that urbanization can cause and the degree to which they develop under different conditions, in order to identify means of avoiding or minimizing impacts that impair wetland structure and functioning. The program's scope embraced both situations where urban drainage incidentally affects wetlands in its path, as well as those in which direct stormwater management actions change the wetland hydrology, water quality or both.

This document presents preliminary management guidelines for urban wetlands and their stormwater discharges based on the research results. The set of guidelines is the principal vehicle to implement the research findings in environmental planning and management practice.

#### Guidelines Scope and Underlying Principles.

**NOTE:** For terms in **boldface** type see item 1 under Support Materials.

1. These provisions currently have the status of guidelines rather than requirements. Application of these guidelines does not fulfill assessment and permitting requirements that may be associated with a project. It is, in general, necessary to follow the stipulations of the State Environmental Policy Act and to contact such agencies as the local planning agency; the Washington Departments of Ecology, Fisheries, and Wildlife; the U. S. Environmental Protection Agency; and the U. S. Army Corps of Engineers.
2. Using the guidelines should be approached from a problem-solving viewpoint. The "problem" is regarded to be accomplishing one or more particular planning or

management objectives involving a **wetland** potentially or presently affected by stormwater drainage from an urban or urbanizing area. The objectives can be broad, specific, or both. Broad objectives involve comprehensive planning and subsequent management of a drainage catchment or other **landscape unit** containing one or more wetlands. Specific objectives pertain to managing a wetland having particular attributes to be sustained. Of course, the prospect for success is greater with ability to manage the whole landscape influencing the wetland, rather than just the wetland itself.

3. The guidelines are framed from the standpoint that some change in the landscape has the potential to modify the physical and chemical **structure** of the wetland environment, which in turn could alter biological communities and the wetland's ecological **functions**. The general objective in this framework would be to avoid or minimize negative ecological change. This view is in contrast to one in which a wetland has at some time in the past experienced negative change, and consequent ecological degradation, and where the general objective would be to recover some or all of the lost structure and functioning through **enhancement** or **restoration** actions. Direct attention to this problem was outside the scope of the Puget Sound Wetlands and Stormwater Management Research Program. However, the guidelines do give information that applies to enhancement and restoration. For example, attempted restoration of a diverse amphibian community would not be successful if the water level fluctuation limits consistent with high amphibian species richness are not observed.
4. The guidelines can be applied with whatever information concerning the problem is available. Of course, the comprehensiveness and certainty of the outcome will vary with the amount and quality of information employed. The guidelines can be applied in an iterative fashion to improve management understanding as the information improves. Wetlands Guidance Appendix 1 lists the information needed to perform basic analyses, followed by other information that can improve the understanding and analysis.
5. These guidelines emphasize avoiding structural, hydrologic, and water quality **modifications** of existing wetlands to the extent possible in the process of urbanization and the management of urban stormwater runoff.
6. In pursuit of this goal, the guidelines take a systematic approach to management problems that potentially involve both urban stormwater (quantity, quality, or both) and wetlands. The consideration of wetlands involves their area extent, **values**, and functions. This approach emphasizes a comprehensive analysis of alternatives to solve the identified problem. The guidelines encourage conducting the analysis on a landscape scale and considering all of the possible stormwater management alternatives, which may or may not involve a wetland. They favor **source control best management practices** (BMPs) and **pre-treatment** of stormwater runoff prior to release to wetlands.
7. Furthermore, the guidelines take a holistic view of managing wetland resources in an urban setting. Thus, they recognize that urban wetlands have the potential to be affected structurally and functionally whether or not they are formally designated for stormwater management purposes. Even if an urban wetland is not structurally or hydrologically engineered for such purposes, it may experience altered hydrology (more or less water), reduced water quality, and a host of other impacts related to urban conditions. It is the objective of the guidelines to avoid or reduce the negative effects on wetland resources from both specific stormwater management actions and incidental urban impacts.

## Support Materials

1. The guidelines use certain terms that require definition to ensure that the intended meaning is conveyed to all users. Such terms are printed in **boldface** the first time that they appear in each guide sheet, and are defined in Wetlands Guidance Appendix B.
2. The guideline provisions were drawn principally from the available results of the Puget Sound Wetlands and Stormwater Management Research Program, as set forth in Sections 2 and 3 of the program's summary publication, Wetlands and Urbanization, Implications for the Future (Horner et al. 1996). Where the results in this publication are the basis for a numerical provision, a separate reference is not given. Numerical provisions based on other sources are referenced. See Wetlands Guidance References at the end of this appendix.
3. Appendix 3 presents a list of plant species native to wetlands in the Puget Sound Region. This appendix is intended for reference by guideline users who are not specialists in wetland botany. However, non-specialists should obtain expert advice when making decisions involving vegetation.
4. Appendix 4 compares the water chemistry characteristics of *Sphagnum* bog and fen wetlands (termed **priority peat wetlands** in these guidelines) with more common wetland communities. These bogs and fens appear to be the most sensitive among the Puget Sound lowland wetlands to alteration of water chemistry, and require special water quality management to avoid losses of their relatively rare communities.

### D.2 Guide Sheet 1: Comprehensive Landscape Planning for Wetlands and Stormwater Management

**Wetlands** in newly developing areas will receive urban effects even if not specifically "used" in stormwater management. Therefore, the task is proper overall management of the resources and protection of their general **functioning**, including their role in storm drainage systems. Stormwater management in newly developing areas is distinguished from management in already developed locations by the existence of many more feasible stormwater control options prior to development. The guidelines emphasize appropriate selection among the options to achieve optimum overall resource protection benefits, extending to downstream receiving waters and ground water aquifers, as well as to wetlands.

The comprehensive planning guidelines are based on two principles that are recognized to create the most effective environmental management: (1) the best management policies for the protection of wetlands and other natural resources are those that prevent or minimize the development of impacts at potential sources; and (2) the best management strategies are self-perpetuating, that is they do not require periodic infusions of capital and labor. To apply these principles in managing wetlands in a newly developing area, carry out the following steps.

#### Guide Sheet 1A: Comprehensive Planning Steps

1. Define the **landscape unit** subject to comprehensive planning. Refer to the definition of landscape unit in Appendix 2 for assistance in defining it.
2. Begin the development of a plan for the landscape unit with attention to the following general principles:

- Formulate the plan on the basis of clearly articulated community goals. Carefully identify conflicts and choices between retaining and protecting desired resources and community growth.
  - Map and assess land suitability for urban uses. Include the following landscape features in the assessment: forested land, open unforested land, steep slopes, erosion-prone soils, foundation suitability, soil suitability for waste disposal, aquifers, aquifer recharge areas, wetlands, floodplains, surface waters, agricultural lands, and various categories of urban land use. When appropriate, the assessment can highlight outstanding local or regional resources that the community determines should be protected (e. g., a fish run, scenic area, recreational area, threatened species habitat, farmland). Mapping and assessment should recognize not only these resources but also additional areas needed for their sustenance.
3. Maximize natural water storage and infiltration opportunities within the landscape unit and outside of existing wetlands, especially:
    - Promote the conservation of forest cover. Building on land that is already deforested affects basin hydrology to a lesser extent than converting forested land. Loss of forest cover reduces interception storage, detention in the organic forest floor layer, and water losses by evapotranspiration, resulting in large peak runoff increases and either their negative effects or the expense of countering them with structural solutions.
    - Maintain natural storage reservoirs and drainage corridors, including depressions, areas of permeable soils, swales, and intermittent streams. Develop and implement policies and regulations to discourage the clearing, filling, and channelization of these features. Utilize them in drainage networks in preference to pipes, culverts, and engineered ditches.
    - In evaluating infiltration opportunities refer to the stormwater management manual for the jurisdiction and pay particular attention to the selection criteria for avoiding groundwater contamination and poor soils and hydrogeological conditions that cause these facilities to fail. If necessary, locate developments with large amounts of impervious surfaces or a potential to produce relatively contaminated runoff away from groundwater recharge areas. Relatively dense developments on glacial outwash soils may require additional runoff treatment to protect groundwater quality.
  4. Establish and maintain **buffers** surrounding wetlands and in riparian zones as required by local regulations or recommended by the Puget Sound Water Quality Authority's wetland guidelines. Also, maintain interconnections among wetlands and other natural habitats to allow for wildlife movements.
  5. Determine whether the wetland has a breeding, native amphibian population. A survey should be conducted in the spring.
  6. Take specific management measures to avoid general urban impacts on wetlands and other water bodies (e. g., littering, vegetation destruction, human and pet intrusion harmful to wildlife).
  7. To support management of runoff water quantity, perform a hydrologic analysis of the contributing drainage catchment to define the type and extent of flooding and stream channel erosion problems associated with existing development, redevelopment, or new development that require control to protect the beneficial uses of receiving waters,

including wetlands. This analysis should include assembly of existing flow data and hydrologic modeling as necessary to establish conditions limiting to attainment of beneficial uses. Modeling should be performed as directed by the stormwater management manual in effect in the jurisdiction.

8. In wetlands previously relatively unaffected by human activities, manage stormwater quantity to attempt to match the **pre-development hydroperiod** and **hydrodynamics**. In wetlands whose hydrology has been disturbed, consider ways of reducing hydrologic impacts. This provision involves not only management of high runoff volumes and rates of flow during the wet season, but also prevention of water supply depletion during the dry season. The latter guideline may require flow augmentation if urbanization reduces existing surface or groundwater inflows. Refer to Guide Sheet 2, Wetland Protection Guidelines, for detail on implementing these guidelines.
9. Assess alternatives for the control of runoff water quantities as follows:
  - a. Define the runoff quantity problem subject to management by analyzing the proposed land development action.
  - b. For existing development or redevelopment, assess possible alternative solutions that are applicable at the site of the problem occurrence, including:
    - Protect health, safety, and property from flooding by removing habitation from the flood plain.
    - Prevent stream channel erosion by stabilizing the eroding bed and/or bank area with **bioengineering** techniques, preferably, or by structurally reinforcing it, if this solution would be consistent with the protection of aquatic habitats and beneficial uses of the stream (refer to Chapter 173-201A of the Washington Administrative Code (WAC) for the definition of beneficial uses).
  - c. For new development or redevelopment, assess possible regulatory and incentive land use control alternatives, such as density controls, clearing limits, impervious surface limits, transfer of development rights, purchase of conservation areas, etc.
  - d. If the alternatives considered in Steps 9a or 9b cannot solve an existing or potential problem, perform an analysis of the contributing drainage catchment to assess possible alternative solutions that can be applied **onsite** or on a **regional** scale. The most appropriate solution or combination of alternatives should be selected with regard to the specific opportunities and constraints existing in the drainage catchment. For new development or redevelopment, onsite facilities that should be assessed include, in approximate order of preference:
    - Infiltration basins or trenches;
    - Retention/detention ponds;
    - Below-ground vault or tank storage;
    - Parking lot detention.

Regional facilities that should be assessed for solving problems associated with new development, redevelopment, or existing development include:

    - Infiltration basins or trenches;

- Detention ponds;
  - Constructed wetlands;
  - Bypassing a portion of the flow to an acceptable receiving water body, with treatment as required to protect water quality and other special precautions as necessary to prevent downstream impacts.
- e. Consider structurally or hydrologically engineering an existing wetland for water quantity control only if upland alternatives are inadequate to solve the existing or potential problem. To evaluate the possibility, refer to the Storm-water Wetland Assessment Criteria in Guide Sheet 1B.
10. Place strong emphasis on water resource protection during construction of new development. Establish effective erosion control programs to reduce the sediment loadings to receiving waters to the maximum extent possible. No preexisting wetland or other water body should ever be used for the sedimentation of solids in construction-phase runoff.
11. In wetlands previously relatively unaffected by human activities, manage stormwater quality to attempt to match pre-development water quality conditions. To support management of runoff water quality, perform an analysis of the contributing drainage catchment to define the type and extent of runoff water quality problems associated with existing development, redevelopment, or new development that require control to protect the beneficial uses of receiving waters, including wetlands. This analysis should incorporate the hydrologic assessment performed under step 7 and include identification of key water pollutants, which may include solids, oxygen-demanding substances, nutrients, metals, oils, trace organics, and bacteria, and evaluation of the potential effects of water pollutants throughout the drainage system.
12. Assess alternatives for the control of runoff water quality as follows:
- a. Perform an analysis of the contributing drainage catchment to assess possible alternative solutions that can be applied onsite or on a regional scale. The most appropriate solution or combination of alternatives should be selected with regard to the specific opportunities and constraints existing in the drainage catchment. Consider both **source control BMPs** and **treatment BMPs** as alternative solutions before considering use of existing wetlands for quality improvement according to the following considerations:
- Implementation of source control BMPs prevent the generation or release of water pollutants at potential sources. These alternatives are generally both more effective and less expensive than treatment controls. They should be applied to the maximum extent possible to new development, redevelopment, and existing development.
  - Treatment BMPs capture water pollutants after their release. This alternative often has limited application in existing developments because of space limitations, although it can be employed in new development and when redevelopment occurs in already developed areas. Refer to Minimum Requirement #6 in Volume 1 of the Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington to determine whether a treatment facility is necessary for your site. If a facility is required, refer to Chapter 4 of Volume 1, or Chapter 2 of

Volume 5 to determine which treatment requirement – basic, enhanced, phosphorus, or oil control - applies to your site. Then refer to the corresponding BMP menu for that requirement in Chapter 3 of Volume 5. From the menu select a BMP that fits with your project site.

- b. Consider structurally or hydrologically engineering an existing wetland for water quality control only if upland alternatives are inadequate to solve the existing or potential problem. Use of Waters of the State and Waters of the United States, including wetlands, for the treatment or conveyance of wastewater, including stormwater, is prohibited under state and federal law. Discussions with federal and state regulators during the research program led to development of a statement concerning the use of existing wetlands for improving stormwater quality (**polishing**), as follows. Such use is subject to analysis on a case-by-case basis and may be allowed only if the following conditions are met:
- If **restoration** or **enhancement** of a previously **degraded** wetland is required, and if the upgrading of other wetland functions can be accomplished along with benefiting runoff quality control, and
  - If appropriate source control and treatment BMPs are applied in the contributing catchment on the basis of the analysis in Step 12a, and any legally adopted water quality standards for wetlands are observed.

If these circumstances apply, refer to the Stormwater Wetland Assessment Criteria in Guide Sheet 1B to evaluate further.

13. Stimulate public awareness of and interest in wetlands and other water resources in order to establish protective attitudes in the community. This program should include:
- Education regarding the use of fertilizers and pesticides, automobile maintenance, the care of animals to prevent water pollution, and the importance of retaining buffers;
  - Descriptive signboards adjacent to wetlands informing residents of the wetland type, its functions, the protective measures being taken, etc.
  - If beavers are present in a wetland, educate residents about their ecological role and value and take steps to avoid human interference with beavers.

### **Guide Sheet 1B: Stormwater Wetland Assessment Criteria**

This guide sheet gives criteria that disqualify a natural wetland from being structurally or hydrologically engineered for control of stormwater quantity, quality, or both. These criteria should be applied only after performing the alternatives analysis outlined in Guide Sheet 1A.

1. A wetland should not be structurally or hydrologically engineered for runoff quantity or quality control and should be given maximum protection from overall urban impacts (see Guide Sheet 2, Wetland Protection Guidelines) under any of the following circumstances:
  - In its present state it is primarily an **estuarine** or **forested wetland** or a **priority peat system**.
  - It is a rare or irreplaceable wetland type, as identified by the Washington Natural Heritage Program, the Puget Sound Water Quality Preservation Program, or local government.



- It provides **rare, threatened, or endangered species** habitat that could be impaired by the proposed action. Determining whether or not the conserved species will be affected by the proposed project requires a careful analysis of its requirements in relation to the anticipated habitat changes.

In general, the wetlands in these groups are classified in Categories I and II in the Puget Sound Water Quality Authority's draft wetland guidelines.

2. A wetland can be considered for structural or hydrological modification for runoff quantity or quality control if most of the following circumstances exist:

- It is classified in Category IV in the Puget Sound Water Quality Authority's draft wetland guidelines. In general, Category IV wetlands have monotypic vegetation of similar age and class, lack special habitat features, and are isolated from other aquatic systems.
- The wetland has been previously **disturbed** by human activity, as evidenced by agriculture, fill, ditching, and/or introduced or **invasive weedy plant species**.
- The wetland has been deprived of a significant amount of its water supply by draining or previous urbanization (e. g., by loss of groundwater supply), and stormwater runoff is sufficient to augment the water supply. A particular candidate is a wetland that has experienced an increased summer dry period, especially if the drought has been extended by more than two weeks.
- Construction for structural or hydrologic modification in order to provide runoff quantity or quality control will disturb relatively little of the wetland.
- The wetland can provide the required storage capacity for quantity or quality control through an outlet orifice modification to increase storage of water, rather than through raising the existing overflow. Orifice modification is likely to require less construction activity and consequent negative impacts.
- Under existing conditions the wetland experiences a relatively high degree of water level fluctuation and a range of velocities (i.e., a wetland associated with substantially flowing water, rather than one in the headwaters or entirely isolated from flowing water).
- The wetland does not exhibit any of the following features:
  - Significant priority peat system or forested zones that will experience substantially altered hydroperiod as a result of the proposed action;
  - Regionally **unusual biological community types**;
  - Animal habitat features of relatively high value in the region (e. g., a protected, undisturbed area connected through undisturbed corridors to other valuable habitats, an important breeding site for protected species);
  - The presence of protected commercial or sport fish;
  - Configuration and topography that will require significant modification that may threaten fish stranding;
  - A relatively high degree of public interest as a result of, for example, offering valued local open space or educational, scientific, or

recreational opportunities, unless the proposed action would enhance these opportunities;

- The wetland is threatened by potential impacts exclusive of stormwater management, and could receive greater protection if acquired for a stormwater management project rather than left in existing ownership.
- There is good evidence that the wetland actually can be restored or enhanced to perform other functions in addition to runoff quantity or quality control.
- There is good evidence that the wetland lends itself to the effective application of the Wetland Protection Guidelines in Guide Sheet 2.
- The wetland lies in the natural routing of the runoff. Local regulations often prohibit drainage diversion from one basin to another.
- The wetland allows runoff discharge at the natural location.

### D.3 Guide Sheet 2: Wetland Protection Guidelines

This guide sheet provides information about likely changes to the ecological **structure** and **functioning** of **wetlands** that are incidentally subject to the effects of an urban or urbanizing watershed or are **modified** to supply runoff water quantity or quality control benefits. The guide sheet also recommends management actions that can avoid or minimize deleterious changes in these wetlands.

#### Guide Sheet 2A: General Wetland Protection Guidelines

1. Consult regulations issued under federal and state laws that govern the discharge of pollutants. Wetlands are classified as "Waters of the United States" and "Waters of the State" in Washington.
2. Maintain the wetland **buffer** required by local regulations or recommended by the Puget Sound Water Quality Authority's draft wetland guidelines.
3. Retain areas of native vegetation connecting the wetland and its buffer with nearby wetlands and other contiguous areas of native vegetation.
4. Avoid compaction of soil and introduction of exotic plant species during any work in a wetland.
5. Take specific site design and maintenance measures to avoid general urban impacts (e. g., littering and vegetation destruction). Examples are protecting existing buffer zones; discouraging access, especially by vehicles, by plantings outside the wetland; and encouragement of stewardship by a homeowners' association. Fences can be useful to restrict dogs and pedestrian access, but they also interfere with wildlife movements. Their use should be very carefully evaluated on the basis of the relative importance of intrusive impacts versus wildlife presence. Fences should generally not be installed when wildlife would be restricted and intrusion is relatively minor. They generally should be used when wildlife passage is not a major issue and the potential for intrusive impacts is high. When wildlife movements and intrusion are both issues, the circumstances will have to be weighed to make a decision about fencing.
6. If the wetland inlet will be modified for the stormwater management project, use a diffuse flow method, such as a spreader swale, to discharge water into the wetland in order to prevent flow channelization.

## Guide Sheet 2B: Guidelines for Protection from Adverse Impacts of Modified Runoff Quantity Discharged to Wetlands

1. Protection of wetland plant and animal communities depends on controlling the wetland's **hydroperiod**, meaning the pattern of fluctuation of water depth and the frequency and duration of exceeding certain levels, including the length and onset of drying in the summer. A hydrologic assessment is useful to measure or estimate elements of the hydroperiod under existing **pre-development** and anticipated **post-development** conditions. This assessment should be performed with the aid of a qualified hydrologist. Post-development estimates of watershed hydrology and wetland hydroperiod must include the cumulative effect of all anticipated watershed and wetland modifications. Provisions in these guidelines pertain to the full anticipated build-out of the wetland's watershed.

This analysis hypothesizes a fluctuating water stage over time before development that could fluctuate more, both higher and lower after development; these greater fluctuations are termed **stage excursions**. The guidelines set limits on the frequency and duration of excursions, as well as on overall water level fluctuation, after development.

To determine existing hydroperiod use one of the following methods, listed in order of preference:

- Estimation by a continuous simulation computer model--The model should be calibrated with at least one year of data taken using a continuously recording level gage under existing conditions and should be run for the historical rainfall period. The resulting data can be used to express the magnitudes of depth fluctuation, as well as the frequencies and durations of surpassing given depths. [Note: Modeling that yields high quality information of the type needed for wetland hydroperiod analysis is a complex subject. Providing guidance on selecting and applying modeling options is beyond the scope of these guidelines but is being developed by King County Surface Water Management Division and other local jurisdictions. An alternative possibility to modeling depths, frequencies, and durations within the wetland is to model durations above given discharge levels entering the wetland over various time periods (e. g., seasonal, monthly, weekly). This option requires further development.]
- Measurement during a series of time intervals (no longer than one month in length) over a period of at least one year of the maximum water stage, using a crest stage gage, and instantaneous water stage, using a staff gage--The resulting data can be used to express water level fluctuation (WLF) during the interval as follows:

Average base stage = (Instantaneous stage at beginning of interval + Instantaneous stage at end of interval)/2

WLF = Crest stage - Average base stage

Compute mean annual and mean monthly WLF as the arithmetic averages for each year and month for which data are available.

To forecast future hydroperiod use one of the following methods, listed in order of preference:

- Estimation by the continuous simulation computer model calibrated during pre-development analysis and run for the historical rainfall period--The resulting data can be used to express the magnitudes of depth fluctuation, as well as the frequencies and durations of surpassing given depths. [Note: Post-development modeling results should generally be compared with pre-development modeling results, rather than directly with field measurements, because different sets of assumptions underlie modeling and monitoring. Making pre- and post-development comparisons on the basis of common assumptions allows cancellation of errors inherent in the assumptions.]
  - Estimation according to general relationships developed from the Puget Sound Wetlands and Stormwater Management Program Research Program, as follows (in part adapted from Chin 1996):
    - Mean annual WLF is very likely (100% of cases measured) to be < 20 cm (8 inches or 0.7 ft) if total impervious area (TIA) cover in the watershed is < 6% (roughly corresponding to no more than 15% of the watershed converted to urban land use).
    - Mean annual WLF is very likely (89% of cases measured) to be > 20 cm if TIA in the watershed is > 21% (roughly corresponding to more than 30% of the watershed converted to urban land use).
    - Mean annual WLF is somewhat likely (50% of cases measured) to be > 30 cm (1.0 ft) if TIA in the watershed is > 21% (roughly corresponding to more than 30% of the watershed converted to urban land use).
    - Mean annual WLF is likely (75% of cases measured) to be > 30 cm, and somewhat likely (50% of cases measured) to be 50 cm (20 inches or 1.6 ft) or higher, if TIA in the watershed is > 40% (roughly corresponding to more than 70% of the watershed converted to urban land use).
    - The frequency of stage excursions greater than 15 cm (6 inches or 0.5 ft) above or below pre-development levels is somewhat likely (54% of cases measured) to be more than six per year if the mean annual WLF increases to > 24 cm (9.5 inches or 0.8 ft).
    - The average duration of stage excursions greater than 15 cm above or below pre-development levels is likely (69% of cases measured) to be more than 72 hours if the mean annual WLF increases to > 20 cm.
2. The following hydroperiod limits characterize wetlands with relatively high vegetation species richness and apply to all zones within all wetlands over the entire year. If these limits are exceeded, then species richness is likely to decline. If the analysis described above forecasts exceedences, one or more of the management strategies listed in step 5 should be employed to attempt to stay within the limits.
- Mean annual WLF (and mean monthly WLF for every month of the year) does not exceed 20 cm. Vegetation species richness decrease is likely with: (1) a mean annual (and mean monthly) WLF increase of more than 5 cm (2 inches or 0.16 ft) if pre-development mean annual (and mean monthly) WLF is greater than 15 cm, or (2)

- a mean annual (and mean monthly) WLF increase to 20 cm or more if pre-development mean annual (and mean monthly) WLF is 15 cm or less.
- The frequency of stage excursions of 15 cm above or below pre-development stage does not exceed an annual average of six. Note: A short-term lagging or advancement of the continuous record of water levels is acceptable. The 15 cm limit applies to the temporary increase in maximum water surface elevations (hydrograph peaks) after storm events and the maximum decrease in water surface elevations (hydrograph valley bottoms) between events and during the dry season.
  - The duration of stage excursions of 15 cm above or below pre-development stage does not exceed 72 hours per excursion. Note: A short-term lagging or advancement of the continuous record of water levels is acceptable. However, the 15 cm limit applies throughout the entire hydrograph, not just the peaks and valleys.
  - The total dry period (when pools dry down to the soil surface everywhere in the wetland) does not increase or decrease by more than two weeks in any year.
  - Alterations to watershed and wetland hydrology that may cause perennial wetlands to become **vernal** are avoided.
3. The following hydroperiod limit characterizes priority peat wetlands (bogs and fens as more specifically defined by the Washington Department of Ecology) and applies to all zones over the entire year. If this limit is exceeded, then characteristic bog or fen wetland vegetation is likely to decline. If the analysis described above forecasts exceedence, one or more of the management strategies listed in step 5 should be employed to attempt to stay within the limit.
- The duration of stage excursions above the pre-development stage does not exceed 24 hours in any year.

**NOTE:** This guideline is in addition to the guidelines in #2 directly above. To apply this guideline a continuous simulation computer model needs to be employed. The model should be calibrated with data taken under existing conditions at the wetland being analyzed and then used to forecast post-development duration of excursions.

4. The following hydroperiod limits characterize wetlands inhabited by breeding native amphibians and apply to breeding zones during the period 1 February through 31 May. If these limits are exceeded, then amphibian breeding success is likely to decline. If the analysis described above forecasts exceedences, one or more of the management strategies listed in step 5 should be employed to attempt to stay within the limits.
- The magnitude of stage excursions above or below the pre-development stage should not exceed 8 cm for more than 24 hours in any 30-day period.

**NOTE:** To apply this guideline a continuous simulation computer model needs to be employed. The model should be calibrated with data taken under existing conditions at the wetland being analyzed and then used to forecast post-development magnitude and duration of excursions.

5. If it is expected that the hydroperiod limits stated above could be exceeded, consider strategies such as:
- Reduction of the level of development;
  - Increasing runoff infiltration

**NOTE:** Infiltration is prone to failure in many Puget Sound Basin locations with glacial till soils and generally requires **pretreatment** to avoid clogging. In other situations infiltrating urban runoff may contaminate groundwater. Consult the stormwater management manual adopted by the jurisdiction and carefully analyze infiltration according to its prescriptions.

- Increasing runoff storage capacity; and
  - Selective runoff bypass.
6. After development, monitor hydroperiod with a continuously recording level gauge or staff and crest stage gauges. If the applicable limits are exceeded, consider additional applications of the strategies in step 5 that may still be available. It is also recommended that goals be established to maintain key vegetation species, amphibians, or both, and that these species be monitored to determine if the goals are being met.

### **Guide Sheet 2C: Guidelines for Protection from Adverse Impacts of Modified Runoff Quality Discharged to Wetlands**

1. Require effective erosion control at any construction sites in the wetland's drainage catchment.
2. Institute a program of **source control BMPs** to minimize the generation of pollutants that will enter storm runoff that drains to the wetland.
3. Provide a water quality control facility consisting of one or more **treatment BMPs** to treat all urban runoff entering the wetland. Refer to Chapter 4 of Volume 1 or Chapter 2 of Volume 5 of the Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington to determine treatment requirements. Then refer to the corresponding BMP menu for that requirement in Chapter 3 of Volume 5. From the menu select a BMP that fits with the project site.
  - If the wetland is a **priority peat wetland** (bogs and fens as more specifically defined by the Washington Department of Ecology), the facility should include a BMP with the most advanced ability to control nutrients (e. g., an infiltration device, a wet pond or constructed wetland with residence time in the pooled storage of at least two weeks). [Note: Infiltration is prone to failure in many Puget Sound Basin locations with glacial till soils and generally requires **pretreatment** to avoid clogging. In other situations infiltrating urban runoff may contaminate groundwater. Consult the stormwater management manual adopted by the jurisdiction and carefully analyze infiltration according to its prescriptions.] Refer to Appendix 4 for a comparison of water chemistry conditions in priority peat versus more typical wetlands.

Refer to the stormwater management manual to select and design the facility. Generally, the facility should be located outside and upstream of the wetland and its buffer.

4. Design and perform a water quality monitoring program for priority peat wetlands and for other wetlands subject to relatively high water pollutant loadings. The research results (Horner 1989) identified such wetlands as having contributing catchments exhibiting either of the following characteristics:
  - More than 20 percent of the catchment area is committed to commercial, industrial, and/or multiple family residential land uses; or
  - The combination of all urban land uses (including single family residential) exceeds 30 percent of the catchment area.

A recommended monitoring program, consistent with monitoring during the research program, is:

- Perform pre-development **baseline sampling** by collecting water quality grab samples in an open water pool of the wetland for at least one year, allocated through the year as follows: November 1-March 31--4 samples, April 1-May 31--1 sample, June 1-August 31--2 samples, and September 1-October 31--1 sample (if the wetland is dry during any period, reallocate the sample(s) scheduled then to another time). Analyze samples for pH; dissolved oxygen (DO); conductivity (Cond); total suspended solids (TSS); total phosphorus (TP); nitrate + nitrite-nitrogen (N); fecal coliforms (FC); and total copper (Cu), lead (Pb), and zinc (Zn). Find the median and range of each water quality variable.
- Considering the baseline results, set water quality goals to be maintained in the post-development period. Example goals are: (1) pH--no more than "x" percent (e. g., 10%) increase (relative to baseline) in annual median and maximum or decrease in annual minimum; (2) DO--no more than "x" percent decrease in annual median and minimum concentrations; (3) other variables --no more than "x" percent increase in annual median and maximum concentrations; (4) no increase in violations of the Washington Administrative Code (WAC) water quality criteria.
- Repeat the sampling on the same schedule for at least one year after all development is complete. Compare the results to the set goals.

If the water quality goals are not met, consider additional applications of the source and treatment controls described in steps 2 and 3. Continue monitoring until the goals are met at least two years in succession.

**NOTE:** Wetland water quality was found to be highly variable during the research, a fact that should be reflected in goals. Using the maximum (or minimum), as well as a measure of central tendency like the median, and allowing some change from pre-development levels are ways of incorporating an allowance for variability. Table 1 - 3 presents data from the wetlands studied during the research program to give an approximate idea of magnitudes and degree of variability to be expected. Nonurbanized watersheds (N) are those that have both < 15% urbanization and < 6% impervious cover. Highly urbanized watersheds (H) are those that have both lost all forest cover and have > 20% impervious cover. Moderately urbanized watersheds (M) are those that fit neither the N nor H category.

**Table 1 - 3: Water Quality Ranges Found in Study Wetlands**

Metric	N			M			H		
	Median	Mean	Std Dev/n <sup>a</sup>	Median	Mean	Std Dev/n <sup>a</sup>	Median	Mean	Std Dev/n <sup>a</sup>
pH <sup>b</sup>	6.4	6.4	0.5/162	6.7	6.5	0.8/132	6.9	6.7	0.6/52
DO (mg/L)	5.9	5.7	2.6/205	5.1	5.53.6 /173	6.3	5.4	2.9/67	
Cond. (µS/cm)	46	73	64/190	160	142	73/161	132	151	86/61
TSS (µg/L)	2.0	4.6	8.5/204	2.8	9.2	22/175	4.0	9.2	15/66
TP (µg/L)	29	52	87/206	70	93	92/177	69	110	234/67
N (µg/L)	112	368	485/206	304	598	847/177	376	395	239/67
FC (no./100mL)	9.0	271	1000/206	46	2665	27342/173	61	969	4753/66
Cu (µg/L)	<5.0	<3.3	>2.7/93	<5.0	<3.7	>1.9/78	<5.0	<4.1	<2.5/29
Pb (µg/L)	1.0	<2.7	>2.8/136	3.0	<3.4	>2.7/122	5.0	<4.5	>4.0/44
Zn (µg/L)	5.0	8.4	8.3/136	8.0	9.8	7.2/122	20	20	17/44

<sup>a</sup> Std. Dev.--standard deviation; n--number of observations.

<sup>b</sup> Values do not apply to priority peat wetlands. The program did not specifically study these wetlands but measured pH in three wetlands with "bog-like" characteristics. The minimum value measured in these wetlands was 4.5, and the lowest median was 4.8; but pH can be approximately 1 unit lower in wetlands of this type.

## Guide Sheet 2D: Guidelines for the Protection of Specific Biological Communities

1. For wetlands inhabited by breeding native amphibians:
  - Refer to step 4 of Guide Sheet 2B for hydroperiod limit.
  - Avoid decreasing the sizes of the open water and aquatic bed zones.
  - Avoid increasing the channelization of flow. Do not form channels where none exist, and take care that inflows to the wetland do not become more concentrated and do not enter at higher velocities than accustomed. If necessary, concentrated flows can be uniformly distributed with a flow-spreading device such as a shallow weir, stilling basin, or perforated pipe. Velocity dissipation can be accomplished with a stilling basin or rip-rap pad.
  - Limit the post-development flow velocity to < 5 cm/s (0.16 ft/second) in any location that had a velocity in the range 0-5 cm/s in the pre-development condition.
  - Avoid increasing the gradient of wetland side slopes.
2. For wetlands inhabited by forest bird species:
  - Retain areas of coniferous forest in and around the wetland as habitat for forest species.
  - Retain shrub or woody debris as nesting sites for ground-nesting birds and downed logs and stumps for winter wren habitat.
  - Retain snags as habitat for cavity-nesting species, such as woodpeckers.



- Retain shrubs in and around the wetland for protective cover. If cover is insufficient to protect against domestic pet predation, consider planting native bushes such as rose species in the buffer.
3. For wetlands inhabited by **wetland obligate bird species**:
- Retain **forested zones**, sedge and rush meadows, and deep open water zones, both without vegetation and with submerged and floating plants.
  - Retain shrubs in and around the wetland for protective cover. If cover is insufficient to protect against domestic pet predation, consider planting native bushes such as rose species in the buffer.
  - Avoid introducing **invasive weedy plant species**, such as purple loosestrife and reed canary grass.
  - Retain the buffer zone. If it has lost width or forest cover, consider re-establishing forested buffer area at least 30 meters (100 ft) wide.
  - If human entry is desired, establish paths that permit people to observe the wetland with minimum disturbance to the birds.
4. For wetlands inhabited by **fish**:
- Protect fish habitats by avoiding water velocities above tolerated levels (selected with the aid of a qualified fishery biologist to protect fish in each life stage when they are present), siltation of spawning beds, etc. Habitat requirements vary substantially among fish species. If the wetland is associated with a larger water body, contact the Department of Fisheries and Wildlife to determine the species of concern and the acceptable ranges of habitat variables.
  - If stranding of protected commercial or sport fish could result from a structural or hydrologic modification for runoff quantity or quality control, develop a strategy to avoid stranding that minimizes disturbance in the wetland (e. g., by making provisions for fish return to the stream as the wetland drains, or avoiding use of the facility for quantity or quality control during fish presence).

#### **D.4 Wetlands Guidance Appendix 1: Information Needed to Apply Guidelines**

The following information listed for each guide sheet is most essential for applying the Wetlands and Stormwater Management Guidelines. As a start, obtain the relevant soil survey; the National Wetland Inventory, topographic and land use maps, and the results of any local wetland inventory.

##### **Guide Sheet 1**

1. Boundary and area of the contributing watershed of the wetland or other landscape unit
2. A complete definition of goals for the wetland and landscape unit subject to planning and management
3. Existing management and monitoring plans
4. Existing and projected land use in the landscape unit in the categories commercial, industrial, multi-family residential, single-family residential, agricultural, various categories

- of undeveloped, and areas subject to active logging or construction (expressed as percentages of the total watershed area)
5. Drainage network throughout the landscape unit
  6. Soil conditions, including soil types, infiltration rates, and positions of seasonal water table (seasonally) and restrictive layers
  7. Groundwater recharge and discharge points
  8. Wetland category (I - IV in draft Puget Sound Water Quality Authority wetland protection guidelines); designation as rare or irreplaceable. Refer to the Washington Natural Heritage Program database. If the needed information is not available, a biological assessment will be necessary.
  9. Watershed hydrologic assessment
  10. Watershed water quality assessment
  11. Wetland type and zones present, with special note of estuarine, priority peat system, forested, sensitive scrub-shrub zone, sensitive emergent zone and other sensitive or critical areas designated by state or local government (with dominant plant species)
  12. Rare, threatened, or endangered species inhabiting the wetland
  13. History of wetland changes
  14. Relationship of wetland to other water bodies in the landscape unit and the drainage network
  15. Flow pattern through the wetland
  16. Fish and wildlife inhabiting the wetland
  17. Relationship of wetland to other wildlife habitats in the landscape unit and the corridors between them

## **Guide Sheet 2**

1. Existing and potential stormwater pollution sources
2. Existing and projected landscape unit land use (see number 4 under Guide Sheet 1)
3. Existing and projected wetland hydroperiod characteristics
4. Wetland bathymetry
5. Inlet and outlet locations and hydraulics
6. Landscape unit soils, geologic and hydrogeologic conditions
7. Wetland type and zones present (see number 11 under Guide Sheet 1)
8. Presence of breeding populations of native amphibian species
9. Presence of forest and wetland obligate bird species
10. Presence of fish species

## D.5 Wetlands Guidance Appendix 2: Definitions

<b>Baseline sampling</b>	Sampling performed to define an existing state before any modification occurs that could change the state.
<b>Bioengineering</b>	Restoration or reinforcement of slopes and stream banks with living plant materials.
<b>Buffer</b>	The area that surrounds a wetland and that reduces adverse impacts to it from adjacent development.
<b>Constructed wetland</b>	A wetland intentionally created from a non-wetland site for the sole purpose of wastewater or stormwater treatment. These wetlands are not normally considered Waters of the United States or Waters of the State.
<b>Degraded (disturbed) wetland (community)</b>	A wetland (community) in which the vegetation, soils, and/or hydrology have been adversely altered, resulting in lost or reduced functions and values; generally, implies topographic isolation; hydrologic alterations such as hydroperiod alteration (increased or decreased quantity of water), diking, channelization, and/or outlet modification; soils alterations such as presence of fill, soil removal, and/or compaction; accumulation of toxicants in the biotic or abiotic components of the wetland; and/or low plant species richness with dominance by invasive weedy species.
<b>Enhancement</b>	Actions performed to improve the condition of an existing degraded wetland, so that functions it provides are of a higher quality.
<b>Estuarine wetland</b>	Generally, an eelgrass bed; salt marsh; or rocky, sandflat, or mudflat intertidal area where fresh and salt water mix. (Specifically, a tidal wetland with salinity greater than 0.5 parts per thousand, usually semi-enclosed by land but with partly obstructed or sporadic access to the open ocean).
<b>Forested communities (wetlands)</b>	In general terms, communities (wetlands) characterized by woody vegetation that is greater than or equal to 6 meters in height; in these guidelines the term applies to such communities (wetlands) that represent a significant amount of tree cover consisting of species that offer wildlife habitat and other values and advance the performance of wetland functions overall.
<b>Functions</b>	The ecological (physical, chemical, and biological) processes or attributes of a wetland without regard for their importance to society (see also Values). Wetland functions include food chain support, provision of ecosystem diversity and fish and wildlife habitat, flood flow alteration, groundwater recharge and discharge, water quality improvement, and soil stabilization.
<b>Hydrodynamics</b>	The science involving the energy and forces acting on water and its resulting motion.

<b>Hydroperiod</b>	The seasonal occurrence of flooding and/or soil saturation; encompasses the depth, frequency, duration, and seasonal pattern of inundation.
<b>Invasive weedy plant species</b>	Opportunistic species of inferior biological value that tend to out-compete more desirable forms and become dominant; applied to non-native species in these guidelines.
<b>Landscape unit</b>	An area of land that has a specified boundary and is the locus of interrelated physical, chemical, and biological processes.
<b>Modification, Modified (wetland)</b>	A wetland whose physical, hydrological, or water quality characteristics have been purposefully altered for a management purpose, such as by dredging, filling, forebay construction, and inlet or outlet control.
<b>Onsite</b>	An action (here, for stormwater management purposes) taken within the property boundaries of the site to which the action applies.
<b>Polishing</b>	Advanced treatment of a waste stream that has already received one or more stages of treatment by other means.
<b>Pre-development, post-development</b>	Respectively, the situation before and after a specific stormwater management project (e. g., raising the outlet, building an outlet control structure) will be placed in the wetland or a land use change occurs in the landscape unit that will potentially affect the wetland.
<b>Pre-treatment</b>	An action taken to remove pollutants from runoff before it is discharged into another system for additional treatment.
<b>Priority peat systems</b>	Unique, irreplaceable fens that can exhibit water pH in a wide range from highly acidic to alkaline, including fens typified by <i>Sphagnum</i> species, <i>Rhododendron groenlandicum</i> (Labrador tea), <i>Drosera rotundifolia</i> (sundew), and <i>Vaccinium oxycoccos</i> (bog cranberry); marl fens; estuarine peat deposits; and other moss peat systems with relatively diverse, undisturbed flora and fauna. Bog is the common name for peat systems having the <i>Sphagnum</i> association described, but this term applies strictly only to systems that receive water income from precipitation exclusively.
<b>Rare, threatened, or endangered species</b>	Plant or animal species that are regional relatively uncommon, are nearing endangered status, or whose existence is in immediate jeopardy and is usually restricted to highly specific habitats. Threatened and endangered species are officially listed by federal and state authorities, whereas rare species are unofficial species of concern that fit the above definitions.
<b>Redevelopment</b>	Conversion of an existing development to another land use, or addition of a material improvement to an existing development.
<b>Regional</b>	An action (here, for stormwater management purposes) that involves more than one discrete property.

<b>Restoration</b>	Actions performed to reestablish wetland functional characteristics and processes that have been lost by alterations, activities, or catastrophic events in an area that no longer meets the definition of a wetland.
<b>Source control best management practices (BMPs)</b>	Actions that are taken to prevent the development of a problem (e. g., increase in runoff quantity, release of pollutants) at the point of origin.
<b>Stage excursion</b>	A post-development departure, either higher or lower, from the water depth existing under a given set of conditions in the pre-development state.
<b>Structure</b>	The components of an ecosystem, both the abiotic (physical and chemical) and biotic (living).
<b>Treatment best management practices (BMPs)</b>	Actions that remove pollutants from runoff through one or more physical, chemical, biological mechanisms.
<b>Unusual biological community types</b>	Assemblages of interacting organisms that are relatively uncommon regionally.
<b>Values</b>	Wetland processes or attributes that are valuable or beneficial to society (also see Functions). Wetland values include support of commercial and sport fish and wildlife species, protection of life and property from flooding, recreation, education, and aesthetic enhancement of human communities.
<b>Vernal wetland</b>	A wetland that has water above the soil surface for a period of time during and/or after the wettest season but always dries to or below the soil surface in warmer, drier weather.
<b>Wetland obligate</b>	A biological organism that absolutely requires a wetland habitat for at least some stage of its life cycle.
<b>Wetlands</b>	Those areas that are inundated or saturated by surface or ground water at a frequency and duration sufficient to support, and that under normal circumstances do support, a prevalence of vegetation typically adapted for life in saturated soil conditions. Wetlands generally include swamps, marshes, bogs, and similar areas. Wetlands do not include those artificial wetlands intentionally created from nonwetland sites, including, but not limited to, irrigation and drainage ditches, grass-lined swales, canals, detention facilities, wastewater treatment facilities, farm ponds, and landscape amenities, or those wetlands created after July 1, 1990, that were unintentionally created as a result of the construction of a road, street, or highway. Wetlands may include those artificial wetlands intentionally created from nonwetland areas to mitigate the conversion of wetlands. (Waterbodies not included in the definition of wetlands as well as those mentioned in the definition are still waters of the state.)

## **D.6 Wetlands Guidance Appendix 3: Native and Recommended Noninvasive Plant Species for Wetlands in the Puget Sound Basin**

**CAUTION:** Extracting plants from an existing wetland donor site can cause a significant negative effect on that site. It is recommended that plants be obtained from native plant nursery stocks whenever possible. Collections from existing wetlands should be limited in scale and undertaken with care to avoid disturbing the wetland outside of the actual point of collection. Plant selection is a complex task, involving matching plant requirements with environmental conditions. It should be performed by a qualified wetlands botanist. Refer to *Restoring Wetlands in Washington* by the Washington Department of Ecology for more information.

**The following plants are preferred in Puget Sound Basin freshwater wetlands:**

<b>Open water zone</b>	<p><i>Potamogeton</i> species (pondweeds)  <i>Nymphaea odorata</i> (pond lily)  <i>Brasenia schreberi</i> (watershield)  <i>Nuphar luteum</i> (yellow pond lily)  <i>Polygonum hydropiper</i> (smartweed)  <i>Alisma plantago-aquatica</i> (broadleaf water plantain)  <i>Ludwigia palustris</i> (water purslane)  <i>Menyanthes trifoliata</i> (bogbean)  <i>Utricularia minor</i>, <i>U. vulgaris</i> (bladderwort)</p>
<b>Emergent zone</b>	<p><i>Carex obnupta</i>, <i>C. utriculata</i>, <i>C. arcta</i>, <i>C. stipata</i>, <i>C. vesicaria</i>, <i>C. aquatilis</i>, <i>C. comosa</i>, <i>C. lenticularis</i> (sedge)  <i>Scirpus atricinctus</i> (woolly bulrush)  <i>Scirpus microcarpus</i> (small-fruited bulrush)  <i>Eleocharis palustris</i>, <i>E. ovata</i> (spike rush)  <i>Epilobium watsonii</i> (Watson's willow herb)  <i>Typha latifolia</i> (common cattail) (Note: This native plant can be aggressive but has been found to offer certain wildlife habitat and water quality improvement benefits; use with care.)  <i>Veronica americana</i>, <i>V. scutellata</i> (American brookline, marsh speedwell)  <i>Mentha arvensis</i> (field mint)  <i>Lycopus americanus</i>, <i>L. uniflora</i> (bugleweed or horehound)  <i>Angelica</i> species (angelica)  <i>Oenanthe sarmentosa</i> (water parsley)  <i>Heracleum lanatum</i> (cow parsnip)  <i>Glyceria grandis</i>, <i>G. elata</i> (manna grass)  <i>Juncus acuminatus</i> (tapertip rush)  <i>Juncus ensifolius</i> (daggerleaf rush)  <i>Juncus bufonius</i> (toad rush)  <i>Mimulus guttatus</i> (common monkey flower)</p>
<b>Scrub-shrub zone</b>	<p><i>Salix lucida</i>, <i>S. rigida</i>, <i>S. sitchensis</i>, <i>S. scouleriana</i>, <i>S. pedicularis</i> (willow)  <i>Lysichiton americanus</i> (skunk cabbage)  <i>Athyrium filix-femina</i> (lady fern)  <i>Cornus sericea</i> (redstem dogwood)  <i>Rubus spectabilis</i> (salmonberry)  <i>Physocarpus capitatus</i> (ninebark)  <i>Ribes species</i> (gooseberry)  <i>Rhamnus purshiana</i> (cascara)  <i>Sambucus racemosa</i> (red elderberry) (occurs in wetland-upland transition)  <i>Lonicera involucrata</i> (black twinberry)  <i>Oemleria cerasiformis</i> (Indian plum)  <i>Stachys cooleyae</i> (Stachy's horsemint)  <i>Prunus emarginata</i> (bitter cherry)</p>

<b>Forested zone</b>	<p> <i>Populus balsamifera</i>, ssp. <i>trichocarpa</i> (black cottonwood)  <i>Fraxinus latifolia</i> (Oregon ash)  <i>Thuja plicata</i> (western red cedar)  <i>Picea sitchensis</i> (Sitka spruce)  <i>Alnus rubra</i> (red alder)  <i>Tsuga heterophylla</i> (hemlock)  <i>Acer circinatum</i> (vine maple)  <i>Maianthemum dilatatum</i> (wild lily-of-the-valley)  <i>Ivzula parviflora</i> (small-flower wood rush)  <i>Torreyochloa pauciflora</i> (weak alkaligrass)  <i>Ribes</i> species (currants) </p>
<b>Bog</b>	<p> <i>Sphagnum</i> species (sphagnum mosses)  <i>Rhododendron groenlandicum</i> (Labrador tea)  <i>Vaccinium oxycoccos</i> (bog cranberry)  <i>Kalmia microphylla</i>, ssp. <i>occidentalis</i> (bog laurel) </p>

**The following exotic plants should not be introduced to existing, created, or constructed Puget Sound Basin freshwater wetlands:**

*Hedera helix* (English ivy)  
*Phalaris arundinacea* (reed canarygrass)  
*Lythrum salicaria* (purple loosestrife)  
*Iris pseudacorus* (yellow iris)  
*Ilex aquifolia* (holly)  
*Impatiens glandulifera* (policeman's helmet)  
*Lotus corniculatus* (birdsfoot trefoil)  
*Lysimachia thyrsiflora* (tufted loosestrife)  
*Myriophyllum* species (water milfoil, parrot's feather)  
*Polygonum cuspidatum* (Japanese knotweed)  
*Polygonum sachalinense* (giant knotweed)  
*Rubus discolor* (Himalayan blackberry)  
*Tanacetum vulgare* (common tansy)

**The following native plants should not be introduced to existing, created, or constructed Puget Sound Basin freshwater wetlands**

*Potentilla palustris* (Pacific silverweed)  
*Solarum dulcimara* (bittersweet nightshade)  
*Juncus effusus* (soft rush)  
*Conium maculatum* (poison hemlock)  
*Ranunculus repens* (creeping buttercup)



## D.7 Wetlands Guidance Appendix 4: Comparison of Water Chemistry Characteristics In *Sphagnum* Bog And Fen Versus More Typical Wetlands

**Table 1 - 4: Water Quality of *Sphagnum* Bogs and Fens vs. Typical Wetlands**

Water Quality Variable	Typical Wetlands	<i>Sphagnum</i> Bogs and Fens
<b>PH</b>	6 - 7	3.5 - 4.5
<b>Dissolved oxygen (mg/L)</b>	4 - 8	Shallow surface layer oxygenated, anoxic below
<b>Cations</b>	Divalent Ca, Mg common	Divalent Ca, Mg uncommon; Uni-valent Na, K predominant
<b>Anions</b>	HCO <sub>3</sub> <sup>-</sup> , CO <sub>3</sub> <sup>2-</sup> predominant	Cl <sup>-</sup> , SO <sub>4</sub> <sup>2-</sup> predominant; almost no HCO <sub>3</sub> <sup>-</sup> , CO <sub>3</sub> <sup>2-</sup> (organic acids form buffering system)
<b>Hardness</b>	Moderate	Very low
<b>Total phosphorus (µg/L)</b>	50 - 500	5 - 50
<b>Total Kjeldahl nitrogen (µg/L)</b>	500 - 1000	~ 50

## D.8 Wetland Protection Guidelines References

Chin, N. T. 1996. Watershed Urbanization Effects on Palustrine Wetlands: A Study of the Hydrologic, Vegetative, and Amphibian Community Response over Eight Years. M. S. C. E. Thesis, University of Washington, Seattle, WA.

Clymo, R. S. 1963. Ion exchange in *Sphagnum* and its relation to bog ecology. *Annals of Botany* 27 (106):310-324.

Cooke, S. S., Puget Sound Wetlands and Stormwater Management Research Program, unpublished Queen's Bog data.

Horner, R. R. 1989. Long-term effects of urban runoff on wetlands. Pp. in L. A. Roesner, B. Urbonas, and M. B. Sonnen (eds.), *Design of Urban Runoff Controls*, American Society of Civil Engineers, New York, NY.

Horner, R. R., J. J. Skupien, E. H. Livingston, and H. E. Shaver. 1994. *Fundamentals of Urban Runoff Management: Technical and Institutional Issues*. Terrene Institute, Washington, D. C.

Horner, R. R., S. S. Cooke, K. O. Richter, A. L. Azous, L. E. Reinelt, B. L. Taylor, K. A. Ludwa, and M. Valentine. 1996. *Wetlands and Urbanization, Implications for the Future*. Puget Sound Wetlands and Stormwater Management Research Program, Engineering Professional Programs, University of Washington, Seattle, WA.

Meyer, J., L. Vogel, and T. Duebendorfer, East Lake Sammamish wetland no. 21 unpublished data, submitted to L. Kulzer, King County Surface Water Management Division.

Moore, P. D. and D. J. Bellamy. 1974. Chapter 3, *The Geochemical template. Peatlands*. Elek Science, London, U. K.

Thurman, E. M. 1985. *Organic Geochemistry of Natural Waters*. Martinus Nijhoff/Dr W. Junk Publishers, Dordrecht, The Netherlands.

Vitt, D. H., D. G. Horton, N. G. Slack, and N. Malmer. 1990. *Sphagnum*-dominated peatlands of the hyperoceanic British Columbia coast: Patterns in surface water chemistry and vegetation. *Canadian Journal of Forest Research* 20:696-711.

# Volume 2 - Stormwater Management for Construction Sites

## Table of Contents

Purpose of this Volume . . . . .	2-1
Content and Organization of this Volume . . . . .	2-1
<b>Chapter 1 The 12 Elements of Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention . . . . .</b>	<b>2-3</b>
<b>Chapter 2 Developing a Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan (SWPPP) . . . . .</b>	<b>2-11</b>
2.1 General Requirements and Guidelines . . . . .	2-11
2.2 BMP Standards and Specifications . . . . .	2-12
2.3 Step-by-Step Procedure . . . . .	2-12
2.3.1 Step 1 – Data Collection . . . . .	2-12
2.3.2 Step 2 – Data Analysis . . . . .	2-13
2.3.3 Step 3 – Construction SWPPP Development and Analysis . . . . .	2-14
<b>Chapter 3 Standards and Specifications for Best Management Practices (BMPs) . . . . .</b>	<b>2-21</b>
3.1 Source Control BMPs . . . . .	2-22
3.1.1 BMP C101: Preserving Natural Vegetation . . . . .	2-22
3.1.1.1 Purpose . . . . .	2-22
3.1.1.2 Conditions of Use . . . . .	2-22
3.1.1.3 Design and Installation Specifications . . . . .	2-22
3.1.1.4 Maintenance Standards . . . . .	2-23
3.1.2 BMP C102: Buffer Zone . . . . .	2-24
3.1.2.1 Purpose . . . . .	2-24
3.1.2.2 Conditions of Use . . . . .	2-24
3.1.2.3 Design and Installation Specifications . . . . .	2-24
3.1.2.4 Maintenance Standards . . . . .	2-24
3.1.3 BMP C103: High Visibility Plastic or Metal Fence . . . . .	2-25
3.1.3.1 Purpose . . . . .	2-25
3.1.3.2 Conditions of Use . . . . .	2-25
3.1.3.3 Design and Installation Specifications . . . . .	2-25
3.1.3.4 Maintenance Standards . . . . .	2-25
3.1.4 BMP C104: Stake and Wire Fence . . . . .	2-26
3.1.4.1 Purpose . . . . .	2-26
3.1.4.2 Conditions of Use . . . . .	2-26
3.1.4.3 Design and Installation Specifications . . . . .	2-26
3.1.4.4 Maintenance Standards . . . . .	2-26
3.1.5 BMP C105: Stabilized Construction Entrance . . . . .	2-27
3.1.5.1 Purpose . . . . .	2-27
3.1.5.2 Conditions of Use . . . . .	2-27
3.1.5.3 Design and Installation Specifications . . . . .	2-27
3.1.5.4 Maintenance Standards . . . . .	2-27
3.1.6 BMP C106: Wheel Wash . . . . .	2-30
3.1.6.1 Purpose . . . . .	2-30
3.1.6.2 Conditions of Use . . . . .	2-30

- 3.1.6.3 Design and Installation Specifications . . . . . 2-30
- 3.1.6.4 Maintenance Standards . . . . . 2-30
- 3.1.7 BMP C107: Construction Road/Parking Area Stabilization . . . . . 2-32
  - 3.1.7.1 Purpose . . . . . 2-32
  - 3.1.7.2 Conditions of Use . . . . . 2-32
  - 3.1.7.3 Design and Installation Specifications . . . . . 2-32
  - 3.1.7.4 Maintenance Standards . . . . . 2-33
- 3.1.8 BMP C120: Temporary and Permanent Seeding . . . . . 2-34
  - 3.1.8.1 Purpose . . . . . 2-34
  - 3.1.8.2 Conditions of Use . . . . . 2-34
  - 3.1.8.3 Design and Installation Specifications . . . . . 2-34
  - 3.1.8.4 Maintenance Standards . . . . . 2-37
- 3.1.9 BMP C121: Mulching . . . . . 2-40
  - 3.1.9.1 Purpose . . . . . 2-40
  - 3.1.9.2 Conditions of Use . . . . . 2-40
  - 3.1.9.3 Design and Installation Specifications . . . . . 2-40
  - 3.1.9.4 Maintenance Standards . . . . . 2-40
- 3.1.10 BMP C122: Nets and Blankets . . . . . 2-42
  - 3.1.10.1 Purpose . . . . . 2-42
  - 3.1.10.2 Conditions of Use . . . . . 2-42
  - 3.1.10.3 Design and Installation Specifications . . . . . 2-42
  - 3.1.10.4 Maintenance Standards . . . . . 2-44
- 3.1.11 BMP C123: Plastic Covering . . . . . 2-47
  - 3.1.11.1 Purpose . . . . . 2-47
  - 3.1.11.2 Conditions of Use . . . . . 2-47
  - 3.1.11.3 Design and Installation Specifications . . . . . 2-47
  - 3.1.11.4 Maintenance Standards . . . . . 2-48
- 3.1.12 BMP C124: Sodding . . . . . 2-50
  - 3.1.12.1 Purpose . . . . . 2-50
  - 3.1.12.2 Conditions of Use . . . . . 2-50
  - 3.1.12.3 Design and Installation Specifications . . . . . 2-50
  - 3.1.12.4 Maintenance Standards . . . . . 2-50
- 3.1.13 BMP C125: Compost . . . . . 2-51
  - 3.1.13.1 Purpose . . . . . 2-51
  - 3.1.13.2 Conditions of Use . . . . . 2-51
  - 3.1.13.3 Design and Installation Specifications . . . . . 2-51
  - 3.1.13.4 Maintenance Standards . . . . . 2-52
- 3.1.14 BMP C126: Topsoiling . . . . . 2-53
  - 3.1.14.1 Purpose . . . . . 2-53
  - 3.1.14.2 Conditions of Use . . . . . 2-53
  - 3.1.14.3 Design and Installation Specifications . . . . . 2-53
  - 3.1.14.4 Maintenance Standards . . . . . 2-55
- 3.1.15 BMP C127: Polyacrylamide for Soil Erosion Protection . . . . . 2-56
  - 3.1.15.1 Purpose . . . . . 2-56
  - 3.1.15.2 Conditions of Use . . . . . 2-56
  - 3.1.15.3 Design and Installation Specifications . . . . . 2-56
  - 3.1.15.4 Maintenance Standards . . . . . 2-58
- 3.1.16 BMP C130: Surface Roughening . . . . . 2-59
  - 3.1.16.1 Purpose . . . . . 2-59
  - 3.1.16.2 Conditions for Use . . . . . 2-59
  - 3.1.16.3 Design and Installation Specifications . . . . . 2-59
  - 3.1.16.4 Maintenance Standards . . . . . 2-59

3.1.17	BMP C131: Gradient Terraces	2-61
3.1.17.1	Purpose	2-61
3.1.17.2	Conditions of Use	2-61
3.1.17.3	Design and Installation Specifications	2-61
3.1.17.4	Maintenance Standards	2-62
3.1.18	BMP C140: Dust Control	2-63
3.1.18.1	Purpose	2-63
3.1.18.2	Conditions of Use	2-63
3.1.18.3	Design and Installation Specifications	2-63
3.1.18.4	Maintenance Standards	2-64
3.1.19	BMP C150: Materials On Hand	2-65
3.1.19.1	Purpose	2-65
3.1.19.2	Conditions of Use	2-65
3.1.19.3	Design and Installation Specifications	2-65
3.1.19.4	Maintenance Standards	2-65
3.1.20	BMP C151: Concrete Handling	2-66
3.1.20.1	Purpose	2-66
3.1.20.2	Conditions of Use	2-66
3.1.20.3	Design and Installation Specifications	2-66
3.1.20.4	Maintenance Standards	2-66
3.1.21	BMP C152: Sawcutting and Surfacing Pollution Prevention	2-67
3.1.21.1	Purpose	2-67
3.1.21.2	Conditions of Use	2-67
3.1.21.3	Design and Installation Specifications	2-67
3.1.21.4	Maintenance Standards	2-67
3.1.22	BMP C153: Material Delivery, Storage and Containment	2-68
3.1.22.1	Purpose	2-68
3.1.22.2	Conditions of Use	2-68
3.1.22.3	Design and Installation Specifications	2-68
3.1.22.4	Material Storage Areas and Secondary Containment Practices:	2-69
3.1.22.5	Maintenance	2-69
3.1.23	BMP C154: Concrete Washout Area	2-70
3.1.23.1	Purpose	2-70
3.1.23.2	Conditions of Use	2-70
3.1.23.3	Implementation	2-70
3.1.23.4	Education	2-70
3.1.23.5	Location and Placement Considerations:	2-71
3.1.23.6	Onsite Temporary Concrete Washout Facility, Transit Truck Washout Procedures:	2-71
3.1.23.7	Inspection and Maintenance	2-72
3.1.23.8	Removal of Temporary Concrete Washout Facilities	2-73
3.1.24	BMP C160: Certified Erosion and Sediment Control Lead	2-76
3.1.24.1	Purpose	2-76
3.1.24.2	Conditions of Use	2-76
3.1.24.3	Specifications	2-76
3.1.25	BMP C161: Payment of Erosion Control Work	2-78
3.1.25.1	Purpose	2-78
3.1.26	BMP C162: Scheduling	2-79
3.1.26.1	Purpose	2-79
3.1.26.2	Conditions of Use	2-79
3.1.26.3	Design Considerations	2-79
3.1.27	BMP C180: Small Project Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention	2-80

- 3.1.27.1 Purpose . . . . . 2-80
- 3.1.27.2 Conditions of Use . . . . . 2-80
- 3.1.27.3 Design and Installation Specifications . . . . . 2-80
- 3.2 Runoff, Conveyance and Treatment BMPs. . . . . 2-81
  - 3.2.1 BMP C200: Interceptor Dike and Swale . . . . . 2-81
    - 3.2.1.1 Purpose . . . . . 2-81
    - 3.2.1.2 Conditions of Use . . . . . 2-81
    - 3.2.1.3 Design and Installation Specifications . . . . . 2-81
  - 3.2.2 BMP C201: Grass-Lined Channels . . . . . 2-83
    - 3.2.2.1 Purpose . . . . . 2-83
    - 3.2.2.2 Conditions of Use . . . . . 2-83
    - 3.2.2.3 Design and Installation Specifications . . . . . 2-83
    - 3.2.2.4 Maintenance Standards . . . . . 2-84
  - 3.2.3 BMP C202: Channel Lining . . . . . 2-87
    - 3.2.3.1 Purpose . . . . . 2-87
    - 3.2.3.2 Conditions of Use . . . . . 2-87
    - 3.2.3.3 Design and Installation Specifications . . . . . 2-87
  - 3.2.4 BMP C203: Water Bars . . . . . 2-89
    - 3.2.4.1 Purpose . . . . . 2-89
    - 3.2.4.2 Conditions of Use . . . . . 2-89
    - 3.2.4.3 Design and Installation Specifications . . . . . 2-89
    - 3.2.4.4 Maintenance Standards . . . . . 2-90
  - 3.2.5 BMP C204: Pipe Slope Drains . . . . . 2-91
    - 3.2.5.1 Purpose . . . . . 2-91
    - 3.2.5.2 Conditions of Use . . . . . 2-91
    - 3.2.5.3 Design and Installation Specifications . . . . . 2-91
    - 3.2.5.4 Maintenance Standards . . . . . 2-92
  - 3.2.6 BMP C205: Subsurface Drains . . . . . 2-94
    - 3.2.6.1 Purpose . . . . . 2-94
    - 3.2.6.2 Conditions of Use . . . . . 2-94
    - 3.2.6.3 Design and Installation Specifications . . . . . 2-94
    - 3.2.6.4 Maintenance Standards . . . . . 2-95
  - 3.2.7 BMP C206: Level Spreader . . . . . 2-96
    - 3.2.7.1 Purpose . . . . . 2-96
    - 3.2.7.2 Conditions of Use . . . . . 2-96
    - 3.2.7.3 Design and Installation Specifications . . . . . 2-96
    - 3.2.7.4 Maintenance Standards . . . . . 2-97
  - 3.2.8 BMP C207: Check Dams. . . . . 2-98
    - 3.2.8.1 Purpose . . . . . 2-98
    - 3.2.8.2 Conditions of Use . . . . . 2-98
    - 3.2.8.3 Design and Installation Specifications . . . . . 2-98
    - 3.2.8.4 Maintenance Standards . . . . . 2-99
  - 3.2.9 BMP C208: Triangular Silt Dike (Geotextile-Encased Check Dam) . . . . . 2-101
    - 3.2.9.1 Purpose . . . . . 2-101
    - 3.2.9.2 Conditions of Use . . . . . 2-101
    - 3.2.9.3 Design and Installation Specifications . . . . . 2-101
    - 3.2.9.4 Maintenance Standards . . . . . 2-101
  - 3.2.10 BMP C209: Outlet Protection . . . . . 2-103
    - 3.2.10.1 Purpose . . . . . 2-103
    - 3.2.10.2 Conditions of Use . . . . . 2-103
    - 3.2.10.3 Design and Installation Specifications . . . . . 2-103
    - 3.2.10.4 Maintenance Standards . . . . . 2-103

3.2.11	BMP C220: Storm Drain Inlet Protection . . . . .	2-104
3.2.11.1	Purpose . . . . .	2-104
3.2.11.2	Conditions of Use . . . . .	2-104
3.2.11.3	Design and Installation Specifications . . . . .	2-104
3.2.11.4	Maintenance Standards . . . . .	2-112
3.2.12	BMP C231: Brush Barrier . . . . .	2-114
3.2.12.1	Purpose . . . . .	2-114
3.2.12.2	Conditions of Use . . . . .	2-114
3.2.12.3	Design and Installation Specifications . . . . .	2-114
3.2.12.4	Maintenance Standards . . . . .	2-114
3.2.13	BMP C232: Gravel Filter Berm . . . . .	2-116
3.2.13.1	Purpose . . . . .	2-116
3.2.13.2	Conditions of Use . . . . .	2-116
3.2.13.3	Design and Installation Specifications . . . . .	2-116
3.2.13.4	Maintenance Standards . . . . .	2-116
3.2.14	BMP C233: Silt Fence . . . . .	2-117
3.2.14.1	Purpose . . . . .	2-117
3.2.14.2	Conditions of Use . . . . .	2-117
3.2.14.3	Design and Installation Specifications . . . . .	2-117
3.2.14.4	Maintenance Standards . . . . .	2-120
3.2.15	BMP C234: Vegetated Strip . . . . .	2-123
3.2.15.1	Purpose . . . . .	2-123
3.2.15.2	Conditions of Use . . . . .	2-123
3.2.15.3	Design and Installation Specifications . . . . .	2-123
3.2.15.4	Maintenance Standards . . . . .	2-123
3.2.16	BMP C235: Straw Wattles . . . . .	2-124
3.2.16.1	Purpose . . . . .	2-124
3.2.16.2	Conditions of Use . . . . .	2-124
3.2.16.3	Design Criteria . . . . .	2-124
3.2.16.4	Maintenance Standards . . . . .	2-124
3.2.17	BMP C240: Sediment Trap . . . . .	2-126
3.2.17.1	Purpose . . . . .	2-126
3.2.17.2	Conditions of Use . . . . .	2-126
3.2.17.3	Design and Installation Specifications . . . . .	2-127
3.2.17.4	Maintenance Standards . . . . .	2-128
3.2.18	BMP C241: Temporary Sediment Pond . . . . .	2-130
3.2.18.1	Purpose . . . . .	2-130
3.2.18.2	Conditions of Use . . . . .	2-130
3.2.18.3	Design and Installation Specifications . . . . .	2-130
3.2.18.4	Maintenance Standards . . . . .	2-133
3.2.19	BMP C250: Construction Stormwater Chemical Treatment . . . . .	2-137
3.2.19.1	Purpose . . . . .	2-137
3.2.19.2	Conditions of Use . . . . .	2-137
3.2.19.3	Design and Installation Specifications . . . . .	2-137
3.2.19.4	Monitoring . . . . .	2-142
3.2.20	BMP C251: Construction Stormwater Filtration . . . . .	2-144
3.2.20.1	Purpose . . . . .	2-144
3.2.20.2	Conditions of Use . . . . .	2-144
3.2.20.3	Background Information . . . . .	2-144
3.2.20.4	Design and Installation Specifications . . . . .	2-144
3.2.20.5	Maintenance Standards . . . . .	2-147
3.2.21	BMP C252: High pH Neutralization using CO <sub>2</sub> . . . . .	2-148

- 3.2.21.1 Description . . . . .2-148
- 3.2.21.2 Treatment Procedures . . . . .2-149
- 3.2.21.3 Safety and Materials Handling . . . . .2-149
- 3.2.21.4 Operator Records. . . . .2-149
- 3.2.22 BMP C253: pH Control for High pH Water . . . . .2-151
  - 3.2.22.1 Description . . . . .2-151
  - 3.2.22.2 Disposal Methods. . . . .2-151
- Appendix A Standard Notes for Temporary Erosion and Sedimentation Control Plans . . .**  
**2-152**
- Appendix B Construction SWPPP Short Form . . . . .2-153**



VOLUME

2

# Stormwater Management for Construction Sites

## Purpose of this Volume

This volume of the Stormwater Management Manual discusses stormwater impacts and controls associated with construction activities. It addresses the planning, design, and implementation of stormwater management activities prior to and during the construction phase of projects.

The purpose of this volume is to provide guidance to prevent construction activities from adversely impacting downstream resources and onsite stormwater flows. Prevention of soil erosion, capture of water-borne and air-borne sediment that has been unavoidably released from exposed soils, and protection of water quality from onsite pollutant sources are all readily achievable when the proper Best Management Practices (BMPs) are planned, installed, and properly maintained.

## Content and Organization of this Volume

Volume 2 consists of three chapters and three appendices that address the preparation and implementation of Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plans (SWPPPs).

- Chapter 1 describes the 12 elements of stormwater pollution prevention.
- Chapter 2 presents a step-by-step method for developing a Construction SWPPP. It encourages examination of all possible conditions that could reasonably affect a particular project's stormwater control systems during the construction phase of the project.
- Chapter 3 contains BMPs for construction stormwater control and site management. The first section of Chapter 3 contains BMPs for Source Control. The second section addresses runoff, conveyance, and treatment BMPs. Various combinations of these BMPs should be used in the Construction SWPPP to satisfy each of the 12 elements applying to the project.

- Appendix A provides standard notes that should be used on the project Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan (SWPPP) and associated drawings.
- Appendix B provides information on the chemical treatment of stormwater.
- Appendix C provides the criteria and guidelines for creating a SWPPP Short Form (if your project qualifies).

## **Chapter 1 The 12 Elements of Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention**

The 12 elements of construction stormwater pollution prevention cover the general water quality protection strategies of limiting site impacts, preventing erosion and sedimentation, and managing activities and sources. The applicant is required to address the following 12 elements in the construction stormwater pollution prevention plan (SWPPP). If an element is considered unnecessary, the Construction SWPPP must describe why that element is not needed.

The 12 elements are:

- Element 1 – Mark Clearing Limits
- Element 2 – Establish Construction Access
- Element 3 – Control Flow Rates
- Element 4 – Install Sediment Controls
- Element 5 – Stabilize Soils
- Element 6 – Protect Slopes
- Element 7 – Protect Drain Inlets
- Element 8 – Stabilize Channels and Outlets
- Element 9 – Control Pollutants
- Element 10 – Control Dewatering
- Element 11 – Maintain BMPs
- Element 12 – Manage the Project

### ***Element #1: Preserve Vegetation and Mark Clearing Limits***

- Before beginning any land disturbing activities, including clearing and grading, clearly mark all clearing limits, sensitive areas and their buffers, and trees that are to be preserved within the construction area to prevent damage and offsite impacts. Mark clearing limits both in the field and on the plans.
- Retain the duff layer, native topsoil, and natural vegetation in an undisturbed state to the maximum extent practicable. If it is not practicable to retain the duff layer in place, it should be stockpiled onsite, covered to prevent erosion, and replaced immediately upon completion of the ground-disturbing activities.
- Plastic, metal, or stake wire fence may be used to mark the clearing limits.
- Suggested BMPs:
  - BMP C101: Preserving Natural Vegetation
  - BMP C102: Buffer Zones
  - BMP C103: High Visibility Plastic or Metal Fence
  - BMP C104: Stake and Wire Fence

**Element #2: Establish Construction Access**

- Construction vehicle ingress and egress shall be limited to one route. Additional routes may be allowed for very large projects or linear projects. The construction access may have to be moved if the project is phased.
- Access points shall be stabilized per BMP C105 – Stabilized Construction Entrance or other City of Tacoma approved equivalent BMPs.
- Wheel wash or tire baths shall be located on site, if applicable. Wheel washes shall be required if other measures fail to control sediment from leaving the site.
- No tracking of sediment onto the roadway is allowed. If sediment is tracked onto the road, the road shall be thoroughly and immediately cleaned by shoveling or pickup sweeping. Transport sediment to a controlled sediment disposal area.
- Keep streets clean at ALL times. Clean tracked sediment immediately.
- Street washing of sediment to the storm drain system is not allowed.
- Suggested BMPs:
  - BMP C105: Stabilized Construction Entrance
  - BMP C106: Wheel Wash
  - BMP C107: Construction Road/Parking Area Stabilization

**Element #3: Control Flow Rates**

- Protect properties and waterways downstream of development sites from erosion due to increases in the volume, velocity, and peak flow rate of stormwater runoff from the project site. Requirements of the City of Tacoma Critical Areas Protection Ordinance (TMC 13.11) must be followed during construction as applicable.
- Conduct a downstream analysis if changes to offsite flows could impair or alter conveyance systems, stream banks, bed sediment, or aquatic habitat. See Volume 1, Chapter 3 – Minimum Requirement #11 for offsite analysis guidelines.
- Where necessary, construct stormwater detention facilities as one of the first steps in grading. Detention facilities shall be functional prior to construction of site improvements (e.g. impervious surfaces).
- During construction, the City may require non-standard temporary sediment control pond designs in order to provide additional flow control necessary to address local conditions or to protect properties and waterways downstream from erosion due to construction activities.
- Permanent infiltration ponds shall not be used for flow control during construction unless specifically allowed in writing by Environmental Services. If allowed, these facilities shall be protected from siltation during the construction phase as required by Environmental Services. A liner may be required. The ponds shall be excavated to final grade after the site is stabilized.
- Baker tanks or similar may be used to help control flow rates. Calculations for the proposed size of the tank shall be provided to Environmental Services.
- Suggested BMPs:
  - BMP C240: Sediment Trap
  - BMP C241: Temporary Sediment Pond

**Element #4: Install Sediment Controls**

- Prior to leaving a construction site or prior to discharge to an infiltration facility, surface water runoff from disturbed areas shall pass through a sediment pond or other appropriate sediment removal BMP.
- Construct sediment ponds, vegetated buffer strips, sediment barriers or filters, dikes, and other BMPs intended to trap sediment on site as one of the first steps in grading. These BMPs shall be functional before other land disturbing activities take place.
- Locate BMPs in a manner to avoid interference with the movement of juvenile salmonids attempting to enter off-channel areas or drainages.
- Seed and mulch earthen structures such as dams, dikes, and diversions according to the timing indicated in Element #5.
- Suggested BMPs:
  - BMP C231: Brush Barrier
  - BMP C232: Gravel Filter Berm
  - BMP C233: Silt Fence
  - BMP C234: Vegetated Strip
  - BMP C235: Straw Wattles
  - BMP C240: Sediment Trap
  - BMP C241: Temporary Sediment Pond
  - BMP C250: Construction Stormwater Chemical Treatment
  - BMP C251: Construction Stormwater Filtration
- Proprietary technologies exist that can be used for sediment control. Ecology will determine if the temporary sediment control device is equivalent to an existing BMP or requires Ecology approval via the Technology Assessment Protocol Ecology program.

**Element #5: Stabilize Soils**

- Stabilize exposed and unworked soils by application of effective BMPs that protect the soil from the erosive forces of raindrop impact, flowing water, and wind.
- From October 1 through April 30, no soils shall remain exposed and unworked for more than 2 days. From May 1 to September 30, no soils shall remain exposed and unworked for more than 7 days. This stabilization requirement applies to all soils on site, whether at final grade or not. (See City's Clearing and Grading Ordinance TMC 2.02.370).
- Stabilize soils at the end of the shift, before a holiday or weekend, if needed, based on the weather forecast.
- Select appropriate soil stabilization measures for the time of year, site conditions, estimated duration of use, and the potential water quality impacts that stabilization agents may have on downstream waters or groundwater.
- Stabilize soil stockpiles from erosion, protect stockpiles with sediment trapping measures, and where possible, locate piles away from storm drain inlets, waterways, and drainage channels.
- Suggested BMPs:

- BMP C120: Temporary and Permanent Seeding
- BMP C121: Mulching
- BMP C122: Nets and Blankets
- BMP C123: Plastic Covering
- BMP C124: Sodding
- BMP C125: Compost
- BMP C126: Topsoiling
- BMP C127: Polyacrylamide for Soil Erosion Protection
- BMP C130: Surface Roughening
- BMP C131: Gradient Terraces
- BMP C140: Dust Control
- BMP C180: Small Project Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention

***Element #6: Protect Slopes***

- Reduce slope runoff velocities by reducing continuous length of slope with terracing and diversions, reducing slope steepness, and/or roughing slope surface.
- Divert offsite stormwater (sometimes called run-on) away from slopes and disturbed areas with interceptor dikes and/or swales. Manage clean offsite stormwater separately from stormwater generated on the site.
- At the top of slopes, collect drainage in pipe slope drains or protected channels to prevent erosion. Size temporary pipe slope drains for the peak flow from a 10 year, 24 hour event. Alternatively, the 10-year, 1-hour flow rates indicated by WWHM, increased by a factor of 1.6, may be used. Use the existing land cover condition for predicting flow rates from tributary areas outside the project limits for the hydrologic analysis. For tributary areas on the project site, use the temporary or permanent project land cover condition, whichever will produce the higher flows for the analysis. If using WWHM to predict flows, model bare soils as landscaped areas.
- Provide drainage to remove groundwater seepage from the slope surface of exposed soil areas.
- Place excavated material on the uphill side of trenches, consistent with safety and space considerations.
- Place check dams at regular intervals within channels that are cut down a slope.
- Stabilize soils on slopes, as specified in Element #5.
- Construction on or near slopes 20% or greater may require evaluation by a geotechnical engineer.
- Suggested BMPs:
  - BMP C120: Temporary and Permanent Seeding
  - BMP C130: Surface Roughening
  - BMP C131: Gradient Terraces
  - BMP C200: Interceptor Dike and Swale

- BMP C201: Grass-Lined Channels
- BMP C204: Pipe Slope Drains
- BMP C205: Subsurface Drains
- BMP C206: Level Spreader
- BMP C207: Check Dams
- BMP C208: Triangular Silt Dike (Geotextile-Encased Check Dam)

***Element #7: Protect Drain Inlets***

- Protect all storm drain inlets that are operable during construction so that stormwater runoff does not enter the conveyance system without first being filtered or treated to remove sediment.
- Keep all approach roads clean. Do not allow sediment to enter storm drains.
- Inspect inlets weekly at a minimum and after each storm events. Clean or remove and replace inlet protection devices when sediment has filled one-third of the available storage (unless a different standard is specified by the product manufacturer).
- Suggested BMPs:
  - BMP C220: Storm Drain Inlet Protection

***Element #8: Stabilize Channels and Outlets***

- Design, construct, and stabilize all temporary onsite conveyance channels to prevent erosion from the expected peak 10-minute velocity of a 10-year, 24-hour frequency storm for the developed condition. Alternatively, the 10-year, 1-hour flow rate indicated by an approved continuous runoff model, increased by a factor of 1.6, may be used. For tributary areas outside the project limits, use the existing land cover conditions for predicting flow rates from tributary areas outside the project limits for the hydrologic analysis. For tributary areas on the project site, use the temporary or permanent project land cover condition, whichever will produce the highest flow rates, for the hydrologic analysis. If using WWHM, model bare soils as landscaped.
- Provide stabilization, including armoring material, adequate to prevent erosion of outlets, adjacent stream banks, slopes, and downstream reaches at the outlets of all conveyance systems.
- Suggested BMPs:
  - BMP C202: Channel Lining
  - BMP C209: Outlet Protection

***Element #9: Control Pollutants***

- All discharges to the City sewer system (storm or sanitary sewers) require City approval. The approval may include a separate Special Approved Discharge (SAD) permit. Contact a City Source Control representative at 253-591-5588.
- Handle and dispose of all pollutants, including waste materials and demolition debris that occur on site during construction in a manner that does not cause contamination of stormwater.

- Provide cover, containment, and protection from vandalism for all chemicals, liquid products, petroleum products, and other materials that have the potential to pose a threat to human health and the environment. Provide secondary containment for tanks holding pollutants. Secondary containment means placing tanks or containers within an impervious structure capable of containing 110% of the volume contained in the largest tank within the containment structure. Double-walled tanks do not require additional secondary containment. Clean stormwater within the containment structure must be removed after storm events. If stormwater becomes polluted within the containment structure it must be managed appropriately based upon the pollutant of concern.
- Use spill prevention and control measures, such as drip pans, when conducting maintenance and repair of heavy equipment and vehicles involving oil changes, hydraulic system drain down, solvent and de-greasing cleaning operations, fuel tank drain down and removal, and other activities which may result in discharge or spillage of pollutants to the ground or into stormwater runoff. Clean contaminated surfaces immediately following any discharge or spill incident. Emergency repairs may be performed onsite using temporary plastic placed beneath and, if raining, over the vehicle.
- Discharge wheel wash or tire bath wastewater to a separate onsite treatment system or to the sanitary sewer.
- Only apply agricultural chemicals, including fertilizers and pesticides, when absolutely necessary and only in a manner and at application rates that will not result in loss of chemical to stormwater runoff. Follow manufacturers' recommendations for application rates and procedures.
- Use BMPs to prevent or treat contamination of stormwater runoff by pH modifying sources. These sources include, but are not limited to, bulk cement, cement kiln dust, fly ash, new concrete washing and curing waters, waste streams generated from concrete grinding and sawing, exposed aggregate processes, and concrete pumping and mixer washout waters. Construction site operators must adjust the pH of stormwater to prevent violations of water quality standards.
- Written approval from the Department of Ecology is required prior to using chemical treatment other than CO<sub>2</sub> or dry ice to adjust pH.
- Suggested BMPs:
  - BMP C151: Concrete Handling
  - BMP C152: Sawcutting and Surfacing Pollution Prevention
  - BMP C154: Concrete Washout Area
  - Source Control BMPs from Volume 4, as appropriate

#### ***Element #10: Control Dewatering***

- All discharges to the City sewer system (storm or sanitary sewers) require City approval. The approval may include a separate Special Approved Discharge (SAD) permit. Contact a City Source Control Representative at 253-591-5588.
- Discharge foundation, vault, and trench dewatering water that has similar characteristics to site stormwater runoff into a controlled conveyance system prior to discharge to a sediment pond or sediment tank/vault. Stabilize channels as specified in Element #8.
- Clean, non-turbid dewatering water, such as well-point groundwater, can be discharged to systems tributary to state surface waters, as specified in Element #8, provided the



dewatering flow does not cause erosion or flooding of receiving waters. These clean waters should not be routed through stormwater sediment ponds/tanks.

- Handle highly turbid or contaminated dewatering water from construction equipment operation, clamshell digging, concrete tremie pour, or work inside a cofferdam separately from stormwater at the site.
- Other disposal options, depending on site constraints, may include:
  - Infiltration, which may require approval from the Tacoma-Pierce County Health Department if located within the South Tacoma Groundwater Protection District.
  - Transport offsite in vehicle, such as a vacuum flush truck, for legal disposal in a manner that does not pollute state waters
  - Ecology approved onsite chemical treatment or other suitable treatment technologies
  - Use of a sedimentation bag with outfall to a ditch or swale for small volumes of localized dewatering

#### ***Element #11: Maintain BMPs***

- Maintain and repair as needed all temporary and permanent erosion and sediment control BMPs to assure continued performance of their intended function. Conduct maintenance and repair in accordance with BMP specifications.
- Remove temporary erosion and sediment control BMPs within 30 days after final site stabilization is achieved or after the temporary BMPs are no longer needed. Trapped sediment shall be removed or stabilized on site. Permanently stabilize disturbed soil resulting from removal of BMPs or vegetation.
- Include maintenance as a separate bid item for each BMP, where applicable.

#### ***Element #12: Manage the Project***

- ***Phasing of Construction*** – Phase development projects in order to prevent soil erosion and the transport of sediment from the project site during construction, unless the project engineer can demonstrate that construction phasing is infeasible. Revegetation of exposed areas and maintenance of that vegetation shall be an integral part of the clearing activities for any phase.
- ***Seasonal Work Limitations*** – From October 1 through April 30, clearing, grading, and other soil disturbing activities shall only be permitted if shown to the satisfaction of the City that silt-laden runoff will be prevented from leaving the site through a combination of the following:
  - Site conditions including existing vegetative coverage, slope, soil type, and proximity to receiving waters;
  - Limitations on activities and the extent of disturbed areas; and
  - Proposed erosion and sediment control measures.

Based on the information provided and local weather conditions, the City may expand or restrict the seasonal limitation on site disturbance. The following activities are exempt from the seasonal clearing and grading limitations:

- Routine maintenance and necessary repair of erosion and sediment control BMPs

- Routine maintenance of public facilities or existing utility structures that do not expose the soil or result in the removal of the vegetative cover to soil
- Activities where there is one hundred percent infiltration of surface water runoff within the site in approved and installed erosion and sediment control facilities
- **Coordination with Utilities and Other Contractors** – Include surface water management requirements for the entire project, including the utilities and other contractors, in the Construction SWPPP.
- **Inspection and Monitoring** – Inspect, maintain, and repair all BMPs as needed to assure continued performance of their intended function. At a minimum, inspect all BMPs after each storm event. Site inspections shall be conducted by a person who is knowledgeable in the principles and practices of erosion and sediment control. The person must have the skills to 1) assess the site conditions and construction activities that could impact the quality of stormwater, and 2) assess the effectiveness of erosion and sediment control measures used to control the quality of stormwater discharges.
- **Responsible Party** – For construction sites one acre or larger that discharge to surface waters of the state, a Certified Erosion and Sediment Control Lead (CESCL) or Certified Professional in Erosion & Sediment Control (CPESC) shall be identified in the Construction SWPPP and shall be onsite or on-call at all times. Certification must be obtained through an Ecology-approved training program.

For all projects, a 24-hour responsible party shall be listed in the SWPPP, along with that person's telephone number and email address.

Sampling and analysis of the surface water discharges from a construction site may be necessary on a case-by-case basis to ensure compliance with standards. Ecology or the City will establish these monitoring and associated reporting requirements.

Whenever inspection and/or monitoring reveals that the BMPs identified in the Construction SWPPP are inadequate, due to the actual discharge of or potential to discharge a significant amount of any pollutant, the appropriate BMPs or design changes shall be implemented as soon as possible.

- **Reporting** – Report spillage or discharge of pollutants within 24-hours to the City of Tacoma Source Control 24-hour phone number at (253) 591-5585.
- **Maintenance of the Construction SWPPP** – Keep the Construction SWPPP onsite or within reasonable access to the site. Modify the SWPPP whenever there is a change in the design, construction, operation, or maintenance at the construction site that has, or could have, a significant effect on the discharge of pollutants to waters of the state.

Modify the SWPPP if, during inspections or investigations conducted by the owner/operator, City staff, or by local or state officials, it is determined that the SWPPP is ineffective in eliminating or significantly minimizing pollutants in stormwater discharges from the site. Modify the SWPPP as necessary to include additional or modified BMPs designed to correct problems identified. Complete revisions to the SWPPP within seven (7) days following the inspection.

The inspector may require that a modification to the SWPPP go through additional City review.

## **Chapter 2 Developing a Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan (SWPPP)**

This chapter provides an overview of the important components of, and the process for, developing and implementing a Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan (SWPPP).

### **2.1 General Requirements and Guidelines**

The Construction SWPPP is a document that describes the potential for pollution problems on a construction project. The Construction SWPPP explains and illustrates the measures to be taken on the construction site to control those problems.

All sites are required to comply with elements #1-#12.

Unless located in a critical area, a SWPPP is not required if all of the following are met:

- Add or replace less than 2000 square feet of impervious surface.
- Clear or disturb less than 7000 square feet of land.
- Grade/fill less than 50 cubic yards of material.

If the project quantities exceed any of the above thresholds, prepare a written SWPPP.

The Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan Short Form (Appendix C) may be used for projects that:

- Add or replace between 2,000 and 5,000 square feet of impervious surface.
- Clear or disturb between 7000 square feet and 1 acre of land.
- Grade/fill between 50 and 499 cubic yards of material.

If the project quantities exceed any of the above thresholds, prepare a Long Form Construction SWPPP as described in this chapter.

A Long Form SWPPP is required for projects that meet any of the following thresholds:

- Add or replace 5000 square feet or greater of impervious surface, or,
- Disturb greater than 1 acre of land, or,
- Grade/Fill greater than 500 cubic yards of material.

The Construction SWPPP shall be prepared as a separate stand-alone document. Keep the Construction SWPPP on the construction site or within reasonable access to the site for construction and inspection personnel. As site work progresses, the plan must be modified to reflect changing site conditions, subject to the rules for plan modification by the City.

Include all 12 elements described in Volume 2, Chapter 1 in the Construction SWPPP unless an element is determined not to be applicable to the project and the exemption is justified in the narrative.

A Professional Engineer is required to complete SWPPPs that contain engineering calculations.

## 2.2 BMP Standards and Specifications

Chapter 3 of this volume contains standards and specifications for the BMPs referred to in this chapter. Wherever any of these BMPs are to be employed on a site, clearly reference the specific title and number of the BMP in the narrative and mark it on the drawings.

Where appropriate BMPs do not exist, experimental practices may be considered or minor modifications to standard practices may be employed. Such practices must be approved by the City before implementation.

The Washington State Department of Transportation (WSDOT) keeps a database of qualified erosion and sediment control BMPs and products. The City may allow the use of these BMPs and products when appropriate. They can be found at the following location:

<http://www.wsdot.wa.gov/biz/mats/QPL/QPI.cfm>

## 2.3 Step-by-Step Procedure

There are three basic steps in producing a Construction SWPPP:

- Step 1 - Data Collection
- Step 2 - Data Analysis
- Step 3 - Construction SWPPP Development and Implementation

Steps 1 and 2, described in more detail below, are intended for projects that must complete a Long Form SWPPP. Smaller projects below the thresholds indicated in Section 2.1 General Requirements and Guidelines may prepare a short form Construction SWPPP (see Appendix C).

### 2.3.1 Step 1 – Data Collection

Evaluate existing site conditions and gather information that will help develop the most effective Construction SWPPP. The information gathered should be explained in the narrative and shown on the drawings. Appendix A provides standard notes required on the drawing.

- **Topography** - Prepare a topographic drawing of the site to show the existing contour elevations at intervals of 1 to 5 feet depending upon the slope of the terrain.
- **Drainage** - Locate and clearly mark existing drainage ditches, swales and patterns on the drawing, including existing storm drain pipe systems. Mark location of site runoff and runoff on drawing.
- **Soils** - Identify and label soil type(s) and erodibility (low, medium, high). A geotechnical investigation may be required since published soils information in the City is very limited. Regardless of the availability of published soils information, the project proponent is responsible for characterizing site soils for erosive potential.
- **Ground Cover** - Label existing vegetation on the drawing. Show such features as tree clusters, grassy areas, and unique or sensitive vegetation. Unique vegetation may include existing trees above a given diameter. The City of Tacoma encourages tree preservation where possible. In addition, indicate existing denuded or exposed soil areas.
- **Critical Areas** - Delineate critical areas adjacent to or within the site on the drawing. Such features as steep slopes, streams, floodplains, lakes, wetlands, sole source aquifers, and geologic hazard areas, etc., should be shown. Delineate setbacks and buffer limits for these features on the drawings. Other related jurisdictional boundaries such as Shorelines Management and the Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA) base floodplain should also be shown on the drawings.

- **Adjacent Areas** - Identify existing buildings, roads, and facilities adjacent to or within the project site on the drawings. Identify existing and proposed utility locations, construction clearing limits, and erosion and sediment control BMPs on the drawings.
- **Existing Encumbrances** - Identify wells, existing and abandoned septic drain fields, utilities, easements, and site constraints.
- **Precipitation Records** - Volume 3, Appendix A contains Tacoma's Design Storm Events. These can be used to help determine typical rainfall events for considering which BMPs are appropriate for your site.

### 2.3.2 Step 2 – Data Analysis

Consider the data collected in Step 1 to visualize potential problems and limitations of the site. Determine those areas that have critical erosion hazards. The following are some important factors to consider in data analysis:

- **Topography** - The primary topographic considerations are slope steepness and slope length. The longer and steeper the slope, the greater the erosion potential. Erosion potential should be determined by a qualified engineer, soil professional, or certified erosion control specialist. Measures to decrease erosion potential shall be considered.
- **Drainage** - Natural drainage patterns that consist of overland flow, swales, and depressions should be used to convey runoff through the site to avoid construction of an artificial drainage system. Man-made ditches and waterways will become part of the erosion problem if they are not properly stabilized. Care should be taken to ensure that increased runoff from the site will not erode or flood the existing natural drainage system. Possible sites for temporary surface water retention and detention should be considered at this point.

Direct construction site runoff away from saturated soil areas where groundwater may be encountered and critical areas where drainage will concentrate. Preserve natural drainage patterns on the site.

- **Soils** - Evaluate soil properties such as surface and subsurface runoff characteristics, depth to impermeable layer, depth to seasonal groundwater table, permeability, shrink-swell potential, texture, settleability, and erodibility. Infiltration sites should be properly protected from clay and silt which will reduce infiltration capacities. Include any recommendations from geotechnical reports for handling construction stormwater runoff.
- **Ground Cover** - Ground cover is the most important factor in terms of preventing erosion. Existing vegetation that can be saved will prevent erosion better than constructed BMPs. Trees and other vegetation protect the soil structure. Disturb as little of the site as required to construct proposed improvements. If the existing vegetation cannot be saved, consider such practices as phasing of construction, temporary seeding, and mulching. Phasing of construction involves stabilizing one part of the site before disturbing another. In this way, the entire site is not disturbed at once.
- **Critical Areas** - Critical areas may include flood hazard areas, mine hazard areas, slide hazard areas, sole source aquifers, wetlands, stream banks, fish-bearing streams, and other water bodies. Any critical areas within or adjacent to the development shall be a key consideration on land development decisions. Critical areas and their buffers shall be delineated on the drawings and clearly flagged in the field. Critical areas identified by the City of Tacoma are available on the City's GovMe website. Orange plastic fencing may be more useful than flagging to assure that equipment operators stay out of critical areas. Only unavoidable work should take place within critical areas and their buffers. Such unavoidable work will require special BMPs, permit restrictions, and mitigation plans.

Additional requirements may be required by the Critical Areas Preservation Ordinance TMC 13.11.

- **Adjacent Areas** - An analysis of adjacent properties should focus on areas upslope and down slope from the construction project. Water bodies that will receive direct runoff from the site are a major concern. Investigate and identify runoff to the site. The types, values, and sensitivities of and risks to downstream resources, such as private property, stormwater facilities, public infrastructure, or aquatic systems, should be evaluated. Develop a plan to route runoff around areas disturbed by construction. Erosion and sediment controls should be selected accordingly.
- **Precipitation Records** - Volume 2, Appendix A contains Tacoma's Design Storm Events. These can be used to help determine typical rainfall events for considering which BMPs are appropriate for your site.
- **Timing of the Project** - An important consideration in selecting BMPs is the timing and duration of the project. Projects that will proceed during the wet season and projects that will last through several seasons must take all necessary precautions to remain in compliance with the water quality standards.

### 2.3.3 Step 3 – Construction SWPPP Development and Analysis

The Construction SWPPP consists of two parts: a narrative and the drawings. This section describes the contents of the narrative and the drawings. This section is formatted as a checklist to aid the applicant and reviewer in development and review of the plan. Applicants are encouraged to complete and submit this form with their application. The Construction SWPPP shall be prepared as a stand-alone document.

The Department of Ecology has prepared a SWPPP template that offers a quick and convenient means for developing a SWPPP for development and redevelopment projects in the City of Tacoma. This template can be found on Ecology's website at:

<http://www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wq/stormwater/construction/>

**NOTE:** Ensure that BMP numbers and references match the City SWMM when using the Ecology template. Remove any sections or language that do not pertain to the project site.

The following checklist provides a tool to the applicant to determine if all the major items are included in the Construction SWPPP. The checklist will be used by reviewers to determine that SWPPPs meet all requirements and are complete. Applicants are encouraged to complete and submit this form with their application.

## Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan Checklist

Project Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Address: \_\_\_\_\_

Parcel No.: \_\_\_\_\_

City Reference/Permit No.: \_\_\_\_\_

### Section I – Construction SWPPP Narrative

#### 1. Project Description

The following topic headings shall be used, at a minimum, when preparing the Construction SWPPP narrative.

- Nature and purpose of project
- Total project area
- Total proposed impervious area
- Total proposed area to be disturbed
- Total volumes of proposed cut and fill

#### 2. Existing Site Conditions

- Describe the existing topography
- Describe the existing vegetation
- Describe the existing drainage, including runoff and runoff
- Describe any existing development, including all structures and existing impervious
- Description of any easements or other encumbrances that may affect construction.

#### 3. Adjacent Areas and Drainage

- Describe adjacent areas which may be affected by site disturbance, including streams, lakes, wetlands, residential areas, roads, drainage features, or any other areas
- Describe the downstream drainage path leading from the site to the receiving body of water (minimum distance of ¼ mile.)

#### 4. Critical Area

Critical areas identified by the City of Tacoma are available on the City's GovMe website. Critical areas not identified on the website still require consideration.

- Describe critical areas that are on or adjacent to the site, including those up to and within 1/4 mile. The distance may be increased by the City based on critical area.
- Describe special requirements for working in or near critical areas

## **Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan Checklist**

### **5. Soils**

- Describe on-site soils, include all relevant tests conducted.
  - Soil name(s)
  - Soil mapping unit
  - Groundwater elevation and seasonal high groundwater elevation

The following information may be required at the direction of Environmental Services:

- Erodibility
- Settleability
- Permeability
- Depth
- Texture
- Soil structure

### **6. Potential Erosion Problem Areas**

- Describe potential erosion problems on site

### **7. Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention Elements**

- Describe how each of the Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention Elements has been addressed.
- Identify the type and location of BMPs used to satisfy the required element.
- Written justification identifying the reason an element is not applicable to the proposal.

#### ***12 Required Elements - Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan:***

- 1. Preserve Vegetation and Mark Clearing Limits
- 2. Establish Construction Access
- 3. Control Flow Rates
- 4. Install Sediment Controls
- 5. Stabilize Soils
- 6. Protect Slopes
- 7. Protect Drain Inlets
- 8. Stabilize Channels and Outlets
- 9. Control Pollutants
- 10. Control Dewatering
- 11. Maintain BMPs
- 12. Manage the Project

### **8. Construction Phasing**

- Construction sequence
- Construction phasing (if proposed)



## **Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan Checklist**

### **9. Construction Schedule**

- Provide a proposed construction schedule.
- For construction in the wet season, describe how the transport of sediment from the construction site will be prevented.

### **10. Financial/Ownership Responsibilities**

- Identify the person responsible for ensuring proper erosion and sediment control.
- Identify the property owner responsible for the initiation of bonds and/or other financial securities.
- Describe bonds and/or other evidence of financial responsibility for liability associated with erosion and sedimentation impacts.
- Maintenance bond

### **11. Engineering Calculations**

- Provide Design Calculations. BMPs such as sediment ponds and traps, interceptor swales, and stormwater detention require engineering calculations.
- Provide all assumptions and variables used in the design.
- Provide a signature and stamp from a Professional Engineer licensed in Washington State for all engineering calculations.

## **Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan Checklist**

### **Section II - Erosion and Sediment Control Drawings**

At a minimum, provide the following information and drawings as part of the Construction SWPPP erosion and sediment control plans. Include notes addressing construction phasing and scheduling on the drawings.

#### **1. General**

Provide a site map(s) showing the following features. The site map requirements may be met using multiple plan sheets for ease of legibility.

- Vicinity map with roads and waters of the state within one mile of the site.
- Address, Parcel Number, and street names labels
- Erosion and Sediment Control Notes
- A legal description of the property boundaries or an illustration of property lines (including distances) in the drawings.
- Project limits, including limits of construction and areas to remain undisturbed
- North arrow
- Existing structures and roads, if present
- Boundaries of soil types with labels
- Areas of potential erosion problems
- Points where surface water runs on and off the site
- Any onsite and adjacent surface waters, critical areas, their buffers, FEMA base flood boundaries, and Shoreline Management boundaries
- Existing contours, drainage pipes and ditches/swales, and drainage basins, and the direction of flow for the different drainage areas
- Final, and interim as appropriate, contours, drainage basins, and the direction of stormwater flow during and upon completion of construction
- Areas of soil disturbance, including all areas affected by clearing, grading, and excavation
- Locations where stormwater discharges to surface waters or the City system during and upon completion of construction
- Existing unique or valuable vegetation and the vegetation that is to be preserved
- Cut and fill slopes indicating top and bottom of slope catch lines
- Stockpile, waste storage, and vehicle storage/maintenance areas
- Total cut and fill quantities and the method of disposal for excess material
- All existing and proposed utilities and any associated easements
- Proposed structures including roads and parking areas
- Proposed infiltration facilities that may need protection
- Identify a responsible, certified erosion and sediment control lead (CESCL) as required. Include the CESCL's telephone number and/or pager numbers on drawings.

## Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan Checklist

### 2. Temporary Conveyance Systems

Show on the site map(s) the following temporary and permanent onsite and offsite conveyance features:

- Locations for swales, interceptor trenches, or ditches
- Drainage pipes, ditches, or cut-off trenches associated with erosion and sediment control and stormwater management
- Temporary and permanent pipe inverts and minimum slopes and cover
- Grades, dimensions, and direction of flow in all ditches and swales, culverts, and pipes
- Details for bypassing offsite runoff or runoff around disturbed areas
- Locations and outlets of any dewatering systems

### 3. Location of Detention BMPs

- Identify the location of detention BMPs used for construction stormwater runoff.

### 4. Temporary Erosion and Sediment Control Facilities

Show on the site map all major structural and nonstructural TESC BMPs, including but not limited to:

- The location of sediment pond(s), pipes and structures
- Dimension pond berm widths and inside and outside pond slopes
- The trap/pond storage required and the depth, length, and width dimensions
- Typical section views through pond and outlet structure
- Typical details of gravel cone and standpipe, and/or other filtering devices
- Stabilization technique details for inlets and outlets
- Control/restrictor device location and details
- Stabilization practices for berms, slopes, and disturbed areas
- Rock specifications and detail for rock check dam, if used
- Spacing for rock check dams as required
- Front and side sections of typical rock check dams
- The location, detail, and specification for silt fence
- The construction entrance location and a detail

### 5. Detailed Drawings

- Explain and illustrate with detailed drawings any best management practices used that are not referenced in the SWMM.

## **Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan Checklist**

### **6. Other Pollutant BMPs**

- Indicate on the site plan the location of BMPs to be used for the control of pollutants other than sediment.

### **7. Monitoring Locations**

- Indicate on the site map the water quality sampling locations, if required by the City or the Department of Ecology. Sampling stations shall be located in accordance with applicable permit requirements.
- Describe inspection reporting responsibility, documentation, and filing.

## **Chapter 3 Standards and Specifications for Best Management Practices (BMPs)**

Best Management Practices (BMPs) are defined as schedules of activities, prohibitions of practices, maintenance procedures, and structural and/or managerial practices, that when used singly or in combination, prevent or reduce the release of pollutants to waters of Washington State. This chapter contains standards and specifications for temporary BMPs to be used as applicable during the construction phase of a project.

Section 3.1 contains the standards and specifications for Source Control BMPs specific to construction operations. Source Control BMPs prevent contamination from entering stormwater runoff by controlling them at the source.

Section 3.2 contains the standards and specifications for Runoff Conveyance and Treatment BMPs. Runoff Conveyance and Treatment BMPs are structural devices or facilities intended to prevent pollutants from entering the downstream system.

The standards for each individual BMP are divided into four sections:

1. Purpose
2. Conditions of Use
3. Design and Installation Specifications
4. Maintenance Standards

Note that the "Conditions of Use" always refers to site conditions. As site conditions change, BMPs must be changed to remain in compliance.

Information on stream bank stabilization is available in the Integrated Streambank Protection Guidelines, Washington State Department of Fish and Wildlife, 2003.

## 3.1 Source Control BMPs

### 3.1.1 BMP C101: Preserving Natural Vegetation

#### 3.1.1.1 Purpose

The purpose of preserving natural vegetation is to reduce erosion wherever practicable. Limiting site disturbance is the single most effective method for reducing erosion. For example, conifers can hold up to about 50 percent of all rain that falls during a storm. Up to 20-30 percent of this rain may never reach the ground but is taken up by the tree or evaporates. Another benefit is that the rain held in the tree can be released slowly to the ground after the storm.

#### 3.1.1.2 Conditions of Use

Natural vegetation should be preserved on steep slopes, near perennial and intermittent watercourses or swales, in wooded areas, and any other location practicable.

#### 3.1.1.3 Design and Installation Specifications

Natural vegetation can be preserved in natural clumps or as individual trees, shrubs and vines.

The preservation of individual plants is more difficult because heavy equipment is generally used to remove unwanted vegetation. The points to remember when attempting to save individual plants are:

- Is the plant worth saving? Consider the location, species, size, age, vigor, and the work involved. The City of Tacoma encourages the preservation of native vegetation and trees, where practicable.
- Fence or clearly mark areas around trees that are to be saved. Keep ground disturbance away from the trees as far out as the dripline (at a minimum).

Plants need protection from three kinds of injuries:

- **Construction Equipment** - This injury can be above or below the ground level. Damage results from scarring, cutting of roots, and compaction of the soil. Placing a fenced buffer zone around plants to be saved prior to construction can prevent construction equipment injuries.
- **Grade Changes** - Changing the natural ground level will alter grades, which affects the plant's ability to obtain the necessary air, water, and minerals. Minor fills usually do not cause problems although sensitivity between species does vary and should be checked. Trees can tolerate fill of 6 inches or less. For shrubs and other plants, the fill should be less.

When there are major changes in grade, it may become necessary to supply air to the roots of plants. This can be done by placing a layer of gravel and a tile system over the roots before the fill is made. A tile system protects a tree from a raised grade. The tile system should be laid out on the original grade leading from a dry well around the tree trunk. The system should then be covered with small stones to allow air to circulate over the root area.

Lowering the natural ground level can seriously damage trees and shrubs. The highest percentage of the plant roots are in the upper 12 inches of the soil and cuts of only 2-3 inches can cause serious injury. To protect the roots, it may be necessary to terrace the immediate area around the plants to be saved. If roots are exposed, construction of retaining walls may be needed to keep the soil in place. Plants can also be preserved by leaving them on an undisturbed, gently sloping mound. To increase the chances for

survival, it is best to limit grade changes and other soil disturbances to areas outside the dripline of the plant.

- **Excavations** - Protect trees and other plants when excavating for drainfields, power, water, and sewer lines. Where possible, route the trenches around trees and large shrubs. When this is not possible, it is best to tunnel under them. This can be done with hand tools or power augers. If it is not possible to route the trench around plants to be saved, then the following methods should be observed:
  - Cut as few roots as possible. When you have to cut, cut clean. Paint cut root ends with a wood dressing like asphalt base paint.
  - Backfill the trench as soon as possible.
  - Tunnel beneath root systems as close to the center of the main trunk as possible to preserve most of the important feeder roots.

Some problems that can be encountered with a few specific trees are:

- Maple, Dogwood, Red alder, Western hemlock, Western red cedar, and Douglas fir do not readily adjust to changes in environment and special care should be taken to protect these trees.
- The windthrow hazard of Pacific silver fir and madrona is high, while that of Western hemlock is moderate. The danger of windthrow increases where dense stands have been thinned. Other species (unless they are in shallow, wet soils less than 20 inches deep) have a low windthrow hazard.
- Cottonwoods, maples, and willows have water-seeking roots. These species thrive in high moisture conditions that other trees would not. Roots of these plants can cause problems in sewer lines and infiltration fields.
- Thinning operations in pure or mixed stands of Grand fir, Pacific silver fir, Noble fir, Sitka spruce, Western red cedar, Western hemlock, Pacific dogwood, and Red alder can cause serious disease problems. Disease can become established through damaged limbs, trunks, roots, and freshly cut stumps. Diseased and weakened trees are also susceptible to insect attack.

#### **3.1.1.4 Maintenance Standards**

- Inspect flagged and/or fenced areas regularly to make sure flagging or fencing has not been removed or damaged. If the flagging or fencing has been damaged or visibility reduced, it shall be repaired or replaced immediately and visibility restored.
- If tree roots have been exposed or injured, “prune” cleanly with an appropriate pruning saw or loppers directly above the damaged roots and recover with native soils. Treatment of sap flowing trees (fir, hemlock, pine, soft maples) is not advised as sap forms a natural healing barrier.

### **3.1.2 BMP C102: Buffer Zone**

#### **3.1.2.1 Purpose**

An undisturbed area or strip of natural vegetation or an established suitable planting that will provide a living filter to reduce soil erosion and runoff velocities.

#### **3.1.2.2 Conditions of Use**

Natural buffer zones are used along streams, wetlands and other bodies of water that need protection from erosion and sedimentation. Vegetative buffer zones can be used to protect natural swales and can be incorporated into the natural landscaping of an area.

Critical-areas buffer zones should not be used as sediment treatment areas. Do not disturb critical area buffers. The City may expand the buffer widths temporarily to allow the use of the expanded area for removal of sediment.

#### **3.1.2.3 Design and Installation Specifications**

- Preserve natural vegetation or plantings in clumps, blocks, or strips as this is generally the easiest and most successful method. However, single specimen trees and plants should also be preserved.
- Leave all unstable slopes in their natural, undisturbed state.
- Mark clearing limits and keep all equipment and construction debris out of the natural areas. Steel construction fencing is the most effective method of protecting sensitive areas and buffers. Alternatively, wire-backed silt fence on steel posts is marginally effective. Flagging alone is typically not effective and will not be allowed.
- Keep all excavations outside the dripline of trees and shrubs.
- Do not push debris or extra soil into the buffer zone area because it will cause damage from burying and smothering.
- Vegetative buffer zones for streams, lakes or other waterways shall be established by the City or other state or federal permits or approvals.

#### **3.1.2.4 Maintenance Standards**

- Inspect the area frequently to make sure flagging remains in place and the area remains undisturbed.



### **3.1.3 BMP C103: High Visibility Plastic or Metal Fence**

#### **3.1.3.1 Purpose**

Fencing is intended to:

- Restrict clearing to approved limits.
- Prevent disturbance of sensitive areas, their buffers, and other areas required to be left undisturbed.
- Limit construction traffic to designated construction entrances or roads.
- Protect areas where marking with survey tape may not provide adequate protection.

#### **3.1.3.2 Conditions of Use**

To establish clearing limits, plastic or metal fence may be used:

- At the boundary of sensitive areas, their buffers, and other areas required to be left uncleared.
- As necessary to control vehicle access to and on the site.

#### **3.1.3.3 Design and Installation Specifications**

- High visibility plastic fence shall be composed of a high-density polyethylene material and shall be at least four feet in height. Posts for the fencing shall be steel or wood and placed every 6 feet on center (maximum) or as needed to ensure rigidity. The fencing shall be fastened to the post every six inches with a polyethylene tie. On long continuous lengths of fencing, a tension wire or rope shall be used as a top stringer to prevent sagging between posts. The fence color shall be high visibility orange. The fence tensile strength shall be 360 lbs./ft. using the ASTM D4595 testing method.
- Design and install metal fences according to the manufacturer's specifications.
- Metal fences shall be at least 3 feet high and must be highly visible.
- Do not wire or staple fences to trees.

#### **3.1.3.4 Maintenance Standards**

- If the fence has been damaged or visibility reduced, it shall be repaired or replaced immediately and visibility restored.

### 3.1.4 BMP C104: Stake and Wire Fence

#### 3.1.4.1 Purpose

Fencing is intended to:

- Restrict clearing to approved limits.
- Prevent disturbance of sensitive areas, their buffers, and other areas required to be left undisturbed.
- Limit construction traffic to designated construction entrances or roads.
- Protect areas where marking with survey tape may not provide adequate protection.

#### 3.1.4.2 Conditions of Use

To establish clearing limits, stake or wiring fence may be used:

- At the boundary of sensitive areas, their buffers, and other areas required to be left uncleared.
- As necessary to control vehicle access to and on the site.

#### 3.1.4.3 Design and Installation Specifications

See Figure 2 - 1 for details.

- Use more substantial fencing if the fence does not prevent encroachment into those areas that are not to be disturbed.

#### 3.1.4.4 Maintenance Standards

- If the fence has been damaged or visibility reduced, it shall be repaired or replaced immediately and visibility restored.

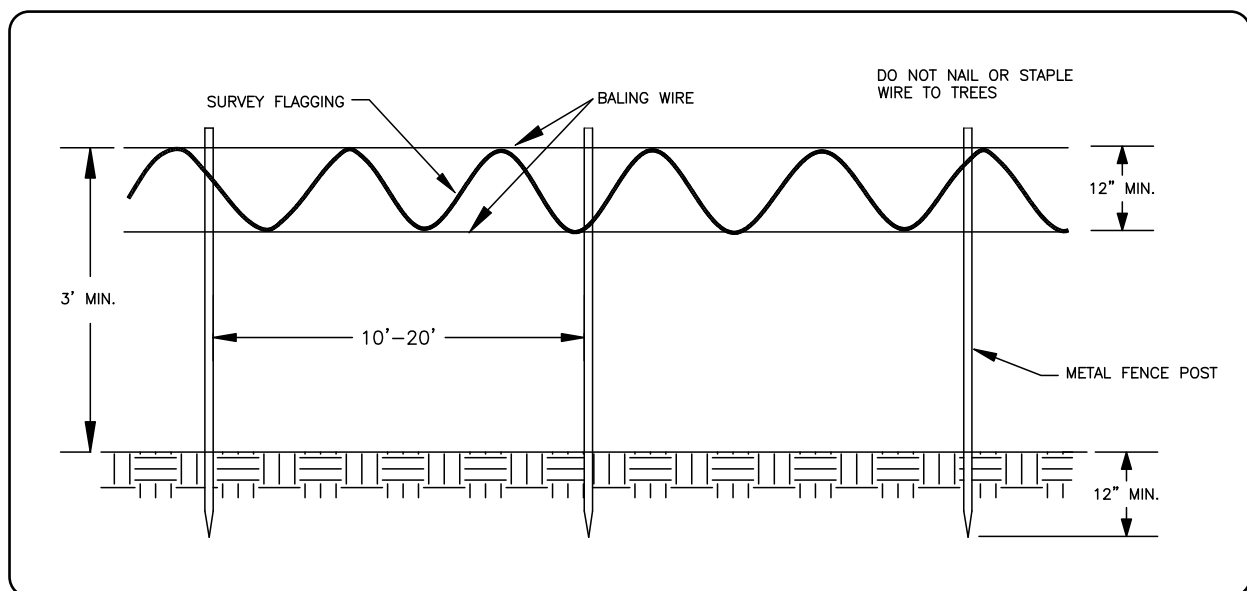


Figure 2 - 1. Stake and Wire Fence

### **3.1.5 BMP C105: Stabilized Construction Entrance**

#### **3.1.5.1 Purpose**

Construction entrances are stabilized to reduce the amount of sediment transported onto paved roads by vehicles or equipment by constructing a stabilized pad of quarry spalls at entrances to construction sites.

#### **3.1.5.2 Conditions of Use**

Construction entrances shall be stabilized wherever traffic will be leaving a construction site and traveling on paved roads or other paved areas within 1,000 feet of the site.

Construction vehicle ingress and egress shall be limited to one route. Additional routes may be allowed for very large projects or linear projects.

#### **3.1.5.3 Design and Installation Specifications**

See Figure 2 - 2 for details.

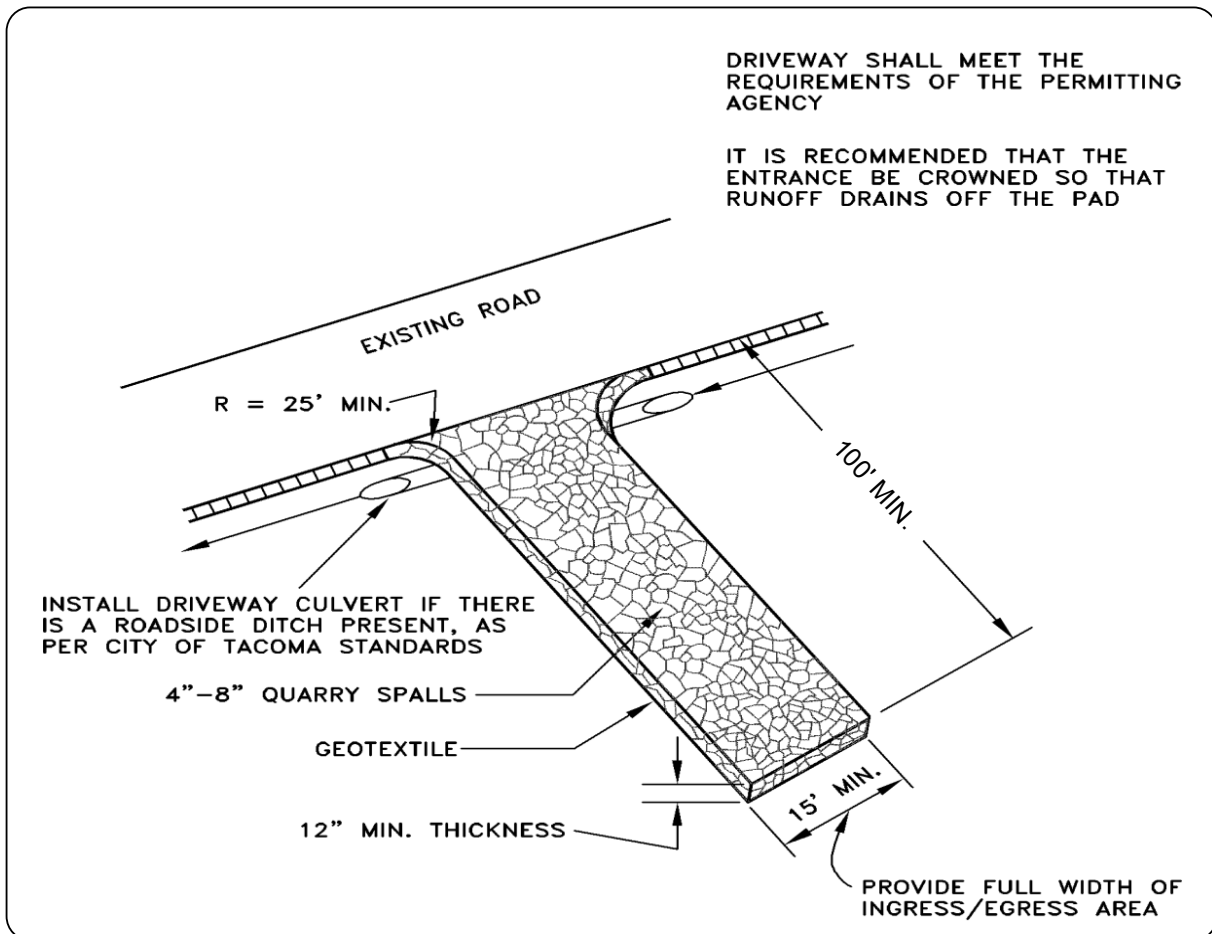
**NOTE:** Reduce the length of the entrance to the maximum practicable size when the size or configuration of the site does not allow the full 100-foot length. Consult with the Erosion and Sediment Control Lead (ESCL) to determine if reducing the length of the entrance is acceptable.

- Place a separation geotextile under the spalls to prevent fine sediment from pumping up into the rock pad. The geotextile shall meet the following standards:
  - Grab Tensile Strength (ASTM D4751) – 200 psi min.
  - Grab Tensile Elongation (ASTM D4632) – 30% max.
  - Mullen Burst Strength (ASTM D3786-80a) – 400 psi min.
  - AOS (ASTM D4751) – 20 to 45 (U.S. standard sieve size)
- Consider early installation of the first lift of asphalt or extra concrete in areas that will be paved; this can be used as a stabilized entrance.
- Install fencing (see BMPs C103 and C104) as necessary to restrict traffic to the construction entrance.
- Whenever possible, construct the entrance on a firm, compacted subgrade. This can substantially increase the effectiveness of the pad and reduce the need for maintenance.
- If possible, install the stabilized construction entrance on the uphill side of the site so that stormwater will not pond near the stabilized construction entrance.

#### **3.1.5.4 Maintenance Standards**

- Add quarry spalls if the pad is no longer in accordance with the specifications.
- If the entrance is not preventing sediment from being tracked onto pavement, then alternative measures to keep the streets free of sediment shall be used. This may include street sweeping, an increase in the dimensions of the entrance, or the installation of a wheel wash.
- No tracking of sediment onto the roadway is allowed. If sediment is tracked onto the road, clean the road thoroughly by shoveling or pickup sweeping. Transport sediment to a controlled sediment disposal area.
- Keep streets clean at ALL times. Clean tracked sediment immediately.

- Street washing of sediment to the storm drain system is not allowed.
- If sediment is discharged to the stormwater system it is the responsibility of the applicant to clean the downstream system.
- Immediately remove any quarry spalls that are loosened from the pad and end up on the roadway.
- Install fencing (BMPs C103 and C104) to control traffic if vehicles are entering or exiting the site at points other than the construction entrance(s).
- Upon project completion and site stabilization, permanently stabilize all construction accesses intended as permanent access for maintenance.



**Figure 2 - 2. Stabilized Construction Entrance**

Figure 2 - 3 shows a small site, stabilized construction entrance.

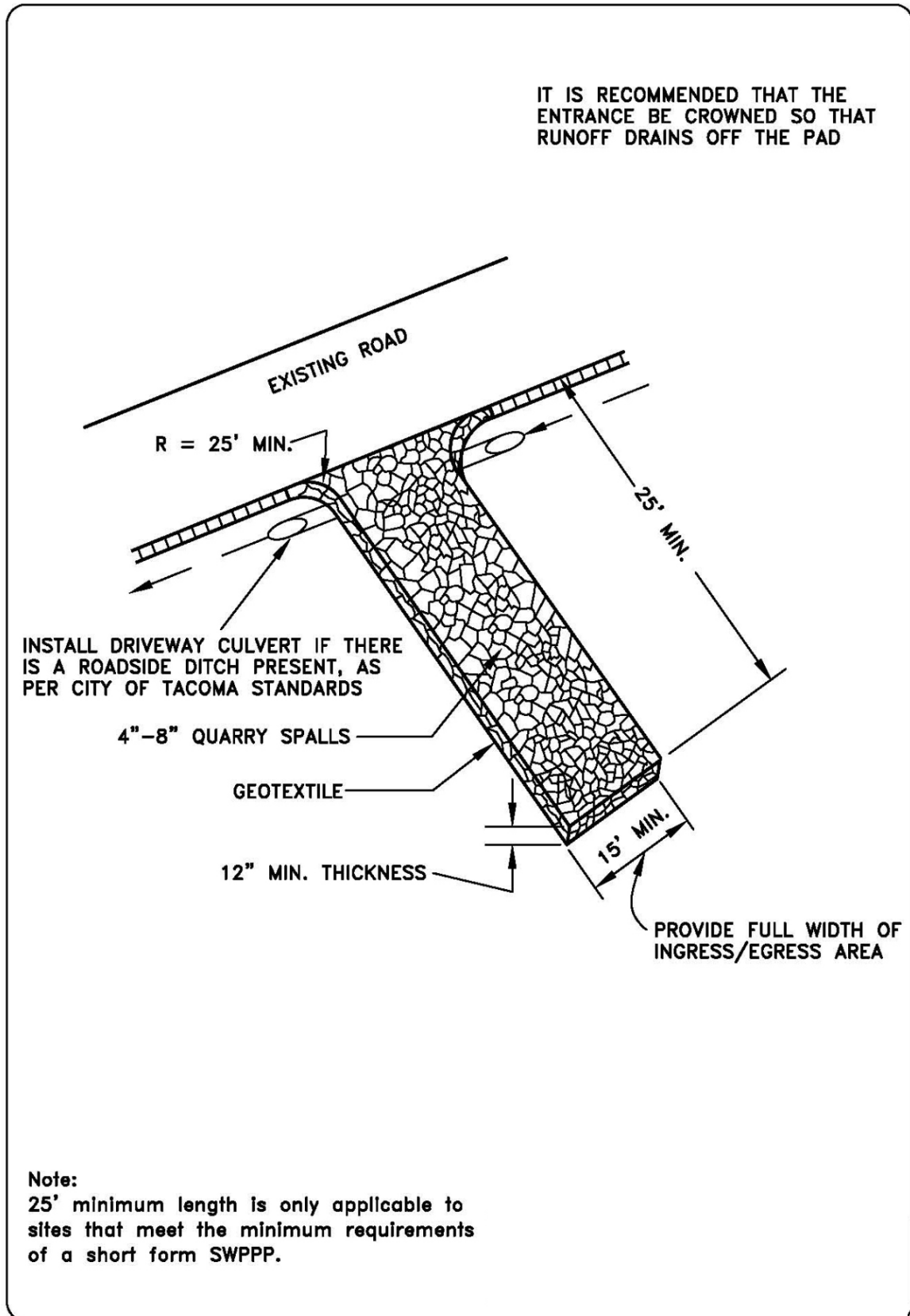


Figure 2 - 3. Small-Site Stabilized Construction Entrance

### **3.1.6 BMP C106: Wheel Wash**

#### **3.1.6.1 Purpose**

Wheel washes reduce the amount of sediment transported onto paved roads by motor vehicles.

#### **3.1.6.2 Conditions of Use**

Can be used when a stabilized construction entrance (see BMP C105) is not preventing sediment from being tracked onto pavement.

- Wheel washing is generally an effective BMP when installed with careful attention to topography. For example, a wheel wash can be detrimental if installed at the top of a slope abutting a right-of-way where the water from the dripping truck can run unimpeded into the street.
- Pressure washing combined with an adequately sized and surfaced pad with direct drainage to a large 10-foot x 10-foot sump can be very effective.

#### **3.1.6.3 Design and Installation Specifications**

Suggested details are shown in Figure 2 - 4. The City may allow other designs. A minimum of 6 inches of asphalt treated base (ATB) over crushed base material or 8 inches over a good subgrade is recommended to pave the wheel wash.

Use a low clearance truck to test the wheel wash before paving. Either a belly dump or lowboy will work well to test clearance.

Keep the water level from 12 to 14 inches deep to avoid damage to truck hubs and filling the truck tongues with water.

Midpoint spray nozzles are only needed in extremely muddy conditions.

Design wheel wash systems with a small grade change, 6 to 12 inches for a 10-foot-wide pond, to allow sediment to flow to the low side of pond to help prevent re-suspension of sediment. A drainpipe with a 2- to 3-foot riser should be installed on the low side of the pond to allow for easy cleaning and refilling. Polymers may be used to promote coagulation and flocculation in a closed-loop system. Polyacrylamide (PAM) added to the wheel wash water at a rate of 0.25 - 0.5 pounds per 1,000 gallons of water increases effectiveness and reduces cleanup time. If PAM is already being used for dust or erosion control and is being applied by a water truck, the same truck can be used to change the wash water.

#### **3.1.6.4 Maintenance Standards**

The wheel wash should start out the day with fresh water.

The wash water should be changed as necessary with a minimum of once per day. On large earthwork jobs where more than 10-20 trucks per hour are expected, the wash water will need to be changed more often.

Wheel wash or tire bath wastewater shall be discharged to a separate onsite treatment system, such as closed-loop recirculation or land application, or to the sanitary sewer with a City of Tacoma Special Approved Discharge permit.

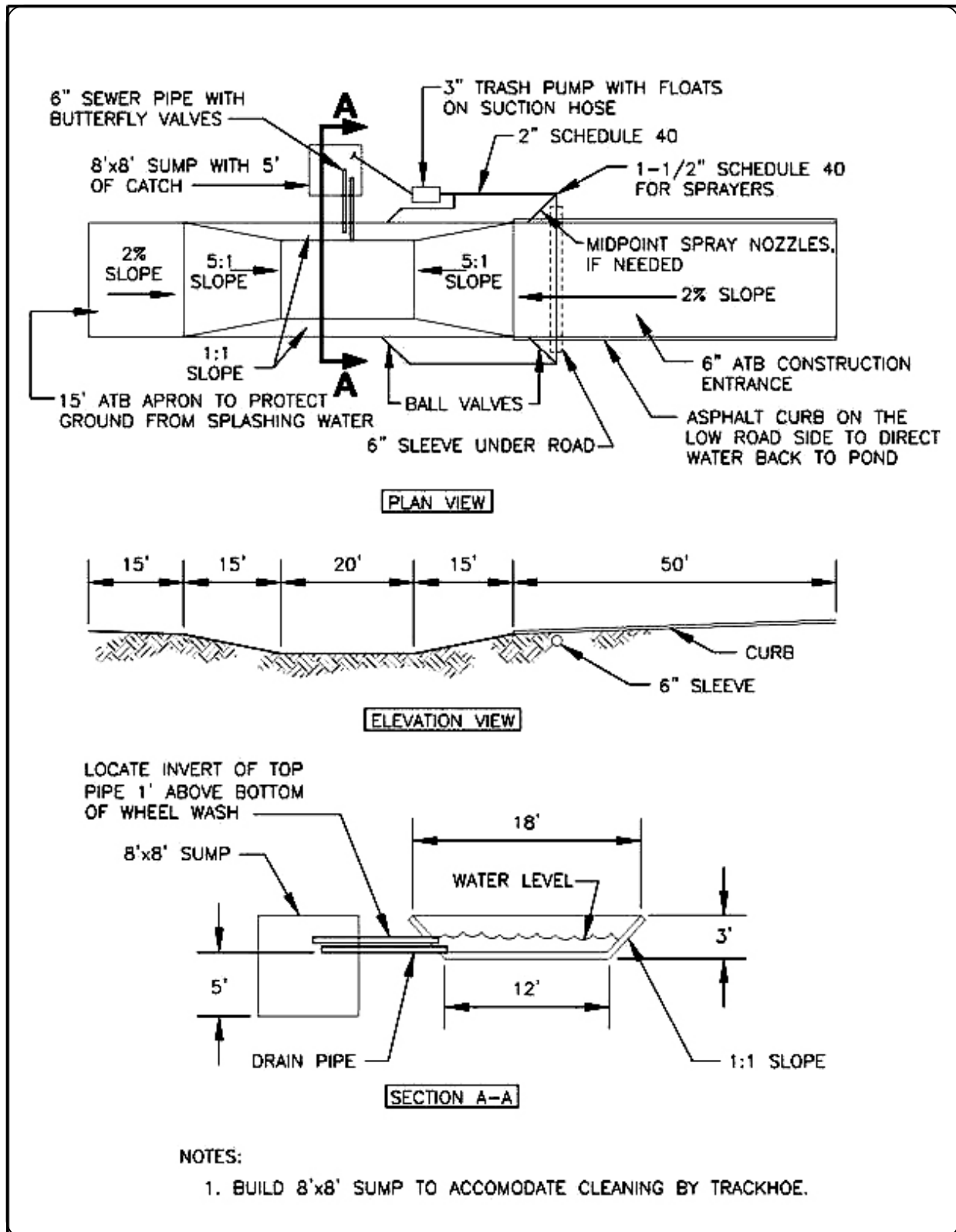


Figure 2 - 4. Wheel Wash

### **3.1.7 BMP C107: Construction Road/Parking Area Stabilization**

#### **3.1.7.1 Purpose**

Stabilizing subdivision roads, parking areas and other onsite vehicle transportation routes immediately after grading reduces erosion caused by construction traffic or runoff.

#### **3.1.7.2 Conditions of Use**

- Stabilize roads or parking areas wherever they are constructed, whether permanent or temporary, for use by construction traffic.
- Install fencing (see BMPs C103 and C104), if necessary, to limit the access of vehicles to only those roads and parking areas that are stabilized.

#### **3.1.7.3 Design and Installation Specifications**

- On areas that will receive asphalt as part of the project, install the first lift as soon as possible.
- Use one of the following methods to stabilize the area immediately after grading or utility installation.
  - Pave the road/parking area.
  - Apply 6-inch depth of 2- to 4-inch crushed rock, gravel base, or crushed surfacing base course.
  - Apply a 4-inch course of asphalt treated base (ATB).
  - Apply cement or calcium chloride<sup>1</sup>.
  - Apply a 6-inch depth of hog fuel (only if the area will not be used for permanent roads, parking areas or structures).
- Whenever possible, place construction roads and parking areas on a firm, compacted subgrade.
- Temporary road gradients shall not exceed 15 percent. Carefully grade roadways to drain. Provide drainage ditches on each side of the roadway in the case of a crowned section, or on one side in the case of a super-elevated section. Direct drainage ditches to a sediment control BMP.
- Rather than relying on ditches, it may also be possible to grade the road so that runoff sheet flows into a heavily vegetated area with a well-developed topsoil. Landscaped areas are not adequate. If this area has at least 50 feet of vegetation, then it is generally preferable to use the vegetation to treat runoff, rather than a sediment pond or trap. The 50 feet shall not include wetlands. If runoff is allowed to sheetflow through adjacent vegetated areas, it is vital to design the roadways and parking areas so that no concentrated runoff is created.
- Protect storm drain inlets to prevent sediment-laden water entering the storm drain system (see BMP C220).

---

1.If cement or cement kiln dust is used for roadbase stabilization, pH monitoring and BMPs are necessary to evaluate and minimize the effects on stormwater.



#### **3.1.7.4 Maintenance Standards**

- Inspect stabilized areas regularly, especially after large storm events.
- Add crushed rock, gravel base, hog fuel, etc. as required to maintain a stable driving surface and to stabilize any eroded areas.
- Following construction, restore all areas to preconstruction condition or better to prevent future erosion.

### **3.1.8 BMP C120: Temporary and Permanent Seeding**

#### **3.1.8.1 Purpose**

Seeding is intended to reduce erosion by stabilizing exposed soils. A well-established vegetative cover is one of the most effective methods of reducing erosion.

#### **3.1.8.2 Conditions of Use**

- Seeding may be used throughout the project on disturbed areas that have reached final grade or that will remain unworked.
- Channels that will be vegetated should be installed before major earthwork and hydroseeded with a Bonded Fiber Matrix. The vegetation should be well established (i.e., 75 percent cover) before water is allowed to flow in the ditch. With channels that will have high flows, install erosion control blankets over the hydroseed. If vegetation cannot be established from seed before water is allowed in the ditch, sod should be installed in the bottom of the ditch over hydromulch and blankets.
- Seed retention/detention ponds as required.
- Mulch is required at all times because it protects seeds from heat, moisture loss, and transport due to runoff.
- All disturbed areas shall be reviewed in late August to early September and all seeding shall be completed by the end of September. Otherwise, vegetation will not establish itself enough to provide more than average protection.
- At final site stabilization, seed and mulch all disturbed areas not otherwise vegetated or stabilized. Final stabilization means the completion of all soil disturbing activities at the site and the establishment of a permanent vegetative cover, or equivalent permanent stabilization measures (such as pavement, riprap, gabions or geotextiles) which will prevent erosion.

#### **3.1.8.3 Design and Installation Specifications**

- Seed during seasons most conducive to plant growth.
  - The optimum seeding windows for western Washington are April 1 through June 30 and September 1 through October 1.
  - Seeding that occurs between July 1 and August 30 will require irrigation until 75 percent grass cover is established.
  - Seeding that occurs between October 1 and March 30 will require a mulch or plastic cover until 75 percent grass cover is established.
- Deviation from these specifications will be allowed if alternatives are developed by a licensed Landscape Professional and approved by the City.
- To prevent seed from being washed away, confirm that all required surface water control measures have been installed.
- The seedbed should be firm and rough. All soil should be roughened no matter what the slope. If compaction is required for engineering purposes, track walk slopes before seeding. Backblading or smoothing of slopes greater than 4:1 is not allowed if they are to be seeded.
- New and more effective restoration-based landscape practices rely on deeper incorporation than that provided by a simple single-pass rototilling treatment. Wherever practical, the subgrade should be initially ripped to improve long-term permeability,

infiltration, and water inflow qualities. At a minimum for permanent areas, use soil amendments to achieve organic matter and permeability performance defined in engineered soil/landscape systems. For systems that are deeper than 8 inches, complete the rototilling process in multiple lifts, or prepare the soil system properly and then place it to achieve the specified depth.

- Organic matter is the most appropriate form of “fertilizer” because it provides nutrients (including nitrogen, phosphorus, and potassium) in the least water-soluble form. A natural system typically releases 2-10 percent of its nutrients annually. Chemical fertilizers have since been formulated to simulate what organic matter does naturally.
- In general, 10-4-6 N-P-K (nitrogen-phosphorus-potassium) fertilizer can be used at a rate of 90 pounds per acre. Always use slow-release fertilizers because they are more efficient and have fewer environmental impacts. It is recommended that soils tests are conducted in areas being seeded for final landscaping to determine the exact type and quantity of fertilizer needed. This will prevent the over-application of fertilizer. Fertilizer should not be added to the hydromulch machine and agitated more than 20 minutes before it is to be used. If agitated too much, the slow-release coating is destroyed.
- There are numerous products available on the market that take the place of chemical fertilizers. These include several with seaweed extracts that are beneficial to soil microbes and organisms. If 100 percent cottonseed meal is used as the mulch in hydroseed, chemical fertilizer may not be necessary. Cottonseed meal is a good source of long-term, slow-release, available nitrogen.
- Hydroseed applications shall include a minimum of 1,500 pounds per acre of mulch with 3 percent tackifier. Mulch may be made up of 100 percent: cottonseed meal; fibers made of wood, recycled cellulose, hemp, and kenaf; compost; or blends of these. Tackifier shall be plant-based, such as guar or alpha plantago, or chemical-based such as polyacrylamide or polymers. Any mulch or tackifier product used shall be installed per manufacturer’s instructions. Generally, mulches come in 40-50 pound bags. Seed and fertilizer are added at time of application.
- Mulch is always required for seeding. Mulch can be applied on top of the seed or simultaneously by hydroseeding.
- On steep slopes, Bonded Fiber Matrix (BFM) or Mechanically Bonded Fiber Matrix (MBFM) products should be used. BFM/MBFM products are applied at a minimum rate of 3,000 pounds per acre of mulch with approximately 10 percent tackifier. Application is made so that a minimum of 95 percent soil coverage is achieved. Numerous products are available commercially and should be installed per manufacturer’s instructions. Most products require 24-36 hours to cure before a rainfall and cannot be installed on wet or saturated soils. Generally, these products come in 40-50 pound bags and include all necessary ingredients except for seed and fertilizer.
- BFMs and MBFMs have some advantages over blankets:
  - No surface preparation required;
  - Can be installed via helicopter in remote areas;
  - On slopes steeper than 2.5:1, blanket installers may need to be roped and harnessed for safety;
- In most cases, the shear strength of blankets is not a factor when used on slopes, only when used in channels. BFMs and MBFMs are good alternatives to blankets in most situations where vegetation establishment is the goal.

- When installing seed via hydroseeding operations, only about 1/3 of the seed actually ends up in contact with the soil surface. This reduces the ability to establish a good stand of grass quickly. One way to overcome this is to increase seed quantities by up to 50 percent.
- Vegetation establishment can also be enhanced by dividing the hydromulch operation into two phases:
  - Phase 1- Install all seed and fertilizer with 25-30 percent mulch and tackifier onto soil in the first lift;
  - Phase 2- Install the rest of the mulch and tackifier over the first lift.
- An alternative is to install the mulch, seed, fertilizer, and tackifier in one lift. Then, spread or blow straw over the top of the hydromulch at a rate of about 800-1000 pounds per acre. Hold straw in place with a standard tackifier. Both of these approaches will increase cost moderately but will greatly improve and enhance vegetative establishment. The increased cost may be offset by the reduced need for:
  - Irrigation
  - Reapplication of mulch
  - Repair of failed slope surfaces
  - This technique works with standard hydromulch (1,500 pounds per acre minimum) and BFM/MBFMs (3,000 pounds per acre minimum).
- Provide a healthy topsoil to areas to be permanently landscaped. This will reduce the need for fertilizers, improve overall topsoil quality, provide for better vegetal health and vitality, improve hydrologic characteristics, and reduce the need for irrigation. See the Post-Construction Soil Quality and Depth BMP in Volume 6 for more information. Areas that will be seeded only and not landscaped may need compost or meal-based mulch included in the hydroseed in order to establish vegetation. Replace native topsoil on the disturbed soil surface before application.
- Seed that is installed as a temporary measure may be installed by hand if it will be covered by straw, mulch, or topsoil. Seed that is installed as a permanent measure may be installed by hand on small areas (usually less than 1 acre) that will be covered with mulch, topsoil, or erosion blankets. The seed mixes listed below include recommended mixes for both temporary and permanent seeding. These mixes, with the exception of the wetland mix, shall be applied at a rate of 120 pounds per acre. This rate can be reduced if soil amendments or slow-release fertilizers are used. Local suppliers or the local conservation district should be consulted for their recommendations because the appropriate mix depends on a variety of factors, including location, exposure, soil type, slope, and expected foot traffic. Alternative seed mixes approved by the City of Tacoma may be used.
- Table 2 - 1 represents the standard mix for those areas where just a temporary vegetative cover is required.
- Table 2 - 2 provides one recommended possibility for landscaping seed.
- The turf seed mix in Table 2 - 3 is for dry situations. The advantage is that this mix requires very little maintenance.
- Table 2 - 4 presents a mix recommended for bioswales and other intermittently wet areas.
- The seed mix shown in Table 2 - 5 is a recommended low-growing, relatively non-invasive seed mix appropriate for very wet areas that are not regulated wetlands. Other

mixes may be appropriate, depending on the soil type and hydrology of the area. Recent research suggests that bentgrass (*agrostis* sp.) should be emphasized in wet-area seed mixes. Apply this mixture at a rate of 60 pounds per acre.

- The meadow seed mix in Table 2 - 6 is recommended for areas that will be maintained infrequently or not at all and where colonization by native plants is desirable. Likely applications include rural road and utility right-of-way. Seeding should take place in September or very early October in order to obtain adequate establishment prior to the winter months. The appropriateness of clover in the mix may need to be considered, as this can be a fairly invasive species. If the soil is amended, the addition of clover may not be necessary.

**3.1.8.4 Maintenance Standards**

- Reseed any seeded areas that fail to establish at least 80 percent cover within 6 weeks from the initial seeding (100 percent cover for areas that receive sheet or concentrated flows). If reseeding is ineffective, use an alternate method, such as sodding, mulching, or nets/blankets. If winter weather prevents adequate grass growth, this time limit may be relaxed at the discretion of the City.
- After adequate cover is achieved, reseed and protect with mulch any areas that experience erosion. If the erosion problem is drainage related, the problem shall be fixed and the eroded area reseeded and protected by mulch.
- Water seeded areas if necessary. Watering shall not cause runoff.

**Table 2 - 1: Temporary Erosion Control Seed Mix**

	% Weight	% Purity	% Germination
Chewings or annual bluegrass <i>Festuca rubra</i> var. <i>commutate</i> or <i>Poa anna</i>	40	98	90
Perennial rye <i>Lolium perenne</i>	50	98	90
Redtop or colonial bentgrass <i>Agrostis alba</i> or <i>Agrostis tenuis</i>	5	92	85
White Dutch clover <i>Trifolium repens</i>	5	98	90

**Table 2 - 2: Landscaping Seed Mix**

	% Weight	% Purity	% Germination
Perennial rye <i>Lolium perenne</i>	70	98	90
Chewings and red fescue blend <i>Festuca rubra</i> var <i>commutate</i> or <i>Festuca rubra</i>	30	98	90

**Table 2 - 3: Low-Growing Turf Seed Mix**

	% Weight	% Purity	% Germination
Dwarf tall fescue (several varieties) <i>Festuca arundinacea</i> var.	45	98	90
Dwarf perennial rye (Barclay) <i>Lolium perenne</i> var. <i>barclay</i>	30	98	90
Red fescue <i>Festuca rubra</i>	30	98	90
Colonial bentgrass <i>Agrostis tenuis</i>	5	98	90

**Table 2 - 4: Bioswale Seed Mix<sup>a</sup>**

	% Weight	% Purity	% Germination
Tall or meadow fescue <i>Festuca arundinacea</i> or <i>Festuca elatior</i>	75-80	98	90
Seaside/Creeping bentgrass <i>Agrostis palustris</i>	10-15	92	95
Redtop bentgrass <i>Agrostis alba</i> or <i>Agrostis gigantea</i>	5-10	90	90

a. Modified Briargreen, Inc. Hydroseeding Guide Wetlands Seed Mix

**Table 2 - 5: Wet Area Seed Mix**

	% Weight	% Purity	% Germination
Tall or meadow fescue <i>Festuca arundinacea</i> or <i>Festuca elatior</i>	60-70	98	90
Seaside/Creeping bentgrass <i>Agrostis palustris</i>	10-15	98	85
Meadow foxtail <i>Alephocurus pratensis</i>	10-15	90	80
Alsike clover <i>Trifolium hybridum</i>	1-6	98	90
Redtop bentgrass <i>Agrostis alba</i> or <i>Agrostis gigantea</i>	1-6	92	85

**Table 2 - 6: Meadow Seed Mix**

	<b>% Weight</b>	<b>% Purity</b>	<b>% Germination</b>
Redtop or Oregon bentgrass <i>Agrostis alba</i> or <i>Agrostis oregonensis</i>	20	92	85
Red fescue <i>Festuca rubra</i>	70	98	90
White Dutch clover <i>Trifolium repens</i>	10	98	90

### **3.1.9 BMP C121: Mulching**

#### **3.1.9.1 Purpose**

The purpose of mulching soils is to provide immediate temporary protection from erosion. Mulch also enhances plant establishment by conserving moisture, holding fertilizer, seed, and topsoil in place, and moderating soil temperatures. There is an enormous variety of mulches that can be used. Only the most common types are discussed in this section.

#### **3.1.9.2 Conditions of Use**

As a temporary cover measure, mulch should be used:

- On disturbed areas that require cover measures for less than 30 days.
- As a cover for seed during the wet season and during the hot summer months.
- During the wet season on slopes steeper than 3H:1V with more than 10 feet of vertical relief.
- Mulch may be applied at any time of the year and must be refreshed periodically.

#### **3.1.9.3 Design and Installation Specifications**

For mulch materials, application rates, and specifications, see Table 2 - 7.

**NOTE:** Thicknesses may be increased for disturbed areas in or near sensitive areas or other areas highly susceptible to erosion.

Mulch used within the ordinary high-water mark of surface waters should be selected to minimize potential flotation of organic matter. Composted organic materials have higher specific gravities (densities) than straw, wood, or chipped material.

#### **3.1.9.4 Maintenance Standards**

- The thickness of the cover must be maintained.
- Remulch and/or protect with a net or blanket any areas that experience erosion. If the erosion problem is drainage related, then fix the problem and remulch the eroded area.



**Table 2 - 7: Mulch Standards and Guidelines**

Mulch Material	Quality Standards	Application Rates	Remarks
Straw	Air-dried; free from undesirable seed and coarse material.	3" thick; 5 bales per 1000 sf or 2 to 3 tons per acre.	Cost-effective protection when applied with adequate thickness. Hand-application generally requires greater thickness than blown straw. The thickness of straw may be reduced by half when used in conjunction with seeding. In windy areas, straw must be held in place by crimping, using a tackifier, or covering with netting. Blown straw always has to be held in place with a tackifier as even light winds will blow it away. Straw, however, has several deficiencies that should be considered when selecting mulch materials. It often introduces and/or encourages the propagation of weed species and it has no significant long-term benefits. Straw should be used only if mulches with long-term benefits are unavailable locally. It should also not be used within the ordinary high-water elevation of surface waters (due to flotation).
Hydro-mulch	No growth inhibiting factors.	Approx. 25-30 lbs per 1000 sf or 1500-2000 lbs per acre.	Shall be applied with hydromulcher. Shall not be used without seed and tackifier unless the application rate is at least doubled. Fibers longer than about ¾ - 1 inch clog hydromulch equipment. Fibers should be kept to less than ¾ inch.
Composted Mulch and Compost	No visible water or dust during handling. Must be purchased from supplier with a Solid Waste Handling permit (unless exempt)	3" thick, min.; approx. 100 tons per acre (approx. 800 lbs. per yard).	Mulch is excellent for protecting final grades until landscaping because it can be directly seeded or tilled into soil as an amendment. Composted mulch has a coarser size gradation than compost. It is more stable and practical to use in wet areas and during rainy weather conditions.
Chipped Site Vegetation	Average size shall be several inches. Gradations from fine to 6-inches in length for texture, variation, and interlocking properties.	3" minimum thickness	This is a cost-effective way to dispose of debris from clearing and grubbing, and it eliminates the problems associated with burning. Generally, it should not be used on slopes above approx. 10% because of its tendency to be transported by runoff. It is not recommended within 200 feet of surface waters. If seeding is expected shortly after mulch, the decomposition of the chipped vegetation may tie up nutrients important to grass establishment.
Wood-based mulch	No visible water or dust during handling. Must be purchased from a supplier with a Solid Waste Handling permit or one exempt from solid waste regulations.	3" thick; approx. 100 tons per acre (approx. 800 lbs. per yard).	This material is often called "hog" or "hogged fuel". The use of mulch ultimately improves the organic matter in the soil. Special caution is advised regarding the source and composition of wood-based mulches. Its preparation typically does not provide any weed seed control, so evidence of residual vegetation in its composition or known inclusion of weed plants or seeds should be monitored and prevented (or minimized).

### **3.1.10 BMP C122: Nets and Blankets**

#### **3.1.10.1 Purpose**

Erosion control nets and blankets are intended to prevent erosion and hold seed and mulch in place on steep slopes and in channels so that vegetation can become well established. In addition, some nets and blankets can be used to permanently reinforce turf to protect drainage ways during high flows. Nets (commonly called matting) are strands of material woven into an open, but high-tensile strength net (for example, coconut fiber matting). Blankets are strands of material that are not tightly woven, but instead form a layer of interlocking fibers, typically held together by a biodegradable or photodegradable netting (for example, excelsior or straw blankets). They generally have lower tensile strength than nets, but cover the ground more completely. Coir (coconut fiber) fabric comes as both nets and blankets.

#### **3.1.10.2 Conditions of Use**

Erosion control nets and blankets should be used:

- To aid permanent vegetated stabilization of slopes 2H:1V or greater and with more than 10 feet of vertical relief.
- For drainage ditches and swales (highly recommended). The application of appropriate netting or blanket to drainage ditches and swales can protect bare soil from channelized runoff while vegetation is established. Nets and blankets also can capture a great deal of sediment due to their open, porous structure. Synthetic nets and blankets can be used to permanently stabilize channels and may provide a cost-effective, environmentally preferable alternative to riprap. 100 percent synthetic blankets manufactured for use in ditches may be easily reused as temporary ditch liners.
- Disadvantages of blankets include:
  - Surface preparation required;
  - On slopes steeper than 2.5:1, blanket installers may need to be roped and harnessed for safety;
- Advantages of blankets include:
  - Can be installed without mobilizing special equipment;
  - Can be installed by anyone with minimal training;
  - Can be installed in stages or phases as the project progresses;
  - Seed and fertilizer can be hand-placed by the installers as they progress down the slope;
  - Can be installed in any weather;
  - There are numerous types of blankets that can be designed with various parameters in mind. Those parameters include: fiber blend, mesh strength, longevity, biodegradability, cost, and availability.

#### **3.1.10.3 Design and Installation Specifications**

- See Figure 2 - 5 and Figure 2 - 6 for typical orientation and installation of blankets used in channels and as slope protection. Note: these are typical only; all blankets must be installed per manufacturer's installation instructions.

- Installation is critical to the effectiveness of these products. If good ground contact is not achieved, runoff can concentrate under the product, resulting in significant erosion.

### ***Installation of Blankets on Slopes:***

- Complete final grade and track walk up and down the slope.
- Slope surface shall be free of rocks, clods, sticks and grass. Nets/blankets shall have good contact with the soil.
- Apply permanent seeding per BMP C120 or mulching per BMP C121 before placing net/blanket.
- Dig a small trench, approximately 12 inches wide by 6 inches deep along the top of the slope. Cover with soil to secure.
- Install the leading edge of the blanket into the small trench, backfill the trench with soil and staple approximately every 18 inches.

**NOTE:** Staples are metal. "U"-shaped, and a minimum of 6 inches long. Longer staples are used in sandy soils. Biodegradable stakes are also available and should be used where applicable.

- Roll the blanket slowly down the slope as the installer walks backwards.

**NOTE:** The blanket rests against the installer's legs. Staples are installed as the blanket is unrolled. It is critical that the proper staple pattern is used for the blanket being installed. The blanket should not be allowed to roll down the slope on its own as this stretches the blanket, making it impossible to maintain soil contact. In addition, no one should be allowed to walk on the blanket after it is in place.

- If the blanket is not long enough to cover the entire slope length, the trailing edge of the upper blanket should overlap the leading edge of the lower blanket and be stapled. On steeper slopes, this overlap should be installed in a small trench, covered with soil and stapled.
- With the variety of products available, it is impossible to cover all the details of appropriate use and installation. Therefore, it is critical that the design engineer consults the manufacturer's information and that a site visit takes place in order to insure that the product specified is appropriate. Information is also available at the WSDOT website:  
<http://www.wsdot.wa.gov/environment/>
- Jute matting must be used in conjunction with mulch (BMP C121). Excelsior, woven straw blankets, and coir (coconut fiber) blankets may be installed without mulch. There are many other types of erosion control nets and blankets on the market that may be appropriate in certain circumstances.
- In general, most nets (e.g., jute matting) require mulch in order to prevent erosion because they have a fairly open structure. Blankets typically do not require mulch because they usually provide complete protection of the surface.
- Extremely steep, unstable, wet, or rocky slopes are often appropriate candidates for use of synthetic blankets, as are riverbanks, beaches, and other high-energy environments. If synthetic blankets are used, the soil should be hydromulched first.
- 100 percent biodegradable blankets are available for use in sensitive areas. These organic blankets are usually held together with a paper or fiber mesh and stitching which may last up to a year.

- Most netting used with blankets is photodegradable, meaning it will break down under sunlight (not UV stabilized). However, this process can take months or years even under bright sun. Once vegetation is established, sunlight does not reach the mesh. It is not uncommon to find non-degraded netting still in place several years after installation. This can be a problem if maintenance requires the use of mowers or ditch cleaning equipment. In addition, birds and small animals can become trapped in the netting.

#### **3.1.10.4 Maintenance Standards**

- Good contact with the ground must be maintained, and erosion must not occur beneath the net or blanket.
- Repair or staple any areas of the net or blanket that are damaged or not in close contact with the ground.
- If erosion occurs due to poorly controlled drainage, fix the problem and protect the eroded area.

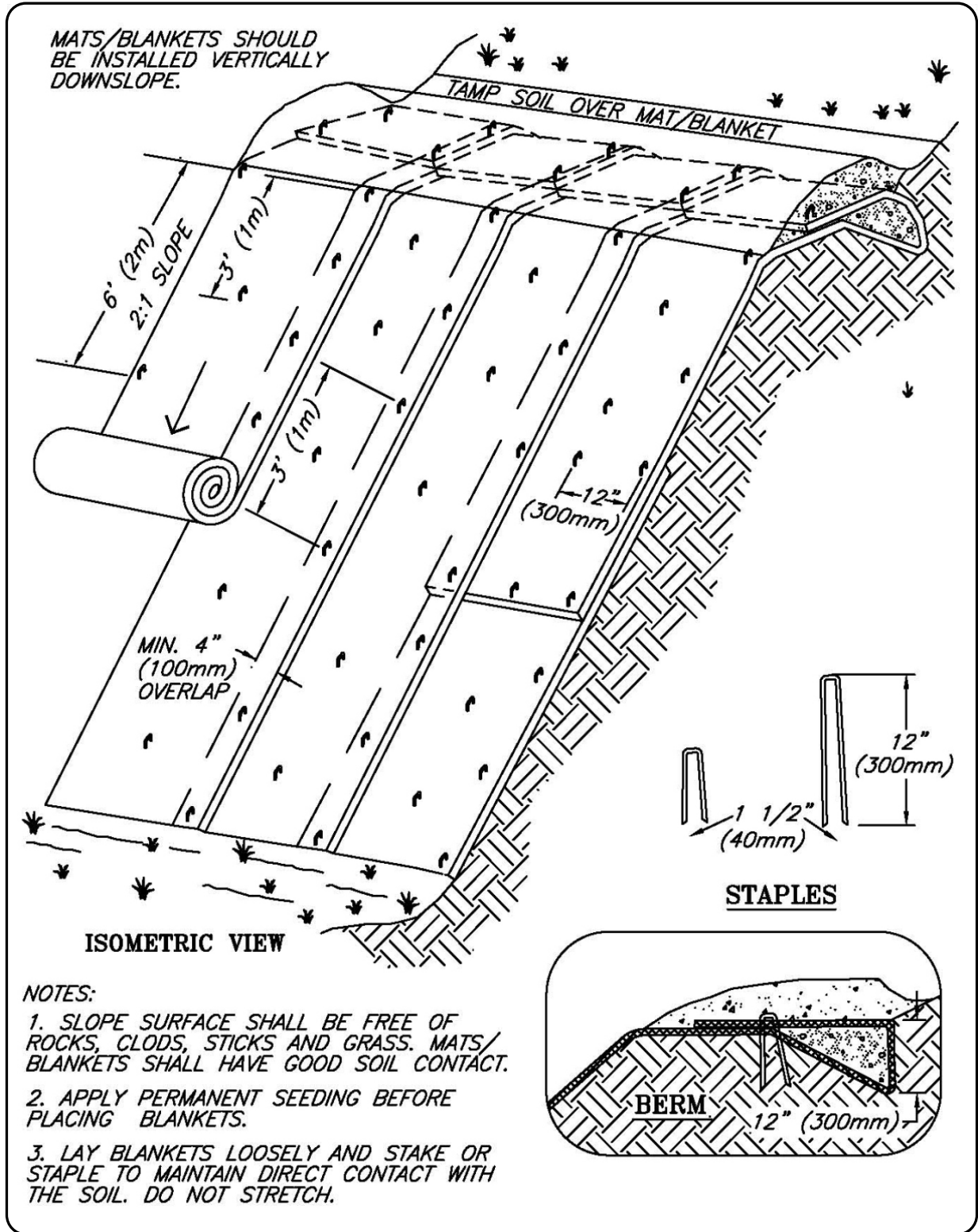


Figure 2 - 5. Nets and Blankets – Slope Installation

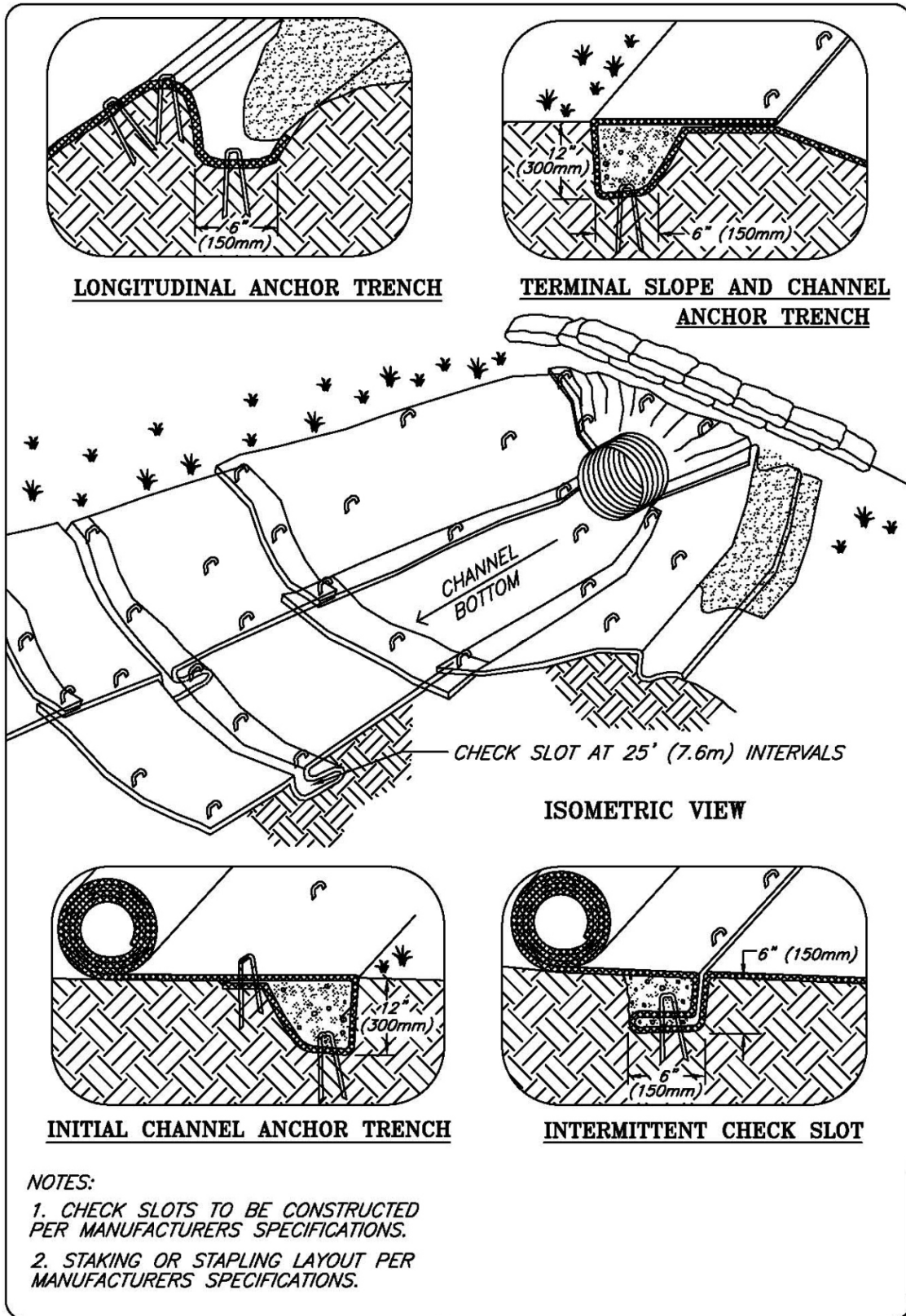


Figure 2 - 6. Nets and Blankets – Channel Installation

### **3.1.11 BMP C123: Plastic Covering**

#### **3.1.11.1 Purpose**

Plastic covering provides immediate, short-term erosion protection to slopes and disturbed areas.

#### **3.1.11.2 Conditions of Use**

- Plastic covering may be used on disturbed areas that require cover measures for less than 30 days, except as stated below.
- Plastic is particularly useful for protecting cut and fill slopes and stockpiles.
- The relatively rapid breakdown of most polyethylene sheeting makes it unsuitable for long-term (greater than six months) applications.
- Clear plastic sheeting can be used over newly-seeded areas to create a greenhouse effect and encourage grass growth if the hydroseed was installed too late in the season to establish 75 percent grass cover, or if the wet season started earlier than normal. Clear plastic should not be used for this purpose during the summer months because the resulting high temperatures can kill the grass.
- Due to rapid runoff caused by plastic sheeting, this method shall not be used upslope of areas that might be adversely impacted by concentrated runoff. Such areas include steep and/or unstable slopes.
- Whenever plastic is used to protect slopes, water collection measures must be installed at the base of the slope. These measures include plastic-covered berms, channels, and pipes used to convey clean rainwater away from bare soil and disturbed areas. At no time is clean runoff from a plastic covered slope to be mixed with dirty runoff from a project.
- Other uses for plastic include:
  - Temporary ditch liner;
  - Pond liner in temporary sediment pond;
  - Liner for bermed temporary fuel storage area if plastic is not reactive to the type of fuel being stored;
  - Emergency slope protection during heavy rains; and
  - Temporary drainpipe (“elephant trunk”) used to direct water.

#### **3.1.11.3 Design and Installation Specifications**

See Figure 2 - 7.

Plastic slope cover must be installed as follows:

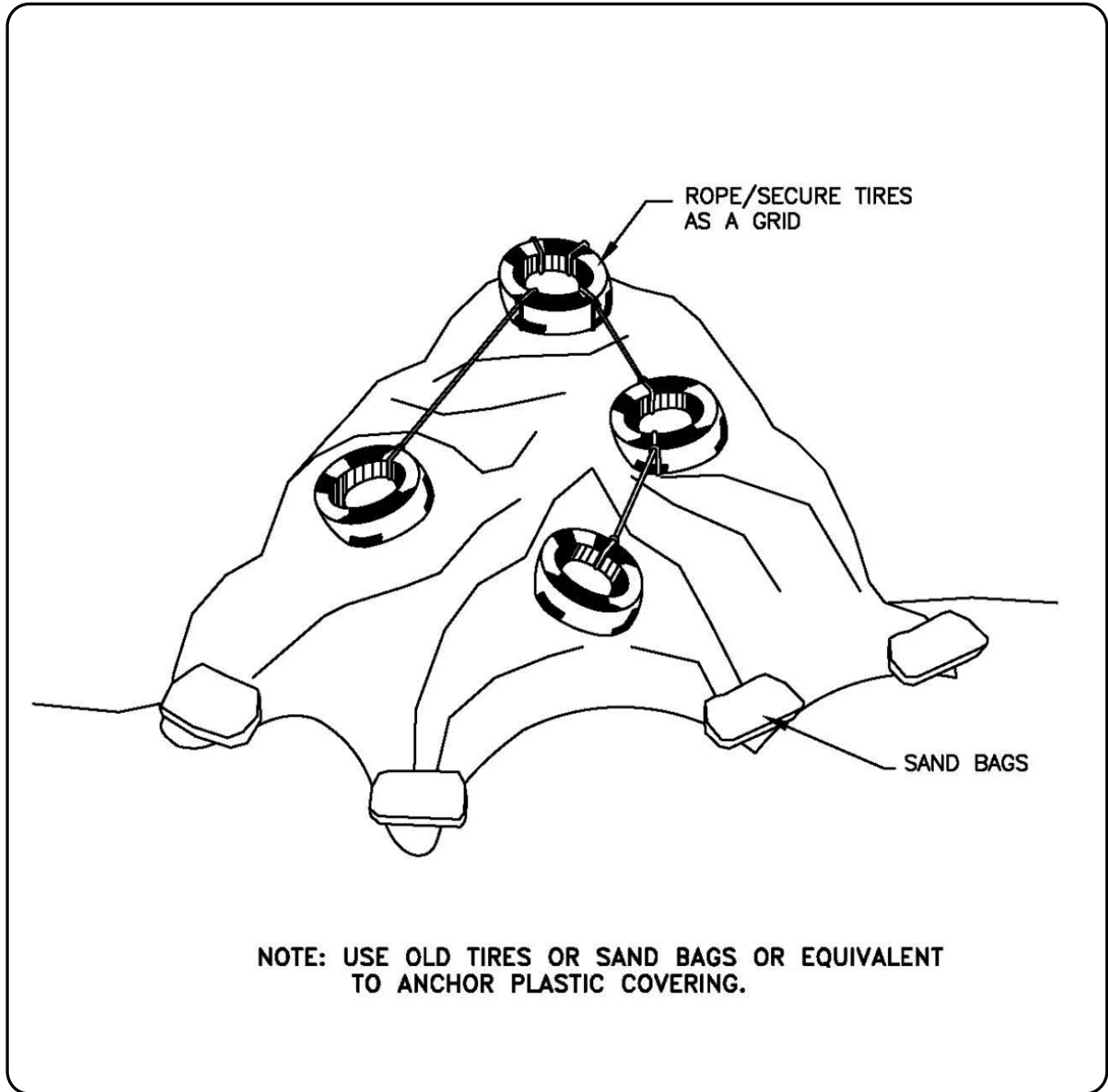
- Run plastic up and down slope, not across slope.
- Plastic may be installed perpendicular to a slope if the slope length is less than 10 feet.
- Minimum of 8-inch overlap at seams.
- On long or wide slopes, or slopes subject to wind, all seams should be taped.
- Place plastic into a small (12-inch wide by 6-inch deep) slot trench at the top of the slope and backfill with soil to keep water from flowing underneath.

- Place sand filled burlap or geotextile bags every 3 to 6 feet along seams and pound a wooden stake through each to hold them in place. Alternative options for holding plastic in place exist and may be considered with COT approval.
- Inspect plastic for rips, tears, and open seams regularly and repair immediately. This prevents high velocity runoff from contacting bare soil, which causes extreme erosion;
- Plastic sheeting shall have a minimum thickness of 6 mil.
- If erosion at the toe of a slope is likely, a gravel berm, riprap, or other suitable protection shall be installed at the toe of the slope in order to reduce the velocity of runoff.

#### **3.1.11.4 Maintenance Standards**

- Torn sheets must be replaced and open seams repaired.
- If the plastic begins to deteriorate due to ultraviolet radiation, it must be completely removed and replaced.
- When the plastic is no longer needed, it shall be completely removed.





*Figure 2 - 7. Soil Erosion Protection – Plastic Covering*

### **3.1.12 BMP C124: Sodding**

#### **3.1.12.1 Purpose**

The purpose of sodding is to establish permanent turf for immediate erosion protection and to stabilize drainage ways where concentrated overland flow will occur.

#### **3.1.12.2 Conditions of Use**

Sodding may be used in the following areas:

- Disturbed areas that require short-term or long-term cover.
- Disturbed areas that require immediate vegetative cover.
- All waterways that require vegetative lining. Waterways may also be seeded rather than sodded, and protected with a net or blanket.

#### **3.1.12.3 Design and Installation Specifications**

Sod shall be free of weeds, of uniform thickness (approximately 1-inch thick), and shall have a dense root mat for mechanical strength.

The following steps are recommended for sod installation:

- Shape and smooth the surface to final grade in accordance with the approved grading plan. Overexcavate the swale 4 to 6 inches below design elevation to allow room for placing soil amendment and sod.
- Amend 4 inches (minimum) of compost into the top 8 inches of the soil if the organic content of the soil is less than ten percent or the infiltration rate is less than 0.6 inches per hour. Compost used should meet Ecology specifications for Grade A quality compost. See <http://www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/swfa/compost/>
- Fertilize according to the supplier's recommendations.
- Work lime and fertilizer 1 to 2 inches into the soil, and smooth the surface.
- Lay strips of sod beginning at the lowest area to be sodded and perpendicular to the direction of water flow. Wedge strips securely into place. Square the ends of each strip to provide for a close, tight fit. Stagger joints at least 12 inches. Staple on slopes steeper than 3H:1V. Staple the upstream edge of each sod strip.
- Roll the sodded area and irrigate.
- When sodding is carried out in alternating strips or other patterns, seed the areas between the sod immediately after sodding.

#### **3.1.12.4 Maintenance Standards**

If the grass is unhealthy, the cause shall be determined and appropriate action taken to reestablish a healthy groundcover. If it is impossible to establish a healthy groundcover due to frequent saturation, instability, or some other cause, the sod shall be removed, the area seeded with an appropriate mix, and protected with a net or blanket.

### **3.1.13 BMP C125: Compost**

#### **3.1.13.1 Purpose**

The purpose of compost is to help establish vegetation and filter stormwater thus removing fine sediment and other contaminants. Compost can be used alone as a compost blanket, as a berm, or inside a sock.

#### **3.1.13.2 Conditions of Use**

- Do not use if stormwater will discharge to a nutrient sensitive waterbody.
- Do not use as a storm drain inlet protection measure.

#### **3.1.13.3 Design and Installation Specifications**

##### **Compost Blankets**

Compost blankets are simply compost blanketed over an area.

- Place compost 3" thick.
- Compost can be blown onto slopes up to 2:1 or spread by hand on shallower slopes.
- Compost must be  $\frac{3}{4}$  to 1 inch-minus screened compost meeting Ecology's requirements for Grade A quality compost. See <http://www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/swfa/compost> for more information on compost quality.
- Compost can be mixed with a seed mix to ensure rapid vegetation.
- Compost does not need to be removed after construction phase unless required by the project engineer or geotechnical professional.

##### **Compost Berms**

Compost berms are a perimeter sediment control that can be used instead of silt fence.

- Do not use compost berms on steep slopes.
- Berm width shall be a minimum of 2 feet.
- Berm height shall be a minimum of 12 inches.
- Berm width shall be twice the berm height.

Compost can be blown in place or placed by front-end loader. Compost must be  $\frac{3}{4}$  to 1 inch-minus screened compost meeting Ecology's requirements for Grade A quality compost. See <http://www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/swfa/compost> for more information on compost quality.

Compost should be spread over proposed landscaped section when construction is complete to aid in revegetation.

**Compost Socks**

Compost socks are similar to straw wattles.

- Sock material that is biodegradable will last up to 6 months and can be used for soil amendment after 6 months.
- Sock material that is non-biodegradable must be removed after construction is complete.
- Place socks perpendicular to flow.
- Walk socks in place to ensure good soil contact.
- Install wooden stakes every 12" on steep slopes or every 24" on shallow slopes

**3.1.13.4 Maintenance Standards****Compost Blankets**

- Inspect compost regularly.
- Ensure a 3" thick blanket.

**Compost Berms**

- Inspect compost berm regularly.
- Ensure vehicular traffic does not cross berm and track compost offsite. If this occurs, sweep compost immediately.

**Compost Socks**

- Do not allow erosion or concentrated runoff under or around the barrier.
- Inspect the socks after each rainfall and repair any socks that tear or are not abutting the ground.

### **3.1.14 BMP C126: Topsoiling**

#### **3.1.14.1 Purpose**

To provide a suitable growth medium for final site stabilization with vegetation. While not a permanent cover practice in itself, topsoiling is an integral component of providing permanent cover in those areas where there is an unsuitable soil surface for plant growth. Native soils and disturbed soils that have been organically amended not only retain much more stormwater, but they also serve as effective biofilters for urban pollutants and, by supporting more vigorous plant growth, reduce the amount of water, fertilizer, and pesticides needed to support installed landscapes. Topsoil does not include any subsoils, only the material from the top several inches, including organic debris.

#### **3.1.14.2 Conditions of Use**

Native soils should be left undisturbed to the maximum extent practicable. Native soils disturbed during clearing and grading should be restored, to the maximum extent practicable, to a condition where moisture-holding capacity is equal to or better than the original site conditions. This criterion can be met by using onsite native topsoil, incorporating amendments into onsite soil, or importing blended topsoil.

- Topsoiling is a required procedure when establishing vegetation on shallow soils, and soils of critically low pH (high acid) levels.
- Stripping of the existing, properly functioning soil system and vegetation for the purpose of topsoiling during construction is not acceptable. If an existing soil system is functioning properly, it shall be preserved in its undisturbed and uncompacted condition.
- Depending on where the topsoil comes from, or what vegetation was on site before disturbance, invasive plant seeds may be included and could cause problems for establishing native plants, landscaped areas, or grasses.
- Topsoil from the site will contain mycorrhizal bacteria that are necessary for healthy root growth and nutrient transfer. These native mycorrhiza are acclimated to the site and will provide optimum conditions for establishing grasses. Commercially available mycorrhiza products should be used when topsoil is brought in from offsite.

#### **3.1.14.3 Design and Installation Specifications**

If topsoiling is to be done, the following items should be considered:

- Maximize the depth of the topsoil wherever possible to provide the maximum possible infiltration capacity and beneficial growth medium. Topsoil depth shall be at least 8 inches with a minimum organic content of 10 percent dry weight and pH between 6.0 and 8.0 or matching the pH of the undisturbed soil. This can be accomplished either by returning native topsoil to the site and/or incorporating organic amendments. Organic amendments should be incorporated to a minimum 8-inch depth except where tree roots or other natural features limit the depth of incorporation. Subsoils below the 12-inch depth should be scarified at least 4 inches to avoid stratified layers, where feasible. The decision to either layer topsoil over a subgrade or incorporate topsoil into the underlying layer may vary depending on the planting specified.
- If blended topsoil is imported, fines should be limited to 25 percent passing through a 200 sieve.
- The final composition and construction of the soil system will result in a natural selection or favoring of certain plant species over time. For example, recent practices have shown

that incorporation of topsoil may favor grasses, while layering with mildly acidic, high-carbon amendments may favor more woody vegetation.

- Locate the topsoil stockpile so it meets specifications and does not interfere with work on the site. It may be possible to locate more than one pile in proximity to areas where topsoil will be used.
- Allow sufficient time in scheduling for topsoil to be spread prior to seeding, sodding, or planting.
- Care must be taken not to apply topsoil over subsoil if the two soils have contrasting textures. Sandy topsoil over clayey subsoil is a particularly poor combination, as water creeps along the junction between the soil layers and causes the topsoil to slough.
- If topsoil and subsoil are not properly bonded, water will not infiltrate the soil profile evenly and it will be difficult to establish vegetation. The best method to prevent a lack of bonding is to work the topsoil into the layer below for a depth of at least 6 inches.
- Ripping or re-structuring the subgrade may also provide additional benefits regarding the overall infiltration and interflow dynamics of the soil system.
- Field exploration of the site shall be made to determine if there is surface soil of sufficient quantity and quality to justify stripping. Topsoil shall be friable and loamy (loam, sandy loam, silt loam, sandy clay loam, clay loam). Areas of natural groundwater recharge should be avoided.
- Confine stripping to the immediate construction area. A 4- to 6- inch stripping depth is common, but depth may vary depending on the particular soil. Place all surface runoff control structures in place prior to stripping.

Stockpile topsoil in the following manner:

- Side slopes of the stockpile shall not exceed 2:1.
- Surround all topsoil stockpiles between October 1 and April 30 with an interceptor dike with gravel outlet and silt fence. Between May 1 and September 30, install an interceptor dike with gravel outlet and silt fence if the stockpile will remain in place for a longer period of time than active construction grading.
- Complete erosion control seeding or covering with clear plastic or other mulching materials of stockpiles within 2 days (October 1 through April 30) or 7 days (May 1 through September 30) of the formation of the stockpile. Do not cover native topsoil stockpiles with plastic.
- Topsoil shall not be placed while in a frozen or muddy condition, when the subgrade is excessively wet, or when conditions exist that may otherwise be detrimental to proper grading or proposed sodding or seeding.
- Maintain previously established grades on the areas to be topsoiled according to the approved plan.
- When native topsoil is to be stockpiled and reused, the following should apply to ensure that the mycorrhizal bacterial, earthworms, and other beneficial organisms will not be destroyed:
  - Topsoil is to be re-installed within 4 to 6 weeks;
  - Topsoil is not to become saturated with water;
  - Plastic cover is not allowed.

#### **3.1.14.4 Maintenance Standards**

Inspect stockpiles regularly, especially after large storm events. Stabilize any areas that have eroded.

### **3.1.15 BMP C127: Polyacrylamide for Soil Erosion Protection**

#### **3.1.15.1 Purpose**

Polyacrylamide (PAM) is used on construction sites to prevent soil erosion.

Applying PAM to bare soil in advance of a rain event significantly reduces erosion and controls sediment in two ways. PAM helps maintain soil structure, which increases the ability to infiltrate.

#### **3.1.15.2 Conditions of Use**

**Do not apply PAM directly to water or allow it to enter a water body.** In areas that drain to a sediment pond, PAM can be applied to bare soil under the following conditions:

- During rough grading operations.
- Staging areas.
- Balanced cut and fill earthwork.
- Haul roads prior to placement of crushed rock surfacing.
- Compacted soil roadbase.
- Stockpiles.
- After final grade and before paving or final seeding and planting.
- Pit sites.
- Sites having a winter shut down. In the case of winter shut down, or where soil will remain unworked for several months, PAM should be used together with mulch.

#### **3.1.15.3 Design and Installation Specifications**

PAM may be applied in dissolved form with water, or it may be applied in dry, granular or powdered form. The preferred application method is the dissolved form.

PAM is to be applied at a maximum rate of 2/3 pound PAM per 1,000 gallons water (80 mg/L) per 1 acre of bare soil. Higher concentrations of PAM **do not** provide any additional effectiveness.

##### ***The Preferred Method:***

- Pre-measure the area where PAM is to be applied and calculate the amount of product and water necessary to provide coverage at the specified application rate (2/3 pound PAM per 1,000 gallons per acre).
- PAM has infinite solubility in water, but dissolves very slowly. Dissolve pre-measured dry granular PAM with a known quantity of clean water in a bucket several hours or overnight. Mechanical mixing will help dissolve the PAM. Always add PAM to water - not water to PAM.
- Pre-fill the water truck about 1/8 full with water. The water does not have to be potable, but it must have relatively low turbidity – in the range of 20 NTU or less.
- Add PAM and water mixture to the truck.
- Completely fill the water truck to specified volume.
- Spray PAM and water mixture onto dry soil until the soil surface is uniformly and completely wetted.



***An Alternate Method:***

PAM may also be applied as a powder at the rate of 5 pounds per acre. This must be applied on a day that is dry. For areas less than 5 to 10 acres, a hand-held “organ grinder” fertilizer spreader set to the smallest setting will work. Tractor-mounted spreaders will work for larger areas.

***Benefits and Limitations:***

The following benefits and limitations should be considered:

- PAM shall be used in conjunction with other BMPs and not in place of other BMPs.
- The steeper the slope, the less benefit PAM will provide and the more critical it is to use proper groundcover for erosion control.
- Do not use PAM on a slope that flows directly into a stream or wetland or any other waterbody.
- PAM has little to no effect on sandy soils with little clay content.
- Do not add PAM to water discharging from site.
- When the total drainage area is greater than or equal to 5 acres, PAM treated areas shall drain to a sediment pond.
- Areas less than 5 acres shall drain to sediment control BMPs, such as a minimum of 3 check dams per acre. The total number of check dams used shall be maximized to achieve the greatest amount of settlement of sediment prior to discharging from the site. Each check dam shall be spaced evenly in the drainage channel through which stormwater flows are discharged offsite.
- On all sites, use silt fences to limit the discharges of sediment from the site.
- Cover and protect all areas not being actively worked from rainfall. PAM shall not be the only cover BMP used.
- PAM can be applied to wet soil, but dry soil is preferred due to less sediment loss.
- PAM will work when applied to saturated soil but is not as effective as applications to dry or damp soil.
- Keep the granular PAM supply out of the sun. Granular PAM loses its effectiveness in three months after exposure to sunlight and air.
- Proper application and re-application plans are necessary to ensure total effectiveness of PAM usage.
- PAM, combined with water, is very slippery and can be a safety hazard. Care must be taken to prevent spills of PAM powder onto paved surfaces. During an application of PAM, prevent over-spray from reaching pavement, as pavement will become slippery. If PAM powder gets on skin or clothing, wipe it off with a rough towel rather than washing with water, which makes cleanup messier and take longer.
- Some PAMs are more toxic and carcinogenic than others. Only the most environmentally safe PAM products should be used.

- The specific PAM copolymer formulation must be anionic. **Cationic PAM shall not be used in any application because of known aquatic toxicity problems.** Only the highest drinking water grade PAM, certified for compliance with ANSI/NSF Standard 60 for drinking water treatment, will be used for soil applications. PAM use shall be reviewed and approved by the City. The Washington State Department of Transportation (WSDOT) has listed approved PAM products on its web page.  
<http://www.wsdot.wa.gov/Environment/WaterQuality/ErosionControl.htm>
- PAM designated for these uses should be "water soluble", "linear", or "non-crosslinked". Cross-linked or water absorbent PAM, polymerized in highly acidic (pH<2) conditions, are used to maintain soil moisture content.
- The PAM anionic charge density may vary from 2 to 30 percent; a value of 18 percent is typical. Studies conducted by the United States Department of Agriculture (USDA)/ARS demonstrated that soil stabilization was optimized by using very high molecular weight (12-15 mg/mole), highly anionic (>20% hydrolysis) PAM.
- PAM tackifiers are available and being used in place of guar and alpha plantago. Typically, PAM tackifiers should be used at a rate of no more than 0.5 to 1 pounds per 1,000 gallons of water in a hydromulch machine. Some tackifier product instructions say to use at a rate of 3 to 5 pounds per acre, which can be too much. In addition, pump problems can occur at higher rates due to increased viscosity.

#### **3.1.15.4 Maintenance Standards**

- PAM may be reapplied on actively worked areas after a 48-hour period.
- Reapplication is not required unless PAM treated soil is disturbed or turbidity levels show the need for an additional application. If PAM treated soil is left undisturbed, a reapplication may be necessary after two months. When PAM is applied first to bare soil and then covered with straw, a reapplication may not be necessary for several months.
- Loss of sediment and PAM may be a basis for penalties per RCW 90.48.080.

### **3.1.16 BMP C130: Surface Roughening**

#### **3.1.16.1 Purpose**

Surface roughening aids in the establishment of vegetative cover, reduces runoff velocity, increases infiltration, and provides for sediment trapping through the provision of a rough soil surface. Horizontal depressions are created by operating a tiller or other suitable equipment on the contour or by leaving slopes in a roughened condition by not fine grading them.

#### **3.1.16.2 Conditions for Use**

All slopes steeper than 3H:1V and greater than 5 vertical feet require surface roughening.

- Areas with grades steeper than 3H:1V should be roughened to a depth of 2 to 4 inches prior to seeding.
- Areas that will not be stabilized immediately may be roughened to reduce runoff velocity until seeding takes place.
- Slopes with a stable rock face do not require roughening.
- Slopes where mowing is planned should not be excessively roughened.

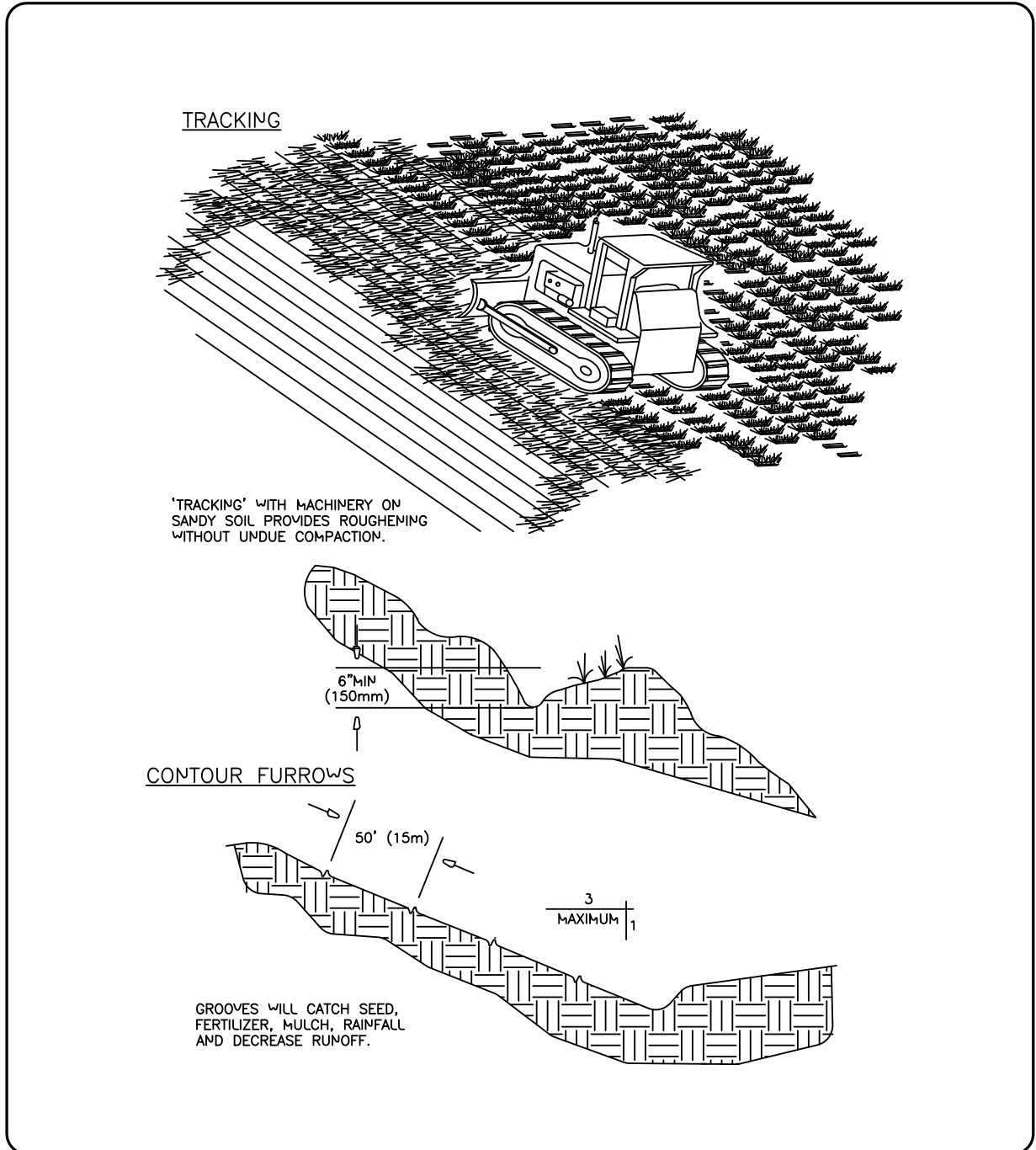
#### **3.1.16.3 Design and Installation Specifications**

There are different methods for achieving a roughened soil surface on a slope, and the selection of an appropriate method depends upon the type of slope. Roughening methods include stair-step grading, grooving, contour furrows, and tracking. See Figure 2 - 8 for tracking and contour furrows. Factors to be considered in choosing a method are slope steepness, mowing requirements, and whether the slope is formed by cutting or filling.

- Disturbed areas that will not require mowing may be stair-step graded, grooved, or left rough after filling.
- Stair-step grading is particularly appropriate in soils containing large amounts of soft rock. Each "step" catches material that sloughs from above, and provides a level site where vegetation can become established. Stairs should be wide enough to work with standard earth moving equipment. Stair steps must be on contour or gullies will form on the slope.
- Areas that will be mowed (these areas should have slopes less steep than 3:1) may have small furrows left by disking, harrowing, raking, or seed-planting machinery operated on the contour.
- Graded areas with slopes greater than 3:1 but less than 2:1 should be roughened before seeding. This can be accomplished in a variety of ways, including "track walking," or driving a crawler tractor up and down the slope, leaving a pattern of cleat imprints parallel to slope contours.
- Tracking is done by operating equipment up and down the slope to leave horizontal depressions in the soil.

#### **3.1.16.4 Maintenance Standards**

- Areas that are graded in this manner should be seeded as quickly as possible.
- Regular inspections should be made of the area. If rills appear, they should be re-graded and re-seeded immediately.



**Figure 2 - 8. Surface Roughening by Tracking and Contour Furrows**

### 3.1.17 BMP C131: Gradient Terraces

#### 3.1.17.1 Purpose

Gradient terraces reduce erosion damage by intercepting surface runoff and conducting it to a stable outlet at a non-erosive velocity.

#### 3.1.17.2 Conditions of Use

Gradient terraces normally are limited to denuded land having a water erosion problem. They should not be constructed on deep sands or on soils that are too stony, steep, or shallow to permit practical and economical installation and maintenance. Gradient terraces may be used only where suitable outlets are or will be made available. See Figure 2 - 9 for gradient terraces.

#### 3.1.17.3 Design and Installation Specifications

The maximum spacing of gradient terraces should be determined by the following method:

$$VI = (0.8)s + y$$

Where:

VI = vertical interval in feet

s = land rise per 100 feet, expressed in feet

y = a soil and cover variable with values from 1.0 to 4.0

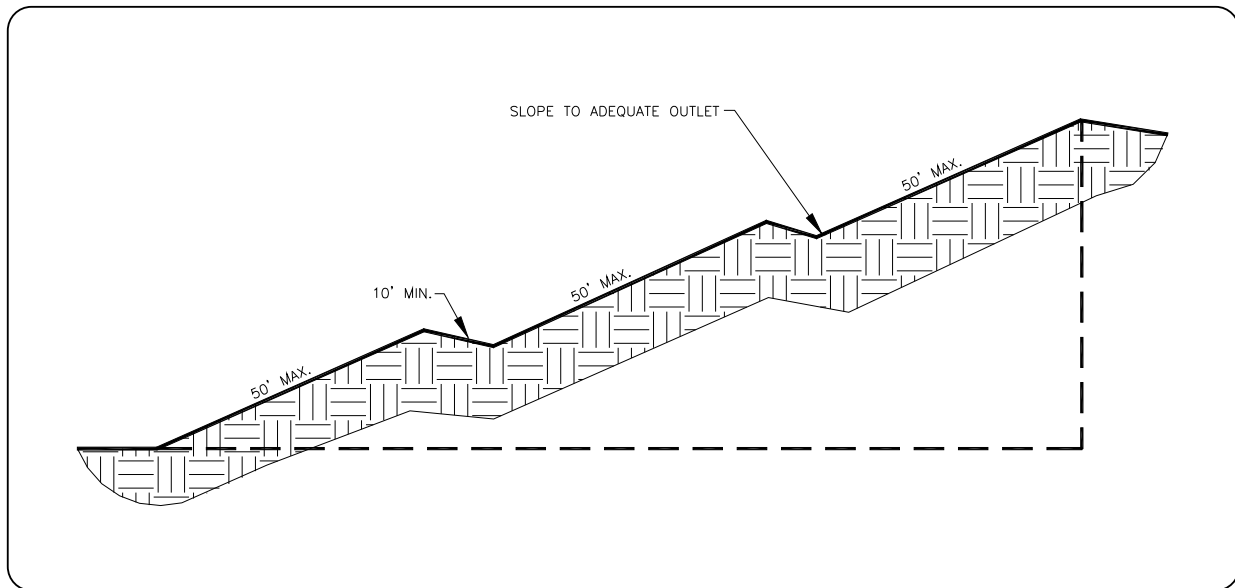
Values of “y” are influenced by soil erodibility and cover practices. The lower values are applicable to erosive soils where little to no residue is left on the surface. The higher value is applicable only to erosion-resistant soils where a large amount of residue (1½ tons of straw/acre equivalent) is on the surface.

- The minimum constructed cross-section should meet the design dimensions.
- The top of the constructed ridge should not be lower at any point than the design elevation plus the specified overfill for settlement. The opening at the outlet end of the terrace should have a cross section equal to that specified for the terrace channel.
- Channel grades may be either uniform or variable with a maximum grade of 0.6 feet per 100 feet length. For short distances, terrace grades may be increased to improve alignment. The channel velocity should not exceed that which is non-erosive for the soil type with the planned treatment.
- All gradient terraces should have adequate outlets. Such an outlet may be a grassed waterway, vegetated area, or tile outlet. In all cases, the outlet must convey runoff from the terrace or terrace system to a point where the outflow will not cause damage. Vegetative cover should be used in the outlet channel.
- The design elevation of the water surface of the terrace should not be lower than the design elevation of the water surface in the outlet at their junction, when both are operating at design flow.
- Vertical spacing determined by the above methods may be increased as much as 0.5 feet or 10 percent, whichever is greater, to provide better alignment or location, avoid obstacles, adjust for equipment size, or reach a satisfactory outlet.
- The drainage area above the top should not exceed the area that would be drained by a terrace with normal spacing.
- The terrace should have enough capacity to handle the peak runoff expected from a 2-year, 24-hour design storm without overtopping.

- The terrace cross-section should be proportioned to fit the land slope. The ridge height should include a reasonable settlement factor. The ridge should have a minimum top width of 3 feet at the design height. The minimum cross-sectional area of the terrace channel should be 8 square feet for land slopes of 5 percent or less, 7 square feet for slopes from 5 to 8 percent, and 6 square feet for slopes steeper than 8 percent. The terrace can be constructed wide enough to be maintained using a small cat.

### 3.1.17.4 Maintenance Standards

Maintenance should be performed as needed. Terraces should be inspected regularly, at least once a year, and after large storm events.



**Figure 2 - 9. Gradient Terraces**

### **3.1.18 BMP C140: Dust Control**

#### **3.1.18.1 Purpose**

Dust control prevents wind transport of dust from disturbed soil surfaces onto roadways, drainage ways, and surface waters.

#### **3.1.18.2 Conditions of Use**

Use dust control practices in areas (including roadways) subject to surface and air movement of dust where onsite and offsite impacts to roadways, drainage ways, or surface waters are likely.

#### **3.1.18.3 Design and Installation Specifications**

- Vegetate or mulch areas that will not receive vehicle traffic. In areas where planting, mulching, or paving is impractical, apply gravel or landscaping rock.
- Limit dust generation by clearing only to those areas where immediate activity will take place, leaving the remaining area(s) in the original condition, if stable. Maintain the original ground cover as long as practical.
- Construct natural or artificial windbreaks or windscreens. These may be designed as enclosures for small dust sources.
- Sprinkle the site with water until surface is wet. Repeat as needed. To prevent carryout of mud onto street, refer to Stabilized Construction Entrance (BMP C105).
- Irrigation water can be used for dust control. Install irrigation systems as a first step on sites where dust control is a concern.
- Spray exposed soil areas with a dust palliative, following the manufacturer's instructions and cautions regarding handling and application. Used oil is prohibited from use as a dust suppressant. The City may approve other dust palliatives such as calcium chloride or PAM.
- PAM (BMP C127) added to water at a rate of 2/3 pounds per 1,000 gallons of water per acre and applied from a water truck is more effective than water alone. This is due to the increased infiltration of water into the soil and reduced evaporation. In addition, small soil particles are bonded together and are not as easily transported by wind. Adding PAM may actually reduce the quantity of water needed for dust control. There are concerns with the proper use of PAM, refer to BMP C127 for more information on PAM application. PAM use requires COT approval.
- Lower speed limits. High vehicle speed increases the amount of dust stirred up from unpaved roads and lots.
- Upgrade the road surface strength by improving particle size, shape, and mineral types that make up the surface and base materials.
- Add surface gravel to reduce the source of dust emission. Limit the amount of fine particles to 10 to 20 percent.
- Use geotextile fabrics to increase the strength of new roads or roads undergoing reconstruction.
- Encourage the use of alternate, paved routes, if available.
- Restrict use by tracked vehicles and heavy trucks to prevent damage to road surfaces and bases.

- Apply chemical dust suppressants using the admix method, blending the product with the top few inches of surface material. Suppressants may also be applied as surface treatments.
- Pave unpaved permanent roads and other trafficked areas.
- Use vacuum street sweepers.
- Remove mud and other dirt promptly so it does not dry and then turn into dust.
- Limit dust-causing work on windy days.
- Contact the Puget Sound Clean Air Agency for guidance and training on other dust control measures. Compliance with the Puget Sound Clean Air Agency's recommendations/requirements constitutes compliance with this BMP.

#### **3.1.18.4 Maintenance Standards**

Evaluate the potential for dust generation frequently during dry periods. Complete the actions outlined above as needed to limit the dust.

Any dust which leaves the site must be cleaned immediately.



### 3.1.19 BMP C150: Materials On Hand

#### 3.1.19.1 Purpose

Quantities of erosion prevention and sediment control materials should be kept on the project site at all times to be used for emergency situations such as unexpected heavy summer rains. Having these materials onsite reduces the time needed to implement BMPs when inspections indicate that existing BMPs are not meeting the Construction SWPPP requirements.

#### 3.1.19.2 Conditions of Use

Construction projects of any size or type can benefit from having materials on hand. A small commercial development project could have a roll of plastic and some gravel available for immediate protection of bare soil and temporary berm construction. A large earthwork project, such as highway construction, might have several tons of straw, several rolls of plastic, flexible pipe, sandbags, geotextile fabric, and steel "T" posts.

- Materials are stockpiled and readily available before any site clearing, grubbing, or earthwork begins. A large contractor or developer could keep a stockpile of materials that are available to be used on several projects.
- If storage space at the project site is at a premium, the contractor could maintain the materials at a location less than one hour from the project site.

#### 3.1.19.3 Design and Installation Specifications

Depending on project type, size, complexity, and length, materials and quantities will vary. Table 2 - 8 provides a good minimum that will cover numerous situations.

*Table 2 - 8: Materials on Hand*

Material	Measure	Quantity
Clear Plastic, 6 mil	100 foot roll	1-2
Drainpipe, 6 or 8 inch diameter	25 foot section	4-6
Sandbags, filled	each	25-50
Quarry Spalls	ton	2-4
Washed Gravel	cubic yard	2-4
Geotextile Fabric	100 foot roll	1-2
Catch Basin Inserts	each	2-4
Steel "T" Posts	each	12-24

#### 3.1.19.4 Maintenance Standards

- All materials with the exception of the quarry spalls, steel "T" posts, and gravel should be kept covered and out of both sun and rain.
- Re-stock materials used as needed.

### **3.1.20 BMP C151: Concrete Handling**

#### **3.1.20.1 Purpose**

Concrete work can generate process water and slurry that contain fine particles and high pH, both of which can violate water quality standards in the receiving water. This BMP is intended to minimize and eliminate concrete process water and slurry from entering waters of the state.

#### **3.1.20.2 Conditions of Use**

Utilize these management practices any time concrete is used.

Concrete construction projects include, but are not limited to, the following:

- Curbs
- Sidewalks
- Roads
- Bridges
- Foundations
- Floors
- Runways

#### **3.1.20.3 Design and Installation Specifications**

- Concrete truck chutes, pumps, and internals shall be washed out only into formed areas awaiting installation of concrete or asphalt.
- When no formed areas are available, contain washwater and leftover product in a lined container. Dispose of washwater in a manner that does not violate groundwater or surface water quality standards.
- Unused concrete remaining in the truck and pump shall be returned to the originating batch plant for recycling.
- Hand tools shall be washed off only into formed areas awaiting installation of concrete or asphalt.
- Equipment that cannot be easily moved, such as concrete pavers, shall only be washed in areas that do not directly drain to natural or constructed stormwater conveyances.
- Washdown from areas such as concrete aggregate driveways shall not drain directly to natural or constructed stormwater conveyances.

#### **3.1.20.4 Maintenance Standards**

Containers shall be checked for holes in the liner daily during concrete pours and repaired the same day.

### **3.1.21 BMP C152: Sawcutting and Surfacing Pollution Prevention**

#### **3.1.21.1 Purpose**

Sawcutting and surfacing operations generate slurry and process water that contains fine particles and high pH (concrete cutting), both of which can violate water quality standards in the receiving water. This BMP is intended to minimize and eliminate process water and slurry from entering waters of the State

#### **3.1.21.2 Conditions of Use**

Anytime sawcutting or surfacing operations take place, use these management practices. Sawcutting and surfacing operations include, but are not limited to, the following:

- Sawing
- Coring
- Grinding
- Roughening
- Hydro-demolition
- Bridge and road surfacing

#### **3.1.21.3 Design and Installation Specifications**

- Vacuum slurry and cuttings during cutting and surfacing operations.
- Do not leave slurry and cuttings on permanent concrete or asphalt pavement overnight.
- Do not drain slurry and cuttings to any natural or constructed drainage conveyance.
- Dispose of collected slurry and cuttings in a manner that does not violate groundwater or surface water quality standards.
- Do not drain process water that is generated during hydro-demolition, surface roughening, or similar operations to any natural or constructed drainage conveyance. Dispose of process water in a manner that does not violate groundwater or surface water quality standards.
- Handle and dispose of cleaning waste material and demolition debris in a manner that does not cause contamination of water. If the area is swept with a pick-up sweeper, haul the material out of the area to an appropriate disposal site.

#### **3.1.21.4 Maintenance Standards**

Continually monitor operations to determine whether slurry, cuttings, or process water could enter waters of the state. If inspections show that a violation of water quality standards could occur, stop operations and immediately implement preventive measures such as berms, barriers, secondary containment, and vacuum trucks.

### **3.1.22 BMP C153: Material Delivery, Storage and Containment**

#### **3.1.22.1 Purpose**

Prevent, reduce, or eliminate the discharge of pollutants from material delivery and storage to the stormwater system or watercourses by minimizing the storage of hazardous materials onsite, storing materials in a designated area, and installing secondary containment.

#### **3.1.22.2 Conditions of Use**

These procedures are suitable for use at all construction sites with delivery and storage of the following materials:

- Petroleum products such as fuel, oil, and grease
- Soil stabilizers and binders (e.g. Polyacrylamide)
- Fertilizers, pesticides, and herbicides
- Detergents
- Asphalt and concrete compounds
- Hazardous chemicals such as acids, lime, adhesives, paints, solvents, and curing compounds
- Any other material that may be detrimental if released to the environment

#### **3.1.22.3 Design and Installation Specifications**

The following steps should be taken to minimize risk:

- Locate temporary storage area away from vehicular traffic, near the construction entrance(s), and away from waterways or storm drains.
- Supply Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS) for all materials stored. Keep chemicals in their original labeled containers.
- Surrounding materials with earth berms is an option for temporary secondary containment.
- Minimize hazardous material storage onsite.
- Handle hazardous materials as infrequently as possible.
- During the wet weather season (October 1 through April 30), consider storing materials in a covered area.
- Store materials in secondary containment, such as an earthen dike, a horse trough, or a children's wading pool for non-reactive materials such as detergents, oil, grease, and paints. "Bus boy" trays or concrete mixing trays may be used as secondary containment for small amounts of material.
- Do not store chemicals, drums, or bagged materials directly on the ground. Place these items on a pallet and, when possible, in secondary containment.
- If drums cannot be stored under a roof, domed plastic covers are inexpensive and snap to the top of drums, preventing water from collecting.

**3.1.22.4 Material Storage Areas and Secondary Containment Practices:**

- Store liquids, petroleum products, and substances listed in 40 CFR Parts 110, 117, or 302 in approved containers and drums and do not overfill the containers or drums. Store containers and drums in temporary secondary containment facilities.
- Temporary secondary containment facilities shall provide for a spill containment volume able to contain precipitation from a 25 year, 24 hour storm event plus 10% of the total enclosed container volume of all containers, or 110% of the capacity of the largest container within its boundary, whichever is greater.
- Secondary containment facilities shall be impervious to the materials stored therein for a minimum contact time of 72 hours.
- Secondary containment facilities shall be maintained free of accumulated rainwater and spills. In the event of spills or leaks, collect accumulated rainwater and spills and place into drums. Handle these liquids as hazardous waste unless testing determines them to be non-hazardous. Dispose of all wastes properly.
- Provide sufficient separation between stored containers to allow for spill cleanup and emergency response access.
- During the wet weather season (October 1 through April 30), cover each secondary containment facility during non-working days, prior to and during rain events.
- Keep material storage areas clean, organized, and equipped with an ample supply of appropriate spill clean-up material.
- The spill kit should include, at a minimum:
  - 1 water resistant nylon bag
  - 3 oil absorbent socks (3-inches by 4-feet)
  - 2 oil absorbent socks (3-inches by 10-feet)
  - 12 oil absorbent pads (17-inches by 19-inches)
  - 1 pair splash resistant goggles
  - 3 pairs nitrile gloves
  - 10 disposable bags with ties
  - Instructions

**3.1.22.5 Maintenance**

Any stormwater within the storage area shall be pumped or otherwise discharged after each rain event. Before pumping, the stormwater must be evaluated to determine if it must go to treatment or can be discharged without treatment. If stormwater is contaminated, direct the discharge to appropriate treatment.

### **3.1.23 BMP C154: Concrete Washout Area**

#### **3.1.23.1 Purpose**

Prevent or reduce the discharge of pollutants to stormwater from concrete waste by conducting washout offsite, or performing onsite washout in a designated area to prevent pollutants from entering surface waters or groundwater.

#### **3.1.23.2 Conditions of Use**

Use concrete washout best management practices on construction projects where:

- It is not possible to dispose of all concrete wastewater and washout offsite (ready mix plant, etc.)
- Concrete trucks, pumpers, or other concrete coated equipment are washed onsite.

**NOTE:** If less than 3 concrete trucks or pumpers need to be washed onsite, the washwater may be disposed of in a formed area awaiting concrete. Do not allow dirty water to enter storm drains, open ditches, or any waterbody.

#### **3.1.23.3 Implementation**

- Perform washout of concrete trucks offsite or in designated concrete washout areas only.
- Do not wash out concrete trucks onto the ground, or into storm drains, open ditches, streets, or streams.
- Do not allow excess concrete to be dumped onsite, except in designated concrete washout areas.
- Concrete washout areas may be prefabricated concrete washout containers, or self-installed structures (above-grade or below-grade).
  - Prefabricated containers are most resistant to damage and protect against spills and leaks. Companies may offer delivery service and provide regular maintenance and disposal of solid and liquid waste.
  - If self-installed concrete washout areas are used, below-grade structures are preferred over above-grade structures because they are less prone to spills and leaks.
  - Self-installed above-grade structures should only be used if excavation is not practical.
- Identify concrete washout area on the TESC plan.

#### **3.1.23.4 Education**

- Discuss the concrete management techniques described in this BMP with the ready-mix concrete supplier before any deliveries are made.
- Educate employees and subcontractors on the concrete waste management techniques described in this BMP.
- Install a sign adjacent to each temporary concrete washout facility to inform concrete equipment operators to utilize the proper facilities.

**3.1.23.5 Location and Placement Considerations:**

- Locate washout area or temporary concrete washout facilities at least 50 feet from sensitive areas such as storm drains, open ditches, or water bodies, including wetlands.
- Allow convenient access for concrete trucks, preferably near the area where the concrete is being poured.
- If trucks need to leave a paved area to access washout, prevent track-out with a pad of rock or quarry spalls (BMP C105). These areas should be far enough away from other construction traffic to reduce the likelihood of accidental damage and spills.
- The washout area volume installed should depend on the expected demand for storage capacity.
- On large sites with extensive concrete work, washouts may be placed in multiple locations for ease of use by concrete truck drivers.

**3.1.23.6 Onsite Temporary Concrete Washout Facility, Transit Truck Washout Procedures:**

- Construct and maintain concrete washout facilities in order to contain all liquid and concrete waste generated by washout operations.
  - Approximately 7 gallons of wash water are used to wash one truck chute.
  - Approximately 50 gallons are used to wash out the hopper of a concrete pump truck.
- Washout of concrete trucks shall be performed in designated areas only.
- Concrete washout from concrete pumper bins can be washed into concrete pumper trucks and discharged into designated washout area or properly disposed of offsite.
- Once concrete wastes are washed into the designated area and allowed to harden, the concrete should be broken up, removed, and disposed of per applicable solid waste regulations. Dispose of hardened concrete on a regular basis.

***Temporary Above-Grade Concrete Washout Facility***

- Temporary concrete washout facility (type above grade) should be constructed as shown on the details at the end of this BMP, with a recommended minimum length and minimum width of 10 ft, but with sufficient quantity and volume to contain all liquid and concrete waste generated by washout operations.
- Plastic lining material should be a minimum of 10 mil polyethylene sheeting and should be free of holes, tears, or other defects that compromise the impermeability of the material.

**Temporary Below-Grade Concrete Washout Facility**

- Temporary concrete washout facilities (type below grade) should be constructed as shown on the details at the end of this BMP, with a recommended minimum length and minimum width of 10 ft. The quantity and volume should be sufficient to contain all liquid and concrete waste generated by washout operations.
- Lath and flagging should be commercial type.
- Plastic lining material shall be a minimum of 10 mil polyethylene sheeting and should be free of holes, tears, or other defects that compromise the impermeability of the material.
- Liner seams shall be installed in accordance with manufacturers' recommendations.
- Soil base shall be prepared free of rocks or other debris that may cause tears or holes in the plastic lining material.

**3.1.23.7 Inspection and Maintenance**

- Inspect and verify that concrete washout BMPs are in place prior to the commencement of concrete work.
- During periods of concrete work, inspect daily to verify continued performance.
  - Check overall condition and performance.
  - Check remaining capacity (% full).
  - If using self-installed washout facilities, verify plastic liners are intact and sidewalls are not damaged.
  - If using prefabricated containers, check for leaks.
- Maintain washout facilities to provide adequate holding capacity with a minimum freeboard of 12 inches.
- Washout facilities must be cleaned, or new facilities must be constructed and ready for use once the washout is 75% full.
- If the washout is nearing capacity, vacuum and dispose of the waste material in an approved manner.
  - Do not discharge liquid or slurry to waterways, storm drains or directly onto ground.
  - Do not use sanitary sewer without obtaining a City of Tacoma Special Approved Discharge permit. Call Source Control at 253.591.5588 for more information.
  - Place a secure, non-collapsing, non-water collecting cover over the concrete washout facility prior to predicted wet weather to prevent accumulation and overflow of precipitation.
  - Remove and dispose of hardened concrete and return the structure to a functional condition. Concrete may be reused onsite or hauled away for disposal or recycling.
- When you remove materials from the self-installed concrete washout, build a new structure; or, if the previous structure is still intact, inspect for signs of weakening or damage, and make any necessary repairs. Re-line the structure with new plastic after each cleaning.



**3.1.23.8 Removal of Temporary Concrete Washout Facilities**

- When temporary concrete washout facilities are no longer required for the work, remove and properly dispose of the hardened concrete, slurries and liquids.
- Remove materials used to construct temporary concrete washout facilities from the site of the work and dispose of or recycle it.
- Holes, depressions or other ground disturbance caused by the removal of the temporary concrete washout facilities shall be backfilled, repaired, and stabilized to prevent erosion.

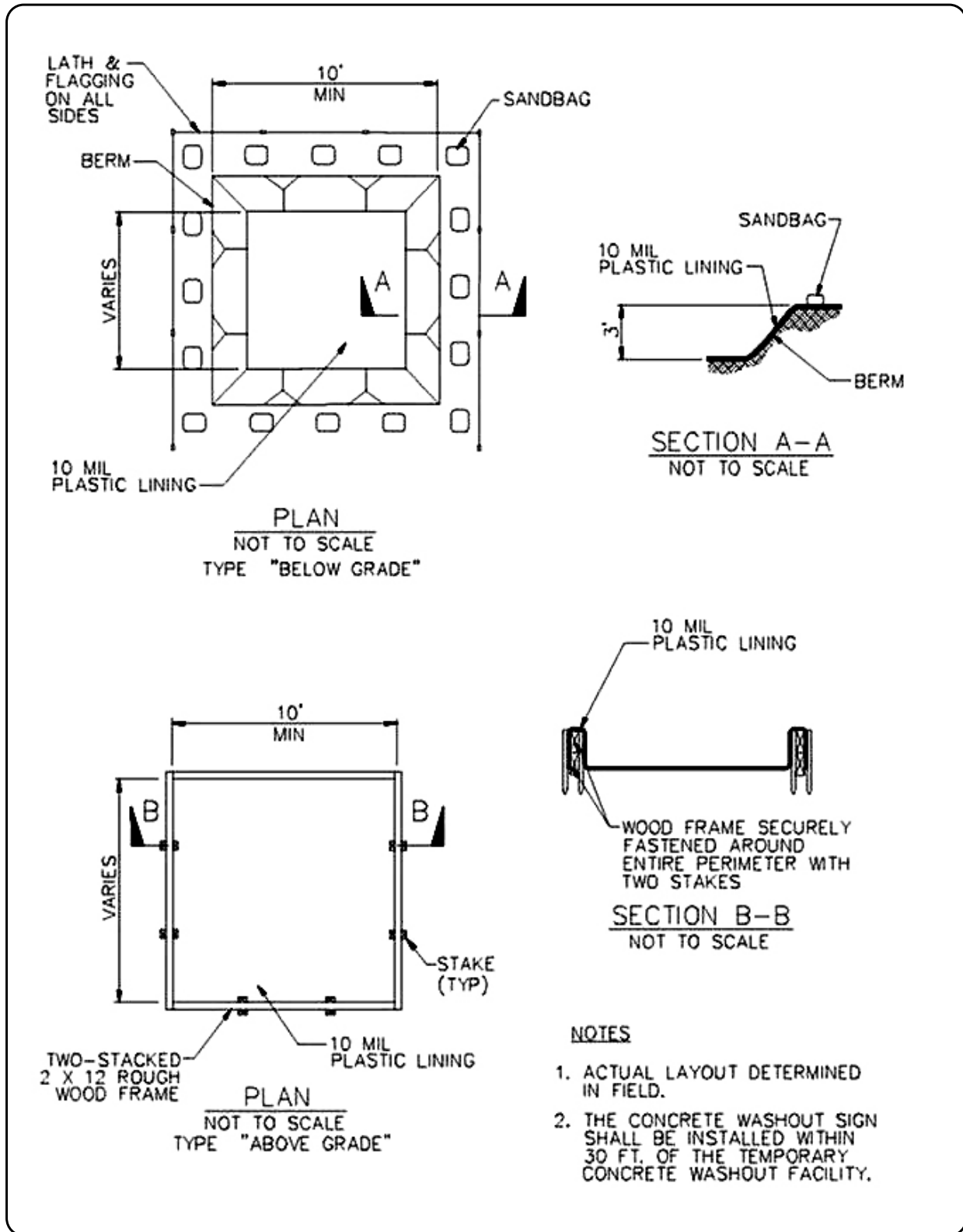
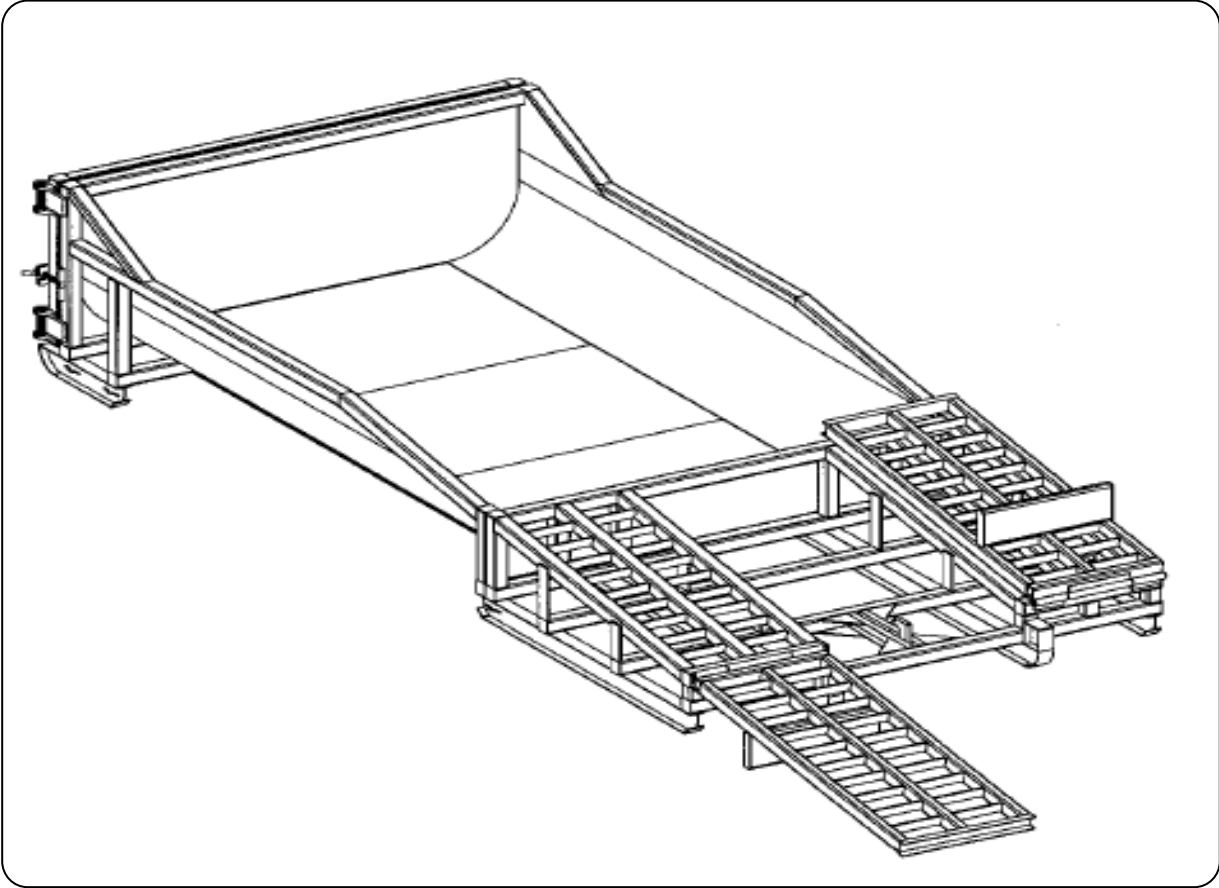


Figure 2 - 10. Temporary Concrete Washout Facility



**Figure 2 - 11. Prefabricated Concrete Washout Container with Ramp**

### **3.1.24 BMP C160: Certified Erosion and Sediment Control Lead**

#### **3.1.24.1 Purpose**

The project proponent designates at least one person as the responsible representative in charge of erosion and sediment control (ESC) and water quality protection. The designated person shall be the erosion and sediment control (ESC) lead, who is responsible for ensuring compliance with all local, state, and federal erosion and sediment control and water quality requirements.

#### **3.1.24.2 Conditions of Use**

An erosion and sediment control contact is required for all project sites. A certified erosion and sediment control lead (CESCL) or certified professional in erosion and sediment control (CPESC) is required on projects that include, but are not limited to:

- Construction activity that disturbs one acre of land or more.
- Construction activity that disturbs less than one acre of land, but is part of a larger common plan of development or sale that will ultimately disturb one acre of land or more.
- Heavy construction of roads, bridges, highways, airports, buildings.
- Projects near wetlands and sensitive or critical areas.
- Projects in or over water.

#### **3.1.24.3 Specifications**

The ESC lead shall:

- Have a current certified erosion and sediment control lead (CESCL) certificate proving attendance in an erosion and sediment control training course that meets the minimum ESC training and certification requirements established by Ecology. Ecology will maintain a list of ESC training and certification providers at: [www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wq/stormwater](http://www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wq/stormwater).

OR

- Be a Certified Professional in Erosion and Sediment Control (CPESC). For additional information go to: [www.cpesc.net](http://www.cpesc.net)

The ESC lead shall have authority to act on behalf of the contractor or developer and shall be available, on call, 24 hours per day throughout the period of construction.

The Construction SWPPP shall include the name, telephone number, fax number, and address of the designated ESC lead.

An ESC lead may provide inspection and compliance services for multiple construction projects in the same geographic region.

Duties and responsibilities of the ESC lead shall include, but are not limited to, the following:

- Maintaining a permit file on site at all times which includes the SWPPP and any associated permits and plans.
- Directing BMP installation, inspection, maintenance, modification, and removal.
- Updating all project drawings and the Construction SWPPP with changes made.
- Keeping daily logs and inspection reports. Inspection reports should include:

- Inspection date/time.
- Weather information, general conditions during inspection, and approximate amount of precipitation since the last inspection.
- A summary or list of all BMPs implemented, including observations of all erosion/ sediment control structures or practices. The following shall be noted:
  - “ Locations of BMPs inspected,
  - “ Locations of BMPs that need maintenance,
  - “ Locations of BMPs that failed to operate as designed or intended, and
  - “ Locations where additional or different BMPs are required.
- Visual monitoring results, including a description of discharged stormwater. The presence of suspended sediment, turbid water, discoloration, and oil sheen shall be noted, as applicable.
- Any water quality monitoring performed during inspection.
- General comments and notes, including a brief description of any BMP repairs, maintenance, or installations made as a result of the inspection.
- Facilitate, participate in, and take corrective actions resulting from inspections performed by outside agencies or the owner.
- Keep an inventory of equipment onsite.

### **3.1.25 BMP C161: Payment of Erosion Control Work**

#### **3.1.25.1 Purpose**

As with any construction operation, the contractor should be paid for erosion control work. Address payment for erosion control during project development and design. Identify the method of payment in the SWPPP.

Erosion control work should never be “incidental” to the contract as it is extremely difficult for the contractor to bid the work.

### **3.1.26 BMP C162: Scheduling**

#### **3.1.26.1 Purpose**

Sequencing a construction project reduces the amount and duration of soil exposed to erosion by wind, rain, runoff, and vehicle tracking.

#### **3.1.26.2 Conditions of Use**

The construction sequence schedule is an orderly listing of all major land-disturbing activities together with the necessary erosion and sedimentation control measures planned for the project. This type of schedule guides the contractor on work to be done before other work is started so serious erosion and sedimentation problems can be avoided.

Following a specified work schedule that coordinates the timing of land-disturbing activities and the installation of control measures is perhaps the most cost-effective way of controlling erosion during construction. The removal of surface ground cover leaves a site vulnerable to accelerated erosion. Construction procedures that limit land clearing, provide timely installation of erosion and sedimentation controls, and restore protective cover quickly can significantly reduce the erosion potential of a site.

#### **3.1.26.3 Design Considerations**

- Avoid rainy periods.
- Schedule projects to disturb only small portions of the site at any one time. Complete grading as soon as possible. Immediately stabilize the disturbed portion before grading the next portion. Practice staged seeding in order to revegetate cut and fill slopes as the work progresses.

### **3.1.27 BMP C180: Small Project Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention**

#### **3.1.27.1 Purpose**

To prevent the discharge of sediment and other pollutants to the maximum extent practicable from small construction projects.

#### **3.1.27.2 Conditions of Use**

The Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan Short Form (Appendix C) may be used for projects that:

- Add or replace between 2,000 and 5,000 square feet of impervious surfaces.
- Clear or disturb between 7,000 square feet and 1 acre of land.
- Grade/fill 50-499 cubic yards of material.

If the project quantities exceed any of the above thresholds, prepare a formal Construction SWPPP as described in Chapter 2 of this volume.

#### **3.1.27.3 Design and Installation Specifications**

- Plan and implement proper clearing and grading of the site. It is important to clear only the areas needed, thus keeping exposed areas to a minimum. Phase clearing so that only those areas actively being worked are uncovered.

**NOTE:** Clearing limits should be flagged in the lot or area prior to initiating clearing.

- Manage soil in a manner that does not permanently compact or deteriorate the final soil and landscape system. If disturbance and/or compaction occur, the impact must be corrected at the end of the construction activity. This shall include restoration of soil depth, soil quality, permeability, and percent organic matter. Construction practices must not cause damage to or compromise the design of permanent landscape or infiltration areas.
- Locate excavated basement soil a reasonable distance behind the curb, such as in the backyard or side yard area. Cover soil piles until the soil is either used or removed. Situate piles so sediment does not run into the street or adjoining yards.
- Backfill basement walls as soon as possible and rough grade the lot. This will eliminate large soil mounds, which are highly erodible, and prepares the lot for temporary cover, which will further reduce erosion potential.
- Remove excess soil from the site as soon as possible after backfilling. This will eliminate any sediment loss from surplus fill.
- If a lot has a soil bank higher than the curb, install a trench or berm, moving the bank several feet behind the curb. This will reduce the occurrence of gully and rill erosion while providing a storage and settling area for stormwater.
- Stabilize the construction entrance where traffic will be leaving the construction site and traveling on paved roads or other paved areas within 1,000 feet of the site.
- Provide for periodic street cleaning to remove any sediment that may have been tracked out. Remove sediment by shoveling or sweeping and carefully move it to a suitable disposal area where it will not be re-eroded.
- Backfill utility trenches that run up and down slopes within seven days. Cross-slope trenches may remain open throughout construction to provide runoff interception and sediment trapping, provided that they do not convey turbid runoff off site.



## **3.2 Runoff, Conveyance and Treatment BMPs**

### **3.2.1 BMP C200: Interceptor Dike and Swale**

#### **3.2.1.1 Purpose**

Provide a ridge of compacted soil, or a ridge with an upslope swale, at the top or base of a disturbed slope or along the perimeter of a disturbed construction area to convey stormwater. Use the dike and/or swale to intercept the runoff from unprotected areas and direct it to areas where erosion can be controlled. This can prevent storm runoff from entering the work area or sediment-laden runoff from leaving the construction site.

#### **3.2.1.2 Conditions of Use**

Where the runoff from an exposed site or disturbed slope must be conveyed to an erosion control facility that can safely convey the stormwater.

- Locate upslope of a construction site to prevent runoff from entering disturbed area.
- When placed horizontally across a disturbed slope, it reduces the amount and velocity of runoff flowing down the slope.
- Locate downslope to collect runoff from a disturbed area and direct it to a sediment basin.

#### **3.2.1.3 Design and Installation Specifications**

- Stabilize dike and/or swale and channel with temporary or permanent vegetation or other channel protection during construction.
- If the design velocity of a channel to be vegetated by seeding exceeds 2 ft/sec, a temporary channel liner is required. See Figure 2 - 13.
- Channel requires a positive grade for drainage; steeper grades require channel protection and check dams.
- Review construction for areas where overtopping may occur.
- Should be used at the top of new fill before vegetation is established.
- May be used as a permanent diversion channel to carry the runoff.
- Sub-basin tributary area should be one acre or less.
- Design capacity for the peak flow from a 10-year, 24-hour storm assuming a Type 1A rainfall distribution (3-inches) for temporary facilities. Alternatively, use 1.6 times the 10-year, 1-hour flow indicated by WWHM. Design capacity for the peak flow from a 25-year, 24-hour storm for permanent facilities.

**Interceptor Dikes**

- Interceptor dikes shall meet the following criteria:
 

Top Width	2 feet minimum.
Height	1.5 feet minimum on berm.
Side Slope	2:1 or flatter.
Grade	Depends on topography, however, dike system minimum is 0.5% and maximum is 1%
Compaction	Minimum of 90 percent ASTM D698 standard proctor.
  
- Horizontal Spacing of Interceptor Dikes:
 

Average Slope	Slope Percent	Flowpath Length
20H:1V or less	3-5%	300 feet
(10 to 20)H:1V	5-10%	200 feet
(4 to 10)H:1V	10-25%	100 feet
(2 to 4)H:1V	25-50%	50 feet
  
- Stabilization depends on velocity and reach.
 

Slopes <5%	Seed and mulch applied within 5 days of dike construction (see BMP C121, Mulching).
Slopes 5 - 40%	Dependent on runoff velocities and dike materials. Stabilization should be done immediately using either sod or riprap or other measures to avoid erosion. See Volume 3, Section 3.4 for additional guidance on channel protection.
  
- The upslope side of the dike shall provide positive drainage to the dike outlet. No erosion shall occur at the outlet. Provide energy dissipation measures as necessary. Sediment-laden runoff must be released through a sediment trapping facility.
- Minimize construction traffic over temporary dikes. Use temporary cross culverts for channel crossing.

**Interceptor Swales**

- Interceptor swales shall meet the following criteria:
 

Bottom Width	2 feet minimum; the bottom shall be level.
Depth	1-foot minimum.
Side Slope	2H:1V or flatter
Grade	Maximum 5 percent, with positive drainage to a suitable outlet (such as a sediment pond).
Stabilization	Seed as per <i>BMP C120, Temporary and Permanent Seeding</i> , or <i>BMP C202, Channel Lining</i> , 12 inches thick of riprap pressed into the bank and extending at least 8 inches vertical from the bottom.
  
- Inspect diversion dikes and interceptor swales once a week and after every rainfall. Immediately remove sediment from the flow area.
- Repair damage caused by construction traffic or other activity before the end of each working day.
- Check outlets and make timely repairs as needed to avoid gully formation. When the area below the temporary diversion dike is permanently stabilized, remove the dike and fill and stabilize the channel to blend with the natural surface.

## 3.2.2 BMP C201: Grass-Lined Channels

### 3.2.2.1 Purpose

To provide a channel with a vegetative lining for conveyance of runoff. See Figure 2 - 12 for typical grass-lined channels.

### 3.2.2.2 Conditions of Use

This practice applies to construction sites where concentrated runoff needs to be contained to prevent erosion or flooding.

- When a vegetative lining can provide sufficient stability for the channel cross section and lower velocities of water (normally dependent on grade). This means that the channel slopes are generally less than 5 percent and space is available for a relatively large cross section.
- Typical uses include roadside ditches, channels at property boundaries, outlets for diversions, and other channels and drainage ditches in low areas.
- Channels that will be vegetated should be installed before major earthwork and hydroseeded with a bonded fiber matrix (BFM). The vegetation should be well established (i.e., 75 percent cover) before water is allowed to flow in the ditch. With channels that will have high flows, erosion control blankets should be installed over the hydroseed. If vegetation cannot be established from seed before water is allowed in the ditch, sod should be installed in the bottom of the ditch in lieu of hydromulch and blankets.

### 3.2.2.3 Design and Installation Specifications

Locate the channel where it can conform to the topography and other features such as roads.

- Locate them to use natural drainage systems to the greatest extent possible.
- Avoid sharp changes in alignment or bends and changes in grade.
- Do not reshape the landscape to fit the drainage channel.
- Base the maximum design velocity on soil conditions, type of vegetation, and method of revegetation, but at no times shall velocity exceed 5 feet/second. The channel shall not be overtopped by the peak runoff from a 10-year, 24-hour storm, assuming a type 1A rainfall distribution (3.0-inches). Alternatively, use 1.6 times the 10-year, 1-hour flow indicated by an approved continuous runoff model to determine a flow rate which the channel must contain.
- An **established** grass or vegetated lining is required before the channel can be used to convey stormwater, unless stabilized with nets or blankets.
- If the design velocity of a channel to be vegetated by seeding exceeds 2 ft/sec, a temporary channel liner is required. See Figure 2 - 13.
- Remove check dams when the grass has matured sufficiently to protect the ditch or swale unless the slope of the swale is greater than 4 percent. Seed and mulch the area beneath the check dams immediately after dam removal.
- If vegetation is established by sodding, the permissible velocity for established vegetation may be used and no temporary liner is needed.
- Do not subject grass-lined channel to sedimentation from disturbed areas. Use sediment-trapping BMPs upstream of the channel.

- **V-shaped grass channels** generally apply where the quantity of water is small, such as in short reaches along roadsides. The V-shaped cross section is least desirable because it is difficult to stabilize the bottom where velocities may be high.
- **Trapezoidal grass channels** are used where runoff volumes are large and slope is low so that velocities are nonerosive to vegetated linings. (**Note:** it is difficult to construct small parabolic shaped channels.)
- Subsurface drainage, or riprap channel bottoms, may be necessary on sites that are subject to prolonged wet conditions due to long duration flows or a high water table.
- Provide outlet protection at culvert ends and at channel intersections.
- Grass channels, at a minimum, should carry peak runoff for temporary construction drainage facilities from the 10-year, 24-hour storm (3.0-inches) without eroding. Where flood hazard exists, increase the capacity according to the potential damage.
- Grassed channel side slopes generally are constructed 3:1 or flatter to aid in the establishment of vegetation and for maintenance.
- Construct channels a minimum of 0.2 foot larger around the periphery to allow for soil bulking during seedbed preparations and sod buildup.

#### **3.2.2.4 Maintenance Standards**

During the establishment period, check grass-lined channels after every rainfall.

- After grass is established, periodically check the channel; check the channel after every heavy rainfall event. Immediately make repairs.
- It is particularly important to check the channel outlet and all road crossings for bank stability and evidence of piping or scour holes.
- Remove all significant sediment accumulations to maintain the designed carrying capacity. Keep the grass in a healthy, vigorous condition at all times, since it is the primary erosion protection for the channel.

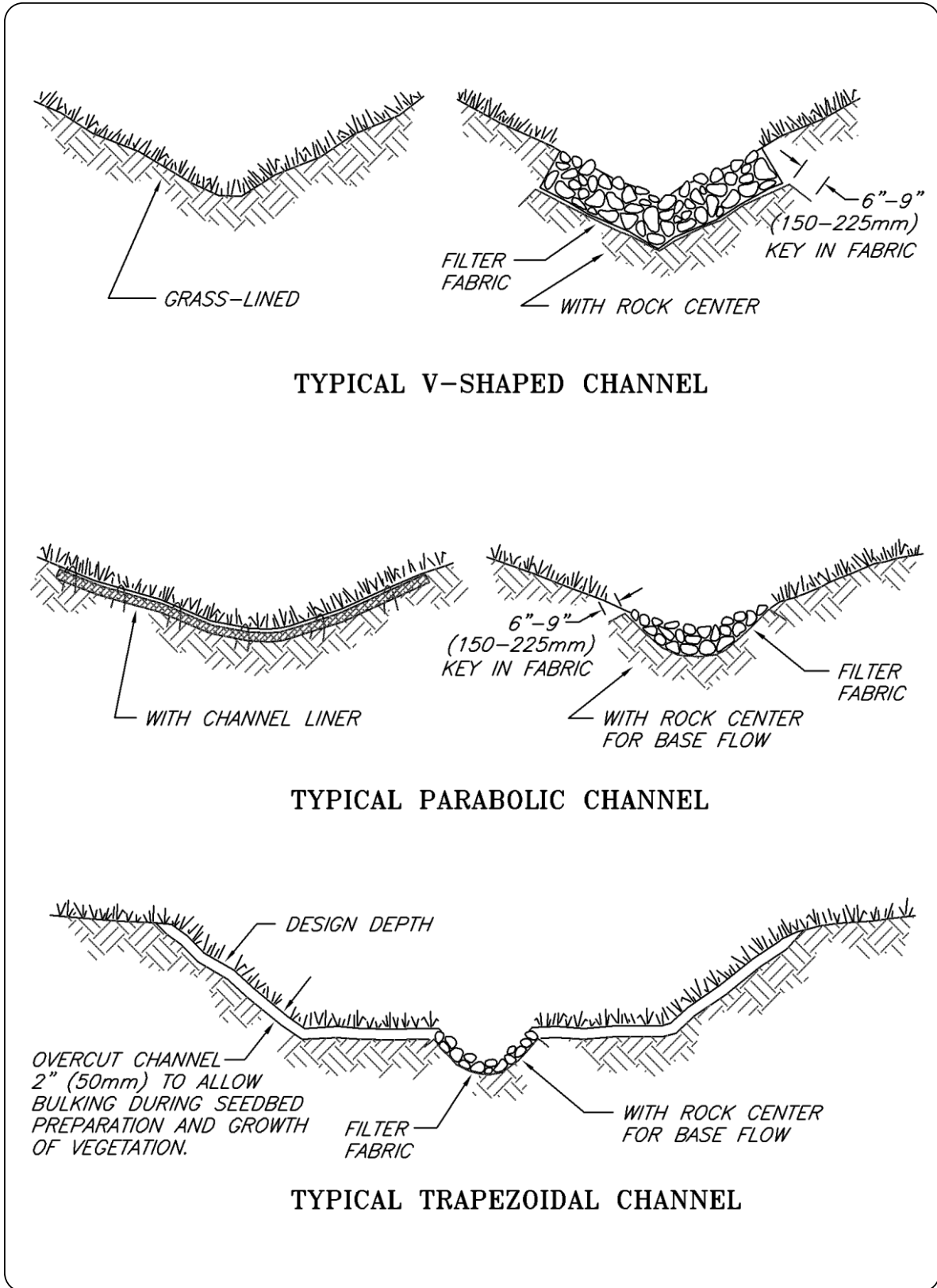


Figure 2 - 12. Typical Grass-Lined Channels

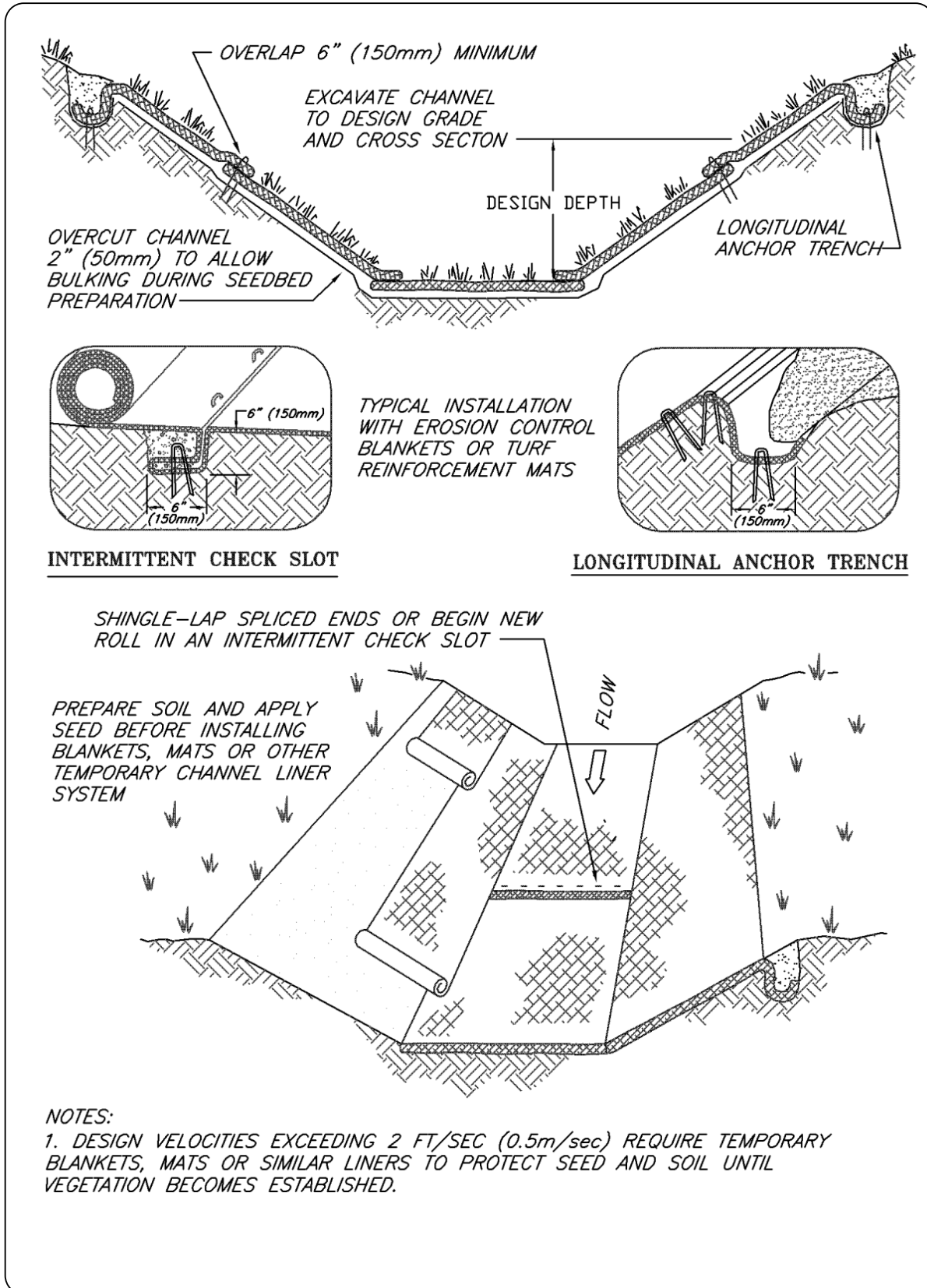


Figure 2 - 13. Temporary Channel Liners

### **3.2.3 BMP C202: Channel Lining**

#### **3.2.3.1 Purpose**

To protect erodible channels by providing a channel liner using either blankets or riprap.

#### **3.2.3.2 Conditions of Use**

- When natural soils or vegetated stabilized soils in a channel are not adequate to prevent channel erosion.
- When a permanent ditch or pipe system is to be installed and a temporary measure is needed.
- In almost all cases, synthetic and organic coconut blankets are more effective than riprap for protecting channels from erosion. Blankets can be used with and without vegetation. Blanketed channels can be designed to handle any expected flow and longevity requirement. Some synthetic blankets have a predicted life span of 50 years or more, even in sunlight.
- The Federal Highway Administration recommends not using flexible liners whenever the slope exceeds 10 percent or the shear stress exceeds 8 pounds per square foot.

#### **3.2.3.3 Design and Installation Specifications**

See BMP C122 for information on blankets.

Since riprap is used where erosion potential is high, construction must be sequenced so the riprap is put in place with the minimum possible delay (see Figure 2 - 14).

- Only disturb areas where riprap is to be placed if final preparation and placement of the riprap can immediately follow the initial disturbance. Where riprap is used for outlet protection, place the riprap before or in conjunction with the construction of the pipe or channel so it is in place when the pipe or channel begins to operate.
- The designer, after determining the appropriate riprap size for stabilization, shall consider that size to be a minimum size and then, based on riprap gradations actually available in the area, select the size or sizes that equal or exceed the minimum size. Consider the possibility of drainage structure damage by children when selecting a riprap size, especially if there is nearby water or a gully in which to toss the stones. See Volume 3, Section 3.4 for additional channel protection guidance.
- Use field stone or quarry stone of approximately rectangular shape for the riprap. The stone shall be hard and angular and of such quality that it will not disintegrate on exposure to water or weathering and shall be suitable in all respects for the purpose intended.
- Rubble concrete may be used, provided it has a density of at least 150 pounds per cubic foot and otherwise meets the requirement of this standard and specification.
- Place a lining of engineering filter fabric (geotextile) between the riprap and the underlying soil surface to prevent soil movement into or through the riprap. The geotextile should be keyed in at the top of the bank.
- Do not use filter fabric on slopes steeper than 1-1/2H:1V as slippage may occur. It should be used in conjunction with a layer of coarse aggregate (granular filter blanket) when the riprap to be placed is 12 inches and larger.

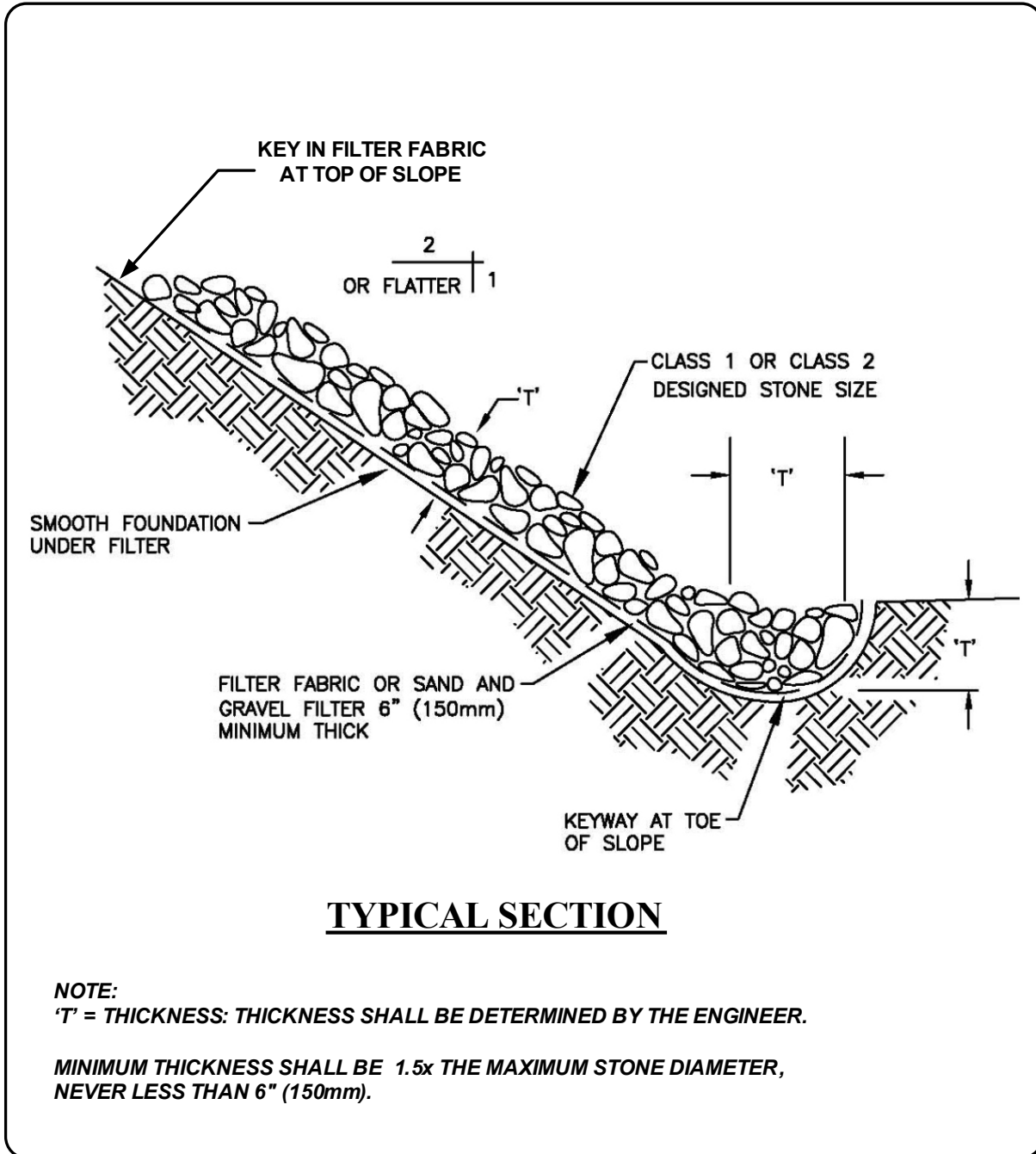


Figure 2 - 14. Soil Erosion Protection – Rip Rap Protection



### 3.2.4 BMP C203: Water Bars

#### 3.2.4.1 Purpose

A small ditch or ridge of material is constructed diagonally across a road or right-of-way to divert stormwater runoff from the road surface, wheel tracks, or a shallow road ditch.

#### 3.2.4.2 Conditions of Use

Clearing right-of-way and construction of access for power lines, pipelines, and other similar installations often require long, narrow right-of-ways over sloping terrain. Disturbance and compaction promotes gully formation in these cleared strips by increasing the volume and velocity of runoff. Gully formation may be especially severe in tire tracks and ruts. To prevent gullying, runoff can often be diverted across the width of the right-of-way to undisturbed areas by using small predesigned diversions.

Give special consideration to each individual outlet area, as well as to the cumulative effect of added diversions. Use gravel to stabilize the diversion where significant vehicular traffic is anticipated.

#### 3.2.4.3 Design and Installation Specifications

Height: 8-inch minimum measured from the channel bottom to the top of the ridge.

- Side slope of channel: 2H:1V maximum; 3H:1V or flatter when vehicles will cross.
- Base width of ridge: 6-inch minimum.
- Locate them to use natural drainage systems and to discharge into well vegetated stable areas.
- Guideline for Spacing:

Slope %	Spacing (ft)
< 5	125
5 - 10	100
10 - 20	75
20 - 35	50
> 35	Use rock lined ditch

- Grade of water bar and angle: Select angle that results in ditch slope of less than 2 percent.
- Install as soon as clearing and grading is complete. Reconstruct when construction is complete on a section when utilities are being installed.
- Compact the ridge when installed.
- Stabilize, seed, and mulch portions that are not subject to traffic. Gravel areas crossed by vehicles.

#### **3.2.4.4 Maintenance Standards**

Periodically inspect right-of-way diversions for wear and after every heavy rainfall inspect for erosion damage.

- Immediately remove sediment from the flow area and repair the dike.
- Check outlet areas and make timely repairs as needed.
- When permanent road drainage is established and the area above the temporary right-of-way diversion is permanently stabilized, remove the dike and fill the channel to blend with the natural ground, and appropriately stabilize the disturbed area.

### **3.2.5 BMP C204: Pipe Slope Drains**

#### **3.2.5.1 Purpose**

To use a pipe to convey stormwater anytime water needs to be diverted away from or over bare soil to prevent gullies, channel erosion, and saturation of slide-prone soils.

#### **3.2.5.2 Conditions of Use**

Pipe slope drains should be used when a temporary or permanent stormwater conveyance is needed to move the water down a steep slope to avoid erosion (Figure 2 - 15).

On highway projects, pipe slope drains should be used at bridge ends to collect runoff and pipe it to the base of the fill slopes along bridge approaches. These can be designed into a project and included as bid items. Another use on road projects is to collect runoff from pavement and pipe it away from side slopes. These are useful because there is generally lag time between having the first lift of asphalt installed and the curbs, gutters, and permanent drainage installed. Used in conjunction with sand bags or other temporary diversion devices, these will prevent sediment from leaving a project.

Water can be collected; channeled with sand bags, Triangular Silt Dikes, berms, or other material; and piped to temporary sediment ponds.

Pipe slope drains can be:

- Connected to new catch basins and used temporarily until all permanent piping is installed;
- Used to drain water collected from aquifers exposed on cut slopes and convey it to the base of the slope;
- Used to collect clean runoff from plastic sheeting and direct it away from exposed soil;
- Installed in conjunction with silt fence to drain collected water to a controlled area;
- Used to divert small seasonal streams away from construction. They have been used successfully on culvert replacement and extension jobs. Large flex pipe can be used on larger streams during culvert removal, repair, or replacement; and,
- Connected to existing downspouts and roof drains and used to divert water away from work areas during building renovation, demolition, and construction projects.

There are now several commercially available collectors that are attached to the pipe inlet and help prevent erosion at the inlet.

#### **3.2.5.3 Design and Installation Specifications**

Size the pipe to convey the flow. The capacity for temporary drains shall be sufficient to handle the peak flow from a 10-year, 24-hour storm event assuming a Type 1A rainfall distribution (3.0-inches). Alternatively, use 1.6 times the 10-year, 1-hour flow indicated by WWHM. Size permanent pipe slope drains using the guidance in Volume 3, Chapter 3.

- Use care in clearing vegetated slopes for installation.
- Re-establish cover immediately on areas disturbed by installation.
- Use temporary drains on new cut or fill slopes.
- Use diversion dikes or swales to collect water at the top of the slope.
- Ensure that the entrance area is stable and large enough to direct flow into the pipe.
- Piping of water through the berm at the entrance area is a common failure mode.

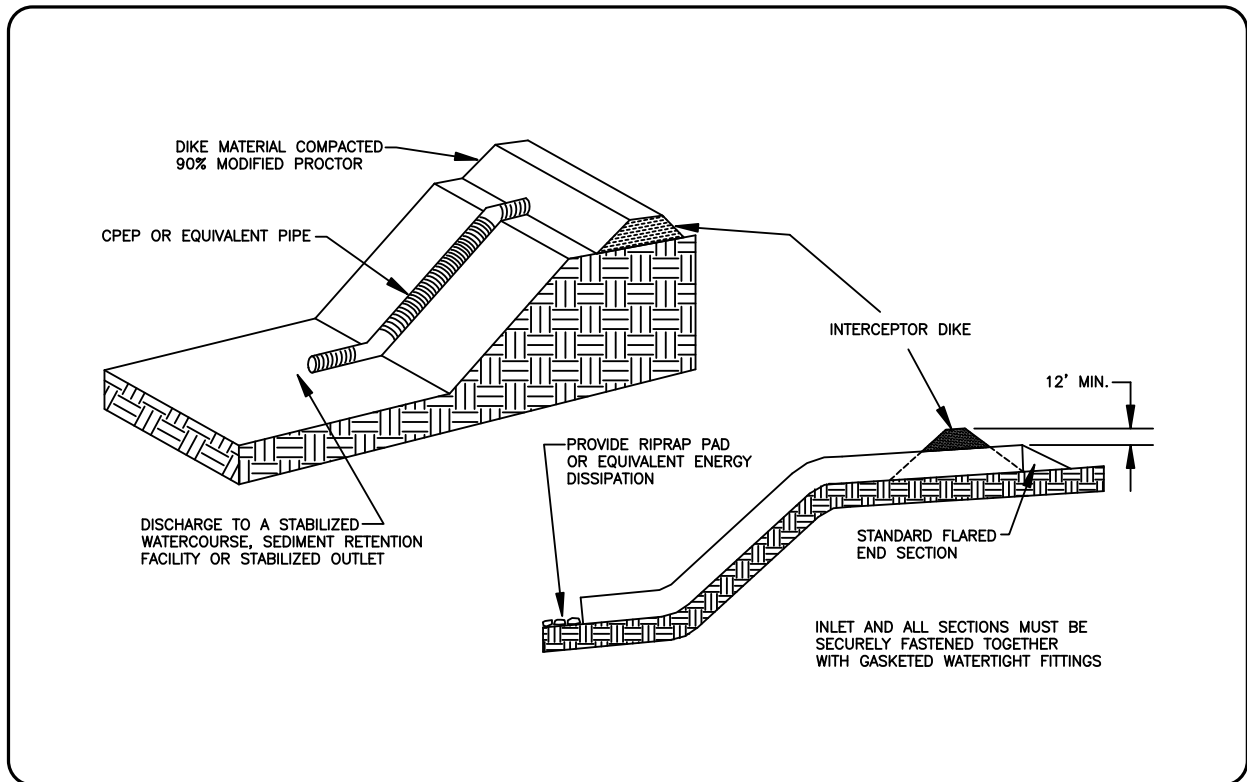
- The entrance shall consist of a standard flared end section for culverts 12 inches and larger with a minimum 6-inch metal toe plate to prevent runoff from undercutting the pipe inlet. The slope of the entrance shall be at least 3 percent. Sand bags may also be used at pipe entrances as a temporary measure.
- Thoroughly compact the soil around and under the pipe and entrance section to prevent undercutting.
- Securely connect the flared inlet section to the slope drain and have watertight connecting bands.
- Securely fasten, fuse or have gasketed, watertight fittings for the slope drain sections, and securely anchor them into the soil.
- Install thrust blocks anytime 90 degree bends are utilized. Depending on size of pipe and flow, these can be constructed with sand bags, straw bales staked in place, "T" posts and wire, or ecology blocks.
- Pipe needs to be secured along its full length to prevent movement. This can be done with steel "T" posts and wire. A post is installed on each side of the pipe and the pipe is wired to them. This should be done every 10-20 feet of pipe length, depending on the size of the pipe and quantity of water to be diverted.
- Use interceptor dikes to direct runoff into a slope drain. Ensure the height of the dike is at least 1 foot higher at all points than at the top of the inlet pipe.
- Stabilize the area below the outlet with a riprap apron (see BMP C209 Outlet Protection for the appropriate outlet material). For permanent installations, protect the outfall using guidance in Volume 3, Section 3.5.
- If the pipe slope drain is conveying sediment-laden water, direct all flows into the sediment trapping facility.
- Materials specifications for any permanent piped system shall conform to Volume 3, Chapter 3.

#### **3.2.5.4 Maintenance Standards**

Check inlet and outlet points regularly, especially after storms.

The inlet should be free of undercutting, and no water should be going around the point of entry. If there are problems, the headwall should be reinforced with compacted earth or sand bags.

- The outlet point should be free of erosion and installed with appropriate outlet protection.
- For permanent installations, inspect pipe periodically for vandalism and physical distress such as slides and wind-throw.
- Normally the pipe slope is so steep that clogging is not a problem with smooth wall pipe; however, debris may become lodged in the pipe.



**Figure 2 - 15. Pipe Slope Drains**

### **3.2.6 BMP C205: Subsurface Drains**

#### **3.2.6.1 Purpose**

To intercept, collect, and convey groundwater to a satisfactory outlet, using a perforated pipe or conduit below the ground surface. Subsurface drains are also known as “French drains.” The perforated pipe provides a dewatering mechanism to drain excessively wet soils, provide a stable base for construction, improve stability of structures with shallow foundations, or to reduce hydrostatic pressure to improve slope stability.

#### **3.2.6.2 Conditions of Use**

Use when excessive water must be removed from the soil. The soil permeability, depth to water table, and impervious layers are all factors which may govern the use of subsurface drains.

#### **3.2.6.3 Design and Installation Specifications**

- **Relief drains**
  - Are used either to lower the water table in large, relatively flat areas, improve the growth of vegetation, or to remove surface water.
  - Are installed along a slope and drain in the direction of the slope.
  - Can be installed in a grid pattern, a herringbone pattern, or a random pattern.
- **Interceptor drains**
  - Are used to remove excess groundwater from a slope, stabilize steep slopes, and lower the water table immediately below a slope to prevent the soil from becoming saturated.
  - Are installed perpendicular to a slope and drain to the side of the slope.
  - Usually consist of a single pipe or series of single pipes instead of a patterned layout.
- **Depth and spacing considerations for interceptor drains**
  - The depth of an interceptor drain is determined primarily by the depth to which the water table is to be lowered or the depth to a confining layer. For practical reasons, the maximum depth is usually limited to 6 feet, with a minimum cover of 2 feet to protect the conduit.
  - The soil should have depth and sufficient permeability to permit installation of an effective drainage system at a depth of 2 to 6 feet.
  - An adequate outlet for the drainage system must be available either by gravity or pumping.
  - The quantity and quality of discharge needs to be accounted for in the receiving stream (additional detention may be required).
  - This standard does not apply to subsurface drains for building foundations or deep excavations.
- The capacity of an interceptor drain is determined by calculating the maximum rate of groundwater flow to be intercepted. Therefore, it is good practice to make complete subsurface investigations, including hydraulic conductivity of the soil, before designing a subsurface drainage system.

- **Drain sizing considerations**
  - Size subsurface drains to carry the required capacity without pressure flow. The minimum diameter for a subsurface drain is 4 inches.
  - The minimum velocity required to prevent silting is 1.4 feet per second. Grade the line to achieve this velocity at a minimum. The maximum allowable velocity using a sand-gravel filter or envelope is 9 feet per second.
- Use filter material and fabric around all drains for proper bedding and filtration of fine materials. Envelopes and filters should surround the drain to a minimum of 3-inch thickness.
- Empty the outlet of the subsurface drain into a sediment pond or other appropriate sediment removal device. If free of sediment, it can empty into a receiving channel, swale, or stable vegetated area adequately protected from erosion and undermining.
- Construct the trench on a continuous grade with no reverse grades or low spots.
- Stabilize soft or yielding soils under the drain with gravel or other suitable material.
- Backfill immediately after placement of the pipe. Do not allow sections of pipe to remain uncovered overnight or during a rainstorm. Place backfill material in the trench in such a manner that the drain pipe is not displaced or damaged.
- Do not install permanent drains near trees as tree roots may clog the lines. Use solid pipe with watertight connections where necessary to pass a subsurface drainage system through a stand of trees.
- **Outlet considerations**
  - Ensure that the outlet of a drain empties into a channel or other watercourse above the normal water level.
  - Secure an animal guard to the outlet end of the pipe to keep out rodents.
  - Use at least 10 feet of corrugated metal, cast iron, or heavy-duty plastic without perforations outlet pipe. Do not use an envelope or filter material around the outlet pipe, and bury at least two-thirds of the pipe length.
  - When outlet velocities exceed those allowable for the receiving stream, provide outlet protection.

#### **3.2.6.4 Maintenance Standards**

Check the subsurface drains periodically to ensure that they are free-flowing and not clogged with sediment or roots.

- Keep the outlet clean and free of debris.
- Keep surface inlets open and free of sediment and other debris.
- Trees located too close to a subsurface drain often clog the system with their roots. If a drain becomes clogged, relocate the drain or remove the trees as a last resort. Plan the placement of the drain to minimize this problem.
- Where drains are crossed by heavy vehicles, check the line to ensure that it is not crushed and use pipe material that can handle traffic loads.

### **3.2.7 BMP C206: Level Spreader**

#### **3.2.7.1 Purpose**

To provide a temporary outlet for dikes and diversions consisting of an excavated depression constructed at zero grade across a slope. To convert concentrated runoff to sheet flow and release it onto areas stabilized by existing vegetation or an engineered filter strip.

#### **3.2.7.2 Conditions of Use**

Used when a concentrated flow of water needs to be dispersed over a large area with existing stable vegetation.

- Items to consider are:
  - What is the risk of erosion or damage if the flow may become concentrated?
  - Is an easement required if discharged to adjoining property?
  - Most of the flow should be as groundwater and not as surface flow.
  - Is there an unstable area downstream that cannot accept additional groundwater?
- Use only where the slopes are gentle, the water volume is relatively low, and the soil will adsorb most of the low flow events.

#### **3.2.7.3 Design and Installation Specifications**

Use above undisturbed areas that are stabilized by existing vegetation.

If the level spreader has any low points, flow will concentrate, create channels and may cause erosion.

- Discharge area below the outlet must be uniform with a slope of less than 20%.
- Construct outlet level in a stable, undisturbed soil profile (not on fill).
- Do not allow the runoff to reconcentrate after release unless intercepted by another downstream measure.
- The grade of the channel for the last 20 feet of the dike or interceptor entering the level spreader shall be less than or equal to 1 percent. The grade of the level spreader shall be 0 percent to ensure uniform spreading of storm runoff.
- A 6-inch high gravel berm placed across the level lip shall consist of washed crushed rock, 2- to 4-inch or 3/4-inch to 1½-inch size.
- Calculate the spreader length by estimating the peak flow expected from the 10-year, 24-hour design storm (3.0-inches). The length of the spreader shall be a minimum of 15 feet for 0.1 cubic feet per second and shall be 10 feet for each 0.1 cubic feet per second there after to a maximum of 0.5 cubic feet per second per spreader. Use multiple spreaders for higher flows.
- The width of the spreader should be at least 6 feet.
- The depth of the spreader as measured from the lip should be at least 6 inches and it should be uniform across the entire length.
- Level spreaders shall be setback a minimum of 5 feet from the property line unless there is an easement for flow.
- Level spreaders, when installed every so often in grassy swales, keep the flows from concentrating. Materials that can be used include sand bags, lumber, logs, concrete, and

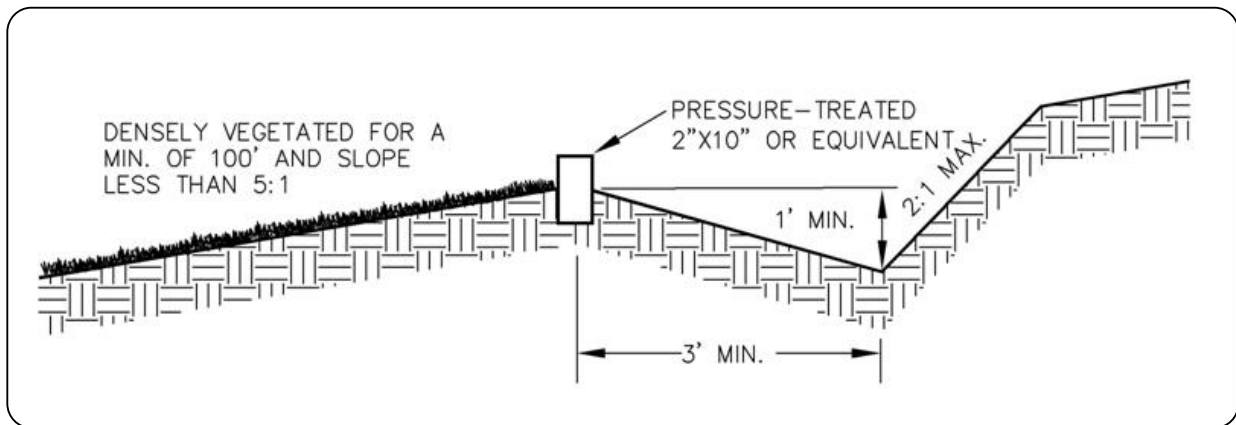


pipe. To function properly, the material needs to be installed level and on contour. Figure 2 - 16 and Figure 2 - 17 provide a cross-section and a detail of a level spreader.

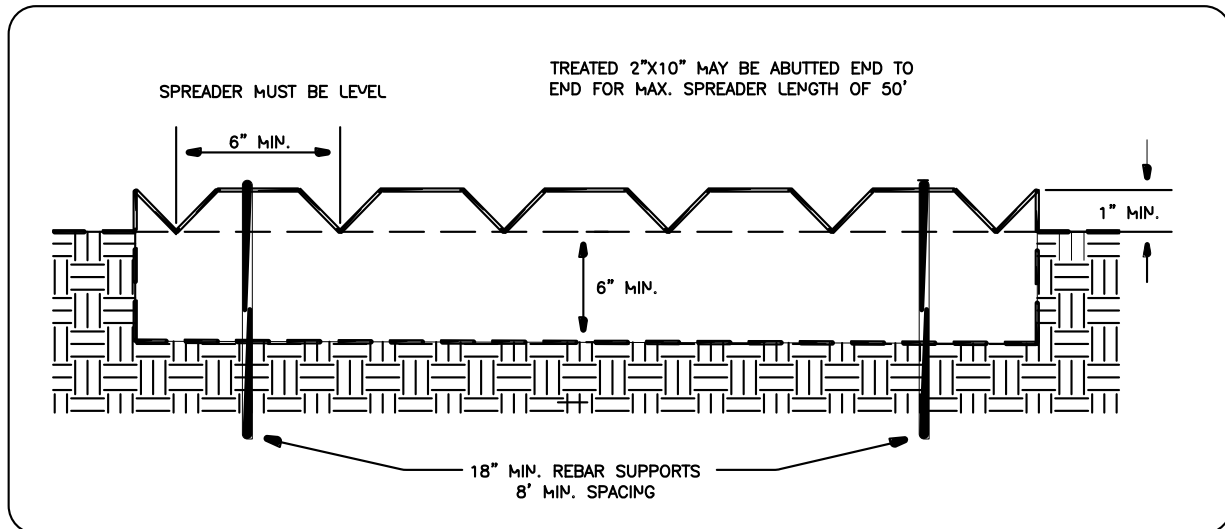
**3.2.7.4 Maintenance Standards**

The spreader should be inspected after every runoff event to ensure proper function.

- The contractor should avoid the placement of any material on the structure and should prevent construction traffic from crossing over the structure.
- If the spreader is damaged by construction traffic, immediately repair it.



**Figure 2 - 16. Cross-Section of a Level Spreader**



**Figure 2 - 17. Detail of a Level Spreader**

### **3.2.8 BMP C207: Check Dams**

#### **3.2.8.1 Purpose**

Construction of small dams across a swale or ditch reduces the velocity of concentrated flow and dissipates energy at the check dam.

#### **3.2.8.2 Conditions of Use**

Where temporary channels or permanent channels are not yet vegetated, channel lining is infeasible, and velocity checks are required.

- Do not place check dams in streams unless approved by the State Department of Fish and Wildlife. Do not place check dams in wetlands without approval from the City of Tacoma Building and Land Use Services and other appropriate state agencies.
- Do not place check dams below the expected backwater from any salmonid bearing water between September 15 and June 15 to ensure that there is no loss of high flow refuge habitat for overwintering juvenile salmonids and emergent salmonid fry.

#### **3.2.8.3 Design and Installation Specifications**

Whatever material is used, the dam should form a triangle when viewed from the side. This prevents undercutting as water flows over the face of the dam rather than falling directly onto the ditch bottom.

Check dams in association with sumps work more effectively at slowing flow and retaining sediment than just a check dam alone. A deep sump should be provided immediately upstream of the check dam.

- In some cases, if carefully located and designed, check dams can remain as permanent installations with very minor regrading. They may be left as either spillways, in which case accumulated sediment would be graded and seeded, or as check dams to prevent further sediment from leaving the site.
- Check dams can be constructed of either rock or pea-gravel filled bags. Numerous new products are also available for this purpose. They tend to be re-usable, quick and easy to install, effective, and cost efficient.
- Check dams should be placed perpendicular to the flow of water.
- The maximum spacing between the dams shall be such that the toe of the upstream dam is at the same elevation as the top of the downstream dam.
- Keep a maximum height of 2 feet at the center of the dam.
- Keep the center of the check dam at least 12 inches lower than the outer edges at natural ground elevation.
- Keep the side slopes of the check dam at 2H:1V or flatter.
- Key the stone into the ditch banks and extend it beyond the abutments a minimum of 18 inches to avoid washouts from overflow around the dam.
- Use filter fabric foundation under a rock or sand bag check dam. If a blanket ditch liner is used, this is not necessary. A piece of organic or synthetic blanket cut to fit will also work for this purpose.
- Construct rock check dams of quarry spalls per WSDOT standard specifications 9-13.6. Place the rock by hand or by mechanical means (no dumping of rock to form dam) to achieve complete coverage of the ditch or swale and to ensure that the center of the dam

is lower than the edges. The rock used must be large enough to stay in place given the expected design flow through the channel.

- In the case of grass-lined ditches and swales, remove all check dams and accumulated sediment when the grass has matured sufficiently to protect the ditch or swale - unless the slope of the swale is greater than 4 percent. Seed and mulch the area beneath the check dams immediately after dam removal.
- Ensure that channel appurtenances, such as culvert entrances below check dams, are not subject to damage or blockage from displaced stones. Figure 2 - 18 depicts a typical rock check dam.

#### **3.2.8.4 Maintenance Standards**

Monitor check dams for performance and sediment accumulation during and after each runoff producing rainfall. Remove sediment when it reaches one half the sump depth.

- Anticipate submergence and deposition above the check dam and erosion from high flows around the edges of the dam.
- If significant erosion occurs between dams, install a protective riprap liner in that portion of the channel.

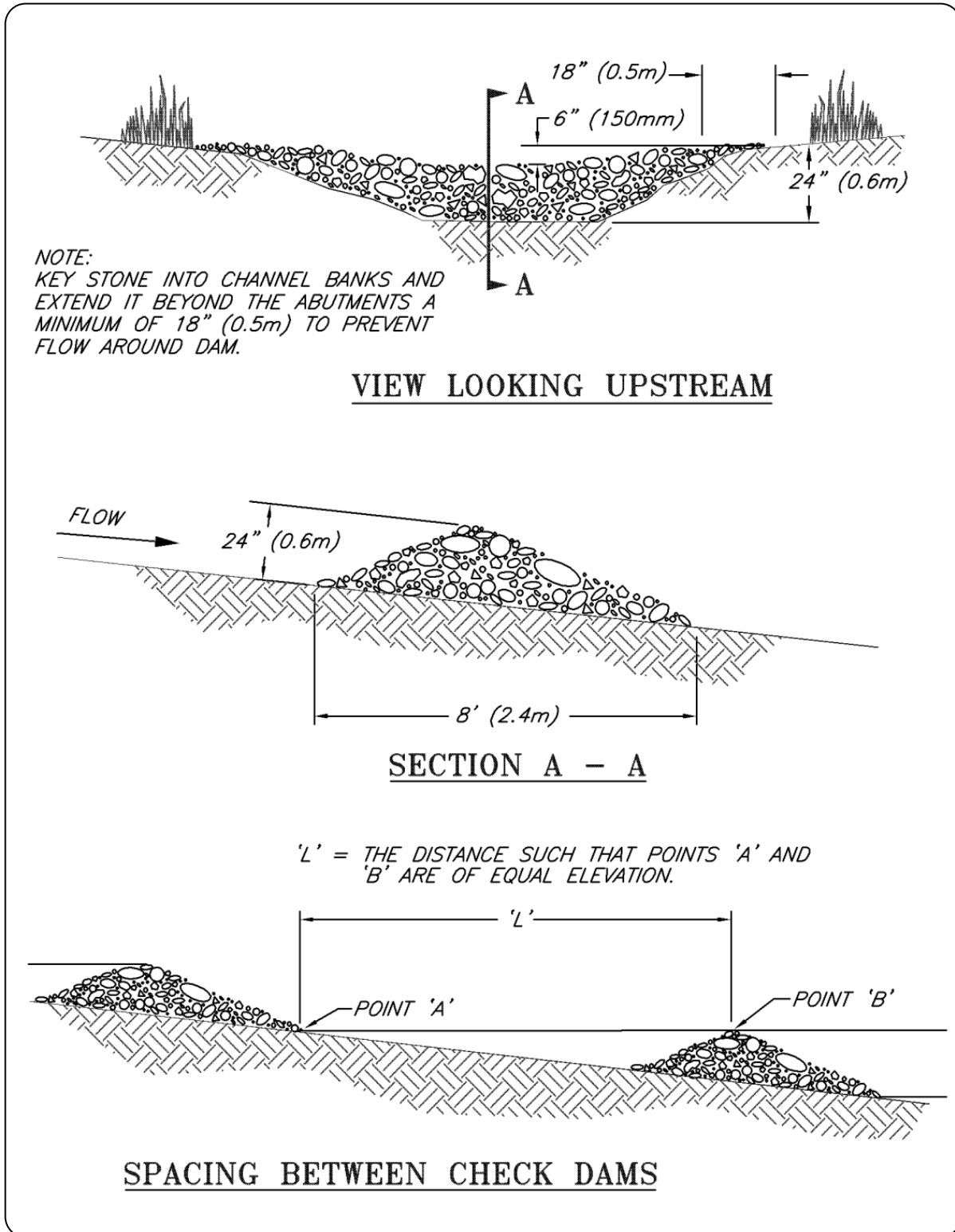


Figure 2 - 18. Check Dams

### **3.2.9 BMP C208: Triangular Silt Dike (Geotextile-Encased Check Dam)**

#### **3.2.9.1 Purpose**

Triangular silt dikes (TSDs) may be used as check dams, for perimeter protection, for temporary soil stockpile protection, for drop inlet protection, or as a temporary interceptor dike (refer to Figure 2 - 19).

#### **3.2.9.2 Conditions of Use**

May be used in place of straw bales for temporary check dams in ditches of any dimension.

- May be used on soil or pavement with adhesive or staples.
- TSDs have been used to build temporary:
  - sediment ponds
  - diversion ditches
  - concrete wash out facilities
  - curbing
  - water bars
  - level spreaders
  - berms

#### **3.2.9.3 Design and Installation Specifications**

Made of urethane foam sewn into a woven geosynthetic fabric.

It is triangular, 10 inches to 14 inches high in the center, with a 20-inch to 28-inch base. A 2-foot apron extends beyond both sides of the triangle along its standard section of 7 feet. A sleeve at one end allows attachment of additional sections as needed.

- Install with ends curved up to prevent water from flowing around the ends.
- The fabric flaps and check dam units are attached to the ground with wire staples. Wire staples should be No. 11 gauge wire and should be 200 mm to 300 mm in length.
- When multiple units are installed, the sleeve of fabric at the end of the unit shall overlap the abutting unit and be stapled.
- Check dams should be located and installed as soon as construction will allow.
- Check dams should be placed perpendicular to the flow of water.
- When used as check dams, the leading edge must be secured with rocks, sandbags, or a small key slot and staples.

#### **3.2.9.4 Maintenance Standards**

Monitor triangular silt dikes for performance and sediment accumulation during and after each runoff producing rainfall. Remove sediment when it reaches one half the height of the dam.

Anticipate submergence and deposition above the triangular silt dam and erosion from high flows around the edges of the dam. Immediately repair any damage or undercutting of the dam.

In the case of grass-lined ditches and swales, remove check dams and accumulated sediment when the grass has matured sufficiently to protect the ditch or swale, unless the slope of the swale is greater than 4 percent. Seed and mulch the area beneath the check dams immediately after dam removal.

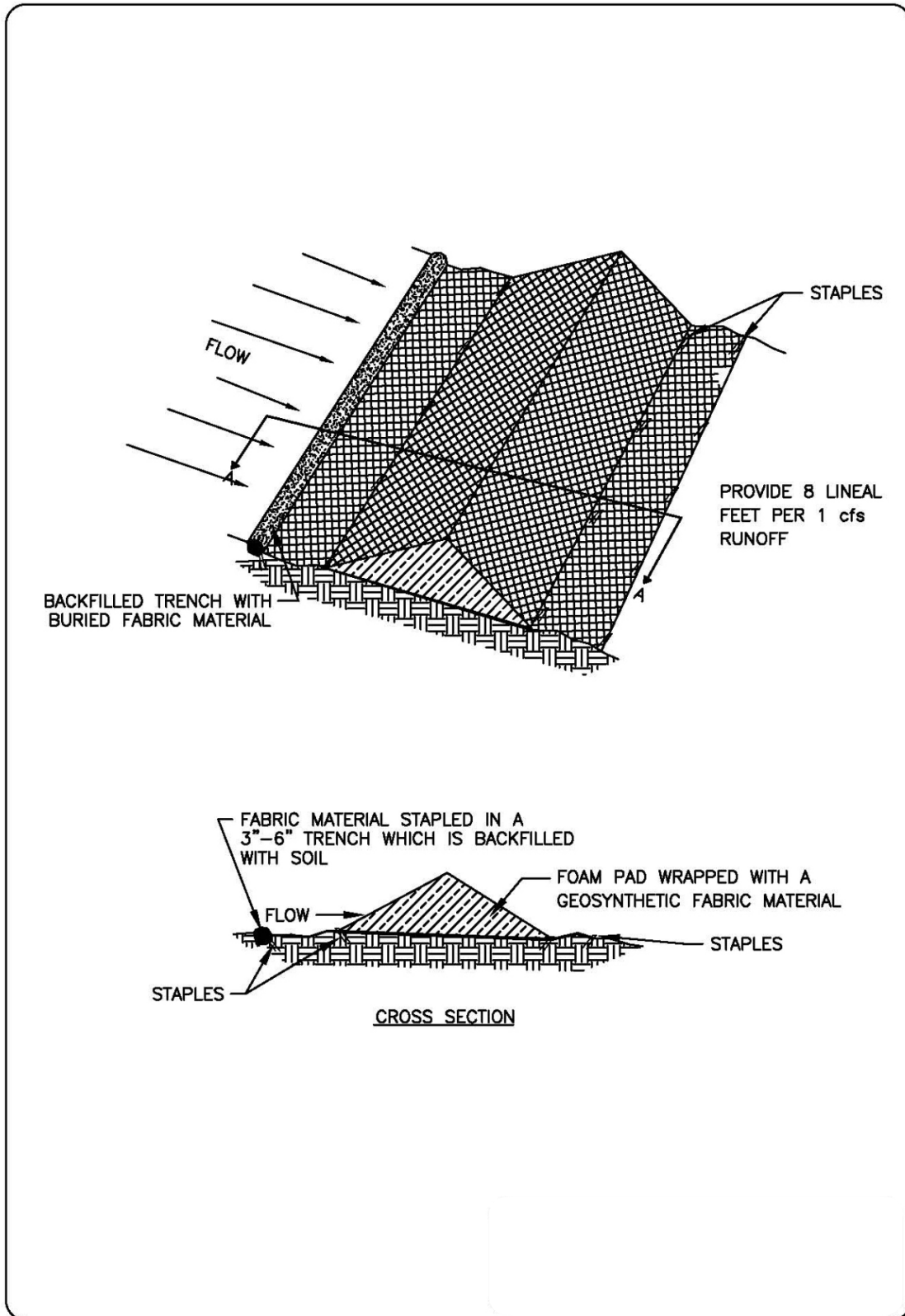


Figure 2 - 19. Sediment Barrier – Geosynthetic Dike

### **3.2.10 BMP C209: Outlet Protection**

#### **3.2.10.1 Purpose**

Outlet protection prevents scour at conveyance outlets and minimizes the potential for downstream erosion by reducing the velocity of concentrated stormwater flows.

#### **3.2.10.2 Conditions of Use**

Outlet protection is required at the outlets of all ponds, pipes, ditches, or other conveyances, and where runoff is conveyed to a natural or manmade drainage feature such as a stream, wetland, lake, or ditch.

#### **3.2.10.3 Design and Installation Specifications**

Protect the receiving channel at the outlet of a culvert from erosion by rock lining a minimum of 6 feet downstream and extending rock lining up the channel sides a minimum of 1-foot above the maximum tailwater elevation or 1-foot above the crown, whichever is higher. For large pipes (more than 18 inches in diameter), the outlet protection lining of the channel is lengthened to four times the diameter of the culvert.

- See Volume 3, Section 3.5 for permanent outlet protection.
- Organic or synthetic erosion blankets, with or without vegetation, may be, cheaper, and easier to install than rock. Materials can be chosen using manufacturer product specifications. ASTM test results are available for most products and the designer can choose the correct material for the expected flow.
- With low flows, vegetation (including sod) can be effective.
- Use the following guidelines for riprap outlet protection:
  - If the discharge velocity at the outlet is less than 5 feet per second (pipe slope less than 1 percent), use 2-inch to 8-inch riprap. Minimum thickness is 1-foot.
  - For 5 to 10 feet per second discharge velocity at the outlet (pipe slope less than 3 percent), use 24-inch to 4-foot riprap. Minimum thickness is 2 feet.
  - For outlets at the base of steep slope pipes (pipe slope greater than 10 percent), an engineered energy dissipater shall be used.
- Always use filter fabric or erosion control blankets under riprap to prevent scour and channel erosion.
- New pipe outfalls can provide an opportunity for low-cost fish habitat improvements. For example, an alcove of low-velocity water can be created by constructing the pipe outfall and associated energy dissipater back from the stream edge and digging a channel, over-widened to the upstream side, from the outfall. Overwintering juvenile and migrating adult salmonids may use the alcove as shelter during high flows. Bank stabilization, bioengineering, and habitat features may be required for disturbed areas. See Volume 3 for more information on outfall system design.

#### **3.2.10.4 Maintenance Standards**

- Inspect and repair as needed.
- Add rock as needed to maintain the intended function.
- Clean energy dissipater if sediment builds up.

### 3.2.11 BMP C220: Storm Drain Inlet Protection

#### 3.2.11.1 Purpose

To prevent coarse sediment from entering drainage systems prior to permanent stabilization of the disturbed area.

#### 3.2.11.2 Conditions of Use

Where storm drain inlets are to be made operational before permanent stabilization of the disturbed drainage area.

Provide protection for all storm drain inlets downslope and within 500 feet of a disturbed or construction area, unless the runoff that enters the catch basin will be conveyed to a sediment pond or trap. Inlet protection may be used anywhere to protect the drainage system. It is likely that the drainage system will still require cleaning.

Table 2 - 9 lists several options for inlet protection. All of the methods for storm drain inlet protection are prone to plugging and require a high frequency of maintenance. Drainage areas should be limited to 1 acre or less. Emergency overflows may be required where stormwater ponding would cause a hazard. If an emergency overflow is provided, additional end-of-pipe treatment may be required.

Only bag filter type catch basin filters (per Section 3.2.11.3) are allowed within the right of way.

**Table 2 - 9: Storm Drain Inlet Protection**

Type of Inlet Protection	Emergency Overflow	Applicable for Paved/Earthen Surfaces	Conditions of Use
Excavated drop inlet protection	Yes, temporary flooding will occur	Earthen	Applicable for heavy flows. Easy to maintain. Large area requirement: 30' x 30' per acre.
Block and gravel drop filter	Yes	Paved or earthen	Applicable for heavy concentrated flows. Will not pond.
Gravel and mesh filter	No	Paved	Applicable for heavy concentrated flows. Will pond. Can withstand traffic.
Catch basin filters	Yes	Paved or earthen	Frequent maintenance required.
Curb inlet protection with a wooden weir	Small capacity overflow	Paved	Used for sturdy, more compact installation.
Block and gravel curb inlet protection	Yes	Earthen	Sturdy, but limited filtration.

#### 3.2.11.3 Design and Installation Specifications

##### **Excavated Drop Inlet Protection**

An excavated impoundment around the storm drain. Sediment settles out of the stormwater prior to entering the storm drain.

- Depth 1 to 2 feet, as measured from the crest of the inlet structure.
- Side slopes of excavation no steeper than 2H:1V.



- Minimum volume of excavation 35 cubic yards.
- Shape basin to fit site with longest dimension oriented toward the longest inflow area.
- Install provisions for draining to prevent standing water problems.
- Clear the area of all debris.
- Grade the approach to the inlet uniformly.
- Drill weep holes into the side of the inlet.
- Protect weep holes with screen wire and washed aggregate.
- Seal weep holes when removing structure and stabilizing area.
- It may be necessary to build a temporary dike to the down slope side of the structure to prevent bypass flow.

### ***Block and Gravel Filter***

A barrier formed around the storm drain inlet with standard concrete blocks and gravel. See Figure 2 - 20.

- Height 1 to 2 feet above inlet.
- Recess the first row 2 inches into the ground for stability.
- Support subsequent courses by placing a piece of 2x4 lumber through the block opening.
- Do not use mortar.
- Lay some blocks in the bottom row on their side for dewatering the pool.
- Place hardware cloth or comparable wire mesh with ½-inch openings over all block openings.
- Place gravel just below the top of blocks on slopes of 2H:1V or flatter.
- An alternative design is a gravel donut.
- Inlet slope of 3H:1V.
- Outlet slope of 2H:1V.
- 1-foot wide level stone area between the structure and the inlet.
- Inlet slope stones 3 inches in diameter or larger.
- Outlet slope use gravel ½- to ¾-inch at a minimum thickness of 1-foot.

### ***Gravel and Wire Mesh Filter***

A gravel barrier placed over the top of the inlet (see Figure 2 - 21). This structure does not provide an overflow.

- Hardware cloth or comparable wire mesh with ½-inch openings.
- Coarse aggregate.
- Place wire mesh over the drop inlet so that the wire extends a minimum of 1-foot beyond each side of the inlet structure.
- If more than one strip of mesh is necessary, overlap the strips.
- Place coarse aggregate over the wire mesh.

- The depth of the gravel should be at least 12 inches over the entire inlet opening and extend at least 18 inches on all sides.

### ***Catchbasin Filters***

Inserts (Figure 2 - 22) shall be designed by the manufacturer for use at construction sites. The limited sediment storage capacity increases the frequency of inspection and maintenance required, which may be daily for heavy sediment loads. The maintenance requirements can be reduced by combining a catchbasin filter with another type of inlet protection. This type of inlet protection provides flow bypass without overflow and therefore may be a better method for inlets located along active rights-of-way.

- Should have a minimum of 5 cubic feet of storage.
- Dewatering provisions.
- High-flow bypass that will not clog under normal use at a construction site.
- The catchbasin filter is inserted in the catchbasin just below the grating.
- Only bag filter type catch basin filters are allowed in the City right-of-way.

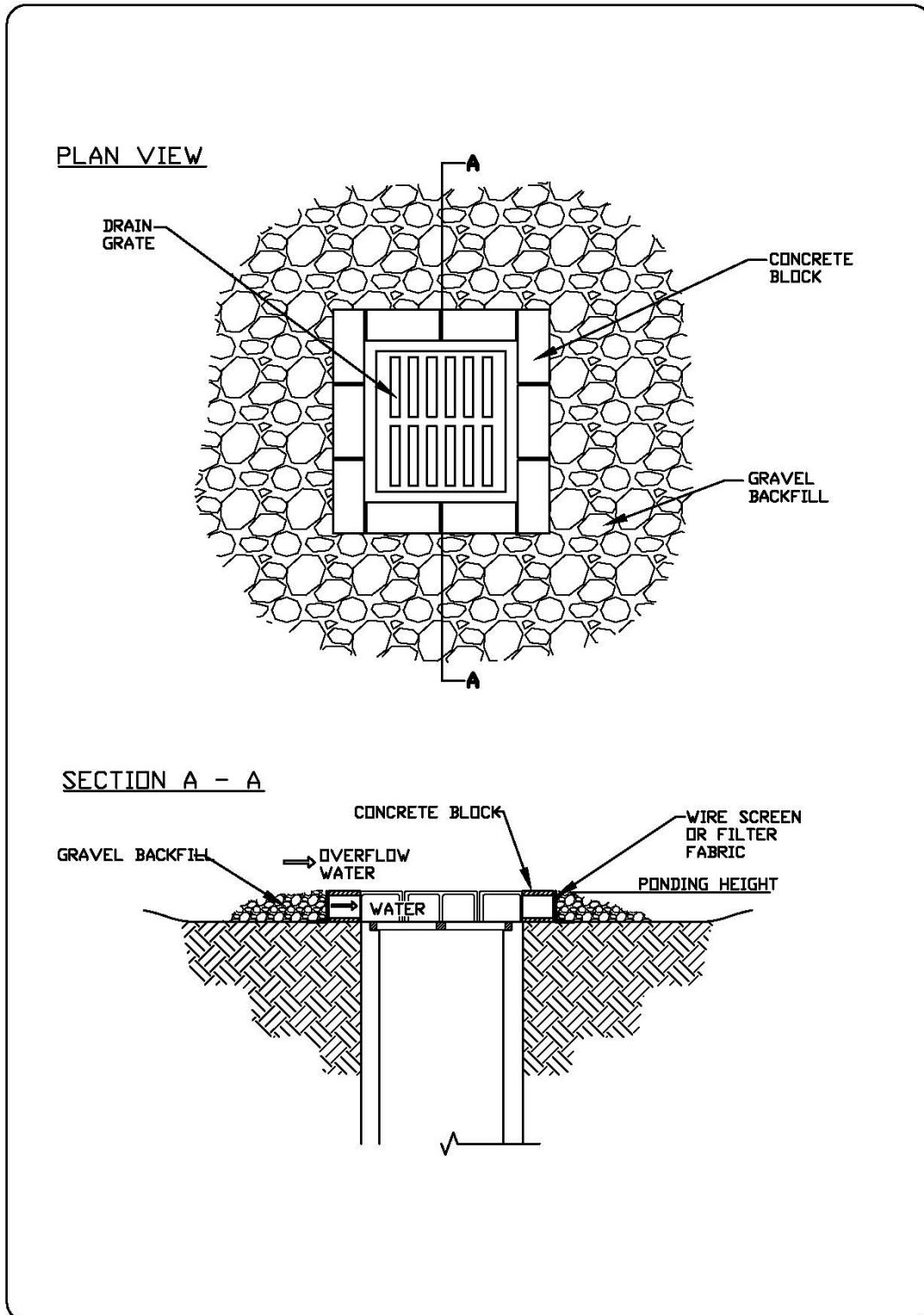
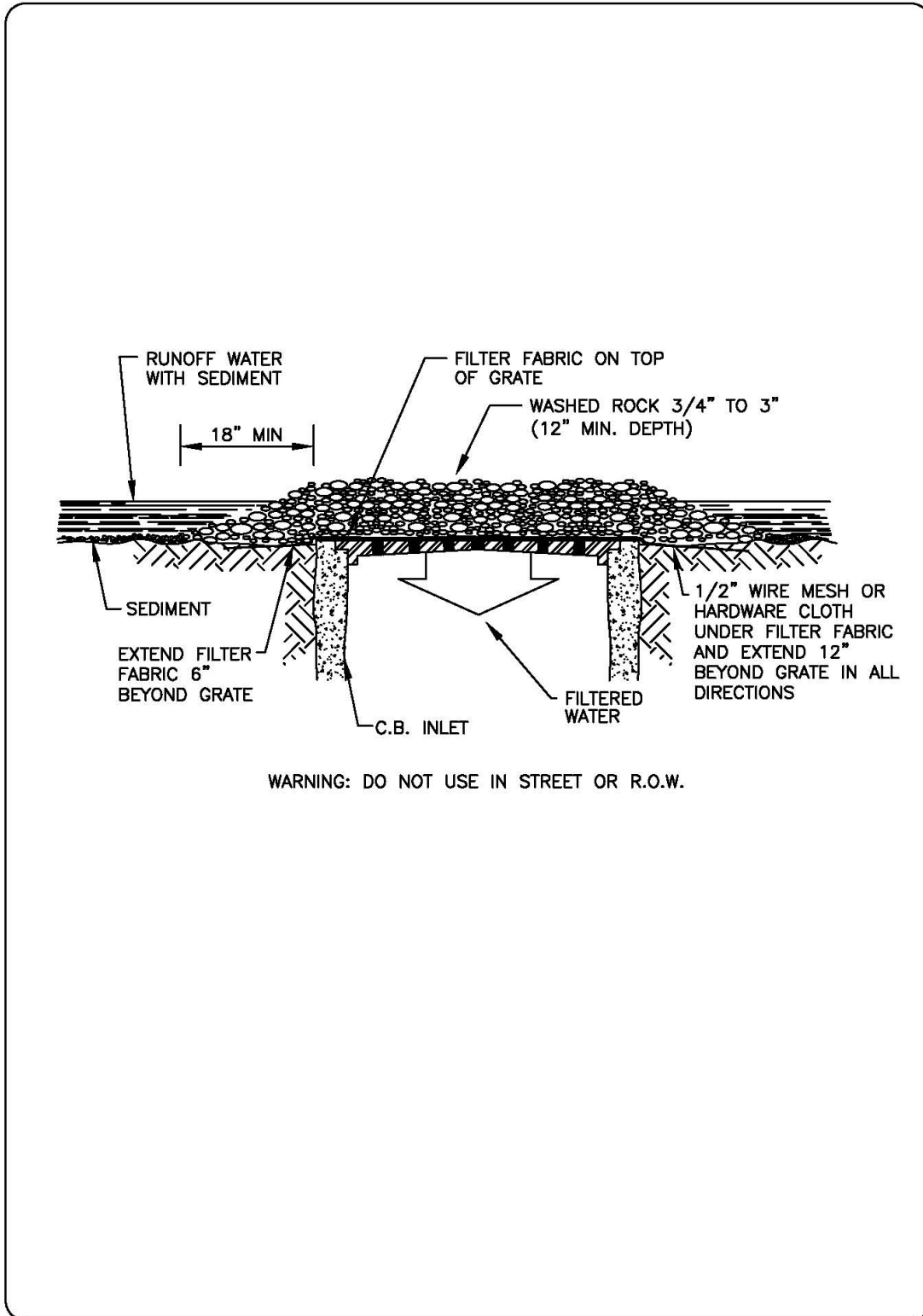
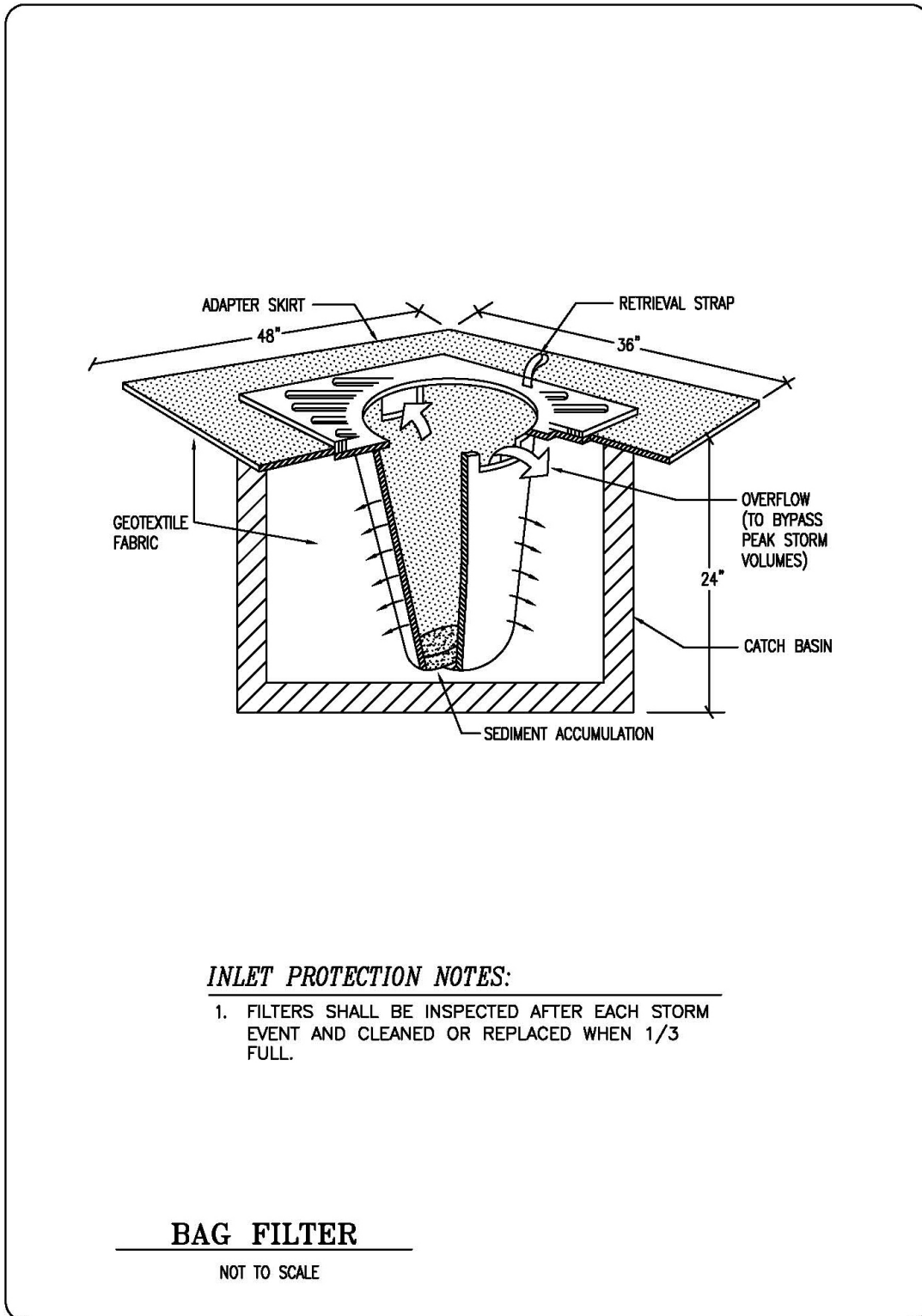


Figure 2 - 20. Drop Inlet with Block and Gravel Filter



**Figure 2 - 21. Gravel and Wire Mesh Filter**



**Figure 2 - 22. Catchbasin Filter**

***Curb Inlet Protection with Wooden Weir***

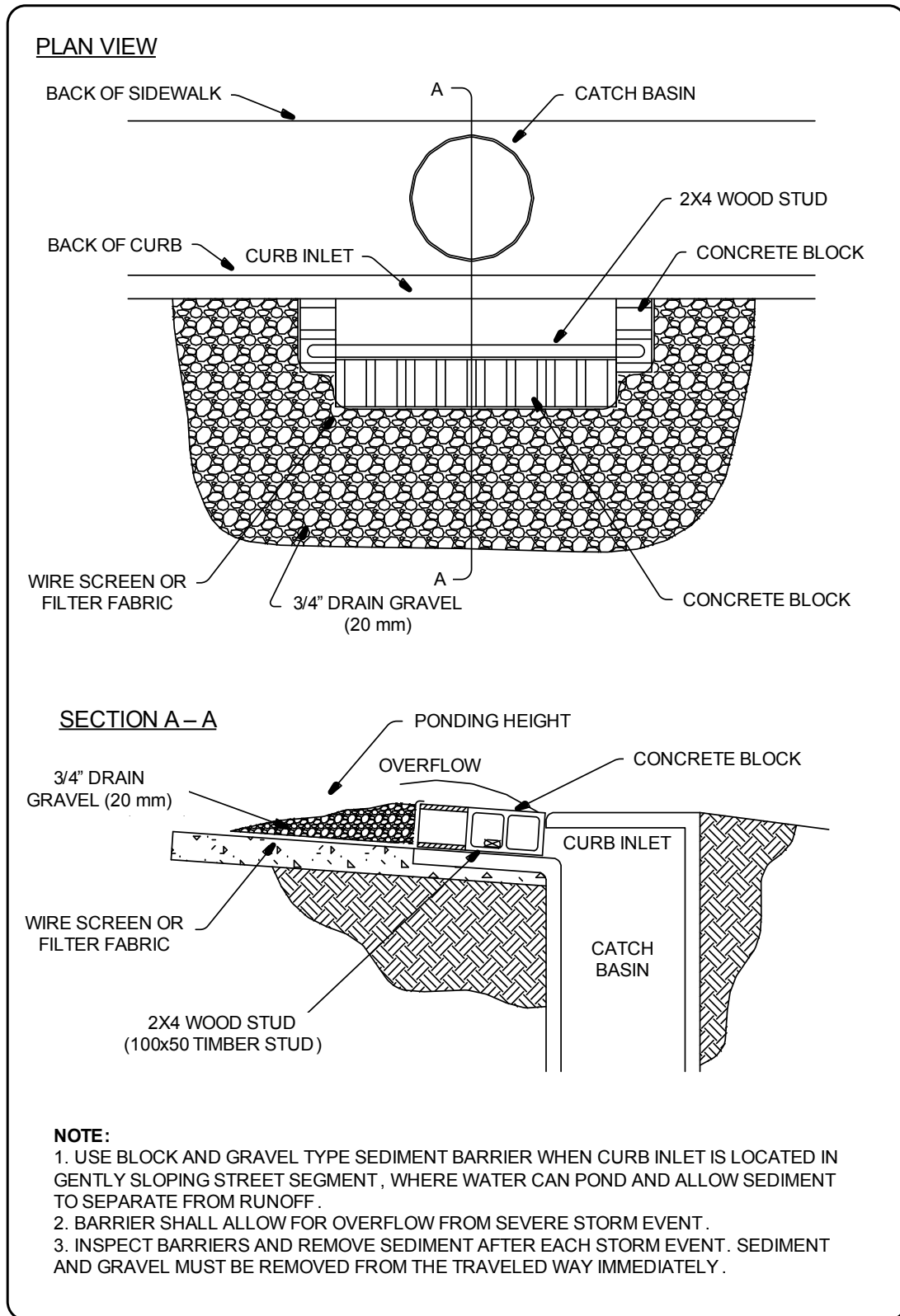
Barrier formed around a curb inlet with a wooden frame and gravel.

- Wire mesh with ½-inch openings.
- Extra strength filter cloth.
- Construct a frame.
- Attach the wire and filter fabric to the frame.
- Pile coarse washed aggregate against the wire and fabric.
- Place weight on frame anchors.

***Block and Gravel Curb Inlet Protection***

Barrier formed around an inlet with concrete blocks and gravel. See Figure 2 - 23.

- Wire mesh with ½-inch openings.
- Place two concrete blocks on their sides abutting the curb at either side of the inlet opening. These are spacer blocks.
- Place a 2x4 stud through the outer holes of each spacer block to align the front blocks.
- Place blocks on their sides across the front of the inlet and abutting the spacer blocks.
- Place wire mesh over the outside vertical face.
- Pile coarse aggregate against the wire to the top of the barrier.



**Figure 2 - 23. Block and Gravel Curb Inlet Protection**

***Curb and Gutter Sediment Barrier***

Sandbag or rock berm (riprap and aggregate) 3 feet high and 3 feet wide in a horseshoe shape. See Figure 2 - 24.

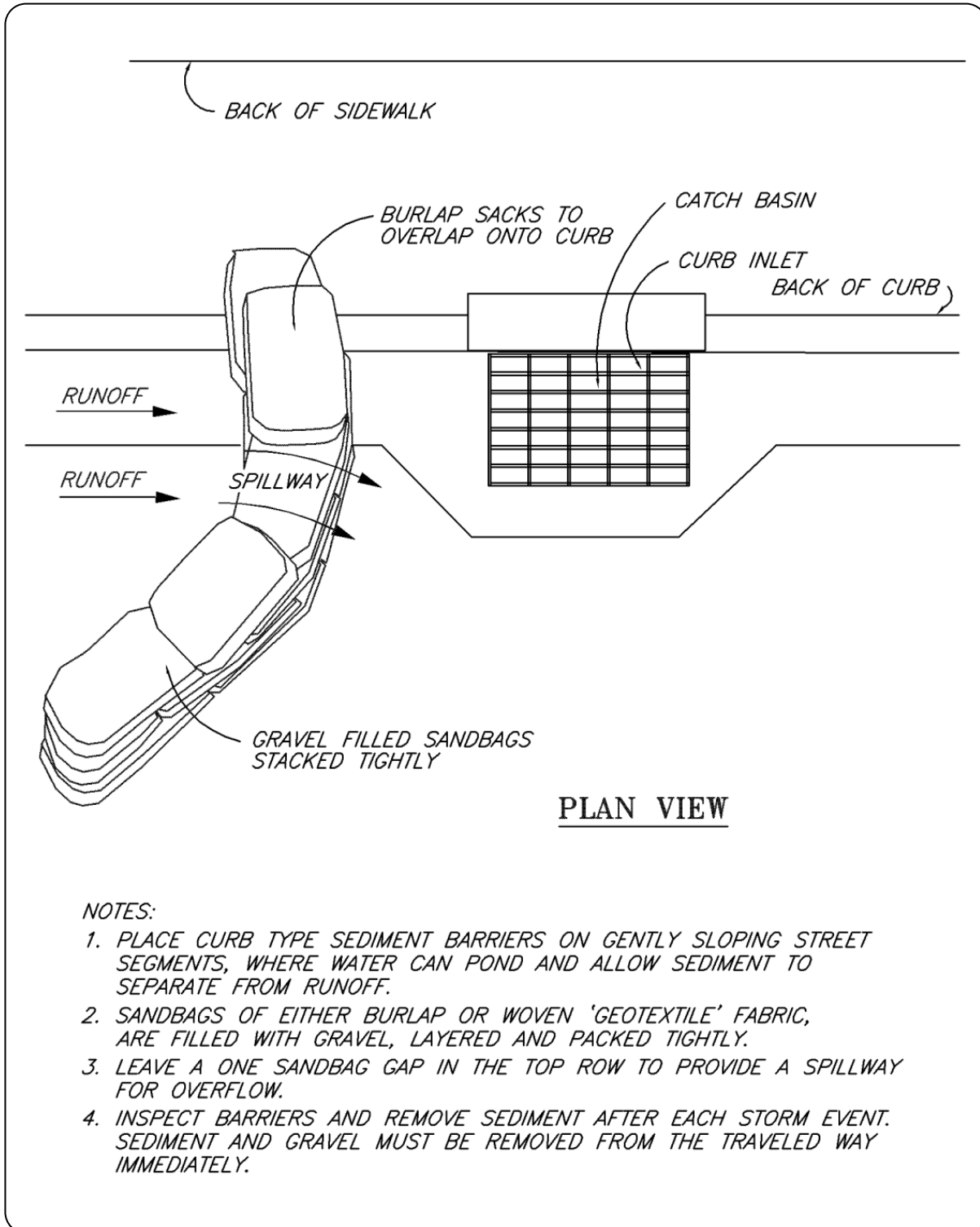
- Construct a horseshoe shaped berm, faced with coarse aggregate if using riprap, 3 feet high and 3 feet wide, at least 2 feet from the inlet.
- Construct a horseshoe shaped sedimentation trap on the outside of the berm sized to sediment trap standards for protecting a culvert inlet.
- Sandbag must be gravel filled.

**3.2.11.4 Maintenance Standards**

Inspect catch basin filters frequently, especially after storm events. If the insert becomes clogged, clean or replace it.

- For systems using stone filters: If the stone filter becomes clogged with sediment, the stones must be pulled away from the inlet and cleaned or replaced. Since cleaning of gravel at a construction site may be difficult, an alternative approach would be to use the clogged stone as fill and put fresh stone around the inlet.
- Do not wash sediment into storm drains while cleaning. Spread all excavated material evenly over the surrounding land area or stockpile and stabilize as appropriate.
- Do not allow accumulated sediment to enter the storm drain system.





**Figure 2 - 24. Curb and Gutter Sediment Barrier**

### **3.2.12 BMP C231: Brush Barrier**

#### **3.2.12.1 Purpose**

The purpose of brush barriers is to reduce the transport of coarse sediment from a construction site by providing a temporary physical barrier to sediment and reducing the runoff velocities of overland flow.

#### **3.2.12.2 Conditions of Use**

- Brush barriers may be used downslope of all disturbed areas of less than one-quarter acre.
- Brush barriers are not intended to treat concentrated flows, nor are they intended to treat substantial amounts of overland flow. Any concentrated flows must be conveyed through the drainage system to a sediment pond. The only circumstance in which overland flow can be treated solely by a barrier, rather than by a sediment pond, is when the area draining to the barrier is small.
- Only install brush barriers on contours.

#### **3.2.12.3 Design and Installation Specifications**

- Height 2 feet (minimum) to 5 feet (maximum).
- Width 5 feet at base (minimum) to 15 feet (maximum).
- Filter fabric (geotextile) may be anchored over the brush berm to enhance the filtration ability of the barrier. Ten-ounce burlap is an adequate alternative to filter fabric.
- Chipped site vegetation, composted mulch, or wood-based mulch (hog fuel) can be used to construct brush barriers.
- A 100 percent biodegradable installation can be constructed using 10-ounce burlap held in place by wooden stakes. Figure 2 - 25 depicts a typical brush barrier.

#### **3.2.12.4 Maintenance Standards**

- Do not allow erosion or concentrated runoff under or around the barrier. If concentrated flows are bypassing the barrier, it must be expanded or augmented by toed-in filter fabric.
- Maintain the dimensions of the barrier.

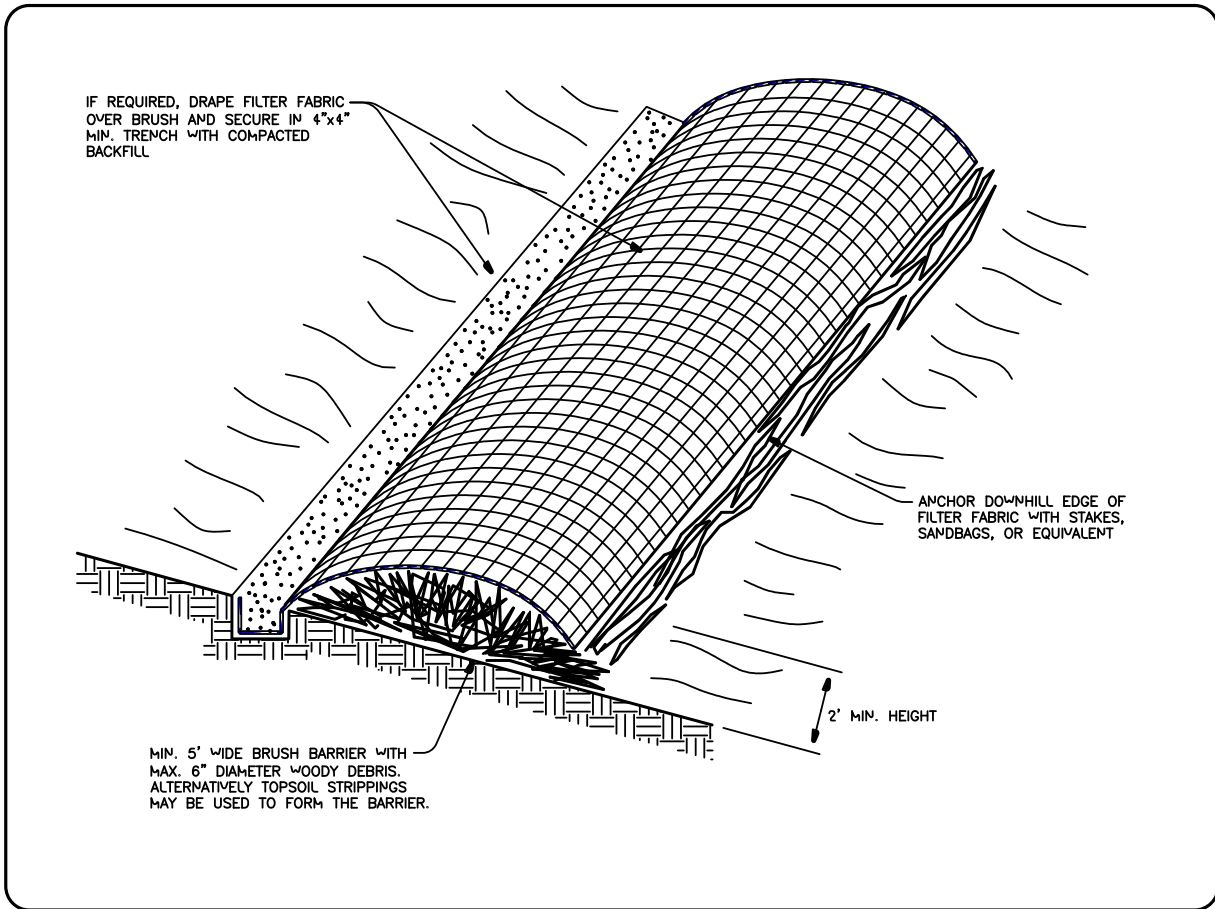


Figure 2 - 25. Brush Barrier

### **3.2.13 BMP C232: Gravel Filter Berm**

#### **3.2.13.1 Purpose**

A gravel filter berm is constructed on rights-of-way or traffic areas within a construction site to retain sediment by using a filter berm of gravel or crushed rock.

#### **3.2.13.2 Conditions of Use**

Where a temporary measure is needed to retain sediment from rights-of-way or in traffic areas on construction sites.

#### **3.2.13.3 Design and Installation Specifications**

Berm material shall be  $\frac{3}{4}$  to 3 inches in size, washed well-graded gravel or crushed rock, with less than 5 percent fines.

- Space berms:
  - Every 300 feet on slopes less than 5 percent
  - Every 200 feet on slopes between 5 percent and 10 percent
  - Every 100 feet on slopes greater than 10 percent
- Berm dimensions:
  - 1 foot high with 3:1 side slopes
  - 8 linear feet per 1 cubic foot per second runoff based on the 10-year, 24-hour design storm (3.0-inches)

#### **3.2.13.4 Maintenance Standards**

Regular inspection is required. Remove sediment and replace filter material as needed.

### 3.2.14 BMP C233: Silt Fence

#### 3.2.14.1 Purpose

Use of a silt fence reduces the transport of coarse sediment from a construction site by providing a temporary physical barrier to sediment and reducing the runoff velocities of overland flow. See Figure 2 - 26 for details on silt fence construction.

#### 3.2.14.2 Conditions of Use

Silt fence may be used downslope of all disturbed areas.

- Silt fence is not intended to treat concentrated flows, nor is it intended to treat substantial amounts of overland flow. Convey any concentrated flows through the drainage system to a sediment pond. The only circumstance in which overland flow can be treated solely by a silt fence is when the area draining to the fence is one acre or less and flow rates are less than 0.5 cfs.
- Do not construct silt fences in streams or use them in V-shaped ditches. They are not an adequate method of silt control for anything deeper than sheet or overland flow.

#### 3.2.14.3 Design and Installation Specifications

Drainage area of 1 acre or less or in combination with appropriate sediment removal BMPs on larger sites.

Maximum slope steepness (perpendicular to fence line) 1H:1V.

- Maximum sheet or overland flow path length to the fence of 100 feet.
- No flows greater than 0.5 cubic feet per second.
- The geotextile used shall meet the following standards. All geotextile properties listed below are minimum average roll values (i.e., the test result for any sampled roll in a lot shall meet or exceed the values shown in Table 2 - 10).

**Table 2 - 10: Geotextile Standards**

Standard	Description
Polymeric Mesh AOS (ASTM D4751)	0.60 mm maximum for slit film wovens (#30 sieve). 0.30 mm maximum for all other geotextile types (#50 sieve). 0.15 mm minimum for all fabric types (#100 sieve).
Water Permittivity (ASTM D4491)	0.02 sec <sup>-1</sup> minimum
Grab Tensile Strength (ASTM D4632)	180 lbs. minimum for extra strength fabric. 100 lbs. minimum for standard strength fabric.
Grab Tensile Strength (ASTM D4632)	30% maximum
Ultraviolet Resistance (ASTM D4355)	70% minimum

- Support standard strength fabrics with wire mesh, chicken wire, 2-inch x 2-inch wire, safety fence, or jute mesh to increase the strength of the fabric. Silt fence materials are available that have synthetic mesh backing attached.

- Filter fabric material shall contain ultraviolet ray inhibitors and stabilizers to provide a minimum of six months of expected usable construction life at a temperature range of 0° to 120° Fahrenheit.
- 100 percent biodegradable silt fence is available that is strong and long lasting.
- The following are standard design and installation methods. Refer to Figure 2 - 26 for standard silt fence details.
  - Install and maintain temporary silt fences at the locations shown in the plans. Install the silt fences in the areas of clearing, grading, or drainage prior to starting those activities. Do not consider a silt fence temporary if the silt fence must function beyond the life of the contract. The silt fence shall prevent soil carried by runoff water from going beneath, through, or over the top of the silt fence, but shall allow the water to pass through the fence.
  - The minimum height of the top of silt fence shall be 2 feet and the maximum height shall be 2½ feet above the original ground surface.
  - Sew the geotextile together at the point of manufacture, or at an approved location as determined by the Engineer, to form geotextile lengths as required. Locate all sewn seams at a support post. Alternatively, two sections of silt fence can be overlapped, provided the Contractor can demonstrate, to the satisfaction of the Engineer, that the overlap is long enough and adjacent fence sections are close enough together to prevent silt laden water from escaping through the fence at the overlap.
  - Attach the geotextile on the up-slope side of the posts and support system with staples, wire, or in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. Attach the geotextile to the posts in a manner that reduces the potential for geotextile tearing at the staples, wire, or other connection device. Silt fence back-up support for the geotextile in the form of a wire or plastic mesh is dependent on the properties of the geotextile selected for use. If wire or plastic back-up mesh is used, fasten the mesh securely to the up-slope of the posts with the geotextile being up-slope of the mesh back-up support.
  - Bury the geotextile at the bottom of the fence in a trench to a minimum depth of 4 inches below the ground surface. Backfill the trench and tamp the soil in place over the buried portion of the geotextile, such that no flow can pass beneath the fence and scouring can not occur. When wire or polymeric back-up support mesh is used, the wire or polymeric mesh shall extend into the trench a minimum of 3 inches.
  - Drive fence posts in to a minimum depth of 18 inches. A minimum depth of 12 inches is allowed if topsoil or other soft subgrade soil is not present and a minimum depth of 18 inches cannot be reached. Increase fence post depths by 6 inches if the fence is located on slopes of 3H:1V or steeper and the slope is perpendicular to the fence. If required post depths cannot be obtained, adequately secure the posts by bracing or guying to prevent overturning of the fence due to sediment loading.
  - Locate the silt fences on contour as much as possible, except at the ends of the fence, where the fence shall be turned uphill such that the silt fence captures the runoff water and prevents water from flowing around the end of the fence.
  - If the fence must cross contours, with the exception of the ends of the fence, place gravel check dams perpendicular to the back of the fence to minimize concentrated flow and erosion along the back of the fence. The gravel check dams shall be

- approximately 1-foot deep at the back of the fence and be perpendicular to the fence at the same elevation until the top of the check dam intercepts the ground surface behind the fence. The gravel check dams shall consist of crushed surfacing base course, gravel backfill for walls, or shoulder ballast. Locate the gravel check dams every 10 feet along the fence where the fence must cross contours. The slope of the fence line where contours must be crossed shall not be steeper than 3H:1V.
- Use wood, steel or equivalent posts. Wood posts shall have minimum dimensions of 2 inches by 2 inches by 3 feet minimum length, and shall be free of defects such as knots, splits, or gouges. Steel posts shall consist of either size No. 6 rebar or larger; ASTM A120 steel pipe with a minimum diameter of 1-inch; U, T, L, or C shape steel posts with a minimum weight of 1.35 pounds per foot; or other steel posts having equivalent strength and bending resistance to the post sizes listed. The spacing of the support posts shall be a maximum of 6 feet.
  - Fence back-up support, if used, shall consist of steel wire with a maximum mesh spacing of 2 inches, or a prefabricated polymeric mesh. The strength of the wire or polymeric mesh shall be equivalent to or greater than 180 pounds grab tensile strength. The polymeric mesh must be as resistant to ultraviolet radiation as the geotextile it supports.
  - Specification details for silt fence installation using the slicing method follow. Refer to Figure 2 - 27 for slicing method details.
    - The base of both end posts must be at least 2 to 4 inches above the top of the silt fence fabric on the middle posts for ditch checks to drain properly. Use a hand level or string level, if necessary, to mark base points before installation.
    - Install posts 3 to 4 feet apart in critical retention areas and a maximum of 6 feet apart in standard applications. If wire backing is used, post spacing may be increased to 8-foot maximum.
    - Install posts 24 inches deep on the downstream side of the silt fence, and as close as possible to the fabric, enabling posts to support the fabric from upstream water pressure.
    - Install posts with the nipples facing away from the silt fence fabric.
    - Attach the fabric to each post with three ties, all spaced within the top 8 inches of the fabric. Attach each tie diagonally 45 degrees through the fabric, with each puncture at least 1 inch vertically apart. In addition, each tie should be positioned to hang on a post nipple when tightening to prevent sagging.
    - Wrap approximately 6 inches of fabric around the end posts and secure with 3 ties.
    - No more than 24 inches of a 36-inch fabric is allowed above ground level.
    - The installation should be checked and corrected for any deviation before compaction. Use a flat-bladed shovel to tuck fabric deeper into the ground, if necessary.
    - Compaction is vitally important for effective results. Compact the soil immediately next to the silt fence fabric with the front wheel of a tractor, skid steer, or roller exerting at least 60 pounds per square inch. Compact the upstream side first and then each side twice for a total of four trips.

**3.2.14.4 Maintenance Standards**

- Repair any damage immediately.
- If concentrated flows are evident uphill of the fence, intercept and convey them to a sediment pond.
- It is important to check the uphill side of the fence for signs of the fence clogging, acting as a barrier to flow, and then causing channelization of flows parallel to the fence. If this occurs, replace the fence or remove the trapped sediment.
- Remove sediment deposits when the deposit reaches approximately one-third the height of the silt fence, or install a second silt fence.
- If the filter fabric (geotextile) has deteriorated due to ultraviolet breakdown, replace it.



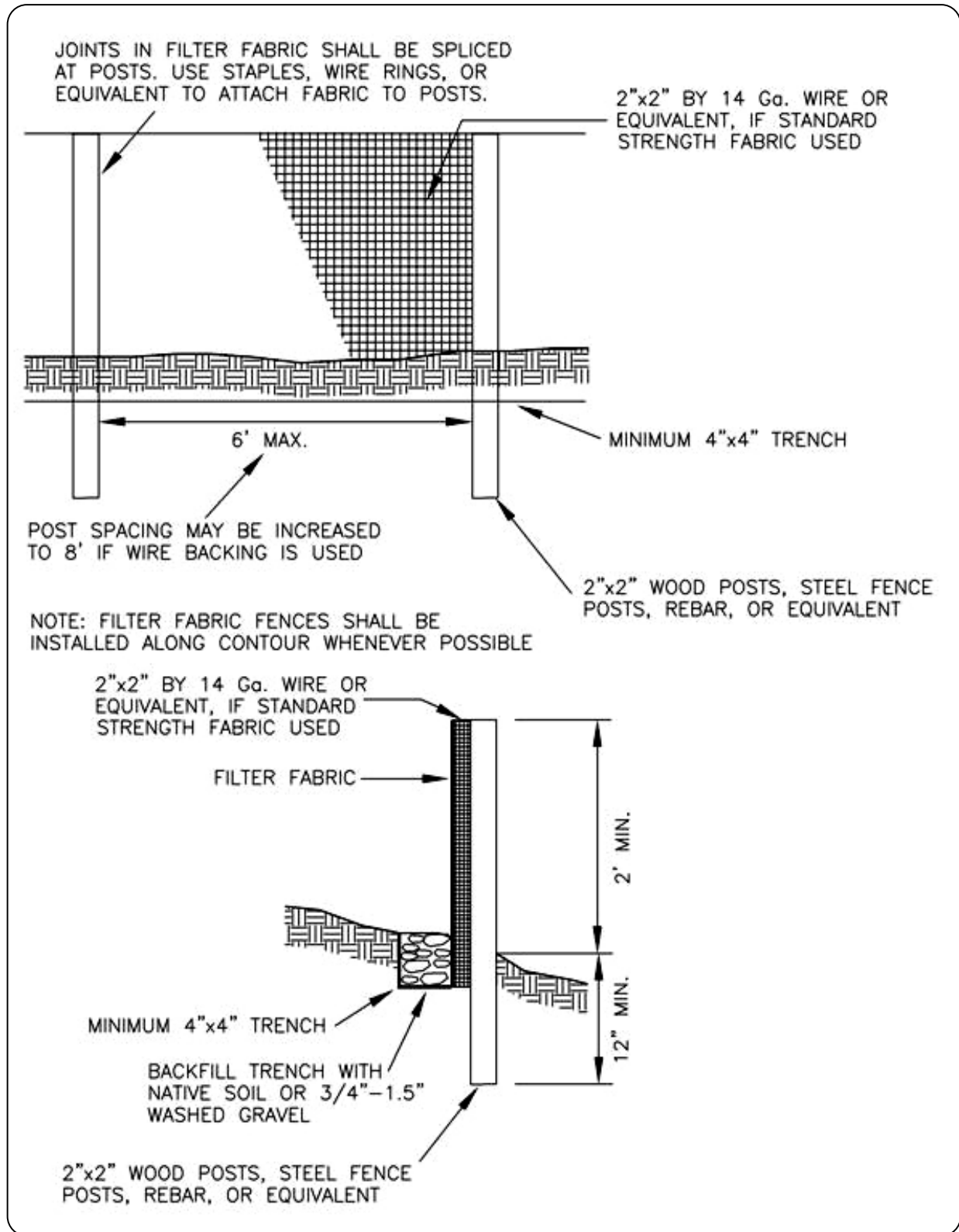
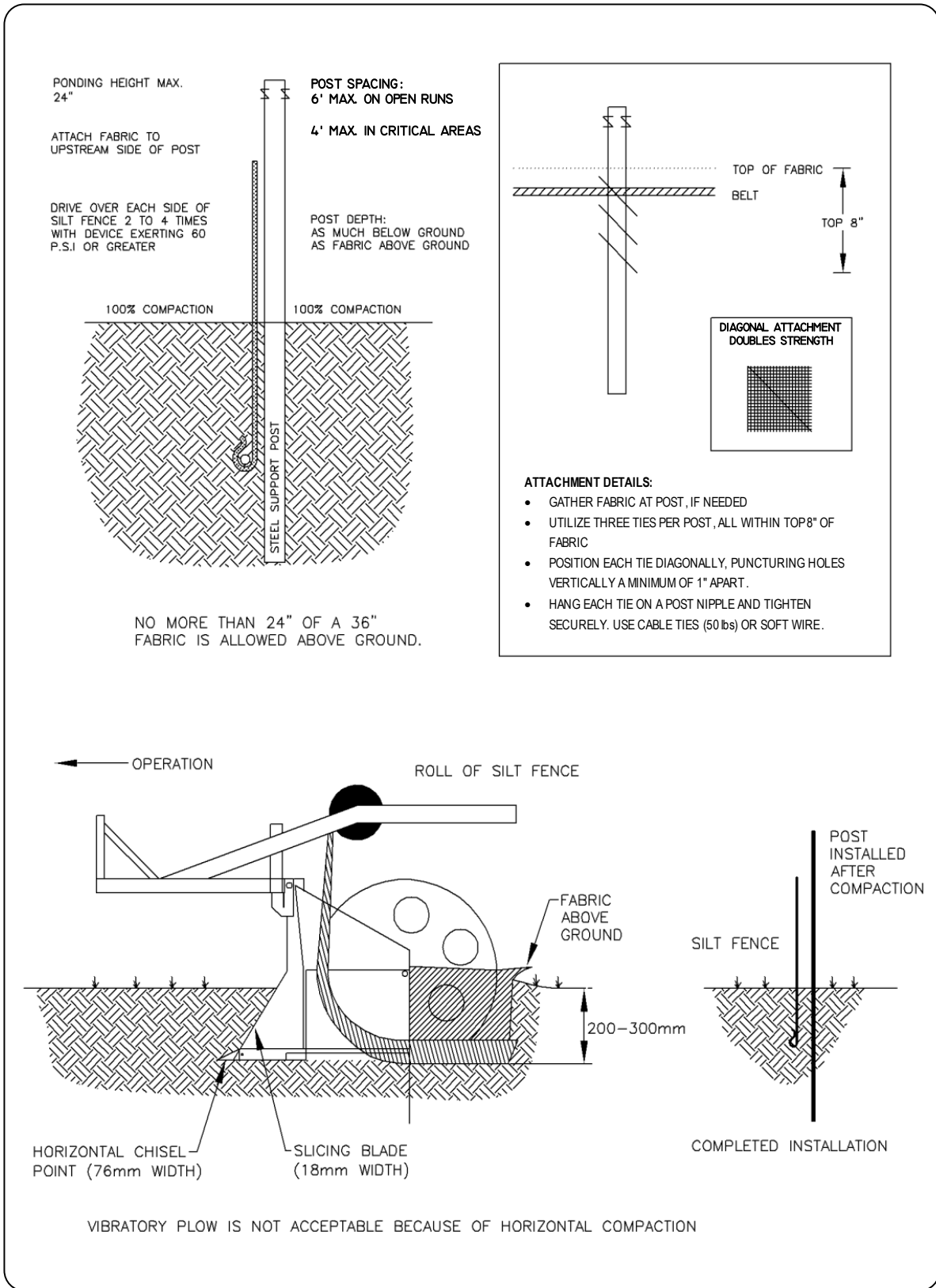


Figure 2 - 26. Silt Fence



**Figure 2 - 27. Silt Fence Installation by Slicing**

### 3.2.15 BMP C234: Vegetated Strip

#### 3.2.15.1 Purpose

Vegetated strips reduce the transport of coarse sediment from a construction site by providing a temporary physical barrier to sediment and reducing the runoff velocities of overland flow.

#### 3.2.15.2 Conditions of Use

Vegetated strips may be used downslope of all disturbed areas.

Vegetated strips are not intended to treat concentrated flows, nor are they intended to treat substantial amounts of overland flow. Convey any concentrated flows through the drainage system to a sediment pond. The only circumstance in which overland flow can be treated solely by a strip, rather than by a sediment pond, is when the criteria shown in Table 2 - 11 are met.

*Table 2 - 11: Vegetated Strips*

Average Slope	Slope Percent	Flowpath Length
1.5H:1V or less	67% or less	100 feet
2H:1V or less	50% or less	115 feet
4H:1V or less	25% or less	150 feet
6H:1V or less	16.7% or less	200 feet
10H:1V or less	10% or less	250 feet

#### 3.2.15.3 Design and Installation Specifications

The vegetated strip shall consist of a minimum of a 25-foot wide continuous strip of dense vegetation with permeable topsoil. Grass-covered, landscaped areas are generally not adequate because the volume of sediment overwhelms the grass. Ideally, vegetated strips shall consist of undisturbed native growth with a well-developed soil that allows for infiltration of runoff.

- The slope within the strip shall not exceed 4H:1V.
- Delineate the uphill boundary of the vegetated strip with clearing limits.

#### 3.2.15.4 Maintenance Standards

- Seed any areas damaged by erosion or construction activity immediately and protect with mulch.
- If more than 5 feet of the original vegetated strip width has had vegetation removed or is being eroded, install sod.
- If there are indications that concentrated flows are traveling across the vegetated strip, surface water controls must be installed to reduce the flows entering the vegetated strip, or install additional perimeter protection.

### **3.2.16 BMP C235: Straw Wattles**

#### **3.2.16.1 Purpose**

Straw wattles are temporary erosion and sediment control barriers consisting of straw that is wrapped in biodegradable tubular plastic or similar encasing material. They reduce the velocity and can spread the flow of rill and sheet runoff, and can capture and retain sediment. Straw wattles are typically 8 to 10 inches in diameter and 25 to 30 feet in length. The wattles are placed in shallow trenches and staked along the contour of disturbed or newly constructed slopes. See Figure 2 - 28 for typical construction details.

#### **3.2.16.2 Conditions of Use**

- Disturbed areas that require immediate erosion protection.
- Exposed soils during the period of short construction delays.
- On slopes requiring stabilization until permanent vegetation can be established.
- Straw wattles are effective for one to two seasons.
- If conditions are appropriate, wattles can be staked to the ground using live cuttings for added revegetation.

#### **3.2.16.3 Design Criteria**

- It is critical that wattles are installed perpendicular to the flow direction and parallel to the slope contour.
- Dig narrow trenches across the slope on contour to a depth of 3 to 5 inches on clay soils and soils with gradual slopes. On loose soils, steep slopes, and areas with high rainfall, dig the trenches to a depth of 5 to 7 inches, or 1/2 to 2/3 of the thickness of the wattle.
- Start building trenches and installing wattles from the base of the slope and work up. Excavated material should be spread evenly along the uphill slope and compacted using hand tamping or other methods.
- Construct trenches at contour intervals of 3 to 30 feet apart depending on the steepness of the slope, soil type, and rainfall. The steeper the slope, the closer together the trenches shall be.
- Install the wattles snugly into the trenches and abut tightly end to end. Do not overlap the ends. Rilling can occur beneath wattles if not properly entrenched, and water can pass between wattles if not tightly abutted.
- Install stakes at each end of the wattle, and at 4-foot centers along entire length of wattle.
- If required, install pilot holes for the stakes using a straight bar to drive holes through the wattle and into the soil.
- At a minimum, wooden stakes should be approximately 3/4 x 3/4 x 24 inches. Live cuttings or 3/8-inch rebar can also be used for stakes.
- Stakes should be driven through the middle of the wattle, leaving 2 to 3 inches of the stake protruding above the wattle.

#### **3.2.16.4 Maintenance Standards**

- Wattles may require maintenance to ensure they are in contact with soil and thoroughly entrenched, especially after significant rainfall on steep sandy soils.
- Inspect the slope after significant storms and repair any areas where wattles are not tightly abutted or water has scoured beneath the wattles.

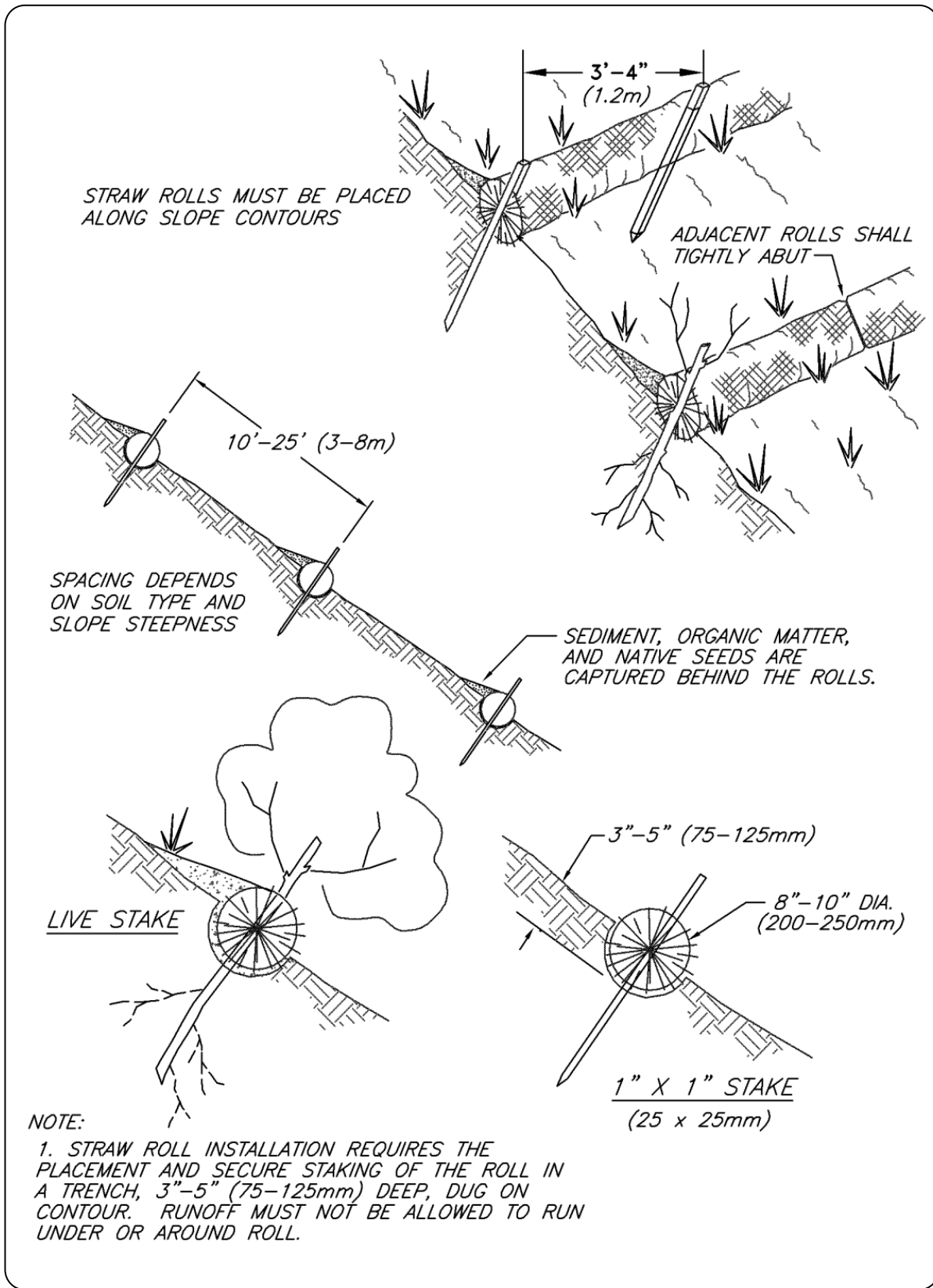


Figure 2 - 28. Straw Wattles

### **3.2.17 BMP C240: Sediment Trap**

#### **3.2.17.1 Purpose**

A sediment trap is a small temporary ponding area with a gravel outlet used to collect and store sediment from sites cleared and/or graded during construction. Install sediment traps, along with other perimeter controls, before any land disturbance takes place in the drainage area.

#### **3.2.17.2 Conditions of Use**

Prior to leaving a construction site, stormwater runoff must pass through a sediment pond or trap or other appropriate sediment removal best management practice. Non-engineered sediment traps may be used onsite prior to an engineered sediment trap or sediment pond to provide additional sediment removal capacity.

Sediment traps are intended for use on sites where the tributary drainage area is less than 3 acres, with no unusual drainage features, and a projected build-out time of six months or less. The sediment trap is a temporary measure (with a design life of approximately 6 months) and shall be maintained until the site area is permanently protected against erosion by the installation of vegetation and/or structures.

Sediment traps and ponds are only effective in removing sediment down to about the medium silt size fraction. Runoff with sediment of finer grades (fine silt and clay) will pass through untreated, emphasizing the need to control erosion to the maximum extent first.

Whenever possible, discharge sediment-laden water into onsite, relatively level, vegetated areas (see BMP C234 – Vegetated Strip). Do not use vegetated wetlands for this purpose. All projects that are constructing permanent detention facilities for runoff quantity control should use the rough-graded or final-graded permanent facilities for traps and ponds. This includes combined facilities and infiltration facilities. When permanent facilities are used as temporary sedimentation facilities, the surface area requirement of a sediment trap or pond must be met. If the surface area requirements are larger than the surface area of the permanent facility, then the trap or pond shall be enlarged to comply with the surface area requirement. The permanent pond shall also be divided into two cells as required for sediment ponds.

Use of infiltration facilities for sedimentation basins during construction tends to clog the soils and reduce their capacity to infiltrate. If infiltration facilities are to be used, the sides and bottom of the facility must only be rough excavated to a minimum of 2 feet above final grade. Final grading of the infiltration facility shall occur only when all contributing drainage areas are fully stabilized. The infiltration pretreatment facility should be fully constructed and used with the sedimentation basin to help prevent clogging.

Either a permanent control structure or the temporary control structure described in BMP C241 - Temporary Sediment Pond can be used. If a permanent control structure is used, it may be advisable to partially restrict the lower orifice with gravel to increase residence time while still allowing dewatering of the pond. A shut-off valve may be added to the control structure to allow complete retention of stormwater in emergency situations. In this case, add an emergency overflow weir.

A skimmer may be used for the sediment trap outlet if approved by the City.

### 3.2.17.3 Design and Installation Specifications

See Figure 2 - 29 and Figure 2 - 30 for details.

If permanent runoff control facilities are part of the project, they should be used for sediment retention.

- To determine the sediment trap geometry, first calculate the design surface area (SA) of the trap, measured at the invert of the weir. Use the following equation:

$$SA = FS(Q_2/V_s)$$

Where:

SA = Design surface area, in square feet, of the sediment trap measured at the invert of the weir.

$Q_2$  = Design inflow, in cubic feet per second, based on the peak discharge from the developed 2-year runoff event from the contributing drainage area as computed in the hydrologic analysis. The 10-year peak flow shall be used if the project size, expected timing and duration of construction, or downstream conditions warrant a higher level of protection. If no hydrologic analysis is required, the Rational Method may be used.

Alternatively,  $Q_2$  = Design inflow (cfs) based on the 2-year, 15-minute flowrate predicted by WWHM for the developed (unmitigated site). Use the 10-year peak flow if the project size, expected timing and duration of construction, or downstream conditions warrant a higher level of protection.  $Q_{10}$  is the 10-year, 15-minute flowrate predicted by WWHM.

**NOTE:** WWHM2 and 3 do not use 15-minute timesteps for their default 2 or 10-year flowrates, they use 1-hour timesteps. The 2-year flowrate predicted by WWHM2 or 3 must be multiplied by 1.3 and the 10-year flowrate must be multiplied by 1.6. It is the applicants' responsibility to adjust flows based on timesteps as appropriate.

$V_s$  = The settling velocity of the soil particle of interest. The 0.02 millimeter (medium silt) particle with an assumed density of 2.65 grams per cubic centimeter has been selected as the particle of interest and has a settling velocity ( $V_s$ ) of 0.00096 feet per second.

$FS$  = A safety factor of 2 to account for non-ideal settling.

Therefore, the equation for computing surface area becomes:

$$\begin{aligned} SA &= 2 \times Q_2 / 0.00096 \text{ or} \\ &= 2080 (Q_2) \end{aligned}$$

**NOTE:** Even if permanent facilities are used, they must still have a surface area that is at least as large as that derived from the above formula. If they do not, the pond must be enlarged.

- Smaller sites may use the minimum pond sizes in Table 2 - 12 instead of providing calculations.

**Table 2 - 12: Sediment Trap Sizing**

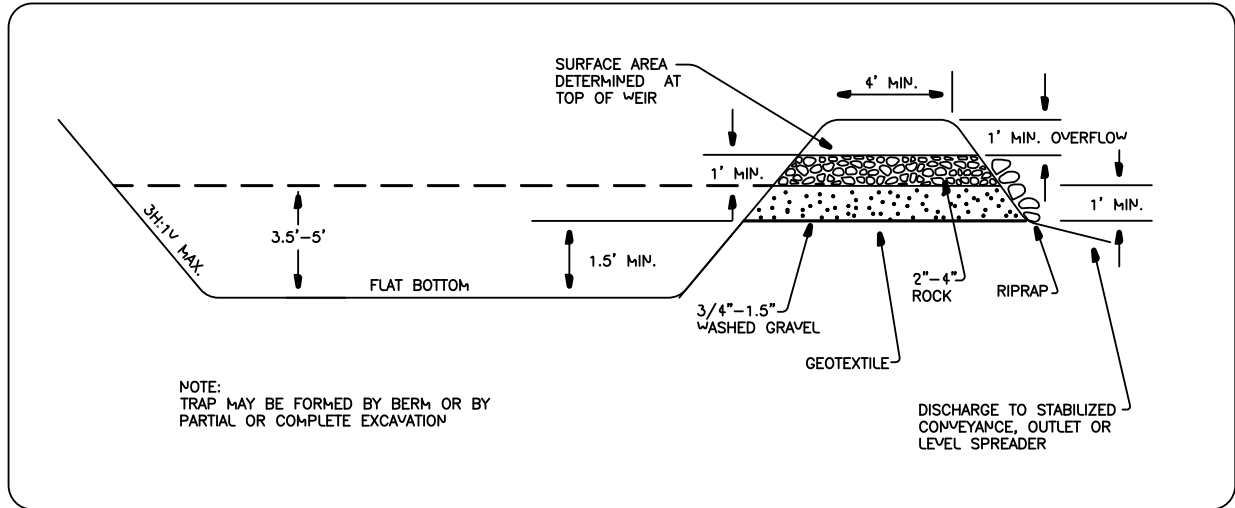
Contributing Area (acres)	Required Surface Area of Pond (sq. ft.)
1/8 acre or less	130
1/4 acre or less	260
1/2 acre or less	520
3/4 acre or less	780
1 acre or less	1040

- To aid in determining sediment depth, all sediment traps shall have a staff gauge with a prominent mark 1-foot above the bottom of the trap.
- Sediment traps may not be feasible on utility projects due to the limited work space or short-term nature of the work. Portable tanks may be used in place of sediment traps for utility projects.
- The basic geometry of the pond can now be determined using the following design criteria:
  - Required surface area SA (from the equation above) at top of riser.
  - Minimum 3.5-foot depth from top of riser to bottom of pond.
  - Maximum 3H:1V interior side slopes and maximum 2H:1V exterior slopes. The interior slopes can be increased to a maximum of 2H:1V if fencing is provided at or above the maximum water surface.
  - One foot of freeboard between the top of the riser and the crest of the emergency spillway.
  - Flat bottom.
  - Minimum 1-foot deep spillway.
  - Length-to-width ratio between 3:1 and 6:1.

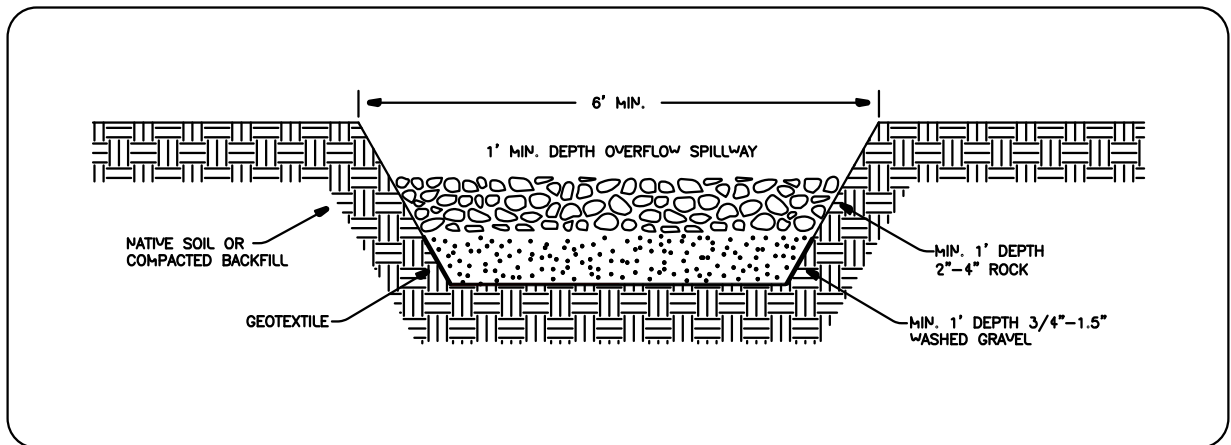
#### **3.2.17.4 Maintenance Standards**

- Remove sediment from the trap when it reaches 1-foot in depth.
- Repair any damage to the pond embankments or slopes.





**Figure 2 - 29. Cross-Section of a Sediment Trap**



**Figure 2 - 30. Sediment Trap Outlet**

### **3.2.18 BMP C241: Temporary Sediment Pond**

#### **3.2.18.1 Purpose**

Sediment ponds remove sediment from runoff originating from disturbed areas of the site. Sediment ponds are typically designed to remove sediment no smaller than medium silt (0.02 mm). Consequently, they usually reduce turbidity only slightly.

#### **3.2.18.2 Conditions of Use**

Prior to leaving a construction site, stormwater runoff must pass through a sediment pond or other appropriate sediment removal best management practice.

Use a sediment pond where the contributing drainage area is 3 acres or more. Ponds must be used in conjunction with erosion control practices to reduce the amount of sediment flowing into the basin.

#### **3.2.18.3 Design and Installation Specifications**

Only install sediment basins on sites where failure of the structure would not result in loss of life, damage to homes or buildings, or interruption of use or service of public roads or utilities. Also, sediment traps and ponds are attractive to children and can be very dangerous. Compliance with local ordinances regarding health and safety must be addressed. If fencing of the pond is required, show the type of fence and its location on the ESC plan.

- Structures having a maximum storage capacity at the top of the dam of 10 acre-feet (435,600 cubic feet) or more are subject to the Washington Dam Safety Regulations (Chapter 173-175 WAC).
- See Figure 2 - 31, Figure 2 - 32 and Figure 2 - 33 for details.
- If permanent detention facilities are part of the project, they may be used for sediment retention. The surface area requirements of the sediment basin must be met. This may require enlarging the permanent basin to comply with the surface area requirements. If a permanent control structure is used, it may be advisable to partially restrict the lower orifice with gravel to increase residence time while still allowing dewatering of the basin.
- Use of infiltration facilities for sedimentation basins during construction tends to clog the soils and reduce their capacity to infiltrate. If infiltration facilities are to be used, the sides and bottom of the facility must only be rough excavated to a minimum of 2 feet above final grade. Final grading of the infiltration facility shall occur only when all contributing drainage areas are fully stabilized. The infiltration pretreatment facility should be fully constructed and used with the sedimentation basin to help prevent clogging.

### **Determining Pond Geometry**

- Determine the required surface area at the top of the riser pipe with the equation:

$$SA = 2 \times Q_2 / 0.00096 \text{ or}$$

$$SA = 2080 (Q_2)$$

Where:

SA = Design surface area, in square feet, of the sediment trap measured at the invert of the weir.

Q<sub>2</sub> = Design inflow, in cubic feet per second, based on the peak discharge from the developed 2-year runoff event from the contributing drainage area as computed in the hydrologic analysis. The 10-year peak flow shall be used if the project size, expected timing and duration of construction, or downstream conditions warrant a higher level of protection. If no hydrologic analysis is required, the Rational Method may be used.

Alternatively, Q<sub>2</sub> = Design inflow (cfs) based on the 2-year, 15-minute flowrate predicted by WWHM for the developed (unmitigated site). Use the 10-year peak flow if the project size, expected timing and duration of construction, or downstream conditions warrant a higher level of protection. Q<sub>10</sub> is the 10-year, 15-minute flowrate predicted by WWHM. Note: WWHM 2 and 3 do not use 15 minute timesteps for their default 2 or 10 year flowrates, they use 1-hour timesteps. The 2-year flowrate predicted by WWHM 2 or 3 must be multiplied by 1.3 and the 10-year flowrate predicted by WWHM 2 or 3 must be multiplied by 1.6.

- See BMP C240 for more information on the derivation of the surface area calculation.
- The basic geometry of the pond can now be determined using the following design criteria:
  - Required surface area SA (from the equation above) at top of riser.
  - Minimum 3.5-foot depth from top of riser to bottom of pond.
  - Maximum 3H:1V interior side slopes and maximum 2H:1V exterior slopes. The interior slopes can be increased to a maximum of 2H:1V if fencing is provided at or above the maximum water surface.
  - One foot of freeboard between the top of the riser and the crest of the emergency spillway.
  - Flat bottom.
  - Minimum 1-foot deep spillway.
  - Length-to-width ratio between 3:1 and 6:1.

### **Sizing of Discharge Mechanisms**

The outlet for the basin consists of a combination of principal and emergency spillways. These outlets must pass the peak runoff expected from the contributing drainage area for a 100-year storm. If, due to site conditions and basin geometry, a separate emergency spillway is not feasible, the principal spillway must pass the entire peak runoff expected from the 100-year storm. However, an attempt to provide a separate emergency spillway should always be made. The runoff calculations shall be based on the site conditions during construction. The flow through the dewatering orifice cannot be utilized when calculating the 100-year storm elevation because of its potential to become clogged; therefore, available spillway storage must begin at the principal spillway riser crest.

The principal spillway designed by the procedures contained in this standard will result in some reduction in the peak rate of runoff. However, the riser outlet design will not adequately control the basin discharge to the predevelopment discharge limitations as stated in Minimum Requirement #7: Flow Control. However, if the basin for a permanent stormwater detention pond is used for a temporary sedimentation basin, the control structure for the permanent pond can be used to maintain predevelopment discharge limitations. The size of the basin, the expected life of the construction project, the anticipated downstream effects, and the anticipated weather conditions during construction should be considered to determine the need of additional discharge control. See Figure 2 - 34 for riser inflow curves.

**Principal Spillway:** Determine the required diameter for the principal spillway (riser pipe). The diameter shall be the minimum necessary to pass the pre-developed 10-year peak flow ( $Q_{10}$ ). If using WWHM,  $Q_{10}$  is the 10-year, 15-minute flowrate. Use Figure 2 - 34 to determine this diameter ( $h = 1$ -foot).

**NOTE:** WWHM 2 or 3 do not use the 15-minute timesteps for their default 10-year flowrate, they use 1-hour timesteps. The 10-year flowrate predicted by WWHM 2 or 3 must be multiplied by 1.6

**NOTE:** A permanent control structure may be used instead of a temporary riser.

**Emergency Overflow Spillway:** Determine the required size and design of the emergency overflow spillway for the developed 100-year peak flow using the method contained in Volume 3. If using WWHM,  $Q_{100}$  is the 100-year, 15-minute flowrate.

**NOTE:** WWHM 2 or 3 do not use the 15-minute timesteps for their default 100-year flowrate, they use 1-hour timesteps. The 100-year flowrate predicted by WWHM 2 or 3 must be multiplied by 1.6

**Dewatering Orifice:** Determine the size of the dewatering orifice(s) (minimum 1-inch diameter) using a modified version of the discharge equation for a vertical orifice and a basic equation for the area of a circular orifice. Determine the required area of the orifice with the following equation:

$$A_o = \frac{A_s (2h)^{0.5}}{0.6 \times 3600 T g^{0.5}}$$

Where:

$A_o$ = orifice area (square feet)

$A_s$ = pond surface area (square feet)

- $h$ = head of water above orifice (height of riser in feet)  
 $T$ = dewatering time (24 hours)  
 $g$ = acceleration of gravity (32.2 feet per second squared)  
 $D$ = orifice diameter (inches)

Convert the required surface area to the required diameter  $D$  of the orifice:

$$D = 24 \times \sqrt{\frac{A_o}{\pi}} = 13.54 \times \sqrt{A_o}$$

The vertical, perforated tubing connected to the dewatering orifice must be at least 2 inches larger in diameter than the orifice to improve flow characteristics. The size and number of perforations in the tubing shall be large enough so the tubing does not restrict flow. The orifice shall control the flow rate.

### **Additional Design Specifications**

The **pond shall be divided** into two roughly equal volume cells by a permeable divider that will reduce turbulence while allowing movement of water between cells. The divider shall be at least one-half the height of the riser and a minimum of one foot below the top of the riser. Wire-backed, 2- to 3-foot high, extra strength filter fabric supported by treated 4"x4"s can be used as a divider. If the pond is more than 6 feet deep, a different mechanism must be proposed. A riprap embankment is one acceptable method of separation for deeper ponds. Other designs that satisfy the intent of this provision are allowed as long as the divider is permeable, structurally sound, and designed to prevent erosion under or around the barrier.

To aid in determining sediment depth, prominently mark **one-foot intervals** on the riser.

If an **embankment height** of more than 6 feet is proposed, the pond must comply with the criteria contained in Volume 3 regarding dam safety for detention BMPs.

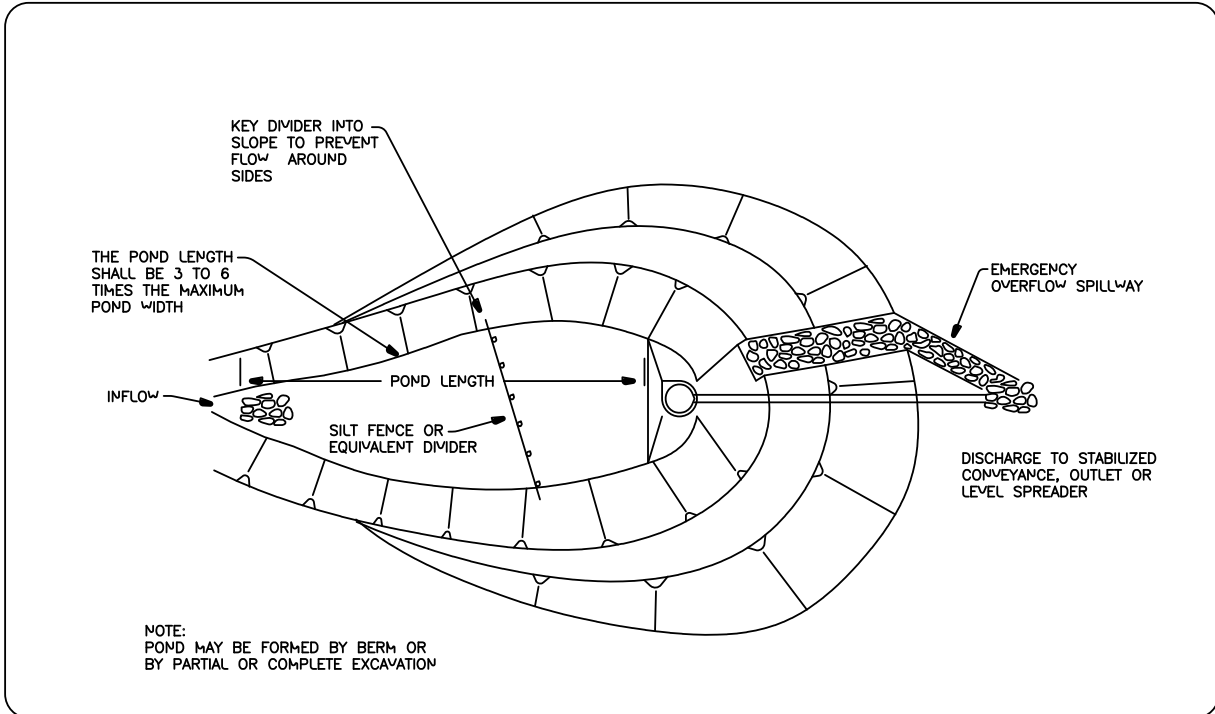
The most common structural failure of sedimentation basins is caused by piping. Piping refers to two phenomena: (1) water seeping through fine-grained soil, eroding the soil grain by grain and forming pipes or tunnels and (2) water under pressure flowing upward through a granular soil with a head of sufficient magnitude to cause soil grains to lose contact and capability for support.

The most critical construction sequences to prevent piping will be:

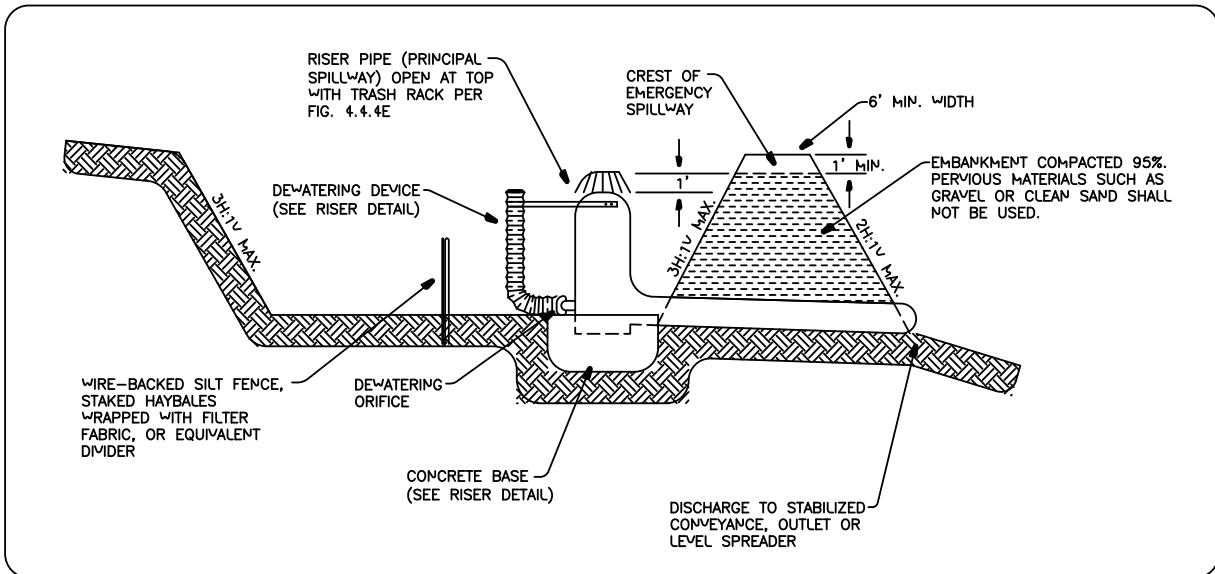
- Tight connections between the riser and barrel and other pipe connections.
- Adequate anchoring of the riser.
- Proper soil compaction of the embankment and riser footing.
- Proper construction of anti-seep devices.

### **3.2.18.4 Maintenance Standards**

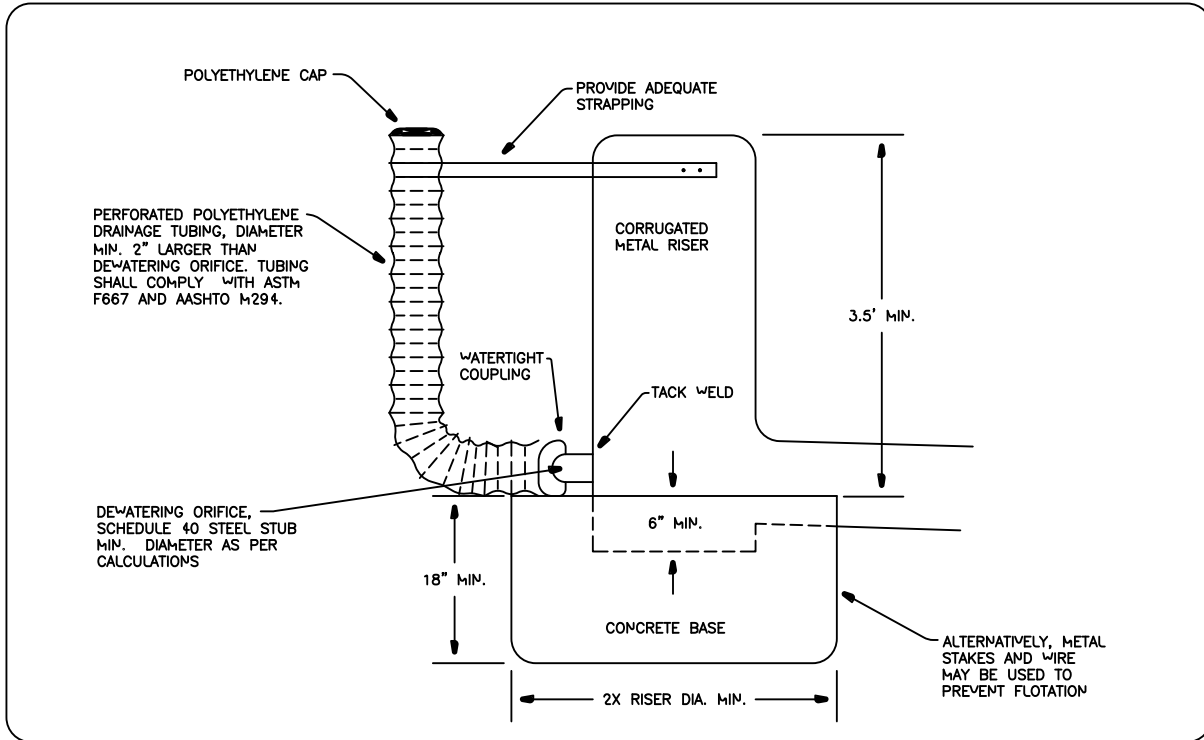
- Remove sediment from the pond when it reaches 1-foot in depth.
- Repair any damage to the pond embankments or slopes.



**Figure 2 - 31. Sediment Pond**



**Figure 2 - 32. Sediment Pond Cross Section**



**Figure 2 - 33. Sediment Pond Riser Detail**

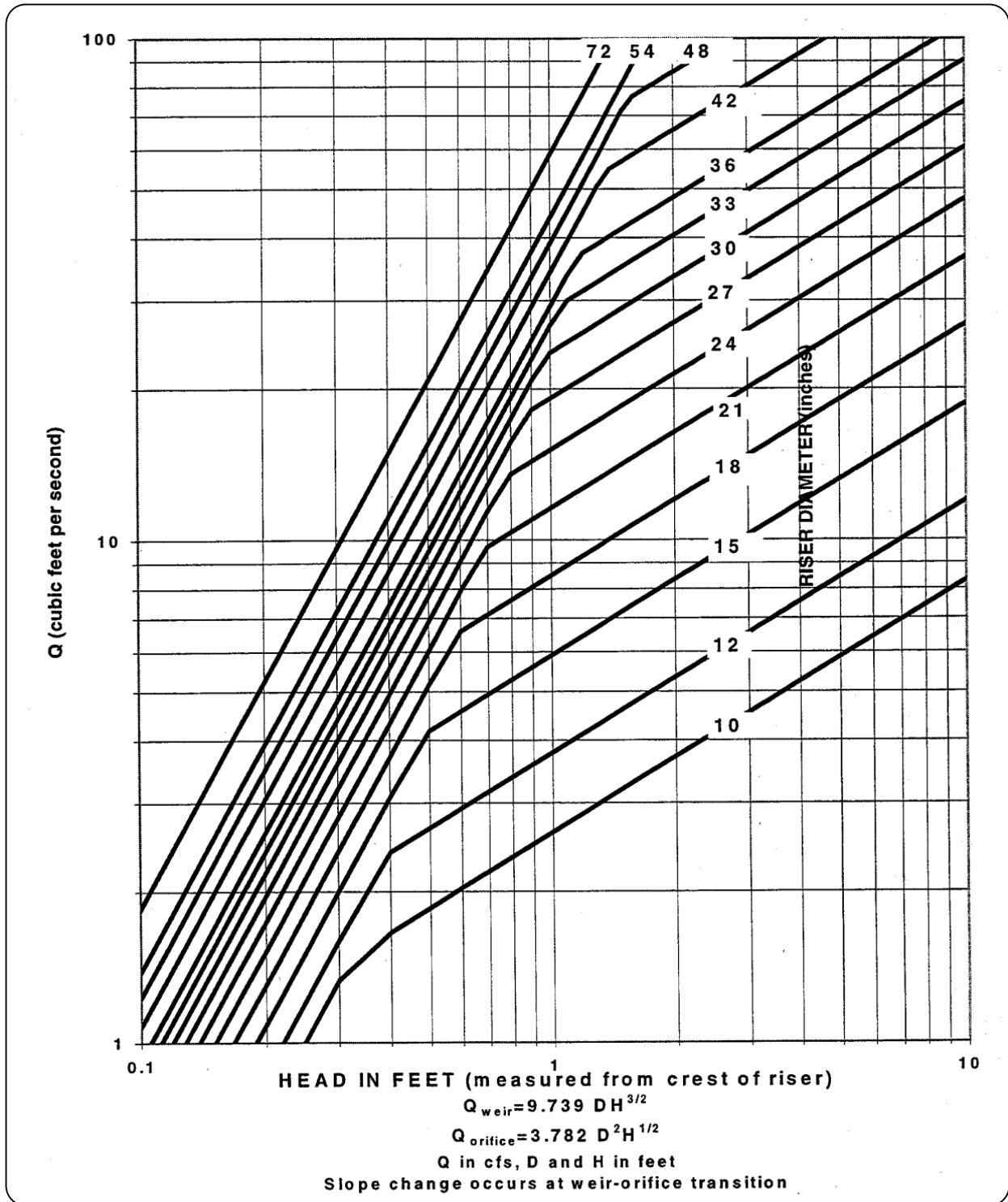


Figure 2 - 34. Riser Inflow Curves



### **3.2.19 BMP C250: Construction Stormwater Chemical Treatment**

#### **3.2.19.1 Purpose**

This BMP applies when using stormwater chemicals in batch treatment or flow-through treatment.

Turbidity is difficult to control once fine particles are suspended in stormwater runoff from a construction site. Sedimentation ponds are effective at removing larger particulate matter by gravity settling, but are ineffective at removing smaller particulates such as clay and fine silt. Traditional erosion and sediment control BMPs may not be adequate to ensure compliance with the water quality standards for turbidity in the receiving water.

#### **3.2.19.2 Conditions of Use**

**Formal written approval from Ecology and the City is required for the use of chemical treatment regardless of site size. When approved, include the chemical treatment system in the Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan (SWPPP).**

#### **3.2.19.3 Design and Installation Specifications**

See Appendix B for background information on chemical treatment.

#### ***Criteria for Chemical Treatment Product Use***

Chemically treated stormwater discharged from construction sites must be nontoxic to aquatic organisms. The Chemical Technology Assessment Protocol (CTAPE) must be used to evaluate chemicals proposed for stormwater treatment. **Only chemicals approved by Ecology under the CTAPE may be used for stormwater treatment.** The approved chemicals, their allowable application techniques (batch treatment or flow-through treatment), allowable application rates, and conditions of use can be found at the Department of Ecology Emerging Technologies website: <http://www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wq/stormwater/newtech/index.html>

#### ***Treatment System Design Considerations***

The design and operation of a chemical treatment system should take into consideration the factors that determine optimum, cost-effective performance. It is important to recognize the following:

- Only Ecology approved chemicals may be used and must follow approved dose rates.
- The pH of the stormwater must be in the proper range for the polymers to be effective, which is typically 6.5 to 8.5.
- The coagulant must be mixed rapidly into the water to ensure proper dispersion.
- A flocculation step is important to increase the rate of settling, to produce the lowest turbidity, and to keep the dosage rate as low as possible.
- Too little energy input into the water during the flocculation phase results in flow that are too small and/or insufficiently dense. Too much energy can rapidly destroy floc as it is formed.
- Care must be taken in the design of the withdrawal system to minimize outflow velocities and to prevent floc discharge. Discharge from a batch treatment system should be directed through a physical filter such as a vegetated swale that would catch any unintended floc discharge. Currently, flow-through systems always discharge through the chemically enhanced sand filtration system.

- System discharge rates must take into account downstream conveyance integrity.

### ***Polymer Batch Treatment Process Description***

A batch chemical treatment system consists of the stormwater collection system (either temporary diversion or the permanent site drainage system), an untreated stormwater storage pond, pumps, a chemical feed system, treatment cells, and interconnecting piping.

The batch treatment system shall use a minimum of two lined treatment cells in addition to the untreated stormwater storage pond. Multiple treatment cells allow for clarification of treated water while other cells are being filled or emptied. Treatment cells may be ponds or tanks. Ponds with constructed earthen embankments greater than six feet high require special engineering analyses.

Stormwater is collected at interception point(s) on the site and is diverted by gravity or by pumping to an untreated stormwater storage pond or other untreated stormwater holding area. The stormwater is stored until treatment occurs. It is important that the holding pond be large enough to provide adequate storage.

The first step in the treatment sequence is to check the pH of the stormwater in the untreated stormwater storage pond. The pH is adjusted by the application of carbon dioxide or a base until the stormwater in the storage pond is within the desired pH range, 6.5 to 8.5. When used, carbon dioxide is added immediately downstream of the transfer pump. Typically sodium bicarbonate (baking soda) is used as a base, although other bases may be used. When needed, base is added directly to the untreated stormwater storage pond. The stormwater is recirculated with the treatment pump to provide mixing in the storage pond. Initial pH adjustments should be based on daily bench tests. Further, pH adjustments can be made at any point in the process.

Once the stormwater is within the desired pH range (dependant on polymer being used), the stormwater is pumped from the untreated stormwater storage pond to a treatment cell as polymer is added. The polymer is added upstream of the pump to facilitate rapid mixing.

After polymer addition, the water is kept in a lined treatment cell for clarification of the sediment-floc. In a batch mode process, clarification typically takes from 30 minutes to several hours. Prior to discharge samples are withdrawn for analysis of pH and turbidity. If both are acceptable, the treated water is discharged.

Several configurations have been developed to withdraw treated water from the treatment cell. The original configuration is a device that withdraws the treated water from just beneath the water surface using a float with adjustable struts that prevent the float from settling on the cell bottom (Figure 2 - 35). This reduces the possibility of picking up sediment-floc from the bottom of the pond. The struts are usually set at a minimum clearance of about 12 inches; that is, the float will come within 12 inches of the bottom of the cell. Other systems have used vertical guides or cables which constrain the float, allowing it to drift up and down with the water level. More recent designs have an H-shaped array of pipes, set on the horizontal.



**Figure 2 - 35. Floating Platform with Struts**

This scheme provides for withdrawal from four points rather than one. This configuration reduces the likelihood of sucking settled solids from the bottom. It also reduces the tendency for a vortex to form. Inlet diffusers - long floating or fixed pipes with many small holes in them - are also an option.

Safety is a primary concern. Design should consider the hazards associated with operations, such as sampling. Facilities should be designed to reduce slip hazards and drowning. Tanks and ponds should have life rings, ladder, or steps extending from the bottom to the top.

### ***Polymer Flow-Through Treatment Process Description***

At a minimum, a flow-through chemical treatment system consists of the stormwater collection system (either temporary diversion or the permanent site drainage system), an untreated stormwater storage pond, and the chemically enhanced sand filtration system.

Stormwater is collected at interception point(s) on the site and is diverted by gravity or by pumping to an untreated stormwater storage pond or other untreated stormwater holding area. The stormwater is stored until treatment occurs. It is important that the holding pond be large enough to provide adequate storage.

Stormwater is then pumped from the untreated stormwater storage pond to the chemically enhanced sand filtration system where polymer is added. Adjustments to pH may be necessary before chemical addition. The sand filtration system continually monitors the stormwater for turbidity and pH. If the discharge water is ever out of an acceptable range for turbidity or pH, the water is recycled to the untreated stormwater pond where it can be retreated.

### **Equipment**

**For batch treatment and flow-through treatment**, the following equipment should be located in a lockable shed:

- The chemical injector
- Secondary non-corrosive containment for acid, caustic, buffering compound, and treatment chemical
- Emergency shower and eyewash
- Monitoring equipment

### **System Sizing**

Certain sites are required to implement flow control for the developed sites. These sites must also control stormwater release rates during construction. System sizing is dependent on flow control requirements.

#### ***Sizing Criteria for Batch Treatment Systems for Flow Control Exempt Water Bodies***

- The total volume of the untreated stormwater storage pond and treatment ponds or tanks must be large enough to treat the volume of stormwater that is produced during multiple day storm events. At a minimum, size the untreated storage pond to hold 1.5 times the runoff volume of the 10-year, 24-hour storm event. Provide bypass around the chemical treatment system to accommodate extreme storm events. Calculate runoff volumes using the methods in Volume 3, Chapter 3. Use worst-case land cover conditions (i.e., producing the most runoff) for analyses (in most cases, this would be the land cover conditions just prior to final landscaping).
- Primary settling should be encouraged in the untreated stormwater storage pond. A forebay with access for maintenance is beneficial.
- There are two opposing considerations in sizing the treatment cells. A larger cell is able to treat a larger volume of water each time a batch is processed. However, the larger the cell the longer the time is required to empty the cell. A larger cell may also be less effective at flocculation and therefore require a longer settling time. The simplest approach to sizing the treatment cell is to multiply the allowable discharge flowrate times the desired drawdown time. A 4-hour drawdown time allow one batch per cell per 8-hour work period, given 1 hour of flocculation followed by 2 hours of settling.
- If the discharge is directly to a lake, flow control exempt receiving water, or to an infiltration system, there is no discharge flow limit.
- Ponds sized for flow control water bodies must be sized according to the Sizing Criteria for Flow Control Water Bodies below. If the sizing criteria shows a smaller pond size than required for Sizing Criteria for Flow Control Water Bodies, use the larger pond size.

#### ***Sizing Criteria for Flow-Through Treatment for Flow Control Exempt Water Bodies:***

- When sizing storage ponds or tanks for flow-through systems for flow control exempt water bodies, the treatment system capacity should be a factor. The untreated stormwater storage pond or tank should be sized to hold 1.5 times the runoff volume of the 10-year, 24-hour storm event minus the treatment system flowrate for an 8-hour period. For a chitosan-enhanced sand filtration system, the treatment system flowrate should be sized using a hydraulic loading rate between 6-8 gpm/ft<sup>2</sup>. Other hydraulic loading rates may be appropriate for other systems. Bypass should be provided around

the chemical treatment system to accommodate extreme storms. Runoff volume shall be calculated using the methods presented in Volume 3. Worst-case land cover conditions (i.e., producing the most runoff) should be used for analyses (in most cases, this would be the land cover conditions just prior to final landscaping).

### **Sizing Criteria for Flow Control Water Bodies:**

- Sites that must implement flow control for the developed site condition must also control stormwater release rates during construction. Construction site stormwater discharges shall not exceed the discharge durations of the predeveloped condition for the range of predeveloped discharge rates from  $\frac{1}{2}$  of the 2-year flow through the 10-year flow as predicted by WWHM. The predeveloped condition to be matched shall be the land cover condition immediately prior to the development project. This restriction on release rates can affect the size of the storage pond and treatment cells.
- The following is how WWHM can be used to determine the release rates from the chemical treatment systems:
  1. Determine the predeveloped flow durations to be matched by entering the land use area under the “Predeveloped” scenario in WWHM. The default flow range is from  $\frac{1}{2}$  of the 2-year flow through the 10-year flow.
  2. Enter the post developed land use area in the “Developed Unmitigated” scenario in WWHM.
  3. Copy the land use information for the “Developed Unmitigated” to “Developed Mitigated” scenario.
  4. While in the “Developed Mitigated” scenario, add a pond element under the basin element containing the post-developed land use areas. This pond element represents information on the available untreated stormwater storage and discharge from the chemical treatment system. In cases where the discharge from the chemical treatment is controlled by a pump, a stage/storage/discharge (SSD) table representing the pond must be generated outside WWHM and imported into WWHM. WWHM can route the runoff from the post-developed condition through this SSD table (the pond) and determine compliance with the flow duration standard. This would be an iterative design procedure where if the initial SSD table proved to be inadequate, the designer would have to modify the SSD table outside WWHM and reimport in WWHM and route the runoff through it again. The iteration will continue until a pond that complies with the flow duration standard is correctly sized.

#### Notes on SSD table characteristics:

- The pump discharge rate would likely be initially set at just below  $\frac{1}{2}$  of the 2-year flow from the pre-developed condition. As runoff coming into the untreated stormwater storage pond increases and the available untreated stormwater storage volume gets used up, it would be necessary to increase the pump discharge rate above  $\frac{1}{2}$  of the 2-year. The increase(s) above  $\frac{1}{2}$  of the 2-year must be such that they provide some relief to the untreated stormwater storage needs but at the same time will not cause violations of the flow

duration standard at the higher flows. The final design SSD table will identify the appropriate pumping rates and the corresponding stage and storages.

- When building such a flow control system, the design must ensure that any automatic adjustments to the pumping rates will be as a result of the changes to the available storage in accordance with the final design SSD table.
- It should be noted that the above procedures would be used to meet the flow control requirements. The chemical treatment system must be able to meet the runoff treatment requirements. It is likely that the discharge flowrate of ½ of the 2-year or more may exceed the treatment capacity of the system. If that is the case, the untreated stormwater discharge rate(s) (i.e., influent to the treatment system) must be reduced to allow proper treatment. Any reduction in the flows will likely result in the need for a larger untreated stormwater storage volume.
- If the discharge is to a municipal storm drainage system, the allowable discharge rate may be limited by the capacity of the public system. It may be necessary to clean the municipal storm drainage system prior to the start of the discharge to prevent scouring solids from the drainage system. If the municipal storm drainage system discharges to a water body that is not flow control exempt, the project site is subject to flow control requirements.
- If system design does not allow you to discharge at the slower rates as described above and if the site had a retention or detention pond that will serve the planned development, the discharge from the treatment system may be directed to the permanent retention/detention pond to comply with the flow control requirement. In this case, the untreated stormwater storage pond and treatment system will be sized according to the sizing criteria for flow-through system for flow control exempt water bodies described earlier except all discharge (water passing through the treatment system and stormwater bypassing the treatment system) will be directed into the permanent retention/detention pond. If site constraints make locating the untreated stormwater storage pond difficult, the permanent retention/detention pond may be divided to serve as the untreated stormwater storage pond and the post-treatment flow control pond. A berm or barrier must be used in this case so the untreated water does not mix with the treated water. Both untreated stormwater storage requirements, and adequate post-treatment flow control must be achieved. The post-treatment flow control pond's revised dimensions must be entered into the WWHM and the WWHM must be run to confirm compliance with the flow control requirements.

#### **3.2.19.4 Monitoring**

Conduct the following monitoring. Record test results on a daily log kept on site. Additional testing may be required by the NPDES permit based on site conditions.

##### ***Operational Monitoring:***

- Total volume treated and discharged
- Flow must be continuously monitored and recorded at not greater than 15-minute intervals
- Type and amount of chemical used for pH adjustment, if any
- Quantity of chemical used for treatment
- Settling time

**Compliance Monitoring**

- Influent and effluent pH and turbidity must be continuously monitored and recorded at not greater than 15-minute intervals.
- pH and turbidity of the receiving water

**Biomonitoring**

- Treated stormwater must be non-toxic to aquatic organisms. Treated stormwater must be tested for aquatic toxicity or residual chemical content. Frequency of biomonitoring will be determined by Ecology.
- Residual chemical tests must be approved by Ecology prior to their use.
- If testing treated stormwater for aquatic toxicity, you must test for acute (lethal) toxicity. Bioassays shall be conducted by a laboratory accredited by Ecology, unless otherwise approved by Ecology. Acute toxicity tests shall be conducted per the CTAPE protocol.

**Discharge Compliance**

- **Prior to discharge, treated stormwater must be sampled and tested for compliance with pH and turbidity limits.** These limits may be established by the Construction Stormwater General Permit, or a site-specific discharge permit. Sampling and testing for other pollutants may also be necessary at some sites. pH must be within the range of 6.5 to 8.5 standard units and not cause a change in the pH of the receiving water of more than 0.2 standard units.
- Treated stormwater samples and measurements shall be taken from the discharge pipe or another location representative of the nature of the treated stormwater discharge. Samples used for determining compliance with the water quality standards in the receiving water shall not be taken from the treatment pond prior to decanting. Compliance with the water quality standards is determined in the receiving water.

**Operator Training**

- Each contractor who intends to use chemical treatment shall be trained by an experienced contractor on an active site.

**Standard BMPs**

- Surface stabilization BMPs should be implemented on site to prevent significant erosion. All sites shall use a truck wheel wash to prevent tracking of sediment off site.

**Sediment Removal and Disposal:**

- Remove sediment from the storage or treatment cells as necessary. Typically, sediment removal is required at least once during a wet season and at the decommissioning of the cells. Sediment remaining in the cells between batches may enhance the settling process and reduce the required chemical dosage.
- Sediment that is known to be non-toxic may be incorporated into the site away from drainages.

## **3.2.20 BMP C251: Construction Stormwater Filtration**

### **3.2.20.1 Purpose**

Filtration removes sediment from runoff originating from disturbed areas of the site.

### **3.2.20.2 Conditions of Use**

Traditional BMPs used to control soil erosion and sediment loss from sites under development may not be adequate to ensure compliance with the water quality standard for turbidity in the receiving water. Filtration may be used in conjunction with gravity settling to remove sediment as small as fine silt (0.5  $\mu\text{m}$ ). The reduction in turbidity will be dependent on the particle size distribution of the sediment in the stormwater. In some circumstances, sedimentation and filtration may achieve compliance with the water quality standard for turbidity.

The use of construction stormwater filtration does not require approval from Ecology as long as treatment chemicals are not used. Filtration in conjunction with polymer treatment requires testing under the Chemical Technology Assessment Protocol – Ecology (CTAPE) before it can be initiated. Approval from the appropriate regional Ecology office must be obtained at each site where polymers use is proposed prior to use. For more guidance on stormwater chemical treatment see BMP C250.

### **3.2.20.3 Background Information**

Filtration with sand media has been used for over a century to treat water and wastewater. The use of sand filtration for treatment of stormwater has developed recently, generally to treat runoff from streets, parking lots, and residential areas. The application of filtration to construction stormwater is currently under development.

### **3.2.20.4 Design and Installation Specifications**

Two types of filtration systems may be applied to construction stormwater treatment: rapid and slow. Rapid sand filters are the typical system used for water and wastewater treatment. They can achieve relatively high hydraulic flow rates, on the order of 2 to 20 gpm/sf, because they have automatic backwash systems to remove accumulated solids. In contrast, slow sand filters have very low hydraulic rates, on the order of 0.02 gpm/sf, because they do not have backwash systems. To date, slow sand filtration has generally been used to treat stormwater. Slow sand filtration is mechanically simple in comparison to rapid sand filtration but requires a much larger filter area.

#### ***Filtration Equipment***

Sand media filters are available with automatic backwashing features that can filter to 50  $\mu\text{m}$  particle size. Screen or bag filters can filter down to 5  $\mu\text{m}$ . Fiber wound filters can remove particles down to 0.5  $\mu\text{m}$ . Filters should be sequenced from the largest to the smallest pore opening. Sediment removal efficiency will be related to particle size distribution in the stormwater.

#### ***Treatment Process Description***

Stormwater is collected at interception point(s) on the site and is diverted to an untreated stormwater sediment pond or tank for removal of large sediment and storage of the stormwater before it is treated by the filtration system. The stormwater is pumped from the trap, pond, or tank through the filtration system in a rapid sand filtration system. Slow sand filtration systems are designed as flow through systems using gravity.



### ***Sizing Criteria for Flow-Through Treatment Systems for Flow Control Exempt Water Bodies***

When sizing storage ponds or tanks for flow-through systems for flow control exempt water bodies, the treatment system capacity should be a factor. The untreated stormwater storage pond or tank should be sized to hold 1.5 times the runoff volume of the 10-year, 24-hour storm event minus the treatment system flowrate for an 8-hour period. For a chitosan-enhanced sand filtration system, the treatment flowrate should be sized using a hydraulic loading rate between 6-8 gpm/ft<sup>2</sup>. Other hydraulic loading rates may be more appropriate for other systems. Bypass should be provided around the chemical treatment system to accommodate extreme storms. Runoff volumes shall be calculated using the methods presented in Volume 3, Chapter 3. Worst-case conditions (i.e., producing the most runoff) should be used for analyses (most likely conditions present prior to final landscaping).

### ***Sizing Criteria for Flow Control Waters:***

Sites that must implement flow control for the developed site condition must also control stormwater release rates during construction. Construction site stormwater discharges shall not exceed the discharge durations of the pre-developed condition for the range of pre-developed discharge rates from 1/2 of the 2-year flow through the 10-year flow as predicted by WWHM. The pre-developed condition to be matched shall be the land cover condition immediately prior to the development project. This restriction on release rates will affect the size of the sediment pond, the filtration system, and the flow rate through the filter system.

The following is how WWHM can be used to determine the release rates from the filtration systems:

1. Determine the pre-developed flow durations to be matched by entering the land use area under the "Pre-developed" scenario in WWHM. The default flow range is from 1/2 of the 2-year flow through the 10-year flow.
2. Enter the post developed land use area in the "Developed Unmitigated" scenario in WWHM.
3. Copy the land use information from the "Developed Unmitigated" to "Developed Mitigated" scenario.
4. There are two possible ways to model stormwater filtration systems:
  - a. The stormwater filtration system uses a storage pond/tank and the discharge from this pond/tank is pumped to one or more filters. In-line filtration chemicals would be added to the flow right after the pond/tank and before the filter(s). Because the discharge is pumped, WWHM can't generate a stage/storage/discharge (SSD) table for this system. This system is modeled the same way as described in BMP C250 and is as follows:

While in the "Developed Mitigated" scenario, add a pond element under the basin element containing the post-developed land use areas. This pond element represents information on the available storage and discharge from the filtration system. In cases where the discharge from the filtration system is controlled by a pump, a stage/storage/discharge (SSD) table representing the pond must be generated outside WWHM and imported into WWHM. WWHM can route the runoff from the post-developed condition through this SSD

table (the pond) and determine compliance with the flow duration standard. This would be an iterative design procedure where if the initial SSD table proved to be out of compliance, the designer would have to modify the SSD table outside WWHM and re-import in WWHM and route the runoff through it again. The iteration will continue until a pond that enables compliance with the flow duration standard is designed.

#### Notes on SSD Table Characteristics

- The pump discharge rate would likely be initially set at just below  $\frac{1}{2}$  of the 2-year flow from the pre-developed condition. As runoff coming to the storage pond increases and the available storage volume gets used up, it would be necessary to increase the pump discharge rate above  $\frac{1}{2}$  of the 2-year. The increase(s) above  $\frac{1}{2}$  of the 2-year must be such that they provide some relief to the storage needs but at the same time they will not cause violations of the flow duration standard at the higher flows. The final design SSD table will identify the appropriate pumping rates and the corresponding stage and storages.
  - When building such a flow control system, the design must ensure that any automatic adjustments to the pumping rates will be as a result of changes to the available storage in accordance with the final design SSD table.
- b. The stormwater filtration system uses a storage pond/tank and the discharge from this pond/tank gravity flows to the filter. This is usually a slow sand filter system and it is possible to model it in WWHM as a Filter element or as a combination of Pond and Filter element placed in series. The stage/storage/discharge table(s) may then be generated within WWHM as follows:
- (i) While in the “Developed Mitigated” scenario, add a Filter element under the basin element containing the post-developed land use areas. The length and width of this filter element would have to be the same as the bottom length and width of the upstream storage pond/tank.
  - (ii) In cases where the length and width of the filter is not the same as those for the bottom of the upstream storage tank/pond, the treatment system may be modeled as a Pond element followed by a Filter element. By having these two elements, WWHM would then generate a SSD table for the storage pond which then gravity flows to the Filter element. The Filter element downstream of the storage pond would have a storage component through the media, and an overflow component for when the filtration capacity is exceeded.

WWHM can route the runoff from the post-developed condition through the treatment systems in 4b and determine compliance with the flow duration standard. This would be an iterative design procedure where if the initial sizing estimates for the treatment system proved to be inadequate, the designer would have to modify the system and route the runoff through it again. The iteration would continue until compliance with the flow duration standard is achieved.

5. It should be noted that the above procedures would be used to meet the flow control requirements. The filtration system must be able to meet the runoff treatment requirements. It

is likely that the discharge flow rate of  $\frac{1}{2}$  of the 2-year or more may exceed the treatment capacity of the system. If that is the case, the discharge rate(s) must be reduced to allow proper treatment. Any reduction in the flows would likely result in the need for a larger storage volume.

If the system does not allow you to discharge at the slower rate as described above and if the site has a retention or detention pond that will serve the planned development, the discharge from the treatment system may be directed to the permanent retention/detention pond to comply with the flow control requirements. In this case, the untreated stormwater storage pond and treatment system will be sized according to the sizing criteria for flow-through treatment systems for flow control exempt waterbodies except all discharges (water passing through the treatment system and stormwater bypassing the treatment system) will be directed into the permanent retention/detention pond. If site constraints make locating the untreated stormwater storage pond difficult, the permanent retention/detention pond may be divided to serve as the untreated stormwater discharge pond and the post-treatment flow control pond. A berm or barrier must be used in this case so the untreated water does not mix with the treated water. Both untreated stormwater storage requirements, and adequate post-treatment flow control must be achieved. The post-treatment flow control pond's revised dimensions must be entered into the WWHM and the WWHM must be run to confirm compliance with the flow control requirements.

### **3.2.20.5 Maintenance Standards**

Rapid sand filters typically have automatic backwash systems that are triggered by a pre-set pressure drop across the filter. If the backwash water volume is not large or substantially more turbid than the stormwater stored in the holding pond or tank, backwash return to the pond or tank may be appropriate. However, land application or another means of treatment and disposal may be necessary.

- Clean and/or replace screen, bag, and fiber filters when they become clogged.
- Remove sediment from the storage and/or treatment ponds as necessary. Typically, sediment removal is required once or twice during a wet season and at the decommissioning of the ponds.

### **3.2.21 BMP C252: High pH Neutralization using CO<sub>2</sub>**

#### **3.2.21.1 Description**

When pH levels in stormwater rise above 8.5 it is necessary to lower the pH levels to the acceptable range of 6.5 to 8.5, this process is called pH neutralization. pH neutralization involves the use of solid or compressed carbon dioxide gas in water requiring neutralization. Neutralized stormwater may be discharged to surface waters under the General Construction NPDES permit but neutralized process wastewater must be managed to prevent discharge to surface waters. Process wastewater includes wastewaters such as concrete truck wash-out, hydro-demolition, or saw-cutting slurry.

#### ***Reason for pH neutralization***

A pH level range of 6.5 to 8.5 is typical for most natural watercourses, and this neutral pH is required for the survival of aquatic organisms. Should the pH rise or drop out of this range, fish and other aquatic organisms may become stressed and may die.

Calcium hardness can contribute to high pH values and cause toxicity that is associated with high pH conditions. A high level of calcium hardness in waters of the state is not allowed.

The water quality standard for pH in Washington State is in the range of 6.5 to 8.5.

Groundwater standard for calcium and other dissolved solids in Washington State is less than 500 mg/l.

#### ***Causes of high pH***

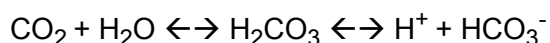
High pH at construction sites is most commonly caused by the contact of stormwater with poured or recycled concrete, cement, mortars, and other Portland cement or lime-containing construction materials. (See BMP C151: Concrete Handling for more information on concrete handling procedures). The principal caustic agent in cement is calcium hydroxide (free lime).

#### ***Advantages of CO<sub>2</sub> Sparging***

- Rapidly neutralizes high pH water.
- Cost effective and safer to handle than acid compounds.
- CO<sub>2</sub> is self-buffering. It is difficult to overdose and create harmfully low pH levels.
- Material is readily available.

#### ***The Chemical Process***

When carbon dioxide (CO<sub>2</sub>) is added to water (H<sub>2</sub>O), carbonic acid (H<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub>) is formed which can further dissociate into a proton (H<sup>+</sup>) and a bicarbonate anion (HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup>) as shown below:



The free proton is a weak acid that can lower the pH.

Water temperature has an effect on the reaction as well. The colder the water temperature is the slower the reaction occurs and the warmer the water temperature is the quicker the reaction occurs. Most construction applications in Washington State have water temperatures in the 50°F or higher range so the reaction is almost simultaneous.

### 3.2.21.2 Treatment Procedures

High pH water may be treated using continuous treatment, continuous discharge systems. These manufactured systems continuously monitor influent and effluent pH to ensure that pH values are within an acceptable range before being discharged. All systems must have fail safe automatic shut off switches in the event that pH is not within the acceptable discharge range. Only trained operators may operate manufactured systems. System manufacturers often provide trained operators or training on their devices.

The following procedure may be used when not using a continuous discharge system:

- Prior to treatment, the appropriate jurisdiction should be notified in accordance with the regulations set by the jurisdiction.
- Every effort should be made to isolate the potential high pH water in order to treat it separately from other stormwater onsite.
- Water should be stored in an acceptable storage facility, detention pond, or containment cell prior to treatment.
- Transfer water to be treated to the treatment structure. Ensure that treatment structure size is sufficient to hold the amount of water that is to be treated. Do not fill tank completely, allow at least 2 feet of freeboard.
- The operator samples the water for pH and notes the clarity of the water. As a rule of thumb, less CO<sub>2</sub> is necessary for clearer water. This information should be recorded.
- In the pH adjustment structure, add CO<sub>2</sub> until the pH falls in the range of 6.9-7.1. Remember that pH water quality standards apply so adjusting pH to within 0.2 pH units of receiving water (background pH) is recommended. It is unlikely that pH can be adjusted to within 0.2 pH units using dry ice. Compressed carbon dioxide gas should be introduced to the water using a carbon dioxide diffuser located near the bottom of the tank, this will allow carbon dioxide to bubble up through the water and diffuse more evenly.
- Slowly release the water to discharge making sure water does not get stirred up in the process. Release about 80% of the water from the structure leaving any sludge behind.
- Discharge treated water through a pond or drainage system.
- Excess sludge needs to be disposed of properly as concrete waste. If several batches of water are undergoing pH treatment, sludge can be left in treatment structure for the next batch treatment. Dispose of sludge when it fills 50% of tank volume.

Sites that must implement flow control for the developed site must also control stormwater release rates during construction. All treated stormwater must go through a flow control facility before being released to surface waters which require flow control.

### 3.2.21.3 Safety and Materials Handling

- All equipment should be handled in accordance with OSHA rules and regulations.
- Follow manufacturer guidelines for materials handling.

### 3.2.21.4 Operator Records

Each operator should provide:

- A diagram of the monitoring and treatment equipment
- A description of the pumping rates and capacity the treatment equipment is capable of treating.

Each operator should keep a written record of the following:

- Client name and phone number
- Date of treatment
- Weather conditions
- Project name and location
- Volume of water treated
- pH of untreated water
- Amount of CO<sub>2</sub> needed to adjust water to a pH range of 6.9-7.1
- pH of treated water
- Discharge point location and description

A copy of this record should be given to the client/contractor who should retain the record for three years.

### **3.2.22 BMP C253: pH Control for High pH Water**

#### **3.2.22.1 Description**

When pH levels in stormwater rise above 8.5 it is necessary to lower the pH levels to the acceptable range of 6.5 to 8.5, this process is called pH neutralization. Stormwater with pH levels exceeding water quality standards may be treated by infiltration, dispersion in vegetation or compost, pumping to a sanitary sewer, disposal at a permitted concrete batch plant with pH neutralization capabilities, or carbon dioxide sparging. BMP C252 provides guidance for carbon dioxide sparging.

#### ***Reason for pH neutralization***

A pH level between 6.5 and 8.5 is typical for most natural watercourses, and this pH range is required for the survival of aquatic organisms. Should the pH rise or drop out of this range, fish and other aquatic organisms may become stressed and may die.

#### ***Causes of high pH***

High pH levels at construction sites are most commonly caused by the contact of stormwater with poured or recycled concrete, cement, mortars, and other Portland cement or lime-containing construction materials. (See BMP C151: Concrete Handling for more information on concrete handling procedures). The principal caustic agent in cement is calcium hydroxide (free lime).

#### **3.2.22.2 Disposal Methods**

##### ***Infiltration***

- Infiltration is only allowed if soil type allows all water to infiltrate (no surface runoff) without causing or contributing to a violation of surface or groundwater quality standards.
- Infiltration techniques should be consistent with Volume 5, Chapter 5.

##### ***Dispersion***

- Use BMP L614 Full Dispersion

##### ***Sanitary Sewer Disposal***

- A Special Approved Discharge (SAD) permit will be required for discharge to the sanitary sewer. Contact Source Control at 253.591.5588 for information on the SAD permit.

##### ***Concrete Batch Plant Disposal***

- Only permitted facilities may accept high pH water.
- Facility should be contacted before treatment to ensure they can accept the high pH water.

##### ***Stormwater Discharge***

Any pH treatment options that generate treated water that must be discharged off site are subject to flow control requirements. Sites that must implement flow control for the developed site must also control stormwater release rates during construction. All treated stormwater must go through a flow control facility before being released to surface waters which require flow control.

## **Appendix A Standard Notes for Temporary Erosion and Sedimentation Control Plans**

The following standard notes shall be included on project drawings for projects exceeding the thresholds for a short form SWPPP and are recommended to be included on drawings for all projects. Plans shall identify the name and phone number of the person or firm responsible for the preparation and maintenance of the erosion control plan.

### ***Standard TESC Notes***

1. The implementation of these TESC plans and the construction, maintenance, replacement, and upgrading of TESC facilities is the responsibility of the applicant/contractor until all construction is completed and approved, vegetation/landscaping is established and the entire site is stabilized.
2. The boundaries of the clearing limits shown on this plan shall be clearly flagged in the field prior to construction. During the construction period, no disturbance beyond the flagged clearing limits shall be permitted. The flagging shall be maintained by the applicant/contractor for the duration of construction.
3. The TESC facilities shown on this plan shall be constructed prior to and/or in conjunction with all clearing and grading activities, and in such a manner as to ensure that sediment and sediment laden water do not enter the drainage system or roadways, or violate applicable water standards.
4. The TESC facilities shown on this plan are the minimum requirements for anticipated site conditions. During the construction period, TESC facilities shall be upgraded as needed for unexpected storm events and to ensure that sediment and sediment-laden water do not leave the site.
5. The TESC facilities shall be inspected daily by the applicant/contractor and maintained as necessary to ensure their continued function.
6. The TESC facilities on inactive sites shall be inspected and maintained a minimum of once a month or within the 48 hours following a major storm event or as necessary to ensure their continued function.
7. At no time shall more than one foot of sediment be allowed to accumulate within a catch basin sediment trap.
8. All catch basins and conveyance lines shall be cleaned prior to paving. The cleaning operation shall not flush sediment-laden water into the downstream system.
9. Stabilized construction entrances shall be installed at the beginning of construction and maintained for the duration of the project. Additional measures may be required to ensure that all paved areas are kept clean for the duration of the project.



## **Appendix B Construction SWPPP Short Form**

Projects falling within the thresholds listed below may use this short form instead of preparing a formal Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan (SWPPP). If your project meets the following thresholds and includes or may impact a critical area, please contact the City to determine if the SWPPP short form may be used.

The short form may be used if any of the following criteria are met:

- Add or replace between 2,000 and 5,000 square feet of impervious surface.
- Clear or disturb between 7,000 square feet and 1 acre of land.
- Grade/fill 50-499 cubic yards.

If project quantities exceed any of the above thresholds, prepare a formal Construction SWPPP as described in Chapter 2 of Volume 2.

# City of Tacoma

## Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan Short Form

Project Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Address: \_\_\_\_\_

Contact/Owner: \_\_\_\_\_ Phone: \_\_\_\_\_

E-mail: \_\_\_\_\_

Erosion Control Supervisor: \_\_\_\_\_

Phone: \_\_\_\_\_ Cell: \_\_\_\_\_ Pager: \_\_\_\_\_

Emergency (After hour) contact: \_\_\_\_\_ Phone: \_\_\_\_\_

Permit No: \_\_\_\_\_

Parcel No.: \_\_\_\_\_

Date Submitted: \_\_\_\_\_

### **Required Submittals**

A Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan consists of both a project narrative and a site plan. The project narrative describes the existing conditions on the site, the proposed conditions, and how construction site runoff will be managed until final site stabilization. Any additional relevant information should be included in the project narrative.

The site plan is a drawing which shows the location of the proposed BMPs. The Site Plan is described in Section 2 below.

The information required in Section 1 below is the project narrative. All Best Management Practices (BMPs) that will be utilized onsite shall be printed (or provided electronically - depending upon permit submittal method) and included as part of the project narrative. If additional best management practices beyond those included in the SWMM will be used, a narrative and appropriate details describing the BMP (its function, installation method, and maintenance activities) will be required.

The City of Tacoma govMe site (<http://www.govme.org>) may be used to find much of the information needed to complete this form, such as adjacent areas, topography, critical areas, the downstream drainage path, and information concerning onsite features.

**1. Project Narrative**

**NOTE:** From October 1 thru April 30, clearing, grading, and other soil disturbing activities shall only be permitted by special authorization from the City of Tacoma Building and Land Use Services (BLUS). (TMC 2.02.370)

**A. Project Description (Check all boxes and complete all text fields that apply)**

- New Structure/Building   
  Building Addition   
  Grading/Excavation   
  Paving  
 Utilities   
  Other: \_\_\_\_\_

1. Total project area \_\_\_\_\_ (square feet)
2. Total proposed impervious area \_\_\_\_\_ (square feet)
3. Total existing impervious area \_\_\_\_\_ (square feet)
4. Total proposed area to be disturbed \_\_\_\_\_ (square feet)
5. Total volumes of proposed cuts/fill \_\_\_\_\_ (cubic yards)

Additional Project Information: \_\_\_\_\_

---



---



---

**B. Existing Site Conditions (Check all boxes and complete all text fields that apply)**

1. Describe the existing conditions on the site. (Check all that apply)
  - Forest     Pasture/prairie grass     Pavement     Landscaping     Brush
  - Trees     Other \_\_\_\_\_
2. Describe how surface water (stormwater) drainage flows across/from the site. (Check all that apply)
  - Sheet Flow     Gutter     Catch Basin     Ditch/Swale     Storm sewer
  - Stream     Other \_\_\_\_\_
3. Describe any unusual site condition(s) or other features of note.
  - Steep Grades     Large depression     Underground tanks     Springs
  - Easements     Existing Structures     Existing Utilities
  - Other \_\_\_\_\_
4. Is the site located within the South Tacoma Groundwater Protection District?
  - Yes     No

**C. Adjacent Areas (Check all boxes and complete all text fields that apply)**

1. Check any adjacent areas that may be affected by site disturbance and fully describe in item 2 below:

Streams\*     Lakes\*     Wetlands\*     Steep Slopes\*

Residential Areas     Roads     Ditches, pipes, culverts

Other \_\_\_\_\_

*\* If site is on or adjacent to a critical area, the City of Tacoma may require additional information, engineering, and other permits to be submitted prior to permit approval.*

2. Describe how and where surface water enters the site from upstream properties:

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

3. Describe the downstream drainage path leading from the site to the receiving body of water. (Minimum distance of ¼-mile (1320 feet)) {E.g. water flows from site, into curb-line to catch basin at intersection of X and Y streets. A 10-inch pipe system conveys water another 1000 feet to a ravine/wetland.} Include information on the condition of the drainage structures.

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

**D. Soils Information**

If the project is proposing construction on or near slopes 15% or greater or proposing to infiltrate construction site stormwater runoff, the City may require that additional soils information be presented before allowing construction on these sites.

1. Does the project propose construction on or near slopes 15% or greater?.

Yes         No

2. Does the project propose to infiltrate construction stormwater?

Yes         No

**E. 12 Elements of a Construction SWPPP**

The following 12 elements are required for each SWPPP. If an element does not apply to the project site describe why the element does not apply. Table 2 - 13 contains a matrix for BMPs that can be used to meet the requirements of the 12 elements. Mark those BMPs that will be used on the matrix and show the location of the proposed BMP on the site plan as applicable. Only those erosion and sediment control techniques most pertinent to small construction sites are included here. More detailed information on construction BMPs can be found in Volume 2 of the City of Tacoma Surface Water Management Manual. The BMP numbers referenced are BMPs located in the City of Tacoma SWMM. Print those BMPs that will be used for the project and include as part of this Construction SWPPP. BMPs that may be used if needed can be noted as being contingent in the event additional erosion control is required. Describe any additional BMPs that will be utilized on the site and add them to the Short Form SWPPP.

For phased construction plans, clearly indicate erosion control methods to be used for each phase of construction.

*Element #1 – Preserve Vegetation and Mark Clearing Limits*

Retain the duff layer, native topsoil, and natural vegetation in an undisturbed state to the maximum extent practicable. If it is not practicable to retain the duff layer in place, it should be stockpiled onsite, covered to prevent erosion, and replaced immediately upon completion of the ground-disturbing activity.

All construction projects must clearly mark any clearing limits, sensitive areas and their buffers, and any trees that will be preserved prior to beginning any land disturbing activities, including clearing and grading. Clearly mark the limits both in the field and on the plans. Limits shall be marked in such a way that any trees or vegetation to remain will not be harmed.

The BMP(s) being proposed to meet this element are: \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Or

This element is not required for this project because: \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

*Element #2 – Establish Construction Access*

All construction projects subject to vehicular traffic shall provide a means of preventing vehicle “tracking” of soil from the site onto City streets or neighboring properties. Limit vehicle ingress and egress to one route if possible. All access points shall be stabilized with a rock pad construction entrance per BMP C105 or other City of Tacoma approved BMP. The applicant should consider placing the entrance in the area for future driveway(s), as it may be possible to

use the rock as a driveway base material. The entrance(s) must be inspected weekly, at a minimum, to ensure no excess sediment buildup or missing rock.

If sediment is tracked offsite, it shall be swept or shoveled from the paved surface immediately. Keep streets clean at all times. Street washing for sediment removal is not allowed as it can transport sediment to downstream water courses and clog the downstream stormwater system.

The proposed construction entrance must be identified on the site plan.

The BMP(s) being proposed to meet this element are: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

Or

This element is not required for this project because: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

*Element #3 – Control Flow Rates*

Protect properties and waterways downstream of the development site from erosion due to increases in volume, velocity, and peak flow of stormwater runoff from the project site.

Permanent infiltration facilities shall not be used for flow control during construction unless specifically approved in writing by Environmental Services. Sediment traps can provide flow control for small sites by allowing water to pool and allowing sediment to settle out of the water.

The BMP(s) being proposed to meet this element are: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

Or

This element is not required for this project because: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

*Element #4 – Install Sediment Controls*

Prior to leaving a construction site or discharging into an infiltration facility, surface water runoff from disturbed areas must pass through an appropriate sediment removal device. Sediment barriers are typically used to slow sheet flow of stormwater and allow the sediment to settle out behind the barrier.

Install/construct the sediment removal BMP before site grading.

The BMP(s) being proposed to meet this element are: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

Or

This element is not required for this project because: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

*Element #5 – Stabilize Soils*

Stabilize exposed and unworked soils by applying BMPs that protect the soils from raindrop impact, flowing water, and wind.

From October 1 through April 30, no soils shall remain exposed or unworked for more than 2 days. From May 1 to September 30, no soils shall remain exposed and unworked for more than 7 days. This applies to all soils on site whether at final grade or not.

The BMP(s) being proposed to meet this element are: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

Or

This element is not required for this project because: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

*Element #6 – Protect Slopes*

Protect slopes by diverting water at the top of the slope. Reduce slope velocities by minimizing the continuous length of the slope, which can be accomplished by terracing and roughening slope sides. Establishing vegetation on slopes will protect them as well.

The BMP(s) being proposed to meet this element are: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

Or

This element is not required for this project because: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

*Element #7 – Protect Drain Inlets*

Protect all storm drain inlets that are operable during construction so that stormwater runoff does not enter the conveyance system without first being filtered or treated to remove sediment. Install catch basin protection on all catch basins within 500 feet downstream of the project. The catch basin inlet protection shown in Figure 2-45 is the only catch basin protection allowed within the City right of way. Once the site is fully stabilized, catch basin protection must be removed.

The BMP(s) being proposed to meet this element are: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

Or

This element is not required for this project because: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_



*Element #8 – Stabilize Channels and Outlets*

Stabilize all temporary onsite conveyance channels. Provide stabilization to prevent erosion of outlets, adjacent stream banks, slopes, and downstream reaches at the outlets of conveyance systems.

The BMP(s) being proposed to meet this element are: \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Or

This element is not required for this project because: \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

*Element #9 – Control Pollutants*

Handle and dispose of all pollutants, including demolition debris and other solid wastes in a manner that does not cause contamination of the stormwater. Provide cover and containment for all chemicals, liquid products (including paint), petroleum products, and other materials. Handle all concrete and concrete waste appropriately. All discharges to the City sanitary sewer system require City approval, which may include a Special Approved Discharge (SAD) permit.

The BMP(s) being proposed to meet this element are: \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Or

This element is not required for this project because: \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

*Element #10 – Control Dewatering*

Clean, non-turbid dewatering water, such as groundwater, can be discharged to the stormwater system provided the dewatering flow does not cause erosion or flooding of receiving waters. All other water shall be discharged to the City sewer system.

All discharges to the City sewer system require City approval, which may include a Special Approved Discharge (SAD) permit. Dewatering water must be discharged through a stabilized channel to a sediment pond or trap.

The BMP(s) being proposed to meet this element are: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

Or

This element is not required for this project because: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

*Element #11 – Maintain BMPs*

Maintain and repair temporary erosion and sediment control BMPs as needed. Inspect all BMPs at least weekly and after every storm event.

Remove all temporary erosion and sediment control BMPs within 30 days after final site stabilization or if the BMP is no longer needed. Any trapped sediment should be removed or stabilized onsite. No sediment shall be discharged into the storm drainage system or natural conveyance systems.

The BMP(s) being proposed to meet this element are: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

Or

This element is not required for this project because: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

*Element #12 – Manage the Project*

Phase development projects in order to prevent soil erosion and the transport of sediment from the project site during construction.

Coordinate all work before initial construction with subcontractors and other utilities to ensure no areas are prematurely worked.

An Erosion Control Supervisor is required for all construction sites. The Erosion Control Supervisor is the party responsible for ensuring that the proposed erosion and sediment control BMPs are appropriate for the site and are functioning. They are also responsible for updating the SWPPP as necessary as site conditions warrant. They must be available 24 hours a day to ensure compliance.

The BMP(s) being proposed to meet this element are: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

Or

This element is not required for this project because: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

Construction Sequencing/Phasing

1. The standard construction sequence is as follows:

- Mark clearing/grading limits.
- Call Building Inspector to inspect clearing/grading limits.
- Install initial erosion control practices (construction entrance, silt fence, catch basin inserts).
- Contact Building Inspector to inspect initial erosion control practices.
- Clear, grade, and fill site as outlined in the site plan while implementing and maintaining temporary erosion and sediment control practices at the same time.
- Install proposed site improvements (impervious surface, landscaping, etc.).
- Contact Building Inspector for approval of permanent erosion protection and site grades.
- Remove erosion control methods as permitted by the Building Inspector and repair permanent erosion protection as necessary.
- Monitor and maintain permanent erosion protection until fully established.

List any changes from the standard construction sequence outlined above.

---

---

---

---

---

2. Construction phasing: If construction is going to occur in separate phases, describe:

---

---

---

---

---

Construction Schedule

1. Provide a proposed construction schedule (dates construction starts and ends, and dates for any construction phasing).

Start Date: \_\_\_\_\_ End Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Interim Phasing Dates: \_\_\_\_\_

Wet Season Construction Activities: *Wet season occurs from October 1 to April 30.*

Describe construction activities that will occur during this time period.

---

---

---

---

---

**NOTE:** Additional erosion control measures beyond those shown may be required to manage site runoff.

**Table 2 - 13: BMP Matrix for 12 Elements of SWPPP**

<b>Element #1: Preserve Vegetation and Mark Clearing Limits</b>		
BMP C101	Preserving Natural Vegetation	
BMP C102	Buffer Zones	
BMP C103	High Visibility Plastic and Wire Fence	
BMP C104	Stake and Wire Fence (Figure 2 - 38)	
<b>Element #2: Establish Construction Entrance</b>		
BMP C105	Stabilized Construction Entrance (Figure 2 - 37)	
BMP C106	Wheel Wash	
BMP C107	Construction Road/Parking Area Stabilization	
<b>Element #3: Control Flow Rates</b>		
BMP C240	Sediment Trap (Figure 2 - 43 and Figure 2 - 44)	
<b>Element #4: Install Sediment Controls</b>		
BMP C231	Brush Barrier	
BMP C232	Gravel Filter Berm	
BMP C233	Silt Fence (Figure 2 - 39)	
BMP C234	Vegetated Strip	
BMP C235	Straw Wattles (Figure 2 - 40)	
<b>Element #5: Stabilize Soils</b>		
BMP C120	Temporary and Permanent Seeding	
BMP C121	Mulching	
BMP C122	Nets and Blankets (Figure 2 - 46)	
BMP C123	Plastic Covering (Figure 2 - 49)	
BMP C124	Sodding	
BMP C125	Compost	
BMP C126	Topsoiling	
BMP C131	Gradient Terraces	
BMP C130	Surface Roughening	
BMP C140	Dust Control	
<b>Element #6: Protect Slopes</b>		
BMP C200	Interceptor Dike and Swale	
BMP C201	Grass-Lined Channels (Figure 2 - 45)	
BMP C204	Pipe Slope Drains (Figure 2 - 48)	
BMP C207	Check Dams	
<b>Element #7: Protect Drain Inlets</b>		
BMP C220	Storm Drain Inlet Protection (Figure 2 - 41 and Figure 2 - 42)	
<b>Element #8: Stabilize Channels and Outlets</b>		
BMP C202	Channel Lining (Figure 2 - 47)	

**Table 2 - 13: BMP Matrix for 12 Elements of SWPPP**

<b>Element #9: Control Pollutants</b>		
BMP C150	Materials On Hand	
BMP C151	Concrete Handling	
BMP C152	Sawcutting and Surfacing Pollution Prevention	
BMP C153	Materials, Delivery, Storage and Containment	
BMP C154	Concrete Washout Area	
<b>Element #10: Control Dewatering</b>		
SAD Permit from the City of Tacoma		
<b>Element #11: Maintain BMPs</b>		
<b>Element #12: Manage the Project</b>		
BMP C162	Scheduling	
BMP C180	Small Project Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention	

## 2. Site Plan (See Figure 2 - 36 for an Example)

Much of the information needed for developing a site plan is available on the City of Tacoma govMe website at <http://www.govme.org>.

### Onsite field verification of actual conditions is required.

A site plan, to scale, shall be included with this checklist that shows the following items:

- \_\_\_\_\_ a. Address, Parcel Number, Permit Number and Street names
- \_\_\_\_\_ b. North Arrow
- \_\_\_\_\_ c. Indicate boundaries of existing vegetation (e.g. tree lines, grassy areas, pasture areas, fields, etc.)
- \_\_\_\_\_ d. Identify any on-site or adjacent critical areas and associated buffers (e.g. wetlands, steep slopes, streams, etc.).
- \_\_\_\_\_ e. Show existing and proposed contours.
- \_\_\_\_\_ f. Delineate areas that are to be cleared and graded.
- \_\_\_\_\_ g. Show all cut and fill slopes, indicating top and bottom of slope catch lines
- \_\_\_\_\_ h. Show locations where upstream runoff enters the site and locations where runoff leaves the site.
- \_\_\_\_\_ i. Indicate existing surface water flow direction(s).
- \_\_\_\_\_ j. Label final grade contours and indicate proposed surface water flow direction and surface water conveyance systems (e.g. pipes, catch basins, ditches, etc.).
- \_\_\_\_\_ k. Show grades, dimensions, and direction of flow in all (existing and proposed) ditches, swales, culverts, and pipes.
- \_\_\_\_\_ l. Indicate locations and outlets of any dewatering systems (usually to sediment trap).
- \_\_\_\_\_ m. Identify and locate all erosion control techniques to be used during and after construction.
- \_\_\_\_\_ n. Finish floor elevations of all structures.

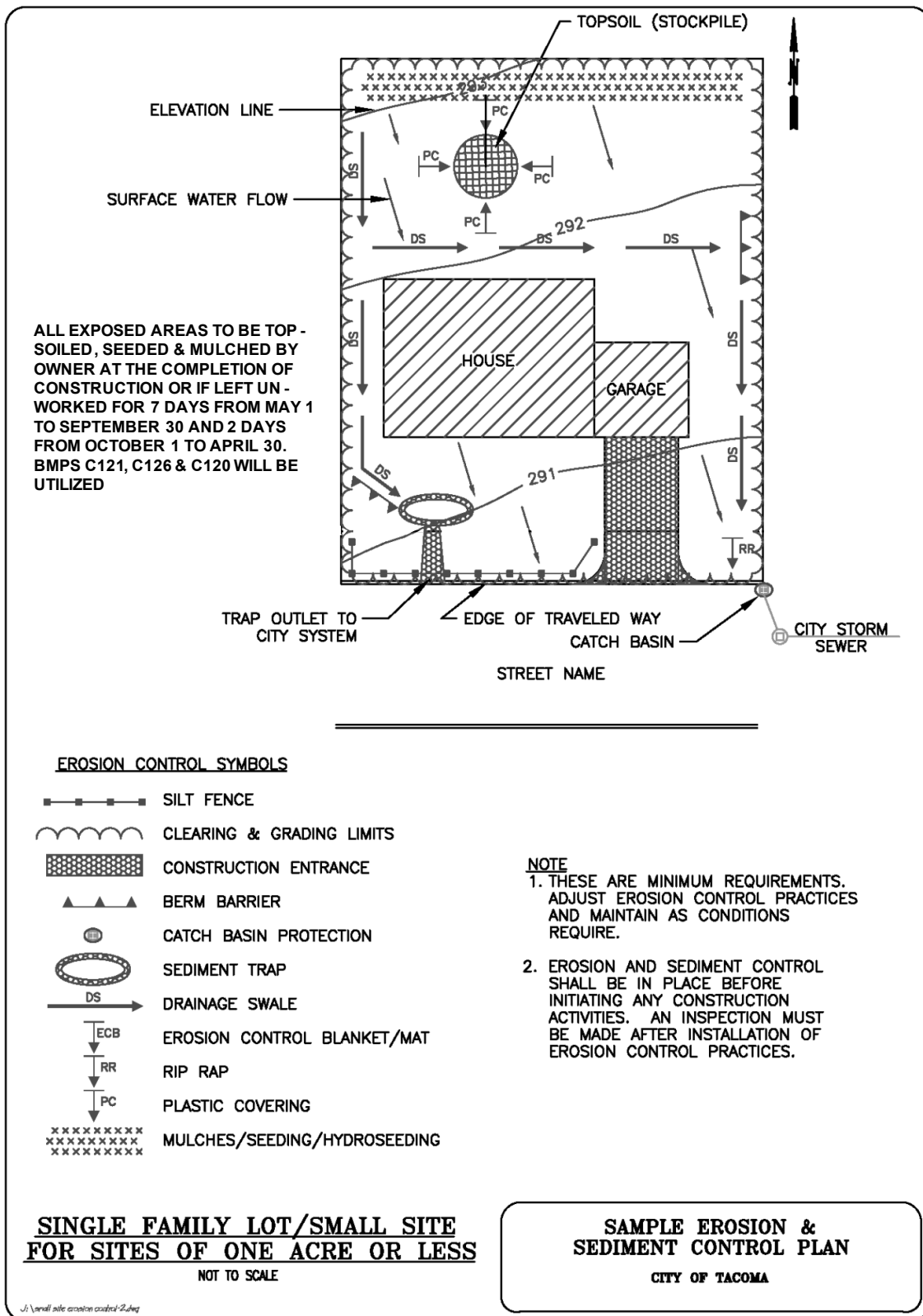


Figure 2 - 36. Sample Erosion and Sediment Control Plan



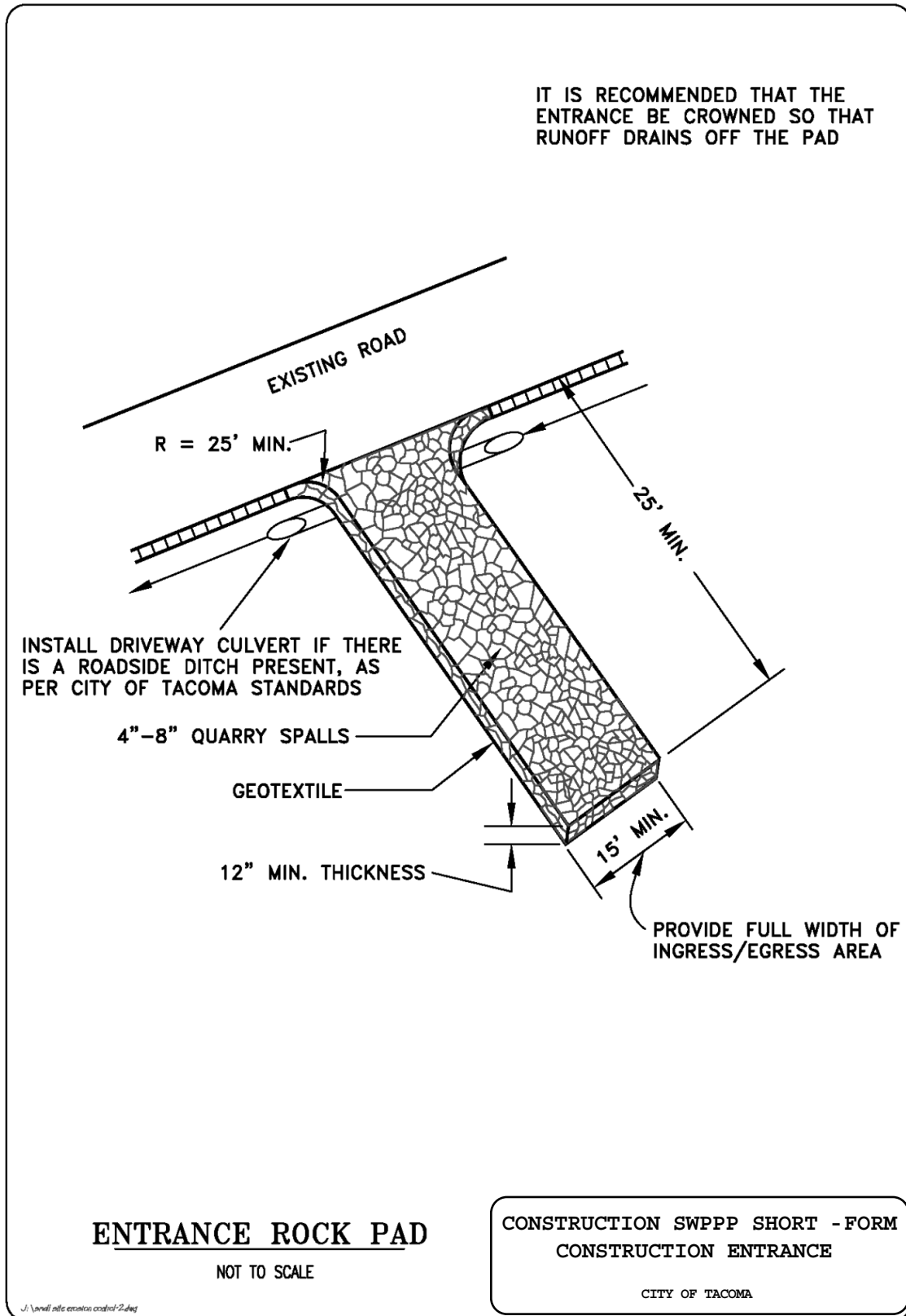
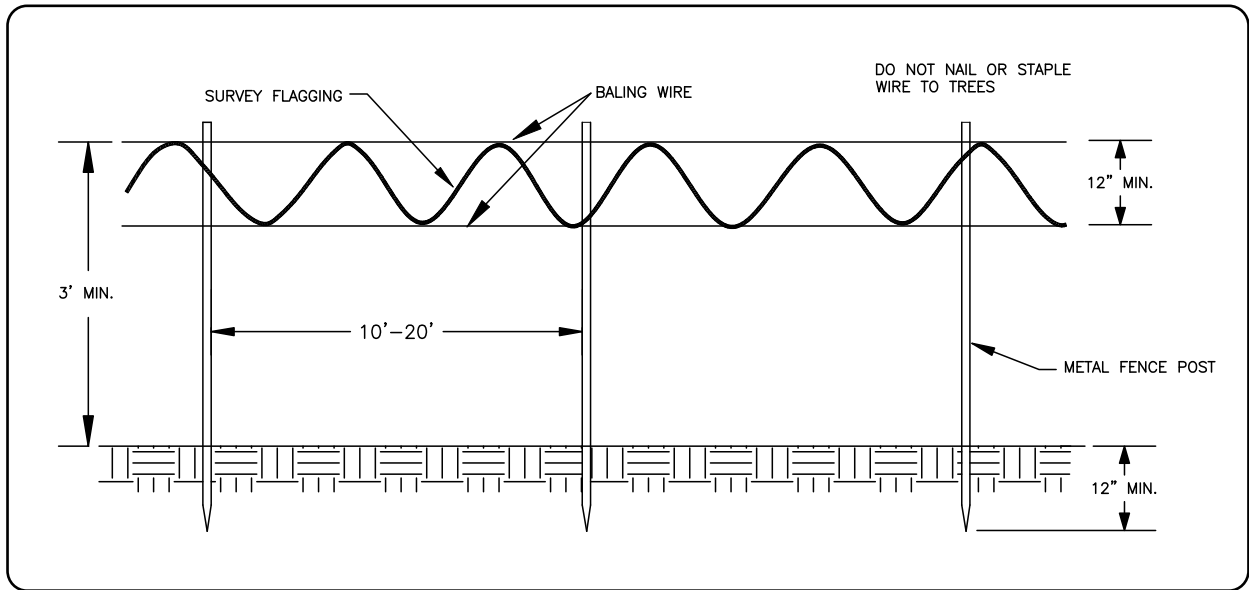


Figure 2 - 37. Construction Entrance



**Figure 2 - 38. Stake and Wire Fence**

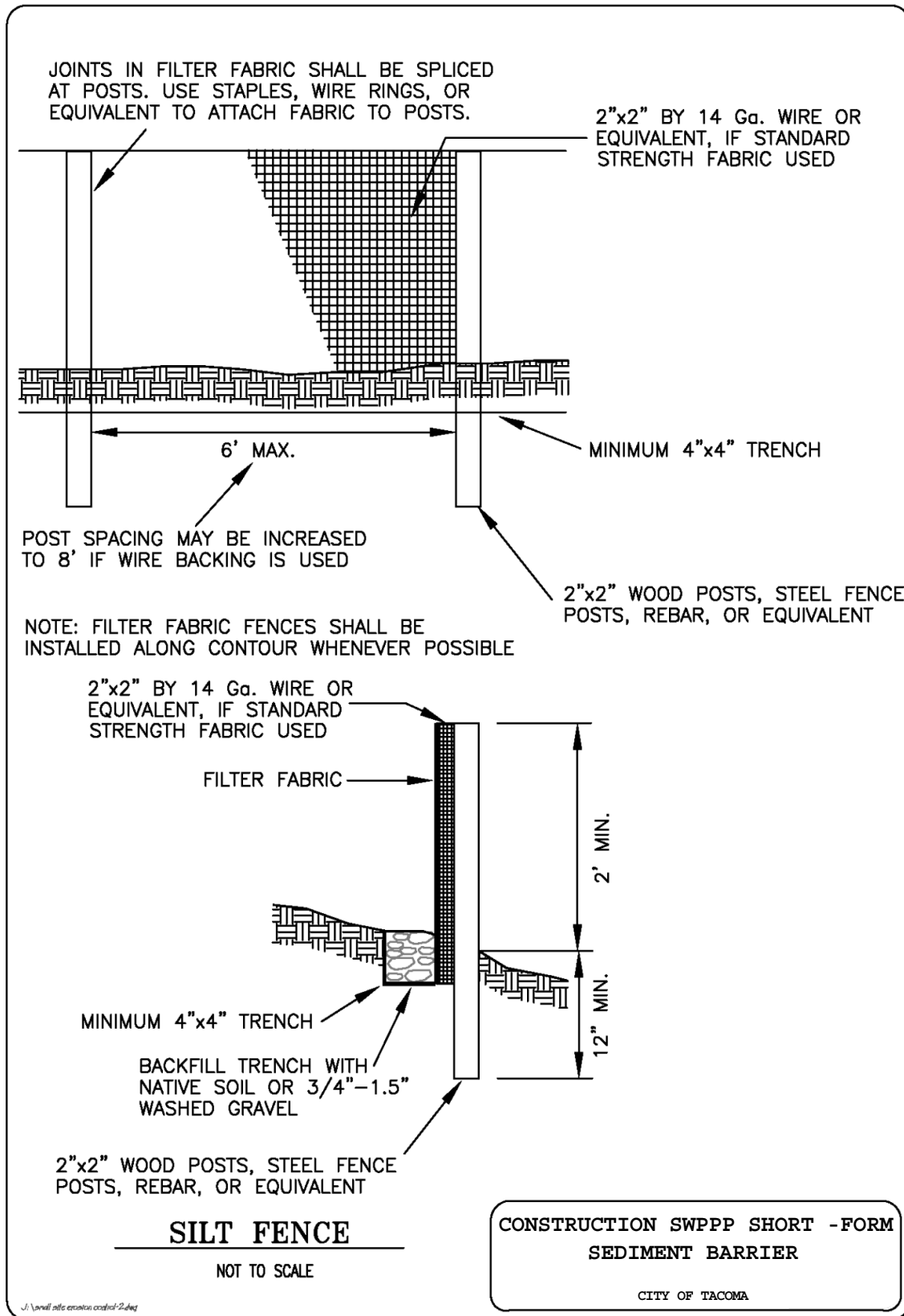
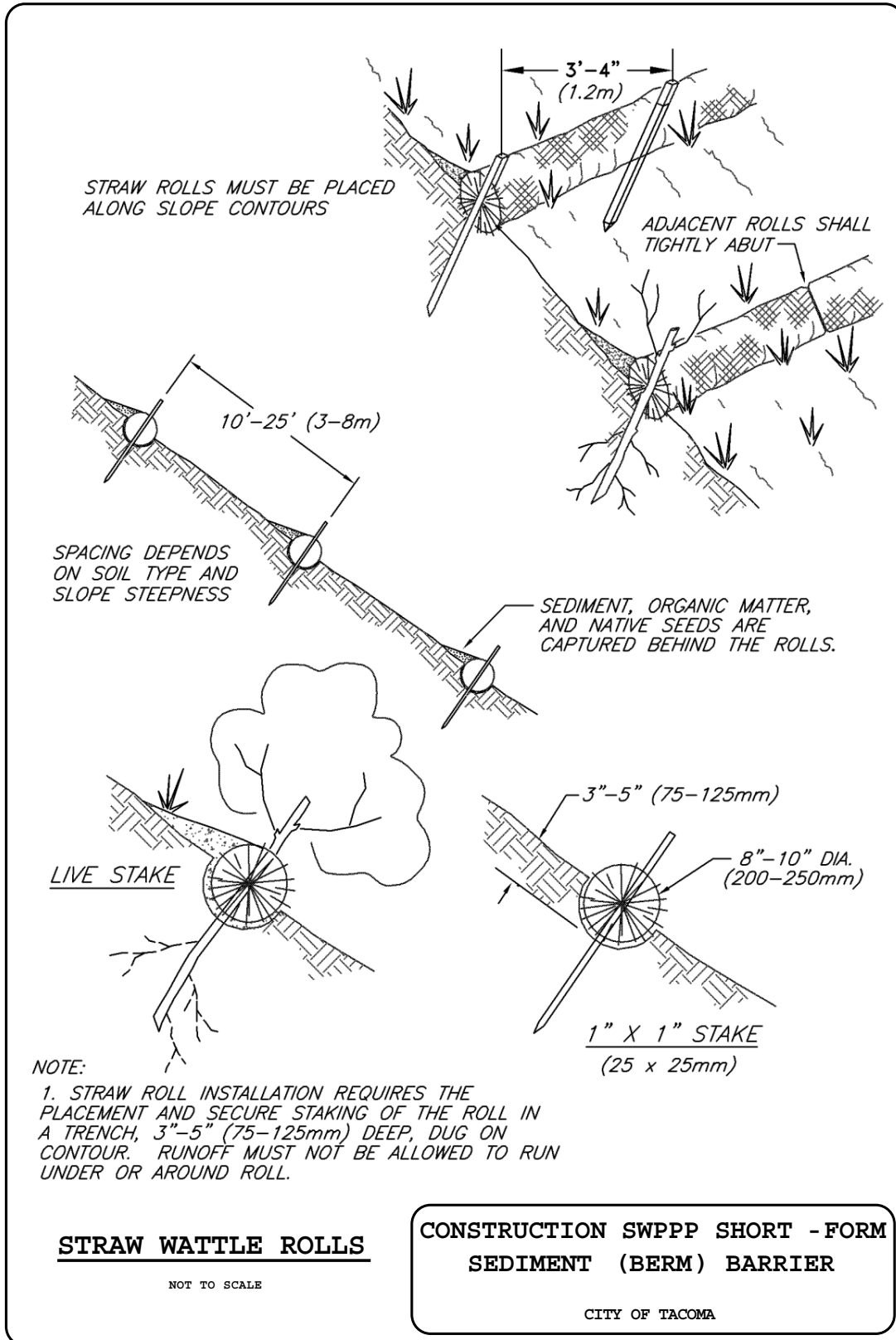


Figure 2 - 39. Sediment Barrier – Silt Fence



**Figure 2 - 40. Sediment (Berm) Barrier – Straw Wattle Rolls**

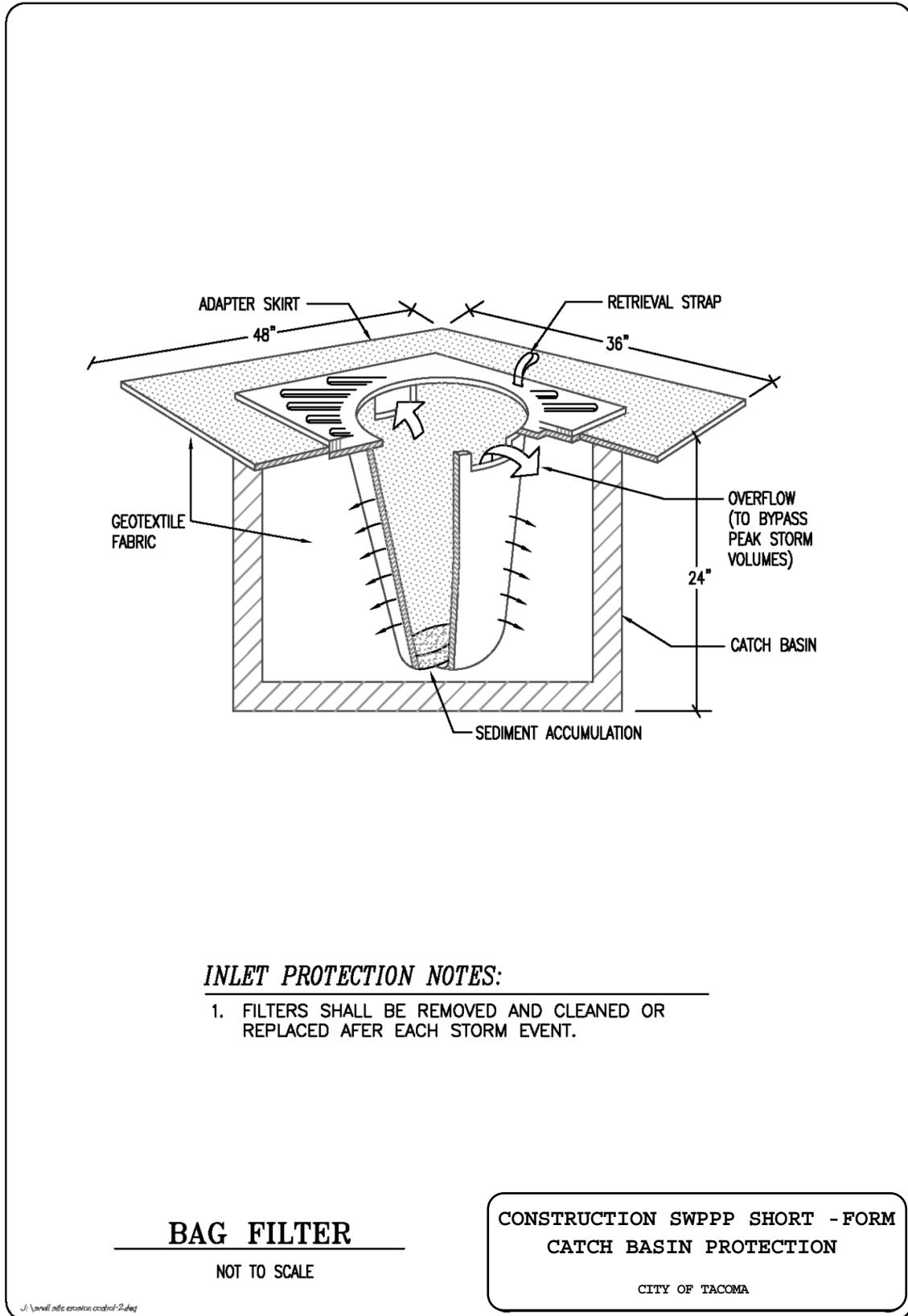
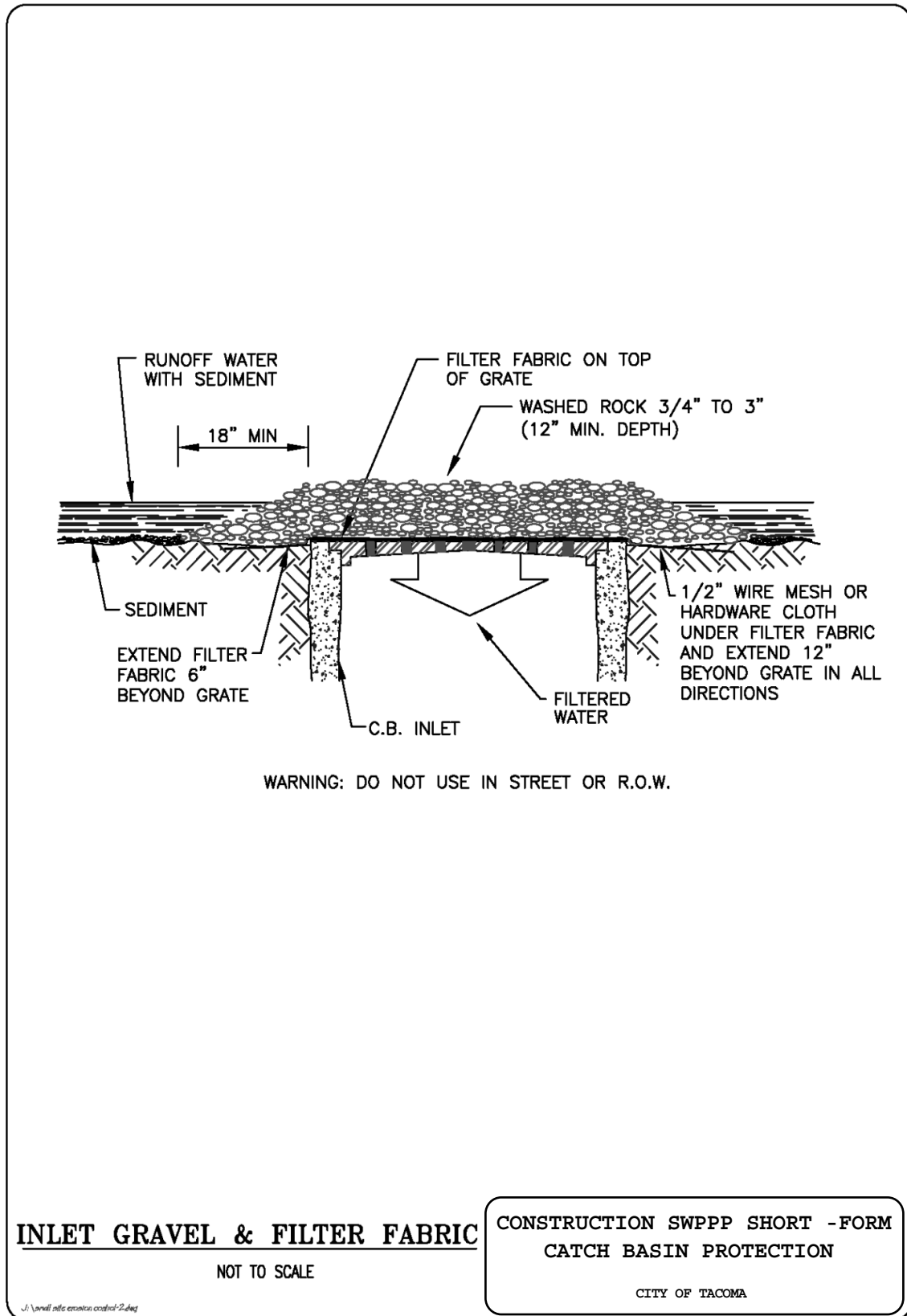


Figure 2 - 41. Catch Basin Protection – Bag Filter



**Figure 2 - 42. Catch Basin Protection – Inlet Gravel and Filter Fabric**

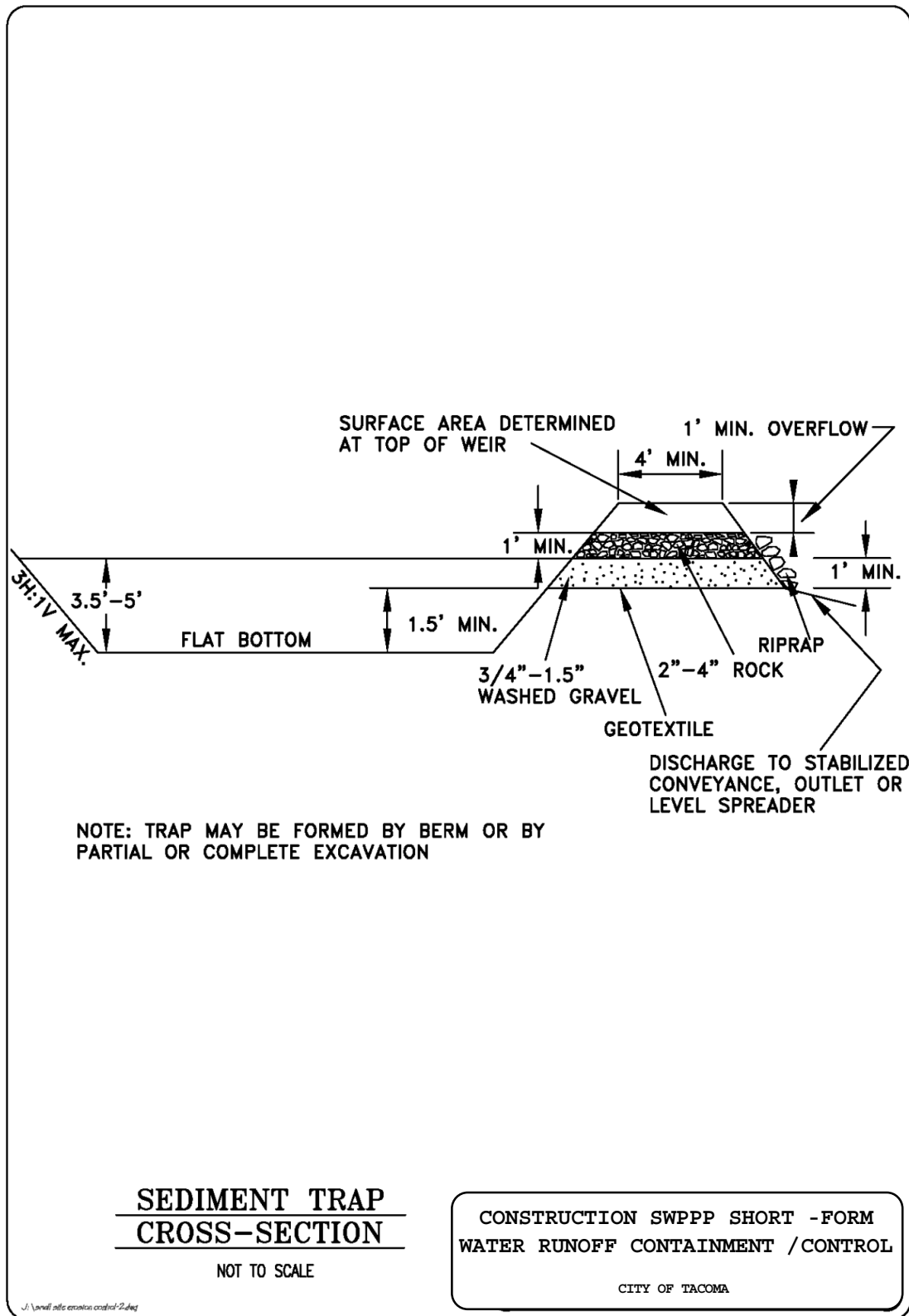


Figure 2 - 43. Water Runoff Containment/Control – Sediment Trap Cross-Section

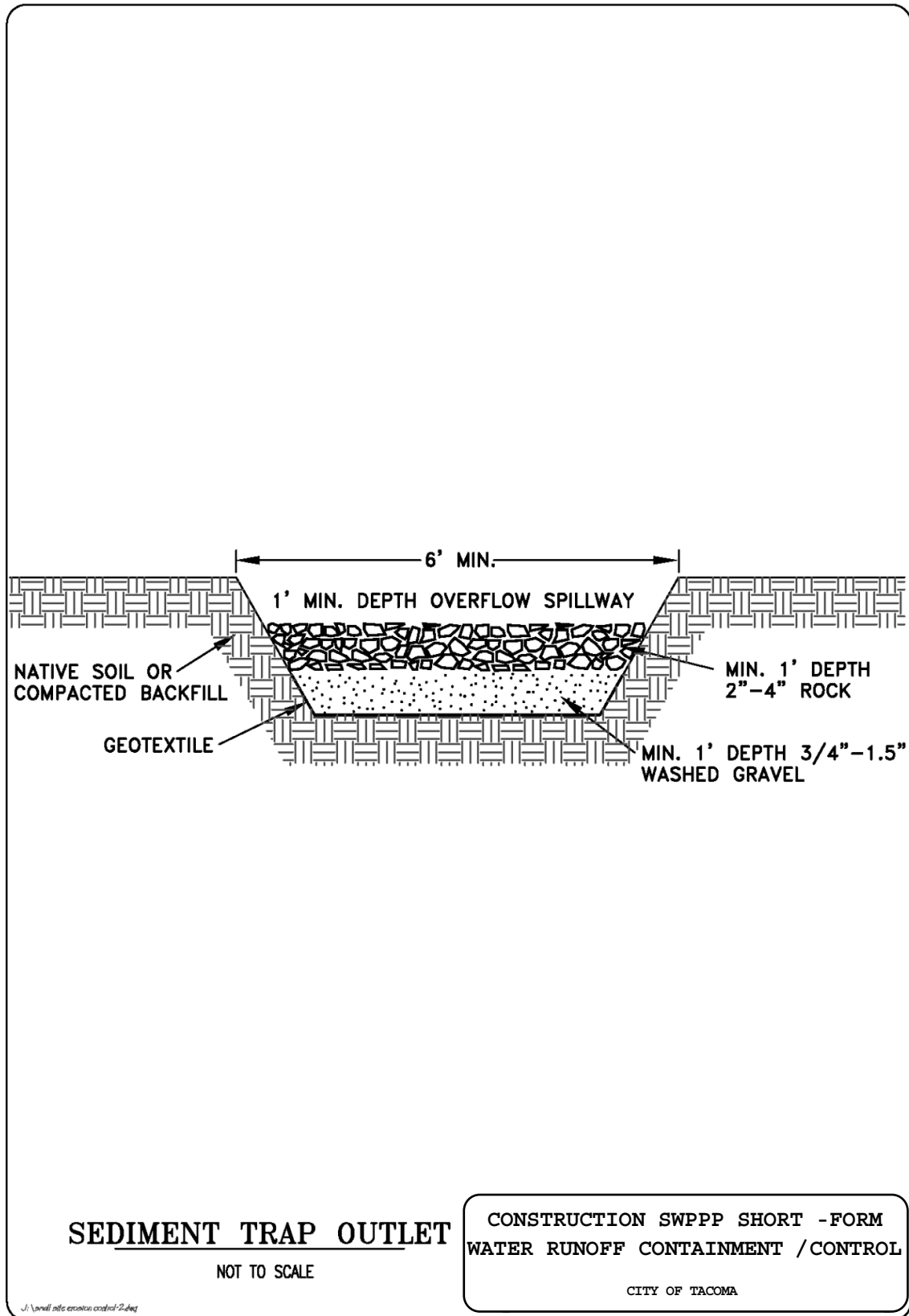


Figure 2 - 44. Water Runoff Containment/Control – Sediment Trap Outlet



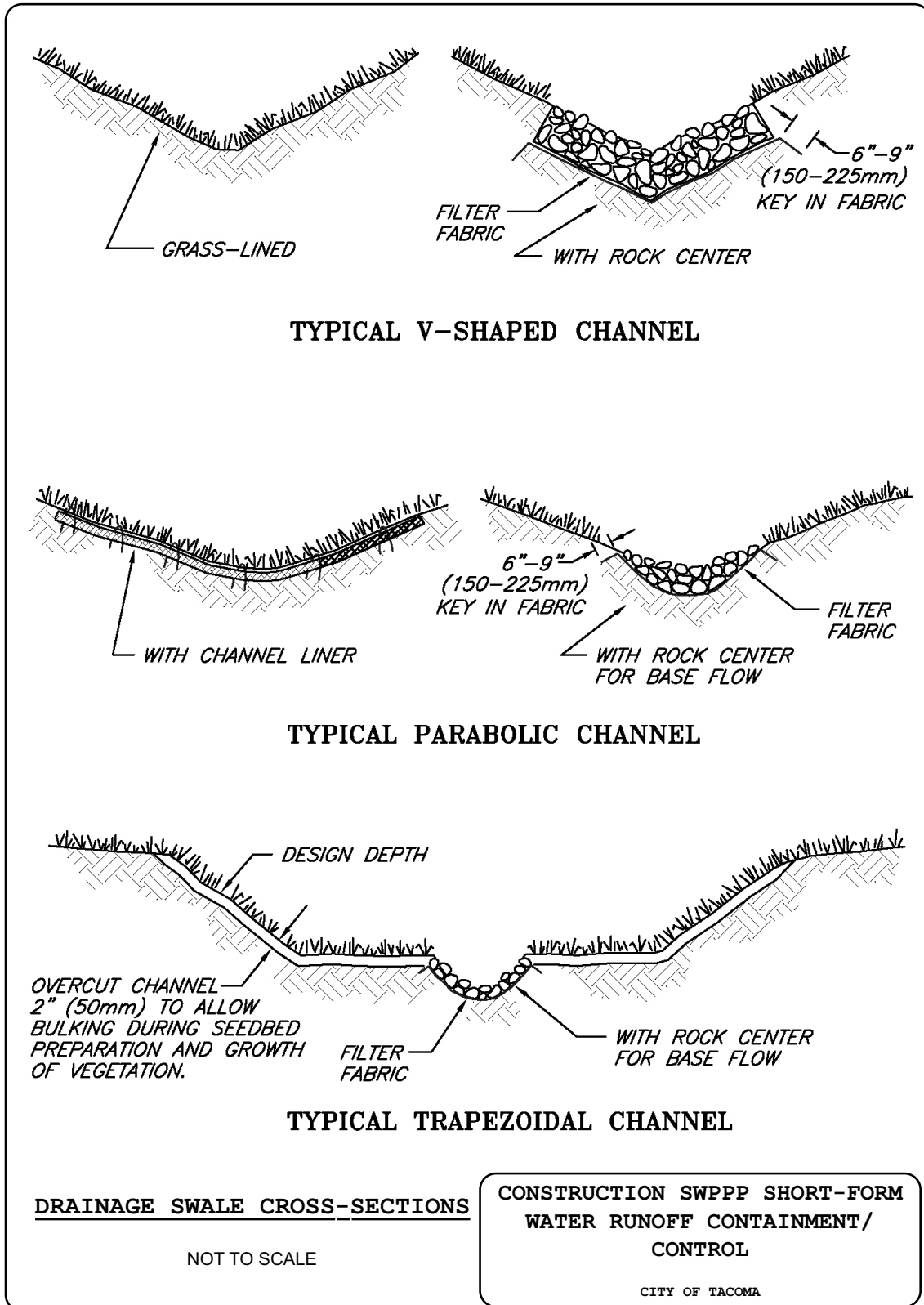


Figure 2 - 45. Water Runoff Containment/Control – Drainage Swale Cross-Sections

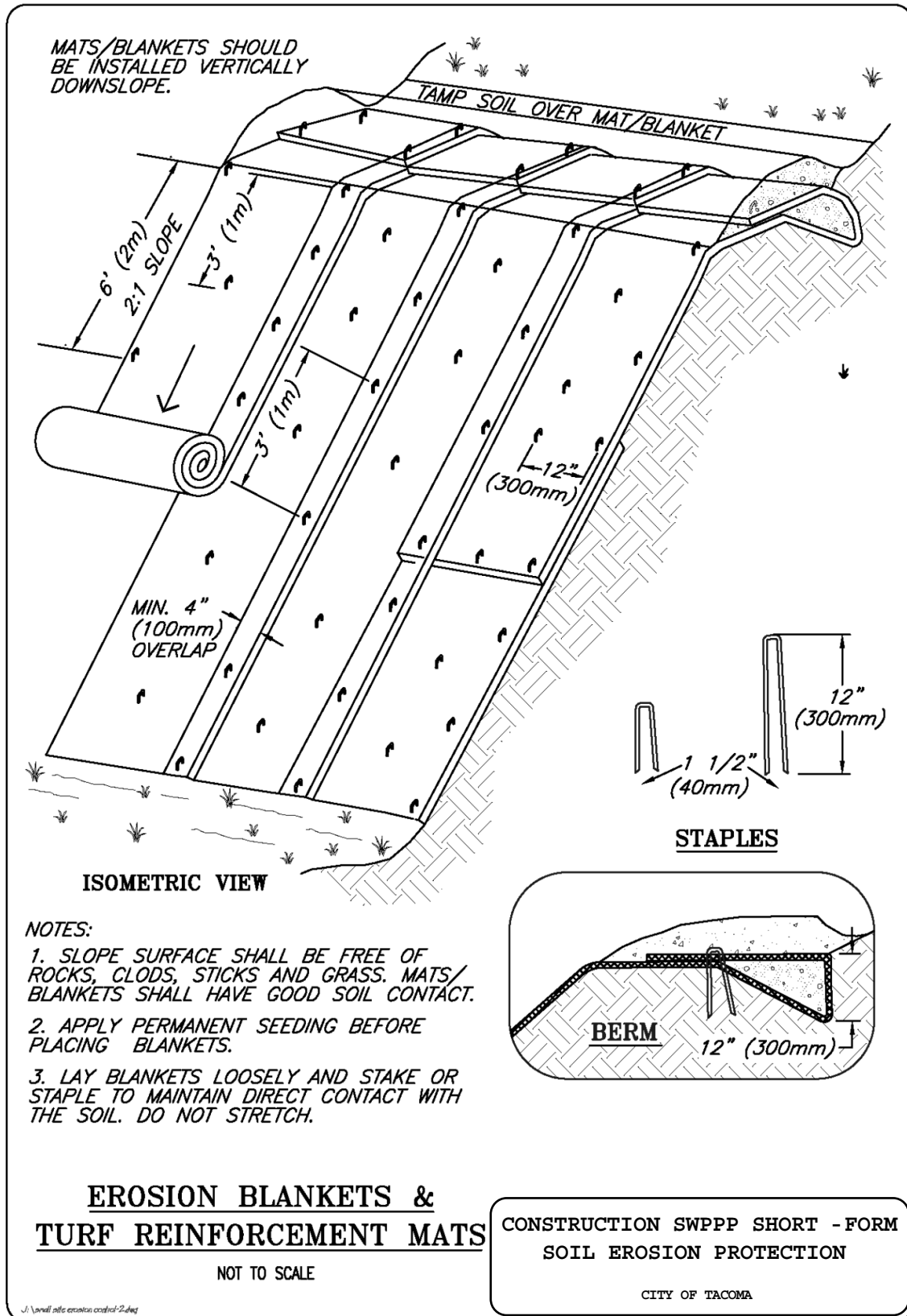
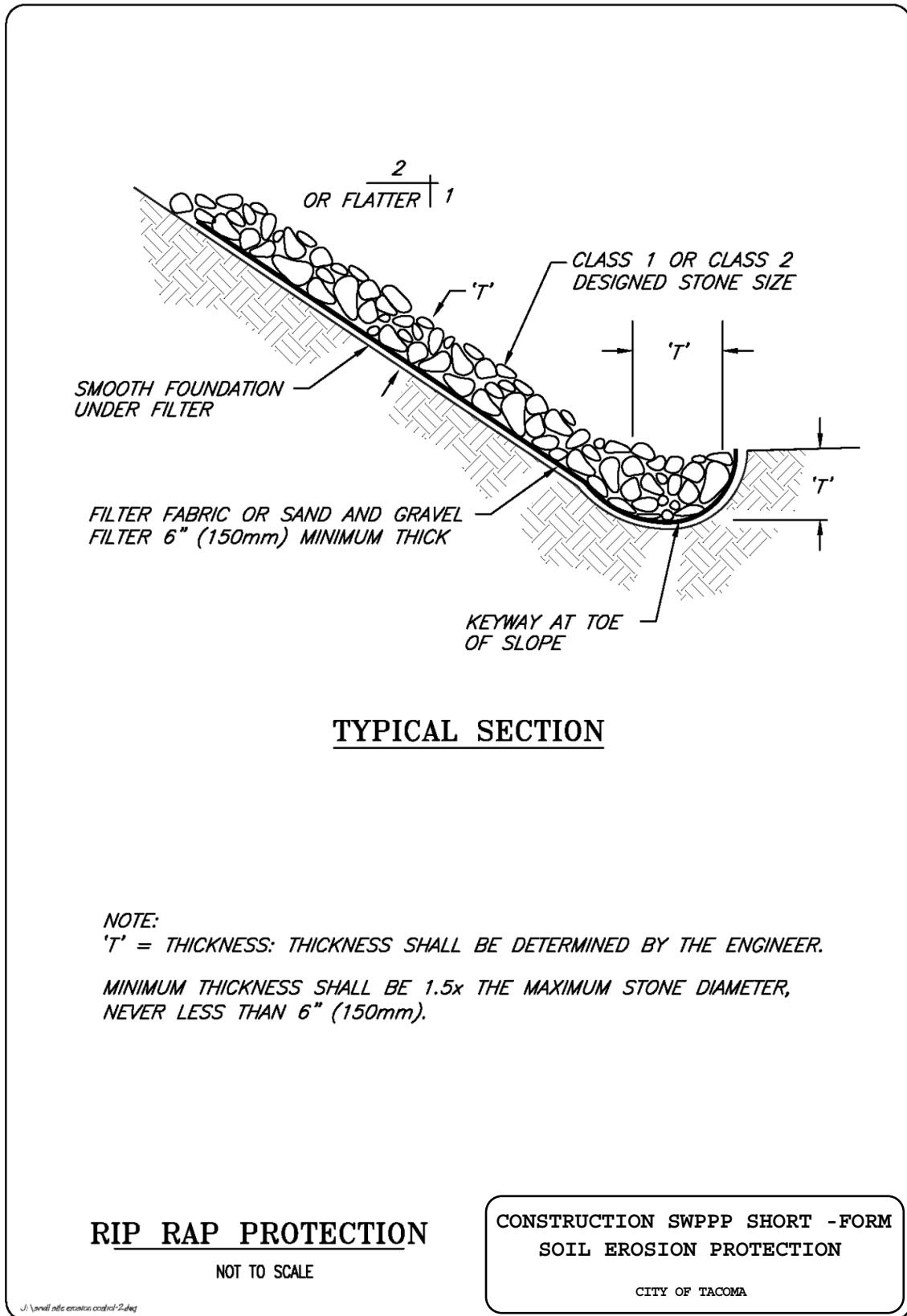


Figure 2 - 46. Soil Erosion Protection – Erosion Blankets and Turf Reinforcement Mats



**Figure 2 - 47. Soil Erosion Protection – Rip Rap Protection**

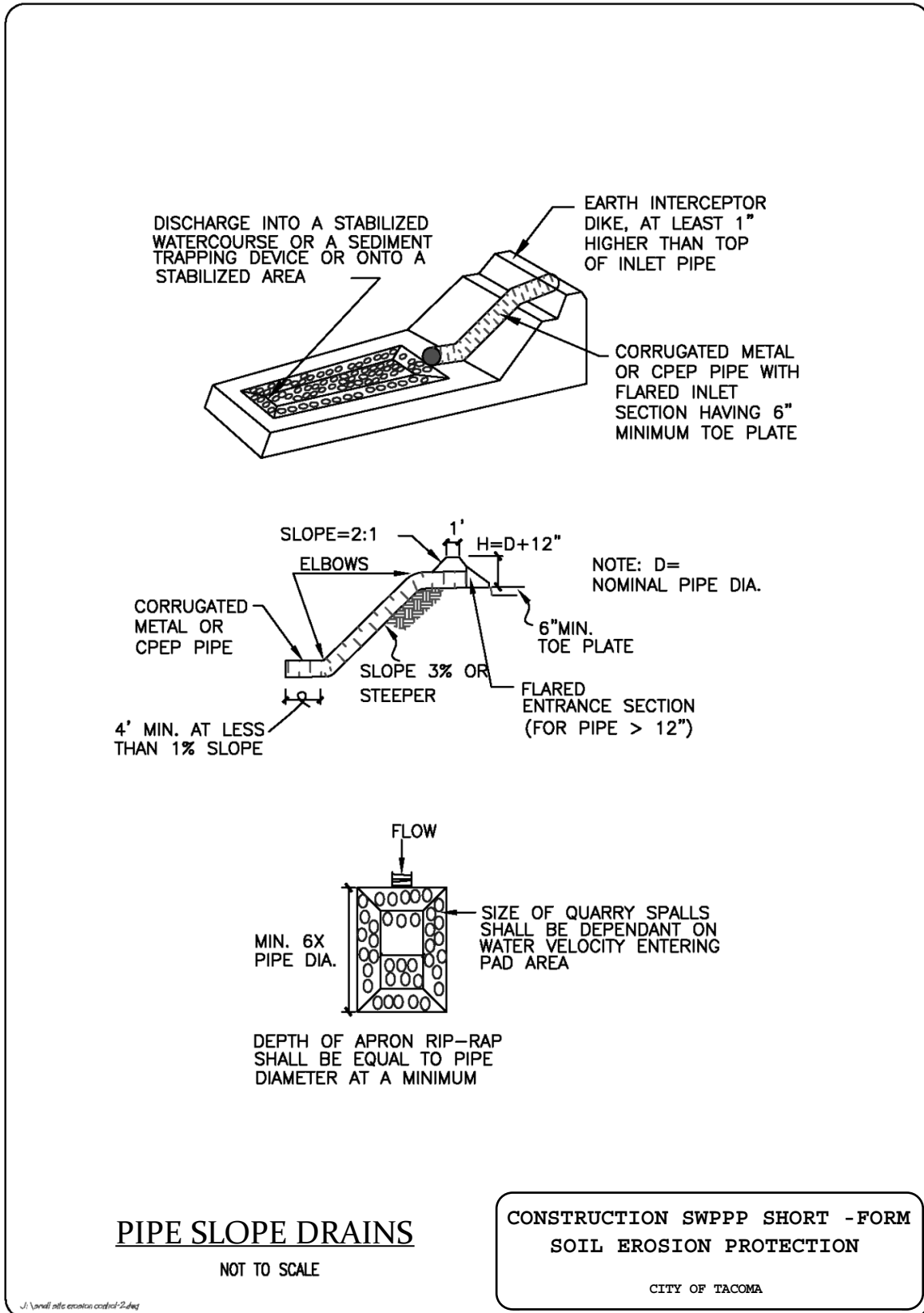


Figure 2 - 48. Soil Erosion Protection – Pipe Slope Drains

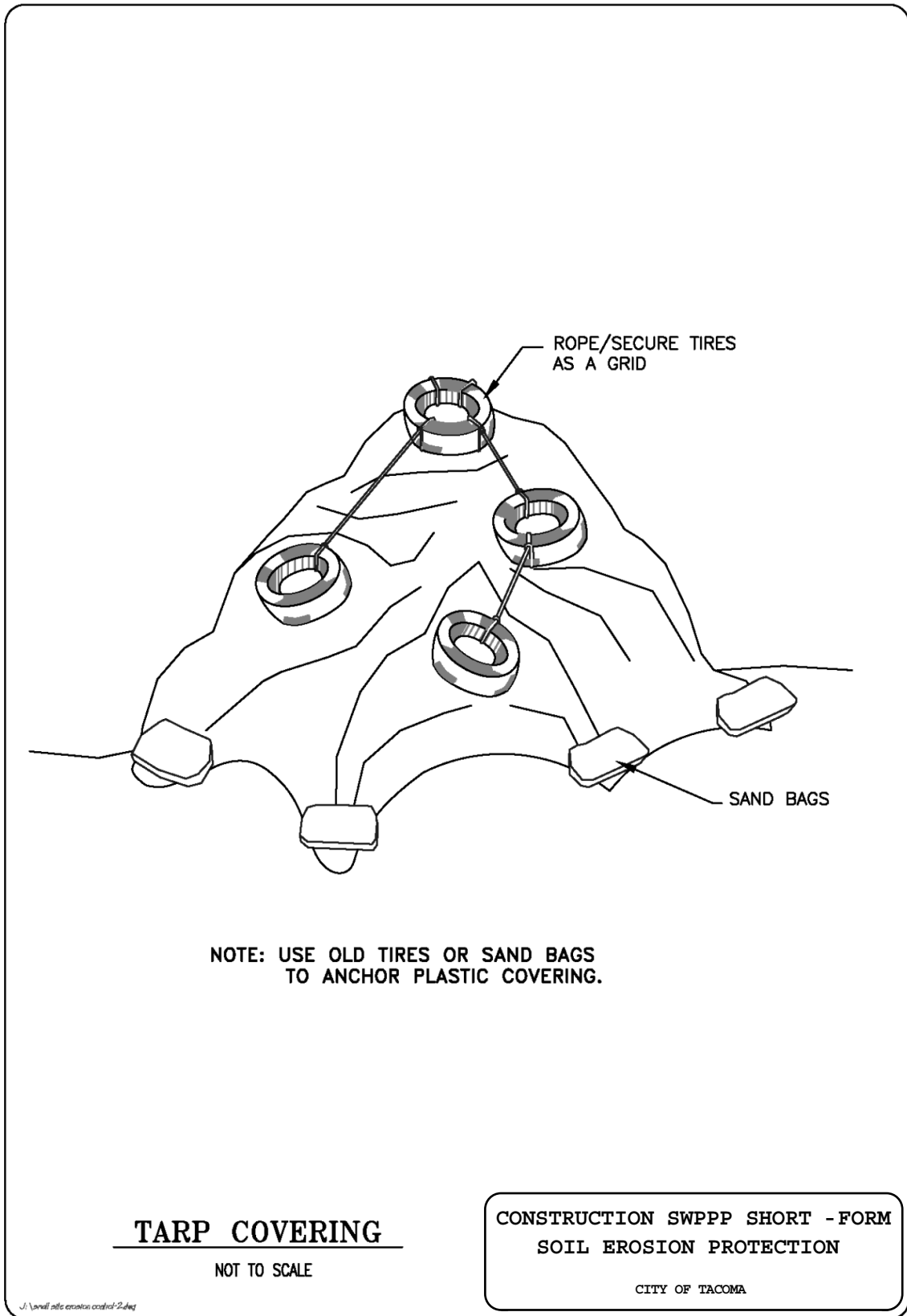


Figure 2 - 49. Soil Erosion Protection – Tarp Covering



# Volume 3 - Onsite Stormwater Management, Flow Control & Conveyance

Purpose of this Volume . . . . .	3-1
Content and Organization of this Volume . . . . .	3-1
<b>Chapter 1 Hydrologic Analysis . . . . .</b>	<b>3-2</b>
1.1 Minimum Computational Standards . . . . .	3-2
1.2 Western Washington Hydrology Model . . . . .	3-2
1.3 Single-Event Hydrograph Method . . . . .	3-2
1.3.1 Design Storm . . . . .	3-2
1.3.2 Curve Number . . . . .	3-3
1.4 Closed Depression Analysis . . . . .	3-4
<b>Chapter 2 Roof Downspout Controls . . . . .</b>	<b>3-6</b>
2.1 Description . . . . .	3-6
2.2 Selection of Roof Downspout Controls . . . . .	3-6
2.3 Roof Downspout Infiltration Setbacks and Site Controls . . . . .	3-7
2.4 Procedure for Evaluating Feasibility of Downspout Infiltration . . . . .	3-7
2.5 Roof Downspout Rain Gardens . . . . .	3-8
2.5.1 Purpose and Definition . . . . .	3-8
2.5.2 Design Criteria . . . . .	3-8
2.5.2.1 Groundwater Separation . . . . .	3-8
2.5.2.2 Flow Entrance/Presetting . . . . .	3-8
2.5.2.3 Cell Ponding Area . . . . .	3-9
2.5.2.4 Overflow . . . . .	3-9
2.5.2.5 Bioretention Soil Mix . . . . .	3-9
2.5.2.6 Planting . . . . .	3-10
2.5.2.7 Mulch Layer . . . . .	3-11
2.5.3 Sizing . . . . .	3-11
2.5.3.1 Flow Credit . . . . .	3-11
2.5.4 General Construction Criteria . . . . .	3-12
2.5.5 Maintenance Criteria . . . . .	3-12
2.6 Downspout Infiltration Systems . . . . .	3-12
2.6.1 Flow Credit for Roof Downspout Infiltration . . . . .	3-12
2.6.1.1 Design Criteria for Infiltration Trenches . . . . .	3-13
2.6.1.2 Maintenance Criteria . . . . .	3-14
2.7 Downspout Dispersion Systems . . . . .	3-18
2.7.1 Application . . . . .	3-19
2.7.2 Flow Credit for Roof Downspout Dispersion . . . . .	3-19
2.7.3 General Design Criteria . . . . .	3-19
2.8 Collect and Convey . . . . .	3-21
<b>Chapter 3 Dispersion BMPs . . . . .</b>	<b>3-23</b>
3.1 BMP L611 Concentrated Flow Dispersion . . . . .	3-23
3.1.1 Purpose and Definition . . . . .	3-23
3.1.2 Applications and Limitations . . . . .	3-23
3.1.3 Design Criteria . . . . .	3-23
3.1.4 Setback Criteria . . . . .	3-23

- 3.1.5 Flow Credits for Concentrated Flow Dispersion . . . . . 3-24
- 3.1.6 Maintenance: . . . . . 3-24
- 3.2 BMP L612 Sheet Flow Dispersion . . . . . 3-26
  - 3.2.1 Purpose and Definition . . . . . 3-26
  - 3.2.2 Applications and Limitations . . . . . 3-26
  - 3.2.3 Design Criteria . . . . . 3-26
  - 3.2.4 Setback Criteria . . . . . 3-26
  - 3.2.5 Flow Credits for Sheet Flow Dispersion . . . . . 3-27
- 3.3 BMP L614 Full Dispersion. . . . . 3-29
  - 3.3.1 Purpose and Definition . . . . . 3-29
  - 3.3.2 Applications and Limitations . . . . . 3-29
  - 3.3.3 Design Guidelines . . . . . 3-29
  - 3.3.4 Setback Criteria . . . . . 3-30
  - 3.3.5 Cleared Area Dispersion BMPs. . . . . 3-31
  - 3.3.6 Flow Credits for Full Dispersion. . . . . 3-31
- Chapter 4 Soil Quality BMPs. . . . . 3-32**
  - 4.1 BMP L613 Post-Construction Soil Quality and Depth. . . . . 3-32
    - 4.1.1 Purpose and Definition . . . . . 3-32
    - 4.1.2 Applications and Limitations . . . . . 3-32
    - 4.1.3 Design Criteria. . . . . 3-32
    - 4.1.4 Implementation Options: . . . . . 3-33
    - 4.1.5 Maintenance . . . . . 3-33
    - 4.1.6 Flow Reduction Credits for BMP L613 . . . . . 3-33
- Chapter 5 Tree Retention & Transplanting BMPs. . . . . 3-34**
  - 5.1 Applications and Limitations . . . . . 3-34
  - 5.2 Retained Trees . . . . . 3-34
    - 5.2.1 Site Considerations . . . . . 3-34
    - 5.2.2 Design Criteria . . . . . 3-34
      - 5.2.2.1 Certified Arborist Report. . . . . 3-34
      - 5.2.2.2 Tree Species and Condition. . . . . 3-34
      - 5.2.2.3 Tree Size . . . . . 3-34
      - 5.2.2.4 Tree Location . . . . . 3-36
      - 5.2.2.5 Tree Protection Measures during Construction . . . . . 3-36
      - 5.2.2.6 Long-term Tree Retention and Protection . . . . . 3-36
    - 5.2.3 Flow Control Credit . . . . . 3-37
    - 5.2.4 Operations and Maintenance Requirements . . . . . 3-37
  - 5.3 Newly Transplanted Trees . . . . . 3-37
    - 5.3.1 Site Considerations . . . . . 3-37
  - 5.4 Design Criteria . . . . . 3-37
    - 5.4.1 Tree Species . . . . . 3-37
      - 5.4.1.1 Tree Size . . . . . 3-38
      - 5.4.1.2 Tree Location . . . . . 3-38
      - 5.4.1.3 Plant Material and Planting Specifications . . . . . 3-38
      - 5.4.1.4 Irrigation . . . . . 3-38
      - 5.4.1.5 Long-term Tree Retention and Protection . . . . . 3-38
    - 5.4.2 Flow Control Credit . . . . . 3-38
- Chapter 6 Infiltration Facilities for Stormwater Flow Control . . . . . 3-39**



- 6.1 Purpose . . . . . 3-39
- 6.2 Description . . . . . 3-39
- 6.3 Design Methodology . . . . . 3-41
  - 6.3.1 Select a location . . . . . 3-41
  - 6.3.2 Estimate volume of stormwater, V<sub>design</sub> . . . . . 3-41
  - 6.3.3 Develop trial infiltration facility geometry . . . . . 3-41
  - 6.3.4 Complete more detailed site characterization study and consider site suitability criteria . . . . . 3-41
  - 6.3.5 Determine the infiltration rate . . . . . 3-41
  - 6.3.6 Size the facility . . . . . 3-41
  - 6.3.7 Construction Criteria . . . . . 3-42
  - 6.3.8 Maintenance Criteria . . . . . 3-43
  - 6.3.9 Verification Testing of the Completed Facility . . . . . 3-43
- 6.4 Site Characterization Criteria . . . . . 3-43
  - 6.4.1 Surface Features Characterization . . . . . 3-43
  - 6.4.2 Subsurface Characterization . . . . . 3-43
  - 6.4.3 Infiltration Rate Determination . . . . . 3-44
  - 6.4.4 Soil Testing . . . . . 3-44
  - 6.4.5 Infiltration Receptor . . . . . 3-44
- 6.5 Design Infiltration Rate Determination – Guidelines and Criteria . . . . . 3-46
  - 6.5.1 USDA Soil Textural Classification . . . . . 3-46
  - 6.5.2 ASTM Gradation Testing at Full Scale Infiltration Facilities . . . . . 3-48
  - 6.5.3 In-situ Infiltration Measurements . . . . . 3-49
  - 6.5.4 D<sub>10</sub>, D<sub>60</sub>, D<sub>90</sub> Method . . . . . 3-50
- 6.6 Site Suitability Criteria . . . . . 3-54
  - 6.6.1 Setback Criteria . . . . . 3-54
  - 6.6.2 Groundwater Protection Areas . . . . . 3-54
  - 6.6.3 High Vehicle Traffic Areas . . . . . 3-54
  - 6.6.4 Depth to Bedrock, Water Table, or Impermeable Layer . . . . . 3-55
  - 6.6.5 Seepage Analysis and Control . . . . . 3-55
  - 6.6.6 Cold Climate and Impact of Roadway Deicers . . . . . 3-55
- 6.7 Design Criteria for Infiltration Facilities . . . . . 3-55
  - 6.7.1 Infiltration Facility Setbacks . . . . . 3-55
  - 6.7.2 Infiltration Facility Access . . . . . 3-56
  - 6.7.3 Infiltration Facility Overflow . . . . . 3-56
  - 6.7.4 Infiltration Facility Seeps and Springs . . . . . 3-56
  - 6.7.5 Infiltration Facility Maintenance . . . . . 3-57
  - 6.7.6 Infiltration Facility Easements . . . . . 3-57
- 6.8 Infiltration Basins . . . . . 3-57
  - 6.8.1 Description . . . . . 3-57
  - 6.8.2 Design Criteria Specific for Basins . . . . . 3-57
- 6.9 Infiltration Trenches . . . . . 3-58
  - 6.9.1 Description . . . . . 3-58
  - 6.9.2 Design Criteria . . . . . 3-58
    - 6.9.2.1 Cleanouts/Access Ports . . . . . 3-58
    - 6.9.2.2 Backfill Material . . . . . 3-58
    - 6.9.2.3 Geotextile Fabric Liner . . . . . 3-58
    - 6.9.2.4 Overflow Channel . . . . . 3-58

6.9.2.5 Surface Cover . . . . .	3-59
6.9.2.6 Observation Well . . . . .	3-59
6.9.3 Construction Criteria . . . . .	3-60
6.9.3.1 Trench Preparation . . . . .	3-60
6.9.3.2 Stone Aggregate Placement and Compaction . . . . .	3-60
6.9.3.3 Potential Contamination . . . . .	3-60
6.9.3.4 Overlapping and Covering . . . . .	3-60
6.9.3.5 Voids behind Geotextile . . . . .	3-60
6.9.3.6 Unstable Excavation Sites . . . . .	3-60
<b>Chapter 7 Detention Facilities for Stormwater Flow Control . . . . .</b>	<b>3-61</b>
7.1 Detention Facility Design Criteria . . . . .	3-61
7.1.1 Detention Facility Setbacks . . . . .	3-61
7.1.2 Detention Facility Access . . . . .	3-61
7.1.3 Detention Facility Overflow . . . . .	3-62
7.1.4 Detention Facility Seeps and Springs . . . . .	3-62
7.1.5 Detention Facility Maintenance . . . . .	3-62
7.1.6 Detention Facility Easements . . . . .	3-63
7.2 Detention Ponds . . . . .	3-63
7.2.1 Dam Safety for Detention Ponds . . . . .	3-63
7.2.2 Design Criteria Specific for Detention Ponds . . . . .	3-63
7.2.2.1 General . . . . .	3-63
7.2.2.2 Setbacks . . . . .	3-63
7.2.2.3 Side Slopes . . . . .	3-64
7.2.2.4 Embankments . . . . .	3-64
7.2.2.5 Overflow . . . . .	3-68
7.2.2.6 Emergency Overflow Spillway . . . . .	3-68
7.2.2.7 Access . . . . .	3-68
7.2.2.8 Fencing . . . . .	3-69
7.2.2.9 Signage . . . . .	3-69
7.2.2.10 Planting Requirements . . . . .	3-71
7.2.2.11 Landscaping . . . . .	3-71
7.2.3 Methods of Analysis . . . . .	3-72
7.2.3.1 Detention Volume and Outflow . . . . .	3-72
7.2.3.2 Detention Ponds in Infiltrative Soils . . . . .	3-72
7.2.3.3 Emergency Overflow Spillway Capacity . . . . .	3-72
7.3 Detention Tanks . . . . .	3-73
7.3.1 Design Criteria . . . . .	3-76
7.3.1.1 General . . . . .	3-76
7.3.1.2 Materials . . . . .	3-76
7.3.1.3 Structural Stability . . . . .	3-76
7.3.1.4 Buoyancy . . . . .	3-76
7.3.1.5 Access . . . . .	3-76
7.3.1.6 Methods of Analysis . . . . .	3-77
7.4 Detention Vaults . . . . .	3-77
7.4.1 Design Criteria . . . . .	3-79
7.4.1.1 General . . . . .	3-79
7.4.1.2 Materials . . . . .	3-79
7.4.1.3 Structural Stability . . . . .	3-79
7.4.1.4 Access . . . . .	3-79
7.4.2 Methods of Analysis . . . . .	3-80

7.4.2.1 Detention Volume and Outflow . . . . .	3-80
7.5 Control Structures . . . . .	3-80
7.5.1 Design Criteria . . . . .	3-80
7.5.1.1 Multiple Orifice Restrictor . . . . .	3-80
7.5.1.2 Riser and Weir Restrictor . . . . .	3-81
7.5.1.3 Access . . . . .	3-81
7.5.1.4 Materials . . . . .	3-81
7.5.1.5 Maintenance . . . . .	3-81
7.5.2 Methods of Analysis . . . . .	3-82
7.5.2.1 Orifices . . . . .	3-82
7.5.2.2 Rectangular Sharp-Crested Weir . . . . .	3-82
7.5.2.3 V-Notch Sharp - Crested Weir . . . . .	3-83
7.5.2.4 Proportional or Sutro Weir . . . . .	3-83
7.5.2.5 Riser Overflow . . . . .	3-83
<b>Chapter 8 Other Detention Options . . . . .</b>	<b>3-92</b>
8.1 Use of Parking Lots for Additional Detention . . . . .	3-92
8.2 Use of Roofs for Detention . . . . .	3-92
<b>Chapter 9 Conveyance System Design and Hydraulic Analysis . . . . .</b>	<b>3-93</b>
9.1 Design Methods for Conveyance Systems . . . . .	3-93
9.1.1 Design Criteria . . . . .	3-93
9.2 Methods of Analysis . . . . .	3-94
9.2.1 Onsite Analysis . . . . .	3-94
9.2.2 Offsite Analysis . . . . .	3-94
9.2.2.1 Qualitative Downstream Analysis . . . . .	3-94
9.2.2.2 Quantitative Downstream Analysis . . . . .	3-94
9.3 Hydrologic Modeling . . . . .	3-95
9.3.1 Computer Models for Conveyance Systems . . . . .	3-95
9.3.2 Backwater Analysis . . . . .	3-95
9.3.2.1 Pipe Systems . . . . .	3-95
9.3.2.2 Culverts . . . . .	3-96
9.3.2.3 Open Channels . . . . .	3-96
9.3.3 Rational Method . . . . .	3-97
9.3.3.1 Rational Method Design Events . . . . .	3-97
9.3.3.2 Rational Method Equation . . . . .	3-98
9.4 Inlet Grate Capacity . . . . .	3-104
9.4.1 Inlet Types . . . . .	3-104
9.4.1.1 Herringbone Pattern (WSDOT Standard Plan B-30.50) . . . . .	3-104
9.4.1.2 Vaned Grate (WSDOT Standard Plan B-30.30 or 30.40) . . . . .	3-105
9.4.1.3 Combination Inlets (WSDOT Standard Plan B-25.20) . . . . .	3-105
9.4.1.4 Grate Inlets Type 1 or 2 (WSDOT Standard Plans B-35.20, B-35.40, and B-40.20) . . . . .	3-105
9.4.1.5 Frame and Vaned Grates (WSDOT Standard Plan B-40.40) . . . . .	3-105
9.4.1.6 Circular Grates . . . . .	3-105
9.4.2 Capacity of Inlets on a Continuous Grade . . . . .	3-106
9.4.3 Side Flow Interception . . . . .	3-108
9.4.3.1 Inlet Analysis Spreadsheet . . . . .	3-109
9.4.4 Capacity of Inlets in Sag Locations . . . . .	3-109
9.5 Gutter Capacity Analysis . . . . .	3-112

9.6 Capacity Analysis . . . . .	3-114
9.7 Basis of Design . . . . .	3-114
<b>Chapter 10 Material Specifications . . . . .</b>	<b>3-115</b>
10.1 Pipe Specifications . . . . .	3-115
10.1.1 Pipe Materials . . . . .	3-115
10.1.1.1 Pipes Within Right-of-Way . . . . .	3-115
10.1.1.2 Private Pipes Outside the Right-of-Way . . . . .	3-115
10.1.2 Pipe Sizes . . . . .	3-116
10.1.3 Changes in Pipe Sizes . . . . .	3-116
10.1.4 Pipe Alignment and Depth . . . . .	3-116
10.1.5 Pipe Slopes and Velocities . . . . .	3-117
10.1.6 Pipes on Steep Slopes . . . . .	3-117
10.1.7 Pipe Clearances . . . . .	3-118
10.1.8 Pipe Cover . . . . .	3-119
10.2 Culvert Specifications . . . . .	3-119
10.2.1 Inlets and Outlets . . . . .	3-119
10.3 Open Channel Specifications . . . . .	3-120
10.3.1 Natural Channels . . . . .	3-120
10.3.2 Constructed Channels . . . . .	3-120
10.3.3 Open Channel Design Criteria . . . . .	3-121
10.4 Structures . . . . .	3-121
10.5 System Connections . . . . .	3-123
10.6 Debris Barriers . . . . .	3-124
10.7 Riprap Design . . . . .	3-125
<b>Chapter 11 Outfall Systems . . . . .</b>	<b>3-129</b>
11.1 Outfall Design Criteria . . . . .	3-129
11.1.1 Energy dissipation . . . . .	3-130
11.1.2 Flow dispersion . . . . .	3-130
11.2 Tightline Systems . . . . .	3-136
11.3 Habitat Considerations . . . . .	3-137
<b>Chapter 12 Pump Systems . . . . .</b>	<b>3-138</b>
12.1 Design Criteria . . . . .	3-138
12.2 Pump Requirements . . . . .	3-138
12.3 Additional Requirements . . . . .	3-138
12.3.1 Submittal Requirements . . . . .	3-139
12.4 Sump Pumps . . . . .	3-140
<b>Chapter 13 Easements, Access, and Dedicated Tracts . . . . .</b>	<b>3-141</b>
13.1 Stormwater Facilities . . . . .	3-141
13.1.1 Public . . . . .	3-141
13.1.2 Private . . . . .	3-141
13.2 Conveyance Systems . . . . .	3-141
13.2.1 Public . . . . .	3-141
13.2.2 Private . . . . .	3-142
13.3 Maintenance Access . . . . .	3-143
<b>Appendix A Tacoma Design Storm . . . . .</b>	<b>3-144</b>

**Appendix B Procedure for Conducting a Pilot Infiltration Test. . . . . 3-145**  
B.1 Infiltration Test . . . . .3-145  
B.2 Data Analysis . . . . .3-146  
B.3 Example . . . . .3-146





# Onsite Stormwater Management, Flow Control & Conveyance

## Purpose of this Volume

The purpose of this volume is to outline methods for managing stormwater onsite, designing flow control BMPs and designing conveyance systems. Guidance is provided for managing post-construction soils as well as tree retention and planting.

## Content and Organization of this Volume

Volume 3 of this manual contains thirteen chapters.

- Chapter 1 reviews methods of hydrologic analysis.
- Chapter 2 describes roof downspout controls.
- Chapter 3 describes dispersion BMPs.
- Chapter 4 describes post-construction soil quality and depth.
- Chapter 5 describes tree retention and planting.
- Chapter 6 provides guidance for infiltration facility design requirements for flow control.
- Chapter 7 provides guidance for detention facility design.
- Chapter 8 describes additional options for flow control.
- Chapter 9 provides guidance for conveyance system design.
- Chapter 10 describes material specifications.
- Chapter 11 provides guidance for outfall design.
- Chapter 12 provides guidance for pump systems.
- Chapter 13 describes easement and access requirements.

# Chapter 1 Hydrologic Analysis

The purpose of this chapter is to define the minimum computational standards required, and outline how these computational standards may be applied.

## 1.1 Minimum Computational Standards

The minimum computational standards depend on the type of information required and the size of the drainage area to be analyzed, as follows:

- Continuous simulation modeling shall be used for designing flow control and water quality treatment BMPs. The most recent versions of the Western Washington Hydrology Model (WWHM) and MGS Flood meet this criteria and are acceptable by the City.

**NOTE:** Facilities that are sized based on a water quality volume may require design based on single event modeling.

- Other HSPF or continuous simulation models may be accepted on case-by-case basis at the discretion of the City.
- Model calibration shall be required for basins greater than 320 acres.
- Single event modeling shall be used to size conveyance systems and verify current system capacity. See Chapter 3 for more information.

## 1.2 Western Washington Hydrology Model

For most flow control design purposes, a continuous runoff model, such as the Western Washington Hydrology Model (WWHM), must be used. Information on the WWHM is provided in the Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington (Washington State Department of Ecology, 2005). The software can be downloaded at the following website:

<http://www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wq/stormwater/wwhmtraining/index.html>

More WWHM information is available at <http://www.clearcreeksolutions.com>

## 1.3 Single-Event Hydrograph Method

Single event methods are only acceptable for sizing wetpool treatment facilities or for conveyance analysis.

All storm event hydrograph methods require input of parameters that describe physical drainage basin characteristics. These parameters provide the basis from which the runoff hydrograph is developed.

### 1.3.1 Design Storm

The total depth of rainfall for storms of 24-hour duration and 2, 5, 10, 25, 50, and 100-year recurrence intervals are published by the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA). The information is presented in the form of “isopluvial” maps for each state. Isopluvial maps are maps where the contours represent total inches of rainfall for a specific duration. Isopluvial maps for the 2, 5, 10, 25, 50, and 100-year recurrence interval and 24-hour duration storm events can be found in the NOAA Atlas 2, “Precipitation - Frequency Atlas of the Western United States, Volume IX-Washington.”



Based on these isopluvials, the following design storms shall be used for the City of Tacoma:

6-month, 24-hour design storm: 1.44 inches

2-year, 24-hour design storm: 2.0 inches

10-year, 24-hour design storm: 3.0 inches

25-year, 24-hour design storm: 3.5 inches

100-year, 24-hour design storm: 4.1 inches

### **1.3.2 Curve Number**

The NRCS did not map the soils within the City of Tacoma. For modeling purposes, soils within the City limits shall be assumed to fall in Hydrologic Soil Group C unless site-specific grain size distribution and/or permeability testing indicates otherwise. This assumption of soil type cannot be used to prove infeasibility for onsite infiltration, nor can it be used as a basis to design onsite infiltration facilities. A site-specific soils analysis is required for all sites that meet the thresholds for complying with this manual as defined in Volume 1, where infiltration is feasible.

Table 3 - 1 shows the curve numbers (CNs), by land use description, for the four hydrologic soil groups. These numbers are for a 24-hour duration storm and the typical antecedent soil moisture condition preceding 24-hour storms.

The following are important criteria/considerations for selection of CN values.

Many factors may affect the CN value for a given land use. For example, the movement of heavy equipment over bare ground may compact the soil so that it has a lower infiltration rate and greater runoff potential than would be indicated by strict application of the CN value to developed site conditions.

CN values can be area weighted when they apply to pervious areas of similar CNs (within 20 CN points). However, high CN areas should not be combined with low CN areas. In this case, separate estimates of S (potential maximum natural detention) and Qd (runoff depth) should be generated and summed to obtain the cumulative runoff volume unless the low CN areas are less than 15 percent of the sub-basin.

Separate CN values must be selected for the pervious and impervious areas of an urban basin or sub-basin. For offsite contributory basins, the percent impervious area given in Table 3 - 1 must be used to compute the respective pervious and impervious areas. For proposed projects, the percent impervious area must be computed from the site plan. The pervious area CN value must be a weighted average of all the pervious area CNs within the sub-basin. The impervious area CN value shall be 98.

## **1.4 Closed Depression Analysis**

The analysis of closed depressions requires careful assessment of the existing hydrologic performance in order to evaluate the impacts of a proposed project. A calibrated continuous simulation hydrologic model must be used for closed depression analysis and design of mitigation facilities. The applicable requirements of this manual (see Minimum Requirement #7 and #8) and the City's Critical Areas Preservation Ordinance and Rules should be thoroughly reviewed prior to proceeding with the analysis.

Closed depressions generally facilitate infiltration of runoff. If a closed depression is classified as a wetland, then Minimum Requirement #8 for wetlands may apply. If there is an outflow from the wetland to a surface water (such as a creek), then the flow from the wetland must also meet Minimum Requirement #7 for flow control when the thresholds are met. If a closed depression is not classified as a wetland, the ponding area at the bottom of the closed depression should be modeled as an infiltration pond.

Guidance for modeling closed depressions and model calibration shall be provided by Environmental Services.

**Table 3 - 1: Runoff Curve Numbers for Selected Agricultural, Suburban and Urban Areas<sup>a</sup>**

Cover type and hydrologic condition	CNs for hydrologic soil group <sup>b</sup>			
	A	B	C	D
<b>Curve Numbers for Pre-Development Conditions</b>				
<b>Pasture, grassland, or range-continuous forage for grazing:</b>				
Fair condition (ground cover 50% to 75% and not heavily grazed)	49	69	79	84
Good condition (ground cover >75% and lightly or only occasionally grazed)	39	61	74	80
<b>Woods:</b>				
Fair condition (grazed but not burned, and some forest litter covers the soil)	36	60	73	79
Good condition (protected from grazing, and litter & brush adequately cover the soil)	30	55	70	77
<b>Curve Numbers for Post-Development Conditions</b>				
<b>Open space (lawns, parks, golf courses, cemeteries, landscaping, etc.):</b>				
Fair condition (grass cover on 50% to 75% of the area)	77	85	90	92
Good condition (grass cover on >75% of the area)	68	80	86	90
<b>Impervious areas:</b>				
Open water bodies (lakes, wetlands, ponds, etc.)	100	100	100	100
Paved parking lots, roofs, driveways, etc. (excluding right-of way)	98	98	98	98
Landscaped area	77	85	90	92
100% impervious area	98	98	98	98
<b>Pasture, grassland, or range-continuous forage for grazing:</b>				
Poor condition (ground cover <50% or heavily grazed with no mulch)	68	79	86	89
Fair condition (ground cover 50% to 75% and not heavily grazed)	49	69	79	84
Good condition (ground cover >75% and lightly or only occasionally grazed)	39	61	74	80
<b>Woods:</b>				
Poor condition (forest litter, small trees & brush are destroyed by heavy grazing or regular burning)	45	66	86	89
Fair condition (grazed but not burned, and some forest litter covers the soil)	36	60	73	79
Good condition (protected from grazing, and litter & brush adequately cover the soil)	30	55	70	77
<b>Percentage impervious for modeling fully-developed conditions</b>				
<b>Land use description<sup>c</sup></b>	<b>% impervious</b>			
Commercial/Industrial	85			
Residential	65			

a. Source: Soil Conservation Services Technical Release No. 55 (210 - VI TR55, Second Edition, June 1986)

b. Sites in the City of Tacoma shall be considered Type C soils unless a site specific soils investigation is conducted.

c. For the land use descriptions, roads are included in the percentage impervious.

## Chapter 2 Roof Downspout Controls

### 2.1 Description

This section presents the criteria for design and implementation of roof downspout controls. *Roof downspout controls* are simple pre-engineered designs for infiltrating and/or dispersing runoff from roof areas for the purposes of increasing opportunities for groundwater recharge and reduction of runoff volumes from new development or redevelopment. This chapter may also be applicable for onsite management of other impervious surfaces, as allowed by Environmental Services.

This chapter provides guidance for roof downspout controls for meeting the intent of Minimum Requirement #5, Onsite Stormwater Management. It may be possible to use this guidance for meeting the intent of Minimum Requirement #7 as well. Environmental Services may require additional soils or site information for larger projects when using the guidance in this chapter.

Roof downspout controls are used in conjunction with, and in addition to, any additional flow control facilities that may be necessary to mitigate stormwater impacts from the overall development. Implementation of roof downspout controls may reduce the total effective impervious area and result in less runoff from these surfaces. Flow credits for implementing infiltration and dispersion for controls are available as follows:

- If all the roof runoff is infiltrated according to the requirements of this section, the roof area may be discounted from the total project area used for determining flow control thresholds and sizing stormwater facilities.
- If roof runoff is dispersed according to the requirements of this section on lots greater than 22,000 square feet and the vegetative flow path<sup>1</sup> is 50 feet or longer through undisturbed native landscape or lawn/landscape area that meets BMP L613, the roof area may be modeled as grassed surface.

Additional information on flow credits is available in Volume 6, Chapter 2.

**NOTE:** Flow credits only apply to flow control thresholds. Flow credits do not apply to water quality thresholds.

### 2.2 Selection of Roof Downspout Controls

Per Minimum Requirement #5, Onsite Stormwater Management, all projects shall employ roof downspout controls to infiltrate, disperse and retain stormwater onsite to the maximum extent practicable. The applicant is required to control downspouts in the following order of preference:

- Rain gardens (Section 2.4)
- Downspout infiltration systems (Section 2.6)
- Downspout dispersion systems (Section 2.7) - only allowed if it can be demonstrated that infiltration is not feasible.
- Collect and convey to the City system (Section 2.8) - only allowed if it can be demonstrated that infiltration and dispersion are not feasible.

---

1. *Vegetative flow path* is measured from the downspout or dispersion system discharge point to the downstream property line, stream, wetland, or other impervious surface.

Drywells are generally prohibited within the City of Tacoma. Contact Environmental Services if a drywell is proposed.

### **2.3 Roof Downspout Infiltration Setbacks and Site Controls**

Setback requirements are generally required by the City, uniform building code requirements, the Tacoma-Pierce County Health Department, or other state regulation. Where a conflict between setbacks occurs, the City shall require compliance with the most stringent of the setback requirements from the various codes/regulations. The following are the minimum setbacks required per this manual.

- At least 100 feet from drinking water wells and springs used for public water supplies. Infiltration facilities upgradient of drinking water wells and within 1, 5 and 10-year time of travel zones must comply with the Health Department requirements (Washington Wellhead Protection Program, DOH, Publication #331-018).
- At least 10 feet from any building structure and at least 5 feet from any other structure or property line unless approved in writing by Environmental Services.
- Rain gardens designed for infiltration shall not be built on slopes steeper than 20%. A geotechnical analysis and report shall be required on slopes over 15% or if located within 200 feet of the top of steep slopes (40% or greater) or a landslide hazard area. More stringent setbacks may be required based upon Tacoma Municipal Code.
- At least 10 feet from septic tank and septic drainfields. Additional setbacks from DOH Publication #333-117, "Onsite Sewage Systems", Chapter 246-272A WAC may apply. Shall not be located upstream of residential septic systems unless topography or a hydrology analysis clearly indicates that subsurface flows will not impact the drainfield.
- Environmental Services may require additional setbacks or analysis for infiltration facilities proposed to be sited within the influence of known contaminated sites or abandoned landfills.

### **2.4 Procedure for Evaluating Feasibility of Downspout Infiltration**

Downspout infiltration is considered feasible if a rain garden or infiltration trench designed to meet the minimum design criteria specified in Section 2.5 or 2.6 can fit within the proposed project site and meet the setback site constraint requirements described in Section 2.3.

To determine if downspout infiltration is feasible, a site-specific soils report may be required. To determine if a soils report is required, evaluate if the minimum rain garden size from Table 3 - 4 or the minimum trench length from Table 3 - 5 can fit on the project site while maintaining the design criteria of Section 2.5.2 or Section 2.6.1.1. If the rain garden or infiltration trench can fit on the site and maintain the design criteria, a site-specific soils report is required.

For single lots the soils report must, at a minimum:

- Be prepared by a professional soils scientist certified by the Soil Science Society of America (or an equivalent national program), a locally licensed onsite sewage designer, other suitably-trained professional engineer, geologist, hydrogeologist, or engineering geologist registered in the State of Washington, or persons working under the supervision of one of the soils professionals listed here;
- Contain at least one soils log a minimum of 4 feet deep (from proposed grade) taken at the location of the proposed infiltration system;

- Identify the SCS series of the soil and the USDA textural class of the soil horizon through the depth of the log;
- Note any evidence of high groundwater level, such as mottling; and
- Note the depth to groundwater.

The design of the rain garden or infiltration trench shall be based upon the soil located at the proposed bottom of the rain garden or infiltration facility. If multiple soils logs are conducted, the least infiltrative soil found at the proposed bottom of the infiltration facility shall be used for design.

**NOTE:** On sites where soils are insufficient for infiltration based on the soils report and available land to construct facilities and meet setback requirements, a downspot dispersion system per Section 2.7 may be feasible in lieu of infiltration.

## **2.5 Roof Downspout Rain Gardens**

### **2.5.1 Purpose and Definition**

Bioretention areas are shallow stormwater retention facilities designed to mimic forested systems by controlling stormwater through detention, infiltration, and evapotranspiration.

### **2.5.2 Design Criteria**

#### **2.5.2.1 Groundwater Separation**

A minimum of 18 inches of separation is required between the lowest elevation of the bioretention soil or any underlying gravel infiltration layer and the seasonal high groundwater elevation or other impermeable layer.

#### **2.5.2.2 Flow Entrance/Presetting**

- Flow velocity entering the facility shall be less than 1 ft/sec for the 100-year, 24-hour storm event. If 1 ft/sec cannot be obtained, Environmental Services may approve the discharge with the addition of a designed flow dispersion or energy dissipation device.
- Use one of the following types of flow entrances (other alternatives may be considered on a case-by-case basis):
  - Dispersed, low velocity flow across a grade or landscape area. A minimum 2-inch grade change between the edge of the contributing area and flow entrance is required.
  - Pipe flow entrance. The inlet pipe invert elevation shall be higher than the overflow elevation. Place rock or other erosion protection material at the facility entrance to dissipate energy and/or provide flow dispersion.
- Environmental Services may require flow dispersion for rain gardens depending upon type of inlet design and size of the facility.
- Do not place plants directly in the entrance flow path as they can restrict or concentrate flows.
- Install flow diversion and erosion control measures to protect the bioretention area from sedimentation until the upstream area is stabilized.

- Based upon project site constraints, Environmental Services may require a presettling facility.

**2.5.2.3 Cell Ponding Area**

- The ponding depth shall be 12 inches.
- The surface pool drawdown time shall be less than 24 hours. If the rain garden is sized per Table 3 - 4, this requirement is met.
- Bioretention sizing is based on bottom area. Once bottom area is determined, top area shall be based upon side slopes and total depth of facility.
- The minimum freeboard measured from the maximum ponding water surface elevation to the top of the facility shall be 2” for drainage areas less than 1,000 square feet and 6” for drainage areas 1,000 square feet or greater.
- If berming is used to achieve the minimum top elevation, maximum slope on berm shall be 3H:1V, and minimum top width of design berm shall be 1 foot. Soil for berming shall be imported bioretention soil or amended native soil compacted to a minimum of 90% dry density.

**2.5.2.4 Overflow**

- Unless designed for full infiltration of the entire runoff volume, bioretention systems must include an overflow. Rain gardens sized using Table 3 - 4 are designed for full infiltration and are not required to have an overflow.
- An emergency overflow pathway shall be provided for all facilities to ensure that all potential overflows are directed into the downstream conveyance system or the public right of way.

**2.5.2.5 Bioretention Soil Mix**

The bioretention soil mix (BSM) shall:

- Have a 60% aggregate component as represented in Table 3 - 2 below and a 40% compost component as represented in Table 3 - 3 below.

**Table 3 - 2: Bioretention Soil Mix Aggregate Component Gradation**

Aggregate Component (60% by Volume)	
Sieve Size	Percent Passing
3/8”	100
#4	95-100
#10	75-90
#40	25-40
#100	4-10
#200	2-5

- The compost component shall be stable, mature, and derived from organic waste materials including yard debris, wood wastes or other organic matter. Compost must meet the Washington State compost regulations in WAC 173-350, which is available at <http://www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/swfa/compost> and meet the the following:

- Have a compost component meeting the size requirements in Table 3 - 3

**Table 3 - 3: Bioretention Soil Mix Compost Component Gradation**

Compost Component	
Sieve Size	Percent Passing
1"	99-100
5/8"	90-100
1/4"	40-90

- Have a pH between 5.5 and 8.0
- Have a manufactured inert material (plastic, concrete, ceramics, metal, etc.) less than 1.0% by weight
- Have a organic matter content between 45 and 65 percent dry weight bases as determined by TMECC 05.07A, "Loss-On-Ignition Organic Matter Method".
- Have a soluble salt content less than 6.0 mmhos/cm tested in accordance with TMECC 04.10-A, "1.5 Slurry Method, Mass Basis".
- Have a maturity greater than 80% in accordance with TMECC 05.05-A, "Germination and Vigor".
- Have a stability at 7 or below in accordance with TMECC 05-08.B, "Carbon Dioxide Evolution Rate".
- Have a compost product that contains a minimum of 65% and up to 100% by volume recycled plant waste as defined in WAC 173-350-100 as "Type 1 Feedstocks". A maximum of 35% by volume of other approved organic waste as defined in WAC 173-350-100 as "Type III", including post-consumer food waste but not including biosolids, may be substituted for recycled plant waste.
- Have a carbon to nitrogen ratio of less than 25:1 as determined using TMECC 04.01 "Total Carbon" and TMECC 04.02D "Total Kjeldhal Nitrogen". A ratio up to 35:1 can be used if all plants are native species.

The Washington State Department of Ecology keeps a list of approved composting facilities in Washington at: <http://www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/swfa/compost/>

- Minimum depth of bioretention soil mix must be 18 inches.
- Contact Environmental Services for assistance in verifying bioretention soil mix suitability.

**2.5.2.6 Planting**

- Plants must be tolerant of summer drought, ponding fluctuations, and saturated soil conditions.
- Consider rooting depth when choosing plants. Roots must not damage underground infrastructure.
- Consider adjacent plant communities and avoid potential invasive species.
- Consider aesthetics, rain gardens should blend into surrounding landscapes.
- "Low Impact Development: Technical Guidance Manual for Puget Sound" is a good tool for selecting proper bioretention plants.



- Submit a planting plan showing the type, location and size of each plant.
- Irrigation may be required until plants are fully established and in the summer months.

**2.5.2.7 Mulch Layer**

Bioretention facilities should be designed with a mulch layer. Properly selected mulch material reduces weed establishment, regulates soil temperatures and moisture, and adds organic matter to the soil.

- Mulch should be free of weed seeds, soil, roots, and other material that is not trunk or branch wood and bark. Mulch shall not include grass clippings, mineral aggregate or pure bark.
- Mulch shall be:
  - Compost in the bottom of the facilities, depth 3 inches
  - Wood chip mulch composed of shredded or chipped hardwood or softwood on side slopes, depth 4 inches.
- A dense groundcover can be used as an alternative to mulch although mulch shall be required until the dense groundcover is established.

**2.5.3 Sizing**

Table 3 - 4 shall be used for sizing facilities managing roof runoff to meet Minimum Requirement #5, Onsite Stormwater Management only. See Volume 6, BMP L630 for sizing facilities for projects that must comply with Minimum Requirement #6, Runoff Treatment and/or Minimum Requirement #7, Flow Control.

Table 3 - 4 gives the square footage of the bottom of the rain garden per 1000 square feet of roof area.

**Table 3 - 4: Sizing Table for Rain Gardens**

Soil Type	Rain Garden Bottom (square feet)
Coarse sands and cobbles	50
Medium sands	50
Fine sands, loamy sands	50
Sandy loam	50
Loam	150

**For sites with soils other than given in Table 3 - 4 or sites proposing an underdrain, an engineered design will be required. Refer to Volume 6, BMP L630 for sizing guidance.**

**2.5.3.1 Flow Credit**

If roof runoff is infiltrated according to the requirements of this section, the roof area may be deducted from the project area used for determining flow control thresholds and sizing stormwater facilities for flow control only. The deduction cannot be applied to pollutant-generating surfaces that require water quality treatment. If the thresholds for water quality treatment are met, water quality is required. A Stormwater Site Plan and Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan are still required.

### **2.5.4 General Construction Criteria**

- Do not install or excavate during soil saturation periods.
- Excavation and soil placement should be done from equipment operating adjacent to the facility – no heavy equipment should be operated in the facility if possible.
- If equipment must be operated within the facility, use lightweight, low ground pressure equipment and scarify the base to reduce compaction upon completion.
- Do not use fully excavated bioretention facilities for erosion and sedimentation control during construction;
  - Consider partial excavation of bioretention cells prior to construction (to within 12 inches above finished bottom grade) for use as temporary stormwater detention, if necessary.
- Clogged soil and silt shall be removed during excavation to finished bottom grade prior to installing bioretention cell profile.
- Scarify sides and bottom to roughen where heavy equipment may have compacted soil.
- Ensure the bioretention facility is protected from erosion and sedimentation until all contributory areas are fully stabilized.
- If sedimentation occurs within the bioretention facility, excavate the area a minimum of 12 inches below final grade to remove sediment.

### **2.5.5 Maintenance Criteria**

Per Minimum Requirement #10, an operation and maintenance plan shall be prepared for all stormwater management facilities. See Volume 1, Appendix D, Maintenance Checklist #22 for specific maintenance requirements for rain gardens. Maintenance shall be a basic consideration in design and cost-determination of the stormwater management facility.

Any standing water removed during the maintenance operation must be disposed of in a City approved manner. See the dewatering requirements in Volume 4 of this manual. Pretreatment may be necessary. Solids must be disposed of in accordance with state and local waste regulations.

Facilities shall be constructed such that the facility can be easily inspected by one person. This may require the construction of additional inspection ports or access manholes.

## **2.6 Downspout Infiltration Systems**

*Downspout infiltration systems* are trenches designed for flow control and/or complying with Minimum Requirement #5 and are intended only for use in infiltrating runoff from roof downspout drains. They are not designed to directly infiltrate runoff from pollutant-generating impervious surfaces. Volume 5, Chapter 5 contains a discussion of infiltration trenches for water quality treatment.

### **2.6.1 Flow Credit for Roof Downspout Infiltration**

If roof runoff is infiltrated according to the requirements of this section, the roof area may be discounted from the project area used for determining flow control thresholds and sizing flow control facilities. The deduction cannot be applied to pollutant-generating surfaces. If the thresholds for water quality treatment are met, water quality treatment is required. A Stormwater Site Plan and Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan are still required.

**2.6.1.1 Design Criteria for Infiltration Trenches**

Figure 3 - 1 shows a typical downspout infiltration trench system, and Figure 3 - 2 presents an alternative infiltration trench system for sites with coarse sand and cobble soils. Applicants may use either of these designs in conjunction with the soils table below or may model the site separately. Modeling must be conducted by a licensed engineer in the State of Washington.

**General**

1. The following minimum lengths (in linear feet [LF]) per 1,000 square feet of roof area based on soil type may be used for sizing downspout infiltration trenches. For soil types other than those presented in Table 3 - 5, additional geotechnical information and/or engineering analysis may be required by Environmental Services.

**Table 3 - 5: Downspout Infiltration Length for USDA Soil Type**

USDA Soil Type	Trench Length (linear feet)
Coarser	20
Sand	85
Loamy Sand	90
Sandy Loam	115
Loam	270
Silt Loam	270

2. Maximum length of trench must not exceed 100 feet from the inlet sump.
3. Minimum spacing between trenches shall be 4 feet measured from the edge of trench.
4. Non-woven geotextile fabric shall be placed around the walls, bottom and top of the trench aggregate. A 6-inch minimum layer of sand may be used as a filter media at the bottom of the trench instead of the geotextile. Volume 5, Appendix C contains specifications for geotextile fabric.
5. A minimum of three feet of separation is required from the proposed final grade to the seasonal high groundwater table.
6. A minimum of 1 foot of separation is required from the bottom of the infiltration trench to the seasonal high groundwater table.
7. Infiltration trenches may be placed in fill material if the fill is placed and compacted under the direct supervision of a geotechnical engineer or professional civil engineer with geotechnical expertise, and if the measured infiltration rate is at least 8 inches per hour. Trench length in fill must be 60 linear feet per 1,000 square feet of roof area. Infiltration rates can be tested using the methods described in Section 6.4.3.
8. Trenches may be located under pavement if a small yard drain or catch basin with grate cover is placed at the end of the trench pipe such that overflow would occur out of the catch basin at an elevation at least one foot below that of the pavement, and in a location which can accommodate the overflow without creating a significant adverse impact to downhill properties or drainage systems. This is intended to prevent saturation of the pavement in the event of system failure.

**2.6.1.2 Maintenance Criteria**

Per Minimum Requirement #10, an operation and maintenance plan shall be prepared for all stormwater management facilities. See Volume 1, Appendix D, Maintenance Checklist #3 for specific maintenance requirements for infiltration trenches. Maintenance shall be a basic consideration in design and cost-determination of the stormwater management facility.

Any standing water removed during the maintenance operation must be disposed of in a City approved manner. See the dewatering requirements in Volume 4 of this manual. Pretreatment may be necessary. Solids must be disposed of in accordance with state and local waste regulations.

Facilities shall be constructed such that the facility can be easily inspected by one person. This may require the construction of additional inspection ports or access manholes.

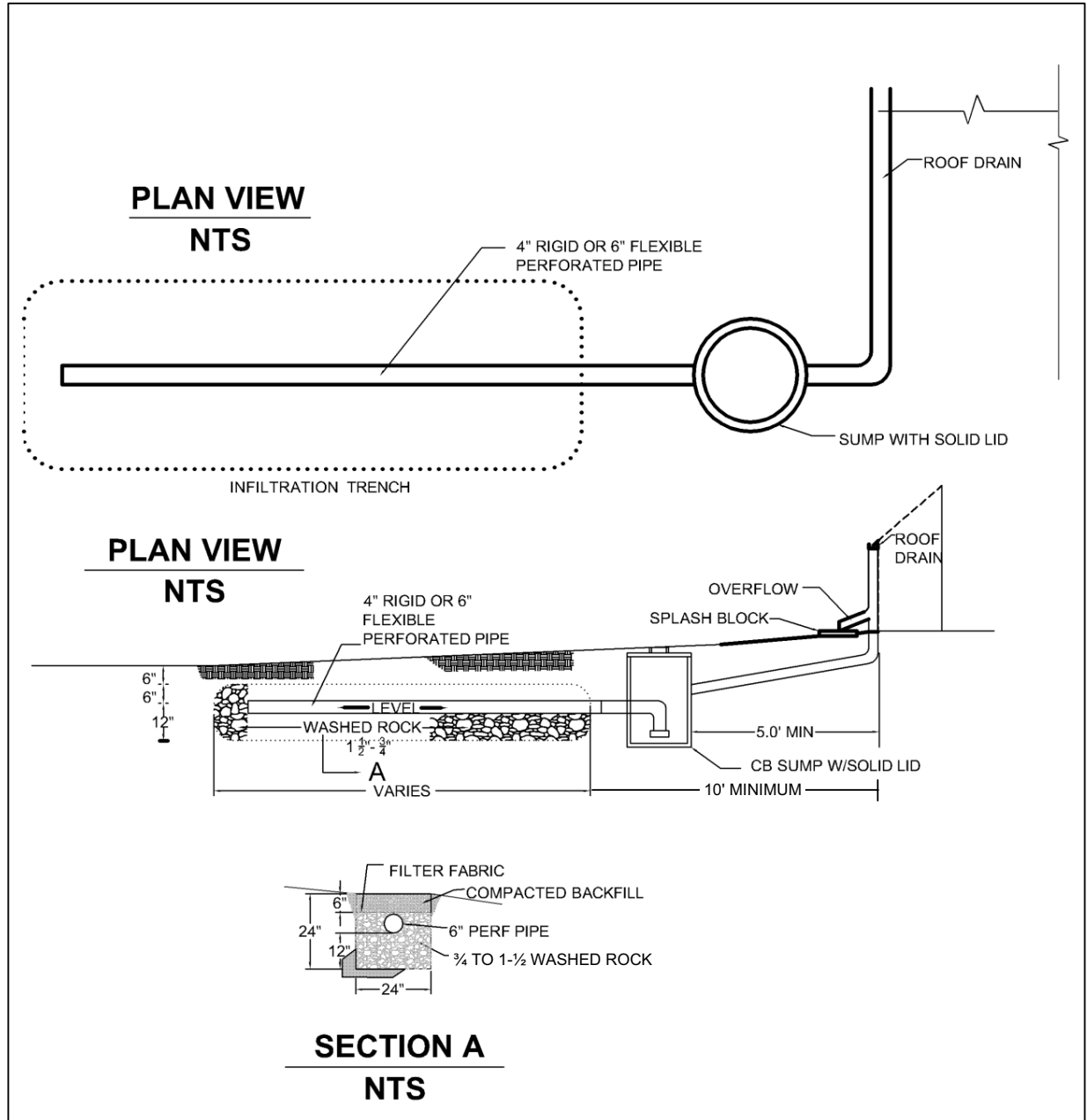


Figure 3 - 1. Typical Downspout Infiltration Trench

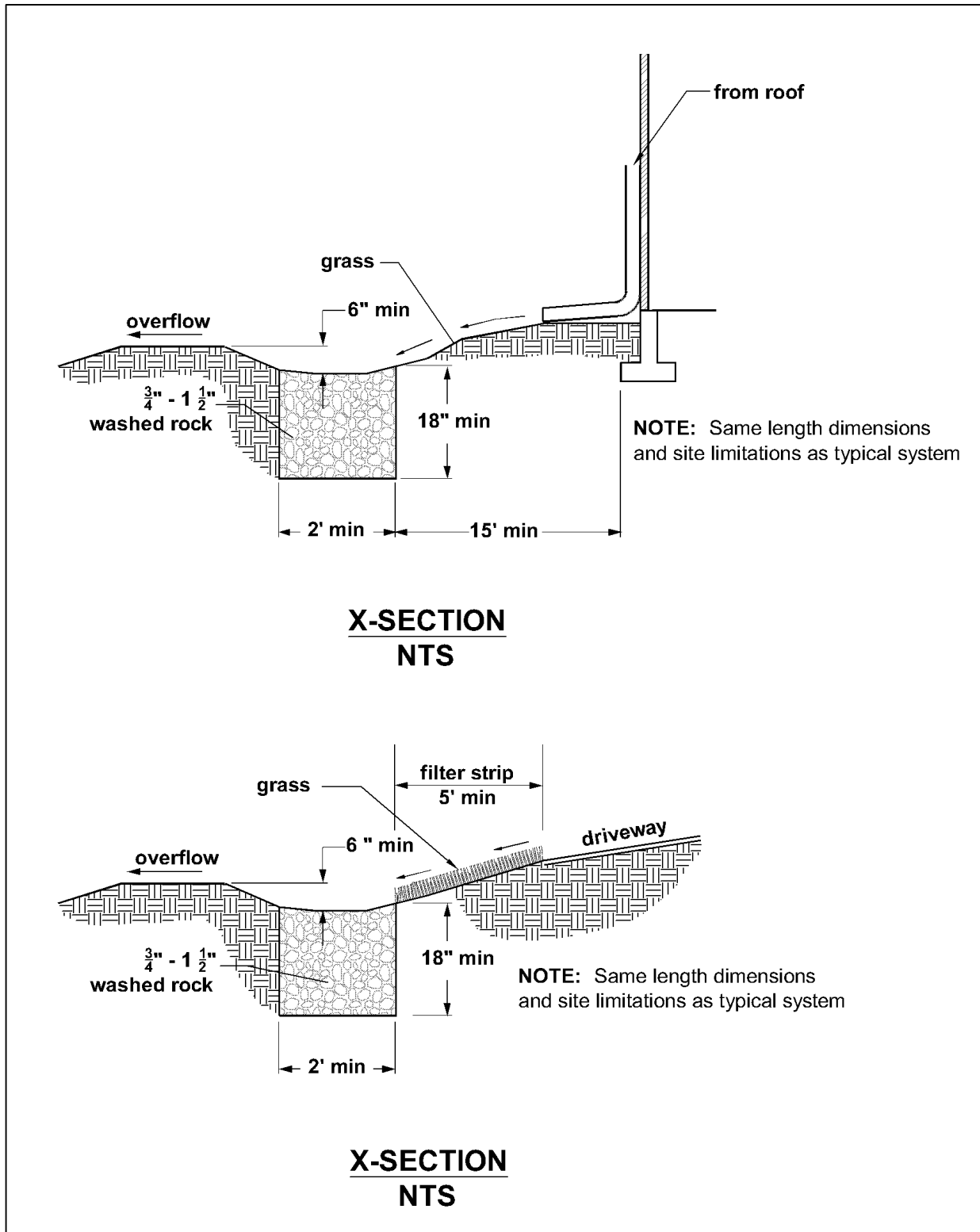


Figure 3 - 2. Alternative Infiltration Trench System for Coarse Sand and Gravel

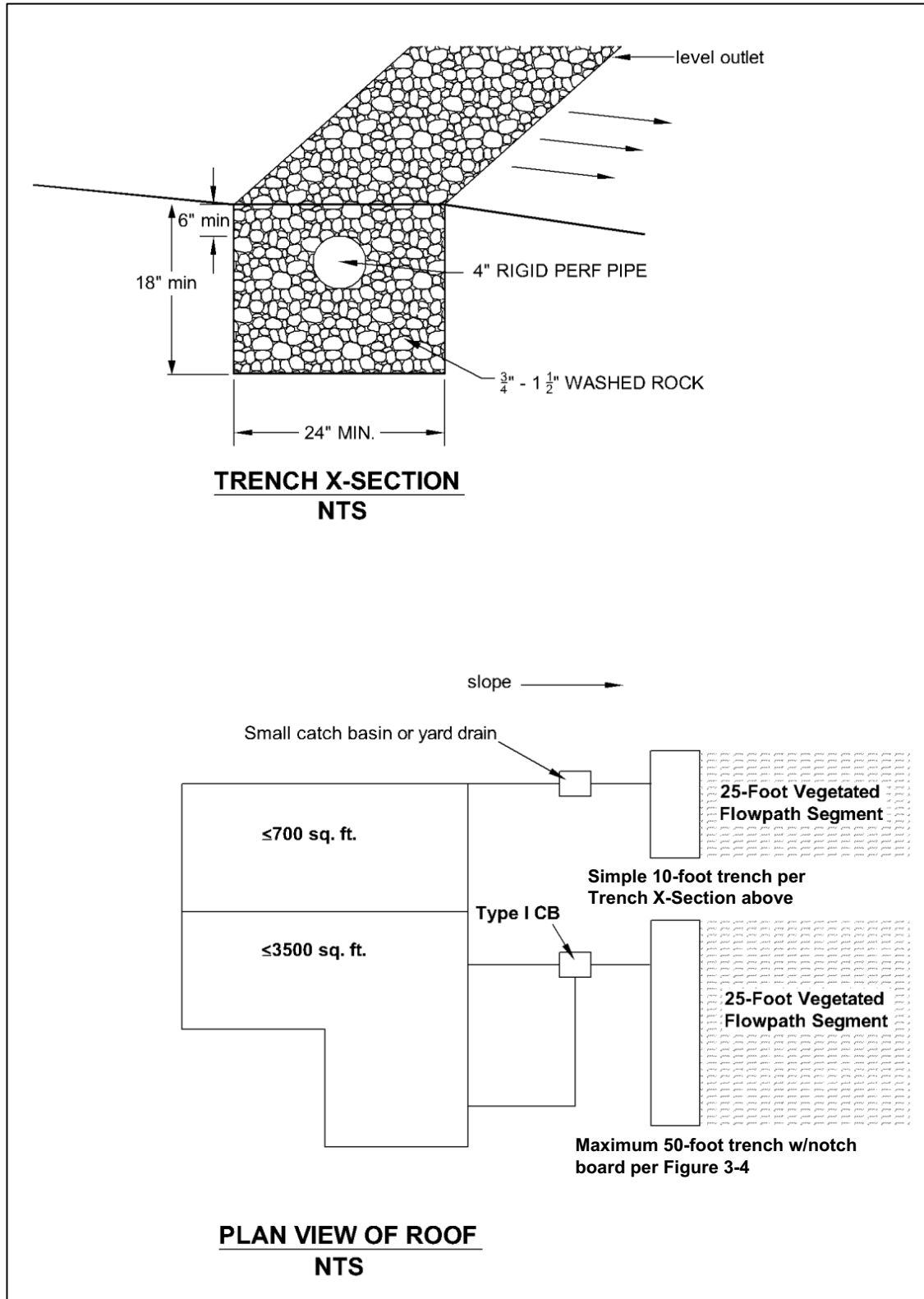


Figure 3 - 3. Typical Downspout Dispersion Trench

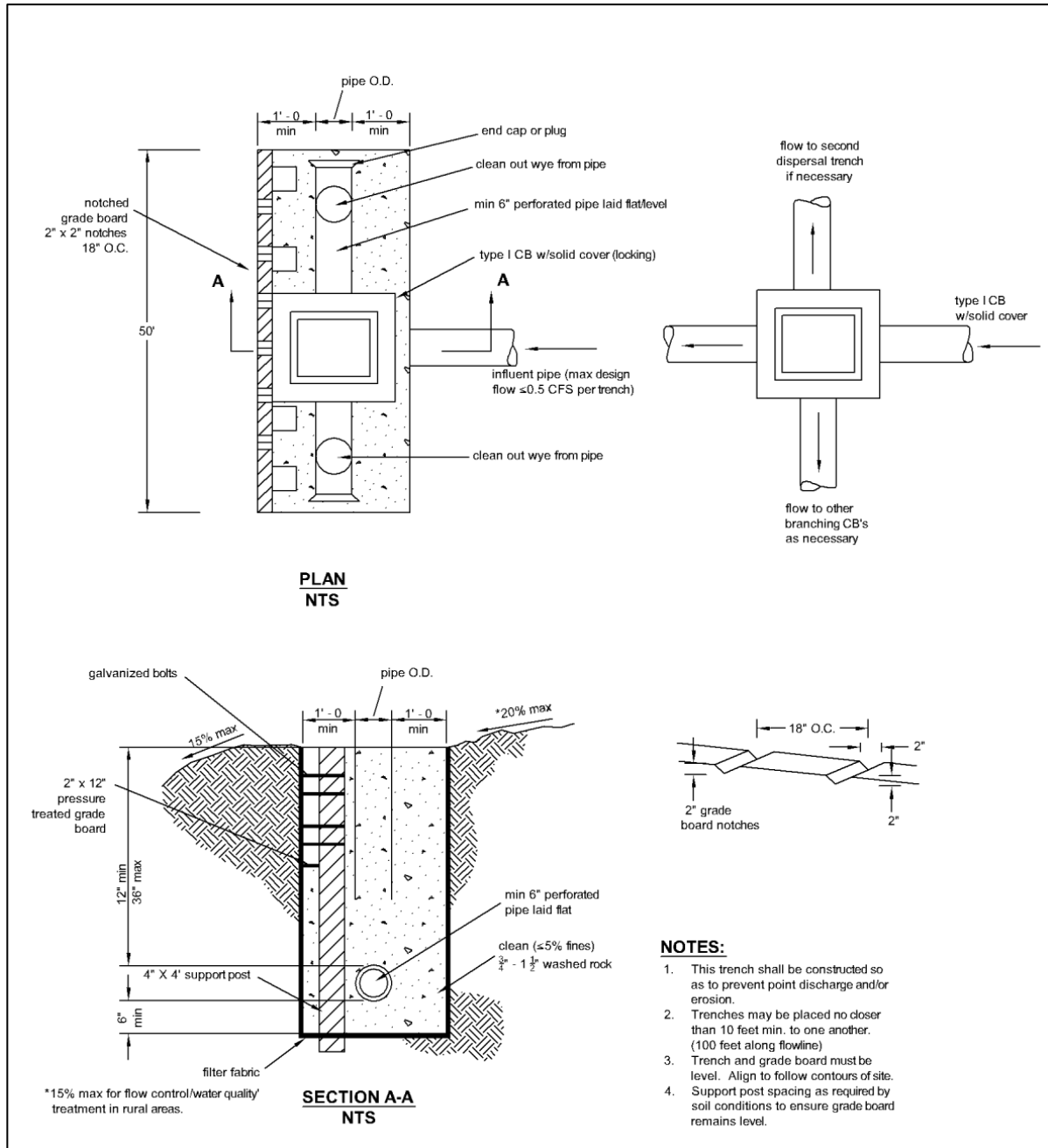


Figure 3 - 4. Standard Dispersion Trench with Notched Grade Board

## 2.7 Downspout Dispersion Systems

Downspout dispersion systems are splash blocks or dispersion facilities that spread roof runoff over vegetated pervious areas. Dispersion attenuates peak flows by slowing entry of the runoff into the conveyance system, allowing for some infiltration, and providing some water quality benefits.



### 2.7.1 Application

Downspout dispersion may be used on all sites that cannot infiltrate roof runoff and that meet the feasibility and setback requirements provided in the general design criteria below.

### 2.7.2 Flow Credit for Roof Downspout Dispersion

If roof runoff is dispersed according to the requirements of this section, and the *vegetative flow path*<sup>1</sup> of the roof runoff is 25 feet or greater through undisturbed native landscape or lawn/landscape area that meets BMP L613, the roof area may be modeled as a grassed surface for determining thresholds and sizing flow control devices. The deduction cannot be applied to pollutant-generating surfaces. If the thresholds for water quality treatment are met, water quality treatment is required.

### 2.7.3 General Design Criteria

- No erosion or flooding of downstream properties shall result.
- Downspout dispersion trenches designed as shown in Figure 3 - 3 or Figure 3 - 4 should be used for all downspout dispersion applications except where splash blocks are allowed.
- Perforated stub-out connections shall not be used.
- For sites with septic systems, the discharge point of all dispersion systems must be downgradient of the drainfield. This requirement may be waived if site topography clearly prohibits flows from intersecting the drainfield.
- For sites with septic systems, the discharge point must be downslope of the primary and reserve drainfield areas. This requirement may be waived if site topography clearly prohibits flows from intersecting the drainfield or where site conditions (soil permeability, distance between systems, etc) indicate that this is unnecessary.
- Place all dispersion systems at least 5 feet from any property line. If necessary, setbacks shall be increased from the minimum 5 feet in order to maintain a 1:1 side slope for future excavation and maintenance.
- Setback dispersion systems from sensitive areas, steep slopes, landslide hazard areas, and erosion hazard areas as governed by the Tacoma Municipal Code.
- All dispersion systems shall be at least 10 feet from any structure. If necessary, setbacks shall be increased from the minimum 10 feet in order to maintain a 1H:1V side slope for future excavation and maintenance.
- For sites with multiple dispersion systems, a minimum separation of 10 feet is required between flowpaths. Environmental Services may require a larger separation based upon site conditions such as slope, soil type and total contributing area.
- Runoff discharged towards landslide hazard areas must be evaluated by a geotechnical engineer or a licensed geologist, hydrogeologist, or engineering geologist. The discharge point shall not be placed on or above slopes greater than 20% (5H:1V) or above erosion hazard areas without evaluation by a geotechnical engineer or qualified geologist and City approval.

---

1. *Vegetative flow path* is measured from the downspout or dispersion system discharge point to the downstream property line, stream, wetland, or other impervious surface.

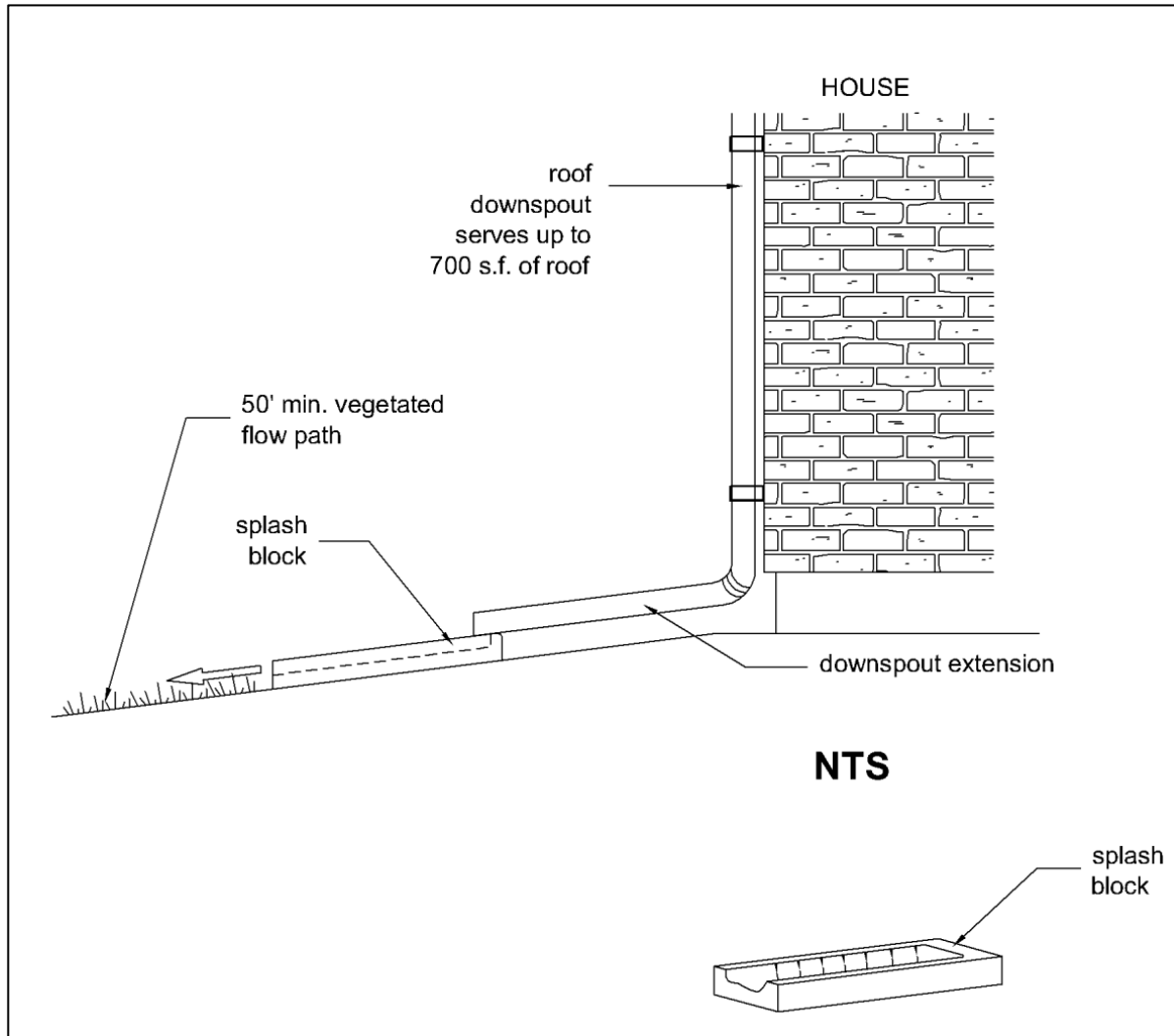
***Design Criteria for Dispersion Trenches***

- Design dispersion trenches as shown in Figure 3 - 3 and Figure 3 - 4.
- A vegetated flowpath of at least 25 feet in length must be maintained between the outlet of the trench and any property line, structure, stream, wetland, or impervious surface. A vegetated flowpath of at least 50 feet in length must be maintained between the outlet of the trench and any slope, 20% or greater. Sensitive area buffers may count towards flowpath lengths if approved by the City of Tacoma.
- Trenches serving up to 700 square feet of roof area may be simple 10-foot-long by 2-foot wide gravel filled trenches as shown in Figure 3 - 3. For roof areas larger than 700 square feet, a dispersion trench with notched grade board may be used as approved by the City. The total length of this design must not exceed 50 feet and must provide at least 10 feet of trench per 700 square feet of roof area.

***Design Criteria for Splashblocks***

A typical downspout splashblock is shown in Figure 3 - 5. In general, if the ground is sloped away from the foundation and there is adequate vegetation and area for effective dispersion, splashblocks will adequately disperse storm runoff. If the ground is fairly level, if the structure includes a basement, or if foundation drains are proposed, splashblocks with downspout extensions may be a better choice because the discharge point is moved away from the foundation. Downspout extensions can include piping to a splashblock/discharge point a considerable distance from the downspout, as long as the runoff can travel through a well-vegetated area as described below.

- A vegetated flow path of at least 50 feet shall be maintained between the discharge point and any property line, structure, steep slope, stream, wetland, lake, or other impervious surface. Sensitive area buffers may count toward flow path lengths.
- Flows shall not be directed onto sidewalks.
- A maximum of 700 square feet of roof area may drain to each splashblock.
- A splashblock or a pad of crushed rock (2 feet wide by 3 feet long by 6 inches deep) shall be placed at each downspout discharge point.



*Figure 3 - 5. Typical Downspout Splashblock Dispersion*

## 2.8 Collect and Convey

Where it can be demonstrated that infiltration and dispersion are not feasible for roof downspout controls, it may be allowable to collect and convey to the City stormwater system. This may be either the curb, if present, or the actual pipe and structure conveyance system.

Conveyance to the curb will only be allowed if a catch basin is located within 350 feet downstream of the discharge point. If a catch basin is not located within 350 feet of the discharge location, a storm main extension shall be required.

Minimum pipe size for conveyance to the curb shall be 3 inches in diameter. Where capacity greater than a 3 inch diameter pipe is required, Environmental Services shall review the proposal and may require a storm main extension.

**NOTE:** Environmental Services will only approve on a case-by-case basis those facilities that would require more than one through-curb discharge point.

For total roof areas 2,000 to 5,000 sf, roof runoff may be allowed to be collected and conveyed to either the curb or directly connected to a structure. The runoff shall not be conveyed over driveways, sidewalks or other areas reserved for pedestrian traffic. A detail for the discharge shall be submitted to Environmental Services for review and approval.

For roof areas between 5,001 sf and 9,999 sf, roof runoff may be allowed to be collected and conveyed to the curb or stormwater structure unless Minimum Requirement #7 applies and requires alternative mitigation. Capacity analysis of the road gutter, conveyance piping and catch basin leads will be required to ensure that adequate capacity exists (see Section 9.6). Environmental Services may require more than one through curb outlet for discharge to the curb.

For roof areas 10,000 sf and greater, please refer to Minimum Requirement #7.

No flow credits will be allowed for the collect and convey option.

## **Chapter 3 Dispersion BMPs**

### **3.1 BMP L611 Concentrated Flow Dispersion**

#### **3.1.1 Purpose and Definition**

Dispersion of concentrated flows from driveways or other pavement through a vegetated pervious area attenuates peak flows by slowing entry of the runoff into the conveyance system, allows for some infiltration, and provides some water quality benefits.

#### **3.1.2 Applications and Limitations**

- Any situation where concentrated flow can be dispersed through vegetation.
- Dispersion for driveways will generally only be effective for single-family residences on large lots and in rural short plats. Lots proposed by short plats in urban areas will generally be too small to provide effective dispersion of driveway runoff.
- Figure 3 - 6 shows two possible ways of spreading flows from steep driveways.

#### **3.1.3 Design Criteria**

- Maintain a vegetated flowpath of at least 50 feet between the discharge point and any property line, structure, steep slope, stream, lake, wetland, lake, or other impervious surface.
- A maximum of 700 square feet of impervious area may drain to each concentrated flow dispersion BMP.
- Place a pad of crushed rock (2 feet wide by 3 feet long by 6 inches deep) at each discharge point.
- No erosion or flooding of downstream properties shall result.

#### **3.1.4 Setback Criteria**

Setback requirements are generally required by the City, uniform building code requirements, the Tacoma Pierce County Health Department, or other state regulations. Where a conflict between setbacks occurs, the City shall require compliance with the most stringent of the setback requirements from the various codes/regulations. The following are the minimum setbacks required per this manual.

- All systems shall be at least 10 feet from any building structure and at least 5 feet from any other structure or property line unless approved in writing by Environmental Services. If necessary, setbacks shall be increased from the minimum 10 feet in order to maintain a 1H:1V side slope for future excavation and maintenance. Vertical pond walls may necessitate an increase in setbacks.
- Discharge points shall not be placed on slopes steeper than 20 percent. A geotechnical analysis and report shall be required on slopes over 15% or if located within 200 feet of the top of steep slopes (40% or greater) or a landslide hazard area. More stringent setbacks may be required based upon the Tacoma Municipal Code.
- At least 10 feet from septic tanks and septic drainfields. Additional setbacks from DOH Publication 333-117 Onsite Sewage Systems, Chapter 246-272A WAC may apply. Shall not be located upstream of residential septic systems unless topography or a hydrology analysis clearly indicates that subsurface flows will not impact the drainfield.

- Environmental Services may require additional setbacks or analysis for dispersion facilities proposed to be sited within the influence of known contaminated sites or abandoned landfills.

### **3.1.5 Flow Credits for Concentrated Flow Dispersion**

Where concentrated flow dispersion is used to disperse runoff into an undisturbed native landscape area or an area that meets the requirements of “Post-Construction Soil Quality and Depth”, and the vegetated flow path is at least 50 feet in length, the impervious area may be modeled as landscaped area.

### **3.1.6 Maintenance:**

Per Minimum Requirement #10, an operation and maintenance manual shall be prepared for all stormwater management facilities. Maintenance shall be a basic consideration in design and cost-determination of the stormwater management facility.

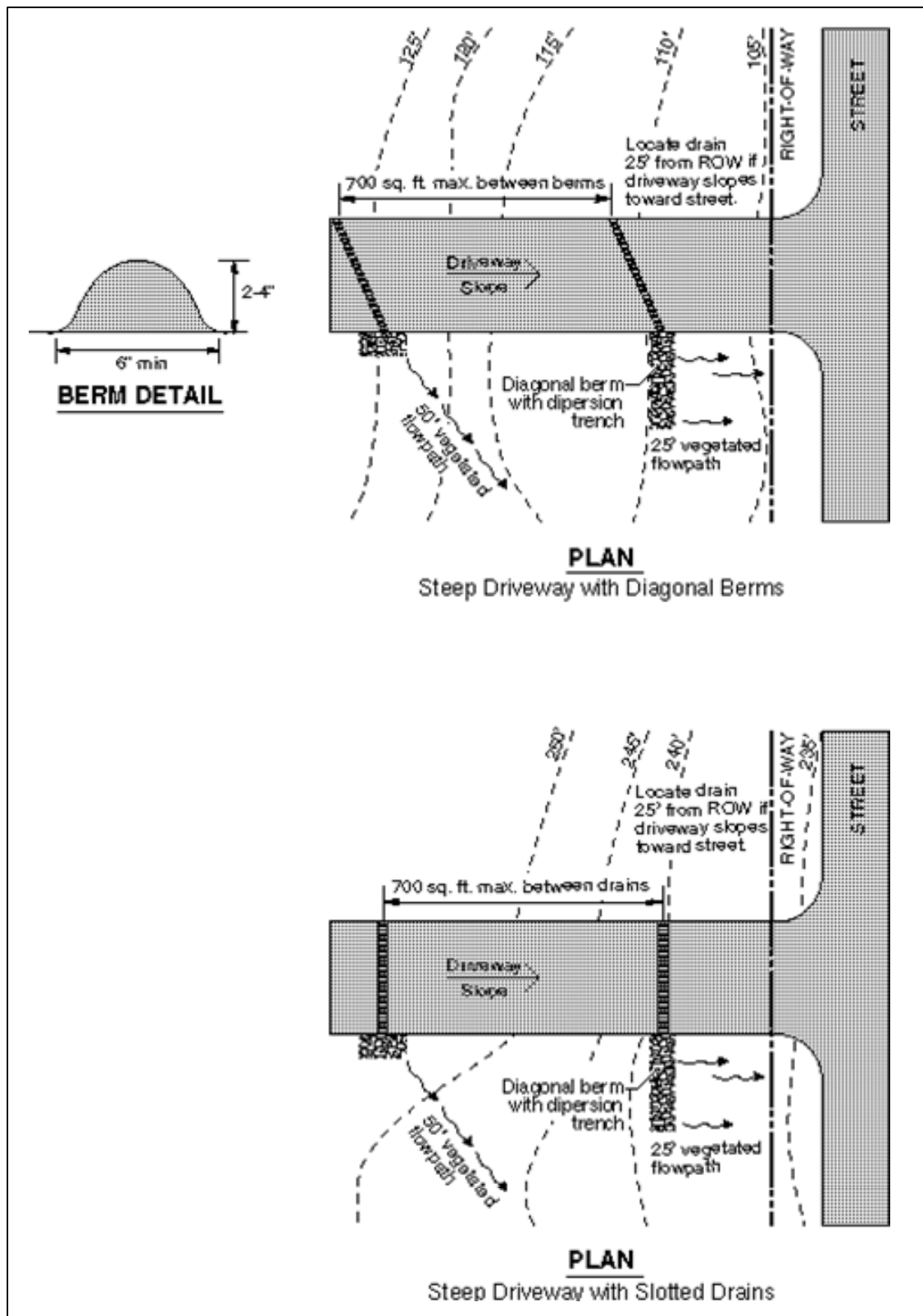


Figure 3 - 6. Typical Concentrated Flow Dispersion for Steep Driveways

## 3.2 BMP L612 Sheet Flow Dispersion

### 3.2.1 Purpose and Definition

Sheet flow dispersion is the simplest method of runoff control. This BMP can be used for any impervious or pervious surface that is graded so as to avoid concentrating flows. Because flows are already dispersed as they leave the surface, they need only traverse a narrow band of adjacent vegetation for effective attenuation and some treatment.

### 3.2.2 Applications and Limitations

Flat or moderately sloping (<15% slope) impervious surfaces such as driveways, sport courts, patios, and roofs without gutters; sloping cleared areas that are comprised of bare soil, non-native landscaping, lawn, and/or pasture; or any situation where concentration of flows can be avoided.

### 3.2.3 Design Criteria

- See Figure 3 - 7 for details for driveways.
- Provide a 2-foot-wide transition zone to discourage channeling between the edge of the driveway pavement and the downslope vegetation, or under building eaves. This may be an extension of subgrade material (crushed rock), modular pavement, drain rock, or other material acceptable to the City.
- Provide a vegetated buffer width of 10 feet of vegetation for up to 20 feet of width of paved or impervious surface. Add an additional 5 feet of width for each additional 20 feet of width or fraction thereof.
- Provide a vegetated buffer width of 25 feet of vegetation for up to 150 feet of contributing cleared area (i.e., bare soil, non-native landscaping, lawn, and/or pasture). Slopes within the 25-foot minimum flowpath through vegetation should be no steeper than 8 percent. If this criterion cannot be met due to site constraints, the 25-foot flowpath length must be increased 1.5 feet for each percent increase in slope above 8%.
- No erosion or flooding of downstream properties may result.

### 3.2.4 Setback Criteria

Setback requirements are generally required by the City, uniform building code requirements, the Tacoma Pierce County Health Department, or other state regulations. Where a conflict between setbacks occurs, the City shall require compliance with the most stringent of the setback requirements from the various codes/regulations. The following are the minimum setbacks required per this manual.

- All systems shall be at least 10 feet from any building structure and at least 5 feet from any other structure or property line unless approved in writing by Environmental Services. If necessary, setbacks shall be increased from the minimum 10 feet in order to maintain a 1H:1V side slope for future excavation and maintenance.
- Discharge points shall not be placed on slopes steeper than 20 percent. A geotechnical analysis and report shall be required on slopes over 15% or if located within 200 feet of the top of steep slopes (40% or greater) or a landslide hazard area. More stringent setbacks may be required based upon the Tacoma Municipal Code.
- At least 10 feet from septic tanks and septic drainfields. Additional setbacks from DOH Publication 333-117 Onsite Sewage Systems, Chapter 246-272A WAC may apply. Shall



not be located upstream of residential septic systems unless topography or a hydrology analysis clearly indicates that subsurface flows will not impact the drainfield.

- Environmental Services may require additional setbacks or analysis for dispersion facilities proposed to be sited within the influence of known contaminated sites or abandoned landfills.

### **3.2.5 Flow Credits for Sheet Flow Dispersion**

Where sheet flow dispersion is used to disperse runoff into an undisturbed native landscape area or an area that meets the requirements of “Post-Construction Soil Quality and Depth”, the impervious area may be modeled as landscaped area.

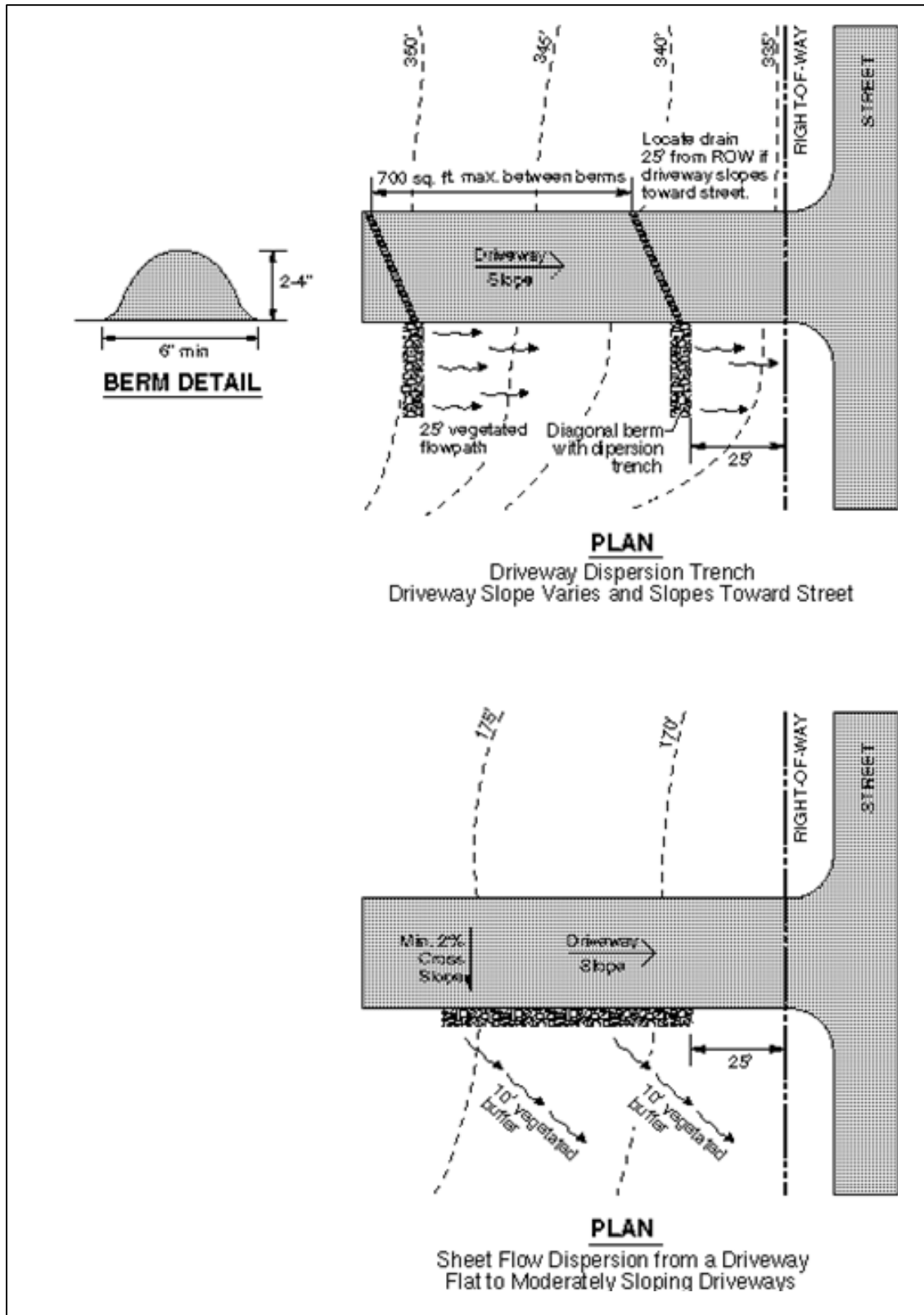


Figure 3 - 7. Sheet Flow Dispersion for Driveways

### 3.3 BMP L614 Full Dispersion

#### 3.3.1 Purpose and Definition

This BMP allows for "fully dispersing" runoff from impervious surfaces and cleared areas of development sites that preserve at least 65% of the site (or a threshold discharge area on the site) in a forest or native condition.

#### 3.3.2 Applications and Limitations

- Full dispersion can be used as long as the developed areas draining to the native vegetation do not have impervious surfaces that exceed 10% of the entire site.
- Other types of development that retain 65% of the site (or a threshold discharge area on the site) in a forested or native condition may also use these BMPs to avoid triggering the flow control facility requirement.
- Runoff must be dispersed into native areas.

#### 3.3.3 Design Guidelines

- **Roof Downspouts** - Roof surfaces that comply with the downspout infiltration requirements in Chapter 2 are considered to be "fully dispersed" (i.e., zero percent effective imperviousness). All other roof surfaces are considered to be "fully dispersed" (i.e., at or approaching zero percent effective imperviousness) only if they are within a threshold discharge area that is or will be more than 65% forested (or native vegetative cover) and less than 10% impervious (total), and if they comply with the downspout dispersion requirements of BMP L610, and have vegetated flow paths through native vegetation exceeding 100 feet.
- **Driveway Dispersion** - Driveway surfaces are considered to be "fully dispersed" if they are within a threshold discharge area that is or will be more than 65% forested (or native vegetative cover) and less than 10% impervious (total), and if they comply with the driveway dispersion BMPs – BMP L611 and BMP L612 - and have flow paths through native vegetation exceeding 100 feet. This also holds true for any driveway surfaces that comply with the roadway dispersion BMPs described below.
- **Roadway Dispersion BMPs** - Roadway surfaces are considered to be "fully dispersed" if they are within a threshold discharge area that is or will be more than 65% forested (or native vegetative cover) and less than 10% impervious (total), and if they comply with the following dispersion requirements:
  - Roadway runoff dispersion is allowed only on rural neighborhood collectors and local access streets. To the extent feasible, disperse driveways to the same standards as roadways to ensure adequate water quality protection of downstream resources.
  - Design the road section to minimize collection and concentration of roadway runoff. Use sheet flow over roadway fill slopes (i.e., where roadway subgrade is above adjacent right-of-way) wherever possible to avoid concentration.
  - When it is necessary to collect and concentrate runoff from the roadway and adjacent upstream areas (e.g., in a ditch on a cut slope), concentrated flows shall be incrementally discharged from the ditch via cross culverts or at the ends of cut sections. These incremental discharges of newly concentrated flows shall not exceed 0.5 cfs at any one discharge point from a ditch for the 100-year runoff event. Where flows at a particular ditch discharge point were already concentrated under existing

- site conditions (e.g., in a natural channel that crosses the roadway alignment), the 0.5-cfs limit would be in addition to the existing concentrated peak flows.
- Ditch discharge points with up to 0.2 cfs discharge for the peak 100-year flow shall use rock pads or dispersion trenches to disperse flows. Ditch discharge points with between 0.2 and 0.5 cfs discharge for the 100-year peak flow shall use only dispersion trenches to disperse flows.
  - Dispersion trenches shall be designed to accept storm flows (free discharge) from a pipe, culvert, or ditch end, shall be aligned perpendicular to the flowpath, and shall be minimum 2 feet by 2 feet in section, 50 feet in length, filled with  $\frac{3}{4}$ -inch to  $1\frac{1}{2}$ -inch washed rock, and provided with a level notched grade board (see Figure 3 - 4). Manifolds may be used to split flows up to 2 cfs discharge for the 100-year peak flow between up to 4 trenches.
  - After being dispersed with rock pads or trenches, flows from ditch discharge points must traverse a minimum of 100 feet of undisturbed native vegetation before leaving the project site, or entering an existing onsite channel carrying existing concentrated flows across the road alignment.
  - Flowpaths from adjacent discharge points must not intersect within the 100-foot flowpath lengths, and dispersed flow from a discharge point must not be intercepted by another discharge point. To enhance the flow control and water quality effects of dispersion, the flowpath shall not exceed 15% slope, and shall be located within designated open space.
  - Where the City determines there is a potential for significant adverse impacts downstream (e.g., erosive steep slopes or existing downstream drainage problems), dispersion of roadway runoff may not be allowed, or other measures may be required.

### 3.3.4 Setback Criteria

Setback requirements are generally required by the City, uniform building code requirements, the Tacoma Pierce County Health Department, or other state regulations. Where a conflict between setbacks occurs, the City shall require compliance with the most stringent of the setback requirements from the various codes/regulations. The following are the minimum setbacks required per this manual.

- All systems shall be at least 10 feet from any building structure and at least 5 feet from any other structure or property line unless approved in writing by Environmental Services. If necessary, setbacks shall be increased from the minimum 10 feet in order to maintain a 1H:1V side slope for future excavation and maintenance.
- Discharge points shall not be placed on slopes steeper than 20 percent. A geotechnical analysis and report shall be required on slopes over 15% or if located within 200 feet of the top of steep slopes (40% or greater) or a landslide hazard area. More stringent setbacks may be required based upon the Tacoma Municipal Code.
- At least 10 feet from septic tanks and septic drainfields. Additional setbacks from DOH Publication 333-117 Onsite Sewage Systems, Chapter 246-272A WAC may apply. Shall not be located upstream of residential septic systems unless topography or a hydrology analysis clearly indicates that subsurface flows will not impact the drainfield.
- Environmental Services may require additional setbacks or analysis for dispersion facilities proposed to be sited within the influence of known contaminated sites or abandoned landfills

### **3.3.5 Cleared Area Dispersion BMPs**

The runoff from cleared areas that are comprised of bare soil, non-native landscaping, lawn, and/or pasture is considered to be "fully dispersed" if it is dispersed through at least 25 feet of native vegetation in accordance with the following criteria:

- The contributing flowpath of cleared area being dispersed must be no more than 150 feet.
- Slopes within the 25-foot minimum flowpath through native vegetation should be no steeper than 8%. If this criterion cannot be met due to site constraints, the 25-foot flowpath length must be increased 1.5 feet for each percent increase in slope above 8%.

### **3.3.6 Flow Credits for Full Dispersion**

Sites that can fully disperse are not required to provide runoff treatment or flow control facilities.

## Chapter 4 Soil Quality BMPs

### 4.1 BMP L613 Post-Construction Soil Quality and Depth

#### 4.1.1 Purpose and Definition

Naturally occurring (undisturbed) soil and vegetation provide important stormwater functions including: water infiltration; nutrient, sediment, and pollutant adsorption; sediment and pollutant biofiltration; water interflow storage and transmission; and pollutant decomposition. These functions are largely lost when development strips away native soil and vegetation and replaces it with minimal topsoil and sod. Not only are these important stormwater functions lost, but such landscapes themselves become pollution generating pervious surfaces due to increased use of pesticides, fertilizers and other landscaping and household/industrial chemicals, the concentration of pet wastes, and pollutants that accompany roadside litter.

#### 4.1.2 Applications and Limitations

Soil amendments are required for the disturbed areas of sites subject to Minimum Requirement #5.

Where Minimum Requirement #5 does not apply, and the site is proposing a traditional lawn installation, compost-amended lawn soil is strongly encouraged.

Use soil amendments in areas that will be incorporated into the stormwater drainage system such as vegetated channels, rain gardens, bioretention areas, and lawn and landscaped areas.

#### 4.1.3 Design Criteria

##### Soil Retention

- The duff layer and native topsoil should be retained in an undisturbed state to the maximum extent practicable. In any areas requiring grading, remove and stockpile the duff layer and topsoil on site in a designated, controlled area, not adjacent to public resources and critical areas, to be reapplied to other portions of the site where feasible.

##### Soil Quality

- All areas subject to clearing and grading that will not be covered by impervious surface, incorporated into a drainage facility or engineered as structural fill or slope shall, at project completion, demonstrate the following:
  - A topsoil layer with a minimum organic matter content of ten percent dry weight in planting beds, and 5% organic matter content in turf areas, and a pH from 6.0 to 8.0 or matching the pH of the original undisturbed soil.
  - The topsoil layer shall have a minimum depth of eight inches except where tree roots limit the depth of incorporation of amendments needed to meet the criteria. Subsoils below the topsoil layer should be scarified at least 4 inches with some incorporation of the upper material to avoid stratified layers, where feasible.
  - Planting beds have been mulched with 2 inches of organic material
- Quality of compost and other materials used to meet the organic content requirements:
  - The organic content for “pre-approved” amendment rates can be met only using compost that meets the definition of “composted materials” in WAC 173-350-220. The WAC is available online at: <http://www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/swfa/facilities/350.html>

The compost must also have an organic matter content of 35% to 65%, and a carbon to nitrogen ratio below 25:1.

The carbon to nitrogen ratio may be as high as 35:1 for plantings composed entirely of plants native to the Puget Sound Lowlands region.

- Calculated amendment rates may be met through use of composted materials as defined above; or other organic materials amended to meet the carbon to nitrogen ratio requirements, and meeting the contaminant standards of Grade A Compost.
- The resulting soil shall be conducive to the type of vegetation to be established.

#### **4.1.4 Implementation Options:**

Use one of the following options to meet the post construction soil quality and depth requirements. Use the most recent version of “Guidelines for Resources for Implementing Soil Quality and Depth BMP T5.13” to meet the requirements of this BMP. This guidance can be found online at: [www.soilsforsalmon.org](http://www.soilsforsalmon.org)

**Option 1.** Leave native vegetation and soil undisturbed, and protect from compaction during construction.

**Option 2.** Amend existing site topsoil or subsoil either at default “pre-approved” rates, or at custom calculated rates based on specifiers tests of the soil and amendment.

**Option 3.** Stockpile existing topsoil during grading, and replace it prior to planting. Stockpiled topsoil must also be amended if needed to meet the organic matter or depth requirements, either at a default “pre-approved” rate or at a custom calculated rate.

**Option 4.** Import topsoil mix of sufficient organic content and depth to meet the requirements.

More than one method may be used on different portions of the same site. Soil that already meets the depth and organic matter quality standards, and is not compacted, does not need to be amended.

#### **4.1.5 Maintenance**

- Soil quality and depth should be established toward the end of construction and once established, should be protected from compaction, such as from large machinery use, and from erosion.
- Soil should be planted and mulched after installation.
- Plant debris or its equivalent should be left on the soil surface to replenish organic matter.
- It should be possible to reduce use of irrigation, fertilizers, herbicides and pesticides. These activities should be adjusted where possible, rather than continuing to implement formerly established practices.

#### **4.1.6 Flow Reduction Credits for BMP L613**

Flow reduction credits can be taken in runoff modeling when Post-Construction Soil Quality and Depth is used as part of a dispersion design under the conditions described in:

BMP L610 Downspout Dispersion  
BMP L611 Concentrated Flow Dispersion  
BMP L612 Sheet Flow Dispersion

## **Chapter 5 Tree Retention & Transplanting BMPs**

Trees provide flow control via interception, transpiration, and increased infiltration. Additional environmental benefits include improved air quality, carbon sequestration, reduced heat island effect, pollutant removal, and habitat preservation or formation.

When implemented in accordance with the criteria outlined below, retained and newly planted trees receive credits toward meeting flow control requirements. The degree of flow control provided by a tree depends on the tree type (i.e., evergreen or deciduous), crown area, and whether or not the tree crown overhangs impervious surfaces.

### **5.1 Applications and Limitations**

Trees are a landscape amenity with flow control benefits that can be applied in most settings. Flow control credit is given for retaining or transplanting trees, especially those within 20 feet of ground level impervious surfaces such as driveways, patios, and parking lots.

### **5.2 Retained Trees**

#### **5.2.1 Site Considerations**

Setbacks of proposed infrastructure from existing trees are a critical consideration. Tree protection requirements limit grading and other disturbances in proximity to the tree.

#### **5.2.2 Design Criteria**

The following provides requirements and recommendations associated with tree retention for flow control credit. Review submittal shall include the existing tree species, trunk diameter, crown area (and dripline delineation), and location (relative to existing ground level impervious surfaces and proposed development, including clearing and grading) on the plan set.

##### **5.2.2.1 Certified Arborist Report**

A certified arborist report is required to obtain credits for stormwater mitigation. The arborist report must include the following information at a minimum:

- species of the tree(s) that are proposed for retention
- condition of the tree(s) that are proposed for retention
- verification that the proposed project will not negatively impact the tree(s)

##### **5.2.2.2 Tree Species and Condition**

Existing tree species and location must be clearly shown on submittal drawings.

Trees must be viable for long-term retention (i.e., in good health and compatible with proposed construction).

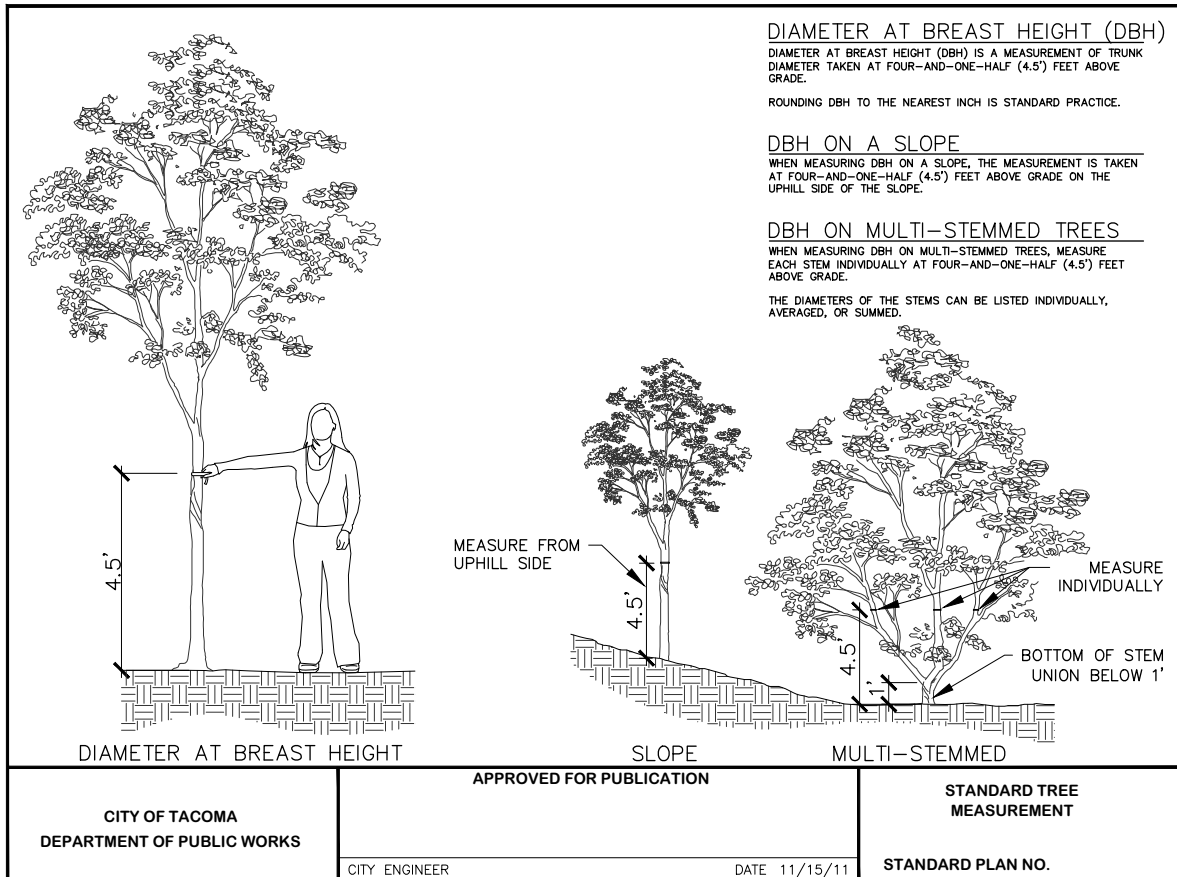
##### **5.2.2.3 Tree Size**

To receive flow control credit, retained trees shall have a minimum 6 inches diameter at breast height (DBH). DBH is defined as the outside bark diameter at 4.5 feet above the ground on the uphill side of a tree (see Figure 3 - 8). For existing trees smaller than this, the newly planted tree credit may be applied as presented in Section 5.4.2.



The retained tree crown area shall be measured as the area within the tree drip line. A drip line is the line encircling the base of a tree, which is delineated by a vertical line extending from the outer limit of a tree's branch tips down to the ground (see Figure 3 - 9).

If trees are clustered, overlapping crowns are not double counted.



**Figure 3 - 8. Standard Tree Measurement**

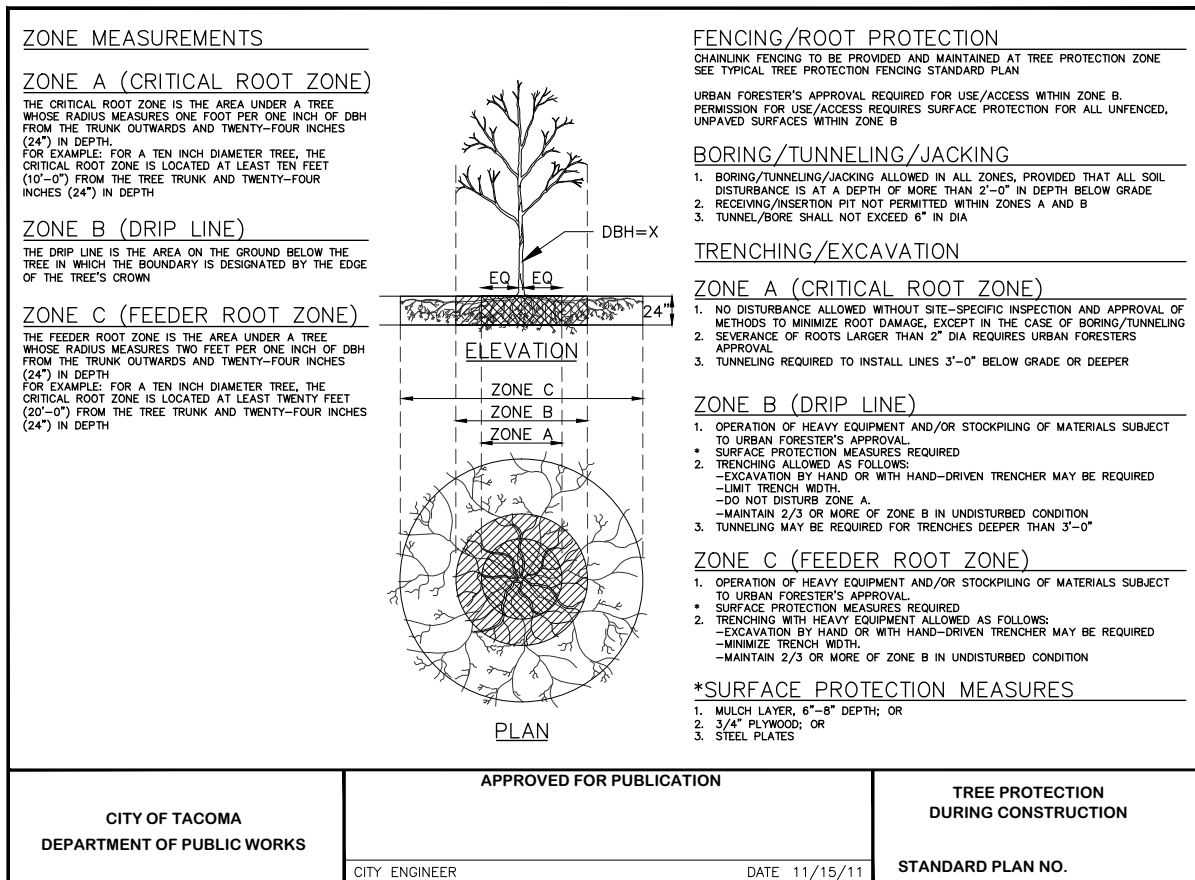


Figure 3 - 9. Tree Protection During Construction

**5.2.2.4 Tree Location**

Flow control credit for retained trees depends upon proximity to ground level impervious surfaces. To receive a credit, the existing tree must be on the development site or abutting right-of-way. Higher credit is given for tree trunks that are 20 feet or less from existing ground level impervious surfaces. Distance from impervious surfaces is measured from the tree trunk center.

If the arborist report concludes that impervious surface should not be placed within 20 feet of the tree and the crown overlap with impervious surface is still anticipated given a longer setback, higher tree flow control credit may be approved. Trees planted in planter boxes are not eligible for flow control credit.

**5.2.2.5 Tree Protection Measures during Construction**

The existing tree roots, trunk, and crown shall be fenced and protected during construction activities per the City of Tacoma Urban Forest Manual, Tacoma Municipal Code 9.18.030, according to industry standards (ANSI A300 Part 5) and the International Society of Arboriculture's Best Management Practices-Managing Trees During Construction.

**5.2.2.6 Long-term Tree Retention and Protection**

Trees shall be retained, maintained and protected on the site after construction and for the life of the development or until any approved redevelopment occurs in the future. Trees that are

removed or die shall be replaced with like species during the next planting season (typically in fall). Trees shall be pruned according to industry standards, City of Tacoma Urban Forest Manual, ANSI A300 Part 1 and the International Society of Arboriculture's Best Management Practices-Tree Pruning.

### **5.2.3 Flow Control Credit**

Flow control credits for retained trees are shown in the *Stormwater Credits for Trees* table available at [www.cityoftacoma.org/stormwater](http://www.cityoftacoma.org/stormwater).

Flow credits only apply to flow control thresholds. Flow credits do not apply to water quality thresholds. Credits are given as a percentage of the existing tree canopy area.

To use these credits, the retained tree and protection measures must meet the requirements outlined in this section.

Tree credits are not applicable to trees in native vegetation areas used for flow dispersion or other flow control credit. The total tree credit for retained and newly transplanted trees shall not exceed 25 percent of the total project impervious surface requiring mitigation.

### **5.2.4 Operations and Maintenance Requirements**

Operations and maintenance requirements for trees are provided in Volume 1, Appendix C, Checklist #30.

## **5.3 Newly Transplanted Trees**

### **5.3.1 Site Considerations**

Mature tree height, size, and rooting depth must be considered to ensure that the tree location is appropriate given adjacent and above- and below-ground infrastructure. Setback requirements are presented below. Setbacks are measured from the tree trunk center.

- Minimum 5 foot setback from structures
- Minimum 5 foot setback from underground utility lines
- Minimum 5 foot setback from property lines
- Minimum 2 foot setback from edge of any paved surface

## **5.4 Design Criteria**

The following provides requirements and recommendations associated with tree transplanting for flow control credit. Submittal for review shall include the tree species, tree size (caliper or height), and tree location (with setbacks from ground level impervious surfaces structures and belowground utilities) on the plan set.

### **5.4.1 Tree Species**

Newly transplanted trees shall be chosen from the *Stormwater Credits for Trees* table available at [www.cityoftacoma.org/stormwater](http://www.cityoftacoma.org/stormwater). Tree species that are not provided on this list are not eligible for flow credits.

#### **5.4.1.1 Tree Size**

To receive flow control credit, new deciduous trees shall be at least 1.5 inches in caliper measured 6 inches above the ground. New evergreen trees shall be at least 4 feet tall.

#### **5.4.1.2 Tree Location**

Trees shall be sited according to sun, soil, and moisture species culture preference. Transplanting locations shall be selected to ensure that sight distances and appropriate setbacks are maintained given mature height, size, and rooting depths. Similar to retained trees, flow control credit for newly transplanted trees varies upon proximity to ground level impervious surfaces. For all projects, the credit is also given for trees that are 20 feet or less from existing ground level impervious surfaces. Distance from impervious surfaces is measured from the edge of the surface to the center of the tree at ground level.

To help ensure tree survival and canopy coverage, the minimum tree spacing for newly transplanted trees shall accommodate mature tree spread. In no circumstance shall flow control credit be given for new trees transplanted less than 15 feet on center spacing for evergreen trees and 25 feet on center spacing for deciduous trees. Trees transplanted in above-ground structures (e.g. pots, planter boxes, etc.) are not eligible for flow control credit.

#### **5.4.1.3 Plant Material and Planting Specifications**

Recommended guidelines for planting materials and methods are provided in the City of Tacoma Urban Forest Manual.

#### **5.4.1.4 Irrigation**

Provisions shall be made for supplemental irrigation during the first three growing seasons after installation to help ensure tree survival.

#### **5.4.1.5 Long-term Tree Retention and Protection**

Trees shall be retained, maintained and protected on the site after construction and for the life of the development as required for retained trees (Section 5.2).

### **5.4.2 Flow Control Credit**

Flow control credits for newly transplanted trees are provided in *Stormwater Credits for Trees* table available at [www.cityoftacoma.org/stormwater](http://www.cityoftacoma.org/stormwater). Flow credits only apply to flow control thresholds. Flow credits do not apply to water quality thresholds.

Tree credits are not applicable to trees in native vegetation areas used for flow dispersion or other flow control credit. The total tree credit for retained and newly planted trees shall not exceed 25 percent of impervious surface requiring mitigation.

## **Chapter 6 Infiltration Facilities for Stormwater Flow Control**

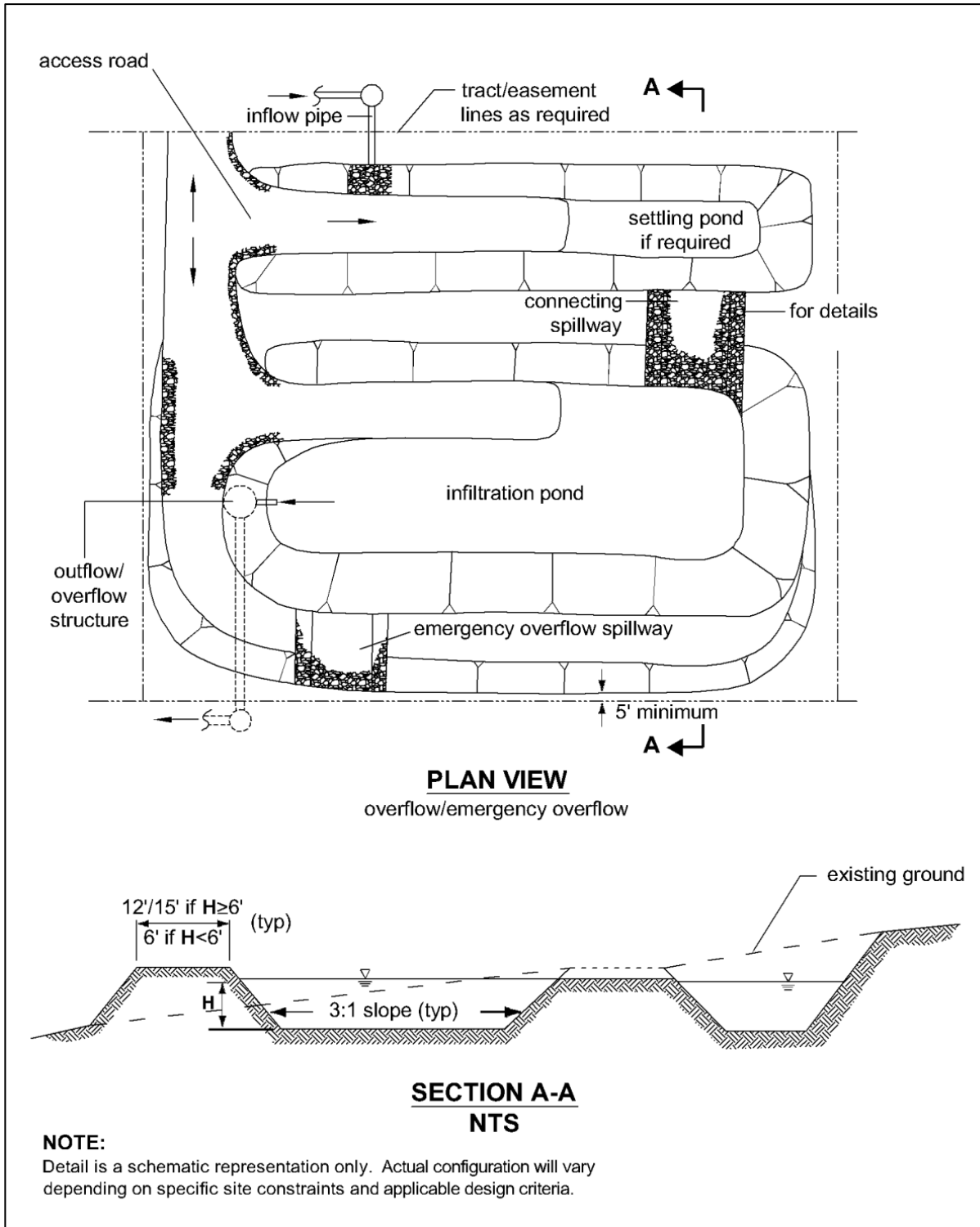
### **6.1 Purpose**

Infiltration provides onsite management of stormwater runoff. Infiltration facilities can be used for flow control and water quality purposes. Please see Volume 5, Chapter 5 for design criteria for water quality treatment.

### **6.2 Description**

An infiltration BMP is typically an open basin (pond), trench, or buried perforated pipe used for distributing the stormwater runoff into the underlying soil (See Figure 3 - 10). (See Underground Injection Control Program, Chapter 173-218 WAC).

Use of the soil for treatment purposes is also an option as long as it is preceded by a pre-settling basin or a basic treatment BMP. This section highlights design criteria that are applicable to infiltration facilities serving a flow control function. See Volume 5, Chapter 5 for design criteria for treatment.



**Figure 3 - 10. Typical Infiltration Pond/Basin**

## 6.3 Design Methodology

### 6.3.1 Select a location

This will be based on the ability to convey flow to the location and the expected soil conditions of the location. Do a preliminary check of Site Suitability Criteria (Section 6.6) to estimate feasibility.

### 6.3.2 Estimate volume of stormwater, $V_{\text{design}}$

Use WWHM to estimate the design volume.

### 6.3.3 Develop trial infiltration facility geometry

To accomplish this, an infiltration rate will need to be assumed based on previously available data, or a default infiltration rate of 0.5 inches/hour can be used. This trial facility geometry should be used to help locate the facility and for planning purposes in developing the geotechnical subsurface investigation plan.

### 6.3.4 Complete more detailed site characterization study and consider site suitability criteria

Information gathered during initial geotechnical and surface investigations are necessary to know whether infiltration is feasible. The geotechnical investigation evaluates the suitability of the site for infiltration, establishes the infiltration rate for design, and evaluates slope stability, foundation capacity, and other geotechnical design information needed to design and assess constructability of the facility.

See Sections 6.4 and 6.6.

### 6.3.5 Determine the infiltration rate

Methods for estimating the long-term infiltration rate are provided in Section 6.5.

### 6.3.6 Size the facility

The size of the infiltration facility can be determined by routing the influent runoff file generated by the continuous runoff model through it. The primary mode of discharge from an infiltration facility is infiltration into the ground. However, when the infiltration capacity of the facility is reached, additional runoff to the facility will cause the facility to overflow. Overflows from an infiltration facility designed for flow control must comply with the Minimum Requirement #7.

**NOTE:** Infiltration facilities designed for flow control do not have a required drawdown time.

In order to determine compliance with the flow control requirements, the Western Washington Hydrology Model (WWHM) must be used.

#### **(A) For 100% infiltration**

Ensure that the pond infiltrates 100% using the pond bottom area only.

#### **(B) For 91% infiltration (water quality treatment volume)**

Ensure that the pond infiltrates 91% using the pond bottom area only.

Infiltration facilities for treatment can be located upstream or downstream of detention and can be off-line or on-line.

- **On-line** treatment facilities placed **upstream or downstream** of a detention facility must be sized to infiltrate 91% of the runoff volume directed to it.
- **Off-line** treatment facilities placed **upstream** of a detention facility must have a flow splitter designed to send all flows at or below the 15-minute water quality flow rate, as predicted by WWHM to the treatment facility. The treatment facility must be sized to infiltrate all the runoff sent to it (no overflows from the treatment facility are allowed).
- **Off-line** treatment facilities placed **downstream** of a detention facility must have a flow splitter designed to send all flows at or below the 2-year flow frequency from the detention pond, as predicted by WWHM to the treatment facility. The treatment facility must be sized to infiltrate all the runoff sent to it (no overflows from the treatment facility are allowed).

See Volume 5, Section 5.1 for flow splitter design details.

### **(C) To meet flow duration standard with infiltration ponds**

This design will allow something less than 100% infiltration as long as any overflows will meet the flow duration standard. You would need a discharge structure with orifices and risers similar to a detention facility except that, in addition, you also have infiltration occurring from the pond.

Slope of the base of the infiltration facility must be <3 percent.

Spillways/overflow structures – A nonerrodible outlet or spillway with a firmly established elevation must be constructed to discharge overflow. Ponding depth, drawdown time, and storage volume are calculated from that reference point.

For infiltration treatment facilities, side-wall seepage is not a concern if seepage occurs through the same stratum as the bottom of the facility. However, for engineered soils or for soils with very low permeability, the potential to bypass the treatment soil through the side-walls may be significant. In those cases, the side-walls must be lined, either with an impervious liner or with at least 18 inches of treatment soil, to prevent seepage of untreated flows through the side walls.

### **6.3.7 Construction Criteria**

Initial basin excavation should be conducted to within 1-foot of the final elevation of the basin floor. Excavate infiltration trenches and basins to final grade only after all disturbed areas in the upgradient project drainage area have been permanently stabilized. The final phase of excavation should remove all accumulation of silt in the infiltration facility before putting it in service. After construction is completed, prevent sediment from entering the infiltration facility by first conveying the runoff water through an appropriate pretreatment system.

Infiltration facilities should generally not be used as temporary sediment traps during construction. If an infiltration facility is to be used as a sediment trap, it must not be excavated to final grade until after the upgradient drainage area has been stabilized. Any accumulation of silt in the basin must be removed before putting it in service.

Traffic Control – Relatively light-tracked equipment is recommended for use within infiltration areas for excavation and cleaning to avoid compaction of the basin floor. The use of draglines and trackhoes should be considered for constructing infiltration basins. The infiltration area should be flagged or marked to keep heavy equipment away.



### **6.3.8 Maintenance Criteria**

Per Minimum Requirement #10, an operation and maintenance plan shall be prepared for all stormwater management facilities. See Volume 1, Appendix C for specific maintenance requirements. Maintenance shall be a basic consideration in design and cost-determination of the stormwater management facility.

Any standing water removed during the maintenance operation must be disposed of in a City approved manner. See the dewatering requirements in Volume 4 of this manual. Pretreatment may be necessary. Solids must be disposed of in accordance with state and local waste regulations.

Facilities shall be constructed such that the facility can be easily inspected by one person. This may require construction of additional inspection ports or access manholes to allow inspection access to be opened by one person.

### **6.3.9 Verification Testing of the Completed Facility**

Verification testing of the completed full-scale infiltration facility is recommended to confirm that the design infiltration parameters are adequate. The site professional should determine the duration and frequency of the verification testing program including the monitoring program for the potentially impacted groundwater. The groundwater monitoring wells installed during site characterization (See Section 6.5) may be used for this purpose. Long-term (more than two years) in-situ drawdown and confirmatory monitoring of the infiltration facility would be preferable. Environmental Services may require verification testing on a site-by-site basis.

## **6.4 Site Characterization Criteria**

One of the first steps in siting and designing infiltration facilities is to conduct a characterization study. Information gathered during initial geotechnical investigations can be used for the site characterization.

### **6.4.1 Surface Features Characterization**

- Topography within 500 feet of the proposed facility.
- Anticipated site use (street/highway, residential, commercial, high-use site).
- Location of water supply wells within 500 feet of proposed facility.
- Location of groundwater protection areas and/or 1, 5 and 10 year time of travel zones for municipal well protection areas.
- A description of local site geology, including soil or rock units likely to be encountered, the groundwater regime, and geologic history of the site.

### **6.4.2 Subsurface Characterization**

- Conduct pit/hole explorations during the wet season (December 1<sup>st</sup> through April 30<sup>th</sup>) to provide accurate groundwater saturation and groundwater information.
- Subsurface explorations (test holes or test pits) to a depth below the base of the infiltration facility of at least 5 times the maximum design depth of ponded water proposed for the infiltration facility.

- Continuous sampling (representative samples from each soil type and/or unit within the infiltration receptor) to a depth below the base of the infiltration facility of 2.5 times the maximum design ponded water depth, but not less than 6 feet.
- For basins, at least one test pit or test hole per 5,000 ft<sup>2</sup> of basin infiltrating surface (in no case less than two per basin).
- For trenches, at least one test pit or test hole per 50 feet of trench length (in no case less than two per trench).

The depth and number of test holes or test pits and samples should be increased, if in the judgment of a licensed engineer with geotechnical expertise (P.E.), a licensed geologist, engineering geologist, hydrogeologist, or other licensed professional acceptable to the City, the conditions are highly variable and such increases are necessary to accurately estimate the performance of the infiltration system. The exploration program may be decreased if, in the opinion of the licensed engineer or other professional, the conditions are relatively uniform and the borings/test pits omitted will not influence the design or successful operation of the facility. In high water table sites, the subsurface exploration sampling need not be conducted lower than two (2) feet below the groundwater table.

Prepare detailed logs for each test pit or test hole and a map showing the location of the test pits or test holes. Logs must include at a minimum, depth of pit or hole, soil descriptions, depth to water, and presence of stratification. Logs must substantiate whether stratification does or does not exist. The licensed professional may consider additional methods of analysis to substantiate the presence of stratification that will significantly impact the design of the infiltration facility.

### **6.4.3 Infiltration Rate Determination**

Determine the representative infiltration rate of the unsaturated vadose zone based on methods outlined in Section 6.5.

### **6.4.4 Soil Testing**

Soil characterization for each soil unit (soils of the same texture, color, density, compaction, consolidation and permeability) encountered must be based upon the method used for determining the long-term infiltration rate (see Section 6.5) and must also include:

- Percent clay content (include type of clay, if known)
- Color/mottling
- Variations and nature of stratification

If the infiltration facility will be used to provide treatment as well as flow control, refer to Volume 5.

### **6.4.5 Infiltration Receptor**

The requirements of this section will be applied as directed by Environmental Services. Infiltration receptor (unsaturated and saturated soil receiving the stormwater) characterization should include:

- Installation of groundwater monitoring wells (at least three per infiltration facility, or three hydraulically connected surface and groundwater features that will establish a three-dimensional relationship for the groundwater table, unless the highest groundwater level is known to be at least 50 feet below the proposed infiltration facility) to:

- Monitor the seasonal groundwater levels at the site during at least one wet season, and,
- Consider the potential for both unconfined and confined aquifers, or confining units, at the site that may influence the proposed infiltration facility as well as the groundwater gradient. Other approaches to determine groundwater levels at the proposed site could be considered if pre-approved by Environmental Services, and
- Determine the ambient groundwater quality, if that is a concern.
- An estimate of the volumetric water holding capacity of the infiltration receptor soil. This is the soil layer below the infiltration facility and above the seasonal high-water mark, bedrock, hardpan, or other low permeability layer. This analysis should be conducted at a conservatively high infiltration rate based on vadose zone porosity, and the water quality runoff volume to be infiltrated. This, along with an analysis of groundwater movement, will be useful in determining if there are volumetric limitations that would adversely affect drawdown.
- Determination of:
  - Depth to groundwater table and to bedrock/impermeable layers
  - Seasonal variation of groundwater table based on well water levels and observed mottling
  - Existing groundwater flow direction and gradient
  - Lateral extent of infiltration receptor
  - Horizontal hydraulic conductivity of the saturated zone to assess the aquifer's ability to laterally transport the infiltrated water.
- Impact of the infiltration rate and volume at the project site on groundwater mounding, flow direction, and water table; and the discharge point or area of the infiltrating water. A groundwater mounding analysis should be conducted at all sites where the depth to seasonal groundwater table or low permeability stratum is less than 15 feet and the runoff to the infiltration facility is from more than one acre. (The site professional may consider conducting an aquifer test, or slug test to aid in determining the type of groundwater mounding analysis necessary at the site)

A detailed soils and hydrogeologic investigation should be conducted if potential pollutant impacts to groundwater are a concern, or if the applicant is proposing to infiltrate in areas underlain by till or other impermeable layers. (Suggested references: "Implementation Guidance for the Groundwater Quality Standards", Department of Ecology, publication 96-2, 2005).

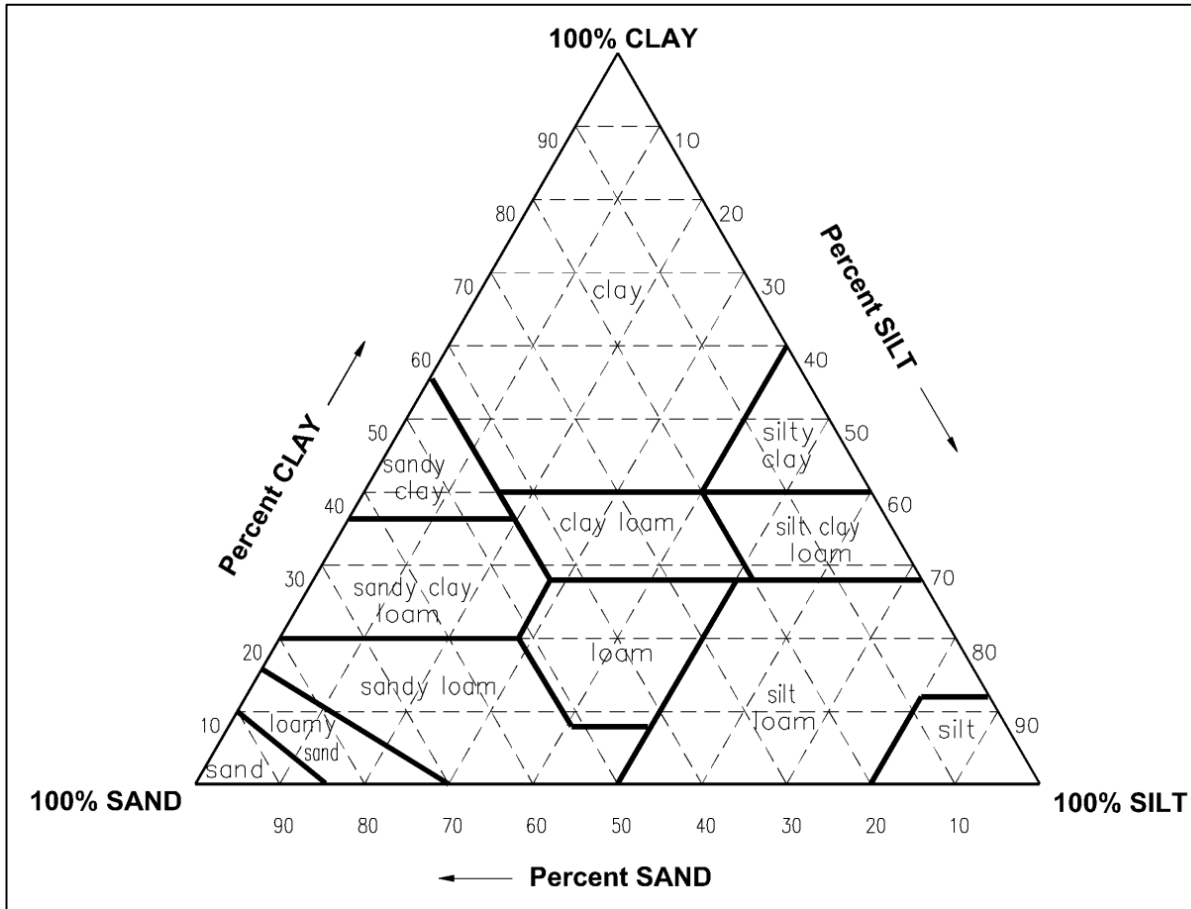


Figure 3 - 11. USDA Textural Triangle

## 6.5 Design Infiltration Rate Determination – Guidelines and Criteria

Infiltration rates can be determined using one of the following four methods of analysis:

- USDA Soil Textural Classification (Section 6.5.1)
- ASTM Gradation Testing at Full Scale Infiltration Facilities (Section 6.5.2)
- In-Situ Infiltration Measurements (Section 6.5.3)
- $D_{10}$ ,  $D_{60}$ ,  $D_{90}$  Method (Section 6.5.4)

If the pilot infiltration test (Table 3 - 8) or ASTM gradation approach (Table 3 - 7) is selected, corroboration with a textural based infiltration rate (Table 3 - 6) is also desirable. Appropriate correction factors must be applied as specified.

### 6.5.1 USDA Soil Textural Classification

To use the USDA textural analysis approach, the grain size distribution test must be conducted in accordance with the USDA test procedure (SOIL SURVEY MANUAL, U.S. Department of Agriculture, October 1993, page 136). This manual only considers soil passing the #10 sieve (2 mm) (U.S. Standard) to determine percentages of sand, silt, and clay for use in Figure 3 - 11

(USDA Textural Triangle). However, many soil test laboratories use the ASTM soil size distribution test procedure (ASTM D422), which considers the full range of soil particle sizes, to develop soil size distribution curves. The ASTM soil gradation procedure must not be used with Figure 3 - 11 to perform USDA soil textural analyses.

Table 3 - 6 provides the correlation between USDA soil texture and infiltration rates for estimating infiltration rates for homogeneous soils based on gradations from soil samples and textural analysis. The USDA soil texture – infiltration rate correlation in Table 3 - 6 is based on the correlation developed by Rawls, et al (1982), but with minor changes in the infiltration rates based on WEF/ASCE (1998). The infiltration rates provided through this correlation represent short-term conservative rates for homogeneous soils. These rates do not account for the effects of site variability, long-term clogging due to siltation and biomass buildup in the infiltration facility, or other processes that can decrease infiltration rates. Correction factors must be applied to these rates.

**Table 3 - 6: Recommended Infiltration Rates based on USDA Soil Textural Classification**

Soil Type	Short-Term Infiltration Rate (in/hr) <sup>a</sup>	Correction Factor (CF)	Estimated Long-Term (Design) Infiltration Rate (in/hr)
Clean, sandy gravels and gravelly sands (i.e. 90% of the total soil sample is retained in the #10 sieve)	20	2	10 <sup>b</sup>
Sand	8	4	2 <sup>c</sup>
Loamy sand	2	4	0.5
Sandy loam	1	4	0.25
Loam	0.5	4	0.13

- a. From WEF/ASCE,1998
- b. Not recommended for treatment
- c. Refer to SSC-4 and SSC-6 for treatment acceptability criteria

Based on experience with long-term full-scale infiltration pond performance, Ecology’s Technical Advisory Committee (TAC) recommends that the short-term infiltration rates be reduced as shown in Table 3 - 6, dividing by a correction factor of 2 to 4, depending on the soil textural classification. The correction factors provided in Table 3 - 6 represent an average degree of long-term facility maintenance, TSS reduction through pretreatment, and site variability in the subsurface conditions. These conditions might include deposits of ancient landslide debris, buried stream channels, lateral grain size variability, and other factors that affect homogeneity.

These correction factors could be reduced, subject to the approval of the local jurisdiction, under the following conditions:

For sites with little soil variability,

- Where there will be a high degree of long-term facility maintenance,
- Where specific, reliable pretreatment is employed to reduce TSS entering the infiltration facility

**In no case shall a correction factor less than 2.0 be used.**

Correction factors higher than those provided in Table 3 - 6 should be considered for situations where long-term maintenance will be difficult to implement, where little or no pretreatment is anticipated, or where site conditions are highly variable or uncertain. These situations require the use of best professional judgment by the site engineer and the approval of the local jurisdiction. An Operation and Maintenance plan and a financial bonding plan may be required by the local jurisdiction.

### 6.5.2 ASTM Gradation Testing at Full Scale Infiltration Facilities

As an alternative to Table 3 - 6, recent studies by Massmann and Butchart (2000) were used to develop the correlation provided in Table 3 - 7. These studies compare infiltration measurements from full-scale infiltration facilities to soil gradation data developed using the ASTM procedure (ASTM D422). The primary source of the data used by Massmann and Butchart was from Wiltsie (1998), who included limited infiltration studies only on Thurston County sites. However, Massmann and Butchart also included limited data from King and Clark County sites in their analysis. This table provides recommended long-term infiltration rates that have been correlated to soil gradation parameters using the ASTM soil gradation procedure.

Table 3 - 7 can be used to estimate long-term design infiltration rates directly from soil gradation data. Environmental Services may require additional correction factors be applied to the values shown in Table 3 - 7 depending on the site conditions. As is true of Table 3 - 6, the long-term rates provided in Table 3 - 7 represent average conditions regarding site variability, the degree of long-term maintenance and pretreatment for TSS control, and represent a moderate depth to groundwater below the infiltration facility. The long-term infiltration rates in Table 3 - 7 may need to be decreased if the site is highly variable, the groundwater table is shallow, there is fine layering present that would not be captured by the soil gradation testing, or if maintenance and influent characteristics are not well controlled. The data that forms the basis for Table 3 - 7 was from soils that would be classified as sands or sandy gravels. No data was available for finer soils at the time the table was developed. Therefore, Table 3 - 7 should not be used for soils with a D<sub>10</sub> size (10% passing the size listed) less than 0.05 mm (U.S. Standard Sieve).

**Table 3 - 7: Alternative Recommended Infiltration Rates Based on ASTM Gradation Testing**

D <sub>10</sub> Size from ASTM D422 Soil Gradation Test (mm)	Estimated Long-Term (Design) Infiltration Rate (in/hr)
>0.4	9 <sup>a</sup>
0.3	6.5 <sup>a</sup>
0.2	3.5 <sup>a</sup>
0.1	2.0 <sup>b</sup>
0.05	0.8

- a. Not recommended for treatment
- b. Refer to SSC-4 and SSC-6 for treatment acceptability criteria

The infiltration rates provided in Table 3 - 6 and Table 3 - 7 represent rates for homogeneous soil conditions. If more than one soil unit is encountered within 6 feet of the base of the facility or 2.5 times the proposed maximum water design depth, use the lowest infiltration rate determined from each of the soil units as the representative site infiltration rate.

If soil mottling, fine silt or clay layers, which cannot be fully represented in the soil gradation tests, are present below the bottom of the infiltration pond, the infiltration rates provided in the tables will be too high and should be reduced. Based on limited full-scale infiltration data (Massmann and Butchart, 2000; Wiltsie, 1998), it appears that the presence of mottling indicates soil conditions that reduce the infiltration rate for homogeneous conditions by a factor of 3 to 4.

### 6.5.3 In-situ Infiltration Measurements

Where feasible, take in-situ infiltration measurements, using a procedure such as the Pilot Infiltration Test (PIT) described in Volume 3, Appendix B. This test can be used in combination with grain size distribution and technical analysis to verify infiltration rate estimates.

Small-scale infiltration tests such as the EPA Falling Head or double ring infiltrometer test (ASTM D3385-88) are not recommended unless modified versions are approved in writing by Environmental Services. These small-scale infiltration tests tend to overestimate infiltration rates and may be unreliable.

The infiltration rate obtained from the PIT test shall be considered to be a short-term rate. This short-term rate must be reduced through correction factors to account for site variability and number of tests conducted, degree of long-term maintenance and influent pretreatment/control, and potential for long-term clogging due to siltation and bio-buildup.

The typical range of correction factors to account for these issues, based on Ecology experience, is summarized in Table 3 - 8. The range of correction factors is for general guidance only. The specific correction factors used shall be determined based on the professional judgment of the licensed engineer or other soils professional considering all issues which may affect the long-term infiltration rate, subject to the approval of Environmental Services.

**Table 3 - 8: Correction Factors to be Used With In-Situ Infiltration Measurements to Estimate Long-Term Design Infiltration Rates**

Issue	Partial Correction Factor
Site variability and number of locations tested	$CF_y = 1.5$ to 6
Degree of long-term maintenance to prevent siltation and bio-buildup	$CF_m = 2$ to 6
Degree of influent control to prevent siltation and bio-buildup	$CF_i = 2$ to 6

$$\text{Total Correction Factor (CF)} = CF_y + CF_m + CF_i$$

The following discussions are to provide assistance in determining the partial correction factors to apply in Table 3 - 8.

**Site variability and number of locations tested** – The number of locations tested must be capable of producing a picture of the subsurface conditions that fully represents the conditions throughout the facility site. The partial correction factor used to compensate for site variability depends on the level of uncertainty that adverse subsurface conditions may occur. If the range of uncertainty is low - for example, conditions are known to be uniform through previous exploration and site geological factors - one pilot infiltration test may be adequate to justify a partial correction factor at the low end of the range. If the level of uncertainty is high, a partial correction factor near the high end of the range may be appropriate. This might be the case where the site conditions are highly variable due to a deposit of ancient landslide debris, or buried stream channels. In these cases, even with many explorations and several pilot infiltration tests, the level

of uncertainty may still be high. A partial correction factor near the high end of the range could be assigned where conditions have a more typical variability, but few explorations and only one pilot infiltration test is conducted. That is, the number of explorations and tests conducted do not match the degree of site variability anticipated.

**Degree of long-term maintenance to prevent siltation and bio-buildup** – The standard of comparison here is the long-term maintenance requirements provided in Volume 1, Appendix D, and any additional requirements by Environmental Services. Full compliance with these requirements would be justification to use a partial correction factor at the low end of the range. If there is a high degree of uncertainty that long-term maintenance will be carried out consistently, or if the maintenance plan is poorly defined, a partial correction factor near the high end of the range may be justified.

**Degree of influent control to prevent siltation and bio-buildup** – A partial correction factor near the high end of the range may be justified under the following circumstances:

- If the infiltration facility is located in a shady area where moss buildup or litter fall buildup from the surrounding vegetation is likely and cannot be easily controlled through long-term maintenance
- If there is minimal pretreatment, and the influent is likely to contain moderately high TSS levels.
- If influent into the facility can be well controlled such that the planned long-term maintenance can easily control siltation and biomass buildup, then a partial correction factor near the low end of the range may be justified.

The determination of long-term design infiltration rates from in-situ infiltration test data involves a considerable amount of engineering judgment. Therefore, when reviewing or determining the final long-term design infiltration rate the results of grain size distribution, textural analyses and in-situ infiltration tests results will be considered when available and may be required by Environmental Services.

#### 6.5.4 $D_{10}$ , $D_{60}$ , $D_{90}$ Method

**Determine the saturated hydraulic conductivity** – For each defined layer below the pond to a depth below the pond bottom of 2.5 times the maximum depth of water in the pond, but not less than 6 feet, estimate the saturated hydraulic conductivity in cm/sec using the following relationship (see Massmann 2003, and Massmann et al., 2003)

$$\log_{10}(K_{sat}) = -1.57 + 1.90D_{10} + 0.015D_{60} - 0.013D_{90} - 2.08F_{fines} \quad (\text{equation 1})$$

Where,  $D_{10}$ ,  $D_{60}$  and  $D_{90}$  are the grain sizes in mm for which 10 percent, 60 percent and 90 percent of the sample is more fine and  $f_{fines}$  is the fraction of the soil (by weight) that passes the #200 sieve ( $K_{sat}$  is in cm/s).

If the licensed professional conducting the investigation determines that deeper layers will influence the rate of infiltration for the facility, soil layers at greater depths must be considered when assessing the site's hydraulic conductivity characteristics. Massmann (2003) indicates that where the water table is deep, soil or rock strata up to 100 feet below an infiltration facility can influence the rate of infiltration. Note that only the layers near and above the water table or low permeability zone (e.g., a clay, dense glacial till, or rock layer) need to be considered, as the layers below the groundwater table or low permeability zone do not significantly influence the rate of infiltration. Also note that this equation for estimating hydraulic conductivity assumes



minimal compaction consistent with the use of tracked (i.e., low to moderate ground pressure) excavation equipment. If the soil layer being characterized has been exposed to heavy compaction, or is heavily over consolidated due to its geologic history (e.g., overridden by continental glaciers), the hydraulic conductivity for the layer could be approximately an order of magnitude less than what would be estimated based on grain size characteristics alone (Pitt, 2003). In such cases, compaction effects must be taken into account when estimating hydraulic conductivity. For clean, uniformly graded sands and gravels, the reduction in  $K_{sat}$  due to compaction will be much less than an order of magnitude. For well-graded sands and gravels with moderate to high silt content, the reduction in  $K_{sat}$  will be close to an order of magnitude. For soils that contain clay, the reduction in  $K_{sat}$  could be greater than an order of magnitude.

For critical designs, the in-situ saturated conductivity of a specific layer can be obtained through field tests such as the packer permeability test (above or below the water table), the piezocone (below the water table), an air conductivity test (above the water table), or through the use of a pilot infiltration test (PIT) as described in Volume 3, Appendix B. Note that these field tests generally provide a hydraulic conductivity combined with a hydraulic gradient (i.e., Equation 5). In some of these tests, the hydraulic gradient may be close to 1.0; therefore, in effect, the magnitude of the test result is the same as the hydraulic conductivity. In other cases, the hydraulic gradient may be close to the gradient that is likely to occur in the full-scale infiltration facility. This issue will need to be evaluated on a case-by-case basis when interpreting the results of field tests. It is important to recognize that the gradient in the test may not be the same as the gradient likely to occur in the full-scale infiltration facility in the long-term (i.e., when groundwater mounding is fully developed).

Once the saturated hydraulic conductivity for each layer has been identified, determine the effective average saturated hydraulic conductivity below the pond. Hydraulic conductivity estimates from different layers can be combined using the harmonic mean:

$$K_{equiv} = \frac{d}{\sum \frac{d_i}{K_i}} \quad (\text{equation 2})$$

Where,  $d$  is the total depth of the soil column,  $d_i$  is the thickness of layer “ $i$ ” in the soil column, and  $K_i$  is the saturated hydraulic conductivity of layer “ $i$ ” in the soil column. The depth of the soil column,  $d$ , typically would include all layers between the pond bottom and the water table. However, for sites with very deep water tables (>100 feet) where groundwater mounding to the base of the pond is not likely to occur, it is recommended that the total depth of the soil column in Equation 2 be limited to approximately 20 times the depth of pond. This is to ensure that the most important and relevant layers are included in the hydraulic conductivity calculations. Deep layers that are not likely to affect the infiltration rate near the pond bottom should not be included in Equation 2. Equation 2 may over-estimate the effective hydraulic conductivity value at sites with low conductivity layers immediately beneath the infiltration pond. For sites where the lowest conductivity layer is within five feet of the base of the pond, it is suggested that this lowest hydraulic conductivity value be used as the equivalent hydraulic conductivity rather than the value from Equation 2. The harmonic mean given by Equation 2 is the appropriate effective hydraulic conductivity for flow that is perpendicular to stratigraphic layers, and will produce

conservative results when flow has a significant horizontal component such as could occur due to groundwater mounding.

**Calculate the hydraulic gradient** – The steady state hydraulic gradient is calculated as follows:

$$\text{gradient} = i \approx \frac{D_{wt} + D_{pond}}{138.62(K^{0.1})} CF_{size} \quad (\text{equation 3})$$

Where,  $D_{wt}$  is the depth from the base of the infiltration facility to the water table in feet,  $K$  is the saturated hydraulic conductivity in feet/day,  $D_{pond}$  is the depth of water in the facility in feet (see Massmann et al., 2003, for the development of this equation), and  $CF_{size}$ , is the correction for pond size. The correction factor was developed for ponds with bottom areas between 0.6 and 6 acres in size. For small ponds (ponds with area equal to 2/3 acre), the correction factor is equal to 1.0. For large ponds (ponds with area equal to 6 acres), the correction factor is 0.2, as shown in Equation 4.

$$CF_{size} = 0.73 (A_{pond})^{-0.76} \quad (\text{equation 4})$$

Where,  $A_{pond}$  is the area of pond bottom in acres. This equation generally will result in a calculated gradient of less than 1.0 for moderate to shallow groundwater depths (or to a low permeability layer) below the facility, and conservatively accounts for the development of a groundwater mound. A more detailed groundwater mounding analysis using a program such as MODFLOW will usually result in a gradient that is equal to or greater than the gradient calculated using Equation 3. If the calculated gradient is greater than 1.0, the water table is considered to be deep, and a maximum gradient of 1.0 must be used. Typically, a depth to groundwater of 100 feet or more is required to obtain a gradient of 1.0 or more using this equation. Since the gradient is a function of depth of water in the facility, the gradient will vary as the pond fills during the season. The gradient could be calculated as part of the stage-discharge calculation used in the continuous runoff models. As of the date of this update, neither the WWHM or MGSFlood have that capability. However, updates to those models may soon incorporate the capability. Until that time, use a steady-state hydraulic gradient that corresponds with a ponded depth of  $\frac{1}{4}$  of the maximum ponded depth – as measured from the basin floor to the overflow.

**Calculate the infiltration rate using Darcy's law** – Where,  $f$  is the specific discharge or infiltration rate of water through a unit cross-section of the infiltration facility (L/t),  $K$  is the hydraulic conductivity (L/t),  $dh/dz$  is the hydraulic gradient (L/L), and “ $i$ ” is the gradient.

$$f = K \left( \frac{dh}{dz} \right) = Ki \quad (\text{equation 5})$$

**Adjust infiltration rate or infiltration stage-discharge relationship** – This is done to account for reductions in the rate resulting from long-term siltation and biofouling, taking into consideration the degree of long-term maintenance and performance monitoring anticipated, the degree of influent control (e.g., presettling ponds biofiltration swales, etc.), and the potential for siltation, litterfall, moss buildup, etc. based on the surrounding environment. It should be assumed that an average to high degree of maintenance will be performed on these facilities. A low degree of maintenance should be considered only when there is no other option (e.g., access problems). The infiltration rate is multiplied by the reduction factors summarized in Table 3 - 9.

**Table 3 - 9: Infiltration Rate Reduction Factors to Account for Biofouling and Siltation Effects for Ponds**

Potential for Biofouling	Degree of Long-Term Maintenance/ Performance Monitoring	Infiltration Rate Reduction Factor ( $CF_{\text{silt/bio}}$ )
Low	Average to High	0.9
Low	Low	0.6
High	Average to High	0.5
High	Low	0.2

(Massman, 2003)

The values in this table assume that final excavation of the facility to the finished grade is deferred until all disturbed areas in the upgradient drainage area have been stabilized or protected (e.g., construction runoff is not allowed into the facility after final excavation of the facility). Ponds located in shady areas where moss and litterfall from adjacent vegetation can build up on the pond bottom and sides, the upgradient drainage area will remain in a disturbed condition long-term, and no pretreatment (e.g., presettling ponds, biofiltration swales, etc.) is provided, are one example of a situation with a high potential for biofouling. A low degree of long-term maintenance includes, for example, situations where access to the facility for maintenance is very difficult or limited, or where there is minimal control of the party responsible for enforcing the required maintenance. A low degree of maintenance should be considered only when there is no other option.

Also adjust this infiltration rate for the effect of pond aspect ratio by multiplying the infiltration rate determined in Step 7 (Equation 6) by the aspect ratio correction factor  $F_{\text{aspect}}$  as shown in the following equation:

$$CF_{\text{aspect}} = 0.02A_r + 0.98 \quad (\text{equation 6})$$

Where,  $A_r$  is the aspect ratio for the pond (length/width). In no case shall  $CF_{\text{aspect}}$  be greater than 1.4.

The final infiltration rate will therefore be as follows:

$$f = K \cdot i \cdot CF_{\text{aspect}} \cdot CF_{\text{silt/bio}} \quad (\text{equation 7})$$

The rates calculated based on Equations 5 and 7 are long-term design rates. No additional reduction factor or factor of safety is needed.

## 6.6 Site Suitability Criteria

This section provides criteria that must be considered for siting infiltration systems. When a site investigation reveals that any of the applicable criteria cannot be met appropriate mitigation measures must be implemented so that the infiltration facility will not pose a threat to safety, health, and the environment.

For site selection and design decisions a geotechnical and hydrogeologic report must be prepared by a qualified engineer with geotechnical and hydrogeologic experience, or a licensed geologist, hydrogeologist, or engineering geologist. The design engineer may utilize a team of certified or registered professionals in soil science, hydrogeology, geology, and other related fields.

A site is not suitable if the infiltration facility will cause a violation of Ecology's Groundwater Quality Standards.

### 6.6.1 Setback Criteria

Typical setbacks are outlined in Section 6.7.1.

Below are conditions that the soils professional must evaluate to determine the need for additional or more stringent setbacks than outlined in this manual.

The professional must evaluate:

- Potential impacts to drinking water wells, septic tanks or drainfields, and springs used for public drinking water supplies.
- Potential impacts from roadways subject to deicers or herbicides which are likely to be present in the influent to the infiltration system.
- Potential impacts to all building foundations in the vicinity of the proposed infiltration facility. Recommend investigating all building foundations within 100 feet upslope to 20 feet downslope of the facility.
- Potential impacts to all property lines within 20 feet of the facility.
- Potential impacts to a Native Growth Protection Easement (NGPE);  $\geq 20$  feet.
- Potential impacts to the top of slopes  $>20\%$  and within 50 feet.
- Onsite and offsite structural stability due to extended subgrade saturation and/or head loading of the permeable layers, including the potential impacts to downgradient properties, especially on hills with known side-hill seeps.

### 6.6.2 Groundwater Protection Areas

The City of Tacoma Public Works Department and Tacoma-Pierce County Health Department developed a guidance document that provides the circumstances and requirements for approval of infiltration facilities for managing pollution-generating stormwater runoff in the STGPD. The document, "Implementation of Stormwater Infiltration for Pollution-Generating Surfaces in the South Tacoma Groundwater Protection District" is available at [www.cityoftacoma.org/stormwater](http://www.cityoftacoma.org/stormwater).

### 6.6.3 High Vehicle Traffic Areas

An infiltration BMP may be considered for runoff from areas of industrial activity and the high vehicle traffic areas described below. For such applications, sufficient pollutant removal

(including oil removal) must be provided upstream of the infiltration facility to ensure that groundwater quality standards will not be violated and that the infiltration facility is not adversely affected.

High Vehicle Traffic Areas are:

- Commercial or industrial sites subject to an expected average daily traffic count (ADT)  $\geq 100$  vehicles/1,000 ft<sup>2</sup> gross building area (trip generation), and
- Road intersections with an ADT of  $\geq 25,000$  on the main roadway, or  $\geq 15,000$  on any intersecting roadway.

#### **6.6.4 Depth to Bedrock, Water Table, or Impermeable Layer**

The base of all infiltration basins or trench systems shall be  $\geq 5$  feet above the seasonal high-water mark, bedrock (or hardpan) or other low permeability layer. A 3-foot minimum separation may be considered if the groundwater mounding analysis, volumetric receptor capacity, and the design of the overflow and/or bypass structures are judged by the site professional and Environmental Services to be adequate to prevent overtopping and meet the site suitability criteria specified in this section.

#### **6.6.5 Seepage Analysis and Control**

Determine whether there would be any adverse effects caused by seepage zones on nearby building foundations, basements, roads, parking lots or sloping sites.

#### **6.6.6 Cold Climate and Impact of Roadway Deicers**

For cold climate design criteria (snowmelt/ice impacts) refer to D. Caraco and R. Claytor 'Stormwater BMPs Design Supplement for Cold Climates', Center for Watershed Protection, 1997.

Potential impact of roadway deicers on potable water wells must be considered in the siting determination. Mitigation measures must be implemented if infiltration of roadway deicers can cause a violation of groundwater quality standards.

### **6.7 Design Criteria for Infiltration Facilities**

#### **6.7.1 Infiltration Facility Setbacks**

Setback requirements are generally required by the City, uniform building code requirements, the Tacoma Pierce County Health Department, or other state regulations. Where a conflict between setbacks occurs, the City shall require compliance with the most stringent of the setback requirements from the various codes/regulations. The following are the minimum setbacks required per this manual.

- At least 100 feet from drinking water wells, and springs used for public water supplies. Infiltration facilities upgradient of drinking water wells and within 1, 5, and 10-year time of travel zones must comply with Health Department requirements (Washington Wellhead Protection Program, DOH, Publication #331-018).
- All systems shall be at least 10 feet from any building structure and at least 5 feet from any other structure or property line unless approved in writing by Environmental Services. If necessary, setbacks shall be increased from the minimum 10 feet in order to maintain a 1H:1V side slope for future excavation and maintenance. Vertical pond walls may necessitate an increase in setbacks.

- The discharge point shall not be placed on slopes steeper than 20 percent. A geotechnical analysis and report shall be required on slopes over 15% or if located within 200 feet of the top of steep slopes (40% or greater) or a landslide hazard area. More stringent setbacks may be required based upon the Tacoma Municipal Code.
- At least 10 feet from septic tanks and septic drainfields. Additional setbacks from DOH Publication 333-117 Onsite Sewage Systems, Chapter 246-272A WAC may apply. Shall not be located upstream of residential septic systems unless topography or a hydrology analysis clearly indicates that subsurface flows will not impact the drainfield.
- Environmental Services may require additional setbacks or analysis for infiltration facilities proposed to be sited within the influence of known contaminated sites or abandoned landfills.

### **6.7.2 Infiltration Facility Access**

- The infiltration facility shall be easily accessible in order to perform necessary inspections and maintain the facility.
- Maintenance access road(s) shall be provided to the control structure and other drainage structures associated with the facility.
- Access roads/ramps must meet the following requirements:
  - Access roads may be constructed with an asphalt or gravel surface, or modular grid pavement.
  - Maximum grade shall be 15 percent.
  - Outside turning radius shall be a minimum of 40 feet.
  - Fence gates shall be located only on straight sections of road.
  - Access roads shall be 15 feet in width on curves and 12 feet on straight sections.
  - A driveway meeting City design standards must be provided where access roads connect to paved public roadways.
- If a fence is required, access shall be limited by a double-posted gate. If a fence is not required, access shall be limited by two fixed bollards on each side of the access road and two removable bollards equally located between the fixed bollards.
- Additional easements or modifications to proposed lot boundaries may be required to provide adequate access to stormwater facilities. Right-of-way may be needed for facility maintenance. Any tract not abutting public right-of-way shall have a 15-foot wide extension of the tract to an acceptable access location.

### **6.7.3 Infiltration Facility Overflow**

In all ponds, tanks, and vaults, a primary overflow shall be provided to bypass the 100-year developed peak flow. The design must provide controlled discharge to a location acceptable to Environmental Services.

### **6.7.4 Infiltration Facility Seeps and Springs**

Intermittent seeps along cut slopes are typically fed by a shallow groundwater source (interflow) flowing along a relatively impermeable soil stratum. These flows are storm driven. However, more continuous seeps and springs, which extend through longer dry periods, are likely from a deeper groundwater source. When continuous flows are intercepted and directed through

infiltration facilities, adjustments to the facility design shall be made to account for the additional base flow. Flow monitoring of intercepted flow may be required for design purposes.

### **6.7.5 Infiltration Facility Maintenance**

Per Minimum Requirement #10, an operation and maintenance plan shall be prepared for all stormwater management facilities. See Volume 1, Appendix D for specific maintenance requirements. Maintenance shall be a basic consideration in design and cost-determination of the stormwater management facility.

Any standing water removed during the maintenance operation must be disposed of in a City approved manner. See the dewatering requirements in Volume 4 of this manual. Pretreatment may be necessary. Solids must be disposed in accordance with state and local waste regulations.

Facilities shall be constructed such that the facility can be easily inspected by one person. This may require construction of additional inspection ports or access manholes to allow inspection access to be opened by one person.

### **6.7.6 Infiltration Facility Easements**

See Chapter 13 for information concerning easements.

## **6.8 Infiltration Basins**

This section covers design and maintenance criteria specific for infiltration basins. See schematic in Figure 3 - 10.

### **6.8.1 Description**

Infiltration basins are earthen impoundments used for the collection, temporary storage and infiltration of incoming stormwater runoff.

### **6.8.2 Design Criteria Specific for Basins**

Access should be provided for vehicles to easily maintain the forebay (presettling basin) area and not disturb vegetation, or resuspend sediment any more than is absolutely necessary.

The slope of the basin bottom should not exceed 3% in any direction.

A minimum of one foot of freeboard is recommended when establishing the design ponded water depth. Freeboard is measured from the rim of the infiltration facility to the maximum ponding level or from the rim down to the overflow point if overflow or a spillway is included.

Erosion protection of inflow points to the basin must also be provided (e.g., riprap, flow spreaders, energy dissipators (See Volume 3, Chapter 3). Select suitable vegetative materials for the basin floor and side slopes to be stabilized. Refer to Volume 5, Chapter 7 for recommended vegetation.

Lining material – Basins can be open or covered with a 6 to 12-inch layer of filter material such as coarse sand, or a suitable filter fabric to help prevent the buildup of impervious deposits on the soil surface. A nonwoven geotextile should be selected that will function sufficiently without plugging (see geotextile specifications in Appendix C of Volume 5). The filter layer can be replaced or cleaned when/if it becomes clogged.

Vegetation – The embankment, emergency spillways, spoil and borrow areas, and other disturbed areas should be stabilized and planted, preferably with grass, in accordance with the Stormwater Site Plan (See Minimum Requirement #1 of Volume I). Without healthy vegetation the surface soil pores would quickly plug.

## **6.9 Infiltration Trenches**

This section covers design, construction and maintenance criteria specific to infiltration trenches.

### **6.9.1 Description**

Infiltration trenches are generally at least 24 inches wide, and are backfilled with a coarse stone aggregate, allowing for temporary storage of stormwater runoff in the voids of the aggregate material. Stored runoff then gradually infiltrates into the surrounding soil. The surface of the trench can be covered with grating and/or consist of stone, gabion, sand, or a grassed covered area with a surface inlet. Perforated rigid pipe is used to distribute the stormwater in the stone trench.

### **6.9.2 Design Criteria**

Due to accessibility and maintenance limitations, infiltration trenches must be carefully designed and constructed.

#### **6.9.2.1 Cleanouts/Access Ports**

Install cleanouts and/or access ports to allow cleaning and inspection of the system.

#### **6.9.2.2 Backfill Material**

The aggregate material for the infiltration trench shall consist of a clean aggregate with a maximum diameter of 3 inches and a minimum diameter of 1.5 inches. Void space for these aggregates shall be in the range of 30 to 40 percent.

#### **6.9.2.3 Geotextile Fabric Liner**

The aggregate fill material shall be completely encased in an engineering geotextile material. Geotextile should surround all of the aggregate fill material except for the top one-foot, which is placed over the geotextile. Geotextile fabric with acceptable properties must be carefully selected to avoid plugging (see Appendix C of Volume 5).

The bottom sand or geotextile fabric is optional.

*Refer to the Federal Highway Administration Manual “Geosynthetic Design and Construction Guidelines,” Publication No. FHWA HI-95-038, May 1995 for design guidance on geotextiles in drainage applications. Refer to the NCHRP Report 367, “Long-Term Performance of Geosynthetics in Drainage Applications,” 1994, for long-term performance data and background on the potential for geotextiles to clog, blind, or to allow piping to occur and how to design for these issues.*

#### **6.9.2.4 Overflow Channel**

Because an infiltration trench is generally used for small drainage areas, an emergency spillway is not necessary. However, a non-erosive overflow channel leading to a stabilized watercourse or other Environmental Services approved location should be provided.



### 6.9.2.5 Surface Cover

A stone filled trench can be placed under a porous or impervious surface cover to conserve space.

### 6.9.2.6 Observation Well

An observation well should be installed at the lower end of the infiltration trench to check water levels, drawdown time, sediment accumulation, and conduct water quality monitoring. Figure 3 - 12 illustrates observation well details. It should consist of a perforated PVC pipe which is 4 to 6 inches in diameter and it should be constructed flush with the ground elevation. For larger trenches, a 12-36 inch diameter well can be installed to facilitate maintenance operations such as pumping out the sediment. The top of the well should be capped to discourage vandalism and tampering.

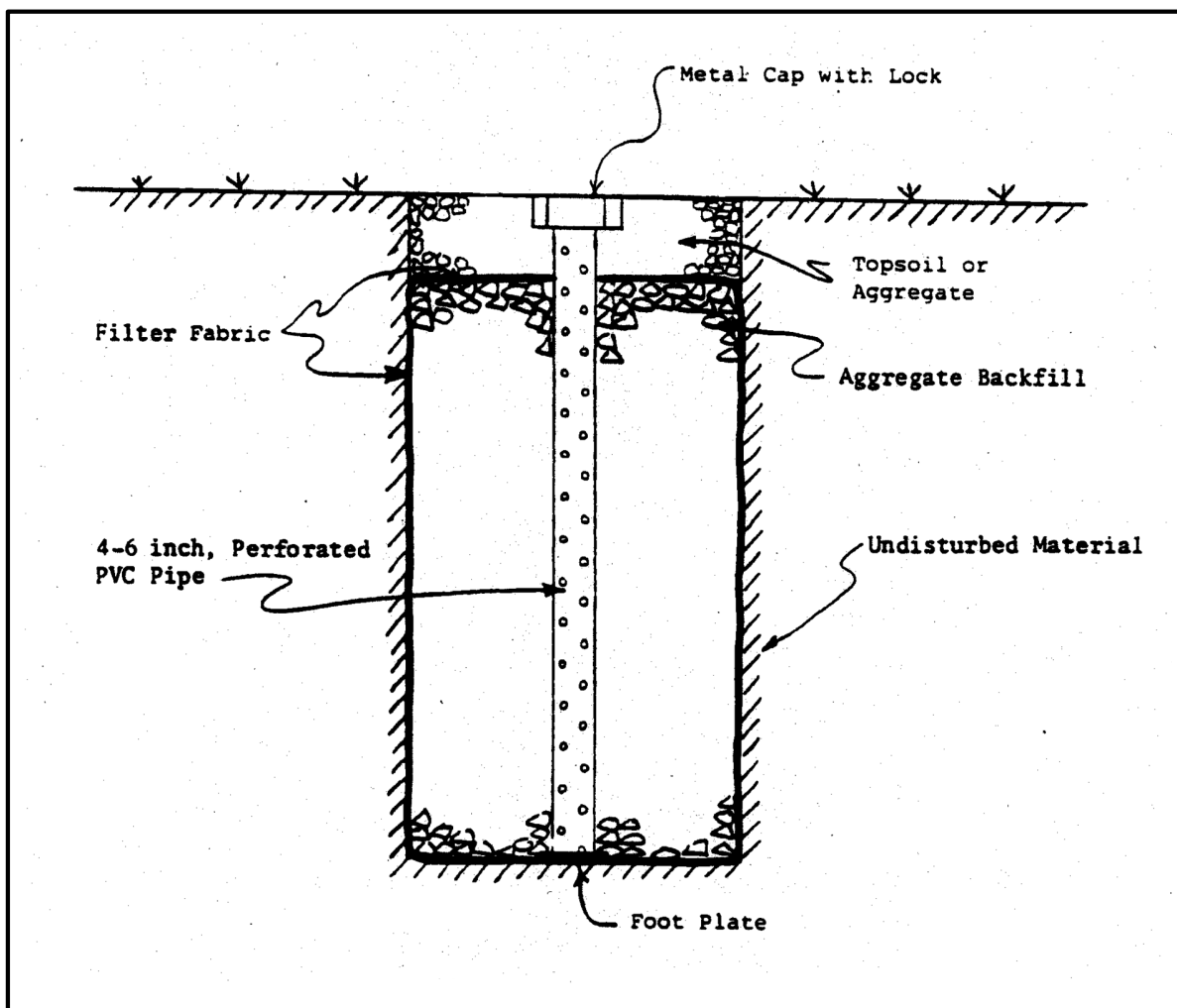


Figure 3 - 12. Observation Well Details

### **6.9.3 Construction Criteria**

#### **6.9.3.1 Trench Preparation**

Excavated materials must be placed away from the trench sides to enhance trench wall stability. Care should also be taken to keep this material away from slopes, neighboring property, sidewalks and streets. It is recommended that this material be covered with plastic. (see Volume 2, Chapter 3, BMP C123: Plastic Covering). Place geotextile fabric liner prior to stone aggregate placement.

#### **6.9.3.2 Stone Aggregate Placement and Compaction**

The stone aggregate should be placed in lifts and compacted using plate compactors. As a rule of thumb, a maximum loose lift thickness of 12 inches is recommended. The compaction process ensures geotextile conformity to the excavation sides, thereby reducing potential piping and geotextile clogging, and settlement problems.

#### **6.9.3.3 Potential Contamination**

Prevent natural or fill soils from intermixing with the stone aggregate. All contaminated stone aggregate shall be removed and replaced with uncontaminated stone aggregate.

#### **6.9.3.4 Overlapping and Covering**

Following the stone aggregate placement, the geotextile must be folded over the stone aggregate to form a 12 inch minimum longitudinal overlap. When overlaps are required between rolls, the upstream roll should overlap a minimum of 2 feet over the downstream roll in order to provide a shingled effect.

#### **6.9.3.5 Voids behind Geotextile**

Voids between the geotextile and excavation sides must be avoided. Removing boulders or other obstacles from the trench walls is one source of such voids. Natural soils should be placed in these voids at the most convenient time during construction to ensure geotextile conformity to the excavation sides. Soil piping, geotextile clogging, and possible surface subsidence will be avoided by this remedial process.

#### **6.9.3.6 Unstable Excavation Sites**

Vertically excavated walls may be difficult to maintain in areas where the soil moisture is high or where soft or cohesionless soils predominate. Trapezoidal, rather than rectangular, cross-sections may be needed.

## **Chapter 7 Detention Facilities for Stormwater Flow Control**

This section presents the methods, criteria, and details for design and analysis of detention facilities. These facilities provide for the temporary storage of increased stormwater runoff resulting from development pursuant to the performance standards set forth in Minimum Requirement #7 for flow control (Volume 1).

There are three primary types of detention facilities described in this section: detention ponds, tanks, and vaults.

### **7.1 Detention Facility Design Criteria**

#### **7.1.1 Detention Facility Setbacks**

Setback requirements are generally required by the City, uniform building code requirements, the Tacoma Pierce County Health Department, or other state regulations. Where a conflict between setbacks occurs, the City shall require compliance with the most stringent of the setback requirements from the various codes/regulations. The following are the minimum setbacks required per this manual.

- At least 100 feet from drinking water wells, and springs used for public water supplies. Infiltration facilities upgradient of drinking water wells and within 1, 5, and 10-year time of travel zones must comply with Health Department requirements (Washington Wellhead Protection Program, DOH, Publication #331-018).
- All systems shall be at least 10 feet from any building structure and at least 5 feet from any other structure or property line unless approved in writing by Environmental Services. If necessary, setbacks shall be increased from the minimum 10 feet in order to maintain a 1H:1V side slope for future excavation and maintenance. Vertical pond walls may necessitate an increase in setbacks.
- The discharge point shall not be placed on slopes steeper than 20 percent. A geotechnical analysis and report shall be required on slopes over 15% or if located within 200 feet of the top of steep slopes (40% or greater) or a landslide hazard area. More stringent setbacks may be required based upon the Tacoma Municipal Code.
- At least 10 feet from septic tanks and septic drainfields. Additional setbacks from DOH Publication 333-117 Onsite Sewage Systems, Chapter 246-272A WAC may apply. Shall not be located upstream of residential septic systems unless topography or a hydrology analysis clearly indicates that subsurface flows will not impact the drainfield.
- Environmental Services may require additional setbacks or analysis for facilities proposed to be sited within the influence of known contaminated sites or abandoned landfills.

#### **7.1.2 Detention Facility Access**

- The detention facility shall be easily accessible in order to perform necessary inspections and maintain the facility.
- Maintenance access road(s) shall be provided to the control structure and other drainage structures associated with the facility.

- Access roads/ramps must meet the following requirements:
  - Access roads may be constructed with an asphalt or gravel surface, or modular grid pavement.
  - Maximum grade shall be 15 percent.
  - Outside turning radius shall be a minimum of 40 feet.
  - Fence gates shall be located only on straight sections of road.
  - Access roads shall be 15 feet in width on curves and 12 feet on straight sections.
  - A driveway meeting City design standards must be provided where access roads connect to paved public roadways.
- If a fence is required, access shall be limited by a double-posted gate. If a fence is not required, access shall be limited by two fixed bollards on each side of the access road and two removable bollards equally located between the fixed bollards.
- Additional easements or modifications to proposed lot boundaries may be required to provide adequate access to detention facilities. Right-of-way may be needed for detention pond maintenance. Any tract not abutting public right-of-way shall have a 15-foot wide extension of the tract to an acceptable access location.

### **7.1.3 Detention Facility Overflow**

In all ponds, tanks, and vaults, a primary overflow (usually a riser pipe within the control structure; see Section 7.5) shall be provided to bypass the 100-year developed peak flow over or around the restrictor system. The design must provide controlled discharge directly into the downstream conveyance system.

### **7.1.4 Detention Facility Seeps and Springs**

Intermittent seeps along cut slopes are typically fed by a shallow groundwater source (interflow) flowing along a relatively impermeable soil stratum. These flows are storm driven. However, more continuous seeps and springs, which extend through longer dry periods, are likely from a deeper groundwater source. When continuous flows are intercepted and directed through flow control facilities, adjustments to the facility design shall be made to account for the additional base flow. Flow monitoring of intercepted flow may be required for design purposes.

### **7.1.5 Detention Facility Maintenance**

Per Minimum Requirement #10, an operation and maintenance plan shall be prepared for all stormwater management facilities. See Volume 1, Appendix C for specific maintenance requirements. Maintenance shall be a basic consideration in design and cost-determination of the stormwater management facility.

Any standing water removed during the maintenance operation must be disposed of in a City approved manner. See the dewatering requirements in Volume 4 of this manual. Pretreatment may be necessary. Solids must be disposed in accordance with state and local waste regulations.

Facilities shall be constructed such that the facility can be easily inspected by one person. This may require construction of additional inspection ports or access manholes to allow inspection access to be opened by one person.

### **7.1.6 Detention Facility Easements**

See Chapter 13 for information concerning easements.

## **7.2 Detention Ponds**

The design criteria in this section are for detention ponds. However, many of the criteria also apply to infiltration ponds (Chapter 6 and Volume 5), and water quality wetponds and combined detention/wetponds (Volume 5).

### **7.2.1 Dam Safety for Detention Ponds**

Stormwater detention facilities that can impound 10 acre-feet (435,600 cubic feet; 3.26 million gallons) or more above normal, surrounding grade with the water level at the embankment crest are subject to Ecology's dam safety requirements, even if water storage is intermittent and infrequent (WAC 173-175-020). The principal safety concern is for the downstream population at risk if the dam should breach and allow an uncontrolled release of the pond contents. Peak flows from dam failures are typically much larger than the 100-year flows which these ponds are typically designed to accommodate. The Applicant shall contact Ecology's Dam Safety Engineers at Ecology Headquarters if any of these conditions are met.

### **7.2.2 Design Criteria Specific for Detention Ponds**

Standard details for detention ponds are provided in Figure 3 - 13 through Figure 3 - 16 and Table 3 - 10. Control structure discussion and details are provided in Section 7.5.

#### **7.2.2.1 General**

- Ponds must be designed as flow-through systems (however, parking lot storage may utilize a back-up system; see Chapter 8). Developed flows must enter through a conveyance system separate from the control structure and outflow conveyance system. Maximizing distance between the inlet and outlet is encouraged to promote sedimentation.
- Pond bottoms shall be level and be located a minimum of 0.5 feet below the inlet and outlet to provide sediment storage.
- Design criteria for outflow control structures are specified in Section 7.5.
- A geotechnical analysis and report must be prepared for slopes 20% or greater, or if located within 200 feet of the top of a slope 20% or greater or landslide hazard area. The scope of the geotechnical report shall include the assessment of impoundment seepage on the stability of the natural slope where the facility will be located within the setback limits set forth in this section.

#### **7.2.2.2 Setbacks**

The following setback requirements shall be met, along with those stipulated in Section 7.1.1.

- The 100-year water surface elevation shall be at least 10 feet from any building structure and at least 5 feet from any other structure or property line unless approved in writing by Environmental Services. If necessary, setbacks shall be increased from the minimum 10 feet in order to maintain a 1H:1V side slope for future excavation and maintenance. Vertical pond walls may necessitate an increase in setbacks.

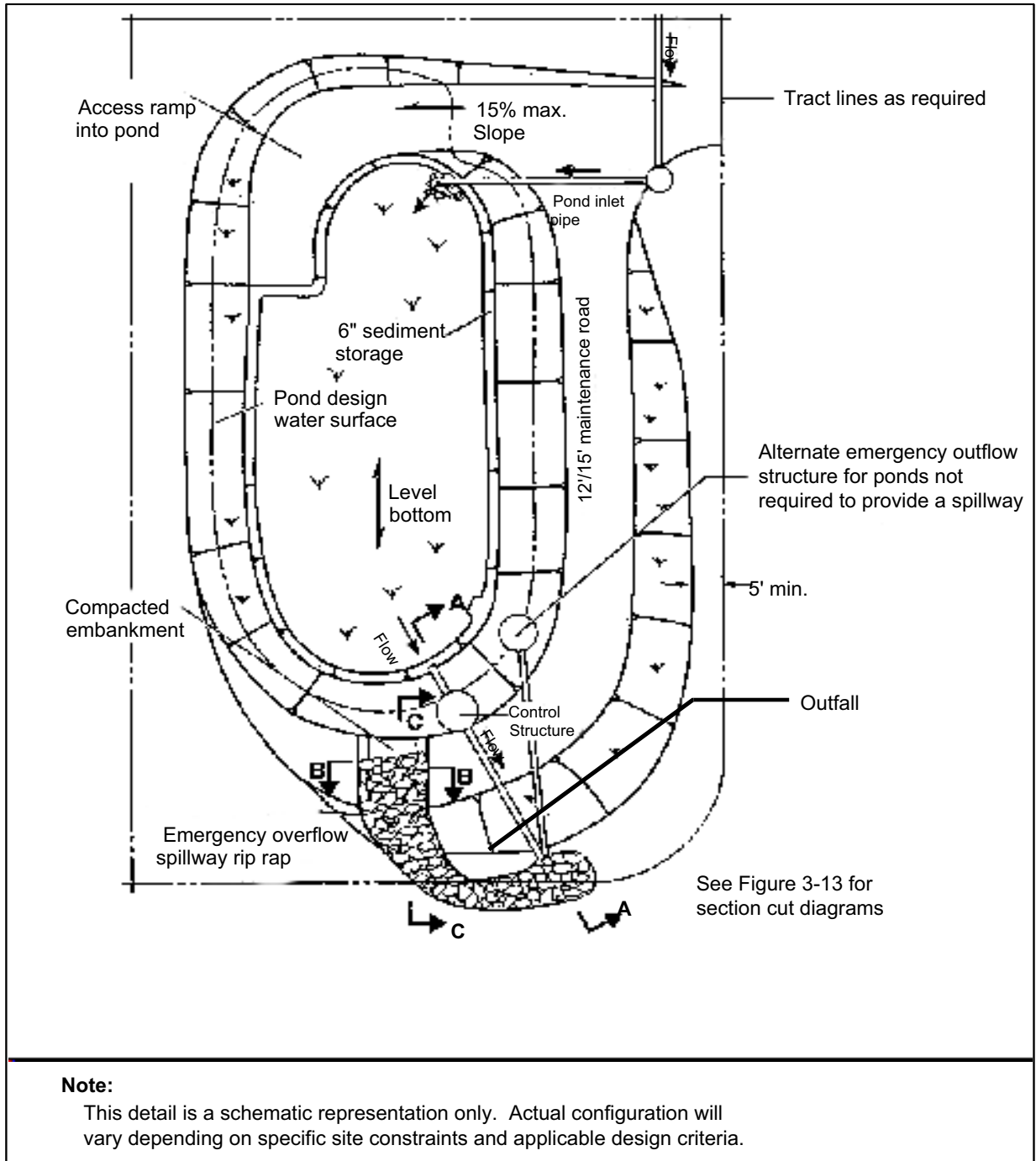
### 7.2.2.3 Side Slopes

- Interior side slopes up to the emergency overflow water surface shall not be steeper than 3H:1V unless a fence is provided (see Section 7.2.2.8).
- Exterior side slopes must not be steeper than 2H:1V unless analyzed for stability by a geotechnical engineer.
- Pond walls may be vertical retaining walls, provided:
  - They are constructed of minimum 3,000 psi structural reinforced concrete.
  - A fence is provided along the top of the wall.
  - At least 25% of the pond perimeter shall be a vegetated soil slope not steeper than 3H:1V.
  - Access for maintenance per this section shall be provided.
  - The design is stamped by a licensed structural engineer or civil engineer with structural expertise.
  - Ladders shall be provided on the walls for safety reasons as required by Environmental Services.

Other retaining walls such as rockeries, concrete, masonry unit walls, and keystone type walls may be used if designed by a geotechnical engineer, structural engineer, or civil engineer with structural expertise.

### 7.2.2.4 Embankments

- Pond berm embankments higher than 6 feet must be designed by a professional engineer with geotechnical expertise.
- For berm embankments 6 feet or less in height, the minimum top width shall be 6 feet or as recommended by a geotechnical engineer.
- Pond berm embankments must be constructed on native consolidated soil (or adequately compacted and stable fill soils analyzed by a geotechnical engineer) free of loose surface soil materials, roots, and other organic debris.
- Pond berm embankments greater than 4 feet in height must be constructed by excavating a key equal to 50 percent of the berm embankment cross-sectional height and width unless specified otherwise by a geotechnical engineer. Embankment compaction should be accomplished in such a manner as to produce a dense, low permeability engineered fill that can tolerate post-construction settlements with a minimum of cracking. The embankment fill shall be placed on a stable subgrade and compacted to a minimum of 95% of the Standard Proctor Maximum Density, ASTM Procedure D698. Placement moisture content should lie within 1% dry to 3% wet of the optimum moisture content.
- The berm embankment shall be constructed of soils with the following minimum characteristics per the United States Department of Agriculture's Textural Triangle: a minimum of 20% silt and clay, a maximum of 60% sand, a maximum of 60% silt, with nominal gravel and cobble content.
- Anti-seepage filter-drain diaphragms must be placed on all pipes in berm embankments impounding water with depths greater than 8 feet at the design water surface. See Dam Safety Guidelines, Part IV, Section 3.3.B. An electronic version of Dam Safety Guidelines is available in PDF format at [www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wr/dams/dss.html](http://www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wr/dams/dss.html)



**Figure 3 - 13. Typical Detention Pond**

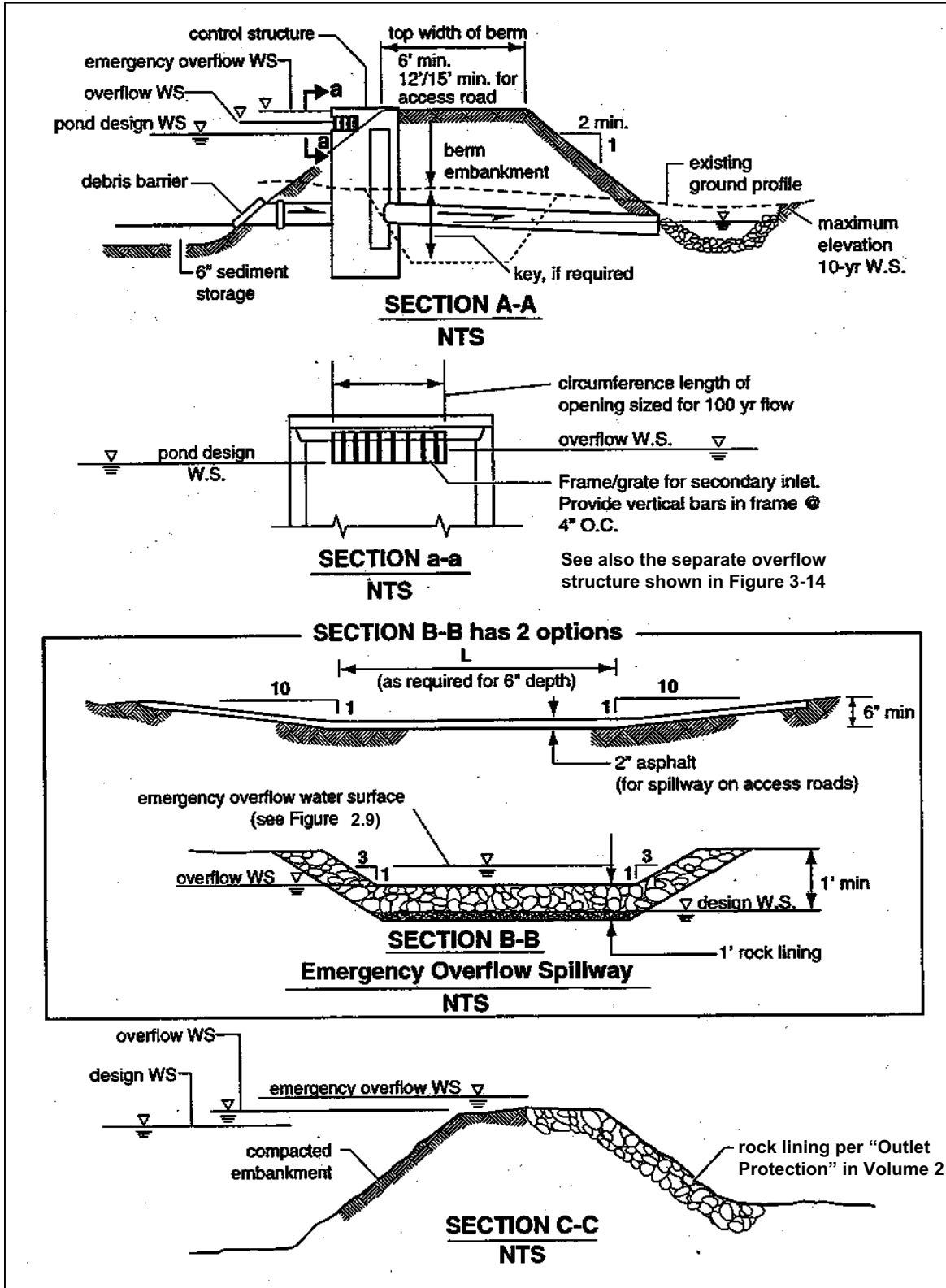


Figure 3 - 14. Typical Detention Pond Sections



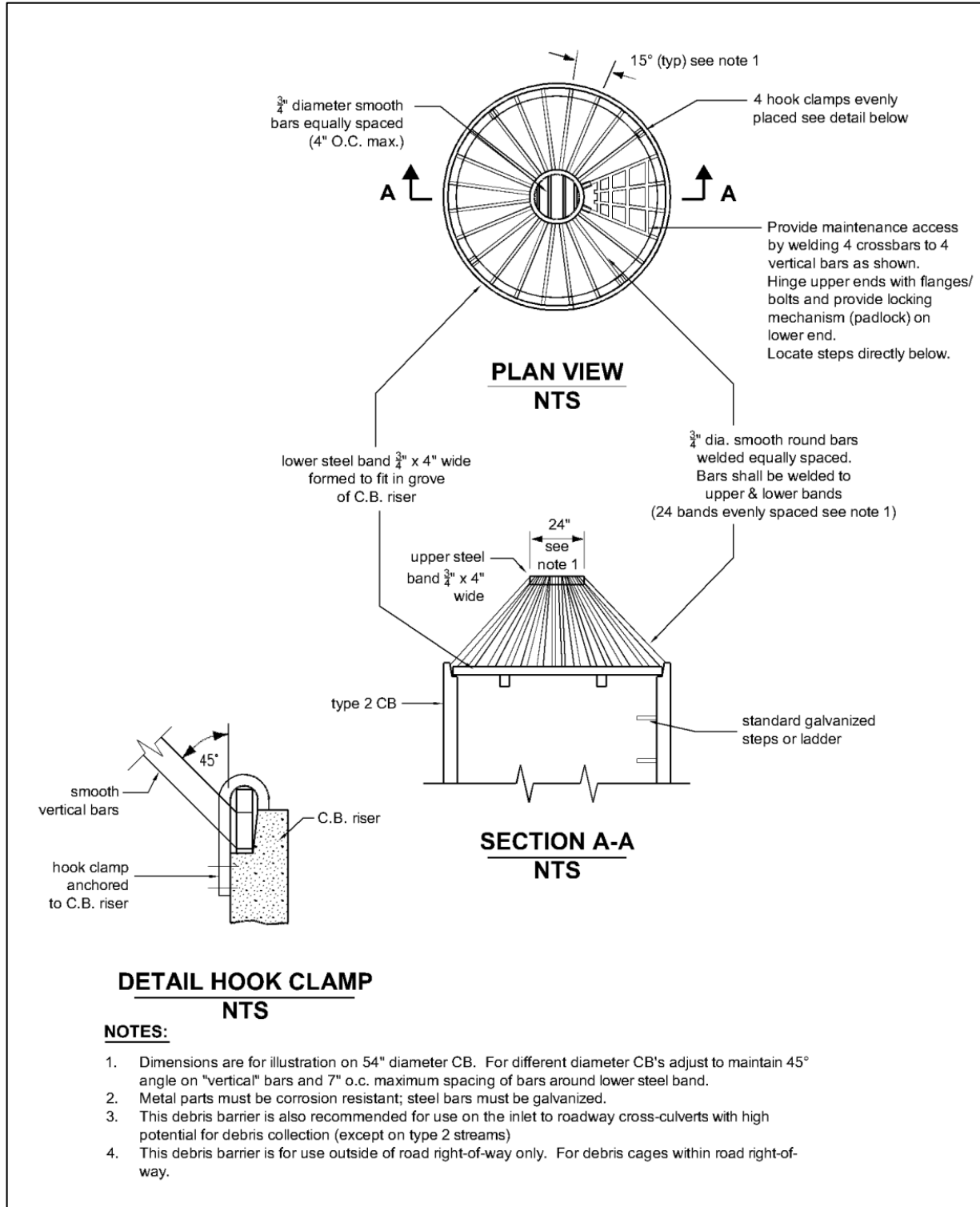


Figure 3 - 15. Overflow Structure

### **7.2.2.5 Overflow**

The following overflow requirements shall be met along with those stipulated in Section 7.1.3.

- A secondary inlet to the control structure shall be provided in ponds as additional protection against overtopping should the inlet pipe to the control structure become plugged. A grated opening (“jailhouse window”) in the control structure manhole functions as a weir (see Figure 3 - 14) when used as a secondary inlet.
- The maximum circumferential length of this opening must not exceed one-half the control structure circumference.
- The “birdcage” overflow structure as shown in Figure 3 - 15 may also be used as a secondary inlet.

### **7.2.2.6 Emergency Overflow Spillway**

- In addition to the above overflow provisions, ponds shall have an emergency overflow spillway. For impoundments of 10 acre-feet or greater, the emergency overflow spillway must meet the state’s dam safety requirements (see above). For impoundments less than 10 acre-feet, ponds must have an emergency overflow spillway that is sized to pass the 100-year developed peak flow. Emergency overflow spillways shall control the location of pond overtopping such that flow is directed into the downstream conveyance system or public right of way.
- As an option for ponds with berms less than 2 feet in height and located at grades less than 5 percent, emergency overflow may be provided by an emergency overflow structure, such as a Type II manhole fitted with a birdcage as shown in Figure 3 - 15. The emergency overflow structure must be designed to pass the 100-year developed peak flow, with a minimum of 6 inches of freeboard, directly to the downstream conveyance system or another acceptable discharge point.
- The emergency overflow spillway shall be armored with riprap in conformance with the “Outlet Protection” BMP in Volume 2 (BMP C209). The spillway must be armored full width, beginning at a point midway across the berm embankment and extending downstream to where emergency overflows re-enter the conveyance system (See Figure 3 - 14).
- Emergency overflow spillway designs must be analyzed as broad-crested trapezoidal weirs as described in Methods of Analysis at the end of this section. Either one of the weir sections shown in Figure 3 - 14 may be used.

### **7.2.2.7 Access**

The following access requirements shall be met along with those stipulated in Section 7.1.2:

- An access ramp is required for pond cleaning and maintenance. The ramp must extend to the pond bottom with a maximum slope of 15 percent (see access road criteria in Section 7.1.2).
- The internal berm of a wetpond or combined detention and wetpond may be used for access if it is designed to support a loaded truck, considering the berm is normally submerged and saturated.

### 7.2.2.8 Fencing

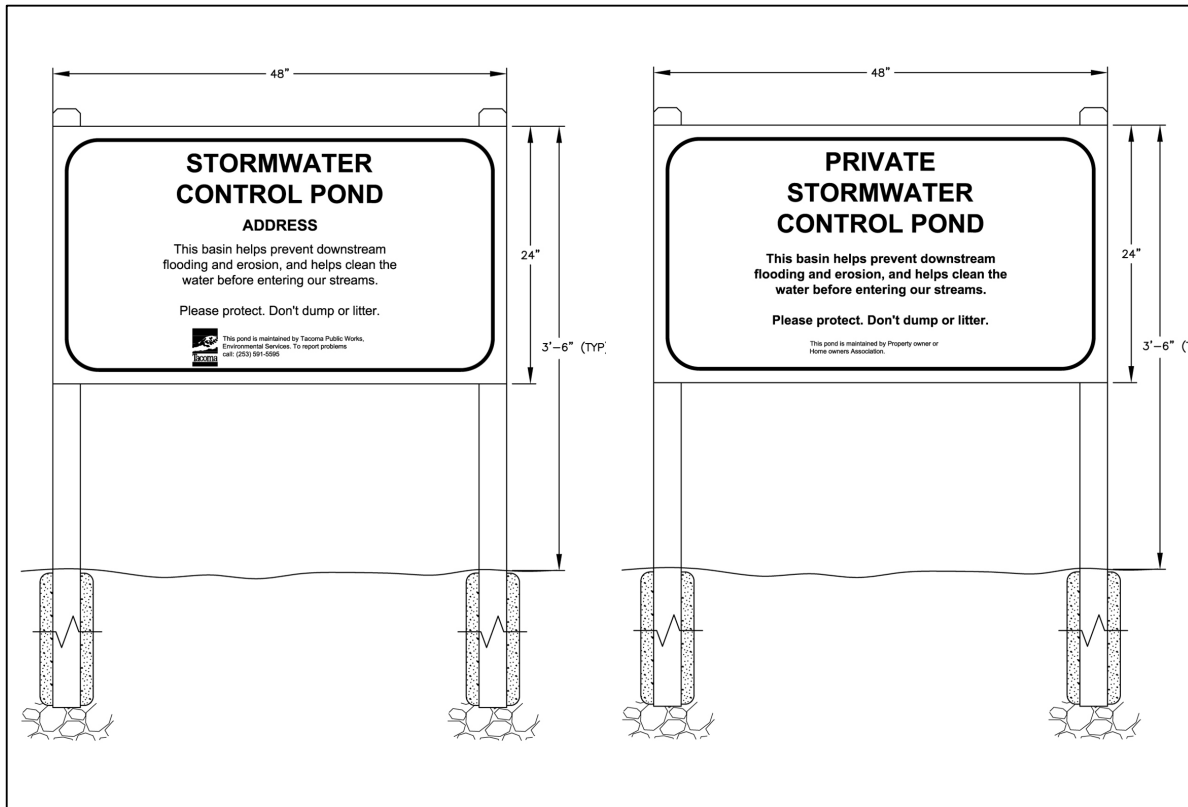
- A fence is required when a pond interior side slope is steeper than 3H:1V, or when the impoundment is a wall greater than 24 inches in height. Fencing is required for all vertical walls. Fencing is required if more than 10 percent of slopes are steeper 3H:1V.

Also note that detention ponds on school sites shall comply with safety standards developed by the Department of Health (DOH) and the Superintendent for Public Instruction (SPI). These standards include what is called a 'non-climbable fence.'

- Fences shall be 6 feet in height (see WSDOT Standard Plan L-2, Type 1 or Type 3 chain link fence). The fence may be a minimum of 4 feet in height if the depth of the impoundment is 5 feet or less (see WSDOT Standard Plan L-2, Type 4 or Type 6 chain link fence).
- Access gates shall be 16 feet in width consisting of two swinging sections 8 feet in width.
- Vertical metal balusters or 9 gauge galvanized steel fabric with bonded vinyl coating shall be used as fence material with the following aesthetic features:
  - Vinyl coating shall be compatible with the surrounding environment (e.g., green in open grassy areas and black or brown in wooded areas). All posts, cross bars, and gates shall be painted or coated the same color as the vinyl clad fence fabric.
  - Fence posts and rails shall conform to WSDOT Standard Plan L-2 for Types 1, 3, or 4 chain link fence.
- For metal baluster fences, Uniform Building Code standards apply.
- Wood fences may be used in residential areas where the fence will be maintained by homeowners associations or adjacent lot owners.
- Wood fences shall have pressure treated posts (ground contact rated) either set in 24-inch deep concrete footings or attached to footings by galvanized brackets. Rails and fence boards may be cedar, pressure-treated fir, or hemlock.

### 7.2.2.9 Signage

Detention ponds, infiltration ponds, wetponds, and combined ponds shall have a sign placed for maximum visibility from adjacent streets, sidewalks, and paths. An example and specifications for a permanent stormwater control pond are provided in Figure 3 - 16 and Table 3 - 10.



**Figure 3 - 16. Examples of Permanent Stormwater Control Pond Sign**

**Table 3 - 10: Permanent Stormwater Control Pond Sign Specifications**

<b>Size</b>	48 inches by 24 inches
<b>Material</b>	0.125 gauge aluminum
<b>Face</b>	Non-reflective vinyl or 3 coats outdoor enamel (sprayed)
<b>Lettering</b>	Silk-screen enamel where possible, or vinyl letters
<b>Colors</b>	Per City specifications where required
<b>Type Face</b>	Helvetica condensed. Title: 3 inch; Sub-Title: 1-1/2 inch; Text: 1 inch;
<b>Border</b>	Outer 1/8-inch border distance from edge: 1/4 inch All text shall be at least 1-3/4 inches from border.
<b>Installation</b>	Secure to chain link fence if available. Otherwise install on two posts as described below. Top of sign no higher than 42 inches from ground surface.
<b>Posts</b>	Pressure-treated 4" x 4"; beveled tops 1-1/2 inches higher than the top of the sign; mounted atop gravel bed, installed in 30-inch concrete-filled post holes (8-inch minimum diameter)
<b>Placement</b>	Face sign in direction of primary visual or physical access. Do not block any access road. Do not place within 6 feet of structural facilities (e.g. manholes, spillways, pipe inlets).
<b>Special Notes</b>	This facility is lined.

### 7.2.2.10 Planting Requirements

Exposed earth on the pond bottom and interior side slopes shall be sodded or seeded with an appropriate seed mixture. All remaining areas of the tract shall be planted with grass or be landscaped and mulched with a 4-inch cover of hog fuel or shredded wood mulch. Shredded wood mulch is made from shredded tree trimmings, usually from trees cleared on site. The mulch should be free of garbage and weeds and should not contain excessive resin, tannin, or other material detrimental to plant growth. Multiple plantings and mulching may be required until vegetation has established itself. A bond may be required to guarantee vegetation stabilization for detention facilities.

### 7.2.2.11 Landscaping

Landscaping is encouraged for most stormwater tract areas (see below for areas not to be landscaped). However, if provided, landscaping should adhere to the criteria that follow so as not to hinder maintenance operations. Landscaped stormwater tracts may, in some instances, provide a recreational space. In other instances, “naturalistic” stormwater facilities may be placed in open space tracts.

The following guidelines shall be followed if landscaping is proposed for facilities.

- No trees or shrubs shall be planted within 10 feet of inlet or outlet pipes or manmade drainage structures such as spillways or flow spreaders.
- Species of trees with roots that seek water shall be avoided within 50 feet of pipes or manmade structures.
- Planting shall be restricted on berms that impound water either permanently or temporarily during storms. This restriction does not apply to cut slopes that form pond banks, only to berms.
  - Trees or shrubs may not be planted on portions of water-impounding berms taller than four feet high. Only grasses may be planted on berms taller than four feet.
  - Trees planted on portions of water-impounding berms less than 4 feet high must be small, not higher than 20 feet mature height, and must have a fibrous root system. Table 3 - 11 gives some examples of trees with these characteristics developed for the Central Puget Sound.

**NOTE:** The internal berm in a wetpond is not subject to this planting restriction since the failure of an internal berm would be unlikely to create a safety problem.

- All landscape material, including grass, shall be planted in topsoil. Native underlying soils may be made suitable for planting if amended with 4 inches of compost tilled into the subgrade. Compost used should meet specifications for Grade A compost quality. See <http://www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/swfa/compost/>
- For a naturalistic effect as well as ease of maintenance, trees or shrubs shall be planted in clumps to form “*landscape islands*” rather than planting evenly spaced.
  - The landscaped islands shall be a minimum of six feet apart, and if set back from fences or other barriers, the setback distance should also be a minimum of 6 feet. Where tree foliage extends low to the ground, the 6 feet setback should be counted from the outer drip line of the trees (estimated at maturity).
  - This setback allows a 6-foot wide mower to pass around and between clumps.
- Evergreen trees and trees which produce relatively little leaf-fall (such as Oregon ash, mimosa, or locust) are preferred in areas draining to the pond.

- Trees should be set back so that branches do not extend over the pond (to prevent deposition of leaves into the pond).
- Drought tolerant species are recommended.

**Table 3 - 11: Small Trees and Shrubs with Fibrous Roots**

Small Trees/High Shrubs	Low Shrubs
Red twig dogwood ( <i>Cornus stolonifera</i> )*	Snowberry ( <i>Symphoricarpos albus</i> )*
Serviceberry ( <i>Amelanchier alnifolia</i> )*	Salmonberry ( <i>Rubus spectabilis</i> )*
Filbert ( <i>Corylus cornuta</i> , others)*	Rosa rugosa (avoid spreading varieties)
Highbush cranberry ( <i>Vaccinium opulus</i> )	Rock rose ( <i>Cistus spp.</i> , <i>Ceanothus spp.</i> , choose hardier varieties)
Blueberry ( <i>Vaccinium spp.</i> )	New Zealand flax ( <i>Phormium tenax</i> )
Fruit trees on dwarf rootstock	Ornamental grasses (e.g. <i>Miscanthus</i> , <i>Pennisetum</i> )
Rhododendron (native and ornamental varieties)	

\* Native Species

### 7.2.3 Methods of Analysis

#### 7.2.3.1 Detention Volume and Outflow

The volume and outflow design for detention ponds must be in accordance with Minimum Requirements # 7 in Volume 1 and the hydrologic analysis and design methods in Chapter 1 of Volume 3. Design guidelines for restrictor orifice structures are given in Section 7.5.

The design water surface elevation is the highest elevation which occurs in order to meet the required outflow performance for the pond.

#### 7.2.3.2 Detention Ponds in Infiltrative Soils

Detention ponds may occasionally be sited on soils that are sufficiently permeable for a properly functioning infiltration system (see Chapter 6). These detention ponds have a surface discharge and may also utilize infiltration as a second pond outflow. Detention ponds sized with infiltration as a second outflow must meet all the requirements of Chapter 6 for infiltration ponds, including a soils report, testing, groundwater protection, pre-settling, and construction techniques.

#### 7.2.3.3 Emergency Overflow Spillway Capacity

For impoundments under 10-acre-feet, or ponds not subject to dam safety requirements, the emergency overflow spillway weir section must be designed to pass the 100-year runoff event for developed conditions assuming a broad-crested weir. The **broad-crested weir equation** for the spillway section in Figure 3 - 17, for example, would be:

$$Q_{100} = C(2g)^{1/2} \left[ \frac{2}{3} LH^{3/2} + \frac{8}{15} (\tan\theta) H^{5/2} \right] \quad (\text{equation 1})$$

Where  $Q_{100}$  = peak flow for the 100-year runoff event (cfs)  
 C = discharge coefficient (0.6)

- g = gravity (32.2 ft/sec<sup>2</sup>)
- L = length of weir (ft)
- H = height of water over weir (ft)
- θ = angle of side slopes (degrees)

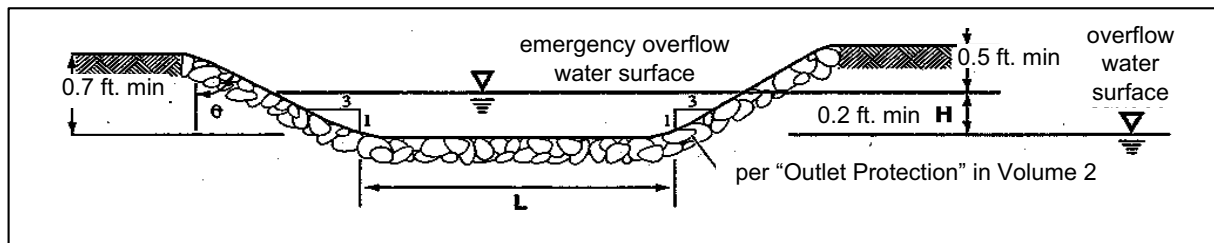
**NOTE:** Q<sub>100</sub> is either the peak 10-minute flow computed from the 100-year, 24-hour storm and a Type 1A distribution, or the 100-year, 1-hour flow, indicated by an approved continuous runoff model, multiplied by a factor of 1.6

Assuming C = 0.6 and Tan θ = 3 (for 3:1 slopes), the equation becomes:

$$Q_{100} = 3.21[LH^{3/2} + 2.4 H^{5/2}] \quad \text{(equation 2)}$$

To find width L for the weir section, the equation is rearranged to use the computed Q<sub>100</sub> and trial values of H (0.2 feet minimum):

$$L = [Q_{100}/(3.21H^{3/2})] - 2.4 H \text{ or } 6 \text{ feet minimum} \quad \text{(equation 3)}$$



**Figure 3 - 17. Weir Section for Emergency Overflow Spillway**

### 7.3 Detention Tanks

Detention tanks are underground storage facilities typically constructed with large diameter pipe. Standard detention tank details are shown in Figure 3 - 18 and Figure 3 - 19. Control structure details are shown in Section 7.5.

Certain of these requirements and design criteria shall also apply to other types of detention facilities, for example arch pipe detention facilities. Environmental Services shall determine which requirements and design criteria are appropriate for various types of detention facilities.

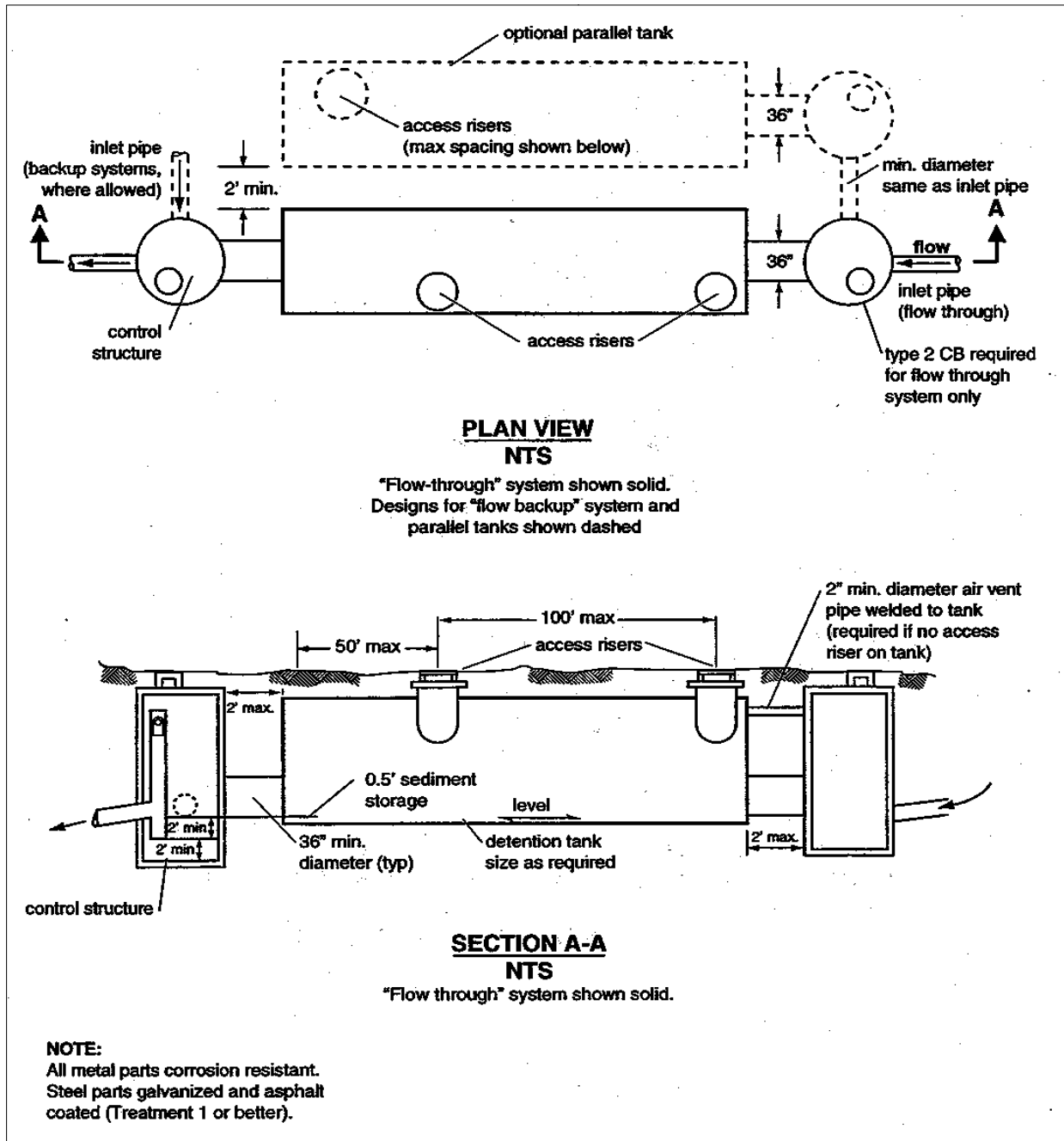


Figure 3 - 18. Typical Detention Tank



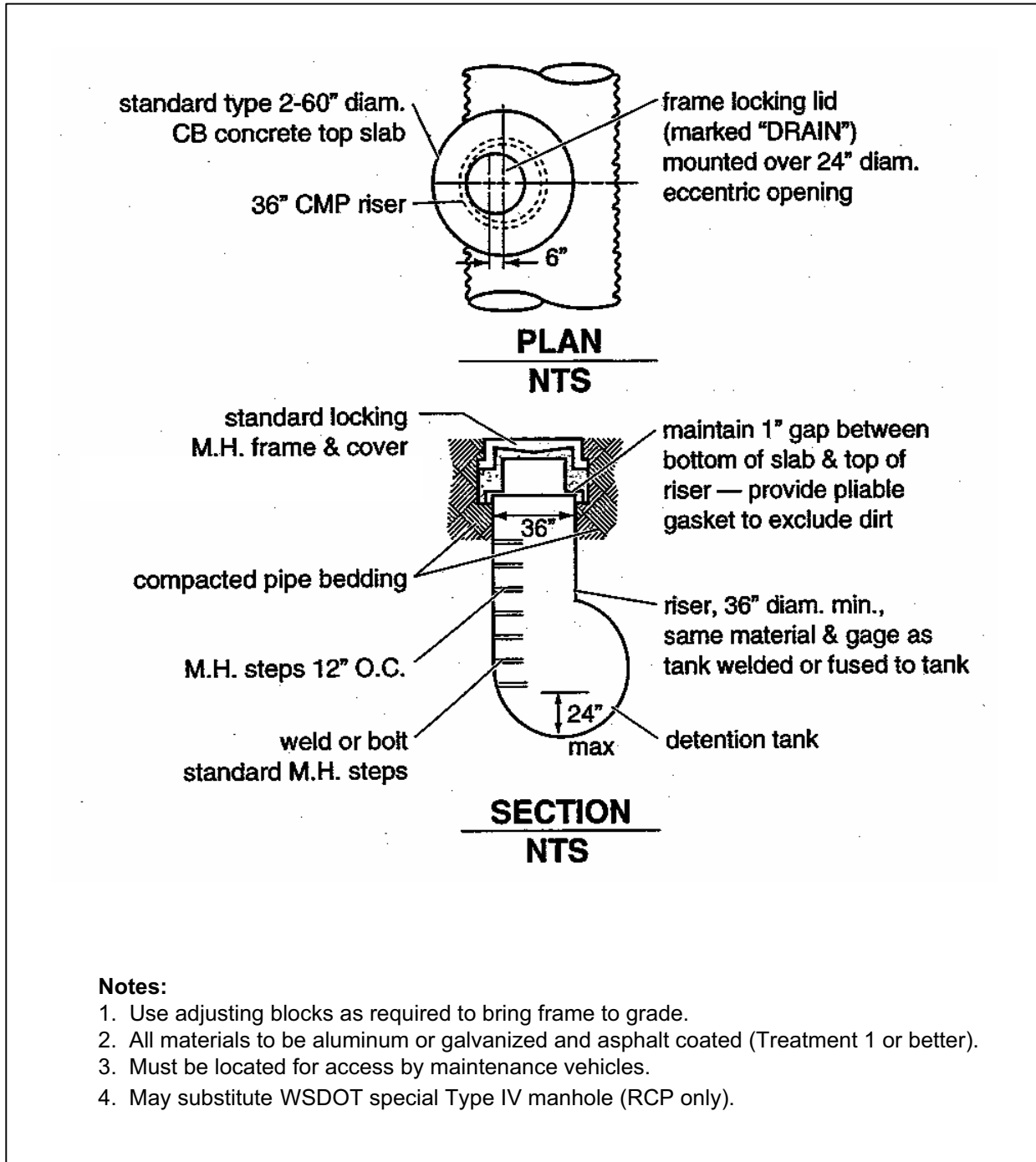


Figure 3 - 19. Detention Tank Access Detail

## **7.3.1 Design Criteria**

### **7.3.1.1 General**

- Tanks shall be designed as flow-through systems with manholes in line (see Figure 3 - 18) to promote sediment removal and facilitate maintenance.
- The detention tank bottom shall be located 6 inches below the inlet and outlet to provide dead storage for sediment. If arch pipe is used, the minimum dead storage is 0.5 feet.
- The minimum pipe diameter for a detention tank is 36 inches.
- The minimum thickness for CMP shall be 12-gauge.
- Tanks larger than 36 inches may be connected to each adjoining structure with a short section (2-foot maximum length) of 36-inch minimum diameter pipe. These sections shall not be considered as access when determining required access points.
- Details of outflow control structures are given in Section 7.5.
- Parallel tanks shall be placed a minimum of two feet from each other measured from the edge of tank or pipe.

### **7.3.1.2 Materials**

Acceptable materials for stormwater facilities include plastics, iron, aluminum, stainless steel, and concrete. Zinc galvanized materials are prohibited. Galvanized metal pipes may only be used if they employ a protective asphalt coating. Pipe material, joints, and protective treatment for tanks shall be in accordance with Section 9.05 of the *WSDOT/APWA Standard Specification*.

### **7.3.1.3 Structural Stability**

Tanks must meet structural requirements for overburden support and traffic loading if appropriate. Tanks must be designed for H-20 live loads when located in areas subject to vehicular traffic. Metal tank end plates shall be designed for structural stability at maximum hydrostatic loading conditions. Tanks shall not be placed in fill slopes, unless analyzed in a geotechnical report for stability and constructability.

### **7.3.1.4 Buoyancy**

Buoyancy calculations shall be required where groundwater may induce flotation. Engineers are required to address this issue in project design documentation.

### **7.3.1.5 Access**

The following requirements for access shall be met along with those stipulated in Section 7.1.2.

- The maximum depth from finished grade to tank invert shall be 20 feet.
- Access openings shall be positioned a maximum of 50 feet from any location within the tank. A minimum of one access opening per tank shall be provided.
- The maximum distance between access risers shall be 100 feet.
- All tank access openings shall have round, solid locking lids (usually 1/2 to 5/8-inch diameter Allen-head cap screws).
- Thirty-six inch minimum diameter CMP riser-type manholes (see Figure 3 - 19) of the same gauge as the tank material may be used for access along the length of the tank and at the upstream terminus of the tank in a backup system. The top slab is separated (1-inch minimum gap) from the top of the riser to allow for deflections from vehicle loadings without damaging the riser tank.

- All tank access openings must be readily accessible to maintenance vehicles.
- Tanks must comply with the OSHA confined space requirements, which include clearly marking entrances to confined space areas. This may be accomplished by hanging a removable sign in the access riser(s) just under the access lid.

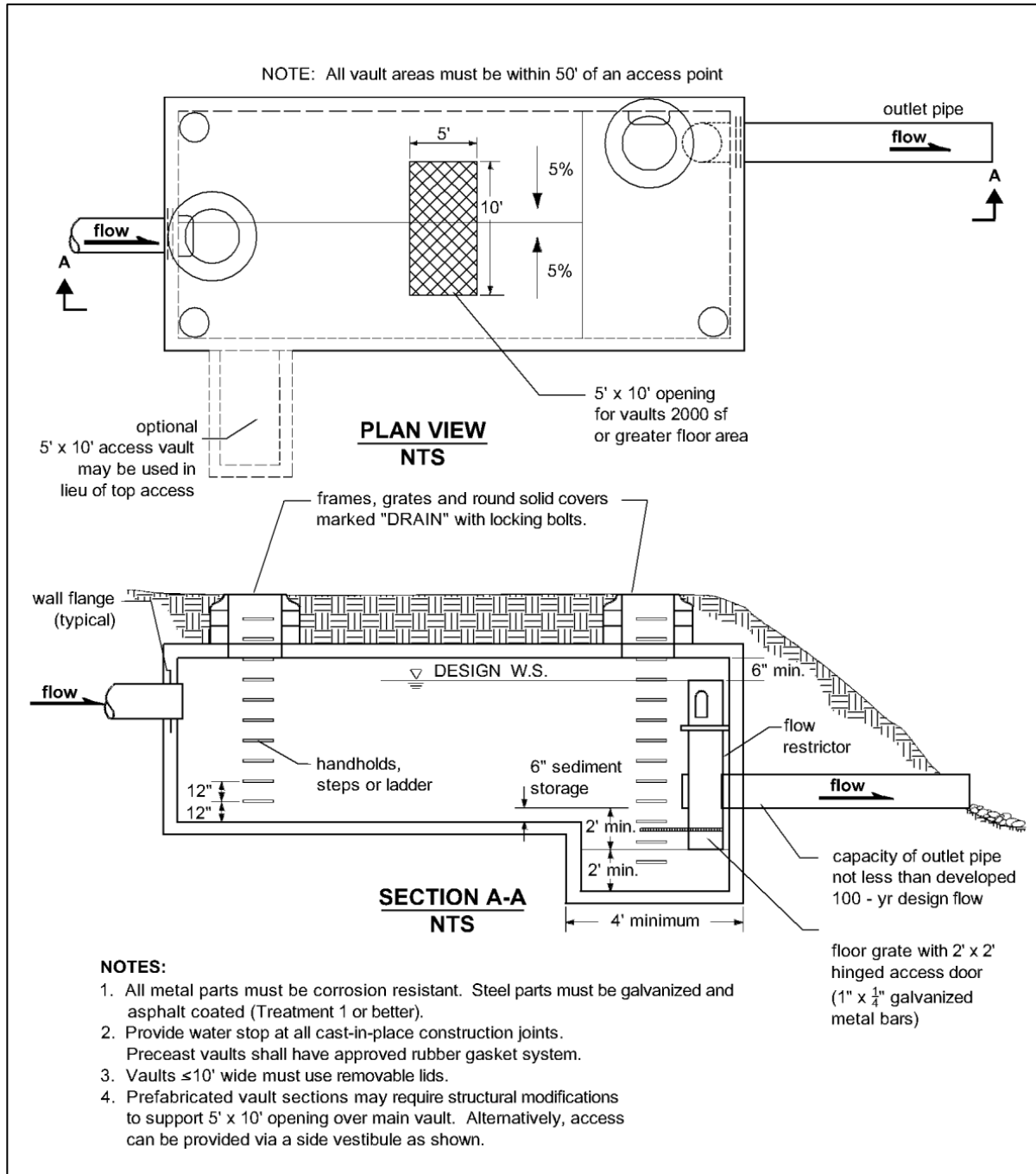
### **7.3.1.6 Methods of Analysis**

#### ***Detention Volume and Outflow***

The volume and outflow design for detention tanks must be in accordance with Minimum Requirement # 7 in Volume 1 and the hydrologic analysis and design methods in Chapter 1. Restrictor and orifice design are given in Section 7.5.

## **7.4 Detention Vaults**

*Detention vaults* are box-shaped underground storage facilities typically constructed with reinforced concrete. A standard detention vault detail is shown in Figure 3 - 20. Control structure details are shown in Section 7.5.



**Figure 3 - 20. Typical Detention Vault**

## **7.4.1 Design Criteria**

### **7.4.1.1 General**

- Detention vaults shall be designed as flow-through systems with bottoms level (longitudinally) or sloped toward the inlet to facilitate sediment removal. Distance between the inlet and outlet should be maximized (as feasible).
- The detention vault bottom shall slope at least 5 percent from each side towards the center, forming a broad “v” to facilitate sediment removal. More than one “v” may be used to minimize vault depth. The vault bottom may be flat with 0.5 – 1 foot of sediment storage if removable panels are provided over the entire vault. It is recommended that the removable panels be at grade, have stainless steel lifting eyes, and weigh no more than 5 tons per panel.
- The invert elevation of the outlet shall be elevated above the bottom of the vault to provide an average 6 inches of sediment storage over the entire bottom. The outlet shall also be elevated a minimum of 2 feet above the orifice to retain oil within the vault.
- Details of outflow control structures are given in Section 7.5.

### **7.4.1.2 Materials**

Minimum 3,000 psi structural reinforced concrete may be used for detention vaults. All construction joints must be provided with water stops. Acceptable materials for stormwater facilities include plastics, iron, aluminum, stainless steel and concrete. Zinc galvanized materials are prohibited. Galvanized metal pipes may only be used if they employ a protective asphalt coating or other Environmental Services approved coating.

### **7.4.1.3 Structural Stability**

All vaults must meet structural requirements for overburden support and H-20 traffic loading (See Standard Specifications for Highway Bridges, 1998 Interim Revisions, American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials). Vaults located under roadways must meet live load requirements of the City. Cast-in-place wall sections must be designed as retaining walls. Structural designs for cast-in-place vaults must be stamped by a licensed civil engineer with structural expertise. Vaults must be placed on stable, well-consolidated native material with suitable bedding. Vaults must not be placed in fill slopes, unless analyzed in a geotechnical report for stability and constructability.

### **7.4.1.4 Access**

The following requirements for access shall be met along with those stipulated in Section 7.1.2.

- Access must be provided over the inlet pipe and outlet structure.
- Access openings shall be positioned a maximum of 50 feet from any location within the vault. Additional access points may be needed on large vaults.
- An access opening shall be provided directly above the lowest point of each “v” in the vault floor.
- An access opening shall be provided directly above each connection to the vault.
- For vaults with greater than 1,250 square feet of floor area, a 5' x 10' removable panel should be provided over the inlet pipe (instead of a standard frame, grate and solid cover). Alternatively, a separate access vault may be provided, as shown in Figure 3 - 20.
- For vaults under roadways, the removable panel must be located outside the travel lanes. Alternatively, multiple standard locking manhole covers may be provided.

- Ladders and hand-holds shall be provided at all access openings, and as needed to meet OSHA confined space requirements.
- All access openings, except those covered by removable panels, may have round, solid locking lids, or 3-foot square, locking diamond plate covers.
- Vaults with widths 10 feet or less must have removable lids.
- The maximum depth from finished grade to the vault invert shall be 20 feet.
- Internal structural walls of large vaults should be provided with openings sufficient for maintenance access between cells. The openings should be sized and situated to allow access to the maintenance “v” in the vault floor.
- A minimum of two access openings shall be provided into each cell.
- The minimum internal height shall be 7 feet from the highest point of the vault floor (not sump), and the minimum width shall be 4 feet. However, concrete vaults may be a minimum 3 feet in height and width if used as a tank with access manholes at each end, and if the width is no larger than the height. Also the minimum internal height requirement may not be needed for any areas covered by removable panels.
- Vaults must comply with the OSHA confined space requirements, which include clearly marking entrances to confined space areas. This may be accomplished by hanging a removable sign in the access riser(s), just under the access lid.
- Ventilation pipes (minimum 12-inch diameter or equivalent) shall be provided in all four corners of vaults to allow for artificial ventilation prior to entry of maintenance personnel into the vault. Alternatively, removable panels over the entire vault, or manhole access at 12-foot spacing, may be provided.

## **7.4.2 Methods of Analysis**

### **7.4.2.1 Detention Volume and Outflow**

The volume and outflow design for detention vaults must be in accordance with Minimum Requirement # 7 in Volume 1 and the hydrologic analysis and design methods in Chapter 1. Restrictor and orifice design are given in Section 7.5.

## **7.5 Control Structures**

*Control structures* are catch basins or manholes with a restrictor device for controlling outflow from a facility to meet the desired performance.

The restrictor device usually consists of two or more orifices and/or a weir section sized to meet performance requirements. Standard control structure details are shown in Figure 3 - 21 through Figure 3 - 23.

### **7.5.1 Design Criteria**

#### **7.5.1.1 Multiple Orifice Restrictor**

In most cases, control structures need only two orifices: one at the bottom and one near the top of the riser, although additional orifices may best utilize detention storage volume. Several orifices may be located at the same elevation if necessary to meet performance requirements.

- Minimum orifice diameter is 0.5 inches. In some instances, a 0.5-inch bottom orifice will be too large to meet target release rates, even with minimal head. In these cases, do not reduce the live storage depth to less than 3 feet in an attempt to meet the performance

standards. Under such circumstances, flow-throttling devices may be a feasible option. These devices will throttle flows while maintaining a plug-resistant opening.

- Orifices may be constructed on a tee section as shown in Figure 3 - 21 or on a baffle as shown in Figure 3 - 22.
- In some cases, performance requirements may require the top orifice/elbow to be located too high on the riser to be physically constructed (e.g. a 13-inch diameter orifice positioned 0.5 feet from the top of the riser). In these cases, a notch weir in the riser pipe may be used to meet performance requirements (see Figure 3 - 23).
- Backwater effects from water surface elevations in the conveyance system shall be evaluated. High tailwater elevations may affect performance of the restrictor system and reduce live storage volumes. Backwater effects shall also be analyzed for areas that are influenced by tides.

### **7.5.1.2 Riser and Weir Restrictor**

- Properly designed weirs may be used as flow restrictors (see Figure 3 - 23 and Figure 3 - 25 through Figure 3 - 27). However, they must be designed to provide for primary overflow of the developed 100-year peak flow discharging to the detention facility.
- The combined orifice and riser (or weir) overflow may be used to meet performance requirements. However, the design must still provide for primary overflow of the developed 100-year peak flow assuming all orifices are plugged. Figure 3 - 28 can be used to calculate the head in feet above a riser of given diameter and flow.

### **7.5.1.3 Access**

The following guidelines for access may be used.

- An access road to the control structure is needed for inspection and maintenance, and must be designed and constructed as specified in Section 7.1.2.
- Manhole and catch basin lids for control structures must be locking, and rim elevations must match proposed finish grade.
- Manholes and catch basins must meet the OSHA confined space requirements, which include clearly marking entrances to confined space areas.

### **7.5.1.4 Materials**

Acceptable materials for stormwater facilities include plastics, iron, aluminum, stainless steel and concrete. Zinc galvanized materials are prohibited. Galvanized metal pipes may only be used if they employ an approved protective coating.

### **7.5.1.5 Maintenance**

Per Minimum Requirement #10, an operation and maintenance plan shall be prepared for all stormwater management facilities. See Volume 1, Appendix C for specific maintenance requirements. Maintenance shall be a basic consideration in design and cost-determination of the stormwater management facility.

Any standing water removed during the maintenance operation must be disposed of in a City approved manner. See the dewatering requirements in Volume 4 of this manual. Pretreatment may be necessary. Solids must be disposed in accordance with state and local waste regulations.

Facilities shall be constructed such that the facility can be easily inspected by one person. This may require construction of additional inspection ports or access manholes to allow inspection access to be opened by one person.

## 7.5.2 Methods of Analysis

This section presents the methods and equations for design of **control structure restrictor devices**. Included are details for the design of orifices, rectangular sharp-crested weirs, v-notch weirs, suture weirs, and overflow risers.

### 7.5.2.1 Orifices

Flow-through orifice plates in the standard tee section or turn-down elbow may be approximated by the general equation:

$$Q = C A \sqrt{2gh} \quad (\text{equation 4})$$

where Q	=	flow (cfs)
C	=	coefficient of discharge (0.62 for plate orifice)
A	=	area of orifice (ft <sup>2</sup> )
h	=	hydraulic head (ft)
g	=	gravity (32.2 ft/sec <sup>2</sup> )

Figure 3 - 24 illustrates this simplified application of the orifice equation.

The diameter of the orifice is calculated from the flow. The orifice equation is often useful when expressed as the orifice diameter in inches:

$$d = \sqrt{\frac{36.88Q}{\sqrt{h}}} \quad (\text{equation 5})$$

where d	=	orifice diameter (inches)
Q	=	flow (cfs)
h	=	hydraulic head (ft)

### 7.5.2.2 Rectangular Sharp-Crested Weir

The rectangular sharp-crested weir design shown in Figure 3 - 25 may be analyzed using standard weir equations for the fully contracted condition.

$$Q = C (L - 0.2H)H^{3/2} \quad (\text{equation 6})$$

where Q	=	flow (cfs)
C	=	3.27 + 0.40 H/P (ft)
H, P	=	as shown in Figure 3 - 25
L	=	length (ft) of the portion of the riser circumference as necessary not to exceed 50 percent of the circumference
D	=	inside riser diameter (ft)

**NOTE:** This equation accounts for side contractions by subtracting 0.1H from L for each side of the notch weir.



### 7.5.2.3 V-Notch Sharp - Crested Weir

V-notch weirs as shown in Figure 3 - 26 may be analyzed using standard equations for the fully contracted condition.

### 7.5.2.4 Proportional or Sutro Weir

Sutro weirs are designed so that the discharge is proportional to the total head. This design may be useful in some cases to meet performance requirements.

The sutro weir consists of a rectangular section joined to a curved portion that provides proportionality for all heads above the line A-B (see Figure 3 - 27). The weir may be symmetrical or non-symmetrical.

For this type of weir, the curved portion is defined by the following equation (calculated in radians):

$$\frac{x}{b} = 1 - \frac{2}{\pi} \text{Tan}^{-1} \sqrt{\frac{Z}{a}} \quad (\text{equation 7})$$

Where a, b, x and Z are as shown in Figure 3 - 27.

The head-discharge relationship is:

$$Q = C_d b \sqrt{2ga} \left( h_1 - \frac{a}{3} \right) \quad (\text{equation 8})$$

where Q = flow (cfs)  
g = gravity

Values of  $C_d$  for both symmetrical and non-symmetrical sutro weirs are summarized in Table 3 - 12;  $h_1$  is shown in Figure 3 - 27.

*When  $b > 1.50$  or  $a > 0.30$ , use  $C_d=0.6$ .*

### 7.5.2.5 Riser Overflow

The nomograph in Figure 3 - 28 can be used to determine the head (in feet) above a riser of given diameter and for a given flow (usually the 100-year peak flow for developed conditions).

**NOTE:**  $Q_{100}$  is either the peak 10-minute flow computed from the 100-year, 24-hour storm and a Type 1A distribution, or the 100-year, 1-hour flow, indicated by an approved continuous runoff model, multiplied by a factor of 1.6

**Table 3 - 12: Values of  $C_d$  for Sutro Weirs**

<b><math>C_d</math> Values, Symmetrical</b>					
<b>a (ft)</b>	<b>b (ft)</b>				
	<b>0.50</b>	<b>0.75</b>	<b>1.0</b>	<b>1.25</b>	<b>1.50</b>
0.02	0.608	0.613	0.617	0.6185	0.619
0.05	0.606	0.611	0.615	0.617	0.6175
0.10	0.603	0.608	0.612	0.6135	0.614
0.15	0.601	0.6055	0.610	0.6115	0.612
0.20	0.599	0.604	0.608	0.6095	0.610
0.25	0.598	0.6025	0.6065	0.608	0.6085
0.30	0.597	0.602	0.606	0.6075	0.608
<b><math>C_d</math> Values, Non-Symmetrical</b>					
<b>a (ft)</b>	<b>b (ft)</b>				
	<b>0.50</b>	<b>0.75</b>	<b>1.0</b>	<b>1.25</b>	<b>1.50</b>
0.02	0.614	0.619	0.623	0.6245	0.625
0.05	0.612	0.617	0.621	0.623	0.6235
0.10	0.609	0.614	0.618	0.6195	0.620
0.15	0.607	0.6115	0.616	0.6175	0.618
0.20	0.605	0.610	0.614	0.6155	0.616
0.25	0.604	0.6085	0.6125	0.614	0.6145
0.30	0.603	0.608	0.612	0.6135	0.614

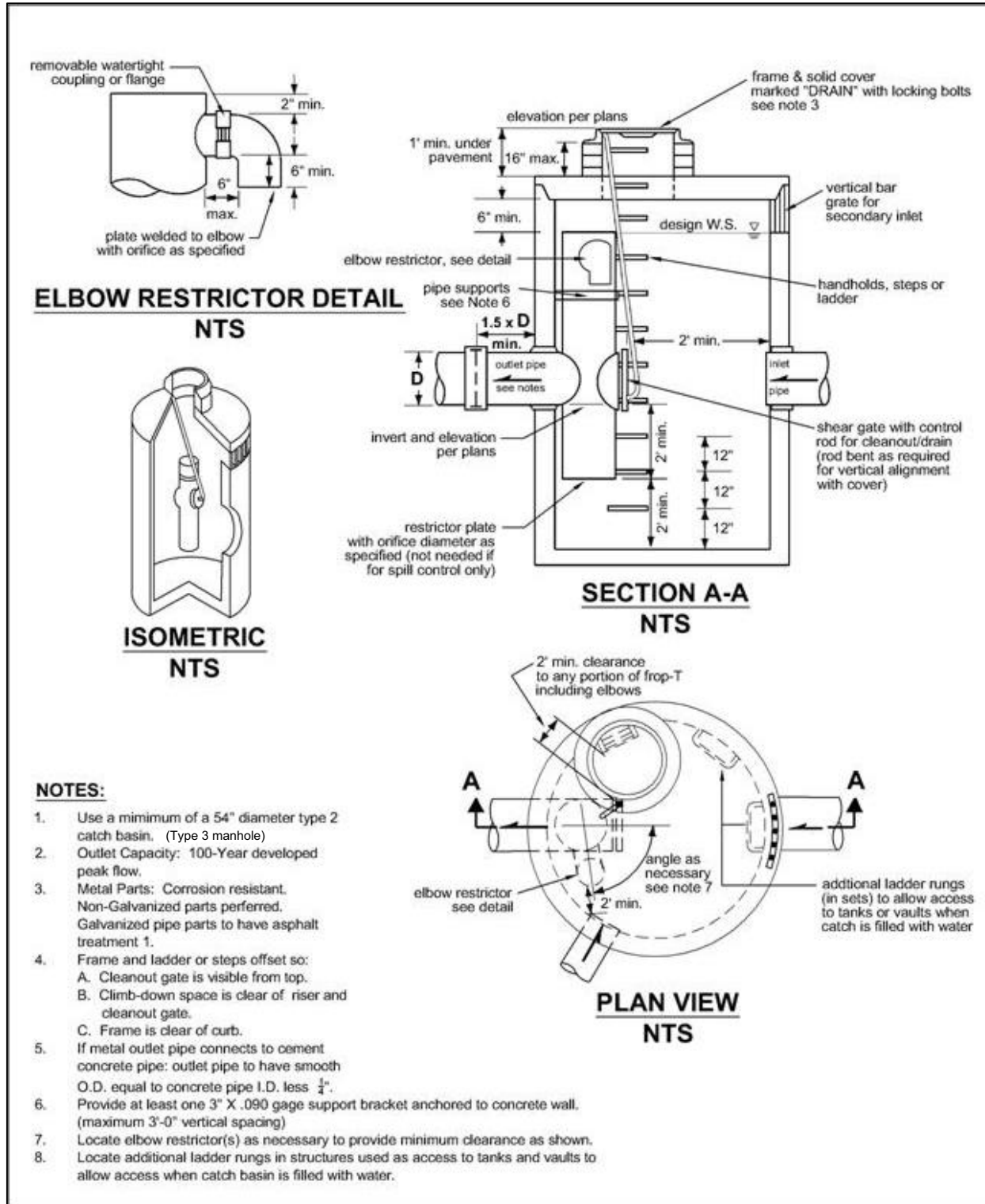


Figure 3 - 21. Flow Restrictor (TEE)

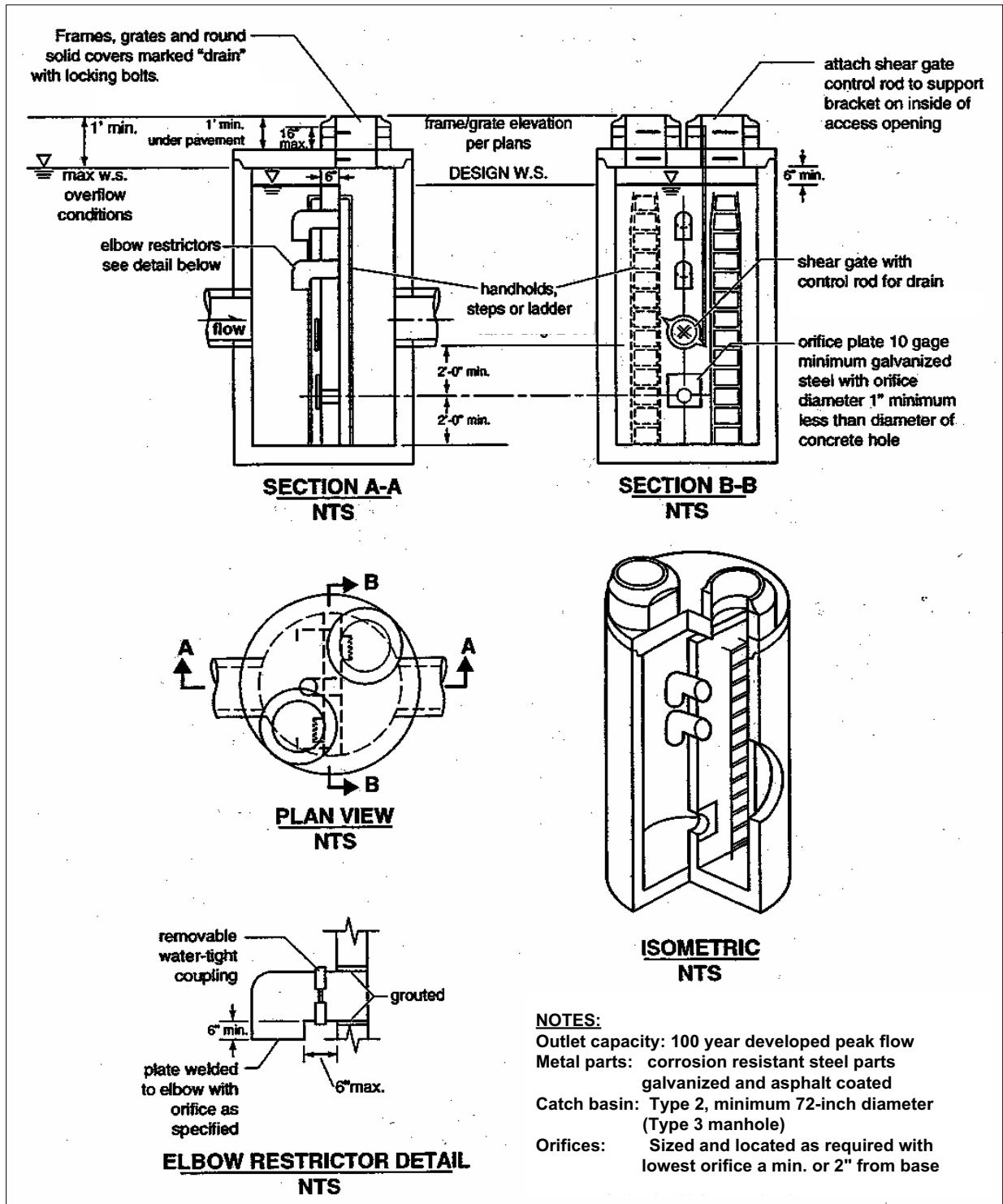


Figure 3 - 22. Flow Restrictor (Baffle)

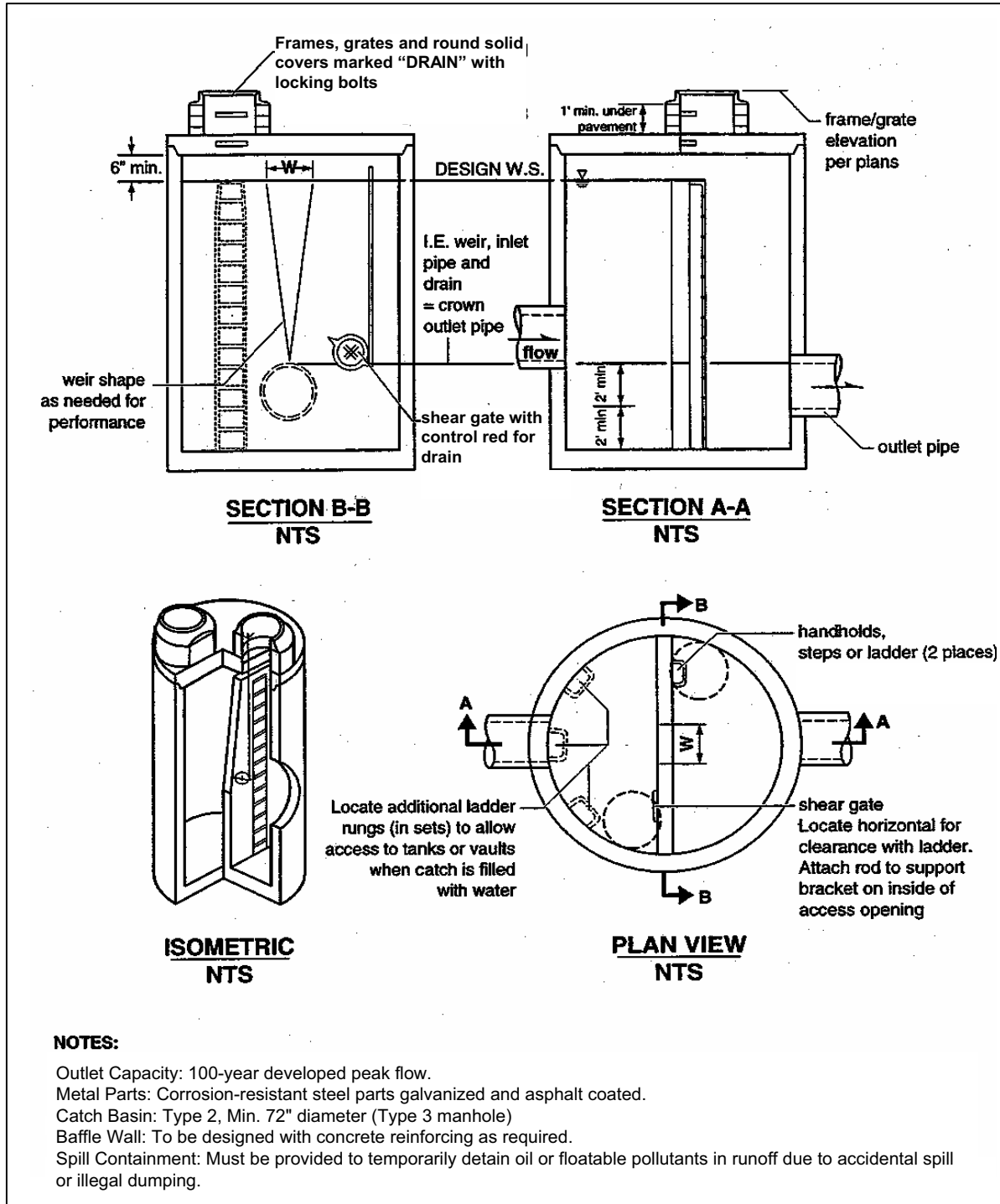


Figure 3 - 23. Flow Restrictor (Weir)

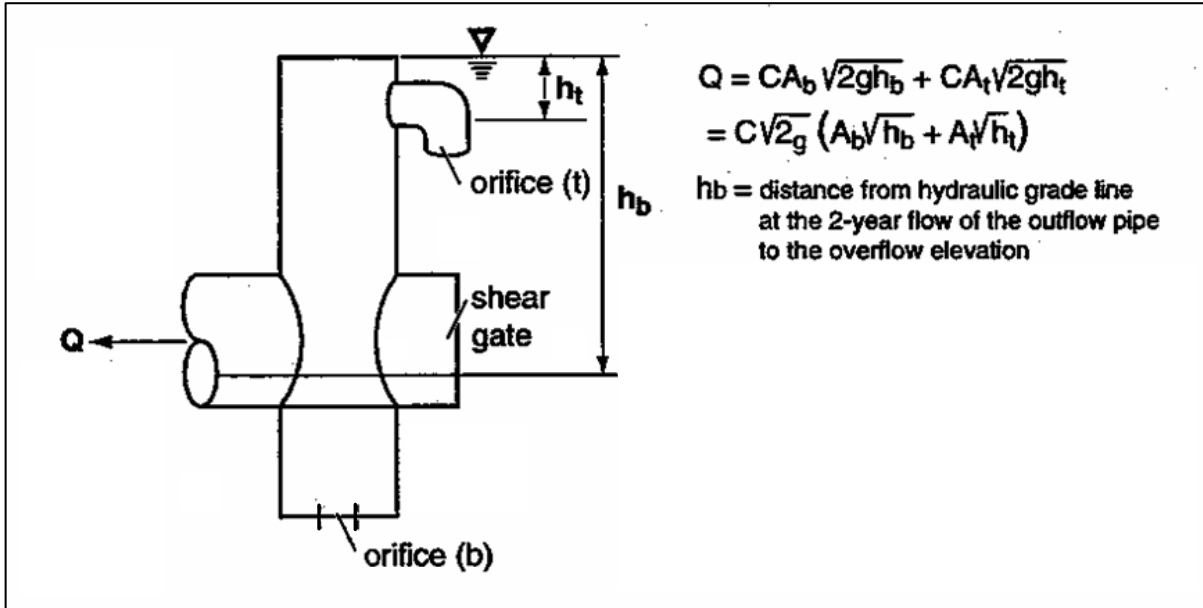


Figure 3 - 24. Simple Orifice

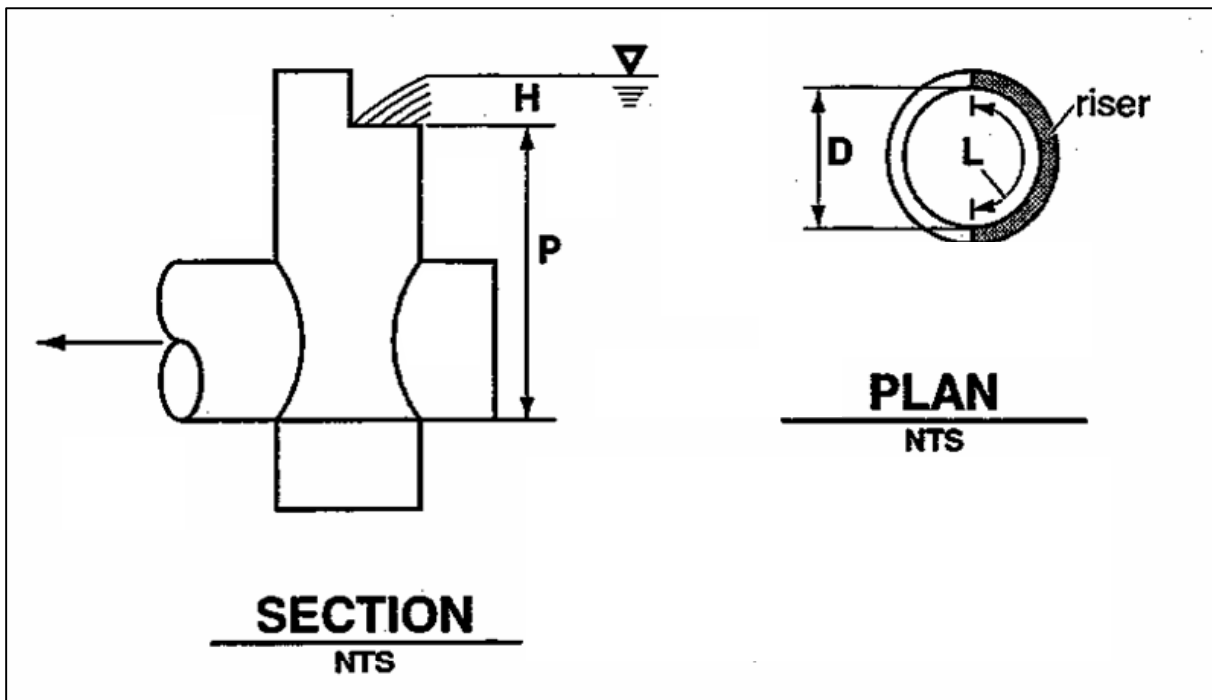


Figure 3 - 25. Rectangular, Sharp-Crested Weir

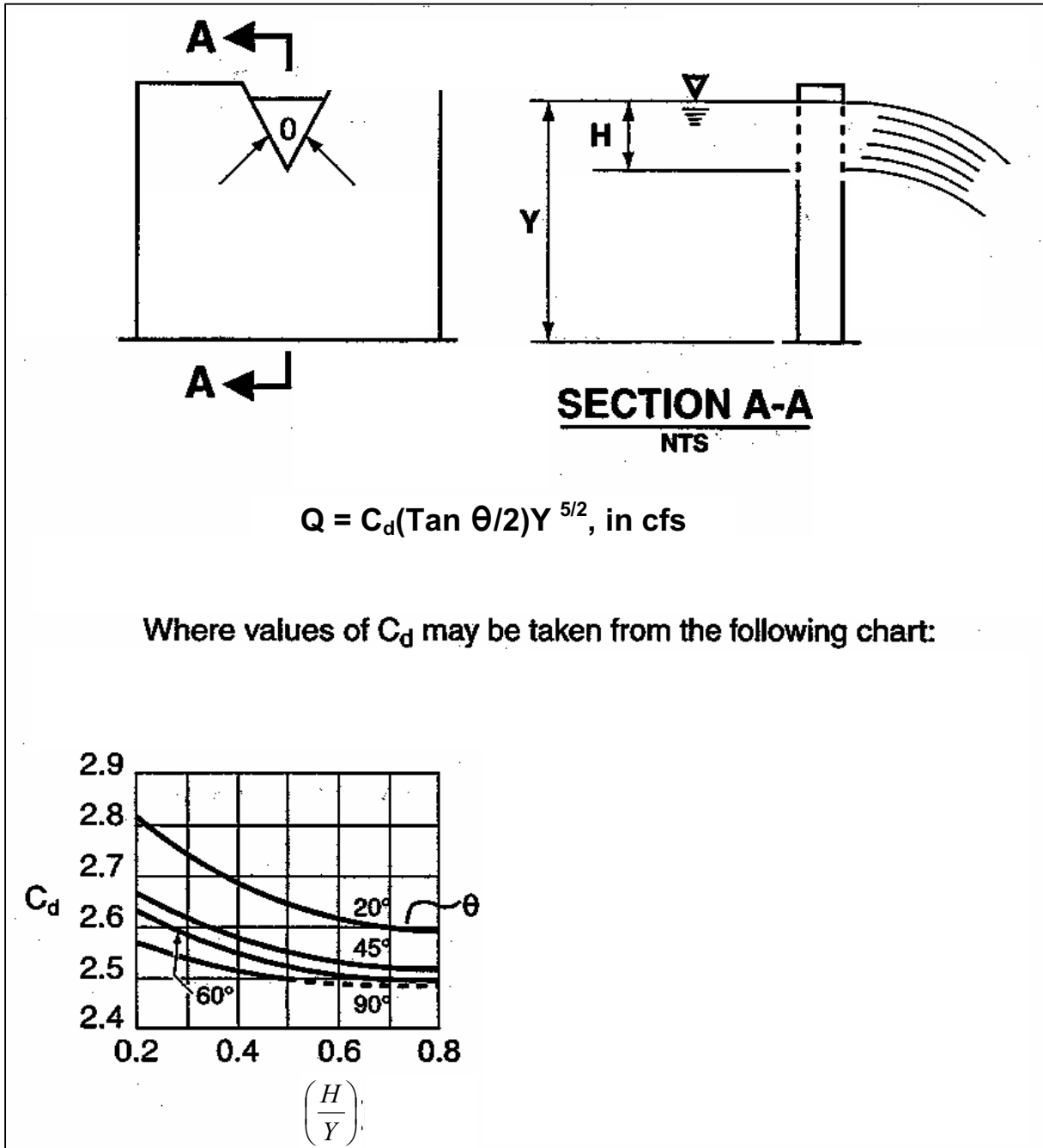


Figure 3 - 26. V-Notch, Sharp-Crested Weir

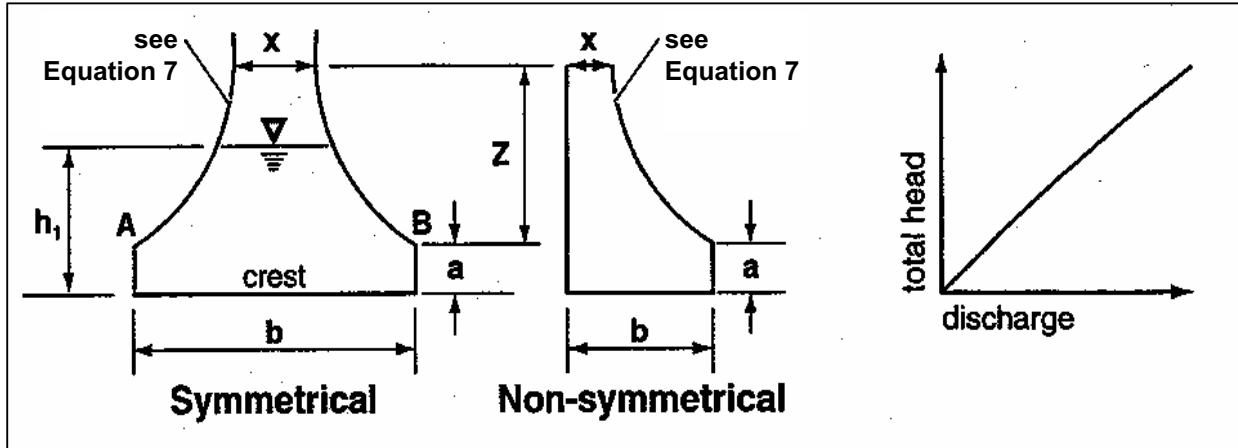


Figure 3 - 27. Sutro Weir



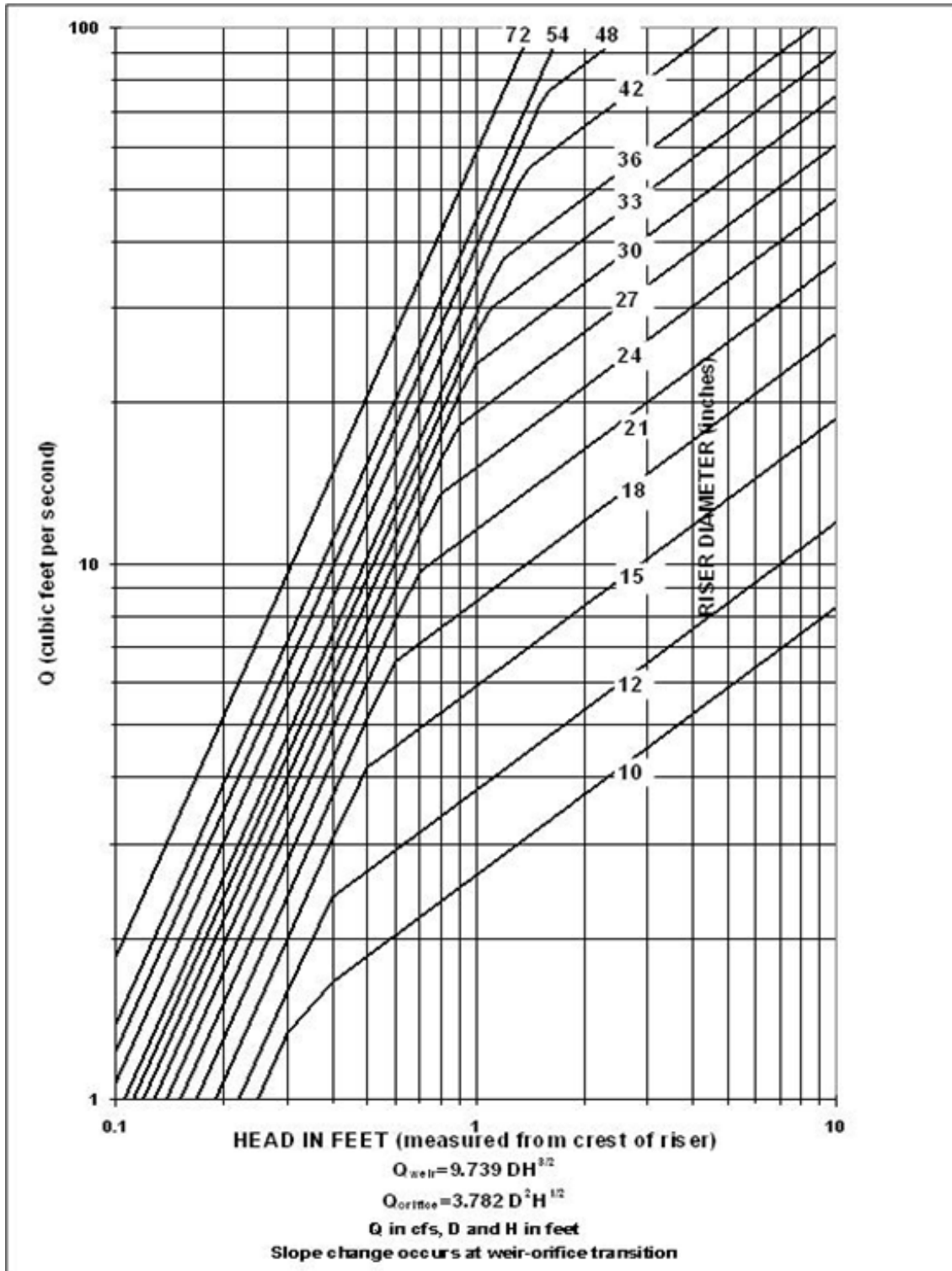


Figure 3 - 28. Riser Inflow Curves

## Chapter 8 Other Detention Options

This section presents other design options for detaining flows to meet flow control facility requirements. Written acknowledgement from the property owner shall be required for systems with above grade or roof ponding.

### 8.1 Use of Parking Lots for Additional Detention

Private parking lots may be used to provide additional detention volume for runoff events greater than the 2-year runoff event provided all of the following are met:

- The depth of water detained does not exceed 0.5 feet (6 inches) at any location in the parking lot for runoff events up to and including the 100-year event.
- The gradient of the parking lot area subject to ponding is 1 percent or greater.
- The emergency overflow path is identified and noted on the engineering plan. The overflow must not create a significant adverse impact to downhill properties or drainage system.
- Fire lanes be used for emergency equipment are free of ponding water for all runoff events up to and including the 100-year event.

### 8.2 Use of Roofs for Detention

Detention ponding on roofs of structures may be used to meet flow control requirements provided all of the following are met:

- The roof support structure is analyzed by a structural engineer to address the weight of ponded water and meets the requirements of the applicable building code.
- The roof area subject to ponding is sufficiently waterproofed to achieve a minimum service life of 30 years.
- The minimum pitch of the roof area subject to ponding is 1/4-inch per foot.
- An overflow system is included in the design to safely convey the 100-year peak flow from the roof.
- A mechanism is included in the design to allow the ponding area to be drained for maintenance purposes, or in the event the restrictor device is plugged.

## **Chapter 9 Conveyance System Design and Hydraulic Analysis**

This chapter presents acceptable methods for the analysis and design of storm and stormwater conveyance systems. Conveyance systems can be separated into the following categories:

- Pipe systems
- Culverts
- Open Channels (ditches, swales)
- Outfalls

The purpose of a conveyance system is to drain stormwater, up to a specific design flow, from properties so as to provide protection to property and the environment. This chapter contains detailed design criteria, methods of analysis and standard details for all components of a conveyance system. A complete basic understanding of hydrology and hydraulics and the principles on which the methodology of hydrologic analysis is based is essential for the proper and accurate application of methods used in designing conveyance systems.

### **9.1 Design Methods for Conveyance Systems**

New conveyance systems shall be designed using the backwater analysis per Section 9.3.2.

Existing conveyance systems shall be analyzed for capacity using either the backwater analysis per Section 9.3.2 or the Rational Method per Section 9.3.3.

Preliminary conveyance system sizing for land use planning (short plats, plats, wetland development permits, etc.) can use the Rational Method per Section 9.3.3 or the backwater analysis per Section 9.3.2. The Rational Method cannot be used for the final design of new conveyance systems.

All conveyance system analyses shall use the design criteria outlined in Section 9.1.1 and other applicable sections of the SWMM.

#### **9.1.1 Design Criteria**

- Conveyance systems shall be modeled as if no onsite detention is provided upstream.
- Conveyance systems shall be analyzed for fully developed conditions. The fully developed conditions shall be derived from the following percentages of impervious area:
  - In commercial areas, the percent impervious shall be 85%.
  - In industrial areas, the percent impervious shall be 70%.
  - In residential areas, the percent impervious shall be 60%.

The fully developed conditions shall apply to both the offsite and onsite basins.

- Projects proposed in areas subject to tidal influence shall be analyzed at the mean high tide, which is +4.64 feet using current City datum.

## **9.2 Methods of Analysis**

### **9.2.1 Onsite Analysis**

All proposed onsite stormwater conveyance systems and all existing onsite stormwater conveyance systems that will be accepting additional flow shall be sized per Section 9.1.

### **9.2.2 Offsite Analysis**

#### **9.2.2.1 Qualitative Downstream Analysis**

All project applicants shall perform and submit a qualitative downstream analysis of each upstream system entering a site (run-on) and each downstream system leaving a site (run-off).

The qualitative downstream analysis shall extend downstream for the entire flow path, from the project site to the receiving water, or up to one-quarter mile, whichever is less. The qualitative analysis may be stopped shorter than the required ¼ mile downstream if the analysis reaches a City identified trunk main. Trunk mains are defined as public stormwater drainage pipes equal to or greater than 36 inches and installed at a minimum slope of 0.5%.

The upstream qualitative analysis shall identify and describe points where water enters the site and the tributary area that contributes water to those run-on locations.

A basin map delineating the onsite and offsite basins upstream and downstream of the site shall be provided. The basin map shall be to a defined scale. Maps printed from the City's govMe website may be used as a base for the basin map, and to obtain contours and existing stormwater facility information. Field verification of govMe information may be required as directed by Environmental Services.

Depending upon the presence of existing or predicted flooding, erosion, or water quality problems, and on the proposed design of the onsite drainage facilities, the City may require additional qualitative analysis further downstream, mitigation measures adequate to address the problems, or a quantitative analysis. See Volume 1, Chapter 4 for additional details.

#### **9.2.2.2 Quantitative Downstream Analysis**

A quantitative downstream analysis is required for all projects that meet the flow control thresholds as described in Minimum Requirement #7, except those required to provide detention per the Standard Requirement. The City may also require a quantitative downstream analysis for any project where additional downstream information is determined to be necessary. The quantitative analysis shall extend downstream for the entire flow path, from the project site to the receiving water, or up to one-quarter mile, whichever is less. The quantitative analysis may be stopped shorter than the required ¼ mile downstream if the analysis reaches a City identified trunk main. Trunk mains are defined as public stormwater drainage pipes equal to or greater than 36 inches and installed at a minimum slope of 0.5%. All existing and proposed offsite stormwater conveyance shall meet the design criteria described in the methods of analyses.

If a capacity problem or streambank erosion problem is found during the quantitative downstream analysis, the flow durations from the project will be restricted per Minimum Requirement #7 – Infrastructure Protection.

The City govMe mapping program and as-built drawings may be utilized to obtain structure information to be used in the downstream analysis. If as-built drawings are used, the engineer is responsible for verifying that all elevations are in the same datum. Environmental Services may require a field survey of the existing storm drainage system downstream from the project for a

minimum of ¼ mile from the point of connection to the existing public drainage system, or may require portions of the system to be field surveyed.

Include the following as part of the quantitative downstream analysis:

- Capacity and percent full in each reach.
- Description of design flows used in analysis.
- Velocity in each reach.
- Upstream and downstream basin maps showing the flow route for both onsite and offsite stormwater .
- Include all model assumptions, outputs, and equations used in the analysis. If model parameters are used that are different than typical standards of practice, justification of the parameters is required.
- Clearly describe headwater and tailwater assumptions.
- The 25-year and 100-year hydraulic gradelines must be shown.

### **9.3 Hydrologic Modeling**

Single event modeling shall be used for designing conveyance systems. Continuous simulation modeling is not accepted.

#### **9.3.1 Computer Models for Conveyance Systems**

All components of a conveyance system can be modeled using readily available computer models. There are several acceptable computer models available for these analyses. The project engineer is responsible for providing information describing how the model was used, assumptions the model makes and descriptions of all variables, columns, rows, summary tables, and graphs. The project engineer shall use the most current version of any model proposed within 1 year of the version's release. Tacoma may determine that specific models are not acceptable for use in design. Please check with Environmental Services to confirm the applicability of a particular model prior to starting the analysis.

#### **9.3.2 Backwater Analysis**

The backwater analysis is used to compute a simple backwater profile (hydraulic grade line) for a proposed or existing conveyance system for the purposes of verifying capacity.

The backwater analysis begins at the downstream end of the conveyance system, when the analysis reaches a trunk main, or at the last downstream manhole of a ¼ mile analysis and is computed back through each upstream pipe segment and structure.

For discharges to tidally influenced areas, the tailwater elevation shall be the mean high tide which is 4.64 feet using current City of Tacoma datum.

##### **9.3.2.1 Pipe Systems**

All new conveyance systems shall be designed using the backwater analysis. The design events for pipe systems are as follows.

- For the 25-year, 24-hour design storm, there shall be a minimum of 0.5 feet of freeboard between the water surface and the top of any manhole or catch basin.

- For the 100-year, 24-hour design storm, overtopping of the pipe conveyance system may occur, however, the additional flow shall not extend beyond half the lane width of the outside lane of the traveled way and shall not exceed 4 inches in depth at its deepest point.
- For the 100-year, 24-hour design storm, off-channel storage on private property is allowed with recording of the proper easements. When this occurs, the additional flow over the ground surface is analyzed using the methods for open channels described in Section 9.3.2.3. Environmental Services will evaluate and determine the acceptability of this type of localized flooding.

The starting tailwater elevation to be used in the backwater analysis for pipe systems is the water surface elevation of the next downstream pipe at an assumed depth of 90% full.

For discharges to tidally influenced areas, the tailwater elevation shall be the mean high tide which is 4.64 feet using current City of Tacoma datum.

### **9.3.2.2 Culverts**

All new conveyance systems shall be designed using the backwater analysis. The design events for culverts systems are as follows.

- Culverts shall convey the 25-year, 24-hour peak flow rate without submerging the culvert inlet.
- For culverts 18-inch diameter or less, the maximum allowable headwater elevation for the 100-year, 24-hour design storm (measured from the inlet invert) shall not exceed 2 times the pipe diameter or arch-culvert-rise.
- For culverts larger than 18-inch diameter, the maximum allowable headwater elevation for the 100-year, 24-hour design storm (measured from the inlet invert) shall not exceed 1.5 times the pipe diameter or arch-culvert-rise.
- The maximum headwater elevation at the 100-year, 24-hour design flow shall be below any road or parking lot subgrade except as allowed per Chapter 8.

The starting tailwater elevation to be used in the backwater analysis for culverts systems is the water surface elevation of the next downstream culvert at an assumed depth of 100% full.

For discharges to tidally influenced areas, the tailwater elevation shall be the mean high tide which is 4.64 feet using current City of Tacoma datum.

### **9.3.2.3 Open Channels**

All new conveyance systems shall be designed using the backwater analysis. The design event for open channels is as follows:

- Constructed and natural channels shall contain the 100-year, 24-hour storm event.
- A minimum of 6 inches of freeboard is required for all open channels.

The Direct Step Backwater Method can be used to compute backwater profiles on prismatic channel reaches (i.e. reaches having uniform cross section and slope) where a backwater condition or restriction to normal flow is known to exist. The method can be applied to a series of prismatic channel reaches in succession beginning at the downstream end of the channel and computing the profile upstream.

Calculating the coordinates of the water surface profile using the method is an iterative process achieved by choosing a range of flow depths, beginning at the downstream end, and proceeding incrementally up to the point of interest or to the point of normal flow depth. This is best

accomplished by the use of a table or computer programs. Provide documentation of the equations and assumptions used in the analysis.

The Standard Step Backwater Method is a variation of the Direct Step Backwater Method and can be used to compute backwater profiles on both prismatic and non-prismatic channels. In this method, stations are established along the channel where cross section data is known or has been determined through field survey. The computation is carried out in steps from station to station rather than throughout a given channel reach as is done in the Direct Step method. As a result, the analysis involves significantly more trial-and-error calculation in order to determine the flow depth at each station.

### 9.3.3 Rational Method

The Rational Method is a simple, conservative method for analyzing and sizing conveyance elements serving small drainage sub-basins, subject to the following specific limitations:

- Only for use in predicting peak flow rates for sizing conveyance elements (**not for use in sizing flow control or treatment facilities**)
- Drainage sub-basin area,  $A$ , cannot exceed 10 acres for a single peak flow calculation
- The time of concentration,  $T_c$ , must be computed using the method described below and cannot exceed 100 minutes. A minimum  $T_c$  of 6.3 minutes shall be used.
- Unlike other methods of computing times of concentration, the 6.3 minutes is not an initial collection time to be added to the total computed time of concentration.

#### 9.3.3.1 Rational Method Design Events

##### *Pipe Systems*

The design events for pipe systems using the rational method shall be:

- All public pipe systems shall be designed to convey the 25-year, 24-hour peak flow rates at 90% full.
- All private pipe systems less than 24 inches in diameter shall be designed to convey the 10-year, 24-hour peak flow rates at 90% full except as allowed per Chapter 8.
- All private pipe systems greater than or equal to 24 inches in diameter shall be designed to convey the 25-year, 24-hour peak flow rates at 90% full except as allowed per Chapter 8.
- For projects in areas subject to tidal influence, the 100-year, 24-hour storm event shall be analyzed and if flooding occurs, the flooding must be mapped. Flooding on private property may be allowed with recording of proper easements. Environmental Services will evaluate and determine the acceptability of this type of localized flooding.

##### *Culverts*

- The design events for culverts using the rational method shall be:
- Culverts shall convey the 25-year, 24-hour peak flow rate without submerging the culvert inlet.
- For culverts 18-inch diameter or less, the maximum allowable headwater elevation for the 100-year, 24-hour design storm (measured from the inlet invert) shall not exceed 2 times the pipe diameter or arch-culvert-rise.

- For culverts larger than 18-inch diameter, the maximum allowable headwater elevation for the 100-year, 24-hour design storm (measured from the inlet invert) shall not exceed 1.5 times the pipe diameter or arch-culvert-rise.
- The maximum headwater elevation at the 100-year, 24-hour design flow shall be below any road or parking lot subgrade except as allowed per Chapter 8.

### **Open Channels**

The design event for open channels using the rational method shall be:

- Constructed and natural channels shall contain the 100-year, 24-hour storm event.
- A minimum of 6 inches of freeboard is required for all open channels at the 100-year, 24-hour storm event.

#### **9.3.3.2 Rational Method Equation**

The following is the traditional Rational Method equation:

$$Q_R = C I_R A \quad (\text{equation 1})$$

Where :

$Q_R$  = peak flow (cfs) for a storm of return frequency R

C = estimated runoff coefficient (ratio of rainfall that becomes runoff)

$I_R$  = peak rainfall intensity (inches/hour) for a storm of return frequency R

A = drainage sub-basin area (acres)

When the composite runoff coefficient,  $C_c$  (see equation 2) of a drainage basin exceeds 0.60, the  $T_c$  and peak flow rate from the impervious area should be computed separately. The computed peak rate of flow for the impervious surface alone may exceed that for the entire drainage basin using the value at  $T_c$  for the total drainage basin. The higher of the two peak flow rates shall then be used to size the conveyance element.

### **“C” Values**

The allowable runoff coefficients to be used in this method are shown in Table 3 - 13 by type of land cover. These values were selected following a review of the values previously accepted by Tacoma for use in the Rational Method and as described in several engineering handbooks. The value for single family residential areas were computed as composite values (as illustrated in the following equation) based on the estimated percentage of coverage by roads, roofs, yards, and unimproved areas for each density. For drainage basins containing several land cover types, the following formula may be used to compute a composite runoff coefficient,  $C_c$ :

$$C_c = (C_1 A_1 + C_2 A_2 + \dots + C_n A_n) / A_t \quad (\text{equation 2})$$

Where:

$A_t$  = total area (acres)

$A_{1,2,\dots,n}$  = areas of land cover types (acres)



$C_{1,2...n}$  = runoff coefficients for each area land cover type

**Table 3 - 13: Runoff Coefficients - "C" Values for the Rational Method**

GENERAL LAND COVERS			
Land Cover	C	Land Cover	C
Dense forest	0.10	Gravel areas	0.80
Light forest	0.15	Pavement and roofs	0.90
Pasture	0.20	Open water (pond, lakes, wetlands)	1.00
Lawns	0.25		
SINGLE FAMILY RESIDENTIAL AREAS [Density is in dwelling units per gross acreage (DU/GA)]			
Land Cover Density	C	Land Cover Density	C
0.20 DU/GA (1 unit per 5 ac.)	0.17	3.00 DU/GA	0.42
0.40 DU/GA (1 unit per 2.5 ac.)	0.20	3.50 DU/GA	0.45
0.80 DU/GA (1 unit per 1.25 ac.)	0.27	4.00 DU/GA	0.48
1.00 DU/GA	0.30	4.50 DU/GA	0.51
1.50 DU/GA	0.33	5.00 DU/GA	0.54
2.00 DU/GA	0.36	5.50 DU/GA	0.57
2.50 DU/GA	0.39	6.00 DU/GA	0.60

**"I<sub>R</sub>" Peak Rainfall Intensity**

The peak rainfall intensity,  $I_R$ , for the specified design storm of return frequency  $R$  is determined using a unit peak rainfall intensity factor,  $i_R$ , in the following equation:

$$I_R = (P_R)(i_R) \tag{equation 3}$$

Where:

$P_R$  = the total precipitation at the project site for the 24-hour duration storm event for the given return frequency. Refer to Table 3 - 14 for  $P_R$  values. Total precipitation can also be found in Chapter 1 of Volume 3.

$i_R$  = the unit peak rainfall intensity factor

The unit peak rainfall intensity factor,  $i_R$ , is determined by the following equation:

$$i_R = (a_R)(T_c)^{-b_R} \tag{equation 4}$$

Where:

$T_c$  = time of concentration (minutes), calculated using the method described below and subject to equation limitations ( $6.3 < T_c < 100$ )

$a_R, b_R$  = coefficients from Table 3 - 14 used to adjust the equation for the design storm return frequency  $R$

Table 3 - 15 includes a table of rainfall intensity as a function of time of concentration, calculated using the coefficients from Table 3 - 14.

**Table 3 - 14: Coefficients for the Rational Method**

Design Storm Frequency	$P_R$ (inches)	$a_R$	$b_R$
2 years	2.0	1.58	0.58
5 years	2.5	2.33	0.63
10 years	3.0	2.44	0.64
25 years	3.5	2.66	0.65
50 years	3.5	2.75	0.65
100 years	4.1	2.61	0.63

**Table 3 - 15: Rainfall Intensities ( $I_R$ ) (inches per hour) for the City of Tacoma**

Time of Concentration (min)	Design Storm Recurrence Interval (Probability)					
	2-year (50%)	5-year (20%)	10-year (10%)	25-year (4%)	50-year (2%)	100-year (1%)
6.3	1.09	1.83	2.25	2.81	2.91	3.36
7	1.02	1.71	2.11	2.63	2.72	3.14
8	0.95	1.57	1.93	2.41	2.49	2.89
9	0.88	1.46	1.79	2.23	2.31	2.68
10	0.83	1.37	1.68	2.08	2.15	2.51
11	0.79	1.29	1.58	1.96	2.03	2.36
12	0.75	1.22	1.49	1.85	1.91	2.24
13	0.71	1.16	1.42	1.76	1.82	2.13
14	0.68	1.10	1.35	1.67	1.73	2.03
15	0.66	1.06	1.29	1.60	1.66	1.94
16	0.63	1.02	1.24	1.54	1.59	1.87
17	0.61	0.98	1.19	1.48	1.53	1.80
18	0.59	0.94	1.15	1.42	1.47	1.73
19	0.57	0.91	1.11	1.37	1.42	1.67
20	0.56	0.88	1.08	1.33	1.37	1.62
25	0.49	0.77	0.93	1.15	1.19	1.41
30	0.44	0.68	0.83	1.02	1.06	1.26
35	0.40	0.62	0.75	0.92	0.95	1.14
40	0.37	0.57	0.69	0.85	0.88	1.05
45	0.35	0.53	0.64	0.78	0.81	0.97
50	0.33	0.50	0.60	0.73	0.76	0.91
55	0.31	0.47	0.56	0.69	0.71	0.86
60	0.29	0.44	0.53	0.65	0.67	0.81
70	0.27	0.40	0.48	0.59	0.61	0.74
80	0.25	0.37	0.44	0.54	0.56	0.68
90	0.23	0.34	0.41	0.50	0.52	0.63
100	0.22	0.32	0.38	0.47	0.48	0.59

**“ $T_c$ ” Time of Concentration**

The time of concentration is defined as the time it takes runoff to travel overland (from the onset of precipitation) from the most hydraulically distant location in the drainage basin to the point of discharge.

Due to the mathematical limits of the equation coefficients, values of  $T_c$  less than 6.3 minutes or greater than 100 minutes cannot be used. Therefore, real values of  $T_c$  less than 6.3 minutes must be assumed to be equal to 6.3 minutes, and values greater than 100 minutes must be assumed to be equal to 100 minutes.

$T_c$  is computed by summation of the travel times  $T_t$  of overland flow across separate flowpath segments. The equation for time of concentration is:

$$T_c = T_1 + T_2 + \dots + T_n \quad (\text{equation 5})$$

Where

$T_{1,2,\dots,n}$  = travel time for consecutive flowpath segments with different categories or flowpath slope

Travel time for each segment,  $t$ , is computed using the following equation:

$$T_t = L/60V \quad (\text{equation 6})$$

Where

$T_t$  = travel time (minutes)

$T_t$  through an open water body (such as a pond) shall be assumed to be zero with this method.

$T_t$  = Travel time for each segment (ft)

$L$  = the distance of flow across a given segment (feet)

$V$  = average velocity (ft/s) across the land cover

$$V = (K_R)(\sqrt{S_0})$$

Where

$K_R$  = time of concentration velocity factor; see Table 3 - 16.

$S_0$  = slope of flowpath (feet/feet)

**Table 3 - 16: "n" and "k" Values Used in Time Calculations for Hydrographs**

<b>"n<sub>s</sub>" Sheet Flow Equation Manning's Values (for the initial 300 ft. of travel)</b>	
<b>Manning values for sheet flow only, from Overton and Meadows 1976<sup>a</sup></b>	<b>n<sub>s</sub></b>
Smooth surfaces (concrete, asphalt, gravel, or bare hand packed soil)	0.011
Fallow fields or loose soil surface (no residue)	0.05
Cultivated soil with residue cover ≤20%	0.06
Cultivated soil with residue cover >20%	0.17
Short prairie grass and lawns	0.15
Dense grasses	0.24
Bermuda grass	0.41
Range (natural)	0.13
Woods or forest with light underbrush	0.40
Woods or forest with dense underbrush	0.80
<b>"k" Values Used in Travel Time/Time of Concentration Calculations<sup>b</sup></b>	
<b>Sheet Flow</b>	<b>k<sub>R</sub></b>
Forest with heavy ground litter and meadow	2.5
Fallow or minimum tillage cultivation	4.7
Short grass pasture and lawns	7.0
Nearly bare ground	10.1
Grasses waterway	15.0
Paved area (sheet flow) and shallow gutter flow	20.0
<b>Shallow Concentrated Flow (After the initial 300 ft. of sheet flow, R = 0.1)</b>	<b>k<sub>s</sub></b>
1. Forest with heavy ground litter and meadows (n = 0.10)	3
2. Brushy ground with some trees (n= 0.060)	5
3. Fallow or minimum tillage cultivation (n = 0.040)	8
4. High grass (n = 0.035)	9
5. Short grass, pasture and lawns (n = 0.030)	11
6. Nearly bare ground (n = 0.025)	13
7. Paved and gravel areas (n = 0.012)	27
<b>Channel Flow (intermittent) (At the beginning of visible channels R = 0.2)</b>	<b>k<sub>c</sub></b>
1. Forested swale with heavy ground litter (n = 0.10)	5
2. Forested drainage course/ravine with defined channel bed (n = 0.050)	10
3. Rock-lined waterway (n = 0.035)	15
4. Grassed waterway (n = 0.030)	17
5. Earth-lined waterway (n = 0.025)	20
6. CMP pipe, uniform flow (n = 0.024)	21
7. Concrete pipe, uniform flow (0.012)	42
8. Other waterways and pipe	0.508/n
<b>Channel Flow (Continuous stream, R = 0.4)</b>	<b>k<sub>c</sub></b>
9. Meandering stream with some pools (n = 0.040)	20
10. Rock-lined stream (n = 0.035)	23
11. Grass-lined stream (n = 0.030)	27
12. Other streams, man-made channels and pipe	0.807/n

a. See TR-55, 1986

b. 210-VI-TR55-Second Edition, June 1986

## 9.4 Inlet Grate Capacity

This section has been divided into three areas: inlets on a continuous grade, side flow interception and sag analysis. Properties of typical grate are summarized in Table 3 - 17 and further discussed below.

**Table 3 - 17: Properties of Grate Inlets**

WSDOT Standard Plan	Description	Continuous Grade <sup>a</sup>		Sump Condition <sup>b</sup> Perimeter Flows as Weir	
		Grate Width	Grate Length	Width	Length
B-30.50 <sup>c</sup>	Rectangular herringbone grate	1.67 ft (0.50 m)	2.0 ft (0.61 m)	0.69 ft (0.21 m)	0.78 ft (0.24 m)
B-30.30 or 30.40 <sup>d</sup>	Vaned grate for catch basin and inlet	1.67 ft (0.50 m)	2.0 ft (0.61 m)	1.31 ft (0.40 m)	1.25 ft (0.38 m)
B-25.20 <sup>b</sup>	Combination inlet	1.67 ft (0.50 m)	2.0 ft (0.61 m)	1.31 ft (0.40 m)	1.25 ft (0.38 m)
B-40.20	Grate Inlet Type 1 (Grate A or B <sup>e</sup> )	2.01 ft (0.62 m)	3.89 ft (0.62 m)	1.67 ft (0.50 m)	3.52 ft (1.07 m)
		3.89 ft <sup>f</sup> (1.20 m)	2.01 ft <sup>f</sup> (1.20 m)	3.52 ft (1.07 m)	1.67 ft (0.50 m)
B-30.80	Circular Grate <sup>g</sup>	1.52 ft (0.47 m)		2.55 ft <sup>h</sup> (0.79 m)	
B-40.40	Frame and Vaned Grates for Grate Inlet Type 2	1.75 ft <sup>i</sup> (0.52 m)	3.52 ft <sup>l</sup> (1.05 m)	1.29 ft (0.40 m)	2.58 ft (0.50 m)
		3.52 ft <sup>j</sup>	1.75 ft <sup>j</sup>	2.58 ft <sup>j</sup>	1.29 ft <sup>j</sup>
		(1.05 m)	(0.52 m)	(0.80 m)	(0.26 m)

- Inlet widths on a continuous grade shown without reduction for bar area or for debris accumulation.
- The perimeters and areas in this portion of the table have already been reduced for bar area. These values should be cut in half when used in a sag location as described in Section 9.4.4., except for the Combination Inlet B-25-20.
- Shown for information purposes only. See Section 9.4.1.1.
- For sag conditions, combination inlets should use a Bi-Directional Vaned grate as shown in WSDOT Standard Plan B-30.40.
- Type B grate shall not be used in areas of pedestrian or vehicular traffic. See Section 9.4.1.4.
- Rotated installation. See WSDOT Standard Plans.
- Circular grates are only allowed on private property and as approved by Environmental Services.
- Only the perimeter value has been provided for use with weir equations.
- Normal installation. See WSDOT Standard Plans.
- Rotated installation. See WSDOT Standard Plans.

### 9.4.1 Inlet Types

The characteristics of the most commonly used inlets are summarized below. For inlet additional specifications including dimensions see the inlet specific WSDOT Standard Plan.

#### 9.4.1.1 Herringbone Pattern (WSDOT Standard Plan B-30.50)

Herringbone grates are not approved for installation within the City Right of Way. Herringbone pattern grate information is included for analyzing existing conditions and new construction on private property.

#### **9.4.1.2 Vaned Grate (WSDOT Standard Plan B-30.30 or 30.40)**

Catch basin grate installation within the City ROW shall use vaned type grates. The vaned grate is bicycle safe, and as described further in this section is hydraulically superior under most conditions. Installation of the vaned grate is critical as the grate is directional. If installed backwards the interception capacity is severely limited. At low velocities the vaned grate and herringbone grate are equally efficient. At higher velocities, greater than 5 ft/s (1.5 m/s), a portion of the flow tends to skip over the herringbone whereas the vaned grate will capture a greater portion of this flow. The vaned grate also has a higher capacity for passing debris and should be used for high debris areas.

#### **9.4.1.3 Combination Inlets (WSDOT Standard Plan B-25.20)**

The combination inlet is a vaned grate on a catch basin with a hooded curb cut area. Its vaned grate is very debris efficient, and if the grate does become clogged, the overflow goes into the hooded opening. These inlets are extremely useful for sag condition installations, although they can also be effective on continuous grades. The interception capacity of a combination inlet is only slightly greater than with a grate alone. Therefore the capacity is computed neglecting the curb opening and designers should follow the same analysis as for a vaned grate alone. See Section 9.4.4 for design guidance in a sag condition.

#### **9.4.1.4 Grate Inlets Type 1 or 2 (WSDOT Standard Plans B-35.20, B-35.40, and B-40.20)**

Both Types 1 or 2 grate inlets have large openings that can compensate for debris problems, however, there are limitations in their usage. A Type 1 grate inlet is a non-reinforced, cast-in-place concrete inlet, which cannot support traffic loads. Type 2 grate inlets are pre-cast and can withstand traffic loading. These inlets are installed with a Grate A or Grate B (see WSDOT Standard Plan B-40.20-00) or a frame and vaned grate (see the next paragraph and WSDOT Standard Plan B-40.40-01 for more information on frame and vaned grates). Due to structural failure of both Grates A or B, neither of these grates can be installed in heavy traffic areas where wheel loads will pass directly over. Grate B has very large openings and is useful in ditches or non-paved median locations, in areas where there is no pedestrian or bicycle traffic. Grate A can be used anywhere Grate B is used as well as at the curb line of a wide interstate shoulder. Grate A may occasionally be hit by low-speed traffic or parked on but it cannot withstand repeated interstate loading or turning vehicles.

#### **9.4.1.5 Frame and Vaned Grates (WSDOT Standard Plan B-40.40)**

WSDOT Standard Plan B-40.40 has been tested in H-25 loading and was determined compatible with heavy traffic installations. This frame and double vaned grate should be installed in a Unit H on top of a grate inlet Type 2. The frame and vaned grates may be used in either new construction or retrofit situations. When used in areas of highway speeds, lock down grates should be specified.

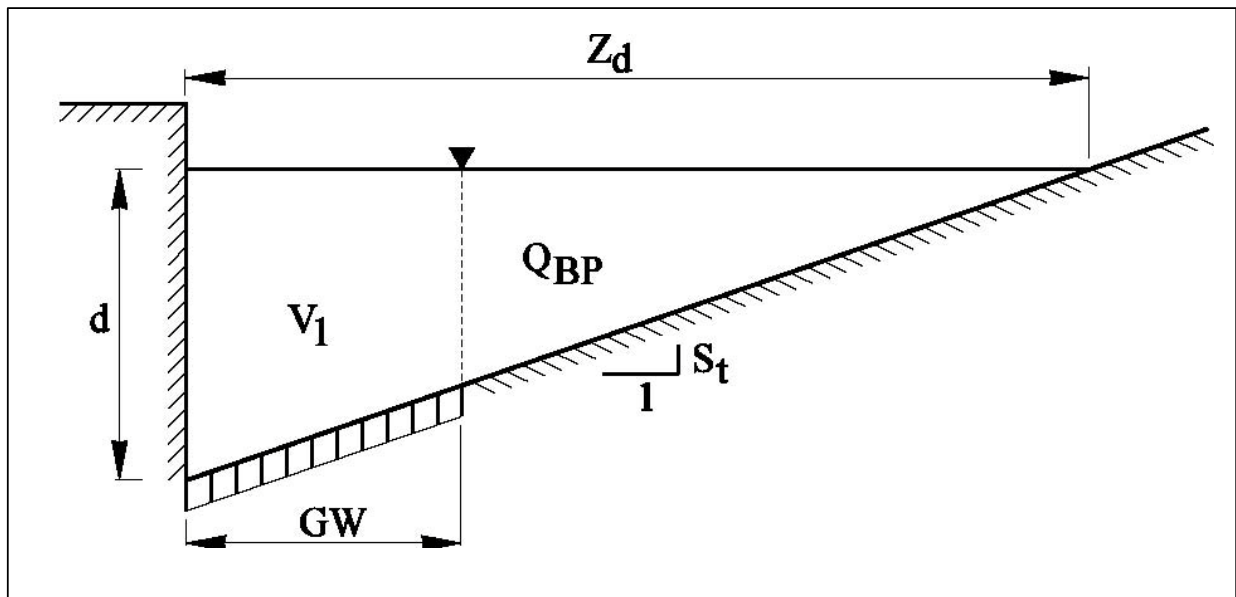
#### **9.4.1.6 Circular Grates**

See WSDOT Standard Plans B-20.20 and WSDOT B-20.60 for details. Install with circular frames (rings) as detailed in WSDOT Standard Plan B-30.70. Circular grates are only allowed for use on private property and as approved by Environmental Services.

### 9.4.2 Capacity of Inlets on a Continuous Grade

The interception capacity of an inlet on a continuous grade depends on the amount of water flowing over the grate, the size and configuration of the grate, the velocity of the flow in the gutter, and the longitudinal slope of the roadway.

- For longitudinal slopes between 2 to 3 percent and for velocities in the range of 3 to 5 ft/s the interception capacity of an inlet is based mainly on frontal flow. Frontal flow is water that travels through the gutter and enters through the front side (width) of the inlet.
- For longitudinal slopes less than 2 percent and velocities less than 3 ft/s side flow interception shall also be considered as described in Section 9.4.3. An inlet will intercept essentially all frontal flow passing over the width of the inlet as long as the velocity is less than 5 ft/s.
- When velocities exceed 5 ft/s water will “splash-over” the inlets reducing the portion of the flow that will be intercepted and increase the bypass flow. When this occurs, consult with Environmental Services to determine a design appropriate for the location. Additional guidance can be found in the FHWA HEC No. 22, Section 4-3 at: [www.fhwa.dot.gov/engineering/hydraulics/library\\_arc.cfm?pub\\_number=22&id=47](http://www.fhwa.dot.gov/engineering/hydraulics/library_arc.cfm?pub_number=22&id=47).



**Figure 3 - 29. Section at Inlet**

The flow that is not intercepted by the first grate inlet is considered bypass flow and should be added to the flow traveling toward the next grate located downstream. This carry-over process continues to the bottom of the grade or the end of the inlet system.

The last inlet on the system is allowed to bypass 0.10 cfs (0.003 m<sup>3</sup>/s) during the 25-year, 24-hour storm event. If discharges exceed 0.10 cfs, additional catch basins or structures will be required to handle the flow.



The amount of flow bypassing the inlet on a continuous grade is computed as follows:

$$Q_{BP} = Q \left[ \frac{(Z_d) - (GW)}{(Z_d)} \right]^{8/3} \quad (\text{equation 7})$$

Where:

- $Q_B$  = portion of flow outside the width of the grate, cfs  
 $Q$  = total flow of gutter approaching the inlet, cfs  
 $Z_d$  = top width of the flow prism, feet  
 $GW$  = width of the grate inlet perpendicular to the direction of flow in feet, assuming that grates areas are 80% free of debris and vaned grates are 95% free of debris.

The flow that is intercepted by the inlet is calculated as follows:

$$Q_I = \Delta Q - Q_{BP} \quad (\text{equation 8})$$

The velocity of flow directly over the inlet is calculated as follows:

$$V_{\text{continuous}} = \frac{Q - Q_{BP}}{(GW)[d - 0.5(GW)(S_t)]} \quad (\text{equation 9})$$

Where:

- $V_{\text{continuous}}$  = velocity over the inlet in ft/s (m/s)  
 $S_t$  = transverse slope or superelevation in ft/ft (m/m)  
 $D$  = depth of flow at the face of the curb in ft (m)

### 9.4.3 Side Flow Interception

For longitudinal slopes less than 2 percent and when equation 9 yields velocities less than 3 ft/s, side flow interception begins to make an appreciable contribution to the inlet capacity analysis and should be considered.

The velocity of flow entering the side of an inlet is shown in equation 10.

$$V_{\text{side}} = \left(\frac{1.11}{n}\right)(S_L^{0.5} S_t^{0.67} Z_d^{0.67}) \quad (\text{equation 10})$$

Where:

$V_{\text{side}}$  = velocity in triangular channel in ft/s

$n$  = 0.015 (Manning's value for concrete pavement)

$S_L$  = longitudinal slope

$S_t$  = transverse slope or superelevation in ft/ft (m/m)

$Z_d$  = top width of the flow prism, ft

The ratio of frontal flow to total gutter flow is shown in equation 11.

$$E_o = 1 - \left(1 - \frac{GW}{Z_d}\right)^{2.67} \quad (\text{equation 11})$$

Where:

$GW$  = width of depressed grate in ft

$Z_d$  = top width of the flow prism in ft

The ratio of side flow intercepted to total side flow is shown in equation 12.

$$R_s = \frac{1}{\left(1 + \frac{0.15V_{\text{side}}^{1.8}}{S_t GL^{2.3}}\right)} \quad (\text{equation 12})$$

Where:

$GL$  = gutter length

The efficiency of the grate is expressed in equation 13.

$$E = R_f E_o + R_s (1 - E_o) \quad (\text{equation 13})$$

Where:

$R_f$  = Ratio of front flow intercepted to total frontal flow

The amount of flow intercepted by an inlet when side flow is considered is expressed in equation 14.

$$Q_i = Q(R_f E_o + R_s(1 - E_o)) \quad (\text{equation 13})$$

#### 9.4.3.1 Inlet Analysis Spreadsheet

A Microsoft Excel spreadsheet has been developed by the Washington State Department of Transportation that follows the procedure to calculate roadway runoff and inlet interception for a roadway on a longitudinal slope. When velocities are less than 3 ft/s and the longitudinal slope is less than 2 percent, the spreadsheet will automatically consider side flow in the analysis. Also, when velocities exceed 5 ft/s or the bypass flow at the last inlet exceeds 0.1 cfs, the spreadsheet will warn the designer. The spreadsheet is located at [www.wsdot.wa.gov/Design/Hydraulics/Programdownloads.htm](http://www.wsdot.wa.gov/Design/Hydraulics/Programdownloads.htm).

#### 9.4.4 Capacity of Inlets in Sag Locations

By definition, a sag is any portion of the roadway where the profile changes from a negative grade to a positive grade. Inlets at sag locations perform differently than inlets on a continuous grade and therefore require a different design criterion. Theoretically, inlets at sag locations may operate in one of two ways: (1) at low ponding depths, the inlet will operate as a weir; and (2) high ponding depths (5" depth above the grated inlet and 1.4 times the grate opening height for combination inlets), the inlet will operate as an orifice. It is very rare that ponding on a roadway will become deep enough to force the inlet to operate as an orifice. As a result, this section will focus on inlets operating as a weir with flow spilling in from the three sides of the inlet that are exposed to the ponding.

Inlets at sag locations can easily become plugged with debris and therefore, it is good engineering practice to provide some type of relief. This relief can be accomplished by locating flanking inlets, on either side of the sag inlet, so they will operate before water exceeds the allowable spread into the travel lane at the sag. This manual recommends flanking inlets be located so the depth of water at the flanking inlet ponds to half the allowable depth at the sag (or  $\frac{1}{2}d_B$ ). With that said, flanking inlets are only required when the sag is located in a depressed area and water has no outlet except through the system. However, if runoff is capable of overtopping the curb and flowing away from the roadway before exceeding the allowable limits noted in Table 3 - 18, flanking inlets are not required. With this situation there is a low potential for danger to drivers if the inlets do not function as designed. Before flanking inlets are removed in this situation, designers should consider the potential damage of water going over the curb. Designers should use the guidelines provided in this section for locating flanking inlets. If a designer suspects flanking inlets are unnecessary, consult Environmental Services early in the design for approval.

Any section of roadway located in a sag should be designed according to the criteria described below. To aid the designer in sag analysis, a copy of the sag worksheet is located on the WSDOT Hydraulic web page at <http://www.wsdot.wa.gov/publications/fulltext/Hydraulics/Programs/SagWorksheetud.xls>.

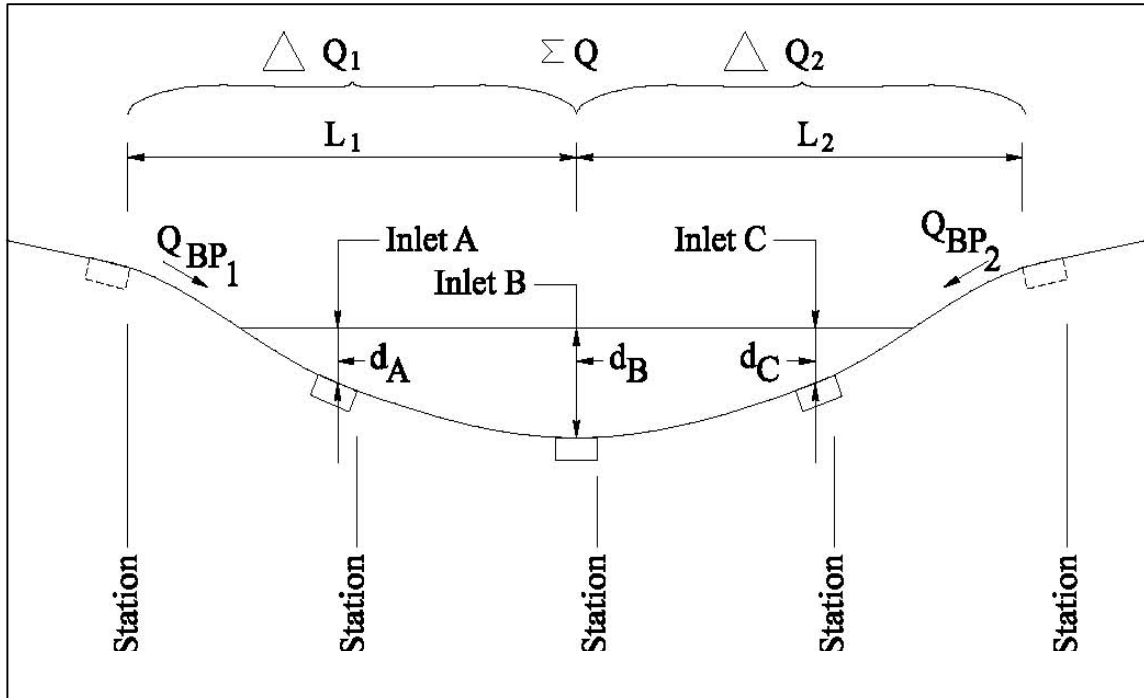


Figure 3 - 30. Sag Analysis

Once an inlet has been placed in a sag location, the total actual flow to the inlet can be determined as shown below.  $Q_{Total}$  must be less than  $Q_{allowable}$  as described in equation 14.

$$Q_{Total} = Q_{BP1} + Q_{BP2} + \Delta Q_1 + \Delta Q_2 \quad (\text{equation 14})$$

Where:

$Q_{BP1\&2}$  = bypass flow from the last inlet on either side of a continuous grade calculated using equation 7.

$\Delta Q_{1\&2}$  = runoff that is generated from the last inlet on either side of the continuous grades, see WSDOT Standard Plan B-25.20-00.

The effective perimeter of the flanking and sag inlets can be determined using the length and widths for various grates given in Figure 3 - 29. This would be the sum of the three sides of the inlet where flow spills in and where ponding would occur. The grates shall be assumed to be 50 percent plugged, the vaned grates should be assumed to be 75% free, and the Combination Inlet B-25.20, which should be considered 100 percent free. This adjustment is in addition to reducing the perimeter to account for the obstruction caused by the bars in the grate. Figure 3 - 29 lists perimeters for various grates with reductions already made for bars.

$$P_n = 0.5[L + 2W] \quad (\text{equation 15})$$

Where:

P = effective perimeter of the flanking and sag inlet

L = length of the inlet from Table 3 - 17.

W = width of inlet from Table 3 - 17.

The allowable capacity of an inlet operating as a weir, that is the maximum  $Q_{\text{allowable}}$ , can be found depending on the inlet layout as described below:

When there is only a single inlet at the sag (no flanking inlets) the following equation should be used:

$$Q_{\text{allowable}} = C_w \times P \times d_{\text{B allowable}}^{1.8} \quad (\text{equation 16})$$

Where:

$C_w$  = weir coefficient; 3.0 for English Units, 1.66 for Metric Units

P = effective perimeter of the grate in feet

$d_{\text{B allowable}}$  = maximum depth of water at the sag inlet in feet

As noted previously it is recommended that flanking inlets be located laterally from the sag inlet at a distance equal to  $0.5d_{\text{B allowable}}$ . When this recommendation is followed,  $Q_{\text{allowable}}$  can be simplified as shown below. If the inlets are not all the same size, the following equation will need to be modified to account for different perimeters:

$$\Sigma Q = C_w \times P \times [2(0.5d_B)^{1.5} + (d_B)^{1.5}] \quad (\text{equation 17})$$

Where  $d_B$  = depth of water at the sag inlet (ft)

In some applications, locating inlets so water ponds to  $0.5d_{\text{B allowable}}$  is too far (generally in cases with long flat slopes). Designers should instead ensure that the spread of stormwater does not exceed those noted in Table 3 - 18 and use equation 18.

$$Q_{\text{allowable}} = C_w P [d_A^{1.5} + d_B^{1.5} + d_C^{1.5}] \quad (\text{equation 18})$$

Where:

$d_N$  = depth of water at the flanking inlets and the sag (ft)

The actual depth of water over the sag inlet can be found with equation 19 below and must be less than  $d_{B \text{ allowable}}$  which can be found using equation 21. If however, the inlets are or are not located at  $0.5d_{B \text{ allowable}}$ , Equation 19 will need to be modified to reflect this.

$$d_B = \left[ \frac{Q_{\text{total}}}{(C_{WA} P_A 0.3536 + C_{WB} P_B + C_{WC} P_C 0.3536)} \right]^{\frac{2}{3}} \quad \text{(equation 19)}$$

Where:

$Q_{\text{total}}$  = actual flow into the inlet in cfs (cms)

$C_W$  = weir coefficient, 3.0 (1.66 for metric)

$P_N$  = effective grate perimeter, in feet (m), see Figure 3 - 29

$d_B$  = actual depth of ponded water at the inlet in feet (m)

Verify the allowable depth and flow have not been exceeded. That is verify  $Q_{\text{allowable}} > Q_{\text{Total}}$  and  $d_{B \text{ allowable}} > d_B$ . If the allowable flow and depth are greater than the actual, the maximum allowable spread will not be exceeded and the design is acceptable. If the actual depth or flow is greater than the allowable, then the runoff will spread beyond the maximum limits and the design is not acceptable. In this case, the designer should add flanking inlets or replace the three original inlets with inlets that have larger openings. If additional flanking inlets are used they should be placed close to the sag inlet to increase the flow interception and reduce the flow into the sag.

### 9.5 Gutter Capacity Analysis

When stormwater is collected and carried along the roadside in a gutter, the allowable top width of the flow prism ( $Z_d$ ) is dependent on the Road Classification as noted in Table 3 - 18.

**Table 3 - 18: Design Frequency and Spread**

Road Classification		Design Frequency	Design Spread ( $Z_d$ )
Interstate,	< 45 mph (70 km/hr)	25-year	Shoulder + 2 ft (0.67 m) <sup>a</sup>
Principal, Minor	≥ 45 mph (70 km/hr)	25-year	Shoulder
Arterial, or Divided	Sag Pt.	50-year	Shoulder + 2 ft (0.67 m) <sup>a</sup>
Collector and Local Streets	< 45 mph (70 km/hr)	25-year	Shoulder + ½ Driving Lane <sup>b</sup>
	≥ 45 mph (70 km/hr)	25-year	Shoulder
	Sag Pt.	50-year	½ Driving Lane <sup>b</sup>

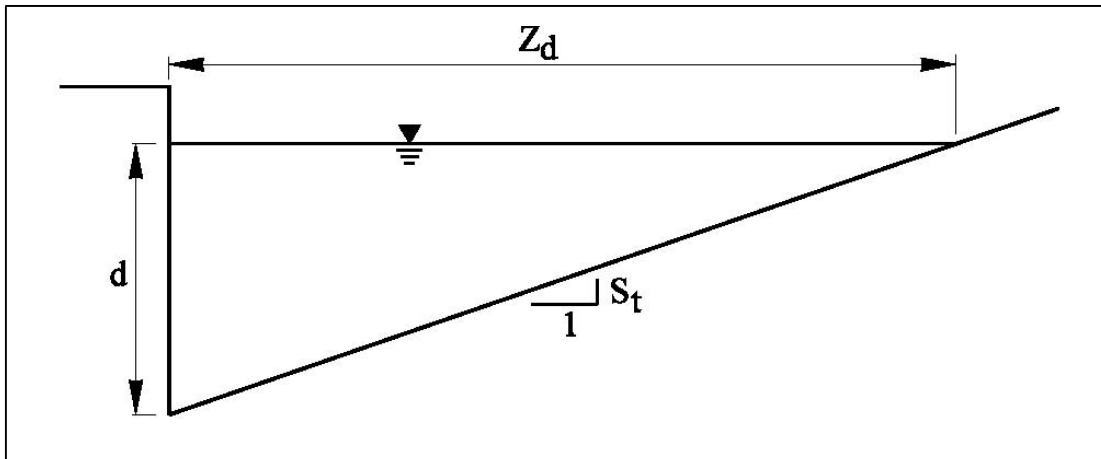
a. The travel way shall have at least 10 feet that is free of water.

b. In addition to the design spread requirement, the depth of flow shall not exceed 0.12 feet at the edge of the shoulder.

In addition to the requirements above, areas where a superelevation transition causes a crossover of gutter flow, the amount of flow calculated at the point of zero superelevation shall be limited to 0.10 cfs (0.003 m<sup>3</sup>/s). The designer will find, by the time the roadway approaches the

zero point, the  $Z_d$  will become very wide. The flow width criteria will be exceeded at the crossover point even when the flow is less than 0.10 cfs (0.003 m<sup>3</sup>/s).

The equation for calculating the gutter flow capacity is a modified version of Manning's Equation. It is based on a roughness coefficient of 0.015, which assumes a rough, concrete or asphalt pavement gutter. Equation 20 and Equation 21 assume a uniform gutter section as shown in Figure 3 - 31. If the gutter section is different, designers should consult the *Hydraulic Engineering Circular No. 22*, Chapter 4, for further guidance found at: [www.fhwa.dot.gov/bridge/hydpub.htm](http://www.fhwa.dot.gov/bridge/hydpub.htm).



**Figure 3 - 31. Typical Gutter Section**

$$d = \left[ \frac{\Delta O S_t}{37(S_L)^{0.5}} \right]^{3/8} \quad (\text{equation 20})$$

$$Z_d = \frac{d}{S_t} \quad (\text{equation 21})$$

Where:

$d$  = depth of flow at the face of curb (ft)

$\Delta O$  = gutter discharge (cfs); this is the design event per Table 3 - 18

$S_L$  = longitudinal slope of the gutter (ft/ft); assume 0.4% for cement curb and gutter and 1% for asphalt unless survey of the gutter line is conducted.

$S_t$  = transverse slope or superelevation (ft/ft); assume 2% unless survey of the slope is conducted

$Z_d$  = top width of the flow prism (ft)

## **9.6 Capacity Analysis**

A capacity analysis of the road gutter, conveyance piping, catch basin grate, and catch basin leads will be required to ensure that adequate capacity exists in the downstream system before a connection to the City stormwater system will be allowed for projects that create greater than 5,000 square feet of impervious surface and cannot infiltrate or disperse stormwater onsite in accordance with Minimum Requirement #5, and are not required to provide onsite detention or complete a quantitative downstream analysis per Minimum Requirement #7. The capacity analysis shall meet the requirements of Section 9.1 except that the analysis only needs to extend to the first City of Tacoma stormwater conveyance main (either City owned piping or City owned ditch). For the purposes of this analysis, a stormwater main can be a City owned conveyance system of any size. Environmental Services shall make the final determination of the extent of the capacity analysis.

## **9.7 Basis of Design**

Applicants may be required to submit a basis for pipe and culvert design which includes pipe type selection, suitability for depth of bury and loading, deflection calculations for above-ground pipes, anchoring, armoring, analysis for above ground pipes or outfalls, etc. Environmental Services will make the final determination as to when the basis of design is required.



## Chapter 10 Material Specifications

### 10.1 Pipe Specifications

Pipe systems are networks of storm drain pipes, catch basins, manholes, inlets, and outfalls, designed and constructed to convey stormwater.

#### 10.1.1 Pipe Materials

All pipe material, joints, and protective treatments shall be in accordance with Section 9.05 of the latest version of the WSDOT/APWA Standard Specifications and AASHTO and ASTM treatment standards as amended and as provided in this manual by the City of Tacoma, or the City of Tacoma Public Works master specifications.

##### 10.1.1.1 Pipes Within Right-of-Way

All storm drainage pipe to be installed in public right-of-way, that will be publicly maintained, or privately owned but located within the right-of-way shall be either:

- Rubber-gasketed concrete pipe (12-inch maximum diameter), or
- Rubber gasketed reinforced concrete pipe, minimum 12-inch diameter, or
- Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) sewer pipe (ASTM D3034 SDR35 for PVC less than or equal to 15-inches or ASTM F679 for PVC greater than 15-inch) per City of Tacoma Public Works Master Specifications, or
- Smooth interior, watertight, corrugated high-density polyethylene pipe (CPEP). Smooth interior CPEP shall have watertight joints meeting ASTM D3212 with gaskets meeting the requirements of ASTM F477. 4-inch through 10-inch pipe shall meet AASHTO M252, Type S; and 12-inch through 60-inch pipe shall meet AASHTO M294, Type S or ASTM F2306. All CPEP fittings shall conform to AASHTO M252, AASHTO M294, or ASTM F2306.
- High-density polyethylene pipe (HDPE). Pipe must comply with requirement of Type III C5P34 per ASTM D1248 and have the PPI recommended designation of PE3408 and have an ASTM D3350 cell classification of 345434C or 345534C. Pipe shall have a manufacturer's recommended hydrostatic design stress rating of 800 psi based on a material with a 1600 psi design basis determined in accordance with ASTM D2837-69. Pipe shall have a suggested design working pressure of 50 psi at 73.4 degrees F and SDR of 17.5. Designs utilizing HDPE pipe shall include considerations of the material's thermal expansion/contraction properties for anchoring.
- Ductile iron (class 50 or 52).

Galvanized, aluminized, and/or corrugated iron or steel pipes are not allowed within the public right-of-way or as a connection to the Municipal system.

##### 10.1.1.2 Private Pipes Outside the Right-of-Way

In addition to the pipe materials listed in Section 10.1.1.2, privately owned pipe located outside the right-of-way may also be one of the following:

- Corrugated aluminum pipe (12-gauge or thicker)
- Aluminum spiral rib pipe (12-gauge or thicker)
- Aluminized Type 2 corrugated steel (meeting AASHTO treatment M274 and M 56, 12-gauge or thicker)

- Corrugated high density polyethylene pipe (CPEP) - single wall, fully corrugated meeting AASHTO standard M-252 (permitted only outside public right-of-way and for use in temporary storm sewer systems and as downspout/footing/yard drain collectors on private property)
- Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) sewer pipe (SDR 35, meeting requirements of ASTM D3034)

### 10.1.2 Pipe Sizes

- Pipe sizes for pipe systems to be maintained by the City of Tacoma shall be 12-inch, 15-inch, 18-inch, 21-inch, 24-inch, and 30-inch. For pipes larger than 30-inch increasing increments of 6-inch intervals shall be used (36-inch, 42-inch, 48-inch, etc.).
- Pipes smaller than 12-inch may only be used for privately maintained systems, or to match the diameter of existing downstream mains, or as approved in writing by Environmental Services.
- Catch basin leads shall be a minimum of 12-inch.
- Roof drains may use pipe as small as 3-inch, and small driveway drains may use pipe as small as 6-inch. Pipes under 10-inch may require capacity analysis if requested by Environmental Services.

### 10.1.3 Changes in Pipe Sizes

- Pipe direction changes or size increases or decreases are only allowed at manholes and catch basins.
- Where a minimal fall is necessary between inlet and outlet pipes in a structure, pipes must be aligned vertically by one of the following in order of preference:
  - a. Match pipe crowns
  - b. Match 80% diameters of pipes
  - c. Match pipe inverts or use City approved drop inlet connection

### 10.1.4 Pipe Alignment and Depth

- Pipes must be laid true to line and grade with no curves, bends, or deflections in any direction.

*Exception: Vertical deflections in HDPE and ductile iron pipe with flanged restrained mechanical joint bends (not greater than 30%) on steep slopes are allowed provided the pipe adequately drains with a minimum velocity of 2 feet per second (fps).*
- A break in grade or alignment or changes in pipe material shall occur only at catch basins or manholes.
- For the standard main alignment refer to the Public Works Design Manual.
- The standard depth for new mains measures six (6) feet from the center of the pipe to the main street surface.
- The project engineer shall consult with the City for the potential of a future extension of the storm system. In this case, the City may require modifications to the depth or alignment.
- Connections to the storm system shall be made at a structure. Tributary connections shall be made at 90° to the main. Slight variations may be allowed.

- Pipes shall be allowed to cross under retaining walls as specifically approved in writing by Environmental Services when no other reasonable alternatives exist.

### **10.1.5 Pipe Slopes and Velocities**

- The slope of the pipe shall be set so that a minimum velocity of 2 feet per second can be maintained at full flow.
- A minimum slope for all pipes shall be 0.5%. Slopes less than 0.5% may be allowed on a case-by-case basis provided calculations are provided to demonstrate that a minimum velocity of 2 feet per second can be maintained at full flow.
- Maximum slopes, velocities, and anchor spacings are shown in Table 3 - 19. If velocities exceed 15 feet per second for the conveyance system design event described in Chapter 9, provide anchors and/or restrained joints at bends and junctions.

### **10.1.6 Pipes on Steep Slopes**

**NOTE:** This section does not apply to catch basin leads that utilize a single pipe section. Typically, below-ground installations do not require anchors. Consult with Environmental Services for steep below-ground installations.

- A basis of design shall be required for all mains installed at a slope greater than 20%.
- Slopes 20% or greater shall require all drainage to be piped from the top to the bottom of the slope in High Density Polyethylene (HDPE) pipe (butt-fused) or ductile iron pipe welded or mechanically restrained. Additional anchoring design is required for these pipes.
- Above-ground installation is required on slopes greater than 40% to minimize disturbance to steep slopes, unless otherwise approved in writing by Environmental Services.
- HDPE pipe systems longer than 100 feet must be anchored at the upstream end if the slope exceeds 20% or as required by Environmental Services.
- Above ground installations of HDPE shall address the high thermal expansion/contraction coefficient of the pipe material. An analysis shall be completed to demonstrate that the system as designed will tolerate the thermal expansion of the pipe material.

**Table 3 - 19: Maximum Pipe Slopes, Velocities and Anchor Requirements**

Pipe Materials	Pipe Slope Above Which Pipe Anchors Required and Minimum Anchor Spacing	Max Slope Allowed	Max.Velocity Full Flow
Spiral Rib <sup>(1)</sup> , PVC <sup>(1)</sup> , CPEP-singlewall	20% (1 anchor per 100 L.F. of pipe)	30% <sup>(3)</sup>	30 fps
Concrete <sup>(1)</sup> or CPEP-smooth interior <sup>(1)</sup>	10% (1 anchor per 50 L.F. of pipe)	20% <sup>(3)</sup>	30 fps
Ductile Iron <sup>(4)</sup>	40% (1 anchor per pipe section)	None	None
HDPE <sup>(2)</sup>	50% (1 anchor per 100 L.F. of pipe – cross slope installations may be allowed with additional anchoring and analysis)	None	None
<b>Notes:</b>			
(1) Not allowed in landslide hazard areas.			
(2) Butt-fused pipe joints required. Above-ground installation is required on slopes greater than 40% to minimize disturbance to steep slopes.			
(3) Maximum slope of 200% allowed for these pipe materials with no joints (one section) if structures are provided at each end and the pipes are properly grouted or otherwise restrained to the structures.			
(4) Restrained joints required on slopes greater than 25%. Above-ground installation is required on slopes greater than 40% to minimize disturbance to steep slopes.			
<b>Key:</b>			
PVC = Polyvinyl chloride pipe			
CPEP = Corrugated high density polyethylene pipe			
HDPE = High density polyethylene pipe			

## 10.1.7 Pipe Clearances

### *Horizontal*

A minimum of 5 feet horizontal separation shall be maintained between the storm main and all water, sanitary sewer mains or other storm mains. This also applies to laterals within the right-of-way that run parallel to mains. Horizontal separation on private property shall comply with applicable building codes, plumbing codes, fire codes, and Tacoma Water requirements. Separation must also comply with proper bedding requirements.

### *Vertical*

Where crossing an existing or proposed utility or sanitary sewer main, the alignment of the storm system shall be such that the two systems cross as close to perpendicular as possible. Where crossing a sanitary sewer main, provide a minimum 18 inches of vertical separation. For crossings of water mains contact Tacoma Water. The minimum vertical separation for a storm main crossing any other utility shall be 6 inches.

**NOTE:** Where the vertical separation of two parallel systems exceeds the horizontal separation, additional horizontal separation may be required to provide future access to the deeper system.

For crossings with other utilities, contact each individual utility for separation.

### 10.1.8 Pipe Cover

- Suitable pipe cover over storm pipes in road rights-of-way shall be calculated for H-20 loading by the Project Engineer. Pipe cover is measured from the finished grade elevation down to the top of the outside surface of the pipe. Pipe manufacturer's recommendations are acceptable if verified by the Project Engineer.
- Minimum cover for all pipe types shall be three feet in areas subject to vehicular traffic unless manufacturer's recommendations or calculations are provided from the Professional Engineer to demonstrate that the pipe can withstand less cover. Cover shall be measured from the top edge of the pipe to the final grade.
- Pipe cover in areas not subject to vehicular loads, such as landscape planters and yards, may be reduced to a 1-foot minimum.

## 10.2 Culvert Specifications

Culverts are relatively short segments of pipe of circular, elliptical, rectangular, or arch cross section and typically convey flow under road embankments or driveways. Culverts installed in stream and natural drainages shall meet the City's Critical Areas Preservation Ordinance and any fish passage requirements of the Washington State Department of Fish and Wildlife.

### 10.2.1 Inlets and Outlets

All inlets and outlets in or near roadway embankments must be flush with and conforming to the slope of the embankments.

- For culverts 18-inch diameter and larger, the embankment around the culvert inlet shall be protected from erosion by **rock lining or riprap** as specified in Table 3 - 21, except the length shall extend at least 5 feet upstream of the culvert, and the height shall be at or above the design headwater elevation.
- **Inlet structures**, such as concrete headwalls, may provide a more economical design by allowing the use of smaller entrance coefficients and, hence, smaller diameter culverts. When properly designed, they will also protect the embankment from erosion and eliminate the need for rock lining.
- In order to maintain the stability of roadway embankments, concrete headwalls, wingwalls, or tapered inlets and outlets may be required if **right-of-way or easement constraints** prohibit the culvert from extending to the toe of the embankment slopes. All inlet structures or headwalls installed in or near roadway embankments must be flush with and conforming to the slope of the embankment.
- **Debris barriers (trash racks)** are required on the inlets of all culverts that are over 60 feet in length and are 12 to 36 inches in diameter. This requirement also applies to the inlets of pipe systems. See Figure 3 - 32 for a debris barrier detail. Exceptions are culverts on Type 1 or 2 streams.
- For culverts 18-inch diameter and larger, the receiving channel of the outlet shall be protected from erosion by **rock lining** specified in Table 3 - 21, except the height shall be one foot above maximum tailwater elevation or one foot above the crown per Figure 3 - 35, whichever is higher.
- Closed depressions are required to have two outlets in the event one outlet clogs. This could be a second outlet pipe or an emergency spillway.

## 10.3 Open Channel Specifications

### 10.3.1 Natural Channels

*Natural channels* are defined as those that have occurred naturally due to the flow of surface waters, or those that, although originally constructed by human activity, have taken on the appearance of a natural channel including a stable route and biological community. They may vary hydraulically along each channel reach and should be left in their natural condition, wherever feasible or required, in order to maintain natural hydrologic functions and wildlife habitat benefits from established vegetation.

### 10.3.2 Constructed Channels

*Constructed channels* are those constructed or maintained by human activity and include bank stabilization of natural channels. Constructed channels shall be either vegetation-lined, rock lined, or lined with appropriately bioengineered vegetation.

- **Vegetation-lined channels** are the most desirable of the constructed channels when properly designed and constructed. The vegetation stabilizes the slopes of the channel, controls erosion of the channel surface, and removes pollutants. The channel storage, low velocities, water quality benefits, and greenbelt multiple-use benefits create significant advantages over other constructed channels. The presence of vegetation in channels creates turbulence, which results in loss of energy and increased flow retardation; therefore, the design engineer must consider sediment deposition and scour, as well as flow capacity, when designing the channel.
- **Rock-lined channels** are necessary where a vegetative lining will not provide adequate protection from erosive velocities. They may be constructed with riprap, gabions, or slope mattress linings. The rock lining increases the turbulence, resulting in a loss of energy and increased flow retardation. Rock lining also permits a higher design velocity and therefore a steeper design slope than in grass-lined channels. Rock linings are also used for erosion control at culvert and storm drain outlets, sharp channel bends, channel confluences, and locally steepened channel sections.
- **Bioengineered vegetation lining** is a desirable alternative to the conventional methods of rock armoring. *Soil bioengineering* is a highly specialized science that uses living plants and plant parts to stabilize eroded or damaged land. Properly designed bioengineering systems are capable of providing a measure of immediate soil protection and mechanical reinforcement. As the plants grow they produce vegetative protective cover and a root reinforcing matrix in the soil mantle. This root reinforcement serves several purposes:
  - a. The developed anchor roots provide both shear and tensile strength to the soil, thereby providing protection from the frictional shear and tensile velocity components to the soil mantle during the time when flows are receding and pore pressure is high in the saturated bank.
  - b. The root mat provides a living filter in the soil mantle that allows for the natural release of water after the high flows have receded.
  - c. The combined root system exhibits active friction transfer along the length of the living roots. This consolidates soil particles in the bank and serves to protect the soil structure from collapsing and the stabilization measures from failing.

### 10.3.3 Open Channel Design Criteria

- **Open channels** shall be designed to provide required conveyance capacity while minimizing erosion and allowing for aesthetics, habitat preservation, and enhancement. See Section 9.3 for open channel sizing criteria.
- **An access easement for maintenance** is required along all constructed channels located on private property. Required easement widths and building setback lines vary with channel top width.
- **Channel cross-section geometry** shall be trapezoidal, triangular, parabolic, or segmental as shown in Figure 3 - 36 through Figure 3 - 38. Side slopes shall be no steeper than 3:1 for vegetation-lined channels and 2:1 for rock-lined channels.
- **Vegetation-lined channels** shall have bottom slope gradients of 6% or less and a maximum velocity at design flow of 5 fps (see Table 3 - 20).
- **Rock-lined channels or bank stabilization of natural channels** shall be used when design flow velocities exceed 5 feet per second. Rock stabilization shall be in accordance with Table 3 - 20 or stabilized with bioengineering methods as described above in "Constructed Channels."

## 10.4 Structures

All structures to be maintained by the City of Tacoma shall meet the requirements of the Public Works Design Manual. All other structures must meet WSDOT standards.

The following criteria shall be used when designing a conveyance system that utilizes catch basins or manholes:

- Connections to the storm system shall be made at a structure. Tributary connections shall be made at 90° to the main. Slight variations may be allowed.
- The design event per Chapter 9 must be analyzed for proposed catch basin installations when grate capacity is a concern. The maximum surface run between catch basins shall not exceed 550 feet.
- Catch basin (or manhole) diameter shall be determined by pipe diameter and orientation at the junction structure. A plan view of the junction structure, drawn to scale, will be required when more than four pipes enter the structure on the same plane, or if angles of approach and clearance between pipes is of concern. The plan view (and sections if necessary) must demonstrate a minimum 8-inch interior distance between knockouts for 48-inch, 54-inch and 60-inch manholes, and a 12-inch interior distance between knockouts for 72-inch to 120-inch manholes.
- Type 1 & Type 1L basin height shall not exceed eight (8) feet.
- Type 2 (48-inch minimum diameter) catch basins or manholes shall be used at the following locations or for the following situations:
  - When overall structure height exceeds 8 feet.
  - When all pipes tying into the structure exceed the limits set for Type 1 structures.
  - All Type 2 catch basins shall be specifically approved by Environmental Services.
- Catch basin grates shall be vaned grates.
- Quarry spalls shall not be placed around inlets, to accommodate maintenance.
- The maximum slope of ground surface for a radius of 5 feet around a catch basin grate shall be 3:1. The preferred slope is 5:1 to facilitate maintenance access.

- Catch basin (or manhole) evaluation of structural integrity for H-20 loading will be required for multiple junction catch basins and other structures that exceed the recommendations of the manufacturers. Environmental Services may require further review for determining structural integrity.
- Catch basins leads shall be no longer than 50 feet unless specifically approved by Environmental Services.
- Catch basins shall be located:
  - Such that the inlet is placed next to the face of the curb and at an elevation to collect stormwater runoff (the structure offset shown on the plans shall be to center of grate, not center of structure to ensure grate location is appropriate);
  - At the low point of any sag vertical curve or grade break where the grade of roadway transitions from a negative to a positive grade;
  - Prior to any intersection such that a minimal amount of water flows across the intersection, through a curb ramp, or around a street return;
  - Prior to transitions from a typical crown to a full warp through a downhill grade;
  - Upstream of curb ramps outside of the wing of the curb ramp.
- Catch basins shall not be located:
  - In areas of expected pedestrian traffic;
  - In crosswalks;
  - In the wheel path of vehicles;
  - In driveways;
  - In graveled areas or high sediment generating areas unless pretreatment per Volume 5 is provided;
  - Where they will conflict with other utilities.
- All catch basins, inlets, etc. shall be marked as follows:  
“Dump no waste. Drains to stream.”  
or  
“Dump no waste. Drains to Sound.”
- The maximum surface run between manholes shall not exceed 350 linear feet.
- Changes in pipe direction, or increases or decreases in size, shall only be allowed at structures.
- For pipe slope less than the required minimum, distance between structures shall be decreased to 200 linear feet.
- For Type 1 and 1L, catch basin to catch basin connections shall not be allowed.
- Bubble up systems shall not be allowed.



## 10.5 System Connections

- Connections to a pipe system shall be made only at catch basins or manholes. No wyes or tees are allowed except on private roof/footing/yard drain systems on pipes 8 inches in diameter, or less. Where wyes and tees are utilized, clean-outs shall be required upstream of each wye and tee.
- Extensions of catch basin leads shall connect to the same pipe type, or replacement of the lead or addition of a structure is required.
- A flexible pipe-to-manhole connector shall be utilized in all connections of rigid and flexible pipes to new precast concrete manholes to provide a watertight joint between the pipe and manhole. The connector shall be “Kor-N-Seal” with “Wedge Korband” or Engineer-approved equivalent.
- Connections to catch basins shall use sand collars.
- Connections to structures and mains shall be at 90°. Slight variations may be allowed.
- Fall through manhole structures shall be 0.1 foot. Pipes of different diameters shall be aligned vertically in manholes by one of the following methods, listed in order of preference:
  - a. Match pipe crowns
  - b. Match 80% diameters of pipes.
  - c. Match pipe inverts or use City approved drop inlet connection.
- Where inlet pipes are significantly higher than outlet pipes special design features may be required.
- Drop connections shall be allowed for catch basin leads only. Catch basin leads shall connect below the cone of the manhole.
- Private connections to the City storm system shall be at a drainage structure (i.e. catch basin or manhole) and only if capacity exists at the design storm event. Tee connections into the side of a pipe shall not be permitted.
- Roof downspouts may be infiltrated or dispersed in accordance with the provisions of Chapter 2. Infiltration and dispersion shall be evaluated first. If infiltration and dispersion are not feasible, roof drains may be discharged through the curb per Section 2.8 into the roadway gutter or connected into a drainage structure. Roof downspouts may **not** be connected directly into the side of a storm drainage pipe.

### 10.6 Debris Barriers

Trash racks on City-owned pipes are only required for culverts, pond outlet pipes or as otherwise directed by Environmental Services. Debris barriers (trash racks) are required on all pipes entering a pipe system. See Figure 3 - 32 for required debris barriers on pipe ends outside of roadways and for requirements on pipe ends (culverts) projecting from driveways or roadway side slopes.

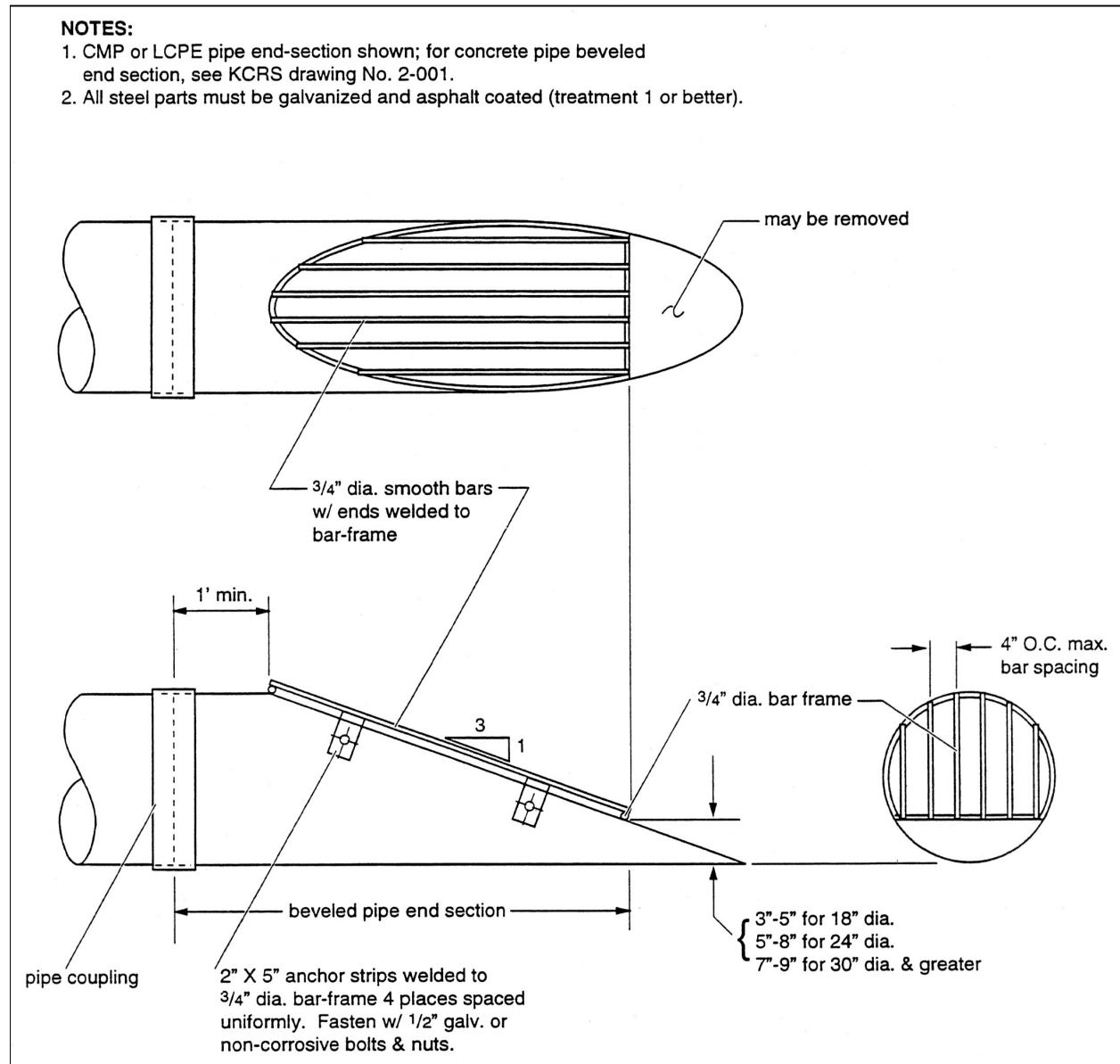


Figure 3 - 32. Debris Barrier

**Table 3 - 20: Channel Protection**

Velocity at Design Flow (fps)		Required Protection		
Greater than	Less than or equal to	Type of Protection	Thickness	Min. Height Above Design Water Surface
0	5	Grass lining or bioengineered lining	N/A	0.5 foot
5	8	Rock lining <sup>(1)</sup> or bioengineered lining	1 foot	1 foot
8	12	Riprap <sup>(2)</sup>	2 feet	2 feet
12	20	Slope mattress gabion, etc.	Varies	2 feet
<p>(1) Rock Lining shall be reasonable well graded as follows:  Maximum stone size: 12 inches  Median stone size: 8 inches  Minimum stone size: 2 inches</p> <p>(2) Riprap shall be reasonably well graded as follows:  Maximum stone size: 24 inches  Median stone size: 16 inches  Minimum stone size: 4 inches</p>				
<b>Note:</b> Riprap sizing is governed by side slopes on channel, assumed to be approximately 3:1.				

## 10.7 Riprap Design<sup>1</sup>

Proper riprap design requires the determination of the median size of stone, the thickness of the riprap layer, the gradation of stone sizes, and the selection of angular stones, which will interlock when placed. Research by the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers has provided criteria for selecting the **median stone weight,  $W_{50}$**  (Figure 3 - 33). If the riprap is to be used in a highly turbulent zone (such as at a culvert outfall, downstream of a stilling basin, at sharp changes in channel geometry, etc.), the median stone  $W_{50}$  should be increased from 200% to 600% depending on the severity of the locally high turbulence. The thickness of the riprap layer should generally be twice the **median stone diameter ( $D_{50}$ )** or at least equivalent to the diameter of the maximum stone. The riprap should have a reasonably well-graded assortment of stone sizes within the following gradation:

$$1.25 \leq D_{max}/D_{50} \leq 1.50$$

$$D_{15}/D_{50} = 0.50$$

$$D_{min}/D_{50} = 0.25$$

1. From a paper prepared by M. Schaefer, Dam Safety Section, Washington State Department of Ecology.

### **Riprap Filter Design**

Riprap should be underlain by a sand and gravel filter (or filter fabric) to keep the fine materials in the underlying channel bed from being washed through the voids in the riprap. Likewise, the filter material must be selected so that it is not washed through the voids in the riprap. Adequate filters can usually be provided by a reasonably well graded sand and gravel material where:

$$D_{15} < 5d_{85}$$

The variable  $d_{85}$  refers to the sieve opening through which 85% of the material being protected will pass, and  $D_{15}$  has the same interpretation for the filter material. A filter material with a  $D_{50}$  of 0.5 mm will protect any finer material including clay. Where very large riprap is used, it is sometimes necessary to use two filter layers between the material being protected and the riprap.

#### **Example:**

What embedded riprap design should be used to protect a streambank at a level culvert outfall where the outfall velocities in the vicinity of the downstream toe are expected to be about 8 fps.

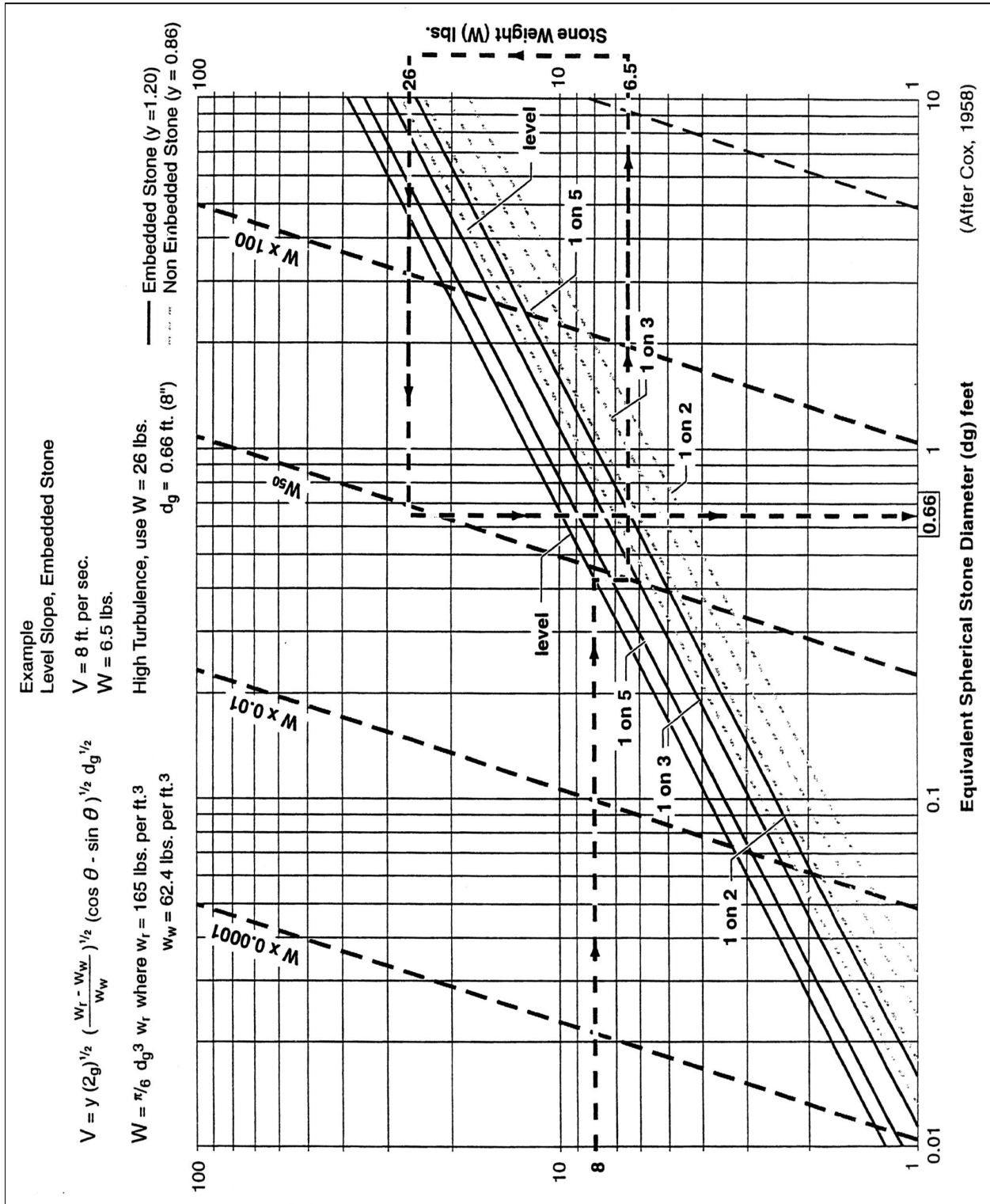
From Figure 3 - 33,  $W_{50} = 6.5$  lbs, but since the downstream area below the outfall will be subjected to severe turbulence, increase  $W_{50}$  by 400% so that:

$$W_{50} = 26 \text{ lbs, } D_{50} = 8.0 \text{ inches}$$

The gradation of the riprap is shown in Figure 3 - 34, and the minimum thickness would be 1 foot (from Table 3 - 20); however, 16 inches to 24 inches of riprap thickness would provide some additional insurance that the riprap will function properly in this highly turbulent area.

Table 3 - 34 shows that the gradation curve for ASTM C33, size number 57 coarse aggregate (used in concrete mixes), would meet the filter criteria. Applying the filter criteria to the coarse aggregate demonstrates that any underlying material whose gradation was coarser than that of concrete sand would be protected.

For additional information and procedures for specifying filters for riprap, refer to *the Army Corps of Engineers Manual EM 1110-2-1601, Hydraulic Design of Flood Control Channels*, Paragraph 14, "Riprap Protection."



(After Cox, 1958)

**Figure 3 - 33. Mean Channel Velocity vs Medium Stone Weight (W50) and Equivalent Stone Diameter**

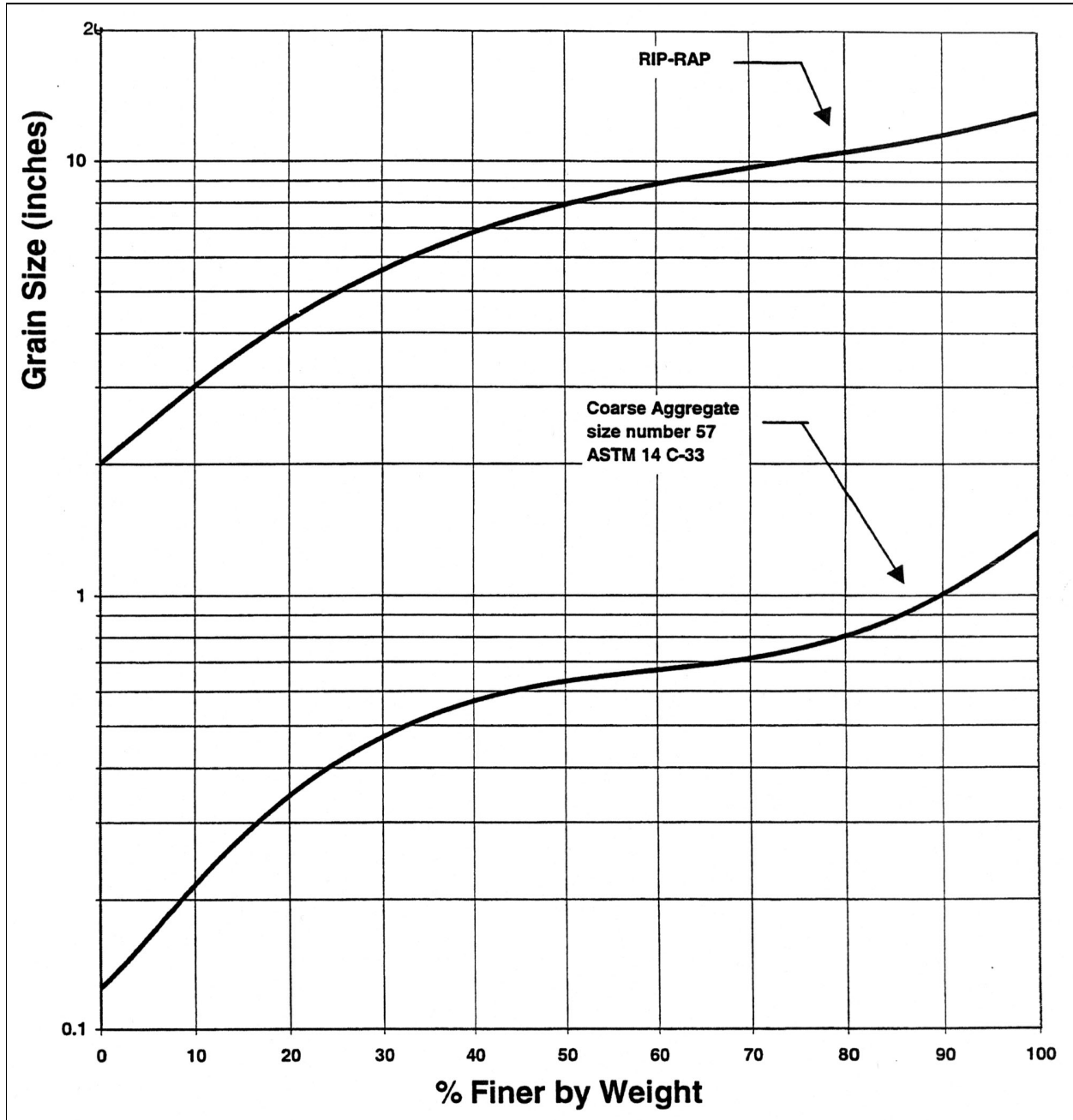


Figure 3 - 34. Riprap Gradation Curve

## Chapter 11 Outfall Systems

This section presents the methods, criteria and details for analysis and design of outfall systems. Properly designed outfalls are critical to reducing the chance of adverse impacts as the result of concentrated discharges from pipe systems and culverts, both onsite and downstream. Outfall systems include piping, rock splash pads, flow dispersal trenches, gabion or other energy dissipaters.

### 11.1 Outfall Design Criteria

All outfalls must be provided with an appropriate outlet / energy dissipation structure such as a dispersal trench, gabion outfall, or rock splash pad (see Figure 3 - 35) as specified below and in Table 3 - 21.

No erosion or flooding of downstream properties shall result from discharge from an outfall.

**Table 3 - 21: Rock Protection at Outfalls**

Discharge Velocity at Design Flow in Feet per Second (fps)	Required Protection (Minimum Dimensions)				
	Type	Thickness	Width	Length	Height
0 – 5	Rock lining <sup>(1)</sup>	1 foot	Diameter + 6 feet	8 feet or 4 x diameter, whichever is greater	Crown + 1 foot
>5 - 10	Riprap <sup>(2)</sup>	2 feet	Diameter + 6 feet or 3 x diameter, whichever is greater	12 feet or 4 x diameter, whichever is greater	Crown + 1 foot
>10 - 20	Gabion outfall	As required	As required	As required	Crown + 1 foot
>20	Engineered energy dissipater required				

**NOTES:**

(1) **Rock lining** shall be quarry spalls with gradation as follows:

- Passing 8-inch square sieve: 100%
- Passing 3-inch square sieve: 40 to 60% maximum
- Passing 3/4-inch square sieve: 0 to 10% maximum

(2) **Riprap** shall be reasonably well graded with gradation as follows:

- Maximum stone size: 24 inches (nominal diameter)
- Median stone size: 16 inches
- Minimum stone size: 4 inches

Riprap sizing is based on outlet channel side slopes of approximately 3:1.

### 11.1.1 Energy dissipation

- For freshwater outfalls with a design velocity greater than 10 fps, a gabion dissipater or engineered energy dissipater may be required. The gabion outfall detail shown in Figure 3 - 38 is illustrative only. A design engineered to specific site conditions must be developed.
- In marine waters, rock splash pads and gabion structures are not recommended due to corrosion and destruction of the structure, particularly in high energy environments. Diffuser Tee structures, such as that depicted in Figure 3 - 39, are also not generally recommended in or above the intertidal zone. They may be acceptable in low bank or rock shoreline locations. Generally, tightlines trenched to extreme low water or dissipation of the discharge energy above the ordinary high water line are preferred. Outfalls below extreme low water may still need an energy dissipation device (e.g., a tee structure) to prevent erosion in the immediate vicinity of the discharge.
- Engineered energy dissipaters, including stilling basins, drop pools, hydraulic jump basins, baffled aprons, and bucket aprons, are required for outfalls with design velocity greater than 20 fps. These should be designed using published or commonly known techniques found in such references as Hydraulic Design of Energy Dissipaters for Culverts and Channels, published by the Federal Highway Administration of the United States Department of Transportation; Open Channel Flow, by V.T. Chow; Hydraulic Design of Stilling Basins and Energy Dissipaters, EM 25, Bureau of Reclamation (1978); and other publications, such as those prepared by the Soil Conservation Service (now Natural Resource Conservation Service).
- Alternate mechanisms may be allowed with written approval of Environmental Services. Alternate mechanisms shall be designed using sound hydraulic principles with consideration of ease of construction and maintenance.
- Mechanisms that reduce velocity prior to discharge from an outfall are encouraged. Some of these are drop manholes and rapid expansion into pipes of much larger size. Other discharge end features may be used to dissipate the discharge energy. An example of an end feature is the use of a Diffuser Tee with holes in the front half, as shown in Figure 3 - 39.

Stormwater outfalls submerged in a marine environment can be subject to plugging due to biological growth and shifting debris and sediments. Regular maintenance is needed to ensure the outfall continues to function as designed.

The in-stream sample gabion mattress energy dissipater may not be acceptable within the ordinary high water mark of fish-bearing waters or where gabions will be subject to abrasion from upstream channel sediments. A gabion basket located outside the ordinary high water mark should be considered for these applications.

### 11.1.2 Flow dispersion

- The flow dispersal trenches shown in Figure 3 - 36 and Figure 3 - 37 shall not be used unless both criteria below are met:
  - An outfall is necessary to disperse concentrated flows across uplands where no conveyance system exists and the natural (existing) discharge is unconcentrated; and
  - The 100-year peak discharge rate is less than or equal to 0.5 cfs.
- Flow dispersion may be allowed for discharges greater than 0.5 cfs, providing that adequate design details and calculations for the dispersal trench to demonstrate that discharge will be sheet flow are submitted and approved by Environmental Services. For

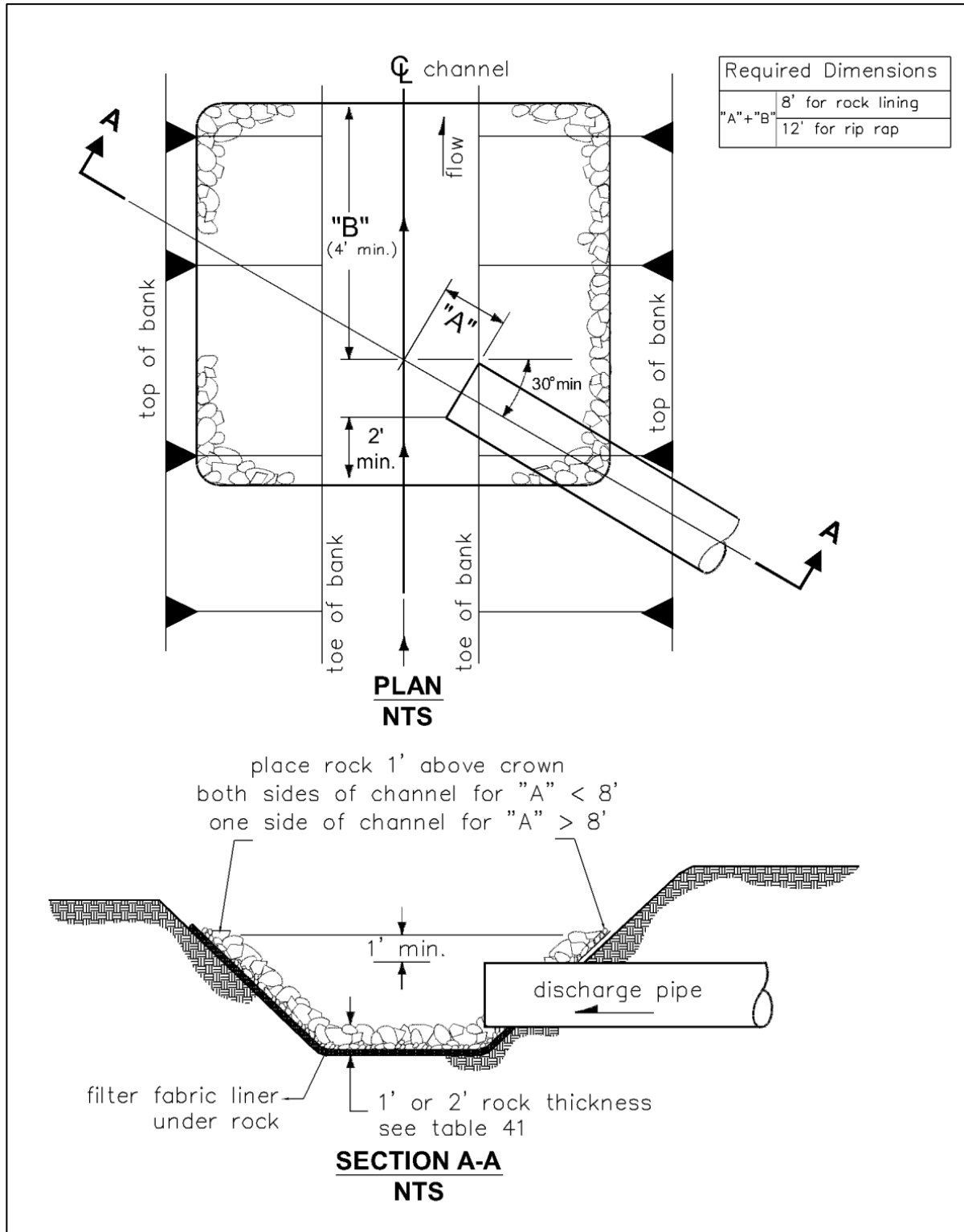


dispersion trenches discharging more than 0.5 cfs, additional vegetated flow path may be required.

- For the dispersion trenches shown in Figure 3 - 36 and Figure 3 - 37, a vegetated flowpath of at least 25 feet in length must be maintained between the outlet of the trench and any property line, structure, stream, wetland, or impervious surface. A vegetated flowpath of at least 50 feet in length must be maintained between the outlet of the trench and any steep slope. Sensitive area buffers may count towards flowpath lengths.
- All dispersion systems shall be at least 10 feet from any structure or property line. If necessary, setbacks shall be increased from the minimum 10 feet in order to maintain a 1H:1V side slope for future excavation and maintenance.
- Dispersion systems shall be setback from sensitive areas, steep slopes, slopes 20% or greater, landslide hazard areas, and erosion hazard areas as governed by the Tacoma Municipal Code or as outlined in this manual, whichever is more restrictive.
- For sites with multiple dispersion trenches, a minimum separation of 10 feet is required between flowpaths. Environmental Services may require a larger separation based upon site conditions such as slope, soil type and total contributing area.
- Runoff discharged towards landslide hazard areas must be evaluated by a geotechnical engineer or a licensed geologist, hydrogeologist, or engineering geologist. The discharge point shall not be placed on or above slopes 20% (5H:1V) or greater or above erosion hazard areas without evaluation by a geotechnical engineer or qualified geologist and City approval.

Please refer to the Tacoma Municipal Code for additional requirements. TMC 13.11 Critical Areas Protection Ordinance may contain additional requirements depending upon the project proposal. A Hydraulic Project Approval (Chapter 77.55 RCW), an Army Corps of Engineers permit, and other state and federal approvals may be required for any work within or below the ordinary high water mark.

Other provisions of that RCW or the Hydraulics Code - Chapter 220-110 WAC may also apply.



**Figure 3 - 35. Pipe/Culvert Outfall Discharge Protection**

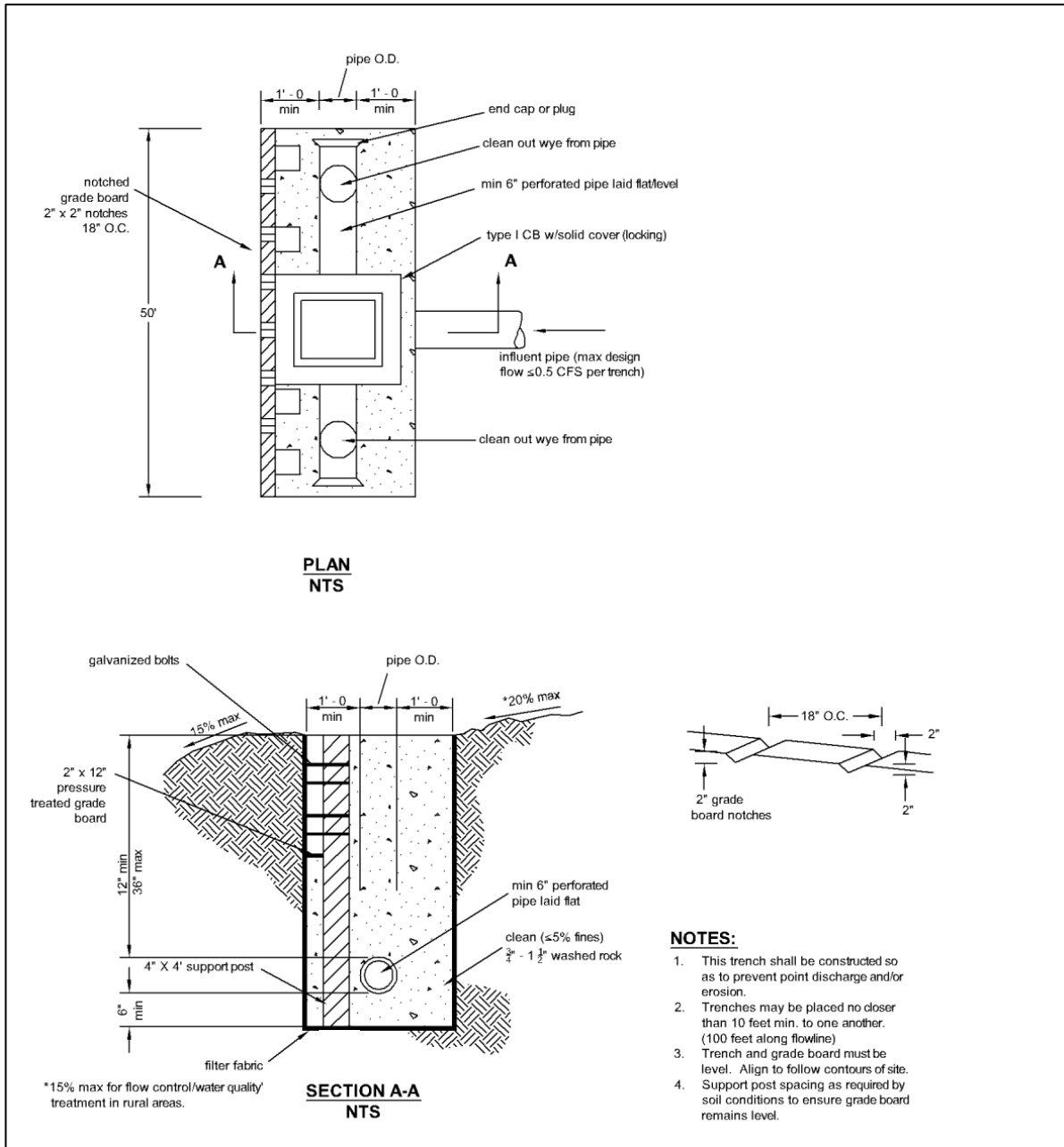
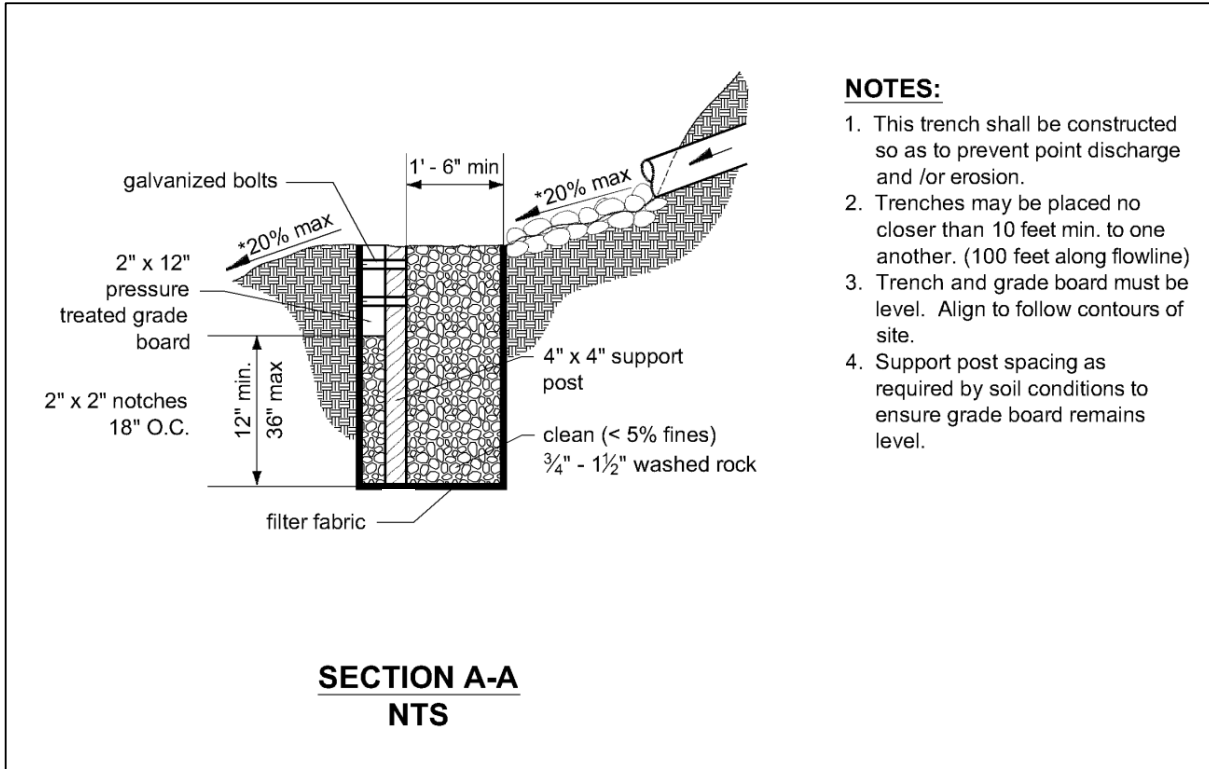


Figure 3 - 36. Flow Dispersal Trench



**NOTES:**

1. This trench shall be constructed so as to prevent point discharge and /or erosion.
2. Trenches may be placed no closer than 10 feet min. to one another. (100 feet along flowline)
3. Trench and grade board must be level. Align to follow contours of site.
4. Support post spacing as required by soil conditions to ensure grade board remains level.

**Figure 3 - 37. Alternative Flow Dispersal Trench**

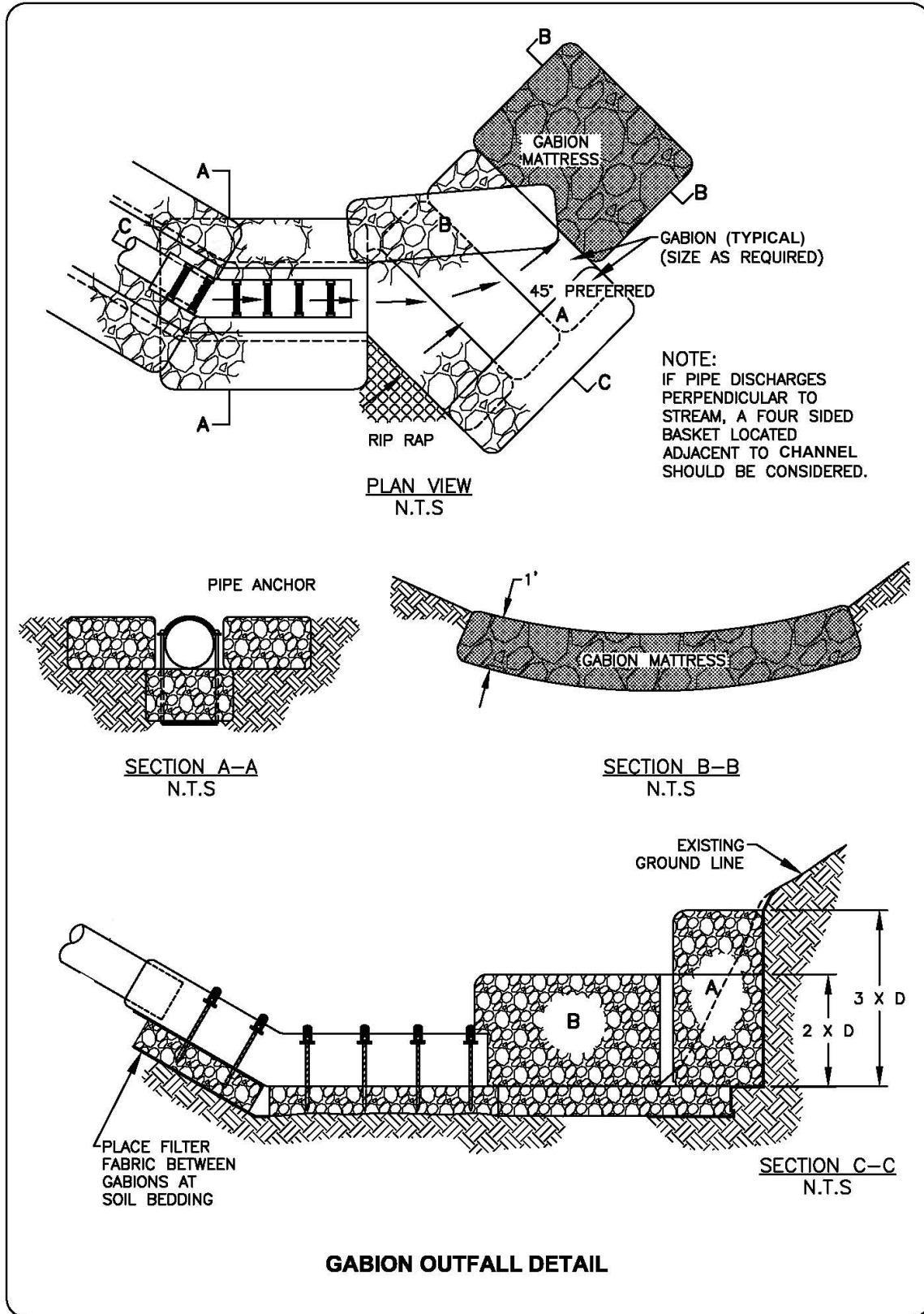
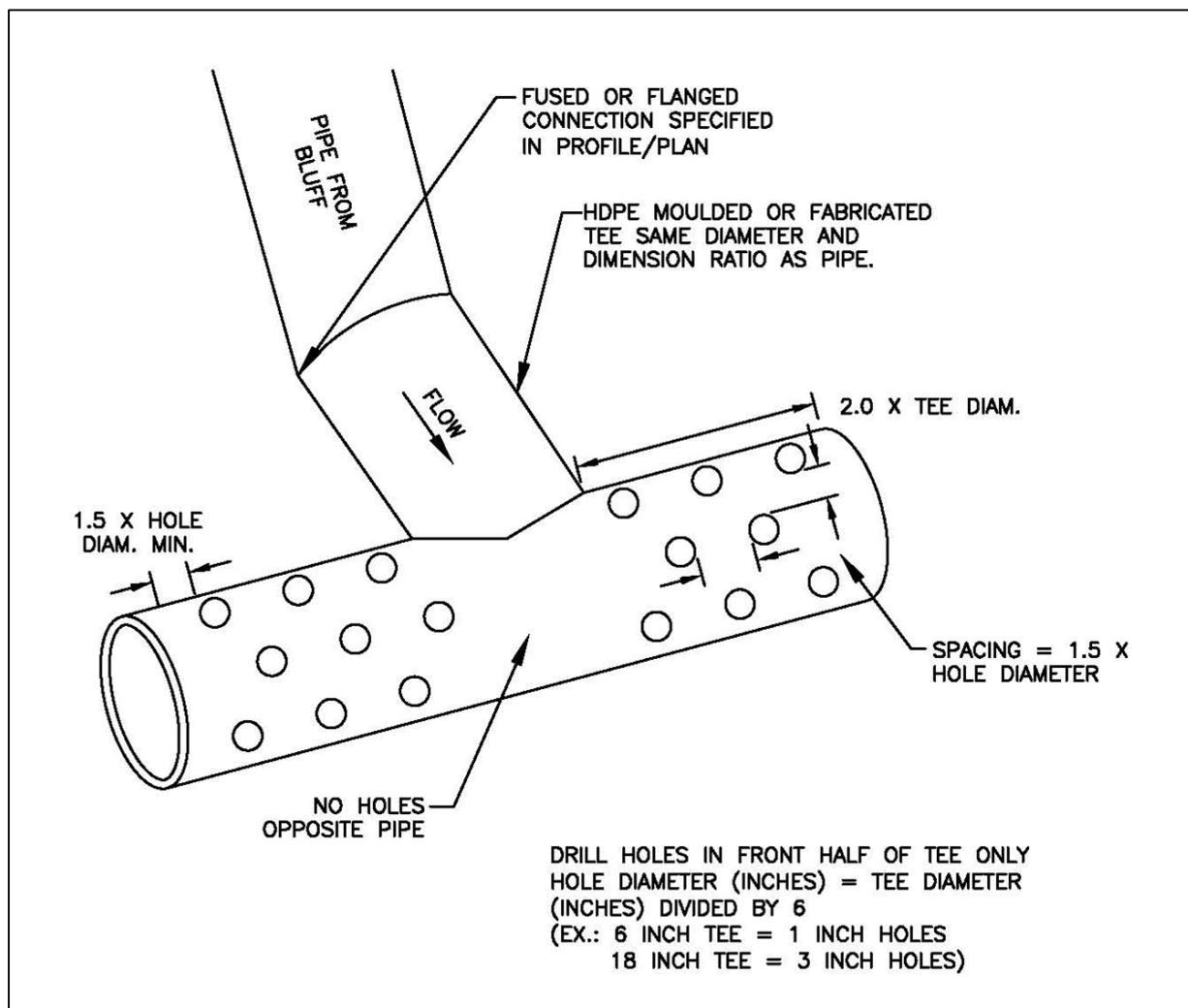


Figure 3 - 38. Gabion Outfall Detail



*Figure 3 - 39. Diffuser TEE (an example of energy dissipating end feature)*

## 11.2 Tightline Systems

- Outfall tightlines may be installed in trenches with standard bedding on slopes up to 20%. In order to minimize disturbance to slopes greater than 20%, it is recommended that tightlines be placed at grade with proper pipe anchorage and support.
- Except as indicated above, tightlines or conveyances that traverse the marine intertidal zone and connect to outfalls must be buried to a depth sufficient to avoid exposure of the line during storm events or future changes in beach elevation. If non-native material is used to bed the tightline, such material shall be covered with at least 3 feet of native bed material or equivalent.
- High density polyethylene pipe (HDPE) tightlines must be designed to address the material limitations, particularly thermal expansion and contraction and pressure design, as specified by the manufacturer.
- Due to the ability of HDPE tightlines to transmit flows of very high energy, special consideration for energy dissipation must be made. Details of a sample gabion mattress

energy dissipater have been provided as Figure 3 - 38. Flows of very high energy will require a specifically engineered energy dissipater structure.

- Tightline systems may be needed to prevent aggravation or creation of a downstream erosion problem.
- Tightline systems shall have appropriate anchoring designed, both along the slope and to provide anchoring for the entire system.

### **11.3 Habitat Considerations**

- New pipe outfalls can provide an opportunity for low-cost fish habitat improvements. For example, an alcove of low-velocity water can be created by constructing the pipe outfall and associated energy dissipater back from the stream edge and digging a channel, over widened to the upstream side, from the outfall to the stream. Overwintering juvenile and migrating adult salmonids may use the alcove as shelter during high flows. Potential habitat improvements should be discussed with the Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife biologist prior to inclusion in design.
- Bank stabilization, bioengineering and habitat features may be required for disturbed areas.
- Outfall structures should be located where they minimize impacts to fish, shellfish, and their habitats.
- The City's Critical Area Preservation Ordinance and other state and federal regulations may regulate activities in these areas.

## Chapter 12 Pump Systems

Pump systems are only allowed if it is determined that gravity systems are not feasible and as specifically approved in writing by Environmental Services. Feasibility of all other methods of gravity conveyance, infiltration and dispersion shall first be investigated and demonstrated to be infeasible in the following order of preference:

1. Infiltration of stormwater onsite.
2. Dispersion of stormwater on site.
3. Gravity connection to the City storm drainage system.
4. Pumping to a gravity system.

### 12.1 Design Criteria

The pump system must convey, at a minimum, the peak design flow for the 25-year 24-hour rainfall event. Pump capacity plus system storage or overflow, must convey or store the 100-year, 24-hour storm event.

### 12.2 Pump Requirements

Proposed pump systems must meet the following minimum requirements:

- The gravity-flow components of the drainage system to and from the pump system must be designed so that pump failure does not result in flooding of a building or emergency access or overflow to a location other than the natural discharge point for the project site.
- The pump system must have a dual pump (alternating) equipped with emergency back-up power OR a single pump may be provided without back-up power if the design provides the 100-year 24-hour storage volume.
- Pumps, wiring, and control systems shall be intrinsically safe per IBC requirements.
- All pump systems must be equipped with an external pump failure and high water alarm system.
- The pump system will serve only one lot or business owner.
- The pump system must be privately owned and maintained.
- The pump system shall not be used to circumvent any other City of Tacoma drainage requirements. Construction and operation of the pump system shall not violate any City of Tacoma requirements.
- All pump systems shall provide a transition from pressure line to gravity line prior to connection to the City system or curb. The transition shall be made at a cleanout or similar structure located on private property if possible.

### 12.3 Additional Requirements

Private pumped stormwater systems will require the following additional items:

- Operations and Maintenance Manual describing the system itself and all required maintenance and operating instructions, including procedures to follow in the event of a power outage. All the requirements of Volume 1 Section 4.1 shall be included in the Operations and Maintenance manual.



- The property owner must enter into a Covenant and Easement Agreement with the City. The Covenant and Easement Agreement must be recorded to the property title with Pierce County.

All fees associated with preparing and recording documents and placing the Notice to Title shall be the responsibility of the applicant.

### **12.3.1 Submittal Requirements**

The following information shall be provided for review:

- Plan view of proposed system
- Profile view of proposed system
- Detail of holding tank including pump on and off elevations
- Method of transition from pressure line to gravity line and location of transition from pressure line to gravity line
- Cut sheets and specifications for:
  - Pump (including pump performance curve)
  - Holding tank
  - Control panel
  - Audio visual alarm
- Engineering calculations, including:
  - System head loss calculations
  - Flow rate and volume as calculated from single event model using appropriate design event (see Section 12.1).
  - Appropriate flow rate and head characteristics plotted on the pump performance curve
  - Velocity calculations for the proposed diameter and type of pipe
  - Frequency and duration of pumping cycles
  - 100-year, 24-hour storage volume (ir proposing a single pump)
- Operation and Maintenance Manual describing the system itself and all required maintenance and operating instructions, including procedures to follow in the event of a power outage. All requirements of Volume 1, Section 4.1 shall be included in the Operation and Maintenance Manual.

## 12.4 Sump Pumps

The above pump requirements do not apply to internal sump pumps. However, internal sump pumps **do require** a permit prior to connection to the City storm drainage system.

- Sump pumps shall be sized to properly remove water from basements and crawl spaces.
- Sump pumps shall NOT be connected to the sanitary sewer system.
- Consult the pump manufacturer or an engineer for appropriate sizing of a sump pump.
- Contaminated water shall not be discharged to the City stormwater system.
- All pump systems shall provide a gravity break prior to discharge to the City system or curb.

Environmental Services may review pump installations and may require cut sheets, proposed layout, proposed connection to the City system, and sizing calculations.

## Chapter 13 Easements, Access, and Dedicated Tracts

All publicly owned, manmade drainage facilities and conveyances and all natural channels on the project site used for conveyance of altered flows due to development (including swales, ditches, stream channels, lake shores, wetlands, potholes, estuaries, gullies, ravines, etc.) shall be located within easements or dedicated tracts as required by the City.

Easements shall contain the natural features and facilities and shall allow City access for purposes of inspection, maintenance, repair or replacement, flood control, water quality monitoring, and other activities permitted by law.

For easements dedicated to the City for the purpose of storm drainage, it will not be allowable to place, plant or construct any permanent structures in, upon or under the easement area unless specifically approved in writing by the City of Tacoma's Director of Public Works, or designee. Such approval shall be drafted as an Addendum to the easement and recorded with the Pierce County Auditor's Office. Permanent structure shall mean any concrete foundation, concrete slab, wall, rockery, building, deck, overhanging structure, fill material, tree, recreational sport court, carport, portable or non-portable shed, private utilities, fence, or any other improvement that restricts or unreasonably interferes with the City's access to install, construct, operate, inspect, maintain, remove, repair, and replace the public utilities within the easement area. Permanent structures shall not mean flowers, ground cover and shrubs, (provided they are less than 3 feet in height), lawn, grass, asphalt paving, or gravel.

Preliminary project planning should account for the potential loss of buildable area or the need to purchase more property as a result of drainage facilities and their required easements/tracts.

### 13.1 Stormwater Facilities

#### 13.1.1 Public

All drainage facilities such as detention ponds, infiltration systems, and water quality treatment vaults to be maintained by the City shall be located in separate tracts dedicated to the City. Tracts and easement must also maintain appropriate setbacks as required for each BMP.

#### 13.1.2 Private

Privately owned facilities shall be located in separate tracts outside of dedicated public road right-of-way areas. **Private systems serving multiple lots require prior City approval.** For private systems serving multiple lots within residential developments or other developments, a Covenant and Easement Agreement or other guarantee of proper maintenance and access shall be recorded on title and provided to the City.

### 13.2 Conveyance Systems

#### 13.2.1 Public

All publicly maintained conveyance systems shall be located in dedicated tracts, drainage easements, or public rights-of-way. **Public storm drainage easements shall be a minimum of 20 feet in width.** Consult Section 10.1.4 of this volume and the Public Works Design Manual for pipe alignment requirements.

All pipes and channels must be centered within the easement. Easement widths may have to be adjusted for pipes greater than 5 feet in diameter and channels with top widths greater than 5 feet.

The depth or proximity of steep slopes to the public system may necessitate a larger easement requirement for future excavation and maintenance purposes. Consult with Table 3 - 22 for appropriate widths based on depth of pipe.

**Table 3 - 22: Storm Drain Easement Widths**

Channel Width	Easement Width
Channels ≤ 10' Wide	Channel Width + 15' on one side
Channels > 10' Wide	Channel Width + 15' on both sides
Pipe Invert Depth	Easement Width
< 10'	20'
10' - 15'	25'
15' - 20'	30'
> 20'	40'
Greater width may be required for large diameter pipe or unfavorable site conditions. Pipe shall be installed in center of easement. If two pipes are to be installed in an easement, add 10 feet to the easement widths listed above. Use the deeper of the two pipes in selecting the easement width from this table. Install pipes with 10 feet of horizontal clearance between them.	

**13.2.2 Private**

All privately maintained conveyance systems serving multiple lots/owners shall be located in dedicated tracts, drainage easements, or private roadways with appropriate easements. Any new conveyance system located on private property designed to convey drainage from other private properties must be located in a private drainage easement granted to the contributors of stormwater to said systems. The easement shall permit access for maintenance or replacement in the case of failure.

Unless prohibited by topography or existing site conditions, new conveyance system alignments, on private property, must be located in drainage easements that are adjacent and parallel to property lines.

The depth or proximity of a private system to slopes 20% or greater may necessitate a larger easement for future excavation and maintenance purposes. Typically this requires a 1:1 slope from the bottom of the trench.

Private easement width shall be based upon pipe diameter, depth of pipe and maintenance access. Table 3 - 22 can be used as guidance to determine appropriate easement width.

### **13.3 Maintenance Access**

A minimum 15-foot wide access easement shall be provided to drainage facilities from a public street or right-of-way. Access easements shall be surfaced with a minimum 12-foot width of crushed rock, or other approved surface to allow year-round equipment access to the facility.

Maintenance access must be provided for all manholes, catch basins, vaults, or other underground drainage facilities operated by the City. Maintenance shall be through an access easement or dedicated tract. These must include a constructed access road per the requirements of Section 7.1.2 of this volume.

Privately maintained facilities must be readily accessible. Provide documentation as to how these facilities will be accessed.

## Appendix A Tacoma Design Storm

**Table 3 - 23: Design Storm Precipitation Values**

Return Frequency 24-Hour Storm Event (Years)	Precipitation (Inches)
0.5	1.44
2	2.0
5	2.5
10	3.0
25	3.5
50	3.5
100	4.1

The depth of a 7-day, 100-year storm can be determined in one of three ways:

- Use 12 inches for the lowland areas between sea level and 650 MSL.
- Use the U.S. Department of Commerce Technical Paper No. 49, "Two- to Ten-Day Precipitation for Return Periods of 2 to 100 Years in the Contiguous United States."
- Use the U.S. Department of Commerce NOAA Atlas 2, "Precipitation Frequency Atlas of the Western United States," Volume IX – Washington, 24-hour, 100-year Isopluvials and add 6.0 inches to the appropriate isopluvial for the project area.

## **Appendix B Procedure for Conducting a Pilot Infiltration Test**

The Pilot Infiltration Test (PIT) consists of a relatively large-scale infiltration test to better approximate infiltration rates for design of stormwater infiltration facilities. The PIT reduces some of the scale errors associated with relatively small-scale double ring infiltrometer or “stove-pipe” infiltration tests. It is not a standard test but rather a practical field procedure recommended by Ecology’s Technical Advisory Committee.

### **B.1 Infiltration Test**

- Excavate the test pit to the depth of the bottom of the proposed infiltration facility. Lay back the slopes sufficiently to avoid caving and erosion during the test.
- The horizontal surface area of the bottom of the test pit should be approximately 100 square feet. For small drainages and where water availability is a problem smaller areas may be considered as determined by the site professional.
- Accurately document the size and geometry of the test pit.
- Install a vertical measuring rod (minimum 5-ft. long) marked in half-inch increments in the center of the pit bottom.
- Use a rigid 6-inch diameter pipe with a splash plate on the bottom to convey water to the pit and reduce side-wall erosion or excessive disturbance of the pond bottom. Excessive erosion and bottom disturbance will result in clogging of the infiltration receptor and yield lower than actual infiltration rates.
- Add water to the pit at a rate that will maintain a water level between 3 and 4 feet above the bottom of the pit. A rotometer can be used to measure the flow rate into the pit.

A water level of 3 to 4 feet provides for easier measurement and flow stabilization control. However, the depth should not exceed the proposed maximum depth of water expected in the completed facility.

Every 15 – 30 min, record the cumulative volume and instantaneous flow rate in gallons per minute necessary to maintain the water level at the same point (between 3 and 4 feet) on the measuring rod.

Add water to the pit until one hour after the flow rate into the pit has stabilized (constant flow rate) while maintaining the same pond water level (usually 17 hours).

After the flow rate has stabilized, turn off the water and record the rate of infiltration in inches per hour from the measuring rod data, until the pit is empty.

## **B.2 Data Analysis**

Calculate and record the infiltration rate in inches per hour in 30 minutes or one-hour increments until one hour after the flow has stabilized.

Use statistical/trend analysis to obtain the hourly flow rate when the flow stabilizes. This would be the lowest hourly flow rate.

Apply appropriate correction factors for site heterogeneity, anticipated level of maintenance and treatment to determine the site-specific design infiltration rate.

## **B.3 Example**

The area of the bottom of the test pit is 8.5-ft. by 11.5-ft.

Water flow rate was measured and recorded at intervals ranging from 15 to 30 minutes throughout the test. Between 400 minutes and 1,000 minutes the flow rate stabilized between 10 and 12.5 gallons per minute or 600 to 750 gallons per hour, or an average of  $(9.8 + 12.3) / 2 = 11.1$  inches per hour.

Applying a correction factor of 5.5 for gravelly sand, the design long-term infiltration rate becomes 2 inches per hour, anticipating adequate maintenance and pre-treatment.



# Volume 4 - Source Control BMPs

## Table of Contents

Purpose of this Volume . . . . .	4-1
Content and Organization of this Volume . . . . .	4-1
<b>Chapter 1 Frequently Asked Questions . . . . .</b>	<b>4-2</b>
1.1 Applicability . . . . .	4-2
1.2 Pollutants of Concern . . . . .	4-2
1.2.1 pH . . . . .	4-2
1.2.2 Total Suspended Solids . . . . .	4-2
1.2.3 Oils and Greases . . . . .	4-2
1.2.4 Oxygen-demanding Substances . . . . .	4-2
1.2.5 Metals . . . . .	4-3
1.2.6 Bacteria and Viruses . . . . .	4-3
1.2.7 Nutrients . . . . .	4-3
1.2.8 Toxic Organic Compounds . . . . .	4-3
1.2.9 Other Chemicals and Substances . . . . .	4-3
1.3 Types of Source Control BMPs . . . . .	4-4
1.3.1 Operational BMPs . . . . .	4-4
1.3.2 Structural BMPs . . . . .	4-4
<b>Chapter 2 Worksheet for Commercial and Industrial Activities . . . . .</b>	<b>4-5</b>
<b>Chapter 3 BMPs for Homeowners . . . . .</b>	<b>4-9</b>
3.1 Automobile Washing (for Single-Family Residences) . . . . .	4-9
3.1.1 Required BMPs . . . . .	4-9
3.1.2 Suggested BMPs . . . . .	4-9
3.1.2.1 At Home: . . . . .	4-9
3.1.2.2 Away from Home: . . . . .	4-10
3.2 Automobile Maintenance . . . . .	4-10
3.2.1 Required BMPs . . . . .	4-10
3.2.2 Suggested BMPs . . . . .	4-10
3.3 Storage of Solid Wastes and Food Wastes . . . . .	4-11
3.3.1 Required BMPs . . . . .	4-11
3.3.2 Suggested BMPs . . . . .	4-11
3.4 Composting . . . . .	4-11
3.4.1 Required BMPs . . . . .	4-11
3.4.2 Suggested BMPs . . . . .	4-11
3.5 Yard Maintenance and Gardening . . . . .	4-12
3.5.1 Required BMPs . . . . .	4-12
3.5.2 Suggested BMPs . . . . .	4-12
3.6 Swimming Pool and Spa Cleaning and Maintenance . . . . .	4-13
3.6.1 Required BMPs . . . . .	4-13
3.6.2 Suggested BMPs . . . . .	4-13
3.7 Household Hazardous Material Use, Storage, and Disposal . . . . .	4-14

- 3.7.1 Required BMPs . . . . . 4-14
- 3.7.2 Suggested BMPs . . . . . 4-14
- 3.8 General Home Maintenance . . . . . 4-15
  - 3.8.1 Required BMPs . . . . . 4-15
  - 3.8.2 Suggested BMPs . . . . . 4-15
- 3.9 Pet Waste . . . . . 4-16
  - 3.9.1 Required BMPs . . . . . 4-16
- Chapter 4 BMPs for Commercial and Industrial Activities . . . . . 4-17**
- 4.1 BMPs To Consider for all Activities . . . . . 4-17
- 4.2 Washing Best Management Practices . . . . . 4-18
  - 4.2.1 Cleaning or Washing of Tools, Equipment, and Machinery . . . . . 4-20
  - 4.2.2 Cleaning or Washing of Cooking Equipment . . . . . 4-20
  - 4.2.3 Building Structures and Related Equipment . . . . . 4-21
  - 4.2.4 Interior Washing Operations . . . . . 4-22
  - 4.2.5 Washing, Pressure Washing and Steam Cleaning of Vehicles . . . . . 4-23
- 4.3 Transfer of Liquid or Solid Materials . . . . . 4-25
  - 4.3.1 BMP A201: Loading and Unloading Areas for Liquid or Solid Material . . . . . 4-25
    - 4.3.1.1 Description of Pollutant Sources . . . . . 4-25
    - 4.3.1.2 Required BMPs . . . . . 4-25
    - 4.3.1.3 Recommended BMPs: . . . . . 4-27
  - 4.3.2 BMP A202: Fueling at Dedicated Stations . . . . . 4-29
    - 4.3.2.1 Description of Pollutant Sources . . . . . 4-29
    - 4.3.2.2 Required BMPs . . . . . 4-29
  - 4.3.3 BMP A203: Vehicle Maintenance Activities . . . . . 4-30
    - 4.3.3.1 Description of Pollutant Sources . . . . . 4-30
    - 4.3.3.2 Required BMPs . . . . . 4-30
    - 4.3.3.3 Recommended BMPs . . . . . 4-31
  - 4.3.4 BMP A204: Mobile Fueling of Vehicles and Heavy Equipment . . . . . 4-32
    - 4.3.4.1 Description of Pollutant Sources . . . . . 4-32
    - 4.3.4.2 Required BMPs . . . . . 4-32
- 4.4 Production and Application Activities . . . . . 4-34
  - 4.4.1 BMP A301: Concrete and Asphalt Mixing and Production at Stationary Sites . . . . . 4-34
    - 4.4.1.1 Description of Pollutant Sources . . . . . 4-34
    - 4.4.1.2 Required BMPs . . . . . 4-34
    - 4.4.1.3 Recommended BMPs . . . . . 4-35
  - 4.4.2 BMP A302: Concrete Pouring, Concrete Cutting, and Asphalt Application at Temporary Sites  
4-36
    - 4.4.2.1 Description of Pollutant Sources . . . . . 4-36
    - 4.4.2.2 Required BMPs . . . . . 4-36
    - 4.4.2.3 Recommended BMPs . . . . . 4-37
  - 4.4.3 BMP A303: Manufacturing and Post-Processing of Metal Products . . . . . 4-38
    - 4.4.3.1 Description of Pollutant Sources . . . . . 4-38
    - 4.4.3.2 Required BMPs . . . . . 4-38
    - 4.4.3.3 Recommended BMPs . . . . . 4-38
  - 4.4.4 BMP A304: Wood Treatment Areas . . . . . 4-39
    - 4.4.4.1 Description of Pollutant Sources . . . . . 4-39
    - 4.4.4.2 Required BMPs . . . . . 4-39
  - 4.4.5 BMP A305: Commercial Composting . . . . . 4-40
    - 4.4.5.1 Description of Pollutant Sources . . . . . 4-40

4.4.5.2 Required BMPs . . . . .	4-40
4.4.6 BMP A306: Landscaping and Lawn/Vegetation Management . . . . .	4-41
4.4.6.1 Description of Pollutant Sources . . . . .	4-41
4.4.6.2 Required BMPs for Landscaping . . . . .	4-41
4.4.6.3 Recommended BMPs for Landscaping . . . . .	4-41
4.4.6.4 Required BMPs for the Use of Pesticides . . . . .	4-42
4.4.6.5 Recommended BMPs for the use of Pesticides . . . . .	4-42
4.4.6.6 Required BMPs for Vegetation Management. . . . .	4-43
4.4.6.7 Required BMPs for the Use of Fertilizers. . . . .	4-44
4.4.7 BMP A307: Painting, Finishing and Coating of Vehicles, Boats, Buildings and Equipment . . . . .	4-45
4.4.7.1 Description of Pollutant Sources . . . . .	4-45
4.4.7.2 Required BMPs . . . . .	4-45
4.4.7.3 Recommended BMPs . . . . .	4-45
4.4.8 BMP A308: Commercial Printing Operations . . . . .	4-46
4.4.8.1 Description of Pollutant Sources . . . . .	4-46
4.4.8.2 Required BMPs . . . . .	4-46
4.4.8.3 Recommended BMPs . . . . .	4-46
4.4.9 BMP A309: Manufacturing Operations – Outside . . . . .	4-47
4.4.9.1 Description of Pollutant Sources . . . . .	4-47
4.4.9.2 Required BMPs . . . . .	4-47
4.5 Storage and Stockpiling Activities . . . . .	4-49
4.5.1 BMP A401: Storage or Transfer (Outside) of Solid Raw Materials, By-Products or Finished Products . . . . .	4-49
4.5.1.1 Description of Pollutant Sources . . . . .	4-49
4.5.1.2 Required BMPs . . . . .	4-49
4.5.1.3 Recommended BMPs . . . . .	4-50
4.5.2 BMP A402: Storage and Treatment of Contaminated Soils . . . . .	4-51
4.5.2.1 Description of Pollutant Sources . . . . .	4-51
4.5.2.2 Required BMPs . . . . .	4-51
4.5.2.3 Recommended BMPs . . . . .	4-51
4.5.3 BMP A403: Temporary Storage or Processing of Fruits or Vegetables . . . . .	4-52
4.5.3.1 Description of Pollutant Sources . . . . .	4-52
4.5.3.2 Required BMPs . . . . .	4-52
4.5.4 BMP A404: Storage of Solid Wastes and Food Wastes . . . . .	4-53
4.5.4.1 Description of Pollutant Sources . . . . .	4-53
4.5.4.2 Required BMPs . . . . .	4-53
4.5.4.3 Recommended BMPs . . . . .	4-54
4.5.5 BMP A405: Farmer’s Markets . . . . .	4-55
4.5.5.1 Description of Pollutant Sources . . . . .	4-55
4.5.5.2 Required BMPs . . . . .	4-55
4.5.6 BMP A406: Recyclers and Scrap Yards . . . . .	4-56
4.5.6.1 Description of Pollutant Sources . . . . .	4-56
4.5.6.2 Required BMPs . . . . .	4-56
4.5.7 BMP A407: Treatment, Storage or Disposal of Dangerous Wastes . . . . .	4-57
4.5.8 BMP A408: Storage of Liquid, Food Waste or Dangerous Waste Containers . . . . .	4-58
4.5.8.1 Description of Pollutant Sources . . . . .	4-58
4.5.8.2 Required BMPs . . . . .	4-58
4.5.9 BMP A409: Storage of Liquids in Above-Ground Tanks . . . . .	4-61
4.5.9.1 Description of Pollutant Sources . . . . .	4-61
4.5.9.2 Required BMPs for All Tanks. . . . .	4-61

- 4.5.9.3 Required BMPs for Single-walled Tanks . . . . . 4-62
- 4.5.9.4 Required BMPs for Double-walled Tanks . . . . . 4-62
- 4.5.10 BMP A410: Parking and Storage for Vehicles and Equipment . . . . . 4-65
  - 4.5.10.1 Description of Pollutant Sources . . . . . 4-65
  - 4.5.10.2 Required BMPs . . . . . 4-65
- 4.6 Construction and Demolition Activities . . . . . 4-66
  - 4.6.1 BMP A501: Clearing, Grading and Preparation of Construction Sites . . . . . 4-66
  - 4.6.2 BMP A502: Demolition of Buildings . . . . . 4-66
    - 4.6.2.1 Description of Pollutant Sources . . . . . 4-66
    - 4.6.2.2 Required BMPs . . . . . 4-66
    - 4.6.2.3 Recommended BMPs . . . . . 4-67
  - 4.6.3 BMP A503: Building, Repair, Remodeling and Construction . . . . . 4-68
    - 4.6.3.1 Description of Pollutant Sources . . . . . 4-68
    - 4.6.3.2 Required BMPs . . . . . 4-68
    - 4.6.3.3 Recommended BMPs . . . . . 4-68
- 4.7 Dust Control, and Soil and Sediment Control . . . . . 4-69
  - 4.7.1 BMP A601: Dust Control at Disturbed Land Areas and Unpaved Roadways and Parking Lots  
4-69
    - 4.7.1.1 Description of Pollutant Sources . . . . . 4-69
    - 4.7.1.2 Required BMPs . . . . . 4-69
    - 4.7.1.3 Recommended BMPs for Roadways and Other Trafficked Areas . . . . . 4-69
    - 4.7.1.4 Recommended BMPs for Dust Generating Areas . . . . . 4-70
  - 4.7.2 BMP A602: Dust Control at Manufacturing Sites . . . . . 4-71
    - 4.7.2.1 Description of Pollutant Sources . . . . . 4-71
    - 4.7.2.2 Required BMPs . . . . . 4-71
    - 4.7.2.3 Recommended BMPs . . . . . 4-71
  - 4.7.3 BMP A603: Soil Erosion and Sediment Control at Industrial Sites . . . . . 4-72
    - 4.7.3.1 Description of Pollutant Sources . . . . . 4-72
    - 4.7.3.2 Required BMPs . . . . . 4-72
- 4.8 Other Activities . . . . . 4-73
  - 4.8.1 BMP A701: Commercial Animal Handling Areas . . . . . 4-73
    - 4.8.1.1 Description of Pollutant Sources . . . . . 4-73
    - 4.8.1.2 Required BMPs . . . . . 4-73
  - 4.8.2 BMP A702: Log Sorting and Handling . . . . . 4-74
    - 4.8.2.1 Description of Pollutant Sources . . . . . 4-74
    - 4.8.2.2 Ecology’s Baseline General Permit Requirements: . . . . . 4-74
  - 4.8.3 BMP A703: Boat Building, Mooring, Maintenance and Repair . . . . . 4-75
    - 4.8.3.1 Description of Pollutant Sources . . . . . 4-75
    - 4.8.3.2 Required BMPs . . . . . 4-75
    - 4.8.3.3 Recommended BMPs . . . . . 4-76
  - 4.8.4 BMP A704: Logging . . . . . 4-78
    - 4.8.4.1 Description of Pollutant Sources . . . . . 4-78
    - 4.8.4.2 Required BMPs . . . . . 4-78
    - 4.8.4.3 Recommended BMPs . . . . . 4-78
  - 4.8.5 BMP A705: Mining and Quarrying of Sand, Gravel, Rock, Peat, Clay and Other Materials . .  
4-79
    - 4.8.5.1 Description of Pollutant Sources . . . . . 4-79
    - 4.8.5.2 Required BMPs . . . . . 4-79
    - 4.8.5.3 Recommended BMPs . . . . . 4-79
  - 4.8.6 BMP A706: Swimming Pool and Spa Cleaning and Maintenance . . . . . 4-80
    - 4.8.6.1 Description of Pollutant Sources . . . . . 4-80

- 4.8.6.2 Required BMPs . . . . . 4-80
- 4.8.6.3 Recommended BMP . . . . . 4-80
- 4.8.7 BMP A707: De-Icing and Anti-Icing Operations for Streets & Highways . . . . . 4-81
  - 4.8.7.1 Description of Pollutant Sources . . . . . 4-81
  - 4.8.7.2 Required BMPs . . . . . 4-81
  - 4.8.7.3 Recommended BMPs . . . . . 4-81
- 4.8.8 BMP A708: Roof and Building Drains at Manufacturing and Commercial Buildings . . . . . 4-82
  - 4.8.8.1 Description of Pollutant Sources . . . . . 4-82
  - 4.8.8.2 Required BMPs . . . . . 4-82
- 4.8.9 BMP A709: Urban Streets . . . . . 4-83
  - 4.8.9.1 Description of Pollutant Sources . . . . . 4-83
  - 4.8.9.2 Required BMPs . . . . . 4-83
  - 4.8.9.3 Recommended BMPs . . . . . 4-83
- 4.8.10 BMP A710: Railroad Yards . . . . . 4-85
  - 4.8.10.1 Description of Pollutant Sources . . . . . 4-85
  - 4.8.10.2 Required BMPs . . . . . 4-85
- 4.8.11 BMP A712: Maintenance of Roadside Ditches and Culverts . . . . . 4-86
  - 4.8.11.1 Description of Pollutant Sources . . . . . 4-86
  - 4.8.11.2 Required BMPs . . . . . 4-86
  - 4.8.11.3 Recommended BMPs . . . . . 4-87
- 4.8.12 BMP A714: Spills of Oil and Hazardous Substances . . . . . 4-88
  - 4.8.12.1 Description of Pollutant Sources . . . . . 4-88
  - 4.8.12.2 Required BMPs . . . . . 4-88
  - 4.8.12.3 Recommended BMPs . . . . . 4-89
  - 4.8.12.4 Additional Links . . . . . 4-89
- 4.8.13 BMP A715: Water Reservoir, Transmission Mainline, Wellhead, and Hydrant Flushing Activities . . . . . 4-90
  - 4.8.13.1 Description of Pollutant Sources . . . . . 4-90
  - 4.8.13.2 Required BMPs . . . . . 4-90
  - 4.8.13.3 Recommended BMPs . . . . . 4-90
- 4.8.14 BMP S101: Eliminate Illicit Storm Drainage System Connections . . . . . 4-91
- 4.8.15 BMP S102: Dispose of Contaminated Stormwater and Waste Materials Properly . . . . . 4-92
- 4.8.16 BMP S103: Discharge Process Wastewater to a Sanitary Sewer, Holding Tank, or Water Treatment System . . . . . 4-93
- 4.8.17 BMP S108: Implement Integrated Pest Management Measures . . . . . 4-94
- 4.8.18 BMP S109: Cleaning Catch Basins . . . . . 4-95
- 4.9 Cover and Surround Activities . . . . . 4-96
  - 4.9.1 BMP S104: Cover the Activity with a Roof or Awning . . . . . 4-96
  - 4.9.2 BMP S105: Cover the Activity with an Anchored Tarp or Plastic Sheet . . . . . 4-97
  - 4.9.3 BMP S106: Pave the Activity Area and Slope to a Sump, Holding Tank, or Oil/Water Separator . . . . . 4-98
  - 4.9.4 BMP S107: Surround the Activity Area with a Curb, Dike, or Berm or Elevate the Activity . . . . . 4-99
- Appendix A Quick Reference Phone Numbers . . . . . 4-102**
- Appendix B Recycling/Disposal of Vehicle Fluids and Other Wastes . . . . . 4-103**
- Appendix C Example of an Integrated Pest Management Program . . . . . 4-105**
- Appendix D Management of Street Wastes . . . . . 4-108**
  - D.1 Street Waste Liquids . . . . . 4-108
  - D.2 Street Waste Solids . . . . . 4-109





# Source Control BMPs

## **Purpose of this Volume**

This volume was designed to help businesses, homeowners and public agencies in Tacoma implement source control best management practices (BMPs) to prevent pollutants from contaminating stormwater runoff and entering our rivers, lakes, and streams.

## **Content and Organization of this Volume**

Volume 4 contains five chapters and four appendices.

- Chapter 1 provides an overview of who should use this volume and the type of pollutants being targeted.
- Chapter 2 provides a worksheet for commercial and industrial activity.
- Chapter 3 provides BMPs for single-family residences.
- Chapter 4 provides BMPs for commercial and industrial activities.
- Appendix A provides a list of phone numbers for related agencies.
- Appendix B lists recommended management procedures for the handling of hazardous wastes.
- Appendix C provides an example of an Integrated Pest Management program.
- Appendix D provides recommendations for the management of street wastes.

# Chapter 1 Frequently Asked Questions

## 1.1 Applicability

The implementation of BMPs applies to all businesses, residences and public agencies in Tacoma.

## 1.2 Pollutants of Concern

The City is required to show progress in eliminating virtually all non-stormwater discharges to the storm drainage system. Only uncontaminated stormwater may be discharged to the City of Tacoma storm drainage system. Illicit discharges, intentional or unintentional, are not allowed and polluters may be subject to state and federal penalties. It is the property owner's responsibility to keep pollutants from leaving a property and entering the City storm drainage system.

Pollutants can be placed into several broad categories, as listed below.

### 1.2.1 pH

The pH value of a substance is a relative measure of whether it is acidic or basic. Most aquatic species can only survive in neutral conditions. Sources that can contribute to a change in pH of stormwater and waterbodies include cement in concrete pouring, paving, and recycling operations; solutions from metal plating; chemicals from printing businesses and other industrial processes; and household cleaners such as bleaches and deck washes.

### 1.2.2 Total Suspended Solids

This represents particulate solids such as eroded soil, heavy metal precipitates, and biological solids which can cause sedimentation in streams and turbidity in receiving surface waters. Sediments can destroy the desired habitat for fish and can impact drinking water supplies. Sediment may be carried to streams, lakes, or Puget Sound where they may be toxic to aquatic life and destroy habitat.

### 1.2.3 Oils and Greases

Oils and greases can be either petroleum-based or food-related sources. Petroleum-based compounds can be immediately toxic to fish and wildlife, and can destroy our drinking water aquifers. Food-based oils and greases can coat fish gills and insects, suffocating them. Oils and greases can clog conveyance systems, which may cause flooding.

### 1.2.4 Oxygen-demanding Substances

Degradable organic matter, such as yard, food, and pet wastes, and some chemical wastes, can have a drastic effect on water quality. These substances, when broken down by bacteria, consume the oxygen in the water. This stresses and can eventually kill fish and other creatures in the water.



### **1.2.5 Metals**

Metals are utilized in many products important to our daily lives. Certain metals, known as heavy metals, wear off of our car brakes and tires, and come from the paint and moss-killing roof strips and herbicides we use at our homes. These metals can cause severe health and reproductive problems in fish and animals that live in water. Metals can be transported on sediments to waterbodies.

### **1.2.6 Bacteria and Viruses**

Bacteria and viruses from pet wastes, failing septic systems and agricultural areas can contaminate drinking water and close down swimming and shellfish areas. A group of bacteria called fecal coliform bacteria are typically used as the indicators for all bacteria and viruses, so large amounts of fecal coliform may indicate serious problems.

### **1.2.7 Nutrients**

In the context of water quality, nutrients are mainly compounds of nitrogen and phosphorus. When nutrients are allowed to enter waterbodies, undesirable effects such as algae overgrowth, oxygen depletion, channel clogging due to overgrowth of vegetation, and fish and animal death can occur. Sources of nutrients can include fertilizers, failing septic systems, and yard and animal wastes.

### **1.2.8 Toxic Organic Compounds**

A number of organic chemicals are just plain toxic when they get into the aquatic environment. Pesticides, herbicides, rodenticides, and fungicides are deadly to aquatic life. Compounds such as antifreeze, wood preservatives, cleansers, and a host of other, more exotic organics derived from industries or past practices (such as polychlorinated biphenyls (PCBs), DDT, and chlordane) can also have detrimental effects on the environment.

### **1.2.9 Other Chemicals and Substances**

There are a host of other chemicals that can cause problems if allowed to enter the aquatic environment. Common household bleach can be deadly to fish and other critters if drained directly to waterbodies. Diatomaceous earth backwash from swimming pool filters can clog gills and suffocate fish. Arsenic has been used in rat and mole killing compounds. Even those compounds classified as biodegradable or environmentally friendly can have immediate devastating effects on aquatic life.

## **1.3 Types of Source Control BMPs**

As the name implies, source control BMPs prevent contamination from entering stormwater runoff by controlling them at the source. There are two categories of source control BMPs:

- Operational BMPs
- Structural BMPs

### **1.3.1 Operational BMPs**

Operational source control BMPs are considered to be the most cost effective pollutant minimization practices. Operational source control BMPs are non-structural practices that prevent or reduce pollutants from entering stormwater. They can also include process changes such as raw material/product changes and recycling wastes.

Examples include:

- Formation of a pollution prevention team
- Good housekeeping practices
- Preventive maintenance procedures
- Spill prevention and cleanup
- Employee training
- Inspections of pollutant sources
- Record keeping

### **1.3.2 Structural BMPs**

Structural source control BMPs are physical, structural or mechanical devices or facilities that are intended to prevent pollutants from entering stormwater.

Examples of structural source control BMPs typically include:

- Enclosing and/or covering the pollutant source, i.e., within a building or other enclosure, a roof over storage and working areas, a temporary tarp
- Physically segregating the pollutant source to prevent run-on of uncontaminated stormwater
- Devices that direct only contaminated stormwater to appropriate treatment BMPs, i.e. discharge to a sanitary sewer if allowed by the local sewer utility.

## Chapter 2 Worksheet for Commercial and Industrial Activities

This worksheet is designed for use by business and industry operators. Complete the entire worksheet by checking the appropriate boxes for all activities that take place at the work site. If any of the activities as being performed outdoors, use the activity code on the worksheet to find the recommended BMPs contained in Chapter 4.

Activity Code (BMP)	Type of Activity	Are you involved in this? If so, check if it occurs:	
		Indoors <sup>a</sup>	Outdoors <sup>b</sup>
<b>SECTION A1 - CLEANING AND WASHING ACTIVITIES</b>			
A101	Cleaning or Washing of Tools, Engines, and Manufacturing Equipment – includes parts washers and all types of manufactured equipment components.		
A102	Cleaning or Washing of Cooking Equipment – includes vents, filters, pots and pans, grills, and related items.		
A103	Washing, Pressure Washing, and Steam Cleaning of Vehicles/ Equipment/Building Structures – covers cleaning and washing at all types of establishments, including fleet vehicle yards, car dealerships, car washes, and maintenance facilities.		
A104	Collection and Disposal of Wastewater from Mobile Interior Washing Operations – includes carpet cleaners, upholstery cleaners, and drapery cleaners.		
<b>SECTION A2 - TRANSFERS OF LIQUID OR SOLID MATERIALS</b>			
A201	Loading and Unloading Areas for Liquid or Solid Material – for loading and unloading of materials at industrial and commercial facilities		
A202	Fueling at Dedicated Stations – includes gas stations, pumps at fleet vehicle yards or shops, and other privately owned pumps.		
A203	Vehicle Maintenance Activities – covers oil changes and other engine fluids.		
A204	Mobile Fueling of Vehicles and Heavy Equipment – includes fleet fueling, wet fueling, and wet hosing		
<b>SECTION A3 - PRODUCTION AND APPLICATION ACTIVITIES</b>			
A301	Concrete and Asphalt Mixing and Production at Stationary Sites – applies to mixing of raw materials on-site to produce concrete or asphalt.		
A302	Concrete Pouring, Concrete Cutting, and Asphalt Application at Temporary Sites – includes construction sites, and driveway and parking lot resurfacing.		
A303	Manufacturing and Post-processing of Metal Products – includes machining, grinding, soldering, cutting, welding, quenching, rinsing, etc.		
A304	Wood Treatment Areas – includes wood treatment using pressure processes or by dipping or spraying.		
A305	Commercial Composting – includes commercial composting facilities operating outside.		

Activity Code (BMP)	Type of Activity	Are you involved in this? If so, check if it occurs:	
		Indoors <sup>a</sup>	Outdoors <sup>b</sup>
A306	Landscaping and Lawn/Vegetation Maintenance, Including Vegetation Removal, Herbicide and Insecticide Application, Fertilizer Application, Irrigation, Watering, Gardening, and Lawn Care – includes businesses involved in landscaping, applying pesticides and managing vegetation.		
A307	Painting, Finishing, and Coating of Vehicles, Boats, Buildings, and Equipment – includes surface preparation and the applications of paints, finishes, and/or coatings.		
A308	Commercial Printing Operations – includes materials used in the printing process.		
A309	Manufacturing Activities (Outside) - includes outdoor manufacturing areas.		
<b>SECTION A4 - STORAGE ACTIVITIES</b>			
A401	Storage or Transfer (Outside) of Solid Raw Materials, By-products, or Finished Products		
A402	Storage and Treatment of Contaminated Soils – applies to contaminated soils that are excavated and left on-site.		
A403	Temporary Storage or Processing of Fruits or Vegetables – includes processing activities at wineries, fresh and frozen juice makers, and other food and beverage processing operations.		
A404	Storage of Solid Wastes and Food Wastes – includes regular garbage and all other discarded non-liquid items.		
A405	Recyclers and Scrap Yards – includes scrapped equipment, vehicles, empty metal drums, and assorted recyclables.		
A406	Treatment, Storage, or Disposal of Dangerous Wastes – Refer to Ecology and the Tacoma-Pierce County Health Department for more information, see Chapter 6.		
A407	Storage of Liquid, Food Waste, or Dangerous Waste Containers – includes containers located outside a building and used for temporary storage		
A408	Storage of Liquids in Permanent Above-ground Tanks – includes all liquids in above-ground tanks		
A409	Parking and Storage for Vehicles and Equipment – includes public and commercial parking lots		
<b>SECTION A5 - CONSTRUCTION ACTIVITIES</b>			
A501	Clearing, Grading, and Preparation of Construction Sites – applies to land developing activities and to residential yard clearing and grading projects.		
A502	Demolition of Buildings – applies to removal of existing buildings and subsequent clearing of the rubble.		
A503	Building Repair, Remodeling, and Construction – applies to construction of buildings, general exterior building repair work and remodeling of buildings.		
<b>SECTION A6 - DUST CONTROL AND SOIL AND SEDIMENT CONTROL</b>			
A601	Dust Control at Disturbed Land Areas and Unpaved Roadways and Parking Lots		

Activity Code (BMP)	Type of Activity	Are you involved in this? If so, check if it occurs:	
		Indoors <sup>a</sup>	Outdoors <sup>b</sup>
A602	Dust Control at Manufacturing Sites – includes grain dust, sawdust, coal, gravel, crushed rock, cement, and boiler fly ash.		
A603	Soil Erosion and Sediment Control at Industrial Sites – includes industrial activities that take place on soil.		
<b>SECTION A7 - OTHER ACTIVITIES</b>			
A701	Commercial Animal Handling Areas – includes kennels, fenced pens, veterinarians, and businesses that board animals		
A702	Log Sorting and Handling – applies to log yards typically located at sawmills, ports, and pulp mills.		
A703	Boat building, Mooring, Maintenance, and Repair – includes all types of maintenance, repair, and building operations.		
A704	Logging – applies to logging activities that fall under Class IV general forest practices.		
A705	Mining and Quarrying of Sand, Gravel, Minerals, Peat, Clay, Rock, and Other Materials – does not include excavation at construction sites.		
A706	Swimming Pool and Spa Cleaning and Maintenance – includes every swimming pool and spa not at a single family residence. Commercial pool cleaners are included here for all pools.		
A707	Deicing and Anti-icing Operations for Airports and Streets - includes aircraft, runways/taxiways, streets and highways.		
A708	Roof and Building Drains at Manufacturing and Commercial Buildings – These sites will be referred to the Puget Sound Clean Air Agency.		
A709	Urban Streets – includes recommended BMPs.		
A710	Railroad Yards		
A711	Maintenance of Public and Private Utility Corridors and Facilities – includes public and private utility maintenance activities.		
A712	Maintenance of Roadside Ditches		
A713	Maintenance of Stormwater Drainage and Treatment Facilities		
A714	Spills of Oil and Hazardous Substances		
A715	Water Reservoir, Transmission Mainline, Wellhead, and Hydrant Flushing Activities		
<b>SECTION S1 - SOURCE CONTROL BMPs</b>			
S101	Eliminate Illicit Sewer to Storm Drainage System Connections		
S102	Dispose of Contaminated Stormwater and Waste Materials Properly		
S103	Discharge Process Wastewater to a Sanitary Sewer, Holding Tank, or Water Treatment System		
S104	Cover the Activity with a Roof or Awning		

Activity Code (BMP)	Type of Activity	Are you involved in this? If so, check if it occurs:	
		Indoors <sup>a</sup>	Outdoors <sup>b</sup>
S105	Cover the Activity with an Anchored Tarp or Plastic Sheet		
S106	Pave the Activity Area and Slope to a Sump or Holding Tank, or Oil/Water Separator		
S107	Surround the Activity Area with a Curb, Dike, or Berm or Elevate the Activity		
S108	Implement Integrated Pest Management Measures		
S109	Cleaning Catch Basins		

a. If any of these activities occur indoors, then BMPs are not required, provided no indoor drains or processes can ultimately contact stormwater or be transported to surface waters such as rivers, lakes and streams. Ensure that liquids, powders, dusts and fine granular materials stay confined indoors. Otherwise BMPs will be required.

b. If any of these activities occur outdoors, then use the activity code to find the appropriate BMPs described in Chapter 4.

## Chapter 3 BMPs for Homeowners

Actions taken each day in and around homes have a profound effect on surface water quality and fish habitat in this region. Stormwater goes directly to lakes, streams and to Puget Sound. Stormwater does not go to the wastewater treatment plant. Any pollutants that get into the stormwater go directly to surface water. Small amounts of pollution from many different sources can significantly affect our waterways. Yard maintenance, waste storage, car washing and maintenance, and pool cleaning are some of the activities that can adversely impact water quality. The best management practices (BMPs) discussed in this section are practical ways to keep stormwater from becoming polluted in the first place. It is recommended that all residents in Tacoma use these BMPs. Please note that some of these procedures are required by various state, or city laws, and are noted as required BMPs.

A general list of best management practices (BMPs) for homeowners is described in this chapter. Some of the BMPs described in Chapter 4 may also be applicable to homeowners.

- Section 3.1 – Automobile Washing
- Section 3.2 – Automobile Maintenance
- Section 3.3 – Storage of Solid Wastes and Food Wastes
- Section 3.4 – Composting
- Section 3.5 – Yard Maintenance and Gardening
- Section 3.6 – Swimming Pool and Spa Cleaning and Maintenance
- Section 3.7 – Household Hazardous Material Use, Storage, and Disposal
- Section 3.8 – General Home Maintenance

### 3.1 Automobile Washing (for Single-Family Residences)

Car washing at home will cause washwater to enter the storm system and flow untreated into surface waters. Soaps and detergents, even the biodegradable ones, can have immediate and long-term effects.

#### 3.1.1 Required BMPs

Engine degreasing or washing of internal engine components is not permitted at home. Take car to a commercial car wash that allows engine washing.

#### 3.1.2 Suggested BMPs

The best option is to take cars to a commercial car wash that has a recycle system and discharges wastewater to the sanitary system for treatment. If this option is not feasible, use the suggested BMPs below.

##### 3.1.2.1 At Home:

- Wash cars directly over lawn areas or make sure the wash water drains to a vegetated area.
- Ideally, no soaps or detergents should be used, but if one is used, select one without phosphates.
- Consider using commercial products that allow cleaning a vehicle without water.
- Use a hose nozzle with a shut-off valve to save water.

- Do not wash cars if rain is expected.
- Pour the bucket of soapy, dirty washwater down your sink.

### 3.1.2.2 Away from Home:

- Go to fundraising car washes where sponsors use Tacoma's Clean Bay Car Wash loaner kits. Look for the Clean Bay Car Wash logo. Use a Clean Bay Car Wash loaner kit. If your group is planning a car wash in Tacoma, call 253-502-2220 or refer to the City of Tacoma website to reserve a Clean Bay Car Wash loaner kit.

## 3.2 Automobile Maintenance

### 3.2.1 Required BMPs

- Recycle all oils, antifreeze, solvents, and batteries. Many local car parts dealers and gas stations accept used oil. The Household Hazardous Waste facility at the Tacoma Landfill accepts oil, oil filters, antifreeze, and solvents. Old batteries can actually be worth money. Recycle old batteries at battery shops or the Tacoma Landfill.
- Never dump new or used automotive fluids or solvents on the ground, in a storm drain or street gutter, or in a waterbody.
- Do not mix wastes. Always keep your wastes in separate containers which are properly labeled and store them under cover.
- Household Hazardous Waste cannot be disposed of with regular garbage. Contact the City of Tacoma Household Hazardous Waste Facility at 253.591.5418 or go to [www.cityoftacoma.org/solidwaste](http://www.cityoftacoma.org/solidwaste) for additional information.

### 3.2.2 Suggested BMPs

- Fix all leaks, to keep the leaky material off the streets and out of the surface water.
- To dispose of oil filters:
  - Punch a hole in the top and let drain into a plastic container for at least 24 hours.
  - Once the filter is drained, wrap the filter in 2 layers of plastic and dispose of it in your regular garbage. The used motor oil may not be disposed of with household garbage.OR
  - Recycle the used oil filter by taking it to the Tacoma Landfill, Household Hazardous Waste facility.

**NOTE:** The used oil shall be recycled at an approved facility and cannot be disposed of with your regular garbage.

- Use care in draining and collecting antifreeze to prevent accidental spills. Spilled antifreeze can be deadly to cats and dogs that ingest it.
- A tarp, ground cloth, sheet of cardboard, drip pans, or other materials to contain drips must be used beneath the vehicle or equipment to capture all spills and drips. Keep a bag of kitty litter on hand to absorb any spills. Sprinkle a layer on the spill, let it absorb and sweep it up. Dispose of the contaminated litter in the regular garbage in a tied plastic bag. Do not leave kitty litter out in the rain.
- If body work is performed outside, be sure to use a tarp to catch material resulting from grinding, sanding, and painting. Dispose of this waste by double bagging in plastic and placing in garbage.



### **3.3 Storage of Solid Wastes and Food Wastes**

Improper storage of food and solid waste at residences can lead not only to water pollution problems, but problems with neighborhood pets and vermin as well.

#### **3.3.1 Required BMPs**

- City of Tacoma residents shall use the City of Tacoma Solid Waste Management waste containers. These containers should have lids. If the lid is damaged, please call Tacoma Solid Waste Management at 253-591-5543 to get the lid repaired or replaced.
- Leaking waste containers should be replaced. If the container is damaged, please call Tacoma Solid Waste Management at 253-591-5543.

#### **3.3.2 Suggested BMPs**

- Store waste containers under cover if possible, or on grassy areas.
- Use the Tacoma Call-2-Haul program to pick up bulky materials and excess waste material. Call 253-573-2468 for more information and details, or to set up an appointment for waste pickup.
- Inspect the storage area regularly to pick up loose scraps of material and dispose of them properly.
- Recycle as much as you can. Tacoma offers curbside recycling. Also, look under "Recycling" in the phone book for firms which take other recyclables.
- Purchase products which have the least amount of packaging materials.
- Compost biodegradable materials such as grass clippings and vegetable scraps instead of throwing them away. Call Tacoma Solid Waste Utility Recycling and Composting at 253-565-5955 for more information on composting. See the section on Composting for BMPs relating to that activity.
- An alternative to traditional composting is worm composting. For more information on getting started with worm composting, call the number listed above.

### **3.4 Composting**

Composting is an earth-friendly activity as long as the rules outlined below are followed. The following BMPs are applicable to composting.

#### **3.4.1 Required BMPs**

- Locate compost piles on an unpaved area that is not subject to stormwater runoff or runoff; that is not prone to water ponding during storms; and well away from wetlands, streams, lakes and other drainage ways.

#### **3.4.2 Suggested BMPs**

- Compost piles must be maintained and turned over regularly to work properly. Large piles of unattended compost may create odor and vermin problems.
- Do not put hazardous or non-decomposable waste in the pile.
- Cover the compost pile for two reasons:
  - To keep stormwater from washing nutrients into waterways.

- To keep excess water from cooling down the pile, which will slow down the rate of decomposition.
- Build bins of wood, chicken wire, or fencing material to contain compost so it can't be washed away. Call Tacoma Solid Waste Utility Recycling and Composting at 253-565-5955 to get free composter designs and materials lists.
- Building a small earthen dike around a compost pile is an effective means of preventing nutrient-rich compost drainage from reaching stormwater paths.

### **3.5 Yard Maintenance and Gardening**

This section deals with the normal yard maintenance activities typically performed at residences. Overwatering, overfertilizing, improper herbicide application, and improper disposal of trimmings and clippings can all contribute to serious water pollution problems. Following the BMPs listed below will help alleviate pollutant runoff.

#### **3.5.1 Required BMPs**

- Follow the manufacturer's directions exactly for mixing and applying herbicides, fungicides, and pesticides, and use them sparingly. Never apply when it is windy or when rain is expected. Never apply over water, within 100 feet of a well-head, or adjacent to streams, wetlands, or other waterbodies. Triple-rinse empty containers, using the rinsate for mixing your next batch of spray, and then double-bag and dispose of the empty container in your regular garbage.
- Never dispose of grass clippings or other vegetation in or near storm drains, streams, lakes, or Puget Sound.
- Make sure all fertilizers and pesticides are stored in a covered location.

#### **3.5.2 Suggested BMPs**

- Use natural, organic soil amendments like Tacoma's TAGRO Mix. TAGRO Mix is a 100% recycled blend of de-watered, Class A, "Exceptional Quality" biosolids, mixed with sawdust and sand.
- Use an integrated pest management program (IPM), which is a natural, long-term, ecologically based approach to controlling pest populations. See Section 4.4.6 and Appendix C – Example of an Integrated Best Management Program.
- Save water and prevent pollution problems by watering lawns sensibly. Lawns and gardens typically need the equivalent of 1-inch of rainfall per week. Put a wide mouth jar out where watering is occurring, and measure the water with a small plastic ruler. Overwatering to the point of runoff can carry polluting nutrients to the nearest waterbody.
- Consider planting a vegetated buffer zone adjacent to streams or other water bodies. Call the Pierce County Conservation District at 253-845-2973 for advice and assistance in developing a planting plan.
- Reduce the need for pesticides and fertilizers on lawns by improving the health of the soil. Aerating, thatching, and topdressing with compost will improve soil health and help wanted grasses compete with weeds and moss.
- Use a mulching mower and mow higher to improve soil/grass health and reduce or eliminate pesticide use.
- Compost all yard clippings, or use them as mulch to save water and keep down weeds in your garden. See Section 3.4 for more information.

- Practice organic gardening and virtually eliminate the need to use pesticides and fertilizers. Contact Pierce County Cooperative Extension at 253-591-7180 or the Ask-A-Master Gardener program at 253-591-7170 for information and classes on earth-friendly gardening.
- Pull weeds instead of spraying and get some healthy exercise, too. If you must spray, use the least toxic formulations that will get the job done. The Master Gardener program listed above can help advise you on which spray to use.
- Work fertilizers into the soil instead of letting them lie on the ground surface exposed to the next rain storm.
- Plant vegetation suited to Northwest conditions because they require less water and fewer to no fertilizers and pesticides.
- Tacoma has a curbside yard waste recycling program. Call 253-565-5955 for more information.

### **3.6 Swimming Pool and Spa Cleaning and Maintenance**

Despite the fact that we immerse ourselves in it, the water from pools and spas is far from chemically clean. Nutrients, pH, and chlorine can adversely affect fish and wildlife in waterbodies. Following these BMPs will ensure the cleanliness of your pool and the environment.

#### **3.6.1 Required BMPs**

- Pool and spa water must be dechlorinated if it is to be emptied into a ditch, on the ground or a lawn, or to the storm drainage system. The discharges shall be dechlorinated to a concentration of 0.1 ppm or less, pH-adjusted and reoxygenated if necessary, and volumetrically and velocity controlled to prevent resuspension of sediments in the stormwater system. Contact a pool chemical supplier to obtain the neutralizing chemicals needed. The rate of flow into the ditch or drainage system must be regulated so that it does not cause problems such as erosion, surcharging, or flooding. Water discharged to the ground or a lawn must not cross property lines and must not produce runoff.
- Swimming pool cleaning wastewater and filter backwash shall not be discharged to the MS4.
- If pool and spa water cannot be dechlorinated, it must be discharged to the sanitary sewer. Prior to draining a pool or spa, notify the local wastewater treatment plant to ensure they are aware of the volume of discharge and the potential effects of chlorine levels. A pool service company can help determine the frequency of cleaning and backwash of filters.
- Diatomaceous earth used in pool filters cannot be disposed of in surface waters, on the ground, or into storm drainage systems or septic systems. Dry it out as much as possible, bag it in plastic, and dispose of at the landfill.

#### **3.6.2 Suggested BMPs**

- Hire a professional pool service company to collect all pool water for proper disposal. Make sure to ask where the water will be disposed of and ensure the proper permits have been obtained.

## **3.7 Household Hazardous Material Use, Storage, and Disposal**

Oil-based paints and stains, paint thinner, gasoline, charcoal starter fluid, cleaners, waxes, pesticides, fingernail polish remover, and wood preservatives are just a few hazardous materials typically used in a residential setting.

When hazardous materials are dumped on the ground or in a storm drain, they can be washed directly to receiving waters where fish and wildlife can be harmed. Hazardous materials can also infiltrate into the ground and contaminate drinking water supplies.

With such a diversity of hazardous products present in all homes in Tacoma, a large potential for serious environmental harm exists if improper methods of storage, usage, and disposal are employed. Using the following BMPs will help keep these materials out of soils, sediments, and waters.

### **3.7.1 Required BMPs**

- Hazardous materials must be stored out of the reach of children.
- Dispose of hazardous materials and their containers properly. Never dump products labeled as poisonous, corrosive, caustic, flammable, inflammable, volatile, explosive danger, warning, caution, or dangerous outdoors, in a storm drain, or into sinks, toilets, drains or septic systems. Call the Household Hazardous Waste Facility at 253-591-5418 or the Hazardous Waste Line at 1-800-287-6429 for information on disposal methods, collection events, and alternative products. Household hazardous wastes from City of Tacoma residents are accepted at the Tacoma Landfill.
- Store hazardous materials containers under cover and off the ground. Keep them out of the weather to avoid rusting, freezing, cracking, labels being washed off, etc.

### **3.7.2 Suggested BMPs**

- Check hazardous material containers frequently for signs of leakage. If a container is rusty and has the potential of leaking soon, place it in a secondary container before the leak occurs and prevent a clean-up problem.
- Keep appropriate spill cleanup materials on hand. Kitty litter is good for many oil-based spills.
- Ground cloths and drip pans must be used under any work outdoors which involves hazardous materials such as oil-based paints, stains, rust removers, masonry cleaners, and others bearing label warnings as outlined above.
- Latex paints are not a hazardous waste, but are not accepted in liquid form at the landfill. To dispose, leave uncovered in a protected place until dry, then place in the garbage. If you wish to dry waste paint quickly, just pour kitty litter in the can to absorb the paint. Once paint is dry, leave the lid off when you place it in the garbage so the garbage collector can see that it is no longer liquid.
- Use less toxic products whenever possible. The Hazardous Waste Line at 1-800-287-6429 and the Washington Toxics Coalition at 206-632-1545 have information detailing alternatives to toxic products.
- If an activity involving the use of a hazardous material can be moved indoors out of the weather, then do so. Make sure proper ventilation is provided.

- Follow manufacturers' directions in the use of all materials. Over-application of yard chemicals, for instance, can result in the washing of these compounds into receiving waterbodies. Never apply pesticides when rain is expected.
- When hazardous materials are in use, place the container inside a tub or bucket to minimize spills.
- Purchase only the amount of product that's needed.

### **3.8 General Home Maintenance**

This section deals with the normal maintenance activities typically performed in residential settings. Following the BMPs listed below will help alleviate pollutant runoff.

#### **3.8.1 Required BMPs**

- Pressure washing of building facades, rooftops, pavement, and other large objects must be conducted in such a way that all of the runoff is collected for proper disposal. No runoff shall leave the site. Temporary curbs, dikes, or berms may be used to direct the water away from storm drains. Water should be directed to the sanitary system or directed to an area where it can evaporate. Debris generated from pressure washing must be swept and disposed as solid waste.

#### **3.8.2 Suggested BMPs**

- Carpet cleaning wash water must be disposed of to the sanitary sewer. It is preferred that the dirty wash water be discharged into a toilet or mop sink at the place where it was generated.
- Clean brushes and tools coated with non-water-based paints, finishes, or other materials in a manner that allow collection of used solvents (e.g. paint thinner, turpentine, xylol, etc.) for proper disposal at a Household Hazardous Waste Facility. Call the Household Hazardous Waste Facility at 253-591-5418 or the Hazardous Waste Line at 1-800-287-6429 for information on disposal methods, collection events, and alternative products. Household hazardous wastes from City of Tacoma residents are accepted at the Tacoma Landfill.

## 3.9 Pet Waste

Pets can generate pollutants from pet waste, animal washing, and cage or kennel cleaning. Pollutants include bacteria which can pollute water ways and make people sick. To prevent pet waste pollutants from entering the storm drains, follow the BMPs listed below.

### 3.9.1 Required BMPs

- Regularly scoop, sweep and clean up pet waste deposited on walks and at home. Dispose of pet waste in the garbage or flush it down the toilet. Kitty litter shall not be flushed down a toilet. Dispose of it with garbage.
- When cleaning out cages and kennels, wash directly over lawn areas or make sure the wash water drains to a vegetated area. Alternately, dispose of the wash water down the toilet or a mop sink.
- Do not dispose of unused pet pharmaceuticals in a storm drain, flush down a toilet, or wash down a sink. Visit [www.takebackyourmeds.com](http://www.takebackyourmeds.com) for a list of locations that take back unused pharmaceuticals.
- Refer to BMP A701: Commercial Animal Handling Areas for kennels, boarding areas, veterinarians, etc.

## Chapter 4 BMPs for Commercial and Industrial Activities

This chapter coordinates with the worksheet completed in Chapter 2. That worksheet and the BMPs are organized by the different activities that businesses perform. If the listed activity is performed indoors and all discharges from the activity are controlled (e.g., process water, wash water, lubricants, solvents, fugitive dust, granular material, blowdown waste, etc.) such that no exposure to stormwater occurs, then no new BMPs for that activity are required. However, if the column for activities performed outdoors was checked, match the number from the worksheet to the activities listed in this section to find the BMPs suggested.

Contact the City of Tacoma Source Control Unit at 253-591-5588 for more information or technical assistance. Assistance can be provided over the phone or at on-site consultations.

**Every person/business in Tacoma is required to use BMPs as outlined in this manual.** Utilizing additional BMPs to further protect water quality is encouraged.

Some businesses are or will be required to obtain a National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (NPDES) permit for stormwater discharges. These permits are issued and regulated by the Washington State Department of Ecology.

There are several BMPs contained in this chapter that may also apply to residences and other non-commercial or non-industrial sites.

### 4.1 BMPs To Consider for all Activities

Some common best management practices that should be considered for all activities include:

- Avoid the activity or reduce its occurrence.
- Move the activity indoors if possible.
- Clean up spills quickly.
- Use less material.
- Use the least toxic materials available.
- Create and maintain vegetated areas near activity locations.
- Locate activities as far as possible from surface drainage paths.
- Keep storm drain systems clean.
- Reduce, reuse, and recycle as much as possible.
- Be an advocate for stormwater pollution prevention.
- Report violators to Source Control Unit 253-591-5588.
- Provide oversight and training.
- Sweep or vacuum to control dust and debris.
- Regularly inspect, clean, and repair all facilities and BMPs.

## 4.2 Washing Best Management Practices

**Applicability:** These BMPs encompass washing practices related to various commercial washing activities. Typically, all washwater must be discharged to the sanitary sewer system, collected for off-site disposal, or recycled. Some washing practices may discharge their washwater into nearby landscaped areas or into the stormwater system with proper pretreatment. Table 4 - 1 shows the allowable discharge location for various washing activities. Following the table are required and recommended BMPs for specific washing activities. Below are the required and recommended BMPs that apply to all washing practices.

BMPs for homeowners can be found in Chapter 3.

### Required BMPs for all washing activities:

- Follow Table 4 - 1, "Discharge Options for Businesses" to determine the required discharge location based upon washing activity.
- Illicit connections to the storm drainage system must be eliminated. See BMP S101 for detailed information.
- Employees must be educated to control washing operations to prevent stormwater contamination.
- Follow the Environmental Services Source Control Oil Water Separator Policy for Discharges to Sanitary Sewer as appropriate. The policy is available at [www.cityoftacoma.org/stormwater](http://www.cityoftacoma.org/stormwater).
- For facilities with a dedicated wash pad, at a minimum the pad must be equipped with a catch basin/sediment trap that discharges through a tee outlet to the sanitary sewer. Discharges to the sanitary sewer system must meet the discharge limits of TMC 12.08 before discharge is allowed. Sampling, testing, and pretreatment of the wastewater may be required to meet limits.
- If any washing of vehicle or equipment that contains oils is to be conducted on the wash pad an oil/water separator will be required. See the Environmental Services Oil Water Separator Policy for Discharges to the Sanitary Sewer at [www.cityoftacoma.org/stormwater](http://www.cityoftacoma.org/stormwater) for additional guidance.
- Contact City of Tacoma Source Control at 253-591-5588 for assistance.

### Recommended BMPs for all washing activities:

- Limit the amount of water used in washing activities.
- Recycle washwater when possible for subsequent washings.
- If soaps and detergents are used, use the least toxic cleaner capable of doing the job. Select non-phosphate detergents when possible.
- Cover and/or contain the cleaning activity inside a building to separate uncontaminated stormwater from the pollutant sources.



**Table 4 - 1: Discharge Options for Businesses<sup>a</sup>**

Item to be Washed	Sanitary Sewer <sup>b</sup>	Collect/Closed-Loop Recycle/Haul	Landscape/Soil <sup>c</sup> No Soaps or Chemicals	Storm Drain No Soaps or Chemicals
<b>Tools, Rental &amp; Construction Equipment, &amp; Machinery</b>	OK	OK	Not Allowed	Not Allowed
Backhoes	OK	OK	Note 2	Not Allowed
Lawn mowers	OK	OK	Note 2	Not Allowed
Cooling towers	OK	OK	Not Allowed	Not Allowed
<b>Cooking Equipment</b>				
Mats	OK	OK	Not Allowed	Not Allowed
Floors				
Exhaust fans & hoods				
<b>Buildings &amp; Structures</b>				
Exteriors/roofs				
Windows	OK	OK	Notes 2 & 3	Notes 2 & 3
HVAC systems				
Sidewalks				
Parking	OK	OK	Not Allowed	Not Allowed
<b>Interiors</b>				
Floor stripping	OK	OK	Not Allowed	Not Allowed
Carpets				
Windows				
<b>Vehicles<sup>d</sup></b>				
New/Used car lots	OK	OK	Notes 1 & 2	Note 2
Golf carts	OK	OK	Notes 1 & 2	Not Allowed
Import/Export equipment	OK	OK	Not Allowed	Not Allowed
Charity car washes	OK	OK	Notes 1 & 2	Not Allowed
RV, truck, auto detailing & engine washing	OK	OK	Not Allowed	Not Allowed
Mobile truck-fleet washers	OK	OK	Not Allowed	Not Allowed
Boats	OK	OK	Not Allowed	Not Allowed

a. These are guidelines only and not meant to be all-inclusive. The City of Tacoma reserves the right to diverge from this, depending upon site-specific conditions.

b. Discharge may require pretreatment per TMC Chapter 12.08.

c. Discharges to the ground may require permission from the Tacoma/Pierce County Health Department if the site is located within the South Tacoma Groundwater Protection District.

d. Specific Guidelines are available for automatic wand and mobile fleet washers. Contact City of Tacoma Source Control at 253-591-5588.

**Note 1:** Meet requirements of WDOE publication WQR 95-56 *Vehicle and Equipment Washwater Discharges*. Solids must be collected and no visible sheen is allowed.

**Note 2:** Cold water only. No detergents or other cleaners may be used.

**Note 3:** No pollutants after pretreatment. Work area must be pre-scraped and/or pre-swept. Please refer to Volume 2, Chapter 3, Standards and Specifications for Best Management Practices (BMPs) for pretreatment BMPs.

### 4.2.1 Cleaning or Washing of Tools, Equipment, and Machinery

**Applicability:** This activity applies to businesses and public agencies that clean manufacturing equipment such as saws, grinders, screens, and other processing devices outside of buildings, and to businesses engaged in pressure washing of engines, equipment, and portable objects.

Pollutant sources include toxic hydrocarbons, organic compounds, oils and greases, nutrients, heavy metals, pH, suspended solids, biochemical oxygen demand (BOD), and chemical oxygen demand (COD).

**Required BMPs** for cleaning or washing of tools, machinery, equipment, and portable objects:

- All washwater shall either:
  - Be discharged to the sanitary sewer,
  - Be temporarily stored before proper disposal, or
  - Be recycled.

See BMP S103: Discharge Process Wastewater to a Sanitary Sewer, Holding Tank, or Water Treatment System for additional information.

- Pressure washing must be conducted in a designated area (such as a permanent or temporary wash pad) provided with some means of capturing the washwater, and stormwater run-on prevention. Permanent wash pads must drain to the sanitary sewer system through an approved pretreatment device. See BMP S106 and S107 for information on sumps (or holding tanks) and run-on prevention

### 4.2.2 Cleaning or Washing of Cooking Equipment

**Applicability:** This activity applies to businesses that clean cooking equipment such as grills, vent filters, exhaust hoods, grease traps, floors and floor mats. Washing the outside of buildings, sidewalks, and paved areas is covered in the Building Structures and Related Equipment section below.

Pollutants of concern consist of pH, oil and grease, nutrients, suspended solids, and biochemical oxygen demand (BOD).

**Required BMPs** for cleaning or washing of cooking equipment:

- Cleaning and washing of cooking equipment shall take place indoors with drainage to the sanitary sewer system, holding tank, or process treatment system or captured using a tub or similar device to contain all the washwater. The washwater shall be recycled or disposed into the sanitary sewer system, holding tank, or process treatment system. Provisions must be in place to neutralize the washwater rinsate prior to discharge to the sanitary sewer system.
- If washing cannot be accomplished indoors, the washing must take place on a pad or be isolated in a way that all washwater drains to the sanitary sewer, holding tank, or process treatment system.
- Washwater shall not be discharged to the storm drainage system.

- Washwater from cleaning roof-top equipment, such as exhaust fans, shall be captured and disposed to the sanitary sewer. Use of wet/dry vacuums, temporary berms or containers, such as plastic pools, are possible ways to capture this water.
- Paved washing areas must be swept daily to collect loose solid materials for proper disposal.
- Greasy buildup on cooking equipment must be removed and properly disposed prior to washing to reduce the amount of material that can potentially contaminate the washwater. Washing must either take place on a wash pad connected to the sanitary sewer, or the wastewater must be collected and disposed in the sanitary sewer.
- See BMP S103 for detailed drainage requirements and BMP S107 for methods of run-on prevention. If connecting a wash area to the sanitary sewer, permits must be obtained from the City of Tacoma by calling the Permit Counter at 253-591-5030.
- If a holding tank is used for storage of washwater, the contents must be pumped out before it is full and disposed properly in an approved manner.

**Recommended BMPs** for cleaning or washing of cooking equipment:

- Discharge greasy washwater to the building's grease interceptor if one is available.
- Install grease protection if none is available.
- If washing must take place outdoors, provide a cover over the designated wash area to keep rain from falling on dirty equipment and producing contaminated runoff.

### **4.2.3 Building Structures and Related Equipment**

**Applicability:** This activity applies to the washing of buildings, roofs, cooling towers, structures, sidewalks, and parking lots with low or high pressure water. This also includes removing graffiti.

Pollutants generated include heavy metals, pH, suspended solids, grit, paint chips, and biochemical oxygen demand (BOD).

**Required BMPs** for washing building structures and related equipment:

**General:**

- Pressure washing of building facades, rooftops, pavement, and other large objects must be conducted in such a way that all of the runoff is collected for proper disposal.
- Washwater shall be discharged to the sanitary sewer system with appropriate pretreatment to remove solids. Sediment removal BMPs include those as described in Volume 2 and include measures such as check dams, sorbent booms, and catch basin inserts. Temporary curbs, dikes, or berms may be needed to direct the washwater to a single collection point. Wet/dry vacuums, run-dry sump pumps, or educators may be used to collect the water for proper disposal to the sanitary sewer system. Discharges to the sanitary sewer system may require obtaining a Special Approved Discharge (SAD) Permit. Contact City of Tacoma Source Control at 253-591-5588 for additional information on SAD permits.
- If runoff does not contain pollutants, following appropriate pretreatment, such as filtration or sedimentation, washwater may be allowed to be discharged to landscaping or the storm drainage system. This may require obtaining a Special Approved Discharge Permit. Contact the City of Tacoma Source Unit at 253-591-5588 for review and approval before commencing washing activities.

**Buildings:**

- Washwater from building washing shall be discharged to the sanitary sewer system with appropriate pretreatment to remove solids. Some ways of capturing the water can be by using tarps with berms, made by wrapping the tarp over pieces of lumber.
- If only cold water is used to remove dirt from a concrete or brick-sided building, this water may be allowed to fall onto a planted area or diverted to landscaping.

**Rooftop Equipment:**

- Washwater from cleaning rooftop equipment, such as exhaust fans and HVAC systems, shall be captured and disposed to the sanitary sewer. Wet/dry vacuums, temporary berms or containers may be used to capture this water.

**Parking Lots:**

- Wastewater generated from washing parking lots shall discharge to the sanitary sewer system. This water must have 50 mg/L or less of total petroleum hydrocarbons before it can be discharged to the sanitary sewer. This may require pretreatment.
- Alternatively, the water can be captured and hauled to a treatment, storage, and disposal facility for proper treatment and disposal.

**Sidewalks:**

- Sweep, shovel, or scrape up large debris and trash before washing.
- If soaps or other cleaning agents are used, the wastewater shall be captured and routed to the sanitary sewer if it meets the discharge requirements of Tacoma Municipal Code Chapter 12.08.
- If using only cold water, the water may be directed to landscaping or to the stormwater system with proper pretreatment. A sediment removal device shall be placed in the gutter line and the receiving catch basin before discharge. See Volume 2 for sediment removal BMPs.

**Graffiti:**

- Wastewater generated from graffiti removal shall be captured and discharged to the sanitary sewer system. Tarps and berms or wet/dry vacuums can be used to capture the washwater. This water must meet City of Tacoma limits per TMC 12.08 before discharge to the sanitary sewer.
- If removing graffiti with a cleaner only, apply sufficient cleaner to do the job. Small areas shall be wiped clean instead of using water for removal.

**4.2.4 Interior Washing Operations**

**Applicability:** This activity applies to businesses that wash floors, carpets, and other interior items on a mobile site-to-site basis. The washing process includes removing wax from floors and may use machines that spray a wash solution onto the carpet or upholstery and suck the dirty solution up into a portable tank with limited capacity.

Pollutants of concern consist of pH, nutrients, suspended solids, organic compounds (such as pesticides and chemicals used for flea and odor control), and biochemical oxygen demand (BOD).

**Required BMPs** for doing mobile interior wash activities:

- Wastewater shall be discharged to a sanitary sewer system at the site of collection. If sanitary sewer disposal is not available or not allowed where the wastewater was generated, the collected wastewater must be returned to the business site for proper treatment and disposal. Contact the local sewer authority for disposal regulations if the place of business is not located within the City of Tacoma.
- Absolutely no wastewater from mobile interior wash activities shall be disposed outdoors, or to a drain connected to the storm drainage system. This point must be made clear to all employees.
- Wastewater from mobile washing operations may be permitted for sanitary sewer disposal if it does not contain high concentrations of toxic materials. Some of the chemicals used for flea and odor control are listed by EPA as toxics. Contact City of Tacoma Source Control at 253-591-5588 if you intend to use and discharge these types of chemicals in your wastewater.
- Carpet cleaning washwater must be disposed to the sanitary sewer, preferably into a toilet or sink at the place where it was generated. Screen the wastewater to protect the customer's drain from plugging. Do not discharge this wastewater to a septic system.

**Recommended BMPs** for doing mobile interior wash activities:

- Limit the amount of water used in interior washing operations. This will save time, money, and effort for proper disposal.

#### **4.2.5 Washing, Pressure Washing and Steam Cleaning of Vehicles**

**Applicability:** This activity includes the washing of vehicles, aircraft, vessels/boats and grocery carts, by low or high pressure water or steam and includes hand washing, scrubbing, sanding, etc. This also includes "charity" car washes at gas stations, religious organizations, and commercial parking lots.

Pollutants of concern from cleaning activities include oil and grease, suspended solids, heavy metals, pH, soluble organics, soaps, and detergents.

**Required BMPs** for washing, pressure washing and steam cleaning vehicles:

**General:**

- Washwater shall be discharged to the sanitary sewer unless otherwise noted below.
- If heavy accumulations of solids are to be removed during washing, then appropriate pretreatment to capture those solids must be provided. Volume 2 contains temporary sediment removal BMPs that can be utilized to capture solids before discharging wastewater to the sanitary sewer system.
- Two-step (acid – alkaline) washing may be allowed at all facilities discharging to the sanitary sewer. Provisions must be in place to neutralize the washwater rinsate prior to discharge to the sanitary sewer system.
- See the City of Tacoma Source Control Policy on Discharges from Vehicle and other Washing Activities for additional information.
- Contact City of Tacoma Source Control at 253-591-5588 for more information.

***New and Used Car Dealer Lots:***

- If washing previously cleaned vehicles is accomplished using **only** cold water (no soaps or detergents used) and consists of washing only the outside of the motor vehicles, discharge to the stormwater system will be allowed and discharge to the sanitary system is prohibited.

- If soaps or detergents are to be used, washing must occur on a dedicated wash pad. Only washing of the outside of the vehicles is permitted unless additional pretreatment is provided

**Other Washing Events:**

- Identify types of washing events and their locations (such as the Tacoma Dome RV show, etc.) and evaluate options on a case-by-case basis according to the discharge criteria stated above.
- Charity car washes shall wash only the exterior of vehicles. If soap is used, the washwater must be captured and directed to the sanitary sewer. For information concerning the use of charity car wash kits, contact the City of Tacoma Community Relations EnviroChallenger staff at 253- 502-2220.

**Automatic and Manual Car Wash:**

- See the City of Tacoma Source Control Policy on Discharges from Vehicle and Other Washing Activities and Policy for Discharges to Sanitary Sewer for additional information.

**RV, Truck, Auto Detailing, and Engine Washing Facilities:**

- Wash on a dedicated pad. See the City of Tacoma Source Control Policy on Discharges from Vehicle and Other Washing Activities and Policy for Discharges to Sanitary Sewer for additional information.

**Boat Washing Facilities:**

- Wash on a dedicated pad. See the City of Tacoma Source Control Policy on Discharges from Vehicle and Other Washing Activities and Policy for Discharges to Sanitary Sewer for additional information.
- For cleaning activities while boats are in the water refer to the Washington State Department of Ecology publication 98-11, *Resource Manual for Pollution Prevention in Marinas*, available at: <http://www.ecy.wa.gov/biblio/9811.html>

**Mobile Vehicle Washers:** This section applies to mobile vehicle and grocery cart washers doing work in the City of Tacoma. Detailed requirements and procedures may be found in The City of Tacoma Source Control Interim Policy for Mobile Vehicle Washers.

- Mobile vehicle washers shall capture all the washwater generated and discharge it to the sanitary sewer system through an on-site cleanout if available. The use of temporary wash pads, catch basin inserts, and vacuum systems are some possible means to capture the washwater. Other requirements may apply depending upon the items to be washed. Only wastewater generated within the City of Tacoma may be discharged into its municipal sewer system.

## 4.3 Transfer of Liquid or Solid Materials

### 4.3.1 BMP A201: Loading and Unloading Areas for Liquid or Solid Material

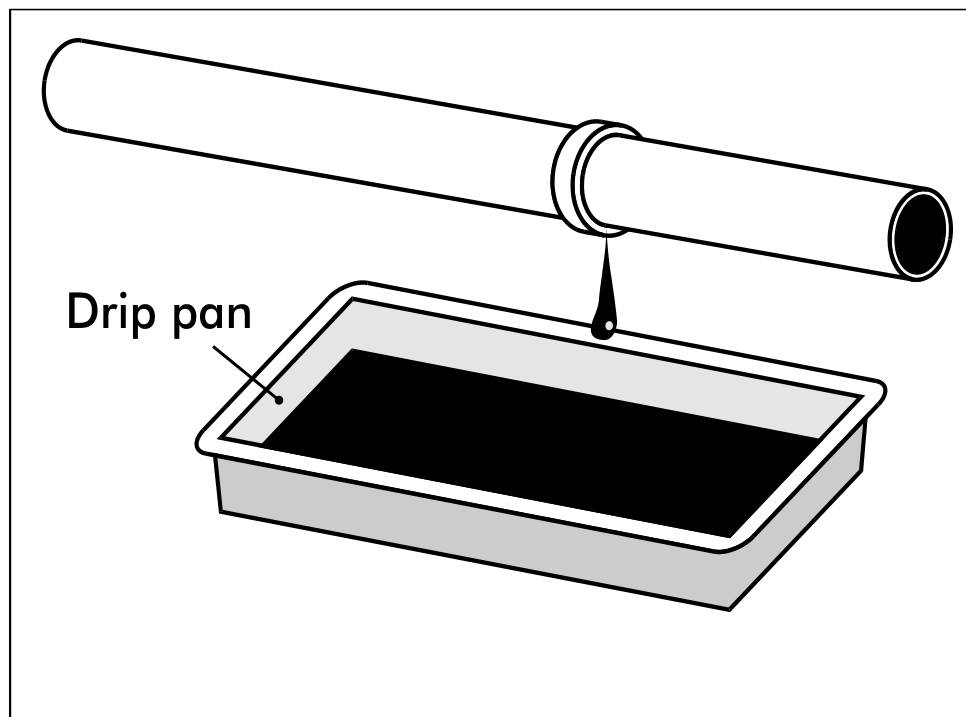
#### 4.3.1.1 Description of Pollutant Sources

Loading/unloading of liquid and solid materials at industrial and commercial facilities is typically conducted at shipping and receiving, outside storage, fueling areas, etc. Materials transferred can include products, raw materials, intermediate products, waste materials, fuels, scrap metals, etc. Leaks and spills of fuels, oils, powders, organics, heavy metals, salts, acids, alkalis, etc. during transfer are potential causes of stormwater contamination. Spills from hydraulic line breaks are a common problem at loading docks.

#### 4.3.1.2 Required BMPs

##### *At All Loading/ Unloading Areas:*

- Sweep loading/unloading areas frequently to remove accumulated material. Vacuum sweeping is also an acceptable method of removing accumulated material.
- Place drip pans or other appropriate temporary containment devices at locations where leaks or spills may occur such as hose connections, hose reels, and filler nozzles. Drip pans shall always be used when making and breaking connections (see Figure 4 - 1). Check loading/unloading equipment such as valves, pumps, flanges, and connections regularly for leaks and repair as needed. Frequent monitoring of drip pans is required to ensure captured materials are not displaced by wind or rainwater.



*Figure 4 - 1. Drip Pan*

- Washing loading/unloading areas must be conducted in such a way that all the runoff is collected for proper disposal. Refer to BMP A103.
- Consistent with Uniform Fire Code requirements and to the extent practicable, conduct unloading or loading of solids and liquids in a manufacturing building or under a roof, lean-to, or other appropriate cover.
- Berm, dike, and/or slope the loading/unloading area to prevent run-on of stormwater and to prevent the runoff or loss of any spilled material from the area.
- Large loading areas frequently are not curbed along the shoreline. As a result, stormwater passes directly off the paved surface into surface water. Place curbs along the edge, or slope the edge such that the stormwater can flow to an internal storm drain system that leads to an approved treatment BMP.
- Pave and slope loading/unloading areas to prevent the pooling of water. The use of catch basins and drain lines within the interior of the paved area must be minimized as they will frequently be covered by material, or they shall be placed in designated "alleyways" that are not covered by material, containers, or equipment.

***At Tanker Truck and Rail Transfer Areas to Above/Below-ground Storage Tanks:***

- To minimize the risk of accidental spillage, prepare an "Operations Plan" that describes procedures for loading/unloading. Train the employees in its execution and post it or otherwise have it readily available to employees.
- Report spills of reportable quantities to Ecology Southwest Regional Office (refer to Chapter 1 for telephone number).
- Prepare and implement an Emergency Spill Cleanup Plan for the facility (BMP A714 Spills of Oil and Hazardous Substances) which includes the following BMPs:
  - Ensure the clean up of liquid/solid spills in the loading/unloading area immediately if a significant spill occurs, upon completion of the loading/unloading activity, or at the end of the working day.
  - Retain and maintain an appropriate oil spill cleanup kit on-site for rapid cleanup of material spills (see BMP A714 Spills of Oil and Hazardous Substances).
  - Ensure that an employee trained in spill containment and cleanup is present during loading/unloading.

***At Rail Transfer Areas to Above/Below-ground Storage Tanks:***

Install a drip pan system as illustrated (see Figure 4 - 2) within the rails to collect spills/leaks from tank cars and hose connections, hose reels, and filler nozzles.

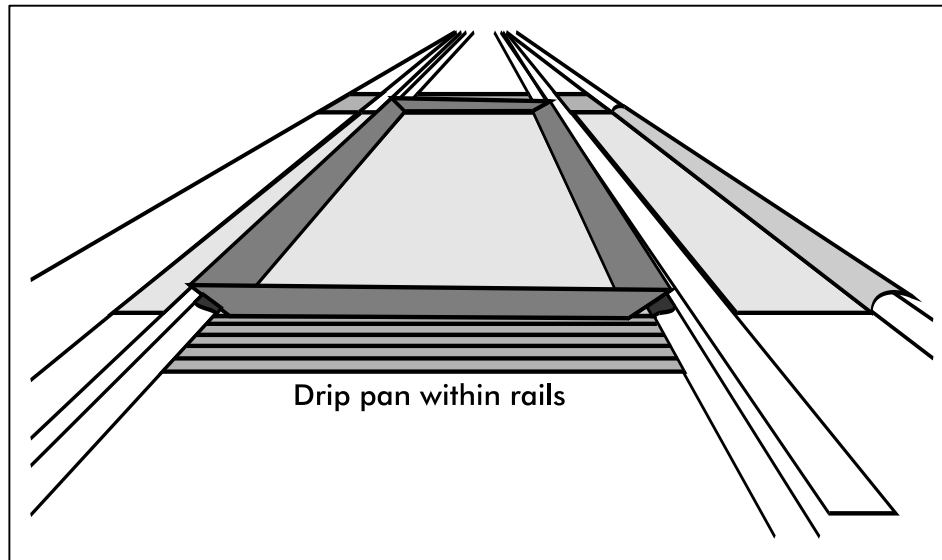
***Loading/Unloading from/to Marine Vessels:***

Facilities and procedures for the loading or unloading of petroleum products must comply with Coast Guard requirements.

***Transfer of Small Quantities from Tanks and Containers:***

Refer to BMPs A408 Storage of Liquids in Permanent Above-Ground Tanks and A407 Storage of Liquid, Food Waste, or Dangerous Waste Containers for requirements on the transfer of small quantities from tanks and containers, respectively.





*Figure 4 - 2. Drip Pan Within Rails*

#### **4.3.1.3 Recommended BMPs:**

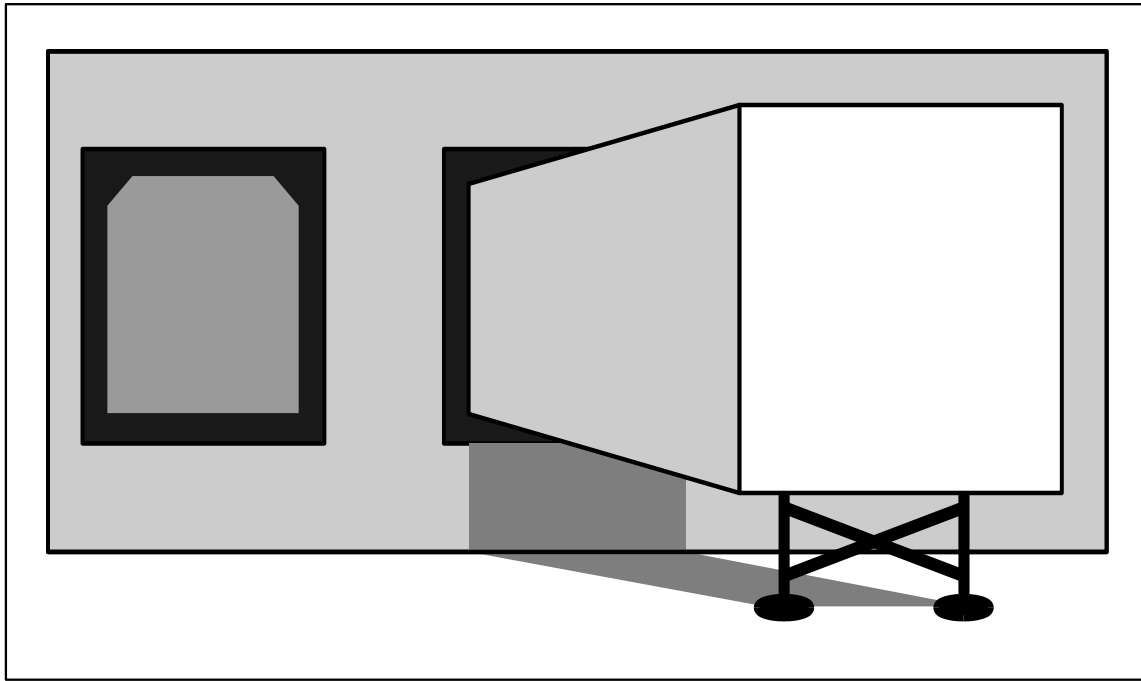
- Install an automatic shutoff system in the product transfer lines or other location that will minimize the release of product in the event of unanticipated off-loading interruption (e.g. coupling break, hose rupture, overfill, etc.).

#### ***At Loading and Unloading Docks:***

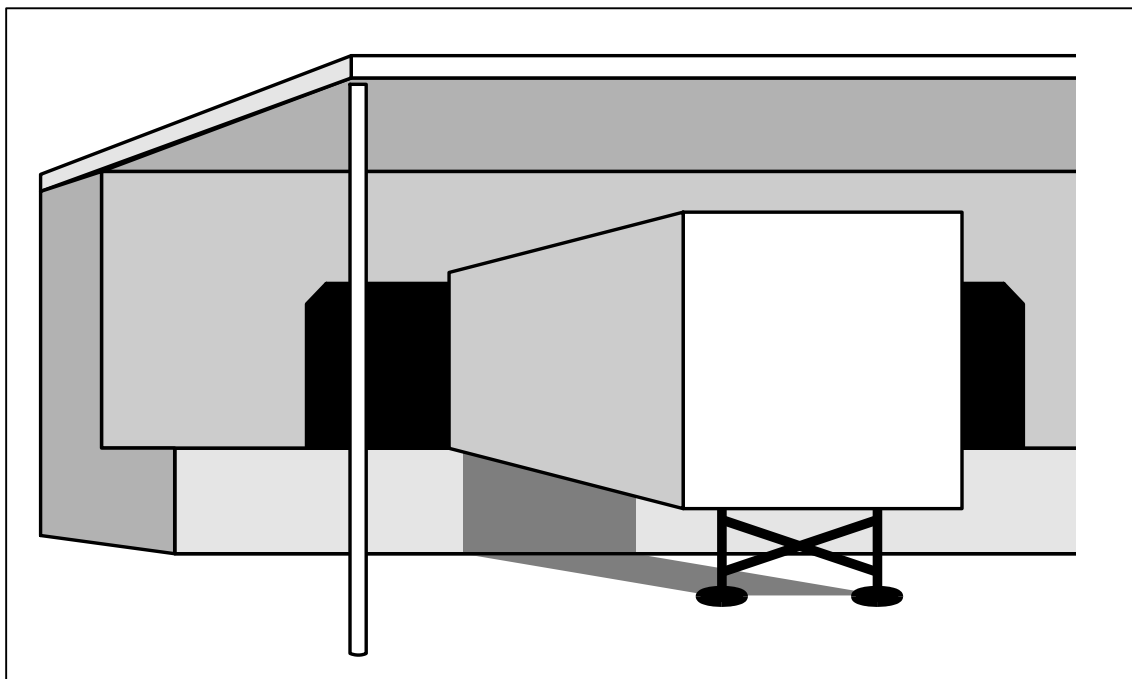
- Install/maintain overhangs or door skirts that enclose the trailer end (see Figure 4 - 3 and Figure 4 - 4) to prevent contact with rainwater.
- Design the loading/unloading area with berms, sloping, etc. to prevent the run-on of stormwater.
- Retain on-site the necessary materials for rapid cleanup of spills.

#### ***At Tanker Truck Transfer Areas to Above/Below-Ground Storage Tanks:***

- Pave the area on which the transfer takes place. If any transferred liquid, such as gasoline, is reactive with asphalt, pave the area with Portland cement concrete.
- Slope, berm, or dike the transfer area to a dead-end sump, spill containment sump, spill control (SC) oil/water separator, or other spill control device. The minimum spill retention time should be 15 minutes at the highest fuel dispenser nozzle through-put rate or the peak flow rate of the 6-month, 24-hour storm event over the surface of the containment pad, whichever is greater. The volume of the spill containment sump should be a minimum of 50 gallons with an adequate grit sedimentation volume.



*Figure 4 - 3. Loading Dock with Door Skirt*



*Figure 4 - 4. Loading Dock with Overhang*

## **4.3.2 BMP A202: Fueling at Dedicated Stations**

### **4.3.2.1 Description of Pollutant Sources**

A fueling station is a facility dedicated to the transfer of fuels from a stationary pumping station to mobile vehicles or equipment. It includes above or underground fuel storage facilities. In addition to general service gas stations, fueling may also occur at 24-hour convenience stores, construction sites, warehouses, car washes, manufacturing establishments, port facilities, and businesses with fleet vehicles. Typically, stormwater contamination at fueling stations is caused by leaks/spills of fuels, lube oils, radiator coolants, and vehicle washwater.

### **4.3.2.2 Required BMPs**

#### ***General Requirements***

- Fuel islands shall not drain into the storm drainage system.
- Fuel islands may provide blind sumps for spill containment, or they may drain into the sanitary sewer through a properly sized oil/water separator.
- Follow the City of Tacoma Source Control Oil Water Separator policy available at [www.cityoftacoma.org/stormwater](http://www.cityoftacoma.org/stormwater). The policy provides guidance for both covered and uncovered fuel islands.

### **4.3.3 BMP A203: Vehicle Maintenance Activities**

#### **4.3.3.1 Description of Pollutant Sources**

This activity applies to businesses and public agencies where fuel filters, engine oil, and other fluids such as battery acid, coolants, and transmission and brake fluids are removed and replaced in vehicles and equipment. It also applies to mobile vehicle maintenance operations, such as at construction sites. Related vehicle maintenance activities are covered under the following activity headings in this manual, and other BMPs provided in this manual:

- A103 Washing, Pressure Washing, and Steam Cleaning of Vehicles/Equipment/Building Structures
- A201 Loading and Unloading Areas for Liquid or Solid Material
- A202 Fueling at Dedicated Stations
- A204 Mobile Fueling
- A307 Painting, Finishing and Coating of Vehicles, Boats, Buildings, and Equipment
- A401 Storage or Transfer (Outside) of Solid Raw Materials, By-Products, or Finished Products
- A407 Storage of Liquid, Food Waste, or Dangerous Waste Containers
- A408 Storage of Liquids in Permanent Above-ground Tanks
- A409 Parking and Storage for Vehicles and Equipment
- A714 Spills of Oil and Hazardous Substances

Pollutants of concern include toxic hydrocarbons, toxic organic compounds, oils and greases, pH, and heavy metals.

#### **4.3.3.2 Required BMPs**

The following BMPs or equivalent measures are required of all businesses and agencies engaged in engine and vehicle repair:

- Employees must be educated about the need for careful handling of automotive fluids. Employees at businesses or agencies who routinely change or handle these fluids must be trained in spill response and cleanup procedures. Inspect all incoming vehicles, parts, and equipment stored temporarily outside for leaks.
- Remove batteries and liquids from vehicles and equipment in designated areas designed to prevent stormwater contamination. Store cracked batteries in a covered non-leaking secondary containment system.
- Empty fuel and fuel filters before disposal.
- Spill cleanup materials, such as rags and absorbent materials, must always be kept close at hand when changing oil and other fluids. Soiled rags and other cleanup material must be properly disposed of or cleaned and reused.
- Floor drains inside buildings shall connect to sanitary sewer, be routed through an appropriately sized oil/water separator and shall be approved by the City.

- Do not hose down the maintenance/repair area. Instead, sweep the area weekly to collect dirt, and wipe up spills with rags and other absorbent materials.
- A bermed tarp, ground cloth, or drip pans must be used beneath the vehicle or equipment to capture all spills and drips. The collected drips and spills must be recycled or disposed of properly. See BMP S102 for disposal options.
- If this activity occurs at a stationary business location, the activity area must be moved indoors. An exception to this requirement would be equipment that is too large to fit under a roofed area. In this case, the outdoor area must be paved, provided with a sump drain, and provision made for stormwater runoff prevention. See BMP S106 and S107 for more on paving, sump drains and holding tanks, and runoff prevention. Contact the City of Tacoma Sanitary Source Control unit at 253-591-5588 for information on requirements for disposal to sewer. If the site utilizes a septic tank, sump contents will need to be pumped and disposed of by an oil recycler or hazardous waste company.
- Recycle oil, antifreeze, batteries, and air conditioning coolant.
- If engine washing is to be performed, then appropriate pretreatment will be required. Contact the City of Tacoma Source Control Unit at 253-591-5588 for their requirements.

#### **4.3.3.3 Recommended BMPs**

The following BMPs are not required, but can provide additional pollution prevention.

- Drain all fluids from wrecked vehicles and car parts upon arrival. Recover air conditioning gases.
- Use reusable cloth rags to clean up drips and small spills instead of disposables: these can be professionally laundered and reused. Do not attempt to launder these at home or at a coin-op laundry.
- Use absorbent pillows or booms in or around storm drains and catch basins to absorb oil and fuel.
- Maintain vehicles under cover where possible.

### **4.3.4 BMP A204: Mobile Fueling of Vehicles and Heavy Equipment**

#### **4.3.4.1 Description of Pollutant Sources**

Mobile fueling, also known as fleet fueling, wet fueling, or wet hosing, is the practice of filling fuel tanks of vehicles by tank trucks that are driven to the yards or sites where the vehicles to be fueled are located. Mobile fueling is only conducted using diesel fuel, as mobile fueling of gasoline is prohibited. Diesel fuel is considered a Class II Combustible Liquid, whereas gasoline is considered a Flammable Liquid.

Historically mobile fueling has been conducted for off-road vehicles that are operated for extended periods of time in remote areas. This includes construction sites, logging operations, and farms. Mobile fueling of on-road vehicles is also conducted commercially in the State of Washington.

#### **4.3.4.2 Required BMPs**

Organizations and individuals conducting mobile fueling operations must implement the following BMPs. The operating procedures for the driver/operator shall be simple, clear, effective and their implementation verified by the organization that will potentially be liable for environmental and third party damage.

- Ensure that all mobile fueling operations are approved and permitted by Tacoma Fire Prevention Bureau and comply with local and Washington State fire codes. Contact the Tacoma Fire Prevention Bureau at 253-591-5740 to obtain the annual permit.
- Fueling locations that are in close proximity to sensitive aquifers, designated wetlands, wetland buffers, or other waters of the State, require approval by the City of Tacoma to ensure compliance with additional local requirements. Ensure compliance with TMC 3.10.
- Ensure compliance with all 49 CFR 178 requirements for DOT 406 cargo tanker. Documentation from a Department of Transportation (DOT) Registered Inspector shall be proof of compliance.
- Ensure the presence and the constant observation/monitoring by the driver/operator at the fuel transfer location at all times during fuel transfer and ensure that the following procedures are implemented at the fuel transfer locations:
  - Locate the point of fueling at least 25 feet from the nearest storm drain or inside an impervious containment area with a volumetric holding capacity equal to or greater than 110 percent of the receiving tank volume, or place an impervious covering over the storm drain to ensure no inflow of spilled or leaked fuel. Storm drains that convey the inflow to a spill control separator approved by the City of Tacoma, including the Tacoma Fire Department, need not be covered. Potential spill/leak conveyance surfaces must be impervious and in good repair.
  - Place a drip pan or an absorbent pad under each fueling location prior to and during all dispensing operations. The pan (must be liquid tight) and the absorbent pad must have a capacity of 3 gallons. Spills retained in the drip pan or the pad need not be reported.
  - Handle and operate fuel transfer hoses and nozzle, drip pan(s), and absorbent pads to prevent spills/leaks of fuel from reaching the ground, storm drains, and receiving waters.
  - Do not extend the fueling hoses across a traffic lane without fluorescent traffic cones, or equivalent devices.

- Remove the fill nozzle and cease filling when the automatic shut-off valve engages. Do not allow automatic shutoff fueling nozzles to be locked in the open position.
- Do not “top off” the equipment receiving fuel.
- Provide the driver/operator of the fueling vehicle with:
  - Adequate headlamps, flashlights or other mobile lighting to view fill openings with poor accessibility. Consult with the Tacoma Fire Department for additional lighting requirements.
  - Two-way communication with home base.
- Train the driver/operator annually in spill prevention, reporting and cleanup measures and emergency procedures. Make all employees aware of the significant liability associated with fuel spills.
- The fueling operation procedures shall be properly signed and dated by the responsible manager, distributed to the operators, retained in the organization files, and made available in the event an authorized government agency requests a review.
- Ensure that the Tacoma Fire Department (911) and the Ecology Southwest Regional Office are immediately notified in the event of any spill entering surface or groundwaters, including catch basins. Establish a 24-hour “call down list” to ensure the rapid and proper notification of management and government officials should any amount of product be spilled on-site. Keep the list in a protected but readily accessible location in the mobile fueling truck. The “call down list” shall also pre-identify spill response contractors available in the area to ensure the rapid removal of significant product spillage into the environment.
- Maintain a minimum of the following spill clean-up materials in all fueling vehicles, that are readily available for use:
  - Non-water absorbents (pads, pillows, sump skimmers) capable of absorbing 15 gallons of diesel fuel;
  - A storm drain plug or cover kit;
  - A non-water absorbent containment boom of a minimum 10 feet in length with a 12-gallon absorbent capacity;
  - A non-metallic shovel; and
  - Two, five-gallon buckets with lids.
  - Loose granular absorbent material capable of absorbing a minimum of 5 gallons of diesel. Use only non-water absorbing materials, such as peat moss, during wet weather conditions.
- Use automatic shutoff nozzles for dispensing the fuel. Replace automatic shut-off nozzles as recommended by the manufacturer.
- Maintain and replace equipment on fueling vehicles, particularly hoses and nozzles, at established intervals to prevent failures.
- Do not overfill tanks. Allow room for heat expansion of fuel during warm weather.
- Include the following fuel transfer site components:
  - Automatic fuel transfer shut-off nozzles; and
  - An adequate lighting system at the filling point.

## **4.4 Production and Application Activities**

### **4.4.1 BMP A301: Concrete and Asphalt Mixing and Production at Stationary Sites**

#### **4.4.1.1 Description of Pollutant Sources**

This activity applies to businesses and agencies that mix raw materials onsite to produce concrete or asphalt. It also applies to subsequent uses such as pouring concrete structures and making other concrete or asphalt products. Mobile concrete pouring and asphalt application are covered under BMP A302. Requirements for stockpiling of raw materials are covered under BMP A401 Storage or Transfer (Outside) of Solid Raw Materials, By-products or Finished Products.

Pollutants of concern include toxic hydrocarbons, toxic organic compounds, oils and greases, heavy metals, and pH.

#### **4.4.1.2 Required BMPs**

The following BMPs or equivalent measures are required of all businesses and public agencies active in concrete and asphalt mixing and production:

- Eliminate all illicit connections to the storm drainage system. See BMP S101 for a detailed discussion on identifying and eliminating these connections.
- All process water from production, pouring, and equipment cleaning must be discharged to a dead-end sump, a process water treatment system, connected to the sanitary sewer, or recycled. Never wash fresh concrete or concrete mixer washout into streets, storm drainage systems, streams, or other water bodies.
- A BMP maintenance schedule must be established, maintenance documented, and employees educated about the need to prevent stormwater contamination through the use and proper maintenance of BMPs.
- Production and pouring areas must be protected from stormwater run-on. See BMP S107 for methods of run-on protection.
- Cover the production area for prevention of stormwater run-on. See BMP S104 and S107 for information on covers and run-on prevention.
- Use absorbent materials or catch basin filters in and around storm drains and catch basins to filter out contaminants.
- Contact the Washington State Department of Ecology at 360-407-6400 to determine if an NPDES Sand and Gravel General Permit is required for your site.
- Sweep areas that show accumulation of materials. Vacuum sweeping is also an acceptable method of removing accumulated material.



#### **4.4.1.3 Recommended BMPs**

The following BMPs are not required, but can provide additional pollution protection:

- The production and pouring area should be swept at the end of each work day to collect loose chunks of aggregate and raw materials for recycling or proper disposal. See BMP S102 for disposal options.
- Asphalt plants should use an oil/water separator to treat stormwater runoff. See Volume 5, Water Quality Treatment BMPs, for more information.
- Pave the mixing, production, and pouring areas. A sump drain in these areas is probably not advisable due to potential clogging problems, but could be used in a curing area. Sweep these areas to remove loose aggregate and recycle or dispose of properly.

## **4.4.2 BMP A302: Concrete Pouring, Concrete Cutting, and Asphalt Application at Temporary Sites**

### **4.4.2.1 Description of Pollutant Sources**

This activity applies to businesses and public agencies that apply asphalt or pour or cut concrete for building construction and remodeling, road construction, utility projects, sidewalk, curb and gutter repairs and construction, sealing of driveways and roofs, and other applications. These activities are typically done on a temporary site-to-site basis where permanent BMP measures do not apply. Concrete pouring activities can not only severely alter the pH of receiving waters, but slurry from aggregate washing can harden in storm pipes, thus reducing capacity and creating flooding problems.

Pollutants of concern include toxic hydrocarbons, toxic organic compounds, oils and greases, heavy metals, suspended solids, and pH.

### **4.4.2.2 Required BMPs**

The following BMPs or equivalent measures are required of all businesses and agencies doing concrete pouring and asphalt application at temporary sites:

- Employees must be educated on the pollution hazards of concrete and asphalt application and cutting.
- Loose aggregate chunks and dust must be swept or shoveled and collected (not hosed down a storm drain) for recycling or proper disposal at the end of each work day, especially at work sites such as streets, driveways, parking lots, sidewalks, curbs, and gutters where rain can readily pick up the loose material and carry it to the nearest stormwater conveyance system. Small amounts of excess concrete, grout, and mortar can be disposed of in the trash.
- Storm drain covers or similarly effective containment devices must be placed over all nearby drains at the beginning of each day. Shovel or vacuum slurry and remove from the site. All accumulated runoff and solids must be collected and properly disposed (see BMP S102 for disposal options) at the end of each work day, or more often if necessary.
- Exposed aggregate washing, where the top layer of unhardened concrete is hosed or scraped off to leave a rough finish, must be done with a mechanism for containment and collection of the discarded concrete slurry (such as the storm drain covers mentioned above). The easiest way to contain the washwater is to direct the washings to a trench in the ground where the water can percolate into the ground and the solids later covered with soil.
- Cleaning of concrete application and mixing equipment or concrete vehicles on the work site must be done in a designated area where the rinse water is controlled. The rinse water must either be collected for proper disposal or put into a trench in the ground where the water can percolate away and the solids later covered with soil or recovered and disposed or recycled.
- Comply with the following BMPs in Volume 2 as applicable:
  - BMP C151: Concrete Handling
  - BMP C152: Sawcutting and Surface Pollution Prevention
  - BMP C154: Concrete Washout Area

The use of any treatment BMP must not result in the violation of groundwater, surface water, or drinking water quality standards.

#### **4.4.2.3 Recommended BMPs**

The following BMPs are not required but can provide additional pollution prevention:

- Avoid the activity when rain is occurring or expected.
- If possible, portable asphalt mixing equipment should be covered by an awning, a lean-to, or another simple structure to avoid contact with rain. See BMP S104 for further details on cover structures.
- Recycle broken concrete and asphalt. Look under Recycling Services in the Yellow pages of the phone book to find the nearest recycler.

### **4.4.3 BMP A303: Manufacturing and Post-Processing of Metal Products**

#### **4.4.3.1 Description of Pollutant Sources**

This activity applies to businesses such as mills, foundries, and fabricators that manufacture or post-process metal products. A variety of activities such as machining, grinding, soldering, cutting, welding, quenching, cooling, and rinsing may take place. These businesses may be required to obtain a National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (NPDES) permit from the Department of Ecology or an Industrial Wastewater Discharge Permit from the City of Tacoma.

- Contact the Washington State Department of Ecology at 360-407-7541 for questions related to NPDES Industrial Stormwater Permitting.
- Contact the City of Tacoma Source Control at 253-591-5588 to determine if a City of Tacoma Industrial Wastewater Discharge Permit is necessary.

**NOTE:** Painting, finishing and coating of metal products is covered under BMP A307 Painting, Finishing, and Coating of Vehicles, Boats, Buildings, and Equipment.

Pollutants of concern include toxic organic compounds, heavy metals, oils and greases, pH, suspended solids, and biological oxygen demand (BOD).

#### **4.4.3.2 Required BMPs**

The following BMPs or equivalent measures are required of all businesses engaged in metals manufacturing or post-processing:

- Eliminate illicit connections to the storm drainage system. See BMP S101 for detailed information on identifying and eliminating illicit connections.
- Process wastewater (including contact cooling water, filter backwash, cooling tower blowdown, etc.), and stormwater runoff from activity areas, must discharge to a sanitary sewer, holding tank, or process treatment system before discharge to surface water or storm drain. Contact the City of Tacoma Source Control at 253-591-5588 to obtain permits for discharge to the sewer. See BMP S103 for detailed requirements.
- Employees must be educated to control their work with metal products to minimize pollution.
- The activity area must be swept at the end of each work day to collect and dispose of metal fragments and product residues properly. See BMP S102 for disposal alternatives.

#### **4.4.3.3 Recommended BMPs**

The following BMPs are not required but can provide additional pollution protection:

- Limit the amount of water used in quenching and rinsing. Recycle used water where possible.
- Cover the activity area to prevent rain from contacting the process and reduce the amount of runoff that has to be detained or treated.
- Use a catch basin filter or screen basket insert to capture stray metal particles.
- Implement a program to track purchase and consumption of lubricants, solvents, and additives. Check with operating managers for an explanation if consumption increases. Recommend actions if significant equipment leaks or spills are identified.
- Utilize any additional BMPs which are applicable for materials storage and maintenance activities in your shop.

#### **4.4.4 BMP A304: Wood Treatment Areas**

##### **4.4.4.1 Description of Pollutant Sources**

Wood treatment includes both anti-staining and wood preserving using pressure processes or by dipping or spraying. Wood preservatives and anti-staining chemical additives can include petroleum products, pesticides and heavy metals.

Pollutant sources include drips of condensate or preservative after pressurized treatment, product washwater (in the treatment or storage areas), spills and leaks from process equipment and preservative tanks, fugitive emissions from vapors in the process, blowouts and emergency pressure releases, and kick-back from lumber (phenomenon where preservative leaks as it returns to normal pressure). Potential pollutants typically include the wood treating chemicals, BOD, suspended solids, oil and grease, benzene, toluene, ethylbenzene, phenol, chlorophenols, nitrophenols, heavy metals, and PAH, depending on the chemical additive used.

##### **4.4.4.2 Required BMPs**

All wood treating facilities in Washington State are required to be covered under an Individual NPDES Permit and may require an Industrial Wastewater Discharge Permit from the City of Tacoma. The individual NPDES Permit will describe the BMPs applicable to the site.

## **4.4.5 BMP A305: Commercial Composting**

### **4.4.5.1 Description of Pollutant Sources**

Commercial compost facilities operating outside without cover require large areas to decompose wastes and other feedstocks. These facilities should be designed to separate stormwater from leachate (i.e., industrial wastewater) to the greatest extent possible. When stormwater is allowed to contact any active composting areas, including waste receiving and processing areas, it becomes leachate. Pollutants in leachate include nutrients, biochemical oxygen demand (BOD), organics, coliform bacteria, acidic pH, color, and suspended solids. Stormwater at a compost facility consists of runoff from areas at the facility that are not associated with active processing and curing, such as product storage areas, vehicle maintenance areas, and access roads.

### **4.4.5.2 Required BMPs**

Commercial composting facilities are required to be covered under an Individual NPDES Permit and may require an Industrial Wastewater Discharge Permit from the City of Tacoma.

- Ensure that the compost feedstocks do not contain dangerous wastes regulated under Chapter 173-303 WAC or hazardous products of a similar nature or solid wastes that are not beneficial to the composting process. Employees must be trained to screen these materials in incoming wastes.
- Develop a plan of operations as outlined in the Composting Facility Standards (WAC 173-350-220) and in the Individual NPDES Permit.

## **4.4.6 BMP A306: Landscaping and Lawn/Vegetation Management**

### **4.4.6.1 Description of Pollutant Sources**

Landscaping can include grading, soil transfer, vegetation removal, pesticide and fertilizer application, and watering. Stormwater contaminants include toxic organic compounds, heavy metals, oils, total suspended solids, coliform bacteria, fertilizers, and pesticides.

Lawn and vegetation management can include control of objectionable weeds, insects, mold, bacteria, and other pests with chemical pesticides and is conducted commercially at commercial, industrial, and residential sites. Examples include weed control on golf course lawns, access roads, and utility corridors and during landscaping; sap stain and insect control on lumber and logs; rooftop moss removal; killing nuisance rodents; fungicide application to patio decks; and residential lawn/plant care. Toxic pesticides such as pentachlorophenol, carbamates, and organometallics can be released to the environment by leaching and dripping from treated parts, container leaks, product misuse, and outside storage of pesticide contaminated materials and equipment. Poor management of the vegetation, poor application of pesticides or fertilizers, and non-targeted irrigation water or overwatering can cause appreciable stormwater contamination.

### **4.4.6.2 Required BMPs for Landscaping**

- Install engineered soil/landscape systems to improve the infiltration and regulation of stormwater in landscaped areas. Apply Soil Quality and Depth BMPs as required per Minimum Requirement #5.
- Do not dispose of collected vegetation into wetlands, waterways or storm drainage systems.

### **4.4.6.3 Recommended BMPs for Landscaping**

- Conduct mulch-mowing whenever practicable.
- Dispose of grass clippings, leaves, sticks, or other collected vegetation by composting, if feasible.
- Collect all clippings, leaves, bark, and trimmings blown onto the sidewalk or street. Don't leave this material in the gutter or where it can be washed into the storm drainage system.
- Use mulch or other erosion control measures when soils are exposed for more than one week during the dry season or two days during the rainy season.
- If oil or other chemicals are handled, store and maintain appropriate oil and chemical spill cleanup materials in readily accessible locations. Ensure that employees are familiar with proper spill cleanup procedures.
- Till fertilizers into the soil rather than dumping or broadcasting onto the surface. Determine the proper fertilizer application for the types of soil and vegetation encountered.
- Till a topsoil mix or composted organic material into the soil to create a well-mixed transition layer that encourages deeper root systems and drought-resistant plants.
- Use manual and/or mechanical methods of vegetation removal rather than applying herbicides, where practical.
- Target irrigation water on vegetated areas and limit irrigation time to reduce the potential of carrying fertilizers and pesticides off-site.

#### **4.4.6.4 Required BMPs for the Use of Pesticides**

- Develop and implement an integrated pest management system (IPM) (See BMP S108) and use pesticides only as a last resort.
- Implement a pesticide-use plan and include at a minimum: a list of selected pesticides and their specific uses; brands, formulations, application methods, and quantities to be used; equipment use and maintenance procedures; safety, storage, and disposal methods; and monitoring, record keeping, and public notice procedures. All procedures shall conform to the requirements of Chapter 17.21 RCW and Chapter 16-228 WAC (Appendix 4 – D.R.7).
- Choose the least toxic pesticide available that is capable of reducing the infestation to acceptable levels. The pesticide should readily degrade in the environment and/or have properties that strongly bind it to the soil. Any pest control used should be conducted at the life stage when the pest is most vulnerable. Any method used should be site-specific and not used wholesale over a wide area.
- Apply the pesticide according to label directions. Under no conditions shall pesticides be applied in quantities that exceed manufacturer's instructions.
- Mix the pesticides and clean the application equipment in an area where accidental spills will not enter surface or groundwaters, and will not contaminate the soil.
- Store pesticides in enclosed areas or in covered impervious containment. Ensure that pesticide contaminated stormwater or spills/leaks of pesticides are not discharged to storm drains. Do not hose down paved areas to a storm drain or conveyance ditch. Store and maintain appropriate spill cleanup materials in a location known to all near the storage area.
- Clean up any spilled pesticides and ensure that the pesticide contaminated waste materials are kept in designated covered and contained areas.
- The pesticide application equipment must be capable of immediate shutoff in the event of an emergency.
- Do not spray pesticides within 100 feet of open waters including wetlands; ponds; and streams, sloughs, and any drainage ditch or channel that leads to open water, except when approved by Ecology or by the City of Tacoma. All sensitive areas including wells, creeks, and wetlands must be flagged prior to spraying.
- As required by the City of Tacoma or by Ecology, complete public posting of the area to be sprayed prior to the application.
- Spray applications should only be conducted during weather conditions as specified in the label direction and applicable local and state regulations. Do not apply during rain or immediately before expected rain.
- Pesticides shall not be applied to stormwater management facilities.

#### **4.4.6.5 Recommended BMPs for the use of Pesticides**

- Consider alternatives to the use of pesticides such as covering or harvesting weeds, substitute vegetative growth, and manual weed control/moss removal.
- Consider the use of soil amendments, such as compost, that are known to control some common diseases in plants, such as Pythium root rot, ashy stem blight, and parasitic nematodes. The following are three possible mechanisms for disease control by compost addition (USEPA Publication 530-F-9-044):
  - Successful competition for nutrients by antibiotic production;



- Successful predation against pathogens by beneficial microorganism; and
- Activation of disease-resistant genes in plants by composts.

Installing an amended soil/landscape system can preserve both the plant system and the soil system more effectively. This type of approach provides a soil/landscape system with adequate depth, permeability, and organic matter to sustain itself and continue working as an effective stormwater infiltration system and a sustainable nutrient cycle.

- Once a pesticide is applied, its effectiveness should be evaluated for possible improvement. Records should be kept showing the applicability and inapplicability of the pesticides considered.
- An annual evaluation procedure should be developed including a review of the effectiveness of pesticide applications, impact on buffers and sensitive areas (including potable wells), public concerns, and recent toxicological information on pesticides used/proposed for use. If individual or public potable wells are located in the proximity of commercial pesticide applications, contact the regional Ecology hydrologist to determine if additional pesticide application control measures are necessary.
- Rinsate from equipment cleaning and/or triple-rinsing of pesticide containers should be used as product or recycled into product.

For more information, contact the WSU Extension Home-Assist Program at 253-445-4500; Bio-Integral Resource Center (BIRC), P.O. Box 7414, Berkeley, CA 94707; or the Washington Department of Ecology to obtain "Hazardous Waste Pesticides" (Publication #89-41); contact EPA to obtain a publication entitled "Suspended, Canceled and Restricted Pesticides" which lists all restricted pesticides and the specific uses that are allowed. Valuable information from these sources may also be available on the internet.

#### **4.4.6.6 Required BMPs for Vegetation Management**

- Use at least an eight-inch topsoil layer with at least 8 percent organic matter to provide a sufficient vegetation-growing medium.
- Select the appropriate turf grass mixture for climate and soil type based on recommendations from a licensed landscape architect.
- Selection of desired plant species can be made by adjusting the soil properties of the subject site. For example, a constructed wetland can be designed to resist the invasion of reed canary grass by layering specific strata of organic matters (e.g., compost forest product residuals) and creating a mildly acidic pH and carbon-rich soil medium. Consult a soil restoration specialist for site-specific conditions.
- Aerate lawns regularly in areas of heavy use, where the soil tends to become compacted. Aeration shall be conducted while the grasses in the lawn are growing most vigorously. Remove layers of thatch greater than 3/4-inch deep.
- Set the mowing height at the highest acceptable level and mow at times and intervals designed to minimize stress on the turf. Generally mowing only 1/3 of the grass blade height will prevent stressing the turf.

**4.4.6.7 Required BMPs for the Use of Fertilizers**

- Fertilization needs vary by site depending on plant, soil, and climatic conditions. Evaluation of soil nutrient levels through regular testing ensures the best possible efficiency and economy of fertilization. For details on soils testing, contact the Pierce Conservation District or Cooperative Extension Service.
- Fertilizers shall be applied in amounts appropriate for the target vegetation and at the time of year that minimizes losses to surface and groundwaters. Do not fertilize during a drought or when the soil is dry. Alternatively, do not apply fertilizers within three days prior to predicted rainfall. The longer the period between fertilizer application and either rainfall or irrigation, the less fertilizer runoff occurs.
- Use slow release fertilizers such as methylene urea, IDBU, or resin coated fertilizers when appropriate, generally in the spring. Use of slow release fertilizers is especially important in areas with sandy or gravelly soils.
- Time the fertilizer application to periods of maximum plant uptake. Generally fall and spring applications are recommended.
- Properly trained persons shall apply all fertilizers. Fertilizers shall not be applied to grass swales, filter strips, or buffer areas that drain to surface water bodies.
- Fertilizers shall not be applied to stormwater management facilities.

#### **4.4.7 BMP A307: Painting, Finishing and Coating of Vehicles, Boats, Buildings and Equipment**

##### **4.4.7.1 Description of Pollutant Sources**

Surface preparation and the application of paints, finishes, and/or coatings to vehicles, boats, buildings, and/or equipment outdoors can be sources of pollutants. Potential pollutants include organic compounds, oils and greases, heavy metals, and suspended solids.

##### **4.4.7.2 Required BMPs**

- Train employees in the careful application of paints, finishes, and coatings to reduce misuse and over spray. Use ground or drop cloths or temporary berms underneath outdoor painting, scraping, sandblasting work, and properly clean and temporarily store collected debris daily.
- Do not conduct spraying, blasting, or sanding activities over open water or where wind may blow paint into water.
- Wipe up spills with rags and other absorbent materials immediately. Do not hose down the area to a storm drain, receiving water, or conveyance ditch to receiving water.
- On marine dock areas, sweep or vacuum rather than hose down debris. Collect any hose water generated and convey to appropriate treatment and disposal.
- Use a storm drain cover, filter fabric, or similarly effective runoff control device if dust, grit, washwater, or other pollutants may escape the work area and enter a catch basin. The containment device(s) must be in place at the beginning of the workday. Collect contaminated runoff and solids and properly dispose of such wastes before removing the containment device(s) at the end of the workday.
- Use a ground cloth, pail, drum, drip pan, tarpaulin, or other protective device (e.g. plastic wading pool) for activities such as paint mixing and tool cleaning outside or where spills can contaminate stormwater.
- Properly dispose of all wastes and prevent all uncontrolled releases to the air, ground, or water.
- Clean brushes and tools covered with non-water-based paints, finishes, or other materials in a manner that allows collection of used solvents (e.g., paint thinner, turpentine, xylol, etc.) for recycling or proper disposal.
- Store toxic materials under cover (tarp, etc.) during precipitation events and when not in use to prevent contact with stormwater.
- Enclose and/or contain all work while using a spray gun or conducting sand blasting and in compliance with applicable air pollution control, OSHA, and WISHA requirements. Do not conduct outside spraying, grit blasting, or sanding activities during windy conditions which render containment ineffective.
- Clean paintbrushes and tools covered with water-based paints in sinks connected to sanitary sewers or in portable containers that can be dumped into a sanitary sewer drain.

##### **4.4.7.3 Recommended BMPs**

- Recycle paint, paint thinner, solvents, pressure washer water, and any other recyclable materials.
- Use efficient spray equipment such as electrostatic, air-atomized, high volume/low pressure, or gravity feed spray equipment.
- Purchase recycled paints, paint thinner, solvents, and other products if feasible.

## **4.4.8 BMP A308: Commercial Printing Operations**

### **4.4.8.1 Description of Pollutant Sources**

Materials used in the printing process include inorganic and organic acids, resins, solvents, polyester film, developers, alcohol, vinyl lacquer, dyes, acetates, and polymers. Waste products may include waste inks and ink sludge, resins, photographic chemicals, solvents, acid and alkaline solutions, chlorides, chromium, zinc, lead, spent formaldehyde, silver, plasticizers, and used lubricating oils. As the printing operations are conducted indoors, the only likely points of potential contact with stormwater are the outside temporary waste material storage area and area where chemicals are offloaded at external unloading bays. Pollutants can include TSS, pH, heavy metals, oil and grease, and COD.

### **4.4.8.2 Required BMPs**

- Discharge process wastewaters to a sanitary sewer (if approved by the City of Tacoma) or to an approved process wastewater treatment system. Contact the City of Tacoma Source Control Unit at 253-591-5588 for discharge requirements.
- Do not discharge process wastes or wastewaters into storm drains or surface water.
- Determine whether any of these wastes qualify for regulation as dangerous wastes and dispose of them accordingly.
- Store raw materials or waste materials that could contaminate stormwater in covered and contained areas.
- Train all employees in pollution prevention, spill response, spill reporting, and environmentally acceptable materials handling procedures.
- Store materials in proper, appropriately labeled containers. Identify and label all chemical substances.

### **4.4.8.3 Recommended BMPs**

- Use press washes without listed solvents, and with the lowest VOC content possible. Don't evaporate ink cleanup trays to the outside atmosphere.
- Place cleanup sludges into a properly labeled container with a tight lid, designate the sludge, and dispose properly. It is the responsibility of the generator to designate waste as hazardous waste and provide supporting information.

For additional information on pollution prevention the following Washington Department of Ecology publications are recommended: [A Guide for Screen Printers](#), Publication #94-137 and [A Guide for Lithographic Printers](#), Publication #94-139.

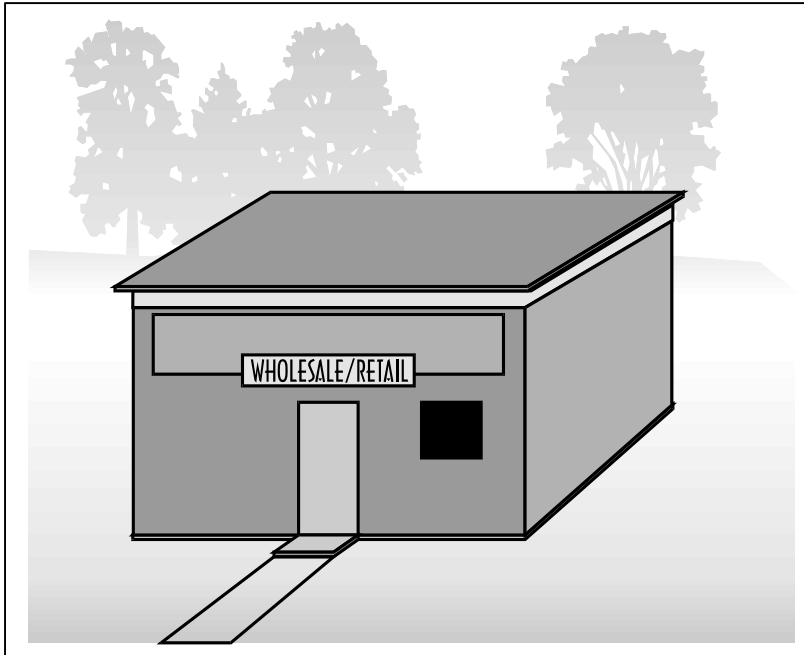
## **4.4.9 BMP A309: Manufacturing Operations – Outside**

### **4.4.9.1 Description of Pollutant Sources**

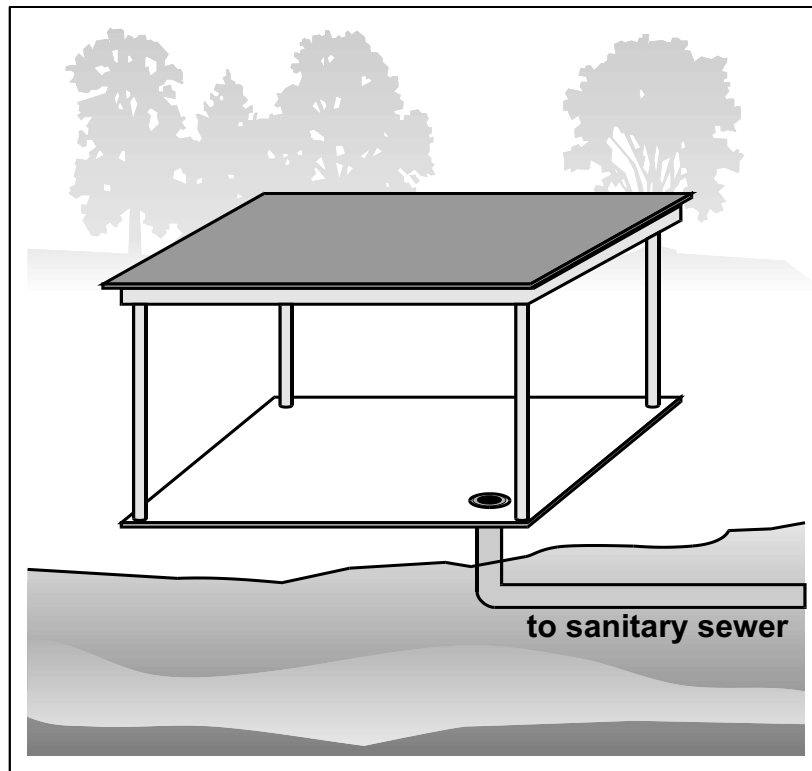
Manufacturing pollutant sources include outside process areas, stack emissions, and areas where manufacturing activity has taken place in the past and significant pollutant materials remain and are exposed to stormwater.

### **4.4.9.2 Required BMPs**

- Sweep paved areas regularly, as needed, to prevent contamination of stormwater. Vacuum sweeping is preferred.
- Alter the activity by eliminating or minimizing the contamination of stormwater.
- Enclose the activity (see Figure 4 - 5). If possible, enclose the manufacturing activity in a building.
- Cover the activity and connect floor drains to a sanitary sewer, if approved by the City of Tacoma. Berm or slope the floor as needed to prevent drainage of pollutants to outside areas (see Figure 4 - 6).
- Isolate and segregate pollutants, as feasible. Convey the segregated pollutants to a sanitary sewer, process treatment, or dead-end sump, depending on available methods and applicable permit requirements.



**Figure 4 - 5. Enclose the Activity**



**Figure 4 - 6. Cover the Activity**

## 4.5 Storage and Stockpiling Activities

### 4.5.1 BMP A401: Storage or Transfer (Outside) of Solid Raw Materials, By-Products or Finished Products

#### 4.5.1.1 Description of Pollutant Sources

Solid raw materials, by-products, or products such as gravel, sand, salts, topsoil, compost, logs, sawdust, wood chips, lumber and other building materials, concrete, and metal products are typically stored outside in large piles, stacks, etc. at commercial or industrial establishments. Contact of outside bulk materials with stormwater can cause leachate and/or erosion of the stored materials. Contaminants may include TSS, BOD, organics, and dissolved salts (sodium, calcium, magnesium chloride, etc).

#### 4.5.1.2 Required BMPs

- Do not hose down the contained stockpile area to a storm drain or other conveyance leading to a storm drain or receiving water.
- Choose one or more of the source control BMP options listed below for stockpiles greater than 5 cubic yards of erodible or water soluble materials such as soil, road deicing salts, compost, unwashed sand and gravel, sawdust, etc. or for outside storage areas for solid materials such as logs, bark, lumber, metal products, etc.:

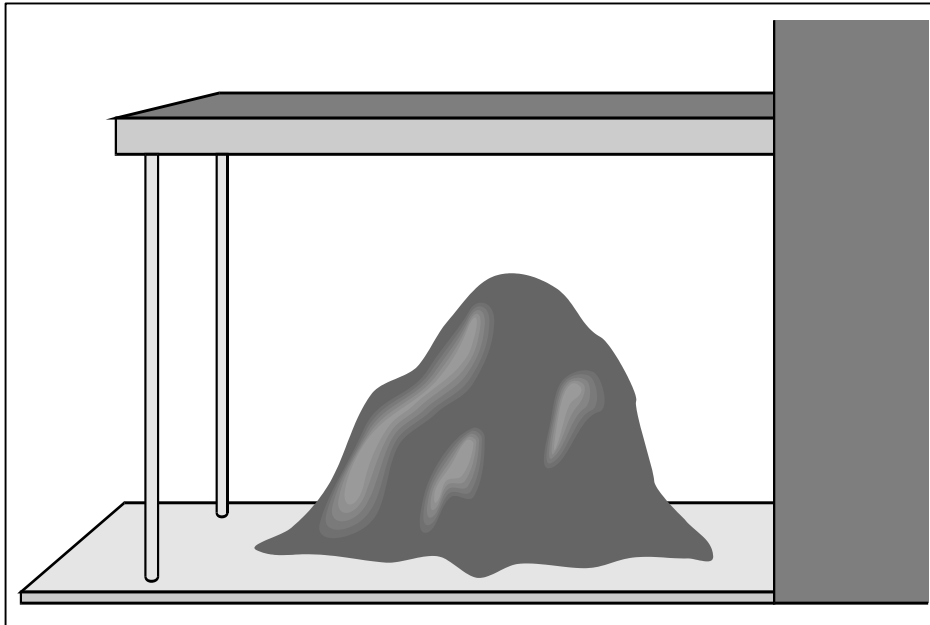
- Store in a building or paved and bermed covered area as shown in Figure 4 - 7.
- Place temporary plastic sheeting (polyethylene, polypropylene, hypalon, or equivalent) over the material.

OR

- Pave the area and install a stormwater drainage system. Place curbs or berms along the perimeter of the area to prevent the run-on of uncontaminated stormwater and to collect and convey runoff to treatment. Slope the paved area in a manner that minimizes contact between stormwater (e.g., pooling) and leachable materials in compost, logs, bark, wood chips, etc.
- For large stockpiles that cannot be covered, implement containment practices at the perimeter of the site and at any catch basins as needed to prevent erosion and discharge of the stockpiled material offsite or to a storm drain. Ensure that contaminated stormwater is not discharged directly to catch basins without being conveyed through a treatment BMP. For log yards see Ecology publication, "Industrial Stormwater General Permit Implementation Manual for Log Yards:", publication # 04-10-031.
- Convey contaminated stormwater from the stockpile area to a stormwater treatment device as required by this manual or other permit.
- Sweep areas that show accumulation of materials. Vacuum sweeping is also an acceptable method of removing accumulated material.

#### 4.5.1.3 Recommended BMPs

- Maintain drainage areas in and around storage of solid materials with a minimum slope of 1.5 percent to prevent pooling and minimize leachate formation. Areas should be sloped to drain stormwater to the perimeter where it can be collected, or to internal drainage “alleyways” where material is not stockpiled.
- If and when feasible, collect and recycle water-soluble materials (leachates) to the stockpile.
- Stock cleanup materials such as brooms, dustpans, and vacuum sweepers near the storage area.



**Figure 4 - 7. Covered Storage Area for Bulk Solids (including berm if needed)**



## **4.5.2 BMP A402: Storage and Treatment of Contaminated Soils**

### **4.5.2.1 Description of Pollutant Sources**

This activity applies to businesses and agencies that store and treat soils contaminated with toxic organic compounds, petroleum products, or heavy metals. Stormwater runoff that comes in contact with contaminated soil can carry those contaminants along with loose dirt into receiving waters.

### **4.5.2.2 Required BMPs**

Permits may be required by the Washington State Department of Ecology, Environmental Protection Agency, Tacoma/Pierce County Health Department, Puget Sound Clean Air Agency, and/or City of Tacoma Source Control depending on the nature of the project. The applicant is responsible for determining if permits are required from additional agencies. Contact each agency to determine their permitting requirements.

The BMPs included here are intended as a supplement to other regulations. The following BMPs or equivalent measures are required of all businesses engaged in storage and treatment of contaminated soils:

- The storage area for contaminated soils must be enclosed indoors, covered, or contained by a curb, dike, or berm constructed around the material storage area. If the contaminated soils are covered, stormwater run-on protection must also be provided. BMP S107 provides further details on containment and run-on prevention.
- Employees must be educated on methods to prevent contamination from leaving the site.
- Cleanup materials must be stocked near the storage area.
- Gutters, storm drains, catch basins, and other drainage system features on the site must be cleaned following the completion of site work, or at least once per year, whichever comes first. Sediments from such cleaning must be disposed of properly. See BMP S109 and S102 for details on catch basin cleaning and disposal options.

### **4.5.2.3 Recommended BMPs**

The following BMPs are not required but can provide additional pollution protection:

- If feasible, the storage area should be swept weekly for collection of stray soil, which can be added back to the piles or properly disposed. See BMP S102 for information on disposal options.
- Implement an appropriate stormwater treatment BMP per Volume 5.

The use of any treatment BMP must not result in the violation of groundwater, surface water, wastewater, or drinking water quality standards.

### **4.5.3 BMP A403: Temporary Storage or Processing of Fruits or Vegetables**

#### **4.5.3.1 Description of Pollutant Sources**

This activity applies to businesses that temporarily store fruits and vegetables outdoors prior to processing or sale, or that crush, cut, or shred fruits or vegetables for wines, frozen juices, and other food and beverage products. These businesses may include farmers markets, fruit and vegetable stands, and fruit and vegetable processors. Nutrients and soil washing off of fruit and vegetables can have a detrimental effect on receiving waters.

Pollutants of concern include nutrients, suspended solids, biochemical oxygen demand (BOD), and color.

#### **4.5.3.2 Required BMPs**

Businesses that store or process fruits and vegetables are required to be covered under an Individual NPDES Permit and may require an Industrial Wastewater Discharge Permit from the City of Tacoma. Contact the Washington State Department of Ecology for information on BMPs related to fruit and vegetable processing and storing. Additional permitting may be required from the Tacoma/Pierce County Health Department.

## **4.5.4 BMP A404: Storage of Solid Wastes and Food Wastes**

### **4.5.4.1 Description of Pollutant Sources**

This activity applies to facilities such as hospitals, restaurants, meat and seafood markets, veterinarian clinics, schools, grocery stores, assisted living centers, and group assembly halls that store solid wastes and food wastes outdoors. This includes ordinary garbage. If improperly stored, these wastes can contribute a variety of pollutants to stormwater. For more information, call the Solid Waste Section at 253-541-5543.

Certain Food Service establishments are required to obtain a permit from the Tacoma/Pierce County Health Department, which may include inspection of the garbage facilities. Call the Pierce County Waste Management Section at 253-798-6047 for additional information.

**NOTE:** Dangerous solid wastes must be stored and handled under special guidelines. Businesses and agencies that store dangerous wastes must follow specific regulations outlined by the Department of Ecology and, in some cases, the Tacoma-Pierce County Health Department (TPCHD). Ecology regulations are outlined in Volume 4, Chapter 5. Please contact the Department of Ecology at 360-407-6300 and the TPCHD at 253-798-6047 for the specific requirements and permitting information.

Pollutants of concern include toxic organic compounds, oils and greases, heavy metals, nutrients, suspended solids, chemical oxygen demand (COD), and biochemical oxygen demand (BOD).

### **4.5.4.2 Required BMPs**

The following BMPs are required of all businesses and public agencies engaged in storage of non-dangerous solid wastes or food wastes:

- All solid and food wastes must be stored in suitable containers. Piling of wastes without any cover is prohibited.
  - Waste storage areas and trash enclosures for food or liquid bearing wastes must be connected to the sanitary sewer and bermed or sloped to prevent stormwater run-on.
  - Trash compactors or dumpsters for food or liquid-bearing wastes shall drain to the sanitary sewer system and be designed as required by the City of Tacoma Source Control Department. Trash compactor hydraulic reservoirs or hoses shall be contained within the perimeter of the drainage pad.
  - Storage containers and compactors must be checked for leaks and broken seals and replaced if they are leaking, corroded, or otherwise deteriorating. If storage containers contain liquid wastes of any kind, then the container shall be located on a pad equipped with a drainage system connected to the City sanitary sewer.
  - A minimum of three feet of clearance must be maintained between a trash compactor or dumpster and any other storage containers kept in the storage area or trash enclosure. Alternatively, these storage containers can be kept in separate enclosures.
  - Storage containers must have leak-proof lids or be covered by some other means. Lids must be kept closed at all times. This is especially important for dumpsters, as birds can pick out garbage and drop it, promoting rodent, health, and stormwater problems.
- OR
- If lids cannot be provided for the waste containers, or they cannot otherwise be covered, a designated waste storage area must be provided with a containment berm, dike, or

curb, and the designated area must drain to a sanitary sewer or holding tank for further treatment. See BMP S107 and S103 for more information.

- Do not completely fill containers of waste fats, oil and grease. Leave a minimum of four inches of freeboard to prevent spills when the containers are moved or handled for recycling.
- Employees must be trained to frequently check storage containers for leaks and to ensure that the lids are on tightly.
- The waste storage area must be swept or otherwise cleaned frequently to collect all loose solids for proper disposal in a storage container. Do not hose the area to collect or clean solids. All solids must be swept and properly disposed of before hosing area.
- If containers are cleaned, all rinse water from cleaning must be disposed of in a sanitary sewer or septic system.
- Inspect regularly and clean out catch basins on the property that receive drainage from waste storage area. See BMP S109 for details on catch basin cleaning.
- Store containers such that wind will not be able to knock them over.

#### **4.5.4.3 Recommended BMPs**

The following BMPs are not required, but can provide additional pollution protection:

- Provide a backup storage container if the amount of waste accumulated appears to frequently exceed the capacity of the storage container.
- Locate drain to sanitary sewer at one end or side of the enclosure to ease cleaning the drain.
- In enclosures with drains to the sanitary sewer, provide an area for washing floor mats.
- Designate a storage area, pave the area, and slope the drainage to a holding tank or sanitary sewer drain. If a holding tank is used, the contents must be pumped out before the tank is full and properly disposed. See BMP S102 for more information on disposal options.
- Compost appropriate wastes. Contact City of Tacoma Solid Waste at 253-591-5543 for more information on composting.
- Recycle solid wastes. Contact City of Tacoma Solid Waste. at 253-591-5543 for more information.

## **4.5.5 BMP A405: Farmer's Markets**

### **4.5.5.1 Description of Pollutant Sources**

Potential sources of pollutants include food waste, oil and grease, water that has come into contact with food, waste from equipment washing, and other typical garbage items. Examples of waste sources include: ice and water that has come into contact with food (either in produce washing or temperature regulation), cooking equipment washwater, and hand washing centers.

### **4.5.5.2 Required BMPs**

- Dispose of wastewater into the sanitary sewer system. Wastewater shall not be disposed in the stormwater system. Either transport wastewater back to regular place of business for proper disposal, at the disposal site approved by the Tacoma/Pierce County Health Department as part of the food handling permit, or at the event's designated wastewater disposal sink.
- Fats, grease and oils shall not be disposed in the stormwater or sanitary system. Recycle cooking oils or secure for proper disposal.
- Clean flower water may be disposed into nearby grassy areas. Do not dispose of flower water directly into stormwater drains.
- Food carts and mobile food vendors must obtain and follow the requirements of a mobile food vendor permit as issued by the Tacoma/Pierce County Health Department.

## **4.5.6 BMP A406: Recyclers and Scrap Yards**

### **4.5.6.1 Description of Pollutant Sources**

Includes businesses that reclaim various materials for resale or for scrap, such as vehicles and vehicle/ equipment parts, construction materials, metals, computers, appliances, beverage containers, and papers.

Potential sources of pollutants include paper, plastic, metal scrap debris, engines, transmissions, radiators, batteries, and other materials that contain fluids or are contaminated with fluids. Other pollutant sources include leachate from metal components, contaminated soil, and the erosion of soil. Activities that can generate pollutants include the transfer, dismantling, and crushing of vehicles and scrap metal; the transfer and removal of fluids; maintenance and cleaning of vehicles, parts, and equipment; and storage of fluids, parts for resale, solid wastes, scrap parts, and materials, equipment and vehicles that contain fluids, generally in uncovered areas.

Potential pollutants typically found at vehicle recycle and scrap yards include oil and grease, ethylene and propylene glycol, total suspended solids, BOD, heavy metals, and acidic pH.

### **4.5.6.2 Required BMPs**

For facilities subject to Ecology's Industrial Stormwater General Permit refer to BMP Guidance Document #94-146, "Vehicle Recyclers: A Guide to Implementing the Industrial Stormwater General National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (NPDES) Permit Requirements", Washington Department of Ecology, January 2006 for selection of BMPs. The BMPs in that guidance document can also be applied to scrap material recycling facilities (depending on the pollutant sources existing at those facilities) and to non-permitted facilities.

Contact the City of Tacoma Source Control Unit at 253-591-5588 if contact stormwater or process wastewater is to be discharged from your site.

#### **4.5.7 BMP A407: Treatment, Storage or Disposal of Dangerous Wastes**

This activity applies to businesses and public agencies that are permitted by the Washington State Department of Ecology (DOE) to treat, store, or dispose of dangerous wastes. DOE regulates these facilities with specific requirements, which include the need for a National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (NPDES) permit. Detailed BMPs are not included in this manual since site requirements for these facilities are well beyond the level of typical BMP applications. See Chapter 5 of this volume for reference information.

Contact the City of Tacoma Source Control Unit at 253-591-5588 for their requirements. An Industrial Wastewater Discharge Permit is required before discharging contact stormwater or process wastewater to the City sanitary sewer system. The Tacoma-Pierce County Health Department also administers some aspects of dangerous waste treatment, storage, and disposal. Call 253-798-6047 for more information.

## **4.5.8 BMP A408: Storage of Liquid, Food Waste or Dangerous Waste Containers**

### **4.5.8.1 Description of Pollutant Sources**

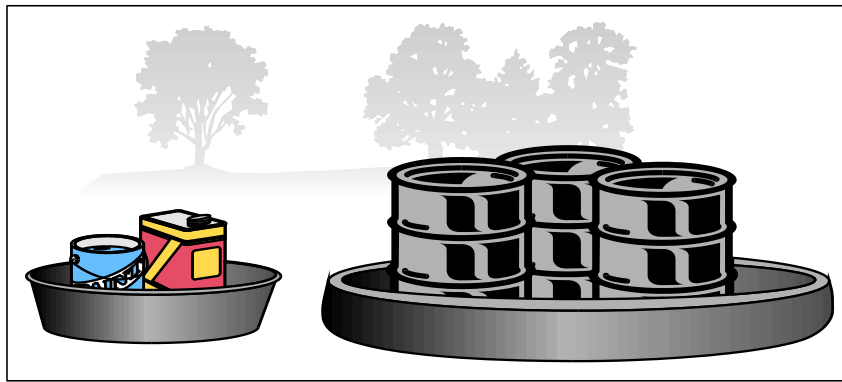
Steel and plastic drums with volumetric capacities of 55 gallons or less are typically used at industrial facilities for storage of liquids and powders. The BMPs specified below apply to container(s) located outside a building used for temporary storage of accumulated food wastes, vegetable or animal grease, used oil, liquid feedstock cleaning chemicals, or Dangerous Wastes (liquid or solid), unless the business is permitted by Ecology to store the wastes. Leaks and spills of pollutant materials during handling and storage are the primary sources of pollutants. Oil and grease, acid/alkali pH, BOD, and metals are potential pollutant constituents.

### **4.5.8.2 Required BMPs**

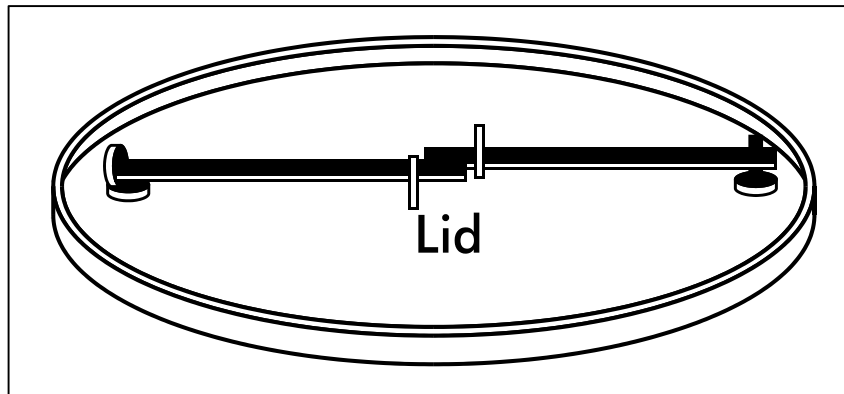
- Place tight-fitting lids on all containers. Provide adequate freeboard/headspace.
- Place drip pans beneath all mounted container taps and at all potential drip and spill locations during filling and unloading of containers.
- Inspect container storage areas regularly for corrosion, structural failure, spills, leaks, overfills, and failure of piping systems. Check containers daily for leaks/spills. Replace containers, secure lids, and replace and tighten bungs in drums, as needed.
- Drums stored in an area where unauthorized persons may gain access must be secured in a manner that prevents accidental spillage, pilferage, or any unauthorized use (see Figure 4 - 9).
- If the material is a Dangerous Waste, the business owner must comply with any additional Ecology requirements as specified in Chapter 5.
- Storage of reactive, ignitable, or flammable liquids must comply with the Uniform Fire Code.
- Cover dumpsters or keep them under cover, such as a lean-to, to prevent the entry of stormwater. Replace or repair leaking garbage dumpsters.
- Drain dumpsters and/or dumpster pads to sanitary sewer. Keep dumpster lids closed. Install waterproof liners.
- Keep containers with Dangerous Waste, food waste or other potential pollutant liquids inside a building unless this is impracticable due to site constraints or Uniform Fire Code requirements.
- Store containers in a designated area that is covered, bermed, or diked; paved; and impervious in order to contain leaks and spills (see Figure 4 - 10). The secondary containment shall be sloped to drain into a dead-end sump for the collection of leaks and small spills.
- For liquid wastes, surround the containers with a dike as illustrated in Figure 4 - 10. The dike must be of sufficient height to provide a volume of either 10 percent of the total enclosed container volume or 110 percent of the volume contained in the largest container, whichever is greater, or, if a single container, 110 percent of the volume of that container.
- Where material is temporarily stored in drums, a containment system can be used, as illustrated, in lieu of the above system (see Figure 4 - 8).
- Place containers mounted for direct removal of a liquid chemical for use by employees inside a containment area as described above. Use a drip pan during liquid transfer (see Figure 4 - 11).



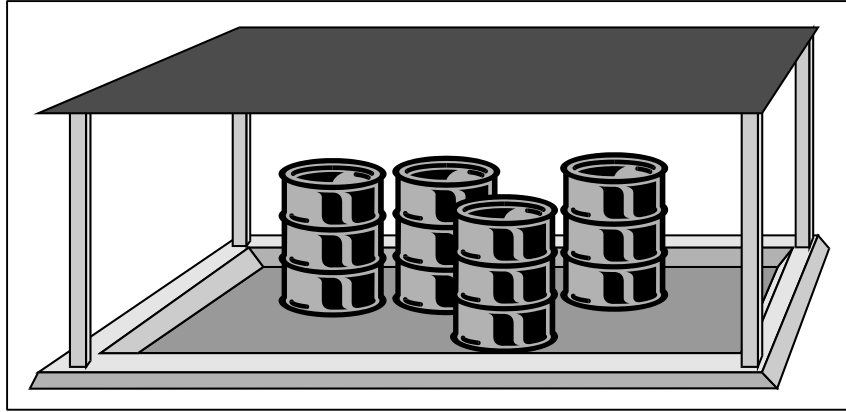
- For stormwater in a containment area, the containment area shall contain a sumped outlet. The sump outlet must be a lockable steel line of a diameter sufficient to handle the contained water. Before the valve is opened, the stormwater must be evaluated to determine if it must go to treatment or can be discharged without treatment. If the stormwater is contaminated, direct the sump outlet of the containment area to a stormwater treatment system appropriate for the products contained, or to sanitary sewer system. Discharges must not be directed toward sensitive areas, foundations, sidewalks, traffic or the City right-of-way.
- Another option for discharge of contaminated stormwater is to provide a dead-end sump or catchment. Stormwater can then be pumped to a tank truck or other appropriate vehicle for off-site treatment and/or disposal.
- If a storage area is to be used on-site for less than 30 days, a portable temporary secondary system as shown in Figure 4 - 8 can be used.



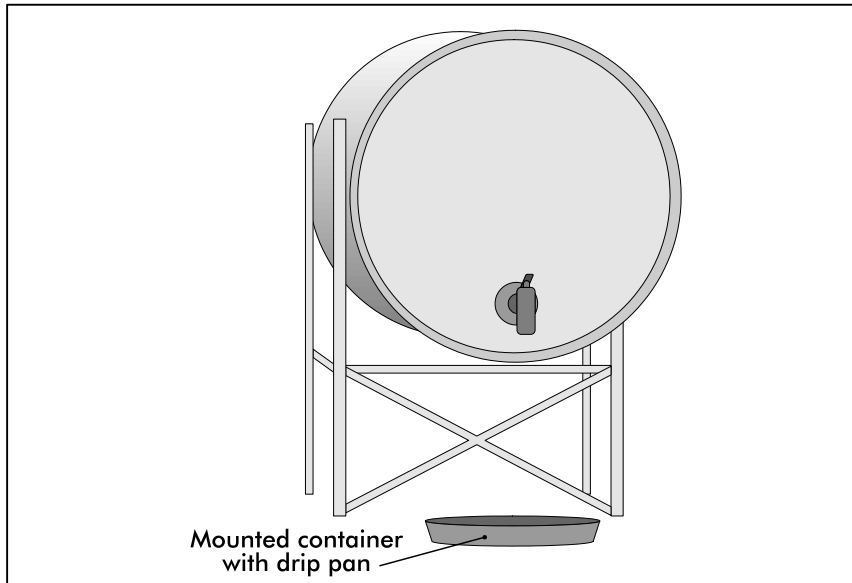
**Figure 4 - 8. Secondary Containment Vessel**



**Figure 4 - 9. Locking System for Drum Lid**



**Figure 4 - 10. Covered and Bermed Containment Area**



**Figure 4 - 11. Mounted Container**

## **4.5.9 BMP A409: Storage of Liquids in Above-Ground Tanks**

### **4.5.9.1 Description of Pollutant Sources**

Above-ground tanks containing liquids (excluding uncontaminated water) may be equipped with a valved drain, vent, pump, and bottom hose connection. These tanks are commonly associated with chemical and petroleum facilities and standby generators (see Figure 4 - 13 and Figure 4 - 14). These tanks may be heated with steam heat exchangers equipped with steam traps. Leaks and spills can occur at connections and during liquid transfer. Oil and grease, organics, acids, alkalis, and heavy metals in tank water and condensate drainage can also cause stormwater contamination at storage tanks.

### **4.5.9.2 Required BMPs for All Tanks**

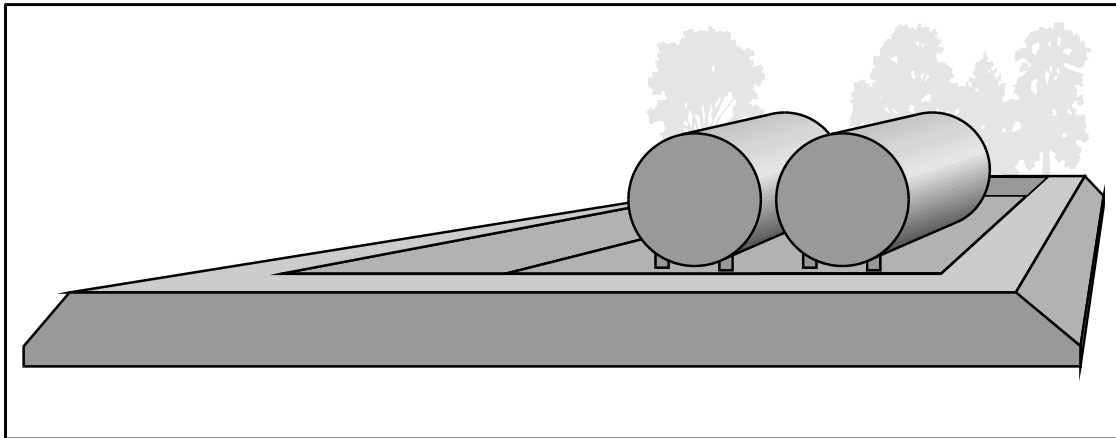
- Install secondary containment or a double-walled tank.
- For stormwater in a containment area, the containment area shall contain a sumped outlet. The sump outlet must be a lockable steel line of a diameter sufficient to handle the contained water. Before the valve is opened, the stormwater must be evaluated to determine if it must go to treatment or can be discharged without treatment. If the stormwater is contaminated, direct the sump outlet of the containment area to a stormwater treatment system appropriate for the products contained, or to a sanitary sewer system. Discharges must not be directed toward sensitive areas, foundations, sidewalks, traffic, or the City right-of-way.
- Inspect the tank containment areas regularly to identify leaks/spills, cracks, corrosion, etc. in problem components such as fittings, pipe connections, and valves.
- Develop a spill plan as per the requirements of BMP A714: Spills of Oil and Hazardous Substances.
- Place adequately sized drip pans beneath all mounted taps and drip/spill locations during filling/unloading of tanks. Valved drain tubing may be needed in mounted drip pans.
- Sweep and clean the tank storage area regularly, if paved.
- Replace or repair tanks or other components that are leaking, corroded, or otherwise deteriorating.
- All installations shall comply with the International Fire Code and the National Electric Code.
- Locate permanent tanks in impervious (Portland cement concrete or equivalent) secondary containment surrounded by dikes as illustrated in Figure 4 - 12 and Figure 4 - 13, or use UL approved double-walled tanks.
- Tanks with exposure to traffic must be protected with bollards, jersey barriers, or walls. Bollards should be at least 4 feet high, at least 3 feet from the tank, and no more than 4 feet apart. It is recommended that bollards are painted yellow for ease of visibility.
- Include a tank overflow protection system to minimize the risk of spillage during loading.
- There must be at least 5 feet of space between the tanks and any enclosures.
- Tank water and condensate discharges are process wastewater that may need an NPDES Permit or approval from the City of Tacoma Source Control to discharge to the sanitary system.

#### **4.5.9.3 Required BMPs for Single-walled Tanks**

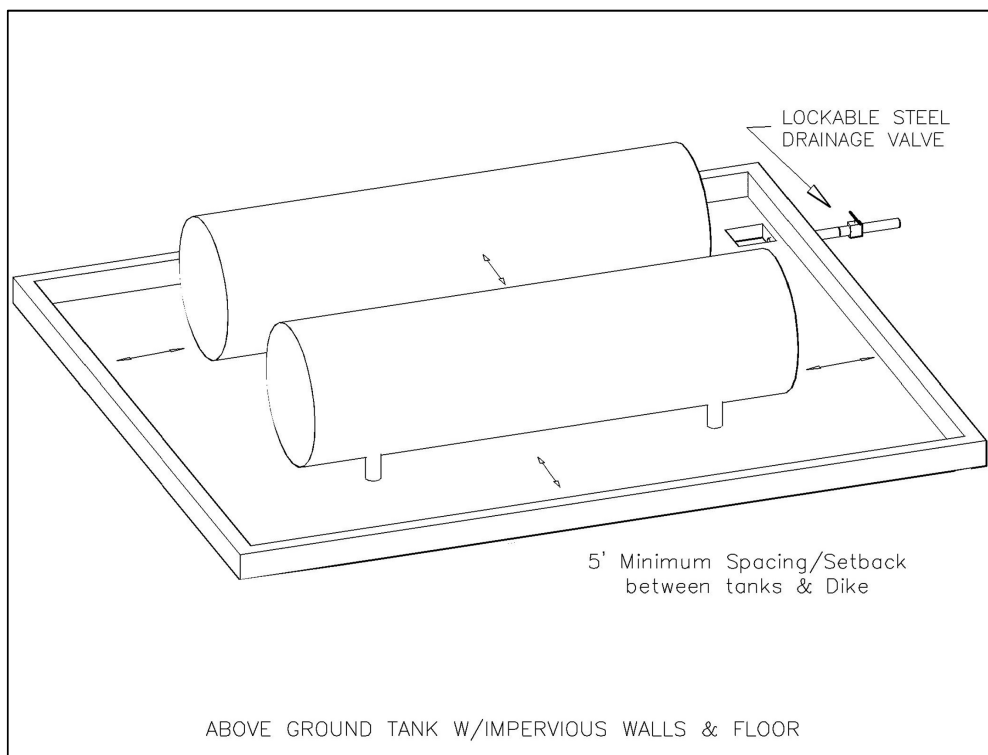
- The containment volume shall be 100% of the volume of the largest tank plus the volume of stormwater from rain events up to a 25-year, 24-hour storm within the containment area or 110% of the volume of the largest tank, whichever is greater.
- There must be at least 5 feet of space between the tanks and any enclosures.
- Slope the secondary containment to drain to a dead-end sump (optional), or equivalent, for the collection of small spills.
- If the tank containment area is uncovered, equip the outlet from the spill-containment sump with a shutoff valve, which is normally closed and locked. Valves for flammables containment shall be made of steel. Valves for corrosives containment shall be compatible with the material being stored.
- The external valve may be opened manually only to convey contaminated stormwater to an approved treatment or disposal facility, or to convey uncontaminated stormwater to a storm drain. Evidence of contamination can include the presence of visible sheen, color, or turbidity in the runoff, or existing or historical operational problems at the facility. Simple pH measurements with litmus or pH paper can be used for areas subject to acid or alkaline contamination.
- At petroleum tank farms, convey stormwater contaminated with floating oil or debris in the contained area through an API or CP-type oil/water separator (Volume 5, Treatment BMPs) or other approved treatment facility prior to discharge to storm drain or surface water. Direct discharges may require additional permits from Department of Ecology or other agencies within jurisdictions.
- Loading racks and transfer areas associated with tank farms shall provide spill containment and treatment sized to encompass the largest vessel (trailer, railcar, intermodal tank) using the area.

#### **4.5.9.4 Required BMPs for Double-walled Tanks**

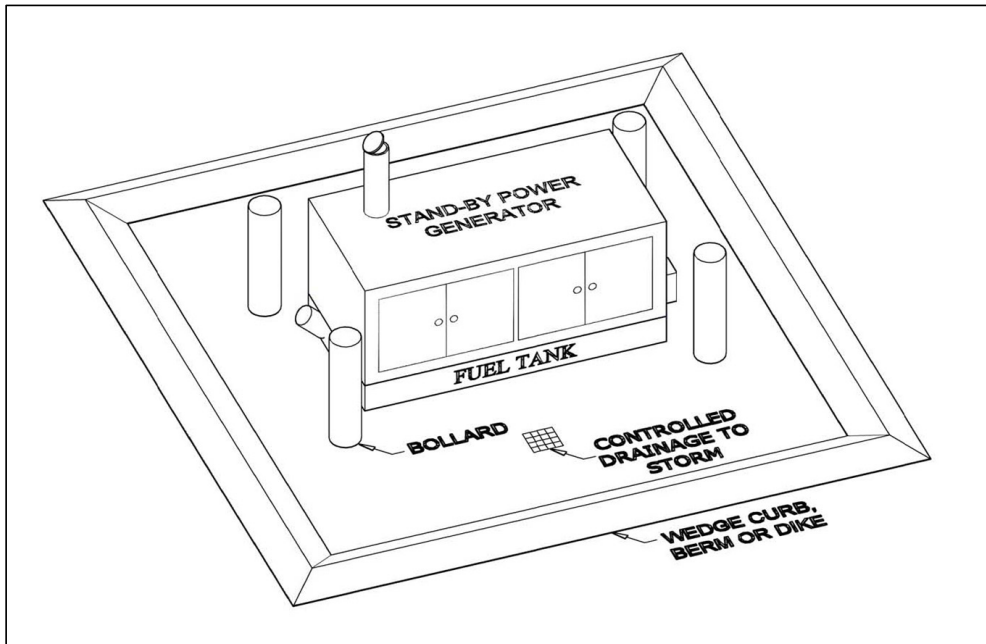
- Tank pads and the fuel delivery area should be protected from stormwater run-on and sized and sloped to capture any leaks or spills from the tank or fueling process.
- Feed and return lines from the tanks shall be doubled walled or entirely contained within the utility corridor.
- Catch basins receiving drainage from the tank pad and fueling area should be oversized and have downturned elbows in their outlets or flow to an appropriately sized oil/water separator.
- This section does not apply to temporary job-site fuel tanks. See Volume 2 for BMPs concerning spill management at construction sites.



**Figure 4 - 12. Above-Ground Tank Storage**



**Figure 4 - 13. Above-Ground Tank with Impervious Walls and Floor**



**Figure 4 - 14. Standby Generator**

## **4.5.10 BMP A410: Parking and Storage for Vehicles and Equipment**

### **4.5.10.1 Description of Pollutant Sources**

Parked vehicles at public and commercial parking lots and garages, such as retail stores, fleet vehicle (including rent-a-car lots and car dealerships), equipment sale and rental parking lots, and parking lot driveways, can be sources of toxic hydrocarbons and other organic compounds, oils and greases, metals, and suspended solids.

### **4.5.10.2 Required BMPs**

- If washing of a parking lot is conducted, discharge the washwater to a sanitary sewer (if allowed by the City of Tacoma) or other approved wastewater treatment system, or collect it for off-site disposal.
- Do not hose down the area to a storm drain or receiving water. Sweep (vacuum sweeping is preferred) parking lots, storage areas, and driveways regularly to collect dirt, waste, and debris.
- An oil removal system such as an API or CP oil and water separator, catch basin filter, or equivalent BMP (see Volume 5), approved by the City of Tacoma, is applicable for parking lots meeting the threshold vehicle traffic intensity level of a high-use site. For more information on high-use sites, refer to Volume 5, Chapter 1.
- Covered floors of parking garages with drains must drain to the sanitary sewer through an approved oil/water separator. Uncovered floors must be routed to the storm drainage system through an approved treatment device.

## **4.6 Construction and Demolition Activities**

### **4.6.1 BMP A501: Clearing, Grading and Preparation of Construction Sites**

This activity applies to businesses and municipal agencies that develop lands for construction. It also applies to residences that undertake large yard clearing and grading projects. Stormwater runoff from bare ground can be loaded with dirt and other pollutants. This material can clog ditches and stream channels, thus reducing carrying capacity and increasing flooding, as well as smothering spawning beds for fish. Simply controlling runoff and not allowing it to leave the site will prevent these harmful effects. Clearing, grading, and preparation activities are covered in detail in Volume 2 of this manual, Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention. Grading activities are also regulated in the City of Tacoma by the Grading and Excavation Code, Section 2.02.330 TMC.

Control of stormwater run-on and soil stabilization is critical. Limiting the area to be cleared and graded during wet weather seasons will make site stabilization and sediment control easier.

Coverage under Ecology's Construction Stormwater General Permit is required for construction sites that result in the disturbance of one acre or more of land. Compliance with the Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention requirements in Ecology's manual is required, as applicable.

### **4.6.2 BMP A502: Demolition of Buildings**

#### **4.6.2.1 Description of Pollutant Sources**

This activity applies to removal of existing buildings by controlled explosions, wrecking balls, or manual methods, and subsequent clearing of the rubble. The loose debris can contaminate stormwater. Pollutants of concern include toxic organic compounds, heavy metals, asbestos, and suspended solids.

#### **4.6.2.2 Required BMPs**

The following BMPs or equivalent measures are required of all businesses and public agencies engaged in building demolition:

- Identify and properly abandon all utility connections such as sanitary sewer, gas, fuel lines and tanks.
- If directed to keep water out of the storm system during demolition activity, storm drain covers or a similarly effective containment device must be placed on all nearby drains to prevent dirty runoff and loose particles from entering the storm drainage system. If storm drains are not present, dikes, berms, or other methods must be used to protect overland discharge paths from runoff. See BMP S102 and S107 for more information on runoff control and disposal options.
- Utilize storm drain inlet protection per Volume 2, BMP C220: Storm Drain Inlet Protection.
- Street gutters, sidewalks, driveways, and other paved surfaces in the immediate area of the demolition must be swept at the end of each work day to collect and properly dispose of loose debris and garbage.
- Sweep areas that show accumulation of materials. Vacuum sweeping is also an acceptable method of removing accumulated material.



### **4.6.2.3 Recommended BMPs**

The following BMPs are not required, but can provide additional pollution protection:

- Use dust control methods as described in Volume 2, BMP C140: Dust Control and/or per this volume BMP A601: Dust Control at Disturbed Land Areas and Unpaved Roads and Parking Lots.
- If possible, a wall should be constructed to prevent stray building materials and dust from escaping the area during demolition.
- Schedule demolition to take place at a dry time of the year.

### **4.6.3 BMP A503: Building, Repair, Remodeling and Construction**

#### **4.6.3.1 Description of Pollutant Sources**

This activity refers to activities associated with construction of buildings and other structures, remodeling of existing buildings and houses, and general exterior building repair work. Washing of buildings is covered under A103 Washing, Pressure Washing, and Steam Cleaning. Painting of buildings is covered under A307 Painting, Finishing, and Coating of Vehicles, Boats, Buildings, and Equipment. Concrete pouring is covered under A302 Concrete Pouring and Asphalt Application at Temporary Sites.

Pollutants of concern include toxic organics, suspended solids, heavy metals, asbestos, pH, oils, PCBs and greases.

#### **4.6.3.2 Required BMPs**

The following BMPs or equivalent measures are required of all businesses engaged in building repair, remodeling, and construction:

- Employees must be educated about the need to control site activities to prevent stormwater pollution, and also must be trained in spill cleanup procedures.
- Spill cleanup materials, appropriate to the chemicals being used on site, must be available at the work site at all times.
- The work site must be cleaned up at the end of each work day, with materials such as solvents put away indoors or covered and secured so that vandals will not have access to them.
- The area must be swept daily to collect loose litter, paint chips, grit, and dirt.
- Absolutely no substance can be dumped on pavement, the ground, or in or toward storm drains, regardless of its content, unless it is only uncontaminated water.
- Bermed ground or drop cloths must be used underneath scraping and sandblasting work. Ground cloths, buckets, or tubs must also be used anywhere that work materials are laid down.
- Tools covered with non-water-based finishes or other materials must be cleaned in a manner that enables collection of used solvents for recycling or proper disposal. See BMP S102 for disposal options.
- Inlet protection as described in Volume 2, BMP C220: Storm Drain Inlet Protection must be used if dust, grit, washwater, or other pollutants may escape the work area. This is particularly necessary on rainy days. Provide inlet protection of the storm drain at the beginning of the work day. Don't perform outdoor work during wet weather if contaminants could be washed off-site by rainfall.

#### **4.6.3.3 Recommended BMPs**

The following BMPs are not required, but can provide additional pollution protection:

- Recycle materials whenever possible.
- Use dust control methods as described in Volume 2, BMP C140: Dust Control and/or per this volume BMP A601: Dust Control at Disturbed Land Areas and Unpaved Roads and Parking Lots.
- Activities such as tool cleaning should occur over a ground cloth or within a containment device such as a tub.

## **4.7 Dust Control, and Soil and Sediment Control**

### **4.7.1 BMP A601: Dust Control at Disturbed Land Areas and Unpaved Roadways and Parking Lots**

#### **4.7.1.1 Description of Pollutant Sources**

Dust can cause air and water pollution problems particularly at demolition sites, disturbed land areas, and unpaved roadways and parking lots.

#### **4.7.1.2 Required BMPs**

- Sprinkle or wet down soil or dust with water as long as it does not result in runoff or a wastewater discharge. Minimize the amount of water to avoid washing pollutants into the storm drainage system. At active construction sites, street sweeping shall be performed prior to washing the street.
- Use only local and/or state government approved dust suppressant chemicals such as those listed in Ecology Publication #96-433, "Techniques for Dust Prevention and Suppression." See BMP C126, Polyacrylamide for Soil Erosion Protection, in Volume 2, Chapter 3 of this manual.
- Avoid excessive and repeated applications of dust suppressant chemicals. Time the application of dust suppressants to avoid or minimize their wash-off by rainfall or human activity such as irrigation.
- Use stormwater containment to prevent the conveyance of solids by stormwater into storm drains or receiving waters.
- The use of motor oil or other oils for dust control is prohibited. Care shall be taken when using lignin derivatives and other high BOD chemicals in excavations or areas easily accessible to surface water or groundwater.
- Consult with the Ecology Southwest Regional Office at 360-407-6300 on discharge permit requirements if the dust suppression process results in a wastewater discharge to the ground, groundwater, storm drain, or surface water.

#### **4.7.1.3 Recommended BMPs for Roadways and Other Trafficked Areas**

- Consider limiting use of off-road recreational vehicles on dust generating land.
- Consider paving unpaved permanent roads, approaches, exits, access lanes, and other trafficked areas at municipal, commercial, and industrial areas.
- Consider paving or stabilizing shoulders of paved roads with gravel, vegetation, or City of Tacoma approved chemicals.
- Encourage use of alternate paved routes, if available.
- Vacuum or wet sweep fine dirt and skid control materials from paved roads soon after winter weather ends or as needed.
- Consider using traction sand that is pre-washed to reduce dust emissions.

**4.7.1.4 Recommended BMPs for Dust Generating Areas**

- Prepare a dust control plan. Helpful references include Fugitive Dust Background Document and Technical Information Document for Best Available Control Measures (EPA-450/2-92-004).
- Limit exposure of soil (dust source) as much as feasible.
- Stabilize dust-generating soil by growing and maintaining vegetation, mulching, topsoiling, and/or applying stone, sand, or gravel.
- Apply windbreaks in the soil such as trees, board fences, tarp curtains, bales of hay, etc.
- Cover dust-generating piles with wind-impervious fabric, or equivalent material.

Additional information on dust control can be found in Volume 2 of this manual.

## **4.7.2 BMP A602: Dust Control at Manufacturing Sites**

### **4.7.2.1 Description of Pollutant Sources**

Industrial material handling activities can generate considerable amounts of dust that is typically removed using exhaust systems. This can generate air emissions that can contaminate stormwater. Dusts can be generated at cement and concrete product mixing facilities, foundries, and wherever powdered materials are handled. Particulate materials that are of concern to air pollution control agencies include grain dust, sawdust, coal, gravel, crushed rock, cement, and boiler fly ash. The objective of this BMP is to reduce the stormwater pollutants caused by dust generation and control.

### **4.7.2.2 Required BMPs**

- Clean building roofs, powder material handling equipment, and vehicles that can be sources of stormwater pollutants as needed to remove accumulated dust and residue.
- Regularly sweep dust accumulation areas that can contaminate stormwater. Sweeping shall be conducted using vacuum filter equipment to minimize dust generation and to ensure optimal dust removal.
- Minimize the amount of water used for dust control to avoid washing pollutants into the storm drainage system.

### **4.7.2.3 Recommended BMPs**

- In manufacturing operations, train employees to carefully handle powders to prevent generation of dust.
- Use dust filtration/collection systems such as bag house filters, cyclone separators, etc. to control vented dust emissions that could contaminate stormwater. It may be necessary to monitor rooftops for possible accumulations of materials and take appropriate measures to prevent this material from entering the storm drainage system. Control of dust at foundries, metal shredders, stone and tile cutting facilities, and material transfer and handling facilities are some examples.
- Use approved dust suppressants such as those listed in Ecology Publication "Techniques for Dust Prevention and Suppression," #96-433. (Ecology, 2003). Application of some products may not be appropriate in close proximity to receiving waters or conveyances close to receiving waters. For more information check with the Ecology Southwest Regional Office or the City of Tacoma.
- Use water quality treatment BMPs as necessary. Refer to Volume 5 for information regarding water quality treatment BMPs.
- Additional information on dust control can be found in Volume 2 of this manual.

### **4.7.3 BMP A603: Soil Erosion and Sediment Control at Industrial Sites**

#### **4.7.3.1 Description of Pollutant Sources**

Industrial activities on soil areas, exposed and disturbed soils, steep grades, etc. can be sources of sediments that can contaminate stormwater runoff.

#### **4.7.3.2 Required BMPs**

Permanently stabilize areas not being worked. Apply temporary cover to areas not immediately being worked. Refer to Volume 2 for additional information concerning temporary erosion protection measures.

## 4.8 Other Activities

### 4.8.1 BMP A701: Commercial Animal Handling Areas

#### 4.8.1.1 Description of Pollutant Sources

Racetracks, kennels, fenced pens, veterinarians, and businesses that provide boarding services for horses, dogs, cats, etc. can generate pollutants from activities such as manure deposits, animal washing, grazing, and any other animal handling activity that could contaminate stormwater. Pollutants can include coliform bacteria, nutrients, total suspended solids, and animal-related pharmaceuticals. Kennels shall be as defined in TMC 17.03.

#### 4.8.1.2 Required BMPs

- Regularly scoop, sweep and clean animal keeping areas to collect and properly dispose of droppings, uneaten food, and other potential stormwater contaminants.
- Do not hose down to storm drains or receiving waters those areas that contain potential stormwater contaminants.
- Contaminated water must go to the sanitary sewer. An animal fur/hair interceptor may be required.
- Do not allow any wash water to be discharged to storm drains or to receiving water. Wash water shall be conveyed to the sanitary sewer system.
- If animals are kept in unpaved and uncovered areas, the ground must either have vegetative cover or some other type of ground cover, such as mulch.
- If animals are not leashed or in cages, the area where animals are kept must be surrounded by a fence or other devices to prevent animals from moving away from the controlled area where BMPs are used.
- Uncovered outdoor runs shall not be connected to the sanitary sewer system unless approved by Environmental Services. No contaminated runoff may enter the storm drains.
- Unused pet pharmaceuticals shall not be discharged to the municipal sewer system. They shall be returned to the animal's owner or deposited to a drug take-back disposal facility. See <http://www.co.pierce.wa.us/pc/abtus/ourorg/sheriff/RxDropbox.htm> or <http://www.takebackyourmeds.org> for drop-off locations. See the City of Tacoma Medical Waste Sanitary Policy for additional information on medical waste disposal.

## **4.8.2 BMP A702: Log Sorting and Handling**

### **4.8.2.1 Description of Pollutant Sources**

Log yards are paved or unpaved areas where logs are transferred, sorted, debarked, cut, and stored to prepare them for shipment or for the production of dimensional lumber, plywood, chips, poles, or other products. Log yards are generally maintained at sawmills, shipping ports, and pulp mills. Typical pollutants include oil and grease, BOD, settleable solids, total suspended solids (including soil), high and low pH, heavy metals, pesticides, wood-based debris, and leachate.

Truck traffic to and from these facilities can track sediment onto roadways. An aggressive sweeping program is recommended to ensure sediment does not reach the storm system.

The following are pollutant sources:

- Log storage, rollout, sorting, scaling, and cutting areas
- Log and liquid loading areas
- Log sprinkling
- Debarking, bark bin, and conveyor areas
- Bark, ash, sawdust and wood debris piles, and other solid wastes
- Metal salvage areas
- Truck, rail, ship, stacker, and loader access areas
- Log trucks, stackers, loaders, forklifts, and other heavy equipment
- Maintenance shops and parking areas
- Cleaning areas for vehicles, parts, and equipment
- Storage and handling areas for hydraulic oils, lubricants, fuels, paints, liquid wastes, and other liquid materials
- Pesticide usage for log preservation and surface protection
- Application of herbicides for weed control
- Contaminated soil resulting from leaks or spills of fluids

### **4.8.2.2 Ecology's Baseline General Permit Requirements:**

Industries with log yards are required to obtain coverage under the baseline General Permit for Discharges of Stormwater Associated with Industrial Activities to Surface Water. The permit requires preparation and on-site retention of Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plans (SWPPP). The SWPPP must identify operational, source control, erosion and sediment control, and, if necessary, treatment BMPs. Required and recommended operational, source control, and treatment BMPs are presented in detail in Ecology's Guidance Document: Industrial Stormwater General Permit Implementation Manual for Log Yards, Publication # 04-10-031. It is recommended that all log yard facilities obtain a copy of this document.



### **4.8.3 BMP A703: Boat Building, Mooring, Maintenance and Repair**

#### **4.8.3.1 Description of Pollutant Sources**

Sources of pollutants at boat and ship building, repair, and maintenance facilities at boatyards, shipyards, ports, and marinas include pressure washing, surface preparation, paint removal, sanding, painting, engine maintenance and repairs, and material handling and storage, if conducted outdoors. Potential pollutants include spent abrasive grits, solvents, oils, ethylene glycol, washwater, paint over-spray, cleaners/detergents, paint chips, scrap metal, welding rods, resins, glass fibers, dust, and miscellaneous trash. Pollutant constituents include TSS, oil and grease, organics, copper, lead, tin, and zinc. Related activities are covered under the following activity headings in this manual, and other BMPs provided in this manual:

A103	Washing, Pressure Washing, and Steam Cleaning of Vehicles/ Equipment/Building Structures
A202	Fueling at Dedicated Stations
A407	Storage of Liquid, Food Waste or Dangerous Waste Containers
A714	Spills of Oil and Hazardous Substances

#### **4.8.3.2 Required BMPs**

The following BMPs or equivalent measures are required of all businesses, public agencies, and private boat owners engaged in boat building, mooring, maintenance and repair that are not covered by the NPDES permit for boatyards:

- Maintenance and repair activities that can be moved on-shore must be moved accordingly. This action reduces some of the potential for direct pollution impact on waterbodies.
- Blasting and spray painting activities must be sheltered by hanging tarps to block the wind and prevent dust and overspray from escaping. Move the activity indoors if possible. See Volume 4, Chapter 5 for details on Puget Sound Clean Air Agency limitations.
- Bermed ground cloths must be used for collection of drips and spills in painting and finishing operations, and for paint chips and used blasting sand from sand blasting.
- Collect spent abrasives regularly and store under cover to await proper disposal.
- Dispose of greasy rags, oil filters, air filters, batteries, zinc anodes, spent coolant, and degreasers properly.
- Drain oil filters before disposal or recycling.
- Bilge water must be collected for proper disposal rather than discharged on land or water. See BMP S102 for detail on disposal options. Several companies are available for bilge pumpout services. Use oil-absorbent pads to capture the oil in the bilge water before or during pumping. If pads are used, they must be recycled or properly disposed.
- Ballast water that has an oily sheen on the surface must be collected for proper disposal rather than discharged on land or water. See BMP S102 for details on disposal options.
- Sewage from sanitary holding tanks on ships must be approved for discharge to the sanitary sewer. Contact the City of Tacoma Source Control Unit at 253-591-5588.
- Solid wastes from international vessels must be evaluated on a case-by-case basis. Contact the City of Tacoma Solid Waste Division at 253-591-5544 for assistance. Galley

wastes may need to be taken to a United States Department of Agriculture Animal and Plant Health Inspection Service (APHIS) approved facility. For assistance, contact the local APHIS office during normal business hours at 206-553-2400 or 206-553-4406 after hours.

- Maintenance yard areas must be swept and cleaned, without hosing down the area, at least once per week or as needed. This prevents sandblasting materials, scrapings, paint chips, oils, and other loose debris from being carried away with stormwater. The collected materials must be disposed of properly. See BMP S102 for disposal options.
- Docks and boat ramps must be swept at least once per week or as needed, and the collected materials must be disposed of properly. Dry docks must be swept before flooding.
- Paint and solvent mixing, fuel mixing and similar handling of liquids shall be performed on shore, or such that no spillage can occur directly into surface waterbodies.
- Routine cleanup materials such as oil-absorbent pads, brooms, dustpans, shop vacuums, mops, buckets, and sponges must be stocked near docks.
- When washing a boat in the water, use no soaps or detergents. Brush the hull with water only.
- Comply with BMP A203 and A101 if engine repair and maintenance are conducted.
- In the event of an accidental discharge of oil or hazardous material into waters of the state or onto land with a potential for entry into state waters, immediately notify the yard, port, or marina owner or manager, the Department of Ecology, and the National Response Center at 1-800-424-8802 (24-hour). If the spill can reach or has reached marine waters, contact the U.S. Coast Guard at 206-217-6232.

#### **4.8.3.3 Recommended BMPs**

The following BMPs are not required but can provide additional pollution protection:

- Boat construction and structural repair activities should be covered.
- Materials such as paints, tools, and ground cloths should be stored indoors or in a covered area when not in use.
- Select the least toxic anti-fouling paint available.
- Boat interiors should be routinely cleaned, with proper disposal of collected materials, so that accumulations of water drained from the boat's interior are not contaminated.
- Use sanders that have dust containment bags or use vacuum sanders, and avoid sanding in windy conditions.
- All used oil should be recycled if feasible. Most marinas now offer used oil recycling services. To dispose of filters, let drain 24 hours, then double wrap in plastic and dispose in the regular garbage, or take them to the Tacoma Landfill Household Hazardous Waste facility for recycling. Pending state legislation may make disposal in the garbage illegal, so call the Hazardous Waste Line at 1-800-287-6429 for current information.
- Citizens for a Healthy Bay, a local environmental group, provides "Clean Bay Boating Kits." Call them at 253-383-2429 to obtain a free kit.
- Check with marinas for other BMPs they have developed.
- Use water quality treatment BMPs as necessary for the pollutants of concern. Refer to Volume 5 for information about water quality treatment BMPs.

- Check the Resource Manual for Pollution Prevention in Marinas, Publication # 98-11, May 1998 for additional information.
- Use clean, green boating practices. See <http://www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wq/nonpoint/cleanboating/> for additional information.

## **4.8.4 BMP A704: Logging**

### **4.8.4.1 Description of Pollutant Sources**

This activity covers logging activities that fall under the Washington State Forest Practices Act category of Class IV general forest practices. These are situations where timber harvesting is done in the process of converting forest lands into other land uses, such as home and business construction. Stormwater runoff from bare ground can be loaded with dirt and other pollutants. This material can clog ditches and stream channels, thus reducing carrying capacity and increasing flooding, as well as smothering spawning beds for fish. Simply controlling runoff and not allowing it to leave the site will prevent these harmful effects. Clearing and grading activities are covered in detail in Volume 2 of this manual, Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention. Grading activities are also regulated in the City of Tacoma by the Grading and Excavation Code, Section 2.02.370 TMC.

Control of stormwater run-on and soil stabilization is critical. Limiting the area to be cleared and graded during wet weather seasons will make site stabilization and sediment control easier.

Coverage under Ecology's Construction Stormwater General Permit is required for construction sites that result in the disturbance of one acre or more of land. Compliance with the Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention requirements in Ecology's manual is required, as applicable. Virtually all logging operations will require a permit from the Washington State Department of Natural Resources. Sensitive/critical areas and wetlands ordinances for Tacoma also contain requirements for logging activities in the vicinity of waterbodies.

Pollutants of concern include suspended solids, oils and greases, biochemical oxygen demand (BOD), nutrients, toxic organic compounds, and heavy metals.

### **4.8.4.2 Required BMPs**

- Vegetation along stream corridors, and adjacent to other waterbodies and wetlands, must be preserved. Maintenance of a vegetated buffer enables filtration of most of the pollutants of concern for this activity. The above-mentioned ordinances contain specific requirements for buffer setbacks.
- Logging access roads must have a crushed rock or spall apron construction entrance where they join the pavement to prevent sediments from being tracked onto the pavement.
- On-site fueling and maintenance operations must follow the required BMPs as outlined in A204 Mobile Fueling; A203 Vehicle Maintenance; and A407 Storage of Liquid, Food Waste, or Dangerous Waste Containers.

### **4.8.4.3 Recommended BMPs**

The following BMPs are not required, but can provide additional pollution protection:

- Erosion potential can be reduced by avoiding logging on steep slopes.
- If access roads are constructed for logging, they should be provided with drainage ditches that divert runoff into vegetated areas or stormwater treatment systems.
- Plant vegetated buffers in areas where they are already downslope of proposed logging areas, with sufficient lead time to allow for effective growth.

## **4.8.5 BMP A705: Mining and Quarrying of Sand, Gravel, Rock, Peat, Clay and Other Materials**

### **4.8.5.1 Description of Pollutant Sources**

This activity applies to surface excavation and on-site storage of sand, gravel, and other materials that are mined. All mining operations that have stormwater runoff from the site are required to apply for a National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (NPDES) permit with the Department of Ecology. Ecology has specific BMPs required by the permit. Some additional BMPs to help meet Ecology's discharge performance standards are listed below. Other permits from the Washington Department of Natural Resources and the City of Tacoma Building and Land Use Services Division may be required.

Pollutants of concern are suspended solids, nutrients, pH, oils, and metals.

### **4.8.5.2 Required BMPs**

- Measures to control track-out and dust shall be implemented. Wheel washes, sweeping, and paving high traffic areas are some common practices.

### **4.8.5.3 Recommended BMPs**

- If the material is appropriate, use excavated spoil material to form compacted berms along downslope sides of the site to contain runoff. Berms should be seeded to promote growth of grass or other vegetation to limit erosion from the berms. Safety measures to prevent flooding due to berm failure shall be considered.
- Semi-permanent stockpiles should be protected from erosion.
- Use sediment ponds to promote settling of suspended solids. Refer to Volume 5 of this manual for more information.
- Use anchored tarps to cover stockpiles at small-scale mining operations if there is a potential for contaminated stormwater to leave the site.
- Provide containment and or cover for any on-site storage areas to prevent run-on and discharge of suspended solids and other pollutants.

## **4.8.6 BMP A706: Swimming Pool and Spa Cleaning and Maintenance**

### **4.8.6.1 Description of Pollutant Sources**

This activity applies to all municipal and commercial swimming pools and spas, including Tacoma-Pierce County Health Department (TPCHD) regulated facilities. Pools and spas at hotels, motels, and apartment and condominium complexes are covered here. Pools at single-family residences are covered in Chapter 3 of this volume. Commercial pool and spa cleaning services must follow the required BMPs for all pools serviced.

Pollutants of concern include nutrients, suspended solids, chlorine, pH, and chemical oxygen demand (COD).

### **4.8.6.2 Required BMPs**

- The preferred method of pool or spa water disposal is to the sanitary sewer. If a sanitary sewer is available, all regulated facilities are required to connect for draining and backwash. Contact the City of Tacoma Source Control Unit at 253-591-5588 for specific instructions on allowable flow rates and timing before starting to drain the pool. Never discharge pool water to a septic system, as it may cause the system to fail.
- If discharge to the sanitary sewer is not possible, pool and spa water may be discharged to a ditch or storm drainage system, provided that the water has been dechlorinated first. The proponent is required to contact the City of Tacoma Source Control Unit at 253-591-5588 prior to discharge for instructions on allowable flow rates for the system or ditch that is being discharged to. All discharges shall be de-chlorinated to a concentration of 0.1 parts per million (ppm or mg/L) or less, and pH adjusted 6.5 to 8.5 standard units, if necessary. Neutralizing chemicals are available for dechlorinating water and adjusting the pH. Turbidity shall not exceed 10 NTU. Letting the pool or spa "sit" may also reduce chlorine levels. Use a test kit to determine if the chlorine concentration has reached zero and the pH is within acceptable limits.
- State law allows discharges of pool water to the ground, not to a water body or storm drainage system, with a chlorine level of up to 3 parts per million. However, the water must not cross property lines or impact neighboring properties, and a satisfactory means for distributing the water to the ground must be used so there is no runoff.
- Backwash from pool filters cannot be discharged to surface waters, storm drainage systems, septic systems, or on the ground.
- Diatomaceous earth used in pool filters cannot be discharged to surface waters, storm drainage systems, septic systems, or on the ground.

### **4.8.6.3 Recommended BMP**

- Hire a professional pool-draining service to collect all pool water for offsite disposal.

## **4.8.7 BMP A707: De-Icing and Anti-Icing Operations for Streets & Highways**

### **4.8.7.1 Description of Pollutant Sources**

Deicing and/or anti-icing compounds are used on highways, streets, and sidewalks to control ice and snow. Typically ethylene glycol and propylene glycol are deicers used on aircraft. Deicers commonly used on highways, streets and sidewalks include calcium magnesium acetate (CMA), calcium chloride, magnesium chloride, sodium chloride, urea, and potassium acetate. The deicing and anti-icing compounds become pollutants when they are conveyed to storm drains or to surface water after application. Leaks and spills of these chemicals can also occur during their handling and storage.

### **4.8.7.2 Required BMPs**

- Select de-icers and anti-icers that cause the least adverse environmental impact. Apply only as needed using minimum quantities.
- Where feasible and practicable, use roadway deicers, such as calcium magnesium acetate, potassium acetate, or similar materials that cause less adverse environmental impact than urea and sodium chloride.
- Store and transfer de/anti-icing materials on an impervious containment pad in accordance with BMP A401 Storage or Transfer (Outside) of Solid Raw Materials, By-Products, or Finished Products and A408 Storage of Liquids in Above-Ground Tanks.
- Sweep/clean up accumulated de/anti-icing materials and grit from roads as soon as possible after the road surface clears.

### **4.8.7.3 Recommended BMPs**

- Intensify roadway cleaning in early spring to help remove particulates from road surfaces.
- Include limits on toxic metals in the specifications for de/anti-icers.
- Additional guidance can be found in the Regional Road Maintenance - Endangered Species Act (ESA) program guidelines.
- State guidelines contain additional information for de-icing activities at airports.

## **4.8.8 BMP A708: Roof and Building Drains at Manufacturing and Commercial Buildings**

### **4.8.8.1 Description of Pollutant Sources**

Stormwater runoff from roofs and sides of manufacturing and commercial buildings can be sources of pollutants caused by leaching of roofing materials, building vents, and other air emission sources. Vapors and entrained liquid and solid droplets/particles have been identified as potential pollutants in roof/building runoff. Metals, solvents, acidic/alkaline pH, BOD, and organics are some of the pollutant constituents identified.

### **4.8.8.2 Required BMPs**

- Bare galvanized metal shall not be used for materials that convey stormwater, such as roofs, canopies, siding, gutters, downspouts, roof drains, and pipes. Any galvanized materials shall have an inert, non-leachable finish, such as a baked enamel, fluorocarbon paint (such as Kynar® or Hylar®), factory-applied epoxy, pure aluminum, or asphalt coating. Acrylic paint, polyester paint, field-applied, and part zinc (such as Galvalume®) coatings are not acceptable.
- If leachates and/or emissions from buildings are suspected sources of stormwater pollutants, these surfaces are considered pollution-generating impervious surfaces and may require treatment per Volume 1, Section 3.4.6 Minimum Requirements #6..
- If a roof/building stormwater pollutant source is identified, implement appropriate source control measures such as air pollution control equipment, selection of materials, operational changes, material recycle, process changes, etc.
- Water quality treatment BMPs are found in Volume 5 of this manual.



## **4.8.9 BMP A709: Urban Streets**

### **4.8.9.1 Description of Pollutant Sources**

Streets can be sources of vegetative debris, paper, fine dust, vehicle liquids, tire wear residues, heavy metals (lead and zinc), phthalates, soil particles, ice control salts, domestic wastes, animal wastes, lawn chemicals, and vehicle combustion by-products. Street surface contaminants have been found to contain significant concentrations of particle sizes less than 250 microns (Sartor and Boyd, 1972).

### **4.8.9.2 Required BMPs**

- Conduct efficient street sweeping where and when appropriate to minimize the contamination of stormwater. Do not wash street debris into storm drains.

### **4.8.9.3 Recommended BMPs**

- For maximum stormwater pollutant reductions on curbed streets and high volume parking lots, use efficient vacuum sweepers.
- High-efficiency street sweepers utilize strong vacuums and the mechanical action of main and gutter brooms combined with an air filtration system that only returns clean air to the atmosphere (i.e., filters very fine particulates). They sweep dry and use no water since they do not emit any dust.
- For moderate stormwater pollutant reductions on curbed streets, use regenerative air sweepers or tandem sweeping operations.
- A tandem sweeping operation involves a single pass of a mechanical sweeper followed immediately by a single pass of a vacuum sweeper or regenerative air sweeper.
  - A regenerative air sweeper blows air down on the pavement to entrain particles and uses a return vacuum to transport the material to the hopper.
  - These operations usually use water to control dust. This reduces their ability to pick up fine particulates.
- For minimal stormwater pollutant reductions on curbed streets, use mechanical sweepers.

**NOTE:** Mechanical sweepers are referred to as broom sweepers and use the mechanical action of main and gutter brooms to throw material on a conveyor belt that transports it to the hopper. These sweepers usually use water to control dust, reducing their ability to pick up fine particulates.

- Conduct sweeping at optimal frequencies. Optimal frequencies are those scheduled sweeping intervals that produce the most cost-effective annual reduction of pollutants normally found in stormwater and can vary depending on land use, traffic volume, and rainfall patterns.
- Train operators in those factors that result in optimal pollutant removal. These factors include sweeper speed, brush adjustment and rotation rate, sweeping pattern, maneuvering around parked vehicles, and interim storage and disposal methods.
- Minimize the amount of water applied for dust control to avoid washing pollutants into the storm drainage system.
- Street sweeping shall be performed prior to washing the street.
- Consider the use of periodic parking restrictions and public notification in residential areas to ensure the sweeper's ability to sweep along the curb.

- Establish procedures for prompt sweeping, removal, and disposal of spill clean-up materials and debris from special events that will generate higher than normal loadings.
- Disposal of street sweeping solids must comply with state solid waste regulations. Additional guidance can be found in the Regional Road Maintenance – Endangered Species Act (ESA) program guidelines.
- Inform citizens about the importance of eliminating yard debris, oil, and other wastes in street gutters in order to reduce street pollutant sources.
- When encountering questionable sweeping waste contact the City of Tacoma Source Control Unit at 253-591-5588 for guidance.

## **4.8.10 BMP A710: Railroad Yards**

### **4.8.10.1 Description of Pollutant Sources**

Pollutant sources can include drips/leaks of vehicle fluids and cargo onto the railroad bed; human waste disposal; litter; locomotive/railcar/equipment cleaning; fueling; outside material storage; the erosion and loss of soil particles from the railroad bed; maintenance and repair activities at railroad terminals, switching yards, and maintenance yards; and herbicides used for vegetation management. Waste materials can include waste oil, solvents, degreasers, antifreeze solutions, radiator flush, acids, brake fluids, dust, soiled rags, oil filters, sulfuric acid and battery sludges, machine chips with residual machining oil, and toxic fluids/solids lost during transit. Potential pollutants include oil and grease, TSS, BOD, organics, pesticides, and metals.

### **4.8.10.2 Required BMPs**

- Implement the applicable BMPs in this chapter depending on the pollutant generating activities/sources at a railroad yard facility.
- Do not allow toilets to discharge to outside areas while a train is in transit or at the station. Pumpout facilities shall be used to service train toilets.
- Use drip and track pans at hose/pipe connections during liquid transfer and other leak-prone areas.
- During maintenance do not discard debris or waste liquids along the tracks or in railroad yards.
- Promptly clean up all spilled materials.

In areas subject to leaks/spills of oils or other chemicals, convey the contaminated stormwater to appropriate treatment such as a CP or API oil/water separator for floating oils, or other appropriate treatment BMP (as approved by the City of Tacoma). See Volume 5. Prior to disposal, certain areas may require discharge to sanitary sewer.

## **4.8.11 BMP A712: Maintenance of Roadside Ditches and Culverts**

### **4.8.11.1 Description of Pollutant Sources**

Common road debris including litter, eroded soil, oils, vegetative particles, and heavy metals can be sources of stormwater pollutants.

### **4.8.11.2 Required BMPs**

- Inspect roadside ditches and culverts regularly, as needed, to identify sediment accumulations and localized erosion.
- Clean ditches and culverts on a regular basis, as needed. Ditches shall be kept free of rubbish and debris.
- Vegetation in ditches often prevents erosion and cleanses runoff waters. Remove vegetation only when flow is blocked or excess sediments have accumulated. Conduct ditch maintenance (seeding and harvesting) in late spring and/or early fall, where possible. Consider leaving segments of undisturbed vegetation to provide natural filtration.
- In the area between the edge of the pavement and the bottom of the ditch, commonly known as the “bare earth zone,” use grass vegetation, wherever possible. Vegetation shall be established from the edge of the pavement if possible, or at least from the top of the slope of the ditch.
- Diversion ditches on top of cut slopes that are constructed to prevent slope erosion by intercepting surface drainage must be maintained to retain their diversion shape and capability.
- Ditch cleanings are not to be left on the roadway surfaces. Promptly sweep dirt and debris remaining on the pavement as needed and at the completion of ditch cleaning operations.
- Roadside ditch cleanings not contaminated by spills or other releases and not associated with a stormwater treatment system such as a bioswale may be screened to remove litter and separated into soil and vegetative matter (leaves, grass, needles, branches, etc.). The soil fraction may be handled as ‘clean soils’ and the vegetative matter can be composted or disposed of in a municipal waste landfill.
- Roadside ditch cleanings contaminated by spills or other releases known or suspected to contain dangerous waste must be handled following the Dangerous Waste Regulations (Chapter 173-303 WAC) unless testing determines it is not dangerous waste. Specific cleanup standards are set forth in the Model Toxics Control Act (Chapter 70.105D RCW) and Regulations (Chapter 173-340 WAC).
- Inspect culverts on a regular basis for scour or sedimentation at the inlet and outlet, and repair as necessary. Give priority to those culverts conveying perennial and/or salmon-bearing streams and culverts near streams in areas of high sediment load, such as those near subdivisions during construction.
- Street waste shall be disposed of in accordance with Volume 4, Appendix D.

**4.8.11.3 Recommended BMPs**

- Install biofiltration swales and filter strips to treat roadside runoff wherever practicable and use engineered topsoils wherever necessary to maintain adequate vegetation. These systems can improve infiltration and stormwater pollutant control upstream of roadside ditches. Refer to Volume 5 of this manual for additional information about biofiltration swales and filter strips.
- Additional guidance can be found in the Regional Road Maintenance - Endangered Species Act (ESA) program guidelines.

## **4.8.12 BMP A714: Spills of Oil and Hazardous Substances**

### **4.8.12.1 Description of Pollutant Sources**

Owners or operators of facilities engaged in drilling, producing, handling, gathering, storing, processing, transferring, distributing, refining or consuming oil and/or oil products are required by Federal Law to have a Spill Prevention and Control Plan. The federal definition of oil is oil of any kind or any form, including, but not limited to, petroleum, fuel oil, sludge, oil refuse, and oil mixed with wastes other than dredged spoil. Specific regulations can be found in 40 CFR Part 112. These regulations are administered by the Environmental Protection Agency and the United States Coast Guard. Large petroleum handling facilities and vessels are also subject to regulations contained in Chapter 90.56 RCW and Chapter 173-180A WAC.

Owners of businesses that produce Dangerous Wastes are also required by State Law, Chapter 70.105 RCW and Chapter 173-303 WAC, to have a spill control plan. These businesses should refer to Chapter 5 of this volume. The City of Tacoma may also require a spill plan to protect the municipal sewer system and groundwater resources. Plans required by the above listed regulations may suffice.

### **4.8.12.2 Required BMPs**

- Prepare an Emergency Spill Control Plan (SCP), which includes:
  - A description of the facility including the owner's name and address.
  - The nature of the activity at the facility.
  - The general types of chemicals used or stored at the facility.
  - A site plan showing the location of storage areas for chemicals, the locations of storm and sanitary drains, the areas draining to them, the ultimate point of discharge, and the location and description of any devices to stop spills from leaving the site such as positive control valves;
  - Cleanup procedures and supplies.
  - Notification procedures to be used in the event of a spill, such as notifying key personnel. Agencies such as Ecology, Tacoma Fire Department, Washington State Patrol, City of Tacoma, U.S. Coast Guard, and the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency shall be notified.
  - The name and 24-hour contact telephone number of the designated person, and their alternate with overall spill cleanup and notification responsibility.
  - Identify contractors that can be contacted to provide spill clean-up and disposal services. A service agreement is encouraged.
- Train key personnel in the implementation of the Emergency SCP. Prepare a summary of the plan and post it at appropriate points in the building, identifying the spill cleanup coordinators, location of cleanup kits, and 24-hour phone numbers of regulatory agencies to be contacted in the event of a spill.
- Update the SCP regularly.
- Immediately notify Ecology and the City of Tacoma if a spill may reach sanitary or storm sewers, groundwater, or surface water, in accordance with federal and Ecology spill reporting requirements.

- Immediately clean up spills using appropriate personal protection equipment and following the facility safety standards. Do not use emulsifiers for cleanup unless an appropriate disposal method for the resulting oily wastewater is implemented. Absorbent material shall not be washed down a floor drain or storm sewer.
- Locate emergency spill containment and cleanup kit(s) in high potential spill areas. The contents of the kit shall be appropriate for the type and quantities of chemical liquids stored at the facility.

#### **4.8.12.3 Recommended BMPs**

- Spill kits should include appropriately lined drums, absorbent pads, and granular or powdered materials for neutralizing acids or alkaline liquids where applicable. In fueling areas: absorbent should be packaged in small bags for easy use and small drums should be available for storage of absorbent and/or used absorbent. Spill kits should be deployed in a manner that allows rapid access and use by employees.
- Example spill plans may be obtained from the Washington State Department of Transportation, the Environmental Protection Agency, and the City of Tacoma Source Control Unit.

#### **4.8.12.4 Additional Links**

- Washington State Department of Ecology, FOCUS: Small Spill Cleanup Guide  
<http://www.ecy.wa.gov/biblio/0308005.html>
- Washington State Department of Ecology, Hazmat Spill Contractor List:  
[http://www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/spills/response/hazmat\\_spill\\_contractor\\_list.pdf](http://www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/spills/response/hazmat_spill_contractor_list.pdf)
- Washington State Department of Ecology, Spill Reporting, 24/7 Numbers:  
<http://www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/spills/other/reportaspill.htm>
- Washington State Department of Ecology, Incident Command System and National Incident Management System  
<http://www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/spills/preparedness/Drills/ics.html>
- Washington State Department of Transportation, Spill Prevention Control and Countermeasures (SPCC)  
<http://www.wsdot.wa.gov/Environment/HazMat/SpillPrevention.htm>
- Environmental Protection Agency, Spill Prevention, Control and Countermeasure (SPCC)  
<http://www.epa.gov/oem/content/spcc/index.htm>
- Washington State Legislature, WAC 173-303-145 Spills and Discharges into the Environment  
<http://apps.leg.wa.gov/WAC/default.aspx?cite=173-303-145>

### **4.8.13 BMP A715: Water Reservoir, Transmission Mainline, Wellhead, and Hydrant Flushing Activities**

#### **4.8.13.1 Description of Pollutant Sources**

Construction and operation of drinking water infrastructure, as well as emergency response activities, can generate sediments, rust, turbidity and suspended solids, bacteria, and chlorinated water. Flushing of the water delivery system is necessary to maintain drinking water quality and ensure public health. Flushing activities can result in increased flows in downstream conveyances. These high flows may cause flooding and create erosion in downstream channels.

#### **4.8.13.2 Required BMPs**

- Discharges of untreated hyperchlorinated water must go to the sanitary sewer. Prior approval is required.
- Alternatively, non-emergency discharges of de-chlorinated potable water such as hydrant flushing may go to the storm drainage system at prior approved flow rates provided the following limits are met:
  - Chlorine residual 0.1 ppm
  - pH 6.5 – 8.5
  - Turbidity 10 NTU

Coordinate with the City of Tacoma Sewer Transmission section at 253-591-5585. The receiving storm pipe shall be monitored for the duration of the discharge.

- Evaluation of the receiving conveyance system for capacity and/or obstructions may be required.
- A Special Approved Discharge Authorization may be required for draining and flushing reservoirs, standpipes, wellheads, and transmission lines. Notification, monitoring, reporting, flow control measures, and other special conditions may apply. Contact the City of Tacoma Source Control Unit at 253-591-5588 for their requirements.
- Significant releases of water can have a detrimental effect on the storm and sanitary transmission system as well as receiving waters. Notification of these releases must be promptly made to Environmental Services by calling the 24-hour Operations Center at 253-591-5595.

#### **4.8.13.3 Recommended BMPs**

- During emergency repairs and activities, such as mainline breaks, erosion control measures shall be taken as practicable. Use of sandbags, check dams, plastic sheeting, pumps, and other erosion control measures should be employed to minimize erosion as much as possible.
- Excavation de-watering should be managed to minimize downstream environmental impacts. Use of vector trucks, diverting flow to grassy areas, filter bags, and retention ponds should be employed.



#### **4.8.14 BMP S101: Eliminate Illicit Storm Drainage System Connections**

A common problem found in the storm drain system for Tacoma is illegal hook-ups to the system. Conversely, discharging clean, uncontaminated water to the sanitary sewer system is also prohibited.

All businesses and residences in Tacoma shall examine their plumbing systems to determine if illicit connections exist. Any time it is found that toilets, sinks, appliances, showers and bathtubs, floor drains, industrial process waters, cooling towers, or other indoor activities are connected to the storm drainage system, the connections must be immediately rerouted to the sanitary or septic system, holding tanks, or process treatment system. Exceptions to this requirement would be those industries and businesses that have been issued an NPDES Permit by Ecology, and are allowed specific discharges under that permit. Please refer to Chapter 5 to determine if a specific type of business is required to have a NPDES permit.

Dye testing with a non-toxic dye, smoke testing, electronic locators, and television inspection equipment can help to determine where a pipe or structure drains if it is not obvious by observations or on plans. Contact the City of Tacoma Source Control Unit at 253-591-5588 for assistance in locating City structures adjacent to a property.

Drains which are found to be connected to the wrong system must either be permanently plugged or disconnected and rerouted as soon as possible. Permits must be obtained from The City of Tacoma (253-591-5030) to reroute drains. If the discharge is anything other than domestic, then a holding tank or on-site treatment may be necessary. Contact the City of Tacoma Source Control Unit at 253-591-5588 for assistance.

#### **4.8.15 BMP S102: Dispose of Contaminated Stormwater and Waste Materials Properly**

Every business and residence in Tacoma must dispose of solid and liquid wastes and contaminated stormwater properly. There are generally four options for disposal depending on the type of materials. These options include:

- Sanitary sewer and septic systems
- Recycling facilities
- Municipal or private, permitted solid waste disposal facilities
- Permitted hazardous waste treatment, storage, and disposal facilities

Many liquid wastes and contaminated stormwater (depending on the pollutants and associated concentrations present) can be put into the sanitary sewer. Animal wastes can also be disposed of in a sanitary sewer. A City permit may be required for discharges to the sanitary sewer system. Please contact Building and Land Use Services at 253-591-5030 and the Source Control Unit at 253-591-5588 for design and permit requirements. See Appendix D for Street Waste Management Requirements.

If wastes cannot be legally discharged to a sanitary sewer or septic system, one of the other three disposal options must be used. Recycling facilities are a recommended option for many commercial and household items, including used oils, used batteries, old equipment, glass, some plastics, metal scrap materials, solvents, paints, wood and land clearing wastes, and various other solid wastes.

Solid wastes that cannot be recycled and that are not hazardous must be disposed of at a licensed municipal solid waste disposal facility. Dangerous and hazardous wastes must be properly transported to an appropriate hazardous waste treatment, storage, and disposal facility. The City of Tacoma Solid Waste Section at 253-591-5543 can provide information on waste disposal options.

Maintain records for all materials that are recycled or disposed.

Appendix A of this volume has a list of telephone numbers to contact for assistance.

#### **4.8.16 BMP S103: Discharge Process Wastewater to a Sanitary Sewer, Holding Tank, or Water Treatment System**

This BMP is a minimum requirement for all industrial and commercial activities that generate contaminated process wastewater, such as washing activities, composting activities, and production and processing activities. The water used in these activities shall not drain to surface waters or groundwater untreated. Process water must drain to a sanitary sewer, holding tank, on-site treatment system, wastewater treatment system, or be recycled.

In order to connect to the sanitary sewer, contact Tacoma Building and Land Use Services at 253-591-5030 for information on sanitary sewer connection permits. Call the City of Tacoma Source Control Unit at 253-591-5588 for pretreatment and permit information.

If a sanitary sewer is not available, the only remaining options are holding tanks or an on-site wastewater treatment facility.

The contents of the holding tank must be pumped out or drained before the tank is full and disposed of properly (see BMP S102).

If the on-site wastewater treatment facility option is taken, then it must be designed to receive and effectively treat all discharges of process water from the business. The Washington State Department of Ecology must be contacted for approval of such a facility.

If the activity is to remain uncovered, then define a designated area for the activity and provide a mechanism for prevention of stormwater run-on into the activity area. (e.g. a curb, dike, or berm). The designated area shall be paved and sloped to a central collection drain and be connected to the sanitary sewer, (with pretreatment if required), the on-site holding tank, or the on-site treatment facility, whichever method is selected.

Monitoring and maintaining all collection systems and keeping records of inspections and maintenance may be required.

#### **4.8.17 BMP S108: Implement Integrated Pest Management Measures**

Use of herbicides, fungicides, and rodenticides should always be done with extreme caution, not only because of the potential harm to humans and pets, but also because of the potential harm to fish, wildlife, and our water resources. In light of the toxic nature of these compounds, special attention should be given to pesticide usage in all applications. The discussion below applies more to large-scale licensed pesticide users, but should be considered for backyard applications as well.

Commercial, agricultural, municipal, and other large scale pesticide users, such as golf courses and parks, should adhere to the principles of integrated pest management (IPM), a decision-making process for pest management that strives for intelligent, environmentally sound control of pests. It is a systems approach to pest management that combines agronomic, biological, chemical, and genetic information for educated decisions on the type of control to use, the timing and extent of chemical application, and whether non-chemical means can attain an acceptable level of pest control.

IPM is a preventive measure aimed at knowing the exact pests being targeted for control, the locations and times when pests will pose problems, the level of pest-induced damage that can be tolerated without taking action, the most vulnerable life stage, and control actions that are least damaging to the environment. The major components of IPM are as follows:

- Monitoring and inventory of pest populations
- Determination of pest-induced injury and action levels
- Identification of priority pest problems
- Selection and timing of least toxic management tools
- Site-specific treatment with minimized chemical use
- Evaluation and adjustment of pesticide applications

Monitoring of pest populations is a key to successful IPM implementation. Pest problems are universally easier to control if the problem can be discovered early. With IPM, pesticides are used only as a last resort. Maximization of natural controls, including biological controls and removal of pests by hand, is always the first choice.

Additional concerns are storage, equipment clean-up, spill protocols, and waste disposal.

More information on IPM is available from the Washington State Department of Agriculture and from the Washington State University Extension Service, or in Appendix C of this volume.

#### **4.8.18 BMP S109: Cleaning Catch Basins**

Cleaning catch basins regularly is one of the most important stormwater source control measures that a business can take. Catch basins are typically located at low spots in parking lots, along curbs and road edges, and where storm drain pipes combine flows. Catch basins collect surface runoff for storm drains that are typically located directly underneath them. Most catch basins have sumps. The sump is intended to trap sediments, debris, and other particles that can settle out of stormwater. All of the solids and stagnant water collected from catch basin sumps must be disposed of properly. The sump contents shall not be flushed into the catch basin outflow pipe.

For additional information on the maintenance of catch basins, refer to Volume 1, Appendix D. Perform regular inspections of the basins and their grates. Repair broken grates and catch basin structures. Remove trash and collected sediment when 60% of the sump depth has been filled or sediments are within 6 inches of the bottom of the outlet pipe, or if there is evidence of contaminants including oil and grease.

It should be apparent that the use of other BMPs, such as frequent sweeping of activity areas, covering activity areas, reducing activity occurrence, and containing run-off from activity areas will help reduce catch basin cleaning frequency, thus saving time and money. All businesses and agencies should set up maintenance schedules for all of their BMPs so coordinated BMP maintenance efforts results in reduced catch basin cleaning frequencies.

Use of catch basin inserts such as filter socks, absorbent pillows, and filter baskets require an increased inspection frequency to prevent plugging and flooding.

For a list of cleaning and sweeping services, go to [www.cityoftacoma.org/stormwater](http://www.cityoftacoma.org/stormwater).

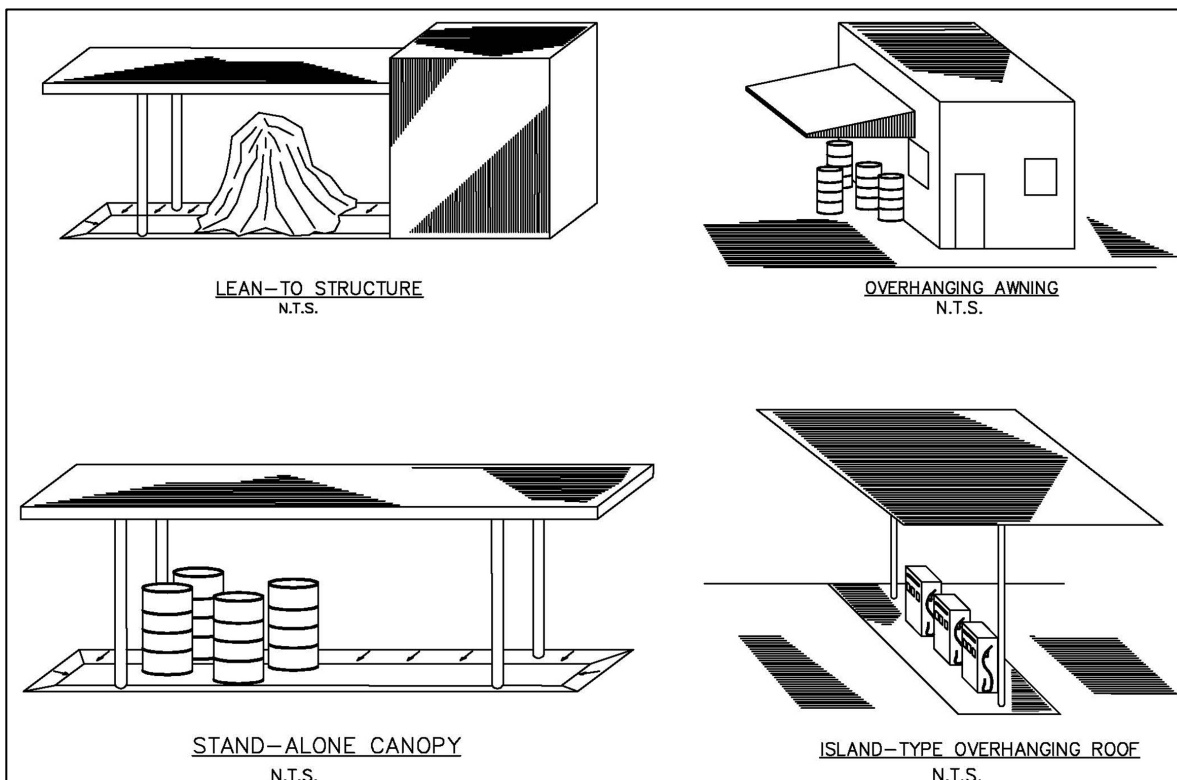
Dispose of street waste in accordance with Appendix D of this volume.

## 4.9 Cover and Surround Activities

### 4.9.1 BMP S104: Cover the Activity with a Roof or Awning

In many cases, a simple roof or awning will protect the activity from coming into contact with stormwater, and usually at a lower cost than a complete building. These structures require building permits to construct. Contact the Tacoma Building and Land Use Services Division at 253-591-5030 to obtain permits.

The area of the roof cover shall be sufficient to prevent any precipitation from reaching the covered materials. Provisions shall be made to prevent stormwater run-on into the covered area. The installation of sumps or sanitary sewer drains may also be necessary. Roof drains shall discharge outside and be directed away from the covered area. Examples of these types of structures are shown in Figure 4 - 15.



**Figure 4 - 15. Examples of Covered Activities**

### 4.9.2 BMP S105: Cover the Activity with an Anchored Tarp or Plastic Sheet

Some activities, such as stockpiling of raw materials, can be effectively covered with a sturdy tarp or heavy plastic sheet made of impermeable material. Weights such as bricks, tires, or sandbags should be used to anchor the cover in place. Run-on shall be prevented from reaching the activity or material. Stormwater run-off from the cover shall be directed away from the stockpile and work zone, and if uncontaminated, directed to the stormwater collection system. The tarp must be inspected daily to ensure that no holes or gaps are present in the tarp coverage. An example of this type of cover is shown in Figure 4 - 16.

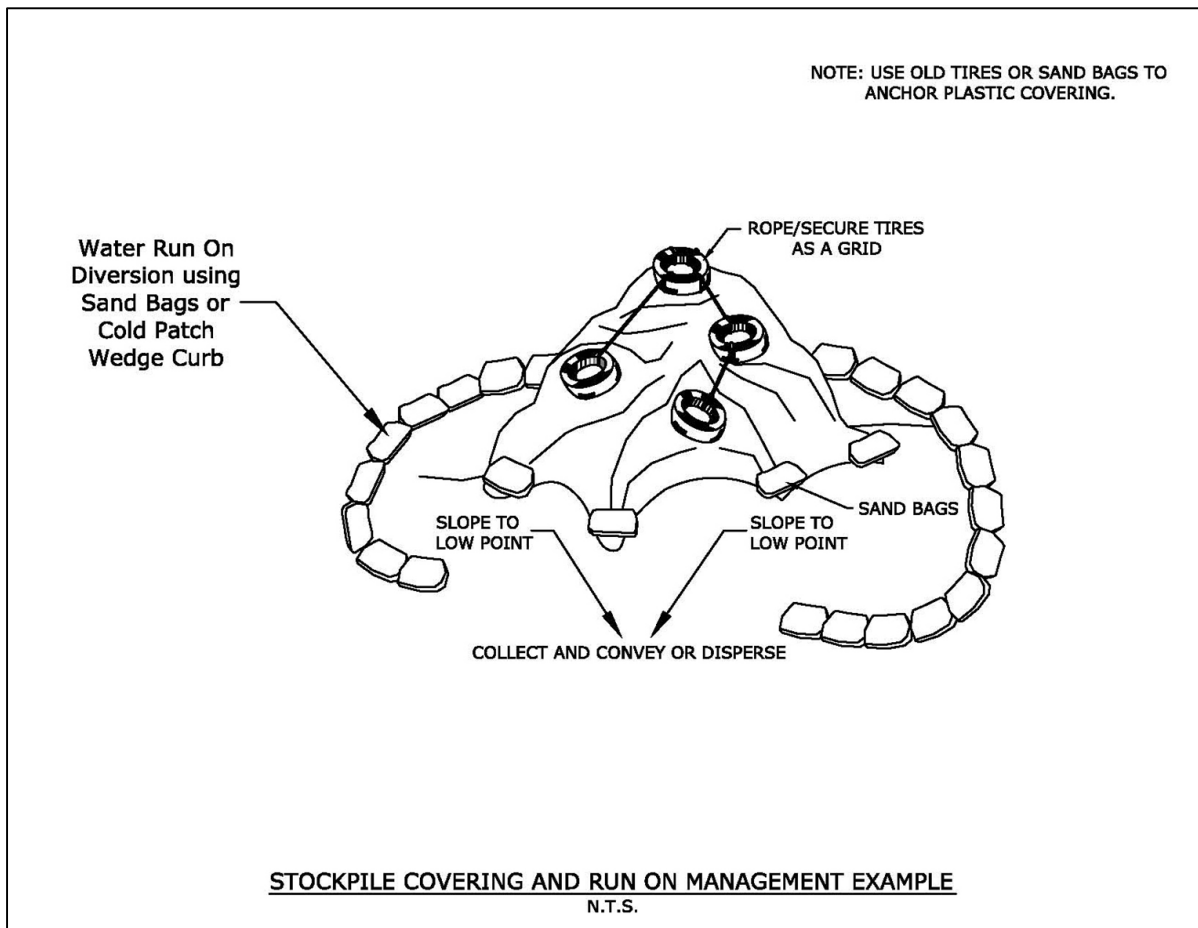
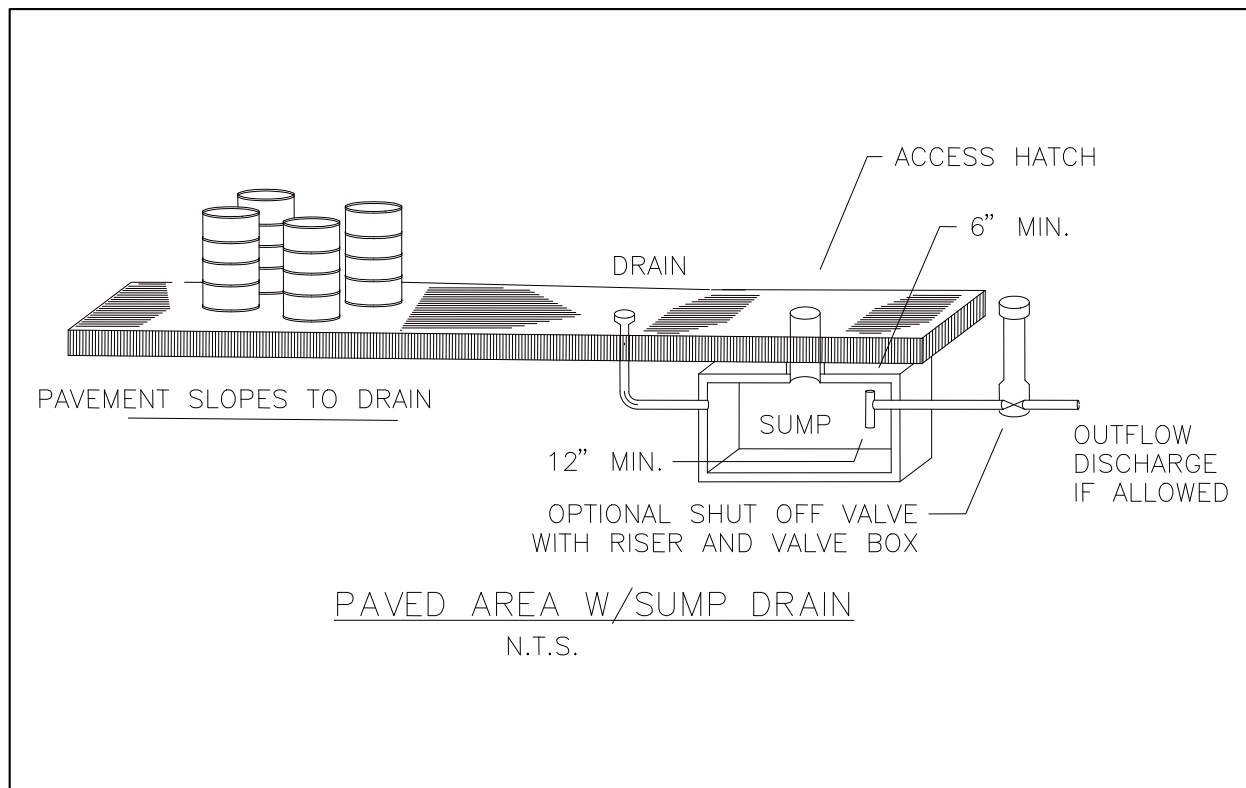


Figure 4 - 16. Tarp Covering

### 4.9.3 BMP S106: Pave the Activity Area and Slope to a Sump, Holding Tank, or Oil/Water Separator

This BMP applies to several activities that cannot be covered effectively. It is particularly suited to activities with the potential for leaks and spills, but that otherwise do not generate excessive amounts of polluted runoff. The activity area shall be paved and sloped to a central collection point. A sump, holding tank, or oil/water separator (Figure 4 - 17) serves to provide spill containment until the liquids can be pumped out and properly disposed. The minimum volume for the sump shall be equivalent to the volume generated by the anticipated activity plus rain water. Sizing justification shall be included in design submittals.

To prevent run-on, the area should be enclosed with a berm, curb, or dike. Frequent inspections of the sump, holding tank, or oil/water separator are necessary. Inspections and maintenance shall be recorded in a log. Commercial services that pump sumps and holding tanks are listed in the Yellow Pages of the phone directory under Environmental and Ecological Services.



**Figure 4 - 17. Paved Area with Sump Drain**



#### **4.9.4 BMP S107: Surround the Activity Area with a Curb, Dike, or Berm or Elevate the Activity**

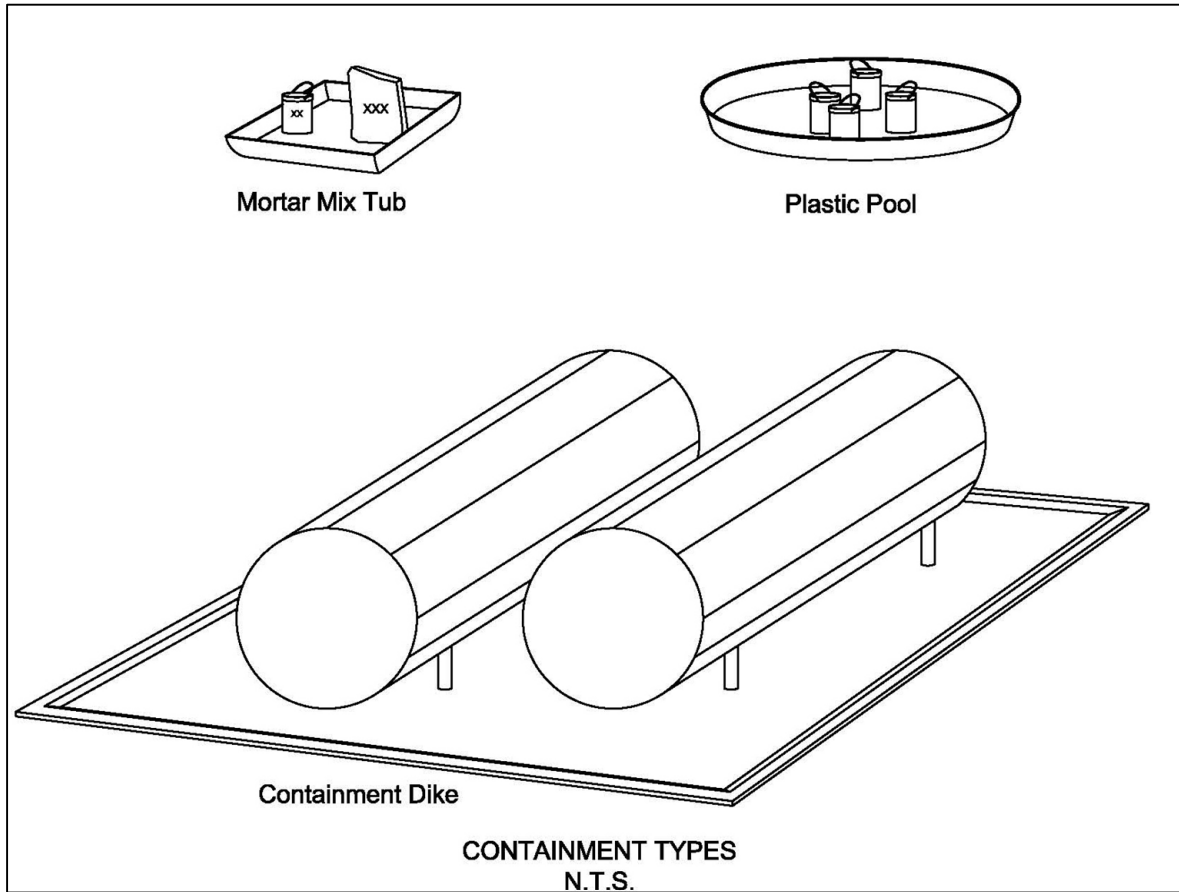
This set of BMP options can be an effective means for prevention of stormwater run-on to an activity area. In addition, a curb, berm, or dike can be used for containment of spills in the activity area, or for containment of contaminated activity runoff. Generally, a containment BMP is most applicable to spill control situations; that is, sites where runoff is relatively clean, but occasional spills may occur.

If a curb, berm, or dike is used for runoff containment, and other containment sizing regulations (such as fire codes, Environmental Protection Agency, Department of Ecology or Tacoma-Pierce County Health Department restrictions) do not apply, the containment volume shall be 100% of the volume of the largest tank plus the volume of stormwater runoff from rain events up to the 25-year, 24-hour storm within the containment area is contained or 110% of the volume of the largest tank, whichever is greater.

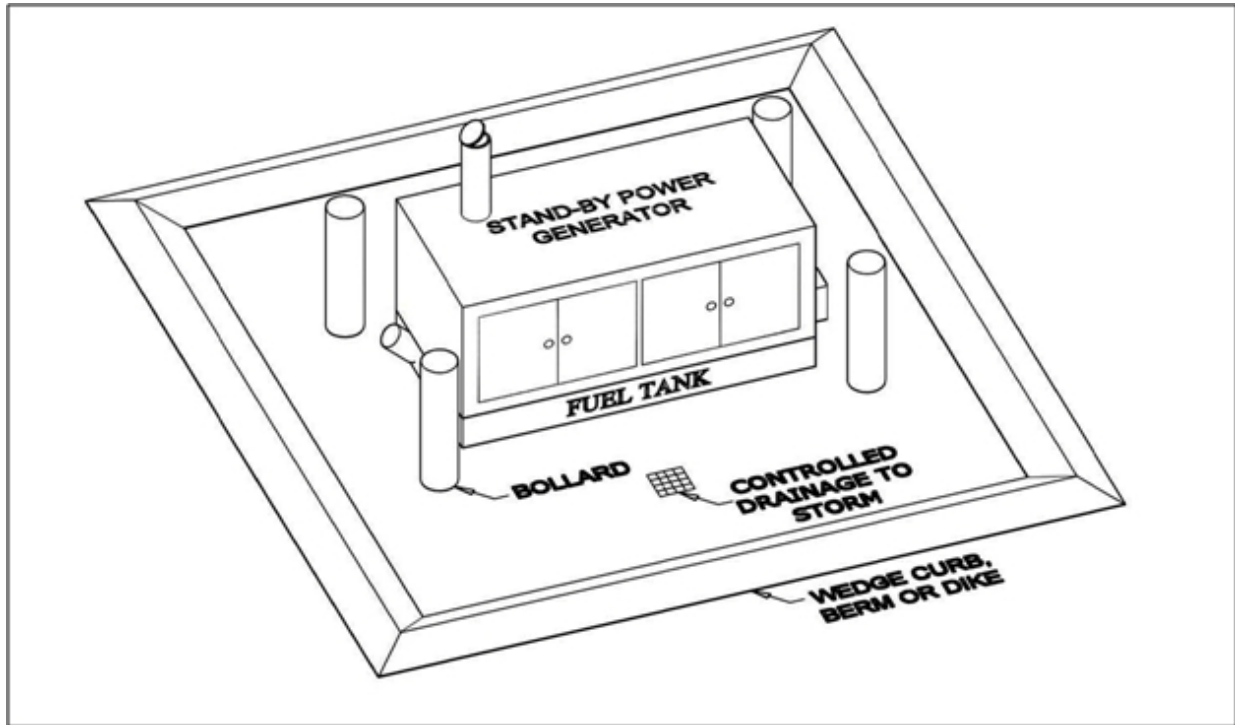
Impervious containment may consist of membrane lined soil enclosures, containment pallets, plastic pools, mortar mixing tubs, and water troughs.

Regular inspections of the containment area and proper management of any collected stormwater is required.

Development of a spill plan may be necessary for storage of liquids. See BMP A714. For permanent storage facilities see BMP A202, A401, A407, and A408.



**Figure 4 - 18. Containment Types**



*Figure 4 - 19. Standby Generator*

## Appendix A Quick Reference Phone Numbers

Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) - Region X	800-424-4372
City of Tacoma	
Stormwater Source Control	253-591-5588
Sanitary Source Control	253-591-5588
Pretreatment Program	253-591-5588
Building and Land Use Services (Permits)	253-591-5030
Fire Prevention Bureau	253-591-5740
Solid Waste Management Utility	253-591-5543
Household Hazardous Waste	253-591-5418
Recycling Services	253-591-5543
Tacoma-Pierce County Health Department	
On-Site Sewage and Underground Storage Tanks	253-798-4788
Hazardous Waste Section	253-798-6047
Solid Waste	253-798-6047
Pest Control Operators and Fumigators	253-798-6470
Washington State Department of Agriculture	360-902-2010 877-301-4555
Washington State Department of Ecology	360-407-6000
Southwest Regional Office	360-407-6300
Dangerous/Hazardous Waste	360-407-6300
NPDES Stormwater or Wastewater Permits	360-407-6400
Spill Reporting	800-424-8802
Recycling	800-732-9253
Groundwater Quality and Protection	360-407-6400
Underground and Above Ground Storage Tanks	360-407-7170
Washington State University/Pierce County Cooperative Extension	253-798-7180
Puyallup Tribe	253-597-6200
Puget Sound Clean Air Agency	800-552-3565

## Appendix B Recycling/Disposal of Vehicle Fluids and Other Wastes

The information in this appendix was obtained from Ecology's Hazardous Waste Program. For a copy of "Hazardous Waste Services Directory", Publication #91-12S, Revised December 1994, call Ecology's Hazardous Waste and Toxic Reduction Program at (360) 407-6721.

Material	Recommended Management
<b>Antifreeze</b>	Store separately for resale. Separate ethylene glycol from propylene glycol for off-site recycling. If not recyclable, send to Treatment, Storage, and Disposal Facility (TSDF) for disposal.
<b>Batteries</b>	INTACT: Accumulate under cover prior to sale, deliver to recycler or, return to manufacturer. BROKEN: Accumulate acid from broken batteries in resistant containers with secondary containment. Send to TSDF for disposal.
<b>Brake fluid</b>	Accumulate in separate, marked, closed container. Do not mix with waste oil. Recycle.
<b>Fuel</b>	Store gasoline, and diesel separately for use or resale. Mixtures of diesel, gasoline, oil, and other fluids may not be recyclable and may require expensive disposal.
<b>Fuel filters</b>	Drain fluids for use as product. With approval of local landfill operator, dispose to dumpster, if needed.
<b>Oil filters</b>	Puncture the filter dome and drain it for 24 hours. Put oil drained from filters into a "USED OIL ONLY" container. Keep drained filters in a separate container marked "USED OIL FILTERS ONLY." Locate a scrap metal dealer who will pick up and recycle filters. With approval of local landfill operator, dispose of drained filters to dumpster.
<b>Paint</b>	Accumulate oil-based and water-based paints separately for use or resale. If not recyclable, send accumulations to TSDF for disposal.
<b>Power steering fluid</b>	Same as for used oils
<b>Shop towels/oily rags</b>	Use cloth towels that can be laundered and reused. Accumulate used shop towels in a closed container. Sign up with an industrial laundry service that can recycle your towels.
<b>Solvents</b>	Consider using less hazardous solvents or switching to a spray cabinet that doesn't use solvent. Accumulate solvents separately. Consider purchasing a solvent still and recycling solvent on site. Do not mix with used oil. Do not evaporate as a means of disposal.
<b>Transmission oil, differential and rear end fluids</b>	Accumulate in your "USED OIL ONLY" container. Arrange for pickup for off-site recycling.
<b>Used oils; including, crankcase oil, transmission oil, power steering fluid and differential/rear end oil</b>	Keep used oil in a separate container marked "USED OIL ONLY." Do not mix with brake fluid, or used antifreeze. Do not mix with any other waste if material will be burned for heating. Arrange for pickup for off-site recycling.
<b>Windshield washer fluid</b>	Accumulate separately for use or resale. Discharge to on-site sewage disposal, or, if acceptable by the local sewer authority, discharge to sanitary sewer.



## **Appendix C Example of an Integrated Pest Management Program**

Integrated Pest Management (IPM) is a natural, long-term, ecologically based systems approach to controlling pest populations. This system uses techniques either to reduce pest populations or maintain them at levels below those causing economic injury, or to so manipulate the populations that they are prevented from causing injury. The goals of IPM are to encourage optimal selective pesticide use (away from prophylactic, broad spectrum use), and to maximize natural controls to minimize the environmental side effects.

A step-by-step comprehensive Integrated Pest Management (IPM) Program is provided below as a guide.

### **Introduction**

This section provides a sound cultural approach to managing lawns and landscapes and minimizing runoff. Many homeowners or property managers will be able to implement most or all of this approach. Others will wish to hire these services out. For the do-it yourselfer, an array of resources are available to assist in the effort. Landscaping businesses, agricultural extensions, local agencies, master gardener programs, local nurseries, and the library can all provide assistance. Landscaping professionals (businesses) are particularly encouraged to practice IPM.

### **Definition**

“Integrated pest management, or IPM, is an approach to pest control that uses regular monitoring to determine if and when treatments are needed, and employs physical, mechanical, cultural, and biological tactics to keep pest numbers low enough to prevent intolerable damage or annoyance. Least-toxic chemical controls are used as a last resort.”

True IPM is a powerful approach that anticipates and prevents most problems through proper cultural practices and careful observation. Knowledge of the life cycles of the host plants and both beneficial and pest organisms is also important. The IPM section of this example is adapted from “Least Toxic Pest Management for Lawns” by Sheila Daar. Following the IPM process yields the information needed to minimize damage by weeds, diseases, and pests and to treat those problems with the least toxic approaches.

### **The Integrated Pest Management Process**

#### **Step 1. Correctly identify problem pests and understand their life cycle.**

Learn more about the pest. Observe it and pay attention to any damage that may be occurring. Learn about the life cycle. Many pests are only a problem during certain seasons, or can only be treated effectively in certain phases of the life cycle.

#### **Step 2. Establish tolerance thresholds for pests.**

Every landscape has a population of some pest insects, weeds, and diseases. This is good because it supports a population of beneficial species that keep pest numbers in check. Beneficial organisms may compete with, eat, or parasitize disease or pest organisms. Decide on the level of infestation that must be exceeded before treatment needs to be considered. Pest populations under this threshold should be monitored but don't need treatment. For instance, European crane flies usually don't do serious damage to a lawn unless there are between 25-40 larvae per square foot feeding on the turf in February (in normal weather years). Also, most

people consider a lawn healthy and well maintained even with up to 20% weed cover, so treatment, other than continuing good maintenance practices, is generally unnecessary.

### **Step 3. Monitor to detect and prevent pest problems.**

Regular monitoring is a key practice to anticipate and prevent major pest outbreaks. It begins with a visual evaluation of the lawn or landscape's condition. Take a few minutes before mowing to walk around and look for problems. Keep a notebook, record when and where a problem occurs, then monitor for it at about the same time in future years. Specific monitoring techniques can be used in the appropriate season for some potential problem pests, such as European crane fly.

### **Step 4. Modify the maintenance program to promote healthy plants and discourage pests.**

A healthy landscape is resistant to most pest problems. Lawn aeration and overseeding along with proper mowing height, fertilization, and irrigation will help the grass out-compete weeds. Correcting drainage problems and letting soil dry out between waterings in the summer may reduce the number of crane-fly larvae that survive.

### **Step 5. If pests exceed the tolerance thresholds**

Use cultural, physical, mechanical, or biological controls first. If those prove insufficient, use the chemical controls described below that have the least non-target impact. When a pest outbreak strikes (or monitoring shows one is imminent), implement IPM then consider control options that are the least toxic, or have the least non-target impact. Here are two examples of an IPM approach:

- **Red thread disease** is most likely under low nitrogen fertility conditions and most severe during slow growth conditions. Mow and bag the clippings to remove diseased blades. Fertilize lightly to help the grass recover, then begin grasscycling and change to fall fertilization with a slow-release or natural-organic fertilizer to provide an even supply of nutrients. Chemical fungicides are not recommended because red thread cannot kill the lawn.
- **Crane fly damage** is most prevalent on lawns that stay wet in the winter and are irrigated in the summer. Correct the winter drainage and/or allow the soil to dry between irrigation cycles; larvae are susceptible to drying out, so these changes can reduce their numbers. It may also be possible to reduce crane fly larvae numbers by using a power de-thatcher on a cool, cloudy day when feeding is occurring close to the surface. Studies are being conducted using beneficial nematodes that parasitize the crane fly larvae; this type of treatment may eventually be a reasonable alternative.

Only after trying suitable non-chemical control methods, or determining that the pest outbreak is causing too much serious damage, should chemical controls be considered. Study to determine what products are available and choose a product that is the least toxic and has the least non-target impact. Refer to the Operational BMPs for the use of Pesticides below for guidelines on choosing, storing, and using lawn and garden chemicals.

### **Step 6. Evaluate and record the effectiveness of the control, and modify maintenance practices to support lawn or landscape recovery and prevent recurrence.**

Keep records! Note when, where, and what symptoms occurred, or when monitoring revealed a potential pest problem. Note what controls were applied and when, and the effectiveness of the control. Monitor next year for the same problems. Review your landscape maintenance and cultural practices to see if they can be modified to prevent or reduce the problem.



A comprehensive IPM Program should also include the proper use of pesticides as a last resort, and vegetation/fertilizer management to eliminate or minimize the contamination of stormwater.

## Appendix D Management of Street Wastes

### D.1 Street Waste Liquids

Street waste collection should emphasize retention of solids over liquids. Street waste solids are the principal objective in street waste collection, and are easier to store and treat than liquids.

Street waste liquids require treatment before discharge. Street waste liquids usually contain high amounts of suspended, total solids and adsorbed metals. Treatment requirements depend on the discharge location.

Discharges to sanitary sewer and storm sewer systems must be approved by City of Tacoma Source Control.

The following order of preference for disposal of catch basin decant liquid and water removed from stormwater treatment facilities is required.

1. Discharge of catch basin liquids to the City of Tacoma municipal sanitary sewer system. Discharges may require a Special Approved Discharge (SAD) Permit from City of Tacoma Source Control. Call 253-591-5588 for additional information on SAD permits.
2. Discharge of catch basin decant liquids may be allowed into a basic or enhanced stormwater treatment BMP, only if option 1 is not feasible. Decant liquid may be discharged back into the storm system under the following conditions:
  - Discharge to the sanitary sewer is not feasible, and
  - Discharge is to a basic or enhanced stormwater treatment facility, and
  - The discharge is as near to the treatment facility as practical, and
  - The storm system owner has granted approval and has determined that the treatment facility will accommodate the increased loading.

Visible sheen is not permitted to be discharged. If decant water contains visible sheen, additional treatment is required.

Flocculants for the pretreatment of decant liquid must be non-toxic under the circumstances of use and must be approved in advance by the Washington State Department of Ecology.

3. Water removed from stormwater BMPs that are intended to impound water as part of their function may be returned to the stormwater system. The following conditions apply:
  - Clean water removed from a stormwater treatment structure may be discharged directly to a downgradient cell of a treatment facility, or into the storm sewer system.
  - Turbid water may be discharged back into the facility it was removed from if:
    - The removed water has been stored in a clean container, and
    - There will be no discharge from the treatment structure for at least 24 hours.
  - The discharge must be approved by the facility owner.

## **D.2 Street Waste Solids**

Street waste is a solid waste. Contact the City of Tacoma Solid Waste Section at 253-591-5543 for information on solid waste disposal. The following guidelines should be followed for handling solid street waste:

- Street waste that is suspected to be a hazardous or dangerous waste should not be collected with other street waste.
- Spills should be handled by trained professionals. Contact the City of Tacoma Source Control for additional information on spills at 253-591-5588.
- Street waste may require testing to determine its disposal requirements.



# Table of Contents

## Volume 5 - Water Quality Treatment BMPs

Purpose of this Volume . . . . .	5-1
Content and Organization of this Volume . . . . .	5-1
<b>Chapter 1 Treatment Facility Selection Process . . . . .</b>	<b>5-2</b>
1.1 Step-by-Step Selection Process for Treatment Facilities . . . . .	5-2
<b>Chapter 2 Treatment Facility Menus . . . . .</b>	<b>5-5</b>
2.1 Oil Control Menu . . . . .	5-5
2.1.1 Performance Goal . . . . .	5-5
2.1.2 Options . . . . .	5-5
2.1.3 Application on the Project Site . . . . .	5-6
2.2 Phosphorus Treatment Menu . . . . .	5-6
2.2.1 Performance Goal . . . . .	5-6
2.2.2 Options . . . . .	5-6
2.3 Enhanced Treatment Menu . . . . .	5-7
2.3.1 Performance Goal . . . . .	5-7
2.3.2 Options . . . . .	5-7
2.4 Basic Treatment Menu . . . . .	5-8
2.4.1 Performance Goal . . . . .	5-8
2.4.2 Options . . . . .	5-8
<b>Chapter 3 General Requirements for Stormwater Facilities . . . . .</b>	<b>5-10</b>
3.1 Design Flow Volume and Flow Rate . . . . .	5-10
3.1.1 Water Quality Design Flow Volume . . . . .	5-10
3.1.2 Water Quality Design Flow Rate . . . . .	5-10
3.1.3 Flows Requiring Treatment . . . . .	5-11
3.2 Sequence of Facilities . . . . .	5-11
3.3 Setbacks . . . . .	5-12
3.4 Easements, Access, and Dedicated Tracts . . . . .	5-13
3.5 Materials . . . . .	5-13
3.6 Maintenance of Stormwater Facilities . . . . .	5-13
<b>Chapter 4 Facility Liners . . . . .</b>	<b>5-14</b>
4.1 General Design Criteria . . . . .	5-14
4.2 Design Criteria for Low Permeability Liner Options . . . . .	5-16
4.2.1 Compacted Till Liners . . . . .	5-16
4.2.2 Clay Liners . . . . .	5-16
4.2.3 Geomembrane Liners . . . . .	5-16
4.2.4 Concrete Liners . . . . .	5-17
<b>Chapter 5 Hydraulic Structures . . . . .</b>	<b>5-18</b>
5.1 Flow Splitter Designs . . . . .	5-18
5.1.1 General Design Criteria . . . . .	5-18
5.1.2 Materials . . . . .	5-18
5.1.3 Maintenance . . . . .	5-19

5.2 Flow Spreading Options . . . . . 5-21

    5.2.1 General Design Criteria . . . . . 5-22

    5.2.2 Maintenance . . . . . 5-26

**Chapter 6 Pretreatment . . . . . 5-27**

    6.1 Purpose. . . . . 5-27

    6.2 Application. . . . . 5-27

    6.3 Best Management Practices (BMPs) for Pretreatment . . . . . 5-27

        6.3.1 BMP T610 Presettling Basin . . . . . 5-27

            6.3.1.1 Purpose and Definition. . . . . 5-27

            6.3.1.2 Application and Limitations . . . . . 5-27

            6.3.1.3 Design Criteria . . . . . 5-27

**Chapter 7 Infiltration and Bio-infiltration Treatment Facilities . . . . . 5-28**

    7.1 Purpose. . . . . 5-28

    7.2 Application. . . . . 5-28

    7.3 Site Suitability . . . . . 5-28

        7.3.1 Setback Criteria. . . . . 5-28

        7.3.2 Groundwater Protection Areas . . . . . 5-29

        7.3.3 High Vehicle Traffic Areas . . . . . 5-29

        7.3.4 Soil Infiltration Rate/Drawdown Time for Treatment . . . . . 5-29

            7.3.4.1 Infiltration Rates: Short-term and Long-term . . . . . 5-29

            7.3.4.2 Drawdown Time . . . . . 5-30

        7.3.5 Depth to Bedrock, Water Table, or Impermeable Layer . . . . . 5-30

        7.3.6 Soil Physical and Chemical Suitability for Treatment . . . . . 5-30

        7.3.7 Seepage Analysis and Control . . . . . 5-30

        7.3.8 Cold Climate and Impact of Roadway Deicers . . . . . 5-31

    7.4 Site Characterization. . . . . 5-31

        7.4.1 Field Methods used to Determine Subsurface Characterization . . . . . 5-31

            7.4.1.1 Test Holes or Pits. . . . . 5-31

            7.4.1.2 Infiltration Rate Determination . . . . . 5-32

            7.4.1.3 Infiltration Receptor . . . . . 5-32

        7.4.2 Design Infiltration Rate Determination. . . . . 5-33

            7.4.2.1 General Sizing Criteria . . . . . 5-33

            7.4.2.2 General Design Criteria . . . . . 5-33

            7.4.2.3 General Construction Criteria. . . . . 5-34

            7.4.2.4 Maintenance Criteria . . . . . 5-34

            7.4.2.5 Verification Testing of the Completed Facility . . . . . 5-34

    7.5 Best Management Practices (BMPs) for Infiltration Treatment. . . . . 5-35

        7.5.1 BMP T710 Infiltration Basins . . . . . 5-35

            7.5.1.1 Description . . . . . 5-35

            7.5.1.2 Design Criteria Specific for Basins. . . . . 5-35

            7.5.1.3 Maintenance Criteria for Basins . . . . . 5-35

        7.5.2 BMP T720 Infiltration Trenches . . . . . 5-35

            7.5.2.1 Description . . . . . 5-35

            7.5.2.2 Design Criteria . . . . . 5-36

            7.5.2.3 Construction Criteria . . . . . 5-36

            7.5.2.4 Maintenance Criteria . . . . . 5-37

**Chapter 8 Sand Filtration Treatment Facilities . . . . . 5-38**

    8.1 Purpose. . . . . 5-38

8.2 Description . . . . .	5-38
8.3 Applications and Limitations . . . . .	5-43
8.4 Site Suitability . . . . .	5-43
8.5 Design Criteria . . . . .	5-43
8.5.1 Objective . . . . .	5-43
8.5.2 Sand Filter Sizing . . . . .	5-43
8.6 Construction Criteria . . . . .	5-46
8.7 Maintenance Criteria . . . . .	5-46
8.7.1 BMP T810 Sand Filter Vault . . . . .	5-47
8.7.1.1 Description (Figure 5 - 13 and Figure 5 - 14) . . . . .	5-47
8.7.1.2 Applications and Limitations . . . . .	5-47
8.7.1.3 Additional Design Criteria for Vaults . . . . .	5-47
8.7.2 BMP T820 Linear Sand Filter . . . . .	5-50
8.7.2.1 Description . . . . .	5-50
8.7.2.2 Application and Limitations . . . . .	5-50
8.7.2.3 Additional Design Criteria for Linear Sand Filters . . . . .	5-50
<b>Chapter 9 Biofiltration Treatment Facilities . . . . .</b>	<b>5-52</b>
9.1 Purpose . . . . .	5-52
9.2 Applications . . . . .	5-52
9.3 Site Suitability . . . . .	5-52
9.4 Best Management Practices . . . . .	5-52
9.4.1 BMP T910 Basic Biofiltration Swale . . . . .	5-53
9.4.1.1 Description . . . . .	5-53
9.4.1.2 Design Criteria . . . . .	5-53
9.4.1.3 Bypass Guidance . . . . .	5-56
9.4.1.4 Sizing Procedure for Biofiltration Swales . . . . .	5-56
9.4.1.5 Soil Criteria . . . . .	5-65
9.4.1.6 Vegetation Criteria . . . . .	5-65
9.4.1.7 Construction Criteria . . . . .	5-65
9.4.1.8 Maintenance Criteria . . . . .	5-66
9.4.2 BMP T920 Wet Biofiltration Swale . . . . .	5-70
9.4.2.1 Description . . . . .	5-70
9.4.2.2 Performance Objectives . . . . .	5-70
9.4.2.3 Applications/Limitations . . . . .	5-70
9.4.2.4 Design Criteria . . . . .	5-70
9.4.3 BMP T930 Continuous Inflow Biofiltration Swale . . . . .	5-72
9.4.3.1 Description . . . . .	5-72
9.4.3.2 Applications . . . . .	5-72
9.4.3.3 Design Criteria . . . . .	5-72
9.4.4 BMP T940 Basic and Compost-Amended Filter Strip . . . . .	5-73
9.4.4.1 Description . . . . .	5-73
9.4.4.2 Applications/Limitations . . . . .	5-73
9.4.4.3 Design Criteria for Filter strips . . . . .	5-73
9.4.4.4 Sizing Procedure . . . . .	5-74
9.4.4.5 Maintenance . . . . .	5-75
9.4.5 BMP T950 Narrow Area Filter Strip . . . . .	5-76
9.4.5.1 Description . . . . .	5-76
9.4.5.2 Applications/Limitations . . . . .	5-76
9.4.5.3 Design Criteria . . . . .	5-76
<b>Chapter 10 Wetpool Facilities . . . . .</b>	<b>5-78</b>

10.1 Purpose . . . . . 5-78

10.2 Best Management Practices . . . . . 5-78

    10.2.1 BMP T1010 Wetponds - Basic and Large . . . . . 5-79

        10.2.1.1 Description . . . . . 5-79

        10.2.1.2 Design Criteria . . . . . 5-79

        10.2.1.3 Sizing Procedure . . . . . 5-82

        10.2.1.4 Wetpool Geometry . . . . . 5-83

        10.2.1.5 Berms, Baffles, and Slopes . . . . . 5-83

        10.2.1.6 Embankments . . . . . 5-84

        10.2.1.7 Inlet and Outlet . . . . . 5-84

        10.2.1.8 Access and Setbacks . . . . . 5-85

        10.2.1.9 Planting Requirements . . . . . 5-85

        10.2.1.10 Recommended Design Features . . . . . 5-85

        10.2.1.11 Construction Criteria . . . . . 5-88

        10.2.1.12 Maintenance . . . . . 5-88

    10.2.2 BMP T1020 Wetvaults . . . . . 5-89

        10.2.2.1 Description . . . . . 5-89

        10.2.2.2 Applications and Limitations: . . . . . 5-89

        10.2.2.3 Design Criteria . . . . . 5-89

        10.2.2.4 Wetpool Geometry . . . . . 5-91

        10.2.2.5 Vault Structure . . . . . 5-91

        10.2.2.6 Inlet and Outlet . . . . . 5-92

        10.2.2.7 Access Requirements . . . . . 5-92

        10.2.2.8 Access Roads, Right of Way, and Setbacks . . . . . 5-92

        10.2.2.9 Recommended Design Features . . . . . 5-92

        10.2.2.10 Construction Criteria . . . . . 5-93

        10.2.2.11 Maintenance . . . . . 5-93

        10.2.2.12 Modifications for Combining with a Baffle Oil/Water Separator . . . . . 5-93

    10.2.3 BMP T1030 Stormwater Treatment Wetlands . . . . . 5-94

        10.2.3.1 Description . . . . . 5-94

        10.2.3.2 Applications and Limitations . . . . . 5-94

        10.2.3.3 Design Criteria . . . . . 5-94

        10.2.3.4 Sizing Procedure . . . . . 5-94

        10.2.3.5 Wetland Geometry . . . . . 5-95

        10.2.3.6 Lining Requirements . . . . . 5-95

        10.2.3.7 Inlet and Outlet . . . . . 5-96

        10.2.3.8 Access and Setbacks . . . . . 5-96

        10.2.3.9 Planting Requirements . . . . . 5-99

        10.2.3.10 Construction Criteria . . . . . 5-99

        10.2.3.11 Maintenance . . . . . 5-99

    10.2.4 BMP T1040 Combined Detention and Wetpool Facilities . . . . . 5-100

        10.2.4.1 Description . . . . . 5-100

        10.2.4.2 Applications and Limitations: . . . . . 5-100

        10.2.4.3 Design Criteria . . . . . 5-100

        10.2.4.4 Sizing . . . . . 5-102

        10.2.4.5 Detention and Wetpool Geometry . . . . . 5-103

        10.2.4.6 Berms, Baffles and Slopes . . . . . 5-103

        10.2.4.7 Inlet and Outlet . . . . . 5-103

        10.2.4.8 Access and Setbacks . . . . . 5-103

        10.2.4.9 Planting Requirements . . . . . 5-103

10.3 Combined Detention and Wetvault . . . . . 5-103

10.4 Combined Detention and Stormwater Wetland . . . . . 5-105



10.4.1 Sizing Criteria .....5-105

10.4.2 Design Criteria.....5-105

10.4.3 Inlet and Outlet Criteria .....5-105

10.4.4 Planting Requirements .....5-105

**Chapter 11 Oil Water Separators .....5-106**

11.1 Purpose .....5-106

11.2 Description .....5-106

11.3 Applications/Limitations.....5-106

11.4 Site Suitability.....5-109

11.5 Design Criteria .....5-110

    11.5.1 General Considerations .....5-110

    11.5.2 Criteria for Baffles .....5-110

    11.5.3 Maintenance .....5-110

11.6 Oil Water Separator BMPs .....5-111

    11.6.1 BMP T1110 API (Baffle type) Separators .....5-111

        11.6.1.1 Design Criteria .....5-111

        11.6.1.2 Sizing Criteria.....5-112

    11.6.2 BMP T1111 Coalescing Plate (CP) Separators .....5-114

        11.6.2.1 Design Criteria .....5-114

        11.6.2.2 Sizing Criteria .....5-115

**Chapter 12 Emerging Technologies.....5-117**

12.1 Background.....5-117

12.2 Emerging Technology and the City of Tacoma.....5-117

12.3 Ecology Role in Evaluating Emerging Technologies .....5-117

12.4 Evaluation of Emerging Technologies .....5-117

12.5 Assessing Levels of Development of Emerging Technologies .....5-118

12.6 Examples of Emerging Technologies for Stormwater Treatment and Control .....5-119

12.7 Maintenance .....5-119

**Appendix A Basic Treatment Receiving Waters.....5-120**

**Appendix B Procedure for Conducting a Pilot Infiltration Test.....5-122**

B.1 Infiltration Test .....5-122

B.2 Data Analysis .....5-122

B.3 Example .....5-123

**Appendix C Geotextile Specifications.....5-124**

C.1 Applications .....5-125

**Appendix D Turbulence and Short-Circuiting Factor.....5-126**





# Water Quality Treatment BMPs

## Purpose of this Volume

This volume focuses on treatment of runoff to remove pollutants at developed sites. Typical pollutants of concern include sand, silt, and other suspended solids; metals such as copper, lead, and zinc; nutrients (e.g., nitrogen and phosphorous); certain bacteria and viruses; and organics such as petroleum hydrocarbons and pesticides. Methods of pollutant removal include sedimentation/settling, filtration, infiltration, plant uptake, ion exchange, adsorption, and bacterial decomposition. Floatable pollutants such as oil, debris, and scum can be removed with separator structures. The purpose of this volume is to provide criteria for selection and design of permanent runoff treatment facilities.

Use this volume to select permanent water quality treatment BMPs. Include the BMPs and the design criteria used in your Stormwater Site Plan (see Volume 1). This volume should be used as an aid in designing and constructing water quality treatment BMPs.

## Content and Organization of this Volume

Volume 5 contains 10 chapters and 4 appendices:

- Chapter 1 outlines a step-by-step process for selecting treatment facilities for new development and redevelopment projects.
- Chapter 2 presents treatment facility “menus” that are used in applying the step-by-step process presented in Chapter 1. These menus cover different treatment needs that are associated with different sites.
- Chapter 3 discusses general requirements for treatment facilities.
- Chapters 4 - 12 provide guidance for the design of facilities..
- The appendices provide more detailed information on selected topics referenced in the preceding chapters.

# Chapter 1 Treatment Facility Selection Process

This chapter describes a step-by-step process for selecting the type of treatment facilities that will apply to individual projects.

## 1.1 Step-by-Step Selection Process for Treatment Facilities

Use the step-by-step process outlined below to determine the type of treatment facilities applicable to the project.

**Step 1. Determine the receiving waters and pollutants of concern**

**Step 2. Determine if oil treatment is required**

**Step 3. Determine if infiltration for pollutant removal is possible**

**Step 4. Determine if pretreatment is required**

**Step 5. Determine if control of phosphorus is required**

**Step 6. Determine if enhanced treatment is required**

**Step 7. Determine if basic treatment is required**

**Step 8. Consider other factors that may influence the selection of a treatment facility**

**Step 9. Select an appropriate treatment facility or treatment train for each type of treatment required**

### Step 1: Determine the Receiving Waters and Pollutants of Concern Based on Offsite Analysis

The project proponent must determine the natural receiving water for the stormwater drainage from the project site (groundwater, wetland, lake, stream, or salt water). This is necessary to determine the applicable treatment menu from which to select treatment facilities. If the discharge is to the City of Tacoma's municipal storm drainage system, the applicant must determine the final discharge point. Watershed specific requirements and/or specific protection areas are outlined in Chapter 2 of Volume 1.

The Puyallup River and Puget Sound are considered Basic Treatment Receiving Waters. If the thresholds for enhanced treatment are met for discharges to the Puyallup River or Puget Sound, enhanced treatment will not be required, but basic water quality treatment, oil treatment, and phosphorus treatment will be required if the thresholds are met. Discharges to sensitive areas as defined in Volume 1 may require enhanced treatment if they are located in the Puyallup River or Puget Sound.

### Step 2: Determine if an Oil Control Facility/Device is Required

Oil control is required for projects that have **high-use sites**. **High-use sites** are those that typically generate high concentrations of oil due to high traffic turnover or the frequent transfer of oil. **High-use sites** include:

- An area of a commercial or industrial site subject to an expected average daily traffic (ADT) count equal to or greater than 100 vehicles per 1,000 square feet of gross building area;
- An area of a commercial or industrial site subject to petroleum storage and transfer in excess of 1,500 gallons per year, not including routinely delivered heating oil (includes gasoline service stations);

- An area of a commercial or industrial site subject to parking, storage or maintenance of 25 or more motorized vehicles that are over 10 tons gross weight (trucks, buses, trains, heavy equipment, etc.);
- A road intersection with a measured ADT count of 25,000 vehicles or more on the main roadway and 15,000 vehicles or more on any intersecting roadway, excluding projects proposing primarily pedestrian or bicycle use improvements.

The traffic count can be estimated using information from “Trip Generation” published by the Institute of Transportation Engineers, or from a traffic study prepared by a professional engineer or transportation specialist with experience in traffic estimation.

In general, all-day parking areas are not intended to be defined as **high-use sites**, and should not require oil control treatment outlined in Section 2.1.

**NOTE:** Some land use types require the use of a spill control (SC-type) oil/water separator. Those situations are described in Volume 4 and are separate from this oil treatment requirement.

### **Step 3: Determine if Infiltration for Pollutant Removal is Possible**

Use Volume 5, Chapter 7 as a guide to determine if the site contains soils that are conducive to infiltration.

Private infiltration facilities used in the STGPD that receive stormwater from pollution-generating surfaces may be allowed on a case-by-case basis and are subject to additional treatment and monitoring.

The City of Tacoma Public Works Department and Tacoma-Pierce County Health Department developed a guidance document that provides the circumstances and requirements for approval of infiltration facilities for managing pollution-generating stormwater runoff in the STGPD. The document, “Implementation of Stormwater Infiltration for Pollution-Generating Surfaces in the South Tacoma Groundwater Protection District” is available at [www.cityoftacoma.org/stormwater](http://www.cityoftacoma.org/stormwater).

Infiltration treatment facilities must be preceded by a pretreatment facility, such as a presettling basin or vault, to reduce the occurrence of plugging. Any of the basic treatment facilities, and detention ponds designed to meet flow control requirements, can also be used for pretreatment. If an oil/water separator is necessary for oil control, it can also function as the pre-settling basin as long as the influent suspended solids concentrations are not high. However, frequent inspections are necessary to determine when accumulated solids exceed the 6-inch depth at which clean-out is recommended.

### **Step 4: Determine if Pretreatment is Required**

- Pretreatment is required prior to sand filtration and water quality infiltration BMPs to protect them from excessive siltation and debris;
- Where the proposed treatment facility may be adversely affected by a pollutant load. Environmental Services will make the final determination if pretreatment is required.

### **Step 5: Determine if Phosphorus Treatment is Required**

Phosphorus control requirements are identified as a basin requirement in Volume 1, Chapter 2. Currently, direct and indirect discharges to Wapato Lake require phosphorus treatment when thresholds are met.

Phosphorus treatment is required when 2000 square feet of native or uncultivated vegetation is converted to lawn. In lieu of treatment, a detailed nutrient management plan can be submitted. Environmental Services will review the nutrient management plan to determine if the proposed plan will suffice to protect the watershed. The nutrient management plan, if accepted, shall be recorded to title.

#### **Step 6: Determine if Enhanced Treatment is Required**

Enhanced treatment is required for the following project sites that discharge to fish-bearing streams, lakes, or to waters or conveyance systems tributary to fish-bearing streams or lakes:

- Industrial sites,
- Commercial sites,
- Multi-family sites, and
- High AADT roads as follows:
  - Fully controlled and partially controlled limited access highways with Annual Average Daily Traffic (AADT) counts of 15,000 or more
  - All other roads with an AADT of 7,500 or greater

The Puyallup River and Puget Sound are considered Basic Treatment Receiving Waters. If the thresholds for enhanced treatment are met for discharges to the Puyallup River or Puget Sound, enhanced treatment will not be required, but basic water quality treatment, oil treatment, and phosphorus treatment will be required if the thresholds are met. Discharges to sensitive areas as defined in Volume 1 may require enhanced treatment if they are located in the Puyallup River or Puget Sound.

**If the project must apply Enhanced Treatment, select and apply an appropriate Enhanced Treatment facility.** Please refer to the Enhanced Treatment Menu in Section 2.3. Select an option from the menu after reviewing the applicability and limitations, site suitability, and design criteria of each for compatibility with the site.

#### **Step 7: Select a Basic Treatment Facility**

Basic treatment is required for all sites that meet the treatment thresholds of minimum requirement #6, see Volume 1, Chapter 3. Basic treatment may also be required based on basin specific requirements, see Volume 1, Chapter 2. For developments with a mix of land use types, the Basic Treatment requirement shall apply when the runoff from the areas subject to the Basic Treatment requirement comprises 50% or more of the total runoff within a threshold discharge area.

#### **Step 8: Consider Other Factors that May Influence the Selection of a Treatment Device**

Factors such as soil type, sediment load, native soil type, slope, depth to groundwater or other impermeable layer, setbacks, and depth of facility all must be considered when siting a stormwater treatment BMP. Each BMP contains specific requirements that must be adhered to.

#### **Step 9: Select an Appropriate Treatment Device**

Refer to the treatment facility menus in Chapter 2 for treatment facility options.

## Chapter 2 Treatment Facility Menus

This chapter identifies the treatment facility menus. The menus in this chapter are as follows:

- Oil Control Menu, Section 2.1
- Phosphorus Treatment Menu, Section 2.2
- Enhanced Treatment Menu, Section 2.3
- Basic Treatment Menu, Section 2.4

Performance goals apply to the water quality design storm volume or flowrate, whichever is applicable, and apply on an average annual basis to the entire annual discharge volume (treated plus bypassed). The incremental portion of runoff in excess of water quality design flowrate can be routed around the facility (offline treatment facilities) or can be passed through the facility untreated (online treatment facilities) provided a net pollutant reduction is maintained. All performance goals apply to stormwater typically found in Pacific Northwest maritime climates, where long duration, low intensity storms predominate and stormwater contains mostly silt-sized particles.

### 2.1 Oil Control Menu

This menu is applicable in addition to facilities required by other treatment menus.

#### 2.1.1 Performance Goal

The oil control menu facility options should achieve the goals of no ongoing or recurring visible sheen, and to have a 24-hour average Total Petroleum Hydrocarbon (TPH) concentration no greater than 10 mg/l, and a maximum of 15 mg/l for a discrete sample (grab sample).

#### 2.1.2 Options

Oil control options include facilities that are small, treat runoff from a limited area, and require frequent maintenance as well as facilities that treat runoff from larger areas and generally require less frequent maintenance.

- **API-Type Oil/Water Separator** – See Chapter 11
- **Coalescing Plate Oil/Water Separator** – See Chapter 11
- **Linear Sand Filter** – See Chapter 8

The linear sand filter is used in the Basic, Enhanced, and Phosphorus Treatment menus also. If used to satisfy one of those treatment requirements, the same facility shall not also be used to satisfy the oil control requirement unless enhanced maintenance is assured. This is to prevent clogging of the filter by oil so that it will function for suspended solids and other pollutant removal as well. Quarterly cleaning is required when used as a combination facility.

- **Emerging Stormwater Treatment Technologies for Oil Treatment** – See Chapter 12

### 2.1.3 Application on the Project Site

Place oil control facilities upstream of other facilities, as close to the source of oil generation as practical. For high-use sites located within a larger commercial center, only the impervious surface associated with the high-use portion of the site is subject to oil treatment requirements. If common parking for multiple businesses is provided, treatment shall be applied to the number of parking stalls required for the high-use business only. If the treatment collection area also receives runoff from other areas, the treatment facility must be sized to treat all water passing through it.

High-use roadway intersections shall treat lanes where vehicles accumulate during the traffic signal cycle, including left and right turn lanes and through lanes, from the beginning of the left turn pocket. If no left turn pocket exists, the treatable area shall begin at a distance equal to three car lengths from the stop line. If runoff from the intersection drains to more than two collection areas that do not combine within the intersection, treatment may be limited to any two of the collection areas.

## 2.2 Phosphorus Treatment Menu

### 2.2.1 Performance Goal

The phosphorus menu facility choices should achieve a goal of 50% total phosphorus removal for a range of influent concentrations between 0.1 – 0.5 mg/l. The phosphorus menu facility choices must achieve basic treatment goals in addition to phosphorus.

### 2.2.2 Options

Any one of the following options may be chosen to satisfy the phosphorus treatment requirement.

- **Infiltration with appropriate pretreatment** – See Chapter 7.
  - ***Infiltration Treatment*** - If infiltration is through soils meeting the minimum site suitability criteria for infiltration treatment (see Chapter 7), a presettling basin or a basic treatment facility can serve for pretreatment.
  - ***Infiltration Preceded by Basic Treatment*** - If infiltration is through soils that do not meet the soil suitability criteria for infiltration treatment, treatment must be provided by a basic treatment facility unless the soil and site fit the description in the next option below.
  - ***Infiltration Preceded by Phosphorus Treatment*** - If the soils do not meet the soil suitability criteria **and** the infiltration site is within ¼ mile of a phosphorus-sensitive receiving water, or a tributary to that water, treatment must be provided by one of the other treatment facility options listed below.
- **Large Sand Filter** – See Chapter 8
- **Large Wetpond** – See Chapter 10
- **Emerging Stormwater Treatment Technologies for Phosphorus Treatment** – See Chapter 12
- **Two-Facility Treatment Trains** – See Table 5 - 1



**Table 5 - 1: Treatment Trains for Phosphorus Removal**

First Basic Treatment Facility	Second Treatment Facility
Biofiltration Swale	Basic Sand Filter or Sand Filter Vault
Filter Strip	Linear Sand Filter (no presettling needed)
Linear Sand Filter	Filter Strip
Basic Wetpond	Basic Sand Filter or Sand Filter Vault
Wetvault	Basic Sand Filter or Sand Filter Vault
Stormwater Treatment Wetland	Basic Sand Filter or Sand Filter Vault
Basic Combined Detention and Wetpool	Basic Sand Filter or Sand Filter Vault

## 2.3 Enhanced Treatment Menu

### 2.3.1 Performance Goal

The enhanced treatment facility choices should provide a higher rate of removal of dissolved metals than basic treatment facilities. The performance goal assumes that the facility is treating stormwater with influent dissolved copper ranging from 0.003 to 0.02 mg/l, and dissolved zinc ranging from 0.02 to 0.3 mg/l. Enhanced treatment facilities must achieve basic treatment goals in addition to enhanced treatment goals.

### 2.3.2 Options

Any one of the following options may be chosen to satisfy the enhanced treatment requirement:

- **Infiltration with appropriate pretreatment** – See Chapter 7
  - ***Infiltration Treatment*** - If infiltration is through soils meeting the minimum site suitability criteria for infiltration treatment (see Chapter 7, a presettling basin or a basic treatment facility can serve for pretreatment.
  - ***Infiltration Preceded by Basic Treatment*** - If infiltration is through soils that do not meet the soil suitability criteria for infiltration treatment, treatment must be provided by a basic treatment facility unless the soil and site fit the description in the next option below.
  - ***Infiltration Preceded by Enhanced Treatment*** - If the soils do not meet the soil suitability criteria **and** the infiltration site is within ¼ mile of a fish-bearing stream, a tributary to a fish-bearing stream, or a lake, treatment must be provided by one of the other treatment facility options listed below.
- **Large Sand Filter** – See Chapter 8
- **Stormwater Treatment Wetland** – See Chapter 10
- **Two Facility Treatment Trains** – See Table 5 - 2
- **Compost-Amended Filter** – See Chapter 9
- **Bioretention/rain garden** – See Volume 6

- **Emerging Stormwater Treatment Technologies for Enhanced Treatment** – See Chapter 12

**Table 5 - 2: Treatment Trains for Enhanced Treatment**

First Basic Treatment Facility	Second Treatment Facility
Biofiltration Swale	Basic Sand Filter or Sand Filter Vault or Media Filter <sup>a</sup>
Filter Strip	Linear Sand Filter with no presettling cell needed
Linear Sand Filter	Filter Strip
Basic Wetpond	Basic Sand Filter or Sand Filter Vault or Media Filter <sup>1</sup>
Wetvault	Basic Sand Filter or Sand Filter Vault or Media Filter <sup>1</sup>
Basic Combined Detention/Wetpool	Basic Sand Filter or Sand Filter Vault or Media Filter <sup>1</sup>
Basic Sand Filter or Sand Filter Vault with a presettling cell if the filter isn't preceded by a detention facility	Media Filter <sup>1</sup>

a. The media must be of a type approved for use by Ecology. Refer to Ecology's website.

## 2.4 Basic Treatment Menu

### 2.4.1 Performance Goal

The basic treatment menu facility options should achieve 80% removal of total suspended solids (TSS) for influent concentrations ranging from 100 to 200 mg/L. For influent concentrations greater than 200 mg/l, a higher treatment goal is appropriate. For influent concentrations less than 100 mg/l, the facilities should achieve an effluent goal of 20 mg/l total suspended solids.

### 2.4.2 Options

Any one of the following options may be chosen to satisfy the basic treatment requirement:

- **Infiltration** – See Chapter 7
- **Sand Filters** – See Chapter 8
- **Biofiltration Swales** – See Chapter 9
- **Filter Strips** – See Chapter 9
- **Basic Wetpond** – See Chapter 10

- **Wetvault** – See Chapter 10

A wetvault may be used for commercial, industrial, or road projects if there are space limitations. The use of wetvaults is discouraged for residential projects. Combined detention/wetvaults are allowed.

- **Stormwater Treatment Wetland** – See Chapter 10
- **Combined Detention and Wetpool Facilities** – See Chapter 10
- **Bioretention/Rain Garden** – See Volume 6
- **Emerging Stormwater Treatment Technologies for Basic Treatment** – See Chapter 12

## Chapter 3 General Requirements for Stormwater Facilities

This chapter addresses general requirements for treatment facilities. Requirements discussed in this chapter include design volumes and flows, sequencing of facilities, liners, and hydraulic structures for splitting or dispersing flows.

### 3.1 Design Flow Volume and Flow Rate

#### 3.1.1 Water Quality Design Flow Volume

The volume of runoff predicted from a 24-hour storm with a 6-month return frequency (a.k.a., 6-month, 24-hour storm) obtained from an approved single event model. The 6-month, 24-hour design storm of 1.44 inches shall be used in the City of Tacoma.

Alternatively, the 91st percentile, 24-hour runoff volume indicated by WWHM will be used to determine the water quality design flow volume.

Treatment facility sizes are the same whether they precede, follow or are incorporated (i.e., combined detention and wetpool facilities) into the detention facility.

Treatment options that can be sized by this method include:

- Wetponds
- Wetvaults
- Stormwater Wetlands
- Combined Detention and Wetpool Facilities

#### 3.1.2 Water Quality Design Flow Rate

**A. Preceding Detention Facilities or when Detention Facilities are not required: The flow rate at or below which 91% of the runoff volume, as estimated by WWHM, will be treated.**

- All BMPs except wetpool type facilities (Chapter 10) shall use the 15-minute time series from WWHM. Design criteria for treatment facilities are assigned to achieve the applicable performance goal (e.g., 80 percent TSS removal) at the water quality design flow rate.
- **Offline facilities:** For treatment facilities not preceded by an equalization or storage basin, and when runoff flow rates exceed the water quality design flow rate, the treatment facility shall continue to receive and treat the water quality design flow rate to the applicable treatment performance goal. The incremental portion of runoff in excess of the water quality design flowrate can be routed around the facility.
- Treatment facilities preceded by an equalization or storage basin may identify a lower water quality design flow rate provided that at least 91 percent of the estimated runoff volume in the time series of an approved continuous runoff model is treated to the applicable performance goals (e.g., 80 percent TSS removal at the water quality design flow rate and 80 percent TSS removal on an annual average basis).
- **Online facilities:** Runoff flow rates in excess of the water quality design flow rate can be routed through the facility provided a net pollutant reduction is maintained, and the applicable annual average performance goal is met.

**B. Downstream of Detention Facilities: The full 2-year release rate from the detention facility.**

- An approved continuous runoff model shall identify the 2-year return frequency flow rate discharged by a detention facility that is designed to meet the flow duration standard.
- Treatment facilities downstream of detention can be designed online or offline. For offline facilities, the entire water quality design flow volume/rate must be treated. Only flows in excess of the design flow may be bypassed.

**3.1.3 Flows Requiring Treatment**

Runoff from pollution-generating impervious or pervious surfaces exceeding the thresholds outlined in Minimum Requirement #6 (Volume 1, Chapter 2) must be treated using the water quality facilities in this volume. If runoff from non-pollution generating surfaces reaches a runoff treatment BMP, flows from those areas must be included in the sizing calculations for the facility. Once runoff from non-pollution generating areas is mixed with runoff from pollution-generating areas, it cannot be separated before treatment.

**3.2 Sequence of Facilities**

Treatment facilities can be placed in a variety of configurations. Some are required to be upstream from detention facilities while others may perform better if located downstream. Detention facilities can act as settling basins and therefore can reduce the load going to a treatment facility. Additionally, treatment facilities can be sequenced together to provide a higher level of treatment that could be achieved by a single facility. For instance, the enhanced treatment and phosphorus removal menus, described in Chapter 2, include treatment options in which more than one type of treatment facility is used, for these treatment trains the sequencing is prescribed.

Table 5 - 3 summarizes placement considerations of treatment facilities in relation to detention facilities.

**Table 5 - 3: Treatment Facility Placement in Relation to Detention Facilities**

Water Quality Facility	Preceding Detention	Following Detention
Basic biofiltration swale (Chapter 9)	OK	OK. Prolonged flows may reduce grass survival. Consider wet biofiltration swale
Wet biofiltration swale (Chapter 9)	OK	OK
Filter strip (Chapter 9)	OK	No—must be installed before flows concentrate.
Basic or large wetpond (Chapter 10)	OK	OK—less water level fluctuation in ponds downstream of detention may improve aesthetic qualities and performance.
Wetvault (Chapter 10)	OK	OK
Basic or large sand filter or sand filter vault (Chapter 8)	OK, but presettling and control of floatables needed	OK—sand filters downstream of detention facilities may require field adjustments if prolonged flows cause sand saturation and interfere with phosphorus removal.
Stormwater treatment wetland/pond (Chapter 10)	OK	OK—less water level fluctuation and better plant diversity are possible if the stormwater wetland is located downstream of the detention facility.

### 3.3 Setbacks

Setback requirements are generally required by the City, uniform building code requirements, the Tacoma Pierce County Health Department, or other state regulations. Where a conflict between setbacks occurs, the City shall require compliance with the most stringent of the setback requirements from the various codes/regulations. The following are the minimum setbacks required per this manual.

- At least 100 feet from drinking water wells, and springs used for public water supplies. Infiltration facilities, unlined wetponds, and detention ponds upgradient of drinking water wells and within 1, 5, and 10-year time of travel zones must comply with Health Department requirements (Washington Wellhead Protection Program, DOH, Publication #331-018).
- All systems shall be at least 10 feet from any building structure and at least 5 feet from any other structure or property line unless approved in writing by Environmental Services. If necessary, setbacks shall be increased from the minimum 10 feet in order to maintain a 1H:1V side slope for future excavation and maintenance. Vertical pond walls may necessitate an increase in setbacks.
- Infiltration facilities and discharge points shall not be placed on slopes steeper than 20 percent. A geotechnical analysis and report shall be required on slopes over 15% or if located within 200 feet of the top of steep slopes (40% or greater) or a landslide hazard area. More stringent setbacks may be required based upon the Tacoma Municipal Code.

- At least 10 feet from septic tanks and septic drainfields. Additional setbacks from DOH Publication 333-117 On-Site Sewage Systems, Chapter 246-272A WAC may apply. Shall not be located upstream of residential septic systems unless topography or a hydrology analysis clearly indicates that subsurface flows will not impact the drainfield.
- Environmental Services may require additional setbacks or analysis for infiltration facilities and unlined wetponds proposed to be sited within the influence of known contaminated sites or abandoned landfills.

Additional setbacks for specific stormwater facilities will be noted in the appropriate section.

### **3.4 Easements, Access, and Dedicated Tracts**

See Volume 3, Chapter 13 for access and easement requirements.

### **3.5 Materials**

Acceptable materials for stormwater facilities include plastics, iron, aluminum, stainless steel and concrete. Zinc galvanized materials are prohibited. Galvanized metal pipes may only be used if they employ a protective asphalt coating.

### **3.6 Maintenance of Stormwater Facilities**

Per Minimum Requirement #10, an operation and maintenance plan shall be prepared for all stormwater management facilities. See Volume 1, Appendix C for specific maintenance requirements for various stormwater treatment facilities and structures that may be a part of the overall stormwater facility. If a device is not included in Volume 1, Appendix C, the requirements of Minimum Requirement #10 must still be met and a maintenance plan shall be developed independently for the device. Maintenance shall be a basic consideration in design and cost-determination of the stormwater management facility.

Any standing water removed during maintenance operation must be disposed of in a City approved manner. See the dewatering requirements in Volume 4 of this manual. Pretreatment may be necessary. Solids must be disposed of in accordance with state and local waste regulations.

Facilities shall be constructed such that the facility can be easily inspected by one person. This may require construction of additional inspection ports or access manholes to allow inspection access to be opened by one person.

## Chapter 4 Facility Liners

Liners are intended to reduce the likelihood that pollutants in stormwater will reach groundwater. Where necessary, a liner is incorporated into the base of the treatment facility as the facility is constructed. In addition to groundwater protection considerations, some facility types require permanent water for proper functioning. An example is the first cell of a wetpond.

### 4.1 General Design Criteria

- Table 5 - 4 shows recommendations for the type of liner generally best suited for use with various runoff treatment facilities.
- Liners shall be evenly placed over the bottom and/or sides of the treatment area of the facility as indicated in Table 5 - 4. Areas above the treatment volume that are required to pass flows greater than the water quality treatment flow (or volume) need not be lined. However, the lining must be extended to the top of the interior side slope and anchored if it cannot be permanently secured by other means.
- For low permeability liners, the following criteria apply:
  - Where the seasonal high groundwater elevation is likely to contact a low permeability liner, liner buoyancy may be a concern. A low permeability liner shall not be used in this situation unless evaluated and recommended by a geotechnical engineer.
  - Where grass must be planted over a low permeability liner per the facility design, a minimum of 6 inches of good topsoil or compost-amended native soil (2 inches compost tilled into 6 inches of native till soil) must be placed over the liner in the area to be planted. Twelve inches of cover is preferred.
- Check all liners for buoyancy stability and include calculations in project documentation. Provide anchors as needed.
- If a treatment liner will be below the seasonal high water level, the pollutant removal performance of the liner must be evaluated by a geotechnical or groundwater specialist and found to be as protective as if the liner were above the level of the groundwater.



**Table 5 - 4: Lining Types Recommended for Runoff Treatment Facilities**

WQ Facility	Area to be Lined	Type of Liner Recommended
Presettling basin	Bottom and sides	Low permeability liner or Treatment liner (If the basin will intercept the seasonal high groundwater table, a treatment liner is recommended.)
Wetpond	First cell: bottom and sides to WQ design water surface	Low permeability liner or Treatment liner (If the wet pond will intercept the seasonal high groundwater table, a treatment liner is recommended.)
	Second cell: bottom and sides to WQ design water surface	Treatment liner
Combined detention/WQ facility	First cell: bottom and sides to WQ design water surface	Low permeability liner or treatment liner (If the facility will intercept the seasonal high groundwater table a treatment liner is recommended.)
	Second cell: bottom and sides to WQ design water surface	Treatment liner
Stormwater wetland	Bottom and sides, both cells	Low permeability liner (If the facility will intercept the seasonal high groundwater table, a treatment liner is recommended.)
Sand filtration basin	Basin sides only	Treatment liner
Sand filter vault	Not applicable	No liner needed
Linear sand filter	Not applicable if in vault Bottom and sides of presettling cell if not in vault	No liner needed Low permeability or treatment liner
Media filter (in vault)	Not applicable	No liner needed
Wet vault	Not applicable	No liner needed

## 4.2 Design Criteria for Low Permeability Liner Options

This section presents the design criteria for each of the following four low permeability liner options: compacted till liners, clay liners, geomembrane liners, and concrete liners.

### 4.2.1 Compacted Till Liners

- Liner thickness shall be 18 inches after compaction.
- Soil shall be compacted to 95% minimum dry density, modified proctor method (ASTM D-1557).
- Soil shall be placed in 6-inch lifts.
- Reference Table 5 - 5 for Acceptable Gradation for Compacted Till Liners.

*Table 5 - 5: Acceptable Gradation for Compacted Till Liners*

Sieve Size	Percent Passing
6-inch	100
4-inch	90
#4	70 - 100
#200	20

- Other combinations of thickness and density sufficient to retard the infiltration rate to  $2.4 \times 10^{-5}$  inches per minute may be used instead of the above criteria. Environmental Services will require a soils report or other documentation to verify that the proposed depth and compaction of the media is sufficient.

### 4.2.2 Clay Liners

- Liner thickness shall be 12 inches.
- Clay shall be compacted to 95% minimum dry density, modified proctor method (ASTM D-1557).
- Other combinations of thickness and density sufficient to retard the infiltration rate to  $2.4 \times 10^{-5}$  inches per minute may be used instead of the above criteria. Environmental Services will require a soils report or other documentation to verify that the proposed depth and compaction of the media is sufficient.
- The slope of clay liners must be restricted to 3H: 1V for all areas requiring soil cover; otherwise, the soil layer must be stabilized by another method so that soil slippage into the facility does not occur. Any alternative soil stabilization method must take maintenance access into consideration.
- Where clay liners form the sides of ponds, the interior side slope shall not be steeper than 3H:1V, irrespective of fencing.

### 4.2.3 Geomembrane Liners

- Geomembrane liners shall be ultraviolet (UV) light resistant and have a minimum thickness of 30 mils. A thickness of 40 mils shall be used in areas of maintenance access or where heavy machinery must be operated over the membrane.
- Geomembranes shall be bedded according to the manufacturer's recommendations.

- Liners shall be installed so that they can be covered with 12 inches of top dressing forming the bottom and sides of the water quality facility, except for linear sand filters. Top dressing shall consist of 6 inches of crushed rock covered with 6 inches of native soil. The rock layer is to mark the location of the liner for future maintenance operations. As an alternative to crushed rock, 12 inches of native soil may be used if orange plastic “safety fencing” or another highly-visible, continuous marker is embedded 6 inches above the membrane.
- If possible, liners should be of a contrasting color so that maintenance workers are aware of any areas where a liner may have become exposed when maintaining the facility.
- Geomembrane liners shall not be used on slopes steeper than 5H:1V to prevent the top dressing material from slipping. Textured liners may be used on slopes up to 3H:1V upon recommendation by a geotechnical engineer that the top dressing will be stable for all site conditions, including maintenance.

#### **4.2.4 Concrete Liners**

- Portland cement liners are allowed irrespective of facility size, and shotcrete may be used on slopes. However, specifications must be developed by a professional engineer who certifies the liner against cracking or losing water retention ability under expected conditions of operation, including facility maintenance operations. Weight of maintenance equipment can be up to 80,000 pounds when fully loaded.
- Asphalt concrete may not be used for liners due to its permeability to many organic pollutants.
- If grass is to be grown over a concrete liner, slopes must be no steeper than 5H:1V to prevent the top dressing material from slipping.

## Chapter 5 Hydraulic Structures

### 5.1 Flow Splitter Designs

#### 5.1.1 General Design Criteria

- A flow splitter must be designed to deliver the WQ design flow rate specified in this volume to the WQ treatment facility.
- The top of the weir must be located at the water surface for the design flow. Remaining flows enter the bypass line. Flows modeled using a WWHM shall use 15-minute time steps, if available. Otherwise use 1-hour time steps.
- The maximum head must be minimized for flow in excess of the WQ design flow. Specifically, flow to the WQ facility at the 100-year water surface must not increase the design WQ flow by more than 10%.
- Design as shown in Figure 5 - 1 or Figure 5 - 2 or provide an equivalent design.
- Only baffle wall type flow splitters may be used for oil treatment BMPs.
- As an alternative to using a solid top plate in Figure 5 - 2, a full tee section may be used with the top of the tee at the 100-year water surface. This alternative would route emergency overflows (if the overflow pipe were plugged) through the WQ facility rather than back up from the manhole.
- Special applications, such as roads, may require the use of a modified flow splitter. The baffle wall may be fitted with a notch and adjustable weir plate to proportion runoff volumes other than high flows.
- For ponding facilities, backwater effects must be considered in the design of the flow splitter.
- Ladder or step and handhold access must be provided. If the weir wall is higher than 36 inches, two ladders, one to either side of the wall, must be used.

#### 5.1.2 Materials

- The splitter baffle may be installed in a Type 2 manhole or vault.
- The baffle wall must be made of reinforced concrete or another suitable material resistant to corrosion, and have a minimum 4-inch thickness. The minimum clearance between the top of the baffle wall and the bottom of the manhole cover must be 4 feet; otherwise, dual access points shall be provided.
- All metal parts must be corrosion resistant. Examples of preferred materials include aluminum, stainless steel, and plastic. Zinc and galvanized materials are prohibited unless coated as approved by Environmental Services. Painted metal parts shall not be used because of poor longevity.

### **5.1.3 Maintenance**

Per Minimum Requirement #10, an operation and maintenance plan shall be prepared for all stormwater management facilities. See Volume 1, Appendix C, Maintenance Checklist #5 for specific maintenance requirements for control structures and flow restrictors. Maintenance shall be a basic consideration in design and cost-determination of the stormwater management facility.

Any standing water removed during maintenance operation must be disposed of in a City-approved manner. See the dewatering requirements in Volume 4 of this manual. Pretreatment may be necessary. Solids must be disposed in accordance with state and local regulations.

Facilities shall be constructed such that the facility can be easily inspected by one person. This may require construction of additional inspection ports or access manholes to allow inspection access to be opened by one person.

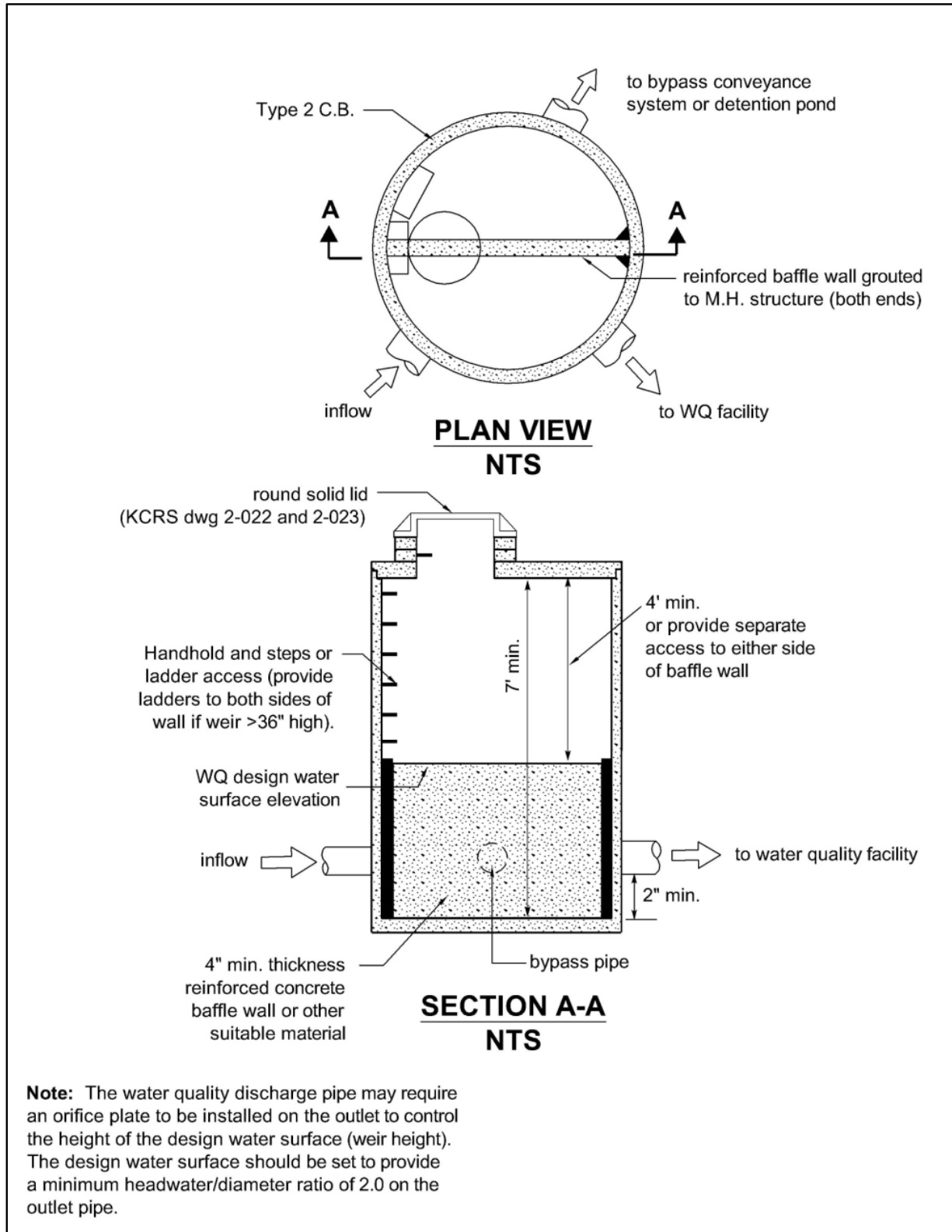


Figure 5 - 1. Flow Splitter, Option A

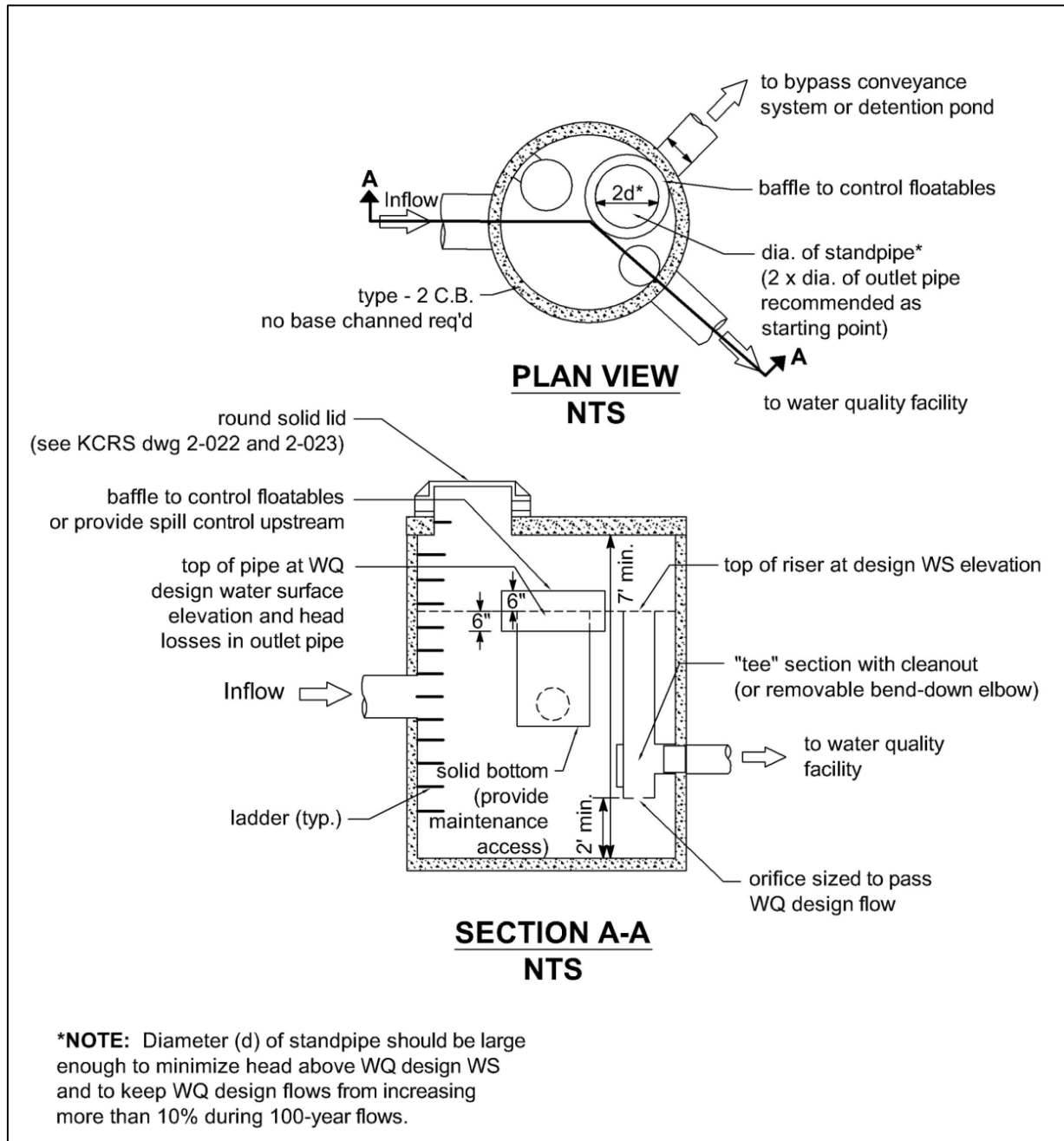


Figure 5 - 2. Flow Splitter, Option B

## 5.2 Flow Spreading Options

Flow spreaders function to uniformly spread flows across the inflow portion of water quality facilities (e.g., sand filter, biofiltration swale, or filter strip). There are five flow spreader options presented in this section:

- Option A – Anchored plate (Figure 5 - 3)
- Option B – Concrete sump box (Figure 5 - 4)
- Option C – Notched curb spreader (Figure 5 - 5)

- Option D – Through-curb ports (Figure 5 - 6)
- Option E – Interrupted curb

Options A through C can be used for spreading flows that are concentrated. Any one of these options can be used when spreading is required by the facility design criteria. Options A through C can also be used for unconcentrated flows, and in some cases must be used, such as to correct for moderate grade changes along a filter strip.

Options D and E are only for flows that are already unconcentrated and enter a filter strip or continuous inflow biofiltration swale. Other flow spreader options may be allowed with written approval from Environmental Services.

### **5.2.1 General Design Criteria**

- Where flow enters the flow spreader through a pipe, it is recommended that the pipe be submerged to the extent practical to dissipate as much energy as possible.
- For higher inflows (greater than 5 cfs for the 100-yr storm), a Type 1 catch basin shall be positioned in the spreader and the inflow pipe shall enter the catch basin with flows exiting through the top grate. The top of the grate shall be lower than the level spreader plate, or if a notched spreader is used, lower than the bottom of the v-notches.

#### ***Option A -- Anchored Plate***

- An anchored plate flow spreader must be preceded by a sump having a minimum depth of 8 inches and minimum width of 24 inches. If not otherwise stabilized, the sump area must be lined to reduce erosion and to provide energy dissipation.
- The top surface of the flow spreader plate must be level, projecting a minimum of 2 inches above the ground surface of the water quality facility, or V-notched with notches 6 to 10 inches on center and 1 to 6 inches deep (use shallower notches with closer spacing). Alternative designs may also be used if approved by Environmental Services.
- A flow spreader plate must extend horizontally beyond the bottom width of the facility to prevent water from eroding the side slope. The horizontal extent shall be such that the bank is protected for all flows up to the 100-year flow or the maximum flow that will enter the Water Quality (WQ) facility.
- Flow spreader plates must be securely fixed in place.
- Flow spreader plates may be made of either wood, metal, fiberglass reinforced plastic, or other durable material. If wood, pressure treated 4 by 10-inch lumber or landscape timbers are acceptable.
- Anchor posts must be 4-inch square concrete, tubular stainless steel, or other material resistant to decay.



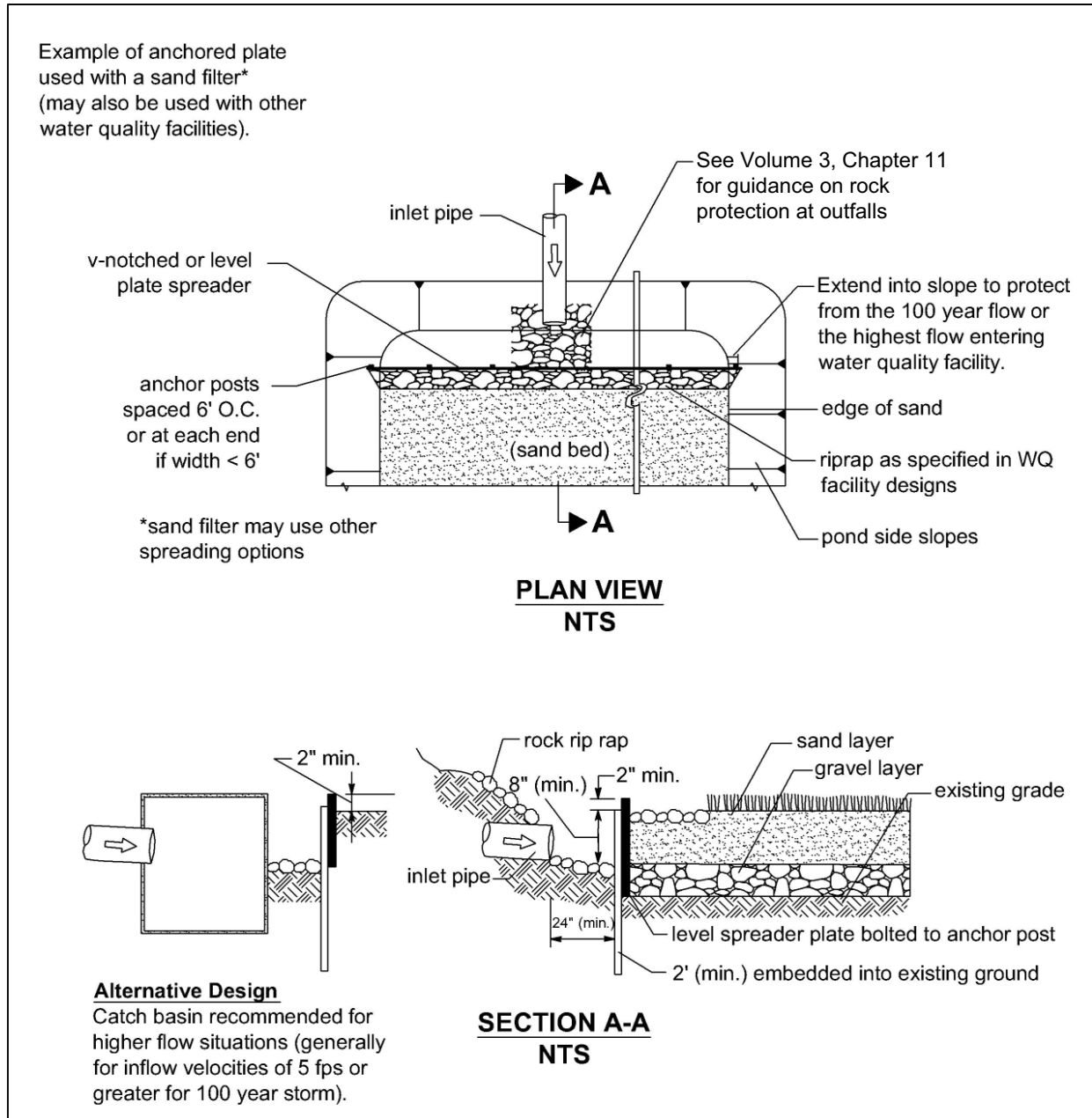
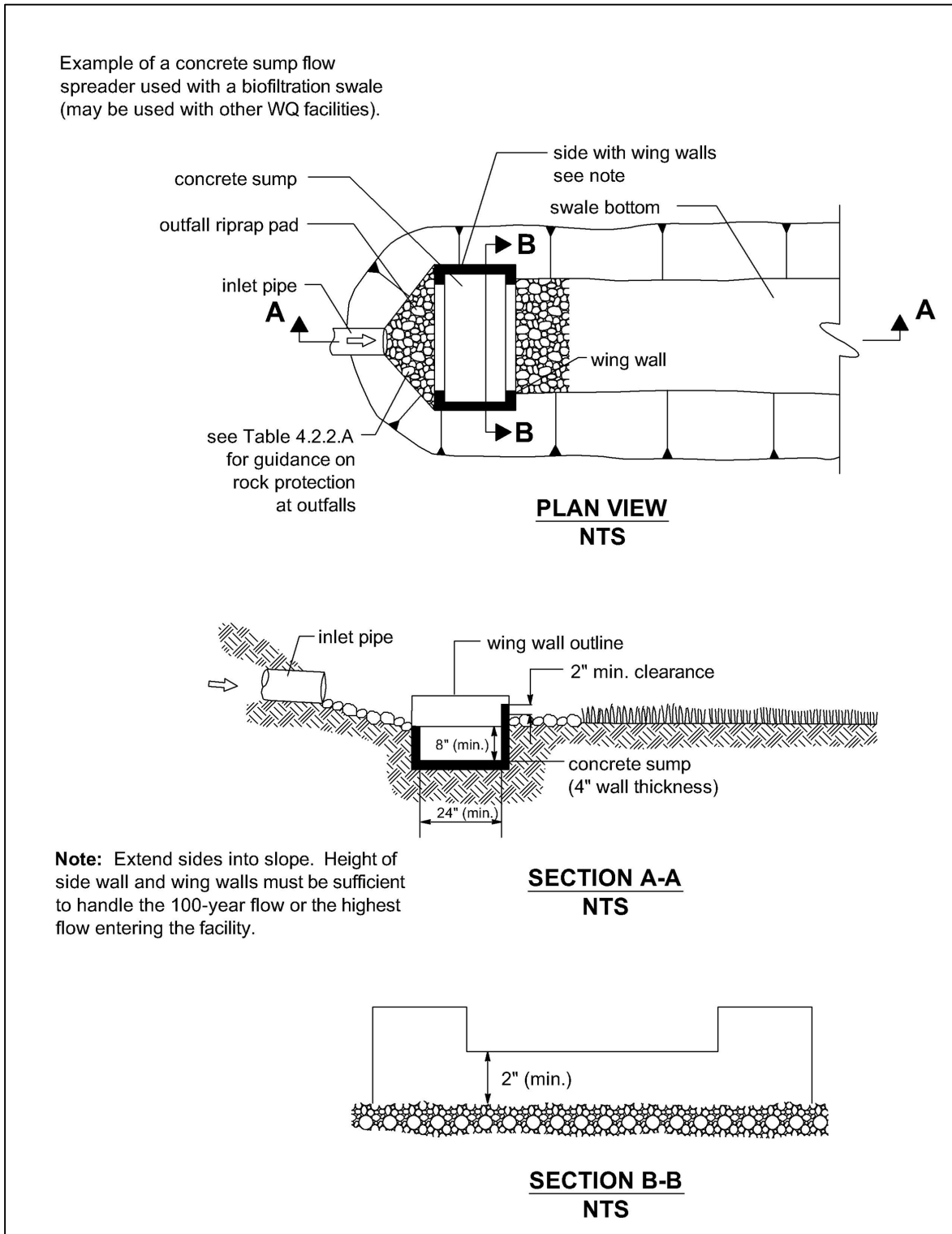


Figure 5 - 3. Flow Spreader Option A – Anchored Plate

**Option B -- Concrete Sump Box**

- The wall of the downstream side of a rectangular concrete sump box must extend a minimum of 2 inches above the treatment bed. This serves as a weir to spread the flows uniformly across the bed.
- The downstream wall of a sump box must have “wing walls” at both ends. Side walls and returns must be slightly higher than the weir so that erosion of the side slope is minimized.
- Concrete for a sump box can be either cast-in-place or precast, but the bottom of the sump must be reinforced with wire mesh for cast-in-place sumps.

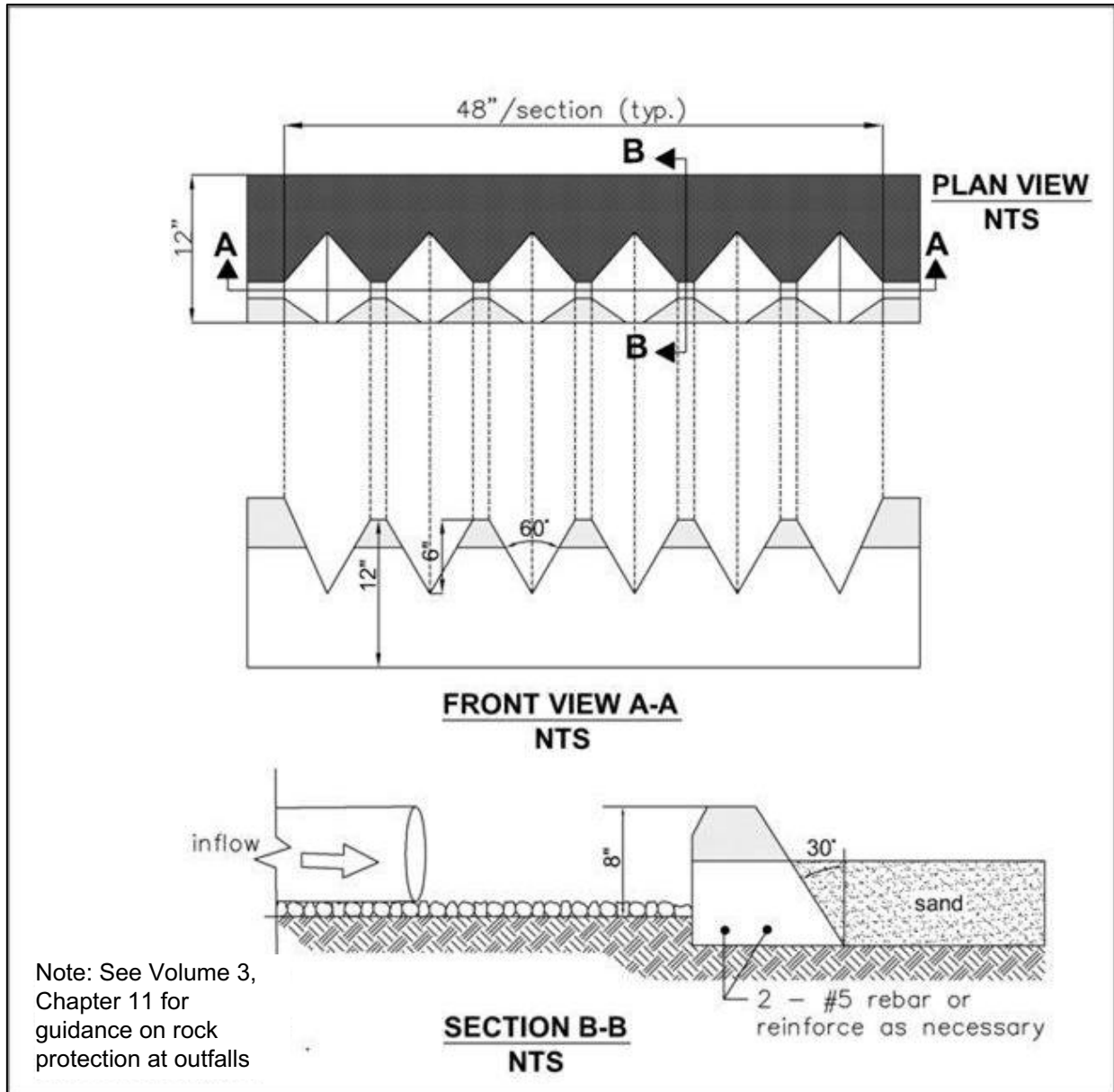
- Sump boxes must be placed over bases that consists of 4 inches of crushed rock, 5/8-inch minus to help assure the sump remains level.



**Figure 5 - 4. Flow Spreader Option B – Concrete Sump Box**

**Option C -- Notched Curb Spreader**

Notched curb spreader sections must be made of extruded concrete laid side-by-side and level. Typically five “teeth” per four-foot section provide good spacing. The space between adjacent “teeth” forms a v-notch.



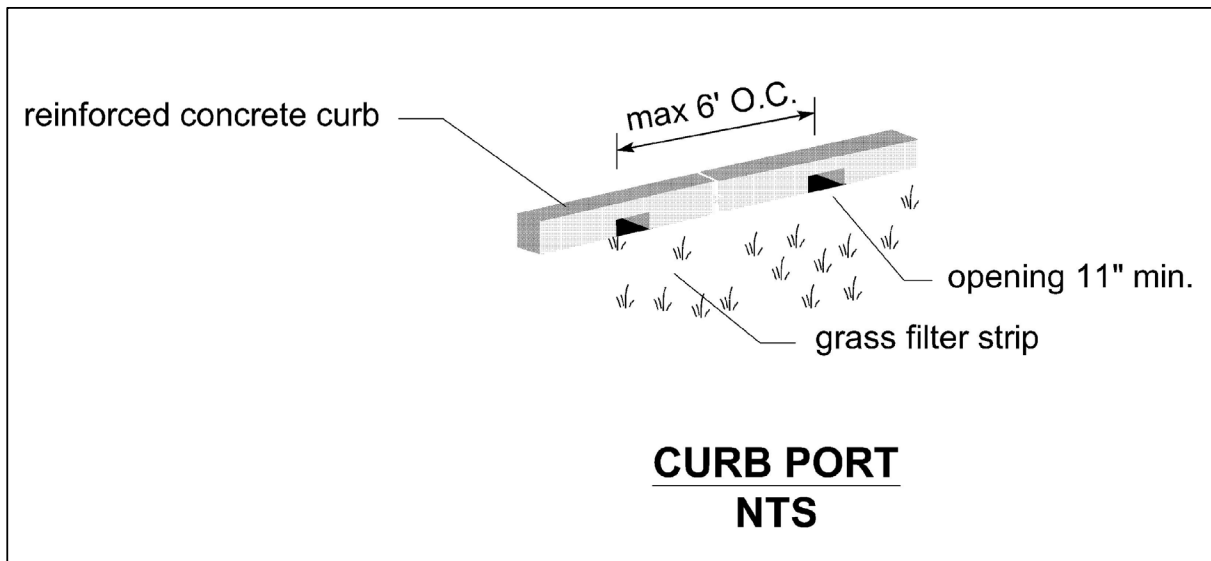
**Figure 5 - 5. Flow Spreader Option C – Notched Curb Spreader**

**Option D -- Through-Curb Ports (Figure 5 - 6)**

Unconcentrated flows from paved areas entering filter strips or continuous inflow biofiltration swales can use curb ports or interrupted curbs (Option E) to allow flows to enter the strip or

swale. Curb ports use fabricated openings that allow concrete curbing to be poured or extruded while still providing an opening through the curb to admit water to the water quality facility.

Openings in the curb must be at regular intervals but at least every 6 feet (minimum). The width of each curb port opening must be a minimum of 11 inches. Approximately 15 percent or more of the curb section length shall be in open ports, and no port shall discharge more than about 10 percent of the flow.



**Figure 5 - 6. Flow Spreader Option D – Through-Curb Ports**

### **Option E -- Interrupted Curb**

Interrupted curbs are sections of curb placed to have gaps spaced at regular intervals along the total width (or length, depending on facility) of the treatment area. At a minimum, gaps must be every 6 feet to allow distribution of flows into the treatment facility before they become too concentrated. The opening must be a minimum of 11 inches. As a general rule, no opening shall discharge more than 10 percent of the overall flow entering the facility.

### **5.2.2 Maintenance**

Per Minimum Requirement #10, an operation and maintenance plan shall be prepared for all stormwater management facilities. See Volume 1, Appendix C, Maintenance Checklist #8 for specific maintenance requirements for energy dissipators. Maintenance shall be a basic consideration in design and cost-determination of the stormwater management facility.

Any standing water removed during maintenance operation must be disposed of in a City approved manner. See the dewatering requirements in Volume 4 of this manual. Pretreatment may be necessary. Solids must be disposed of in accordance with state and local waste regulations.

Facilities shall be constructed such that the facility can be easily inspected by one person. This may require construction of additional inspection ports or access manholes to allow inspection access to be opened by one person.

## Chapter 6 Pretreatment

### 6.1 Purpose

This chapter presents the methods that may be used to provide pretreatment prior to water quality facilities. Pretreatment must be provided in the following applications:

- For sand filtration and water quality infiltration BMPs to protect them from excessive siltation and debris;
- Where the proposed treatment facility may be adversely affected by a pollutant load. Environmental Services will make the final determination if pretreatment is required.

### 6.2 Application

Presettling basins are a typical pretreatment BMP used to remove suspended solids. All basic, enhanced, and phosphorus treatment options may be used for pretreatment to reduce suspended solids.

A detention pond sized to meet the flow control standard in Volume 1 may also be used to provide pretreatment for suspended solids removal.

### 6.3 Best Management Practices (BMPs) for Pretreatment

#### 6.3.1 BMP T610 Presettling Basin

##### 6.3.1.1 Purpose and Definition

A presettling basin provides pretreatment of runoff in order to remove suspended solids, which can impact other runoff treatment BMPs.

##### 6.3.1.2 Application and Limitations

Runoff treated by a presettling basin may not be discharged directly to a receiving water; it must be further treated by a basic, enhanced, or phosphorus runoff treatment BMP.

##### 6.3.1.3 Design Criteria

- A presettling basin shall be designed using analysis techniques for a wetpool or using WWHM. The treatment volume shall be at least 30 percent of the total volume of runoff from the 6-month, 24-hour storm event.
- If the runoff in the presettling basin will be in direct contact with the soil, it must be lined per the liner requirement in Chapter 4.
- The presettling basin shall conform to the following:
  - The length-to-width ratio shall be at least 3:1. Berms or baffles may be used to lengthen the flowpath.
  - The minimum depth shall be 4 feet; the maximum depth shall be 6 feet.
- Inlets and outlets shall be designed to minimize velocity and reduce turbulence. Inlet and outlet structures should be located at extreme ends of the basin in order to maximize particle-settling opportunities.

## Chapter 7 Infiltration and Bio-infiltration Treatment Facilities

### 7.1 Purpose

This Chapter provides site suitability, design, and maintenance criteria for infiltration treatment systems. Infiltration treatment Best Management Practices (BMPs) serve the dual purpose of removing pollutants from stormwater and recharging aquifers.

The infiltration BMPs described in this chapter include:

- BMP T710 Infiltration basins
- BMP T720 Infiltration trenches
- BMP T730 Bio-infiltration swales

### 7.2 Application

These infiltration and bio-infiltration treatment measures are capable of achieving the performance objectives cited in Chapter 3 for specific treatment menus. In general, these treatment techniques can capture and remove or reduce the target pollutants to levels that will not adversely affect public health or beneficial uses of surface and groundwater resources.

### 7.3 Site Suitability

The following site suitability criteria must be considered. When a site investigation reveals that any of the eight applicable criteria cannot be met, appropriate mitigation measures must be implemented so that the infiltration facility will not pose a threat to safety, health, and the environment.

For site selection and design decisions a geotechnical and hydrogeologic report must be prepared by a qualified engineer with geotechnical and hydrogeologic experience, or an equivalent professional acceptable to the City, under the seal of a registered Professional Engineer. The design engineer may utilize a team of certified or registered professionals in soil science, hydrogeology, geology, and other related fields.

#### 7.3.1 Setback Criteria

Typical setbacks are outlined in Section 3.3.

Setback criteria for the various infiltration and dispersion facilities can be found in the design criteria for each BMP in this chapter. ***Below are conditions that the soils professional must evaluate to determine the need for additional or more stringent setbacks than outlined in this manual.***

The professional must evaluate:

- Potential impacts to drinking water wells, septic tanks or drainfields, and springs used for public drinking water supplies.
- Potential impacts from roadways subject to deicers or herbicides which are likely to be present in the influent to the infiltration system.
- Potential impacts to all building foundations in the vicinity of the proposed infiltration facility. Recommend investigating all building foundations: within 100 feet upslope and 20 feet downslope from the facility.

- Potential impacts to all property lines within 20 feet of the facility.
- Potential impacts to a Native Growth Protection Easement (NGPE);  $\geq 20$  feet.
- Potential impacts to the top of slopes  $>20\%$  and within 50 feet.
- On-site and off-site structural stability due to extended subgrade saturation and/or head loading of the permeable layer, including the potential impacts to downgradient properties, especially on hills with known side-hill seeps.

### **7.3.2 Groundwater Protection Areas**

A site is not suitable if the infiltration facility will cause a violation of Ecology's Groundwater Quality Standards.

The City of Tacoma Public Works Department and Tacoma-Pierce County Health Department developed a guidance document that provides the circumstances and requirements for approval of infiltration facilities for managing pollution-generating stormwater runoff in the STGPD. The document, "Implementation of Stormwater Infiltration for Pollution-Generating Surfaces in the South Tacoma Groundwater Protection District" is available at [www.cityoftacoma.org/stormwater](http://www.cityoftacoma.org/stormwater).

See Chapter 2 of Volume 1 for geographic-specific requirements.

### **7.3.3 High Vehicle Traffic Areas**

An infiltration BMP may be considered for runoff from areas of industrial activity and the high vehicle traffic areas described below. For such applications sufficient pollutant removal (including oil removal) shall be provided upstream of the infiltration facility to ensure that groundwater quality standards will not be violated and that the infiltration facility is not adversely affected.

High Vehicle Traffic Areas are:

- Commercial or industrial sites subject to an expected average daily traffic count (ADT)  $\geq 100$  vehicles/1,000 ft<sup>2</sup> gross building area (trip generation), and
- Road intersections with an ADT of  $\geq 25,000$  on the main roadway, or  $\geq 15,000$  on any intersecting roadway.

### **7.3.4 Soil Infiltration Rate/Drawdown Time for Treatment**

#### **7.3.4.1 Infiltration Rates: Short-term and Long-term**

For treatment purposes, the short-term soil infiltration rate should be 2.4 in/hour, or less, to a depth of 2.5 times the maximum design pond water depth, or a minimum of 6 ft. below the base of the infiltration facility. This infiltration rate is also typical for soil textures that possess sufficient physical and chemical properties for adequate treatment, particularly for soluble pollutant removal (see Section 7.3.6). It is comparable to the textures represented by Hydrologic Groups B and C. Long-term infiltration rates up to 2.0 inches/hour can also be considered, if the infiltration receptor is not a sole-source aquifer, and in the judgment of the site professional, the treatment soil has characteristics comparable to those specified in SSC-6 to adequately control the target pollutants.

The long-term infiltration rate should be used for drawdown time and routing calculations.

### 7.3.4.2 Drawdown Time

Refer to Section 7.4 for infiltration rate determination. Document that the 91<sup>st</sup> percentile, 24-hour runoff volume (indicated by WWHM) can infiltrate through the infiltration basin surface within 48 hours. This can be calculated using a horizontal projection of the infiltration basin mid-depth dimensions and the estimated long-term infiltration rate.

This drawdown restriction is intended to meet the following objectives:

- Restore hydraulic capacity to receive runoff from a new storm,
- Maintain infiltration rates,
- Aerate vegetation and soil to keep the vegetation healthy, and
- Enhance the biodegradation of pollutants and organics in the soil.

### 7.3.5 Depth to Bedrock, Water Table, or Impermeable Layer

The base of all infiltration basins or trench systems shall be  $\geq 5$  feet above the seasonal high-water mark, bedrock (or hardpan) or other low permeability layer. A separation down to 3 feet may be considered if the groundwater mounding analysis, volumetric receptor capacity, and the design of the overflow and/or bypass structures are judged by the site professional to be adequate to prevent overtopping and meet the site suitability criteria specified in this section.

### 7.3.6 Soil Physical and Chemical Suitability for Treatment

The soil texture and design infiltration rates should be considered along with the physical and chemical characteristics specified below to determine if the soil is adequate for removing the target pollutants. The following soil properties must be carefully considered in making such a determination:

- Cation exchange capacity (CEC) of the treatment soil must be  $\geq 5$  milliequivalents CEC/100 g dry soil (USEPA Method 9081). *Consider empirical testing of soil sorption capacity, if practicable.* Ensure that soil CEC is sufficient for expected pollutant loadings, particularly heavy metals. CEC values of  $>5$  meq/100g are expected in loamy sands, according to Rawls, et al.
- Depth of soil used for infiltration treatment must be a minimum of 18 inches.
- Organic content shall be a minimum of 5%. Organic content shall be measured on a dry weight basis using ASTM D2974.
- Waste fill materials should not be used as infiltration soil media nor should such media be placed over uncontrolled or non-engineered fill soils.

Engineered soils may be used to meet the design criteria in this chapter and the performance goals in Chapter 2 and Chapter 3. The treatment liners must not leach pollutants into the groundwater table or underground piping. Pollutants can include but not be limited to high or low pH, phosphorus and heavy metals. Environmental Services may require that additional testing be conducted on the treatment liner. Animal manures must be sterilized because of the potential for bacterial contamination.

### 7.3.7 Seepage Analysis and Control

Determine whether there would be any adverse effects caused by seepage zones on nearby building foundations, basements, roads, parking lots or sloping sites.



### **7.3.8 Cold Climate and Impact of Roadway Deicers**

For cold climate design criteria (snowmelt/ice impacts) refer to D. Caraco and R. Claytor, "Stormwater BMP Design Supplement for Cold Climates", Center for Watershed Protection, 1997.

Potential impact of roadway deicers on potable water wells must be considered in the siting determination. Mitigation measures must be implemented if infiltration of roadway deicers can cause a violation of groundwater quality standards.

## **7.4 Site Characterization**

Use the following guidelines to determine if the site suitability criteria have been met.

### **7.4.1 Field Methods used to Determine Subsurface Characterization**

#### **7.4.1.1 Test Holes or Pits**

- Dig test holes or pits to a depth below the base of the infiltration facility of at least 5 times the maximum design depth of ponded water proposed for the infiltration facility,
- Conduct pit/hole exploration during the wet season (December 1<sup>st</sup> through April 30<sup>th</sup>) to provide accurate groundwater saturation and groundwater information.
- Take soil samples (representative samples from each soil type and/or unit within the infiltration receptor) to a depth below the base of the infiltration facility of 2.5 times the maximum design ponded water depth, but not less than 6 feet.
  - For basins, at least one test pit or test hole per 5,000 ft<sup>2</sup> of basin infiltrating surface (in no case less than two per basin) is required.
  - For trenches, at least one test pit or test hole per 50 feet of trench length (in no case less than two per trench) is required.

The depth and number of test holes or test pits and samples should be increased if, in the judgment of a licensed engineer with geotechnical expertise (P.E.) or other licensed professional acceptable to the City, the conditions are highly variable and such increases are necessary to accurately estimate the performance of the infiltration system. The exploration program may also be decreased if, in the opinion of the licensed engineer or other professional, the conditions are relatively uniform and the borings/test pits omitted will not influence the design or successful operation of the facility. In high water table sites the subsurface exploration sampling need not be conducted lower than two (2) feet below the groundwater table.

- Prepare detailed logs for each test pit or test hole and a map showing the location of the test pits or test holes. Logs must include at a minimum, depth of pit or hole, soil descriptions, depth to water, presence of stratification.

Soil characterization for each soil unit (soils of the same texture, color, density, compaction, consolidation and permeability) encountered must be based upon the method used for determining the long-term infiltration rate (see Section 7.4.2) and must include:

- Percent clay content (include type of clay, if known)

- Cation exchange capacity (CEC) and organic matter content for each soil type and strata. For soils with low CEC and organic content, deeper characterization of soils may be warranted.
- Soil contamination.
- Color/mottling.
- Variations and nature of stratifications.
- Grain-size distribution (ASTM D422 or equivalent AASHTO specification).
- Textural class (USDA) (see Figure 3 - 11).

#### **7.4.1.2 Infiltration Rate Determination**

Determine the representative infiltration rate of the unsaturated vadose zone based on field infiltration tests and/or grain size/texture determinations. Field infiltration rates can be determined using the Pilot Infiltration Test (see PIT-Appendix B). Such site testing should be considered to verify infiltration rate estimates based on soil size distribution and/or texture. Infiltration rates may also be estimated based on soil grain-size distributions from test pits or test hole samples. This may be particularly useful where a sufficient source of water does not exist to conduct a pilot infiltration test. As a minimum, one soil grain-size analysis per soil stratum in each test hole shall be performed within 2.5 times the maximum design water depth, but not less than 6 feet.

The infiltration rate is needed for routing and sizing purposes and for classifying the soil for treatment adequacy.

#### **7.4.1.3 Infiltration Receptor**

The requirements of this section will be applied as directed by Environmental Services.

Infiltration receptor (unsaturated and saturated soil receiving the storm water) characterization should include:

- Installation of groundwater monitoring wells. Use at least three per infiltration facility, or three hydraulically connected surface and groundwater features. This will establish a three-dimensional relationship for the groundwater table, unless the highest groundwater level is known to be at least 50 feet below the proposed infiltration facility. The monitoring wells will:
  - Monitor the seasonal groundwater levels at the site during at least one wet season, and,
  - Consider the potential for both unconfined and confined aquifers, or confining units, at the site that may influence the proposed infiltration facility as well as the groundwater gradient. Other approaches to determine groundwater levels at the proposed site could be considered if pre-approved by the City of Tacoma, and,
  - Determine the ambient groundwater quality, if that is a concern.
- An estimate of the volumetric water holding capacity of the infiltration receptor soil. This is the soil layer below the infiltration facility and above the seasonal high-water mark, bedrock, hardpan, or other low permeability layer. This analysis should be conducted at a conservatively high infiltration rate based on vadose zone porosity, and the water quality runoff volume to be infiltrated. This, along with an analysis of groundwater movement, will be useful in determining if there are volumetric limitations that would adversely affect drawdown.
- Determination of:

- Depth to groundwater table and to bedrock/impermeable layers.
- Seasonal variation of groundwater table based on well water levels and observed mottling.
- Existing groundwater flow direction and gradient.
- Lateral extent of infiltration receptor.
- Horizontal hydraulic conductivity of the saturated zone to assess the aquifer's ability to laterally transport the infiltrated water.
- Impact of the infiltration rate and volume at the project site on groundwater mounding, flow direction, and water table; and the discharge point or area of the infiltrating water. A groundwater mounding analysis shall be conducted at all sites where the depth to seasonal groundwater table or low permeability stratum is less than 15 feet and the runoff to the infiltration facility is from more than one acre. The site professional can consider conducting an aquifer test, or slug test and the type of groundwater mounding analysis necessary at the site.

#### **7.4.2 Design Infiltration Rate Determination**

Use the guidance in Volume 3, Section 6.5 to determine the design infiltration rate.

##### **7.4.2.1 General Sizing Criteria**

This information is applicable to infiltration basins, trenches, and bio-infiltration facilities.

Size the device by routing 91% of the runoff volume, as predicted by the Western Washington Hydrology Model (WWHM) through the facility.

Infiltration facilities for treatment can be located upstream or downstream of detention and can be offline or online.

- **Online** treatment facilities placed **upstream or downstream** of a detention facility must be sized to infiltrate 91% of the runoff file volume directed to it.
- **Offline** treatment facilities placed **upstream** of a detention facility must have a flow splitter designed to send all flows at or below the 15-minute water quality flow rate, as predicted by WWHM, to the treatment facility. The treatment facility must be sized to infiltrate all the runoff sent to it (no overflows from the treatment facility are allowed).
- **Offline** treatment facilities placed **downstream** of a detention facility must have a flow splitter designed to send all flows at or below the 2-year flow frequency from the detention pond, as predicted by WWHM, to the treatment facility. The treatment facility must be sized to infiltrate all the runoff sent to it (no overflows from the treatment facility are allowed).

##### **7.4.2.2 General Design Criteria**

- Slope of the base of the infiltration facility should be <3 percent.
- Spillways/overflow structures – A nonerodible outlet or spillway with a firmly established elevation must be constructed to discharge overflow. Ponding depth, drawdown time, and storage volume are calculated from that reference point. Refer to Volume 3, Section 7.1.3 for overflow structure design details.
- For infiltration treatment facilities, side-wall seepage is not a concern if seepage occurs through the same stratum as the bottom of the facility. However, for engineered soils or for soils with very low permeability, the potential to bypass the treatment soil through the side-walls may be significant. In those cases, the side-walls must be lined, either with an

impervious liner or with at least 18 inches of treatment soil, to prevent seepage of untreated flows through the side walls.

#### **7.4.2.3 General Construction Criteria**

- Initially excavate to within 1-foot of the final floor elevation of the infiltration facility. Do not excavate to the final grade until all disturbed areas in the upgradient watershed have been stabilized or protected. Remove all accumulated sediment in the final phase of excavation.
- Post-construction, all water must be conveyed through a pretreatment device to prevent sedimentation.
- Infiltration facilities should not be used as temporary sediment traps during construction.
- Use light-tracked equipment for excavation to avoid compaction of the floor of the infiltration facility. The use of draglines and trackhoes should be considered. The infiltration area should be flagged or marked to keep equipment away.

#### **7.4.2.4 Maintenance Criteria**

Per Minimum Requirement #10, an operation and maintenance plan shall be prepared for all stormwater management facilities. See Volume 1, Appendix C for specific maintenance requirements. Maintenance shall be a basic consideration in design and cost-determination of the stormwater management facility.

Any standing water removed during maintenance operation must be disposed of in a City approved manner. See the dewatering requirements in Volume 4 of this manual. Pretreatment may be necessary. Solids must be disposed of in accordance with state and local waste regulations.

Facilities shall be constructed such that the facility can be easily inspected by one person. This may require construction of additional inspection ports or access manholes to allow inspection access to be opened by one person.

#### **7.4.2.5 Verification Testing of the Completed Facility**

Verification testing of the completed full-scale infiltration facility is recommended to confirm that the design infiltration parameters are adequate. The site professional should determine the duration and frequency of the verification testing program, including the monitoring program for potentially impacted groundwater. The groundwater monitoring wells installed during site characterization (see Section 7.4.1.3) may be used for this purpose. Long-term (more than two years) in-situ drawdown and confirmatory monitoring of the infiltration facility would be preferable. The City of Tacoma may require verification testing on a case-by-case basis.

## **7.5 Best Management Practices (BMPs) for Infiltration Treatment**

The three BMPs discussed below are recognized currently as effective treatment techniques using infiltration and bio-infiltration. Selection of a specific BMP should be based on the Treatment Facility Menus provided in Chapter 2.

### **7.5.1 BMP T710 Infiltration Basins**

#### **7.5.1.1 Description**

Infiltration basins are earthen impoundments used for the collection, temporary storage and infiltration of incoming stormwater runoff.

#### **7.5.1.2 Design Criteria Specific for Basins**

- Complete a site suitability analysis per Section 7.3.
- Provide access for vehicles to easily maintain the forebay (presettling basin) area and not disturb vegetation, or resuspend sediment any more than is absolutely necessary.
- The slope of the basin bottom should not exceed 3% in any direction.
- Provide a minimum of one foot of freeboard when establishing the design ponded water depth. Freeboard is measured from the rim of the infiltration facility to the maximum ponding level or from the rim down to the overflow point if overflow or a spillway is included.
- Establish vegetation on the basin floor and side slopes to prevent erosion and sloughing and to provide additional pollutant removal. Provide erosion protection of inflow points to the basin (e.g., riprap, flow spreaders, energy dissipators (See Chapter 3). Seed mixture shall be a Low-Growing Turf Seed Mix (see Volume 2, Table 2 - 3). The use of slow-growing stoloniferous grasses will permit longer intervals between mowing. The use of fertilizers is prohibited.
- Lining material – Basins can be open or covered with a 6 to 12-inch layer of filter material such as coarse sand, or a suitable filter fabric to help prevent the buildup of impervious deposits on the soil surface. A nonwoven geotextile should be selected that will function sufficiently without plugging (see geotextile specifications in Appendix C). The filter layer shall be replaced or cleaned when/if it becomes clogged.
- Stabilize and plant embankment, emergency spillways, spoil and borrow areas, and other disturbed areas. Without healthy vegetation the surface soil pores would quickly plug.

#### **7.5.1.3 Maintenance Criteria for Basins**

- See Volume 1, Appendix C, Maintenance Checklist #2 for specific maintenance requirements for infiltration ponds and basins.

### **7.5.2 BMP T720 Infiltration Trenches**

#### **7.5.2.1 Description**

Infiltration trenches are generally at least 24 inches wide, and are backfilled with a coarse stone aggregate, allowing for temporary storage of stormwater runoff in the voids of the aggregate material. Stored runoff gradually infiltrates into the surrounding soil. The surface of the trench can be covered with grating and/or consist of stone, gabion, sand, or a grassed covered area with a surface inlet. Perforated rigid pipe of at least 8-inch diameter can also be used to distribute the stormwater in a stone trench.

### 7.5.2.2 Design Criteria

- Complete a site suitability analysis per Section 7.3.
- Include an access port or open or grated top for accessibility to conduct inspections and maintenance.
- Use clean aggregate with a maximum diameter of 3 inches and a minimum diameter of 1.5 inches to fill trench. Void space for these aggregates should be in the range of 30 to 40 percent.
- Line sides of trench with an engineered geotextile material. Geotextile should surround all of the aggregate fill material except for the top one-foot, which is placed over the geotextile. Geotextile fabric with acceptable properties must be carefully selected to avoid plugging (see Appendix C).
- The bottom sand or geotextile fabric as shown in the attached figures is optional.
- Overflow Channel - Because an infiltration trench is generally used for small drainage areas, an emergency spillway is not necessary. However, a non-erosive overflow channel leading to a stabilized watercourse should be provided.
- Trench can be placed under a porous or impervious surface cover to conserve space.
- Install an observation well at the lower end of the infiltration trench to check water levels, drawdown time, sediment accumulation, and conduct water quality monitoring. Figure 5 - 7 illustrates observation well details. It should consist of a perforated PVC pipe which is 4 to 6 inches in diameter and it should be constructed flush with the ground elevation. For larger trenches a 12-36 inch diameter well can be installed to facilitate maintenance operations such as pumping out the sediment. Cap the top of the well to discourage vandalism and tampering.

### 7.5.2.3 Construction Criteria

- **Trench Preparation** –Place excavated materials away from the trench sides to enhance trench wall stability. Keep excavated material away from slopes, neighboring property, sidewalks and streets.
- **Stone Aggregate Placement and Compaction** – Place the stone aggregate in lifts and compact using plate compactors. As a rule of thumb, a maximum loose lift thickness of 12 inches is recommended. The compaction process ensures geotextile conformity to the excavation sides, thereby reducing potential piping and geotextile clogging, and settlement problems.
- **Potential Contamination** - Prevent natural or fill soils from intermixing with the stone aggregate. Remove all contaminated stone aggregate and replace with uncontaminated stone aggregate.
- **Overlapping and Covering** - Following the stone aggregate placement, fold the geotextile over the stone aggregate to form a 12 inch minimum longitudinal overlap. When overlaps are required between rolls, overlap the upstream roll a minimum of 2 feet over the downstream roll in order to provide a shingled effect.
- **Voids behind Geotextile** – Avoid voids between the geotextile and excavation sides. Remove boulders or other obstacles from the trench walls. Place natural soils in voids at the most convenient time during construction to ensure geotextile conformity to the excavation sides. Soil piping, geotextile clogging, and possible surface subsidence will be avoided by this remedial process.

- **Unstable Excavation Sites** - Vertically excavated walls may be difficult to maintain in areas where the soil moisture is high or where soft or cohesionless soils predominate. Trapezoidal, rather than rectangular, cross-sections may be needed.

#### 7.5.2.4 Maintenance Criteria

- See Volume 1, Appendix C, Maintenance Checklist #3 for specific requirements for infiltration trenches.

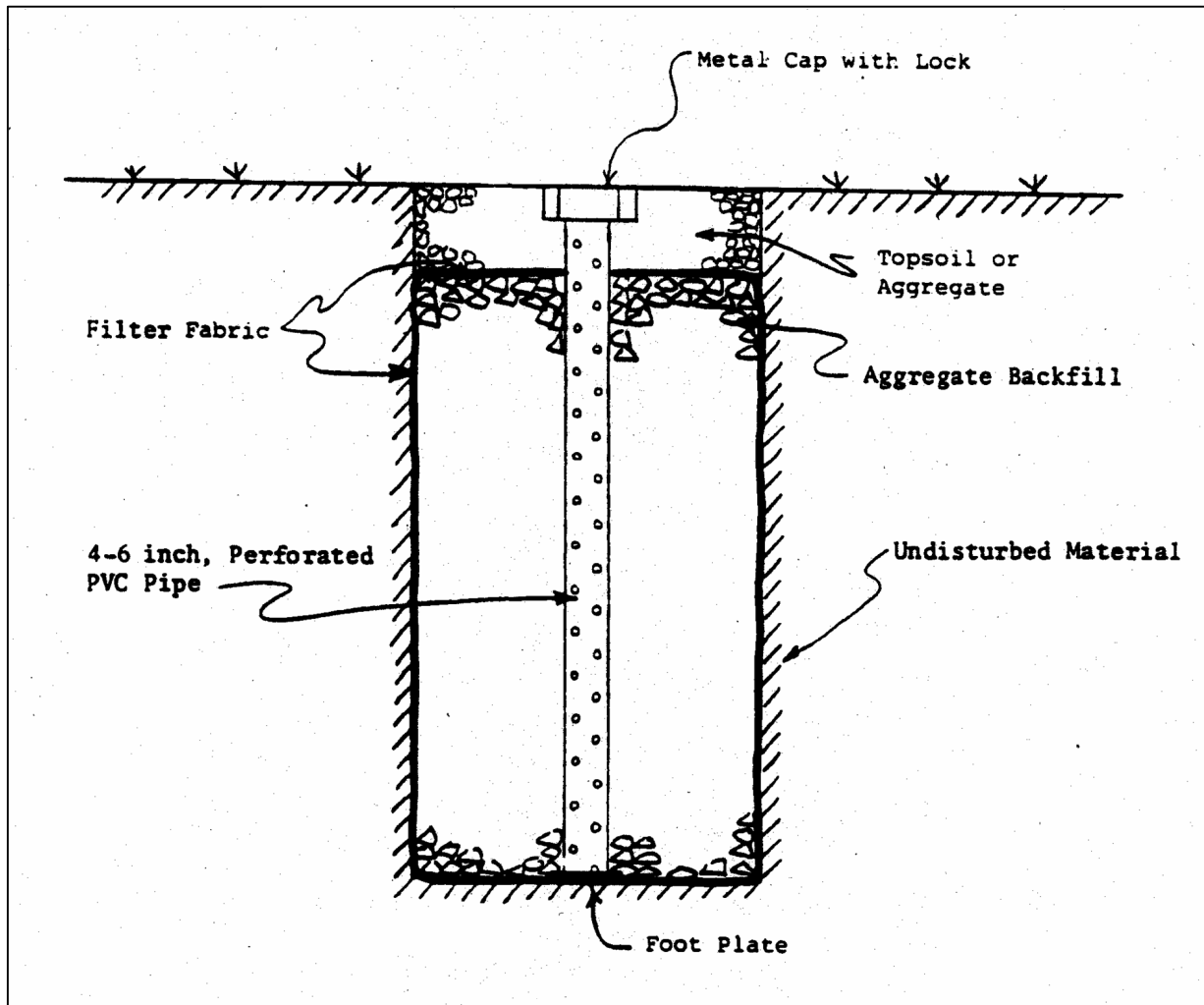


Figure 5 - 7. Observation Well Details

## Chapter 8 Sand Filtration Treatment Facilities

### 8.1 Purpose

This chapter presents criteria for the design, construction and maintenance of runoff treatment sand filters. Treatment sand filters are used to collect, treat and remove TSS, phosphorous, and insoluble organics (including oils) from stormwater.

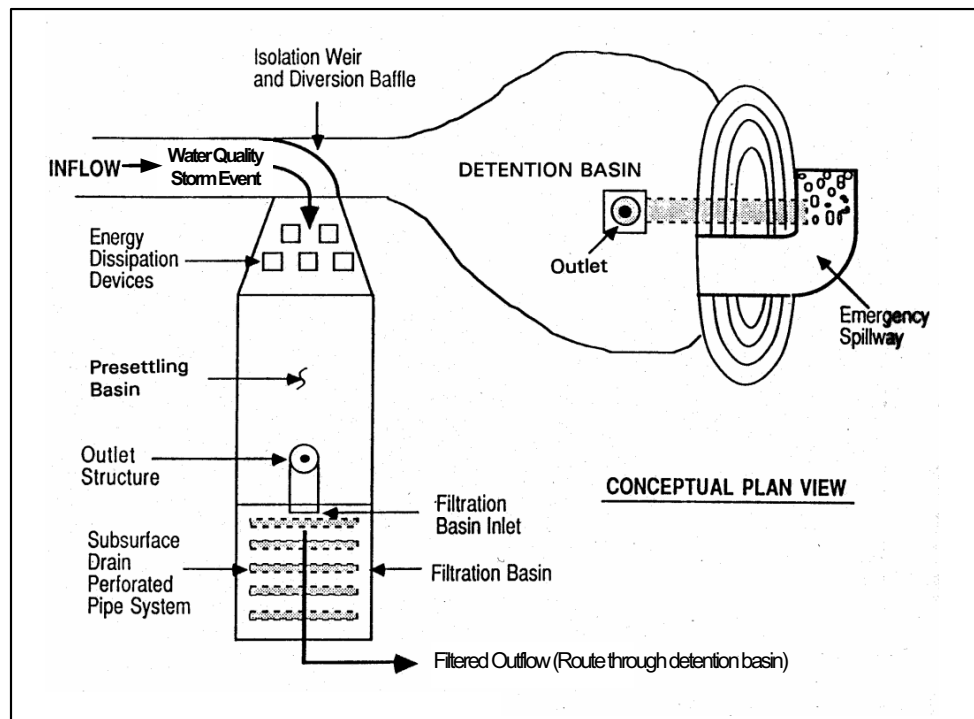
Sand filtration options discussed in this Chapter are:

- BMP T810 Sand Filter Vault
- BMP T820 Linear Sand Filter
- Basic Sand Filter
- Large Sand Filter

### 8.2 Description

A typical sand filtration system consists of a pretreatment facility, flow spreader(s), a sand bed, and the underdrain piping. The sand filter bed includes a geotextile fabric between the sand bed and the bottom underdrain system.

An impermeable liner under the facility may also be needed if the filtered runoff requires additional treatment to remove soluble groundwater pollutants, or in cases where additional groundwater protection is mandated. The variations of a sand filter include a basic or large sand filter, sand filter with level spreader, sand filter vault, and linear sand filter. Figure 5 - 8 through Figure 5 - 15 provide examples of various sand filter configurations.



**Figure 5 - 8. Sand Filtration Basin Preceded by Presettling Basin  
(Variation of a Basic Sand Filter)**



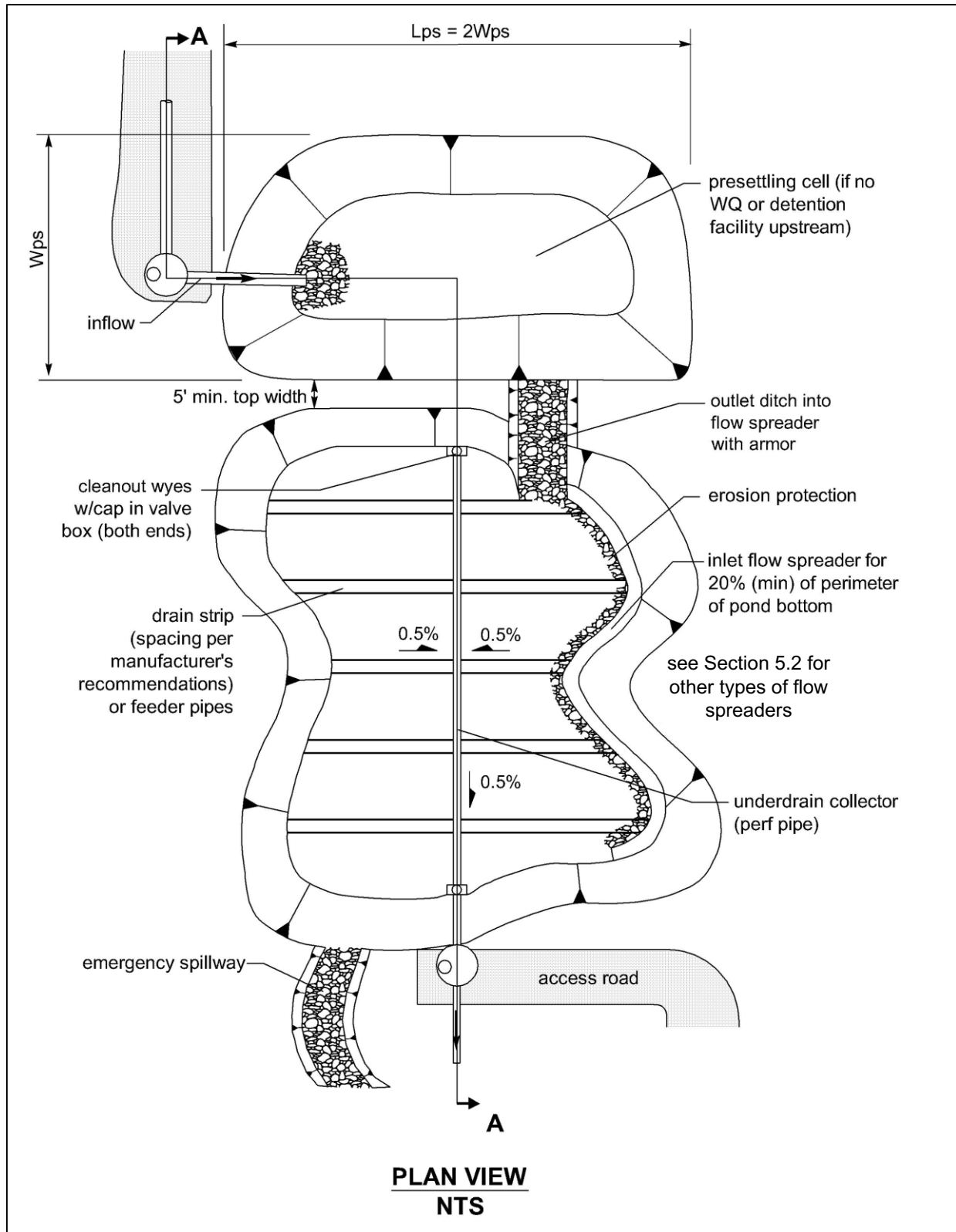
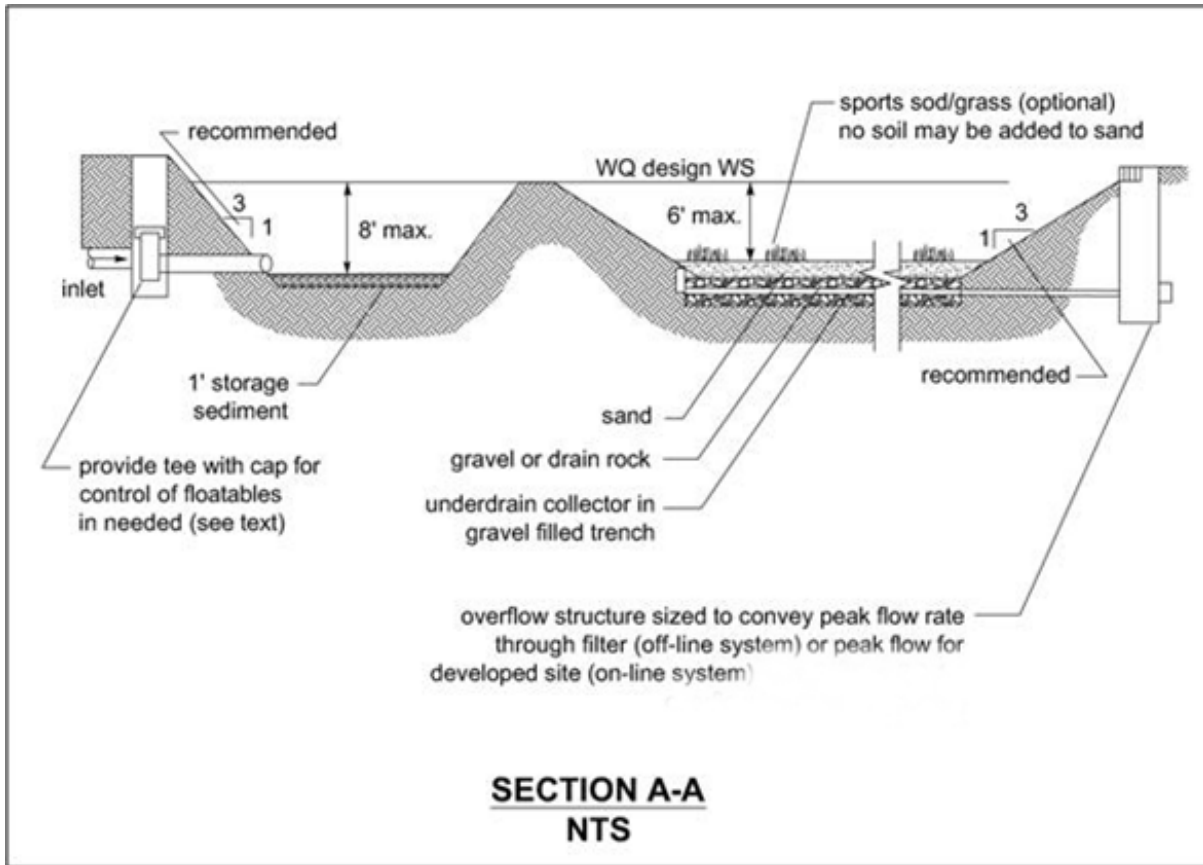
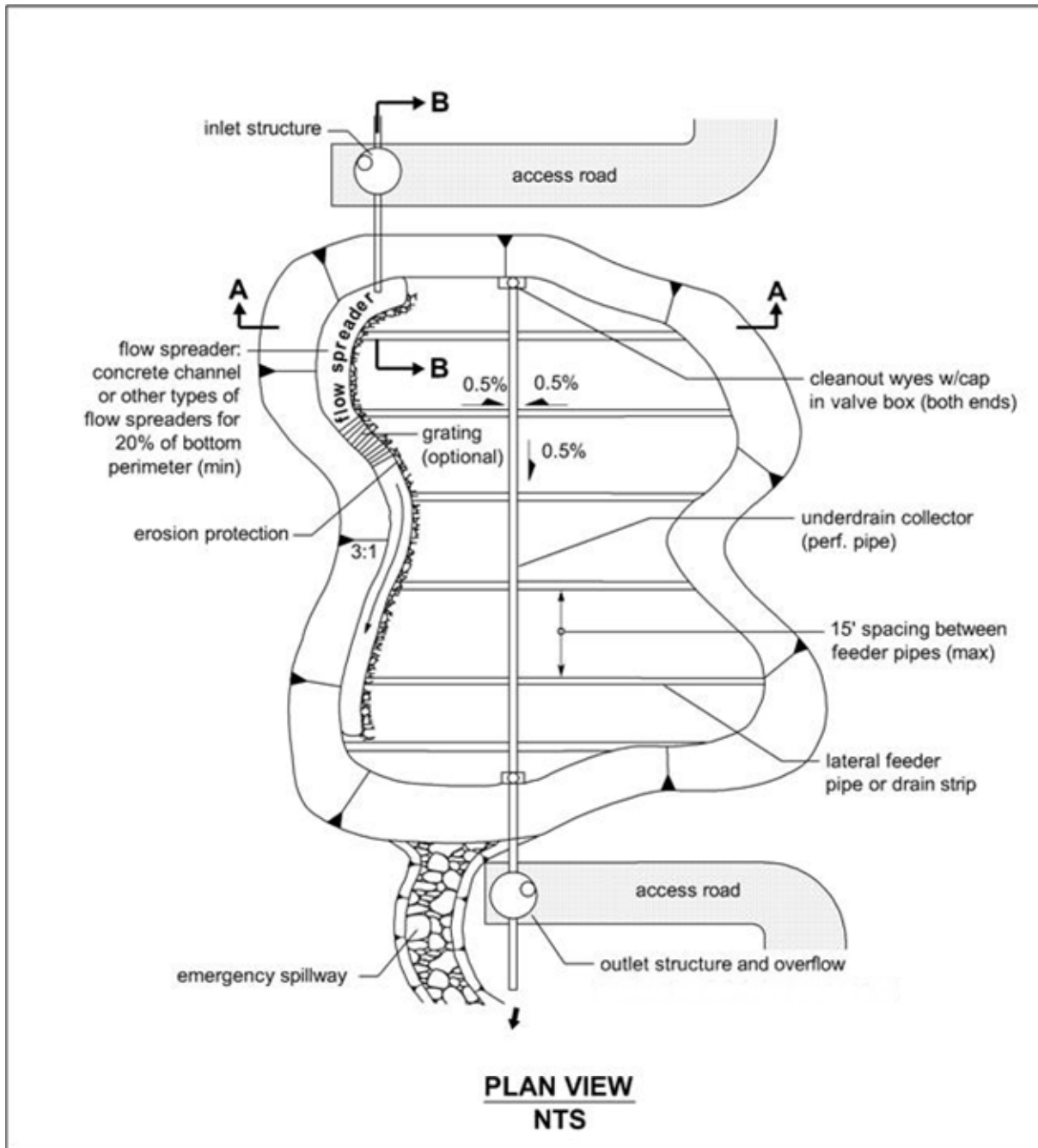


Figure 5 - 9. Sand Filter with a Pretreatment Cell (top view)



*Figure 5 - 10. Sand Filter with a Pretreatment Cell (side view)*



**Figure 5 - 11. Sand Filter with Level Spreader (top view)**

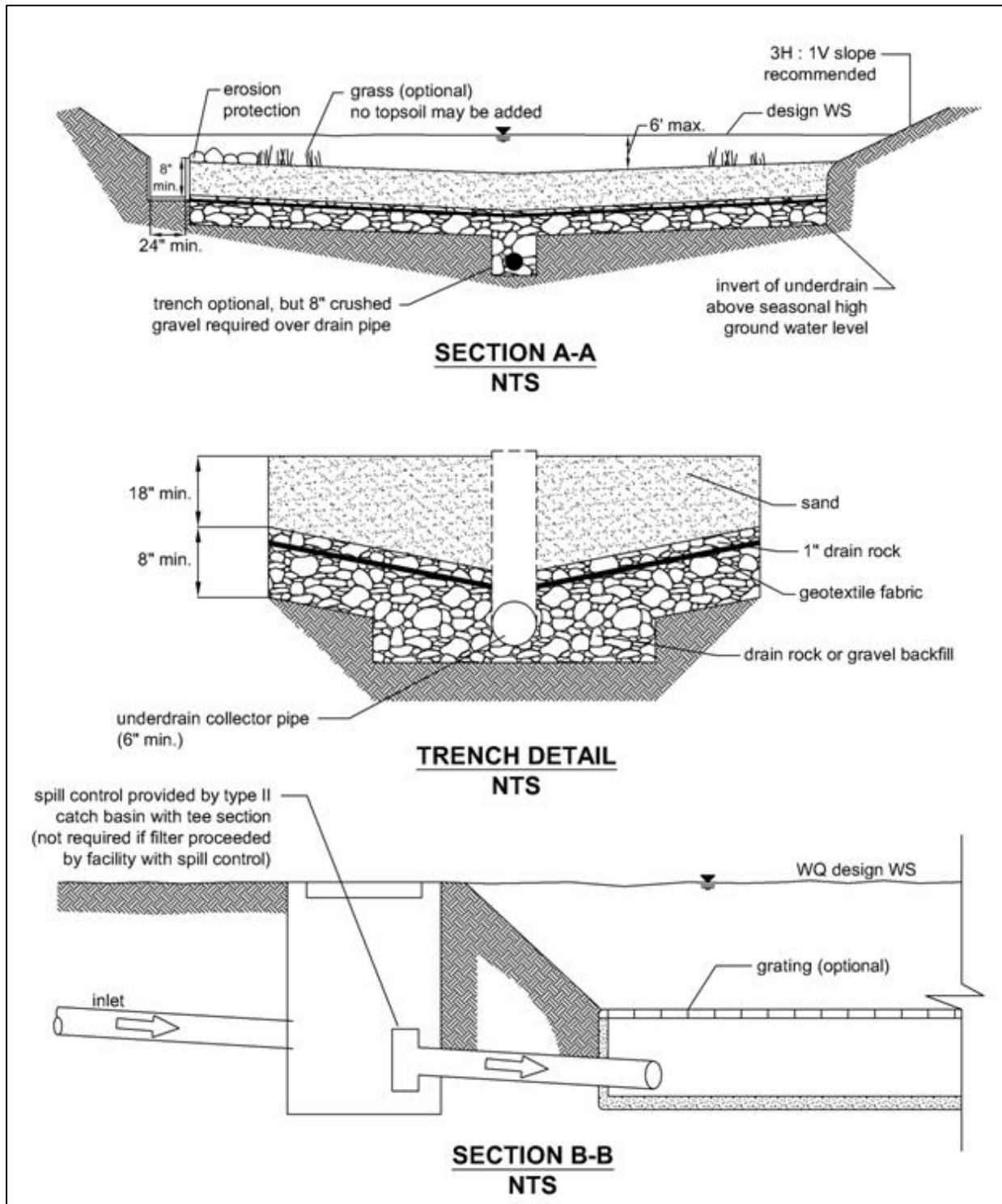


Figure 5 - 12. Sand Filter with Level Spreader (side view)

### 8.3 Applications and Limitations

Sand filtration can be used in most residential, commercial, and industrial developments where debris, heavy sediment loads, and oils and greases will not clog or prematurely overload the sand, or where adequate pretreatment is provided for these pollutants.

Pretreatment is necessary to reduce velocities to the sand filter and remove debris, floatables, large particulate matter, and oils. In high water table areas, adequate drainage of the sand filter may require additional engineering analysis and design considerations. An underground filter should be considered in areas subject to freezing conditions. (Urbonas, 1997)

### 8.4 Site Suitability

The following site characteristics should be considered in siting a sand filtration system:

- Space availability, including the space needed for a presettling basin.
- Sufficient hydraulic head, at least 4 feet from inlet to outlet.
- Adequate Operation and Maintenance capability including accessibility for O & M.
- Sufficient pretreatment of oil, debris and solids in the tributary runoff.

### 8.5 Design Criteria

#### 8.5.1 Objective

The objective is to capture and treat 91% of the total runoff volume (95% for large sand filters) as predicted by the Western Washington Hydrology Model (WWHM).

#### 8.5.2 Sand Filter Sizing

Sand filter design criteria are as follows:

1. The design hydraulic conductivity shall be 1 in/hr.
2. **Online** sand filters must NOT be placed **upstream** of a detention facility. This is to prevent exposure of the sand filter surface to high flow rates that could cause loss of media and previously removed pollutants.
3. **Online** sand filters placed **downstream** of a detention facility must be sized using WWHM to filter 91% of the runoff volume.
4. **Offline** sand filters placed **upstream** of a detention facility must have a flow splitter designed to send all flows at or below the 15-minute water quality flow rate, as predicted by WWHM to the sand filter. The sand filter must be sized to filter all the runoff sent to it (no overflows from the treatment facility should occur).
5. **Offline** sand filters placed **downstream** of a detention facility must have a flow splitter designed to send all flows at or below the 2-year frequency peak flow as predicted by WWHM, from the detention facility to the treatment facility. The treatment facility must be sized to filter all the runoff sent to it (no overflows from the treatment facility should occur).
6. Include an overflow in the design. The overflow height shall be at the maximum hydraulic head of the water above the sand bed.
7. Pretreat runoff to be treated by the sand filter (e.g., presettling basin, etc. depending on pollutants) to remove debris and other solids, and oil from high use sites.

8. Design inlet bypass and flow spreading structures (e.g., flow spreaders, weirs or multiple orifice openings) to capture the applicable design flow rate, minimize turbulence and to spread the flow uniformly across the surface of the sand filter. Install stone riprap or other energy dissipation devices to prevent gouging of the sand medium and to promote uniform flow. Include emergency spillway or overflow structures (see Volume 3).
9. Include underdrain piping in sand filter design. Types of underdrains include a central collector pipe with lateral feeder pipes; or a geotextile drain strip in an 8-inch gravel backfill or drain rock bed; or longitudinal pipes in an 8-inch gravel backfill or drain rock with a collector pipe at the outlet end.
  - Upstream of detention, underdrain piping shall be sized to handle double the two-year return frequency flow indicated by the WWHM (the doubling factor is a factor of safety). Downstream of detention the underdrain piping shall be sized for the two-year return frequency flow indicated by the WWHM. In both instances there shall be at least one foot of hydraulic head above the invert of the upstream end of the collector pipe.
  - Internal diameters of underdrain pipes shall be a minimum of six inches having two rows of ½-inch holes spaced 6 inches apart longitudinally (maximum), with rows 120 degrees apart (laid with holes downward). Maximum perpendicular distance between two feeder pipes must be 15 feet. All piping is to be schedule 40 PVC or greater wall thickness. Drain piping could be installed in basin and trench configurations. Other equivalent underdrains can be used.
  - Main collector underdrain pipe shall be at a slope of 0.5 percent minimum.
  - A geotextile fabric (specifications in Appendix C) must be used between the sand layer and drain rock or gravel and placed so that 1-inch of drain rock/gravel is above the fabric. Drain rock shall be 0.75-1.5 inch rock or gravel backfill, washed free of clay and organic material.
10. Provide cleanout wyes with caps or junction boxes at both ends of the collector pipes. Extend cleanouts to the surface of the filter. Provide a valve box for access to the cleanouts. Provide access for cleaning all underdrain piping. This may consist of installing cleanout ports that tee into the underdrain system and surface above the top of the sand bed. To facilitate maintenance of the sand filter an inlet shutoff/bypass valve is recommended.
11. Sand specification: The sand in a filter must meet the size gradation (by weight) given in Table 5 - 6. The contractor must obtain a grain size analysis from the supplier to certify that the sieve requirements are met.

**Table 5 - 6: Sand Specifications<sup>a</sup>**

U.S. Sieve Number	Percent Passing
4	95-100
8	70-100
16	40-90
30	25-75
50	2-25
100	<4
200	<2

a. Source: King County Stormwater Design Manual, September 1998

12. Impermeable Liners for Sand Bed Bottom: Impermeable liners are generally required for soluble pollutants such as metals and toxic organics and where the underflow could cause problems with structures. Impermeable liners may be made of clay, concrete or geomembrane. Clay liners shall have a minimum thickness of 12 inches and meet the specifications given in Table 5 - 7.

**Table 5 - 7: Clay Liner Specifications<sup>a</sup>**

Property	Test Method	Unit	Specification
Permeability	ASTM D-2434	cm/sec	$1 \times 10^{-6}$ max.
Plasticity Index of Clay	ASTM D-423 & D-424	percent	Not less than 15
Liquid Limit of Clay	ASTM D-2216	percent	Not less than 30
Clay Particles Passing	ASTM D-422	percent	Not less than 30
Clay Compaction	ASTM D-2216	percent	95% of Standard Proctor Density

a. Source: City of Austin, 1988

- If a geomembrane liner is used it shall have a minimum thickness of 30 mils and be ultraviolet light resistant. The geomembrane liner shall be protected from puncture, tearing, and abrasion by installing geotextile fabric on the top and bottom of the geomembrane.
- Concrete liners may also be used for sedimentation chambers and for sedimentation and sand filtration basins less than 1,000 square feet in area. Concrete shall be 5 inches thick Class A or better and shall be reinforced by steel wire mesh. The steel wire mesh shall be 6 gauge wire or larger and 6-inch by 6-inch mesh or smaller. An "Ordinary Surface Finish" is required. When the underlying soil is clay or has an unconfined compressive strength of 0.25 ton per square foot or less, the concrete shall have a minimum 6-inch compacted aggregate base. This base must consist of coarse sand and river stone, crushed stone or equivalent with diameter of 0.75- to 1-inch.

- If an impermeable liner is not required then a geotextile fabric liner shall be installed that retains the sand and meets the specifications listed in Appendix C unless the basin has been excavated to bedrock.
  - If an impermeable liner is not provided, then an analysis shall be made of possible adverse effects of seepage zones on groundwater, and near building foundations, basements, roads, parking lots and sloping sites. Sand filters without impermeable liners shall not be built on fill sites and shall be located at least 20-foot downslope and 100-foot upslope from building foundations.
13. Include an access ramp with a slope not to exceed 7H:1V, or equivalent, for maintenance purposes at the inlet and the outlet of a surface filter.
  14. Side slopes for earthen/grass embankments shall not exceed 3H:1V to facilitate mowing.
  15. There shall be at least 2 feet clearance between the seasonal high groundwater level and the bottom of the sand filter.

## **8.6 Construction Criteria**

- The sand filter shall not be placed into service until site construction is complete and the site is stabilized.
- Place sand in a uniform thickness and compact using a water settling method. Settling shall be accomplished by flooding the sand with 10-15 gallons of water per cubic foot of sand. After flooding, the sand shall be smoothed and leveled.

## **8.7 Maintenance Criteria**

Per Minimum Requirement #10, an operation and maintenance plan shall be prepared for all stormwater management facilities. See Volume 1, Appendix C, Maintenance Checklist #15 and #16 for specific maintenance requirements for sand filters. Maintenance shall be a basic consideration in design and cost-determination of the stormwater management facility.

Any standing water removed during maintenance operation must be disposed of in a City approved manner. See the dewatering requirements in Volume 4 of this manual. Pretreatment may be necessary. Solids must be disposed of in accordance with state and local waste regulations.

Facilities shall be constructed such that the facility can be easily inspected by one person. This may require construction of additional inspection ports or access manholes to allow inspection access to be opened by one person.



## **8.7.1 BMP T810 Sand Filter Vault**

### **8.7.1.1 Description (Figure 5 - 13 and Figure 5 - 14)**

A sand filter vault is similar to an open sand filter except that the sand layer and underdrains are installed below grade in a vault. It consists of presettling and sand filtration cells.

### **8.7.1.2 Applications and Limitations**

- Use where space limitations preclude above ground facilities
- Not suitable where high water table and heavy sediment loads are expected
- An elevation difference of 4 feet between inlet and outlet is needed

### **8.7.1.3 Additional Design Criteria for Vaults**

- Optimize sand inlet flow distribution with minimal sand bed disturbance. A maximum 8-inch distance between the top of the spreader and the top of the sand bed is required. Flows may enter the sand bed by spilling over the top of the wall into a flow spreader pad or alternatively a pipe and manifold system may be used. Any pipe and manifold system must retain the required dead storage volume in the first cell, minimize turbulence, and be readily maintainable.
- If an inlet pipe and manifold system is used, the minimum pipe size shall be 8 inches. Multiple inlets are required to minimize turbulence and reduce local flow velocities.
- Provide erosion protection along the first foot of the sand bed adjacent to the spreader. Geotextile fabric secured on the surface of the sand bed, or equivalent method, may be used.
- Design the presettling cell for sediment collection and removal. Use a V-shaped bottom, removable bottom panels, or equivalent sludge handling system. Provide one-foot of sediment storage in the presettling cell.
- Seal the pre-settling chamber to trap oil and trash. This chamber is usually connected to the sand filtration chamber using a pipe with an inverted elbow to protect the filter surface from oil and trash.
- If a retaining baffle is necessary for oil/floatables in the presettling cell, it must extend at least one foot above to one foot below the design flow water level. Provide provision for the passage of flows in the event of plugging. Provide access opening and ladder on both sides of the baffle.
- To prevent anoxic conditions, provide a minimum of 24 square feet of ventilation grate for each 250 square feet of sand bed surface area. For sufficient distribution of airflow across the sand bed, grates may be located in one area if the sand filter is small, but placement at each end is preferred. Small grates may also be dispersed over the entire sand bed area.
- Sand filter vaults must conform to the materials and structural suitability criteria specified for wet vaults in Chapter 8.
- Provide a sand filter inlet shutoff/bypass valve for maintenance
- A geotextile fabric over the entire sand bed may be installed that is flexible, highly permeable, three-dimensional matrix, and adequately secured. This is useful in trapping trash and litter.

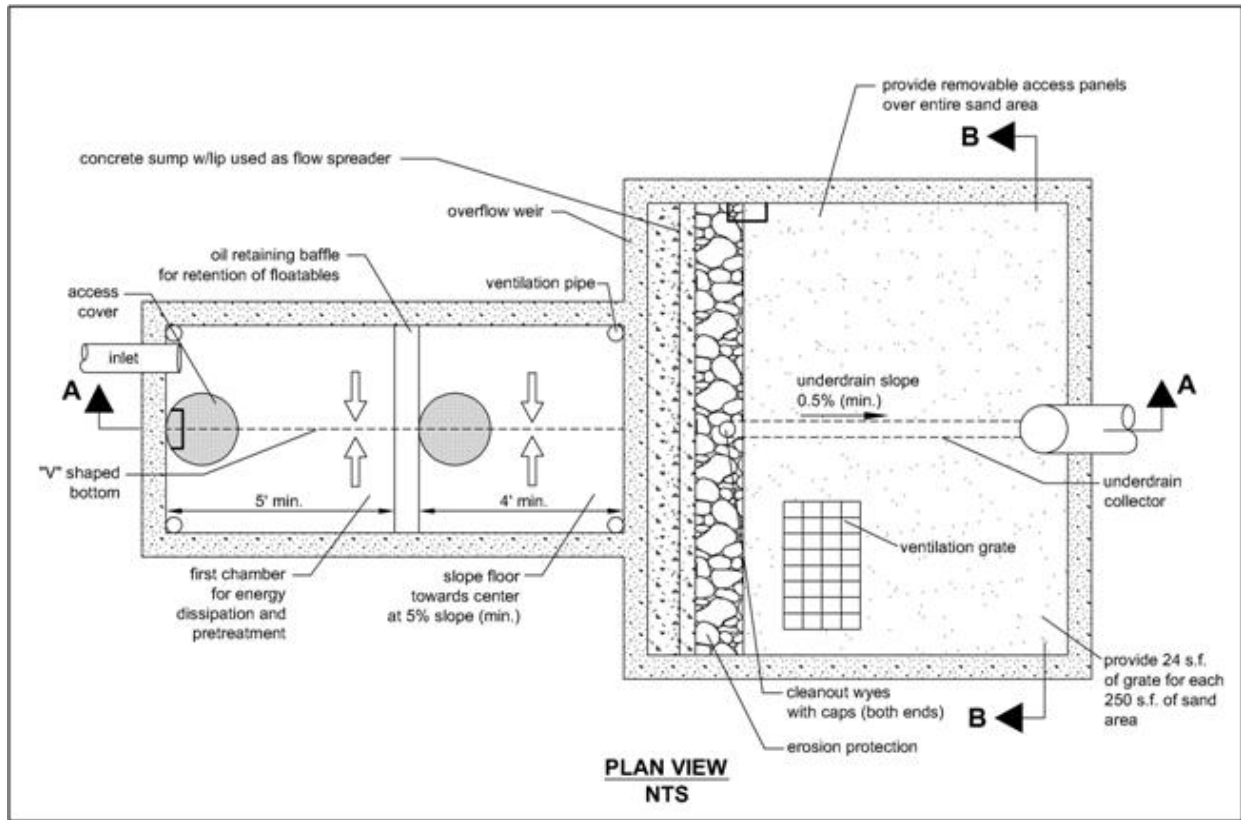


Figure 5 - 13. Sand Filter Vault (top view)

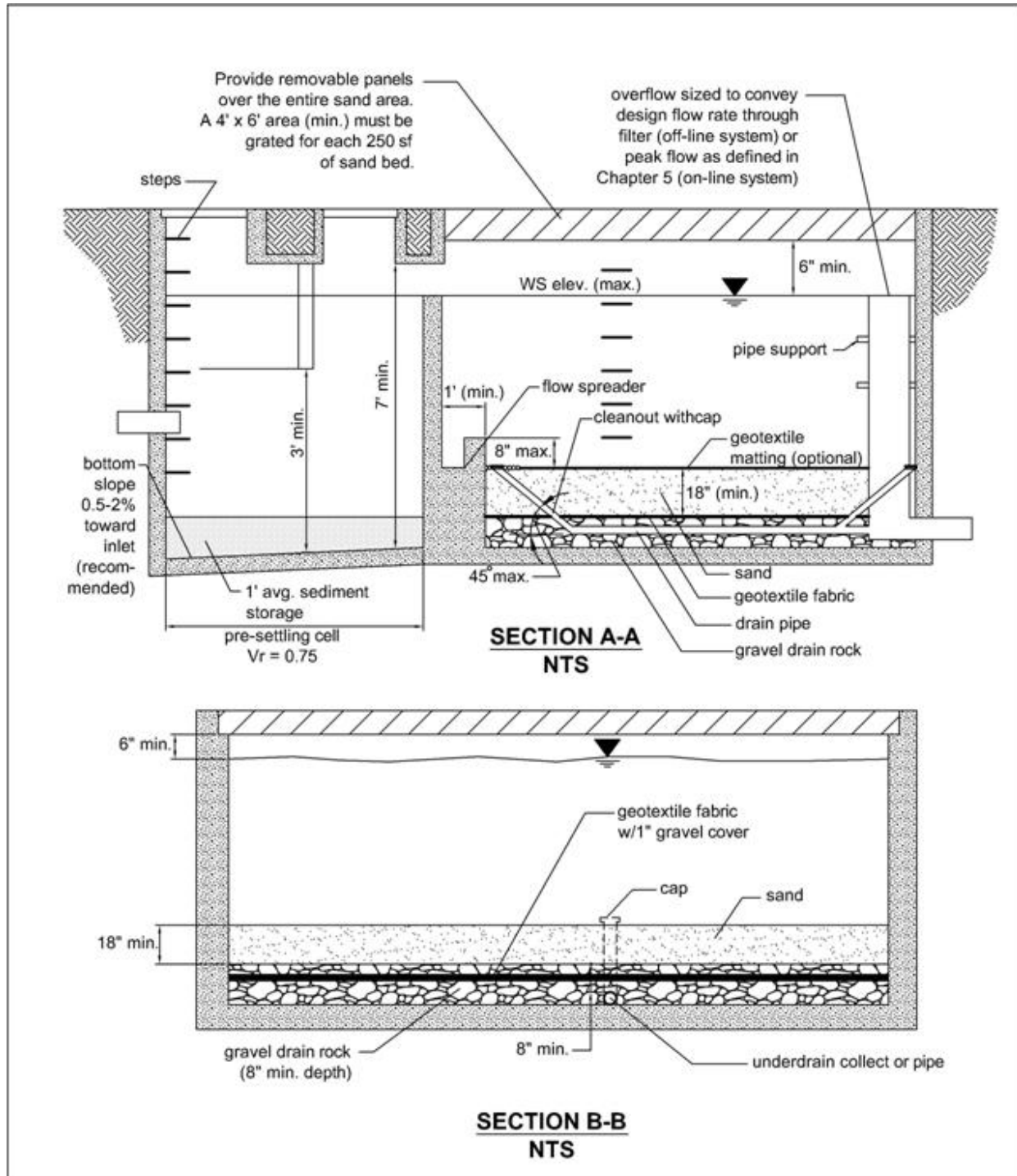


Figure 5 - 14. Sand Filter Vault (side view)

## 8.7.2 BMP T820 Linear Sand Filter

### 8.7.2.1 Description

Linear sand filters are typically long, shallow, two-celled, rectangular vaults. The first cell is designed for settling coarse particles, and the second cell contains the sand bed. Stormwater enters the second cell via a weir section that also functions as a flow spreader.

Figure 5 - 15 illustrates a linear sand filter.

### 8.7.2.2 Application and Limitations

- Applicable in long narrow spaces such as the perimeter of a paved surface.
- As a part of a treatment train such as downstream of a filter strip, upstream of an infiltration system, or upstream of a wet pond or a biofilter for oil control.
- To treat small drainages (less than 2 acres of impervious area).
- To treat runoff from high-use sites for TSS and oil/grease removal, if applicable.

### 8.7.2.3 Additional Design Criteria for Linear Sand Filters

- Divide the two cells by a divider wall that is level and extends a minimum of 12 inches above the sand bed.
- Stormwater may enter the sediment cell by sheet flow or a piped inlet.
- The width of the sand cell must be 1-foot minimum to 15 feet maximum.
- The sand filter bed must be a minimum of 12 inches deep and have an 8-inch layer of drain rock with perforated drainpipe beneath the sand layer.
- The drainpipe must be 6-inch diameter minimum and be wrapped in geotextile and sloped a minimum of 0.5 percent to promote positive drainage.
- Maximum sand bed ponding depth: 12 inches.
- Must be vented as described above for sand filter vaults.
- Linear sand filters must conform to the materials and structural suitability criteria specified for wet vaults described in Chapter 8.
- Sediment cell width shall be selected based on sand filter width as follows:

Sand filter width, (w) inches	12-24	24-48	48-72	72+
Sediment cell width, inches	12	18	24	w/3

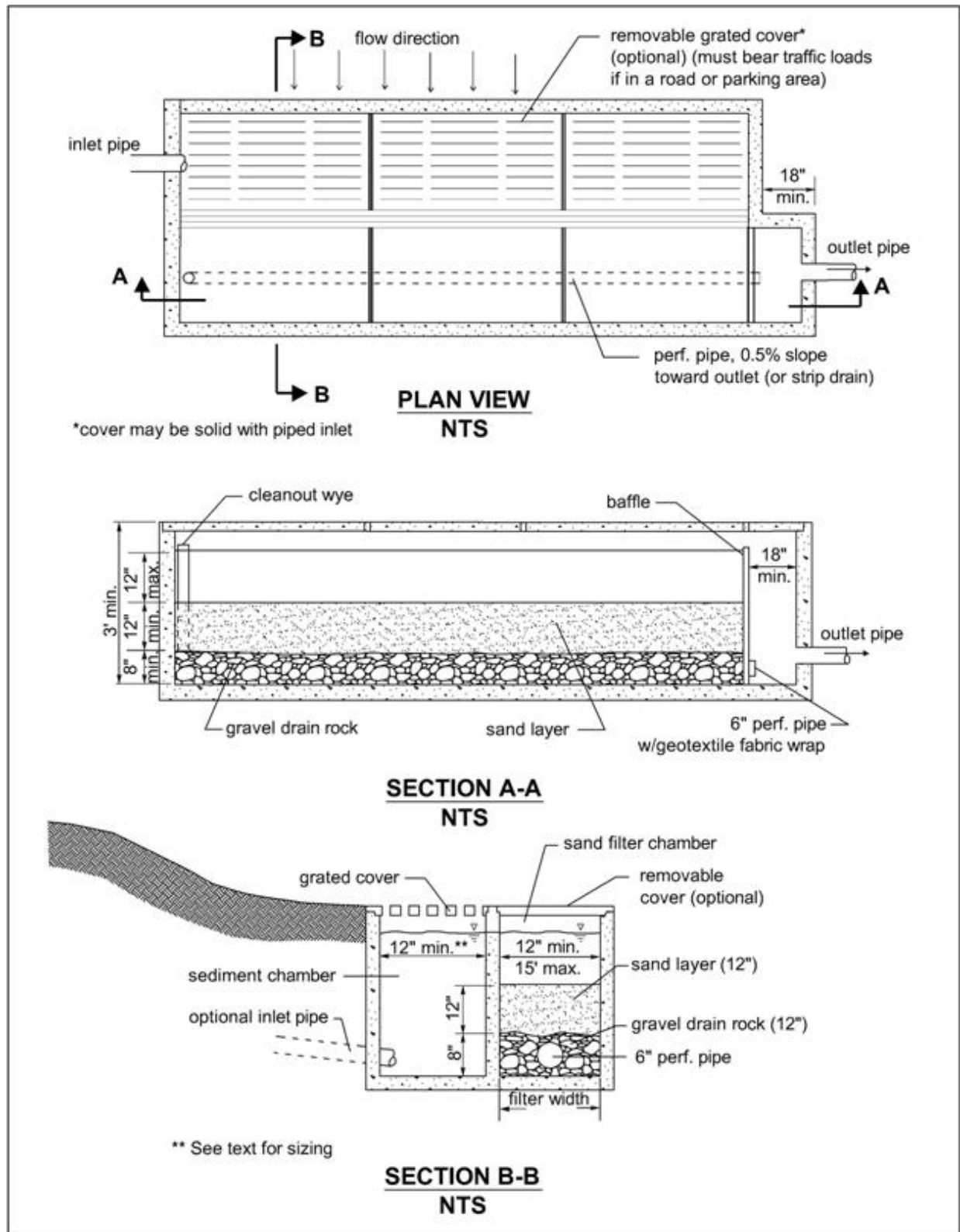


Figure 5 - 15. Linear Sand Filter

## **Chapter 9 Biofiltration Treatment Facilities**

### **9.1 Purpose**

This Chapter addresses five Best Management Practices (BMPs) that are classified as biofiltration treatment facilities.

Biofilters are vegetated treatment systems (typically grass) that remove pollutants by means of sedimentation, filtration, soil sorption, and/or plant uptake. They are typically configured as swales or flat filter strips.

The BMPs discussed in this chapter are designed to remove low concentrations and quantities of total suspended solids (TSS), heavy metals, petroleum hydrocarbons, and/or nutrients from stormwater.

### **9.2 Applications**

A biofilter can be used as a basic treatment BMP for stormwater runoff from roadways, driveways, parking lots, and highly impervious ultra-urban areas or as the first stage of a treatment train. In cases where hydrocarbons, high TSS concentrations, or debris would be present in the runoff, such as high-use sites, a pretreatment system or oil treatment for those components is necessary. Placement of the biofilter in an offline location is preferred to avoid flattening of the vegetation and the erosive effects of high flows.

### **9.3 Site Suitability**

The following factors must be considered for determining site suitability:

- Accessibility for operation and maintenance.
- Suitable growth environment (soil, exposure to sunlight, etc.) for the vegetation.
- Adequate siting for a pre-treatment facility if high petroleum hydrocarbon levels (oil/grease) or high TSS loads could impair treatment capacity or efficiency.

### **9.4 Best Management Practices**

The following five Biofiltration Treatment Facilities BMPs are discussed in this chapter:

BMP T910 – Basic Biofiltration Swale

BMP T920 – Wet Biofiltration Swale

BMP T930 – Continuous Inflow Biofiltration Swale

BMP T940 – Basic Filter Strip & Compost-Amended Filter Strip

BMP T950 – Narrow Area Filter Strip

## 9.4.1 BMP T910 Basic Biofiltration Swale

### 9.4.1.1 Description

Biofiltration swales are typically shaped as a trapezoid or a parabola in cross section as shown in Figure 5 - 16 and Figure 5 - 17.

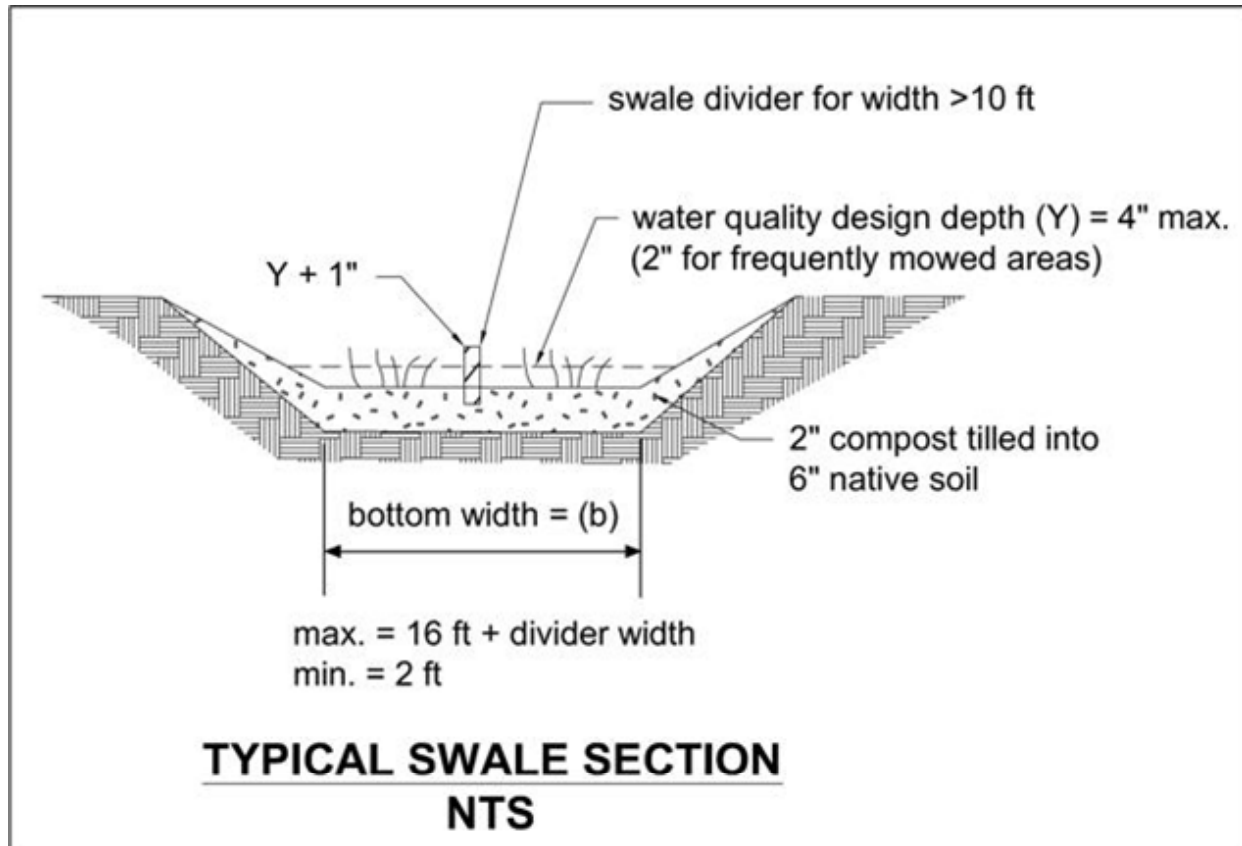
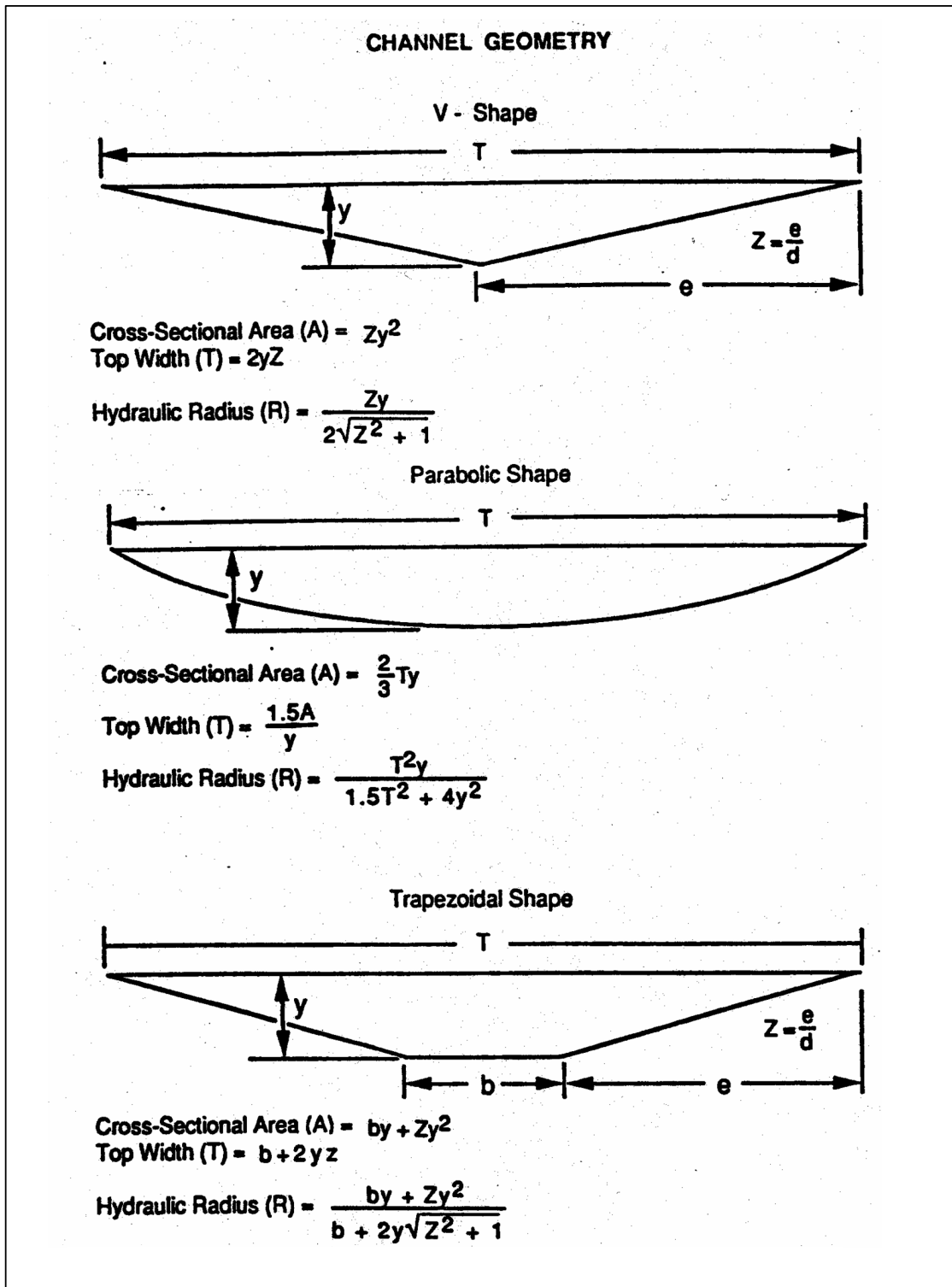


Figure 5 - 16. Typical Swale Section

### 9.4.1.2 Design Criteria

- Size the swale using sizing criteria specified in Table 5 - 8. Minimum length shall be 100 feet.
- Check the hydraulic capacity/stability using  $Q_{max}$ .
- Select a vegetation cover suitable for the site. Refer to Table 5 - 11 through Table 5 - 13.
- Install level spreaders (minimum 1 inch gravel) at the head of all swales, and every 50 feet in swales of  $\geq 4$  feet width. Include sediment cleanouts (weir, settling basin, or equivalent) at the head of the biofilter as needed.
- Use energy dissipaters (such as quarry spalls or riprap) as necessary. See Volume 3 for additional information.



Source: Livingston, et al, 1984

**Figure 5 - 17. Geometric Formulas for Common Swale Shapes**



**Table 5 - 8: Sizing Criteria**

Design Parameter	BMP T910 - Biofiltration Swale	BMP T940 - Filter Strip
Longitudinal Slope	0.015 - 0.025 <sup>a</sup>	0.01 - 0.15
Maximum velocity	1 ft / sec @ K <sup>b</sup> multiplied by the WQ design flow rate	0.5 ft / sec @ K multiplied by the WQ design flow rate
Maximum velocity for channel stability <sup>c</sup>	3 ft/sec	---
Maximum water depth <sup>d</sup>	2"- if mowed frequently; 4" if mowed infrequently	1-inch max.
Manning coefficient	(0.2 – 0.3) <sup>e</sup> (0.24 if mowed infrequently)	0.35 (0.45 if compost amended, or mowed to maintain grass height ≤ 4")
Bed width (bottom)	(2 - 10 ft) <sup>f</sup>	---
Freeboard height	0.5 ft	---
Minimum hydraulic residence time at K multiplied by Water Quality Design Flow Rate	9 minutes (18 minutes for continuous inflow)	9 minutes
Minimum length	100 ft	Sufficient to achieve hydraulic residence time in the filter strip
Maximum sideslope	3 H:1 V 4H:1V preferred	Inlet edge ≥ 1" lower than contributing paved area
Max. tributary drainage flowpath	---	150 feet
Max. longitudinal slope of contributing area	---	0.05 (steeper than 0.05 need upslope flow spreading and energy dissipation)

- a. For swales, if the slope is less than 1.5% install an underdrain using a perforated pipe, or equivalent. Amend the soil if necessary to allow effective percolation of water to the underdrain. Install the low-flow drain 6" deep in the soil. Slopes greater than 2.5% need check dams (riprap) at vertical drops of 12-15 inches. Underdrains can be made of 6 inch Schedule 40 PVC perforated pipe or equivalent with 6" of drain gravel on the pipe. The gravel and pipe must be enclosed by geotextile fabric (see Figure 5 - 19 and Figure 5 - 20).
- b. K=A ratio of the peak 10-minute flow predicted by SBUH to the water quality design flow rate estimated using the WWHM. The value of K for offline systems is 3.5, and for online systems is 2.0 in the City of Tacoma.
- c. Maximum flowrate for channel stability shall be the 100-year, 24-hour discharge ( $Q_{100}$ ) calculated with WWHM using a 15-minute time step. If an hourly time step is used, multiply the  $Q_{100}$  by 1.6.
- d. Below the design water depth install an erosion control blanket, at least 4" of topsoil, and the selected biofiltration mix. Provide vegetation above the water line.
- e. This range of Manning's n can be used in the equation;  $b = Qn/1.49y^{(1.67)} S^{(0.5)} - Zy$  with wider bottom width b, and lower depth y, at the same flow. This provides the designer with the option of varying the bottom width of the swale depending on space limitations. Designing at the higher n within this range at the same flow decreases the hydraulic design depth, thus placing the pollutants in closer contact with the vegetation and the soil.
- f. For swale widths up to 16 feet the cross-section can be divided with a berm (concrete, plastic, compacted earthfill) using a flow spreader at the inlet (Figure 5 - 21).

### 9.4.1.3 Bypass Guidance

Most biofiltration swales are currently designed to be online facilities. However, an offline design is possible. Swales designed in an offline mode should not engage a bypass until the flow rate exceeds a value determined by multiplying Q, the offline water quality design flow rate predicted by the WWHM, by 3.5 for offline systems and 2.0 for online systems. This modified design flow rate is an estimate of the design flow rate determined by using SBUH procedures. Ecology's intent is to maintain recent biofiltration sizing recommendations until more definitive information is collected concerning bioswale performance.

### 9.4.1.4 Sizing Procedure for Biofiltration Swales

#### *Preliminary Steps*

- P.1 Determine the water quality design flow rate (Q) in 15-minute time steps using an approved continuous simulation model and modified per Section 9.4.1.3.
- P.2 Establish the longitudinal slope of the proposed biofilter.
- P.3 Select an appropriate vegetated cover for the site. Refer to Table 5 - 11 through Table 5 - 13.

#### *Design Steps*

- D.1 Select the type of vegetation and depth of flow (based on frequency of mowing and type of vegetation).
- D.2 Select a value of Manning's n (see Table 5 - 8).
- D.3 Select swale shape.
- D.4 Use Manning's equation and first approximations relating hydraulic radius and dimensions for the selected swale shape to obtain a working value of a biofilter bottom and top width dimension:

$$Q = \frac{1.49AR^{0.67}s^{0.5}}{n} \quad (1)$$

Where:

Q = Water quality design flowrate per step P.1 (cfs)

n = Manning's n (dimensionless)

s = Longitudinal slope as a ratio of vertical rise/horizontal run (dimensionless)

A= cross-sectional area (ft<sup>2</sup>)

R= hydraulic radius (ft)

Because the depth of flow in most biofiltration swales is shallow relative to the bottom width, channel side slopes can be ignored in the calculation of bottom width. Use the following equation to estimate the swale bottom width for a trapezoidal swale. For other swale shapes, substitute R and A into Equation 1 to solve for b.

$$b \approx \frac{Qn}{1.49y^{1.67} s^{0.5}} - Zy \quad (2)$$

Where:

b = Bottom width (ft)

Q = Water quality design flowrate per step P.1 (cfs)

n = Manning's n (see Table 5 - 8)

y = Design flow depth (see Table 5 - 8)

s = Longitudinal slope (see Table 5 - 8)

Z = Side slope (for trapezoid select 3)

A minimum 2-foot bottom width is required. If the calculated bottom width is less than 2 feet, increase the width to 2 feet and recalculate the design flow depth y, using equation 3 below.

$$y = \frac{Qn}{1.49s^{0.5}b} \quad (3)$$

Where Q, n, and s are the same as equation 2, but b = 2 feet.

Next, compute the top width T (ft). For a trapezoid.

$$T = b + 2yZ$$

If b for a swale is greater than 10 ft, either investigate how Q can be reduced, divide the flow by installing a low berm, or arbitrarily set b = 10 ft and continue with the analysis. For other swale shapes refer to Figure 5 - 17.

#### D.5 Compute A

$$A_{\text{trapezoid}} = by + Zy^2$$

Where:

A = cross-sectional area (ft<sup>2</sup>)

T = top width of trapezoid or width of a rectangle (ft)

y = depth of flow (ft)

b = bottom width of trapezoid (ft)

Z = side slope

## D.6 Compute the flow velocity at design flow rate:

$$V = (Q/A)$$

A = cross-sectional area (ft<sup>2</sup>)

Q = water quality design flow rate per step P.1 (cfs)

If  $V > 1.0$  ft/sec (or  $V > 0.5$  ft/sec for a filter strip), repeat steps D-1 to D-6 until the condition is met. A velocity greater than 1.0 ft/sec was found to flatten grasses, thus reducing filtration. A velocity lower than this maximum value will allow a 9-minute hydraulic residence time criterion in a shorter biofilter. If the value of V suggests that a longer biofilter will be needed than space permits, investigate how Q can be reduced (e.g., use of low impact development BMP's), or increase y and/or T (up to the allowable maximum values) and repeat the analysis.

## D.7 Compute the swale length (L, ft)

$$L = Vt \text{ (60 sec/min)}$$

Where: t = hydraulic residence time (min)

V = flow velocity

Use t = 9 minutes for this calculation (use t = 18 minutes for a continuous inflow biofiltration swale). If a biofilter length is greater than the space permits, follow the advice in step 6.

If a length less than 100 feet results from this analysis, increase it to 100 feet, the minimum allowed. In this case, it may be possible to save some space in width and still meet all criteria. This possibility can be checked by computing V in the 100 ft biofilter for t = 9 minutes, recalculating A (if  $V < 1.0$  ft/sec) and recalculating T.

## D.8 If there are space constraints, the local government and the project proponent should consider the following solutions (listed in order of preference):

1. Divide the site drainage to flow to multiple biofilters.
2. Use infiltration or other low impact development techniques (Volume 6) to provide lower discharge rates to the biofilter (only if the Site Suitability Criteria in Section 7.3 of this volume are met).
3. Increase vegetation height and design depth of flow (note: the design must ensure that vegetation remains standing during design flow).
4. Reduce the developed surface area to gain space for biofiltration.
5. Increase the longitudinal slope.
6. Increase the side slopes.
7. Nest the biofilter within or around another BMP.

**Stability Check Steps**

The stability check must be performed for the combination of highest expected flow and least vegetation coverage and height. A check is not required for biofiltration swales that are located offline from the primary conveyance/detention system. Maintain the same units as in the biofiltration capacity analysis.

The maximum permissible velocity for erosion prevention ( $V_{max}$ ) is 3 feet per second.

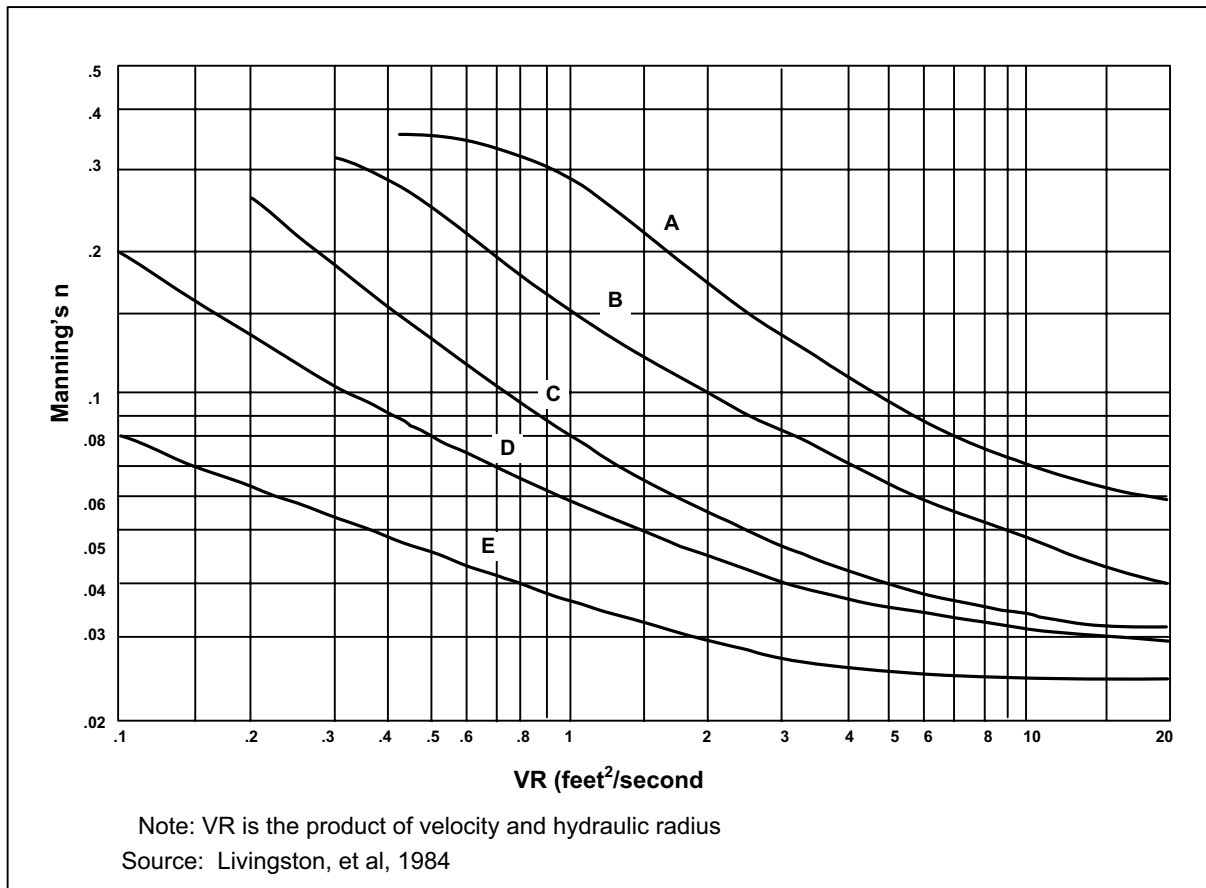
- S.1 Perform the stability check for the 100-year, return frequency flow using 15-minute time steps using WWHM. The designer can use the WWHM 100-yr. hourly peak flows times an adjustment factor of 1.6 to approximate peak flows in 15-minute time steps.
- S.2 Estimate the vegetation coverage ("good" or "fair") and height on the first occasion that the biofilter will receive flow, or whenever the coverage and height will be least. Avoid flow introduction during the vegetation establishment period by timing planting.
- S.3 Estimate the degree of retardance from Table 5 - 9. When uncertain, be conservative by selecting a relatively low degree of retardance.

**Table 5 - 9: Stability Check Steps (SC) Guide for Selecting Degree of Retardance<sup>a</sup>**

Coverage	Average Grass Height (inches)	Degree of Retardance
Good	≤ 2	E. Very Low
	2-6	D. Low
	6-10	C. Moderate
	11-24	B. High
	≥ 30	A. Very High
Fair	≤ 2	E. Very Low
	2-6	D. Low
	6-10	D. Low
	11-24	C. Moderate
	≥ 30	B. High

a. See Chow (1959), In addition, Chow recommended selection of retardance C for a grass-legume mixture 6-8 inches high and D for a mixture 4-5 inches high. No retardance recommendations have appeared for emergent wetland species. Therefore, judgment must be used. Since these species generally grow less densely than grasses, using a “fair” coverage would be a reasonable approach

- S.4 Select a trial Manning's n for the high flow condition. The minimum value for poor vegetation cover and low height (possibly, knocked from the vertical by high flow) is 0.033. A good initial choice under these conditions is 0.04.
- S.5 Refer to Figure 5 - 18 to obtain a first approximation for VR.
- S.6 Compute hydraulic radius, R, from VR in Figure 5 - 18 and a  $V_{max}$  in Table 5 - 10.



**Figure 5 - 18. The Relationship of Manning's n with VR for Various Degrees of Flow Retardance (A-E)**

**Table 5 - 10: Guide to Selecting Maximum Permissible Swale Velocities for Stability<sup>a</sup>**

Cover	Slope (percent)	Max Velocity - ft/sec (m/sec)	
		Erosion-Resistant Soils	Easily Eroded Soils
Kentucky bluegrass Tall fescue	0-5	6 (1.8)	5 (1.5)
Kentucky bluegrass Ryegrasses Western wheatgrass	5-10	5 (1.5)	4 (1.2)
Grass-legume mixture	0-5	5 (1.5)	4 (1.2)
	5-10	4 (1.2)	3 (0.9)
Red fescue	0-5	3 (0.9)	2.5 (0.8)
Redtop	5-10	Not recommended	Not recommended

<sup>a</sup>.Adapted from Chow (1959), Livingston et al (1984), and Goldman et al (1986)

- S.7 Use Manning's equation to solve for the actual VR.
- S.8 Compare the actual VR from step S.7 and first approximation from step S.5. If they do not agree within 5 percent, repeat steps S.4 to S.8 until acceptable agreement is reached. If  $n < 0.033$  is needed to get agreement, set  $n = 0.033$ , repeat step S.7, and then proceed to step S.9.
- S.9 Compute the actual V for the final design conditions:
- S.10 Check to be sure  $V < V_{\max}$ .
- S.11 Compute the required swale cross-sectional area, A, for stability.
- S.12 Compare the A, computed in step S.11 of the stability analysis, with the A from the biofiltration capacity analysis (step D.5).  
If less area is required for stability than is provided for capacity, the capacity design is acceptable. If not, use A from step S.11 of the stability analysis and recalculate channel dimensions.
- S.13 Calculate the depth of flow at the stability check design flow rate condition for the final dimensions and use A from step S.11.
- S.14 Compare the depth from step S.13 to the depth used in the biofiltration capacity design (Step D.1). Use the larger of the two and add 0.5 ft. of freeboard to obtain the total depth ( $y_t$ ) of the swale. Calculate the top width for the full depth using the appropriate equation.
- S.15 Recalculate the hydraulic radius: (use b from Step D.4 calculated previously for biofiltration capacity, or Step S.12, as appropriate, and  $y_t$  = total depth from Step S.14)
- S.16 Make a final check for capacity based on the stability check design storm (this check will ensure that capacity is adequate if the largest expected event coincides with the greatest retardance). Use Equation 1, a Manning's n selected in step D.2, and the calculated channel dimensions, including freeboard, to compute the flow capacity of the channel under these conditions. Use R from step S-14, above, and  $A = b(y_t) + Z(y_t)^2$  using b from Step D.4, D.15, or S.12 as appropriate.  
If the flow capacity is less than the stability check design storm flow rate, increase the channel cross-sectional area as needed for this conveyance. Specify the new channel dimensions.

### **Completion Step**

Review all of the criteria and guidelines for biofilter planning, design, installation, and operation above and specify all of the appropriate features for the application.



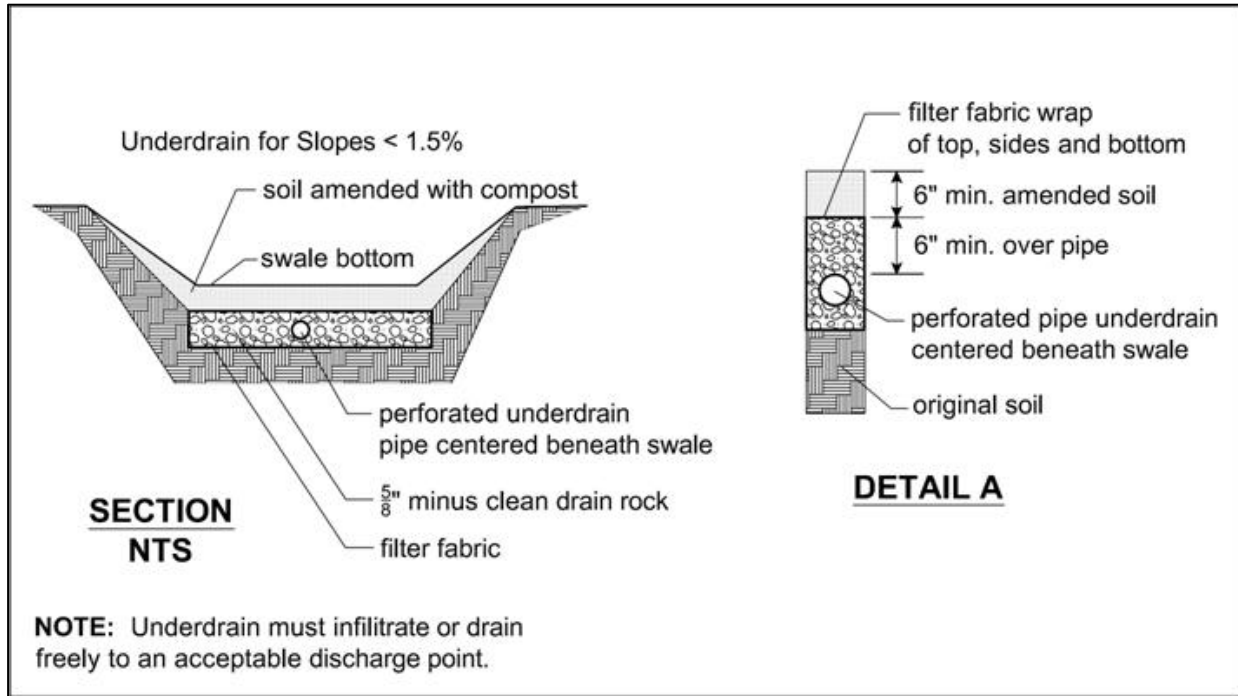


Figure 5 - 19. Biofiltration Swale Underdrain Detail

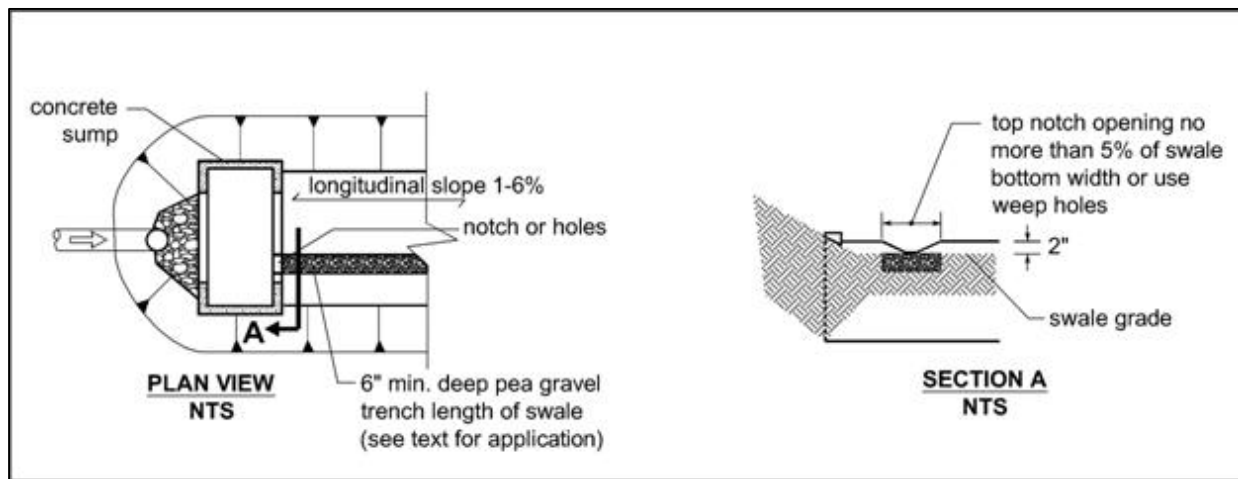
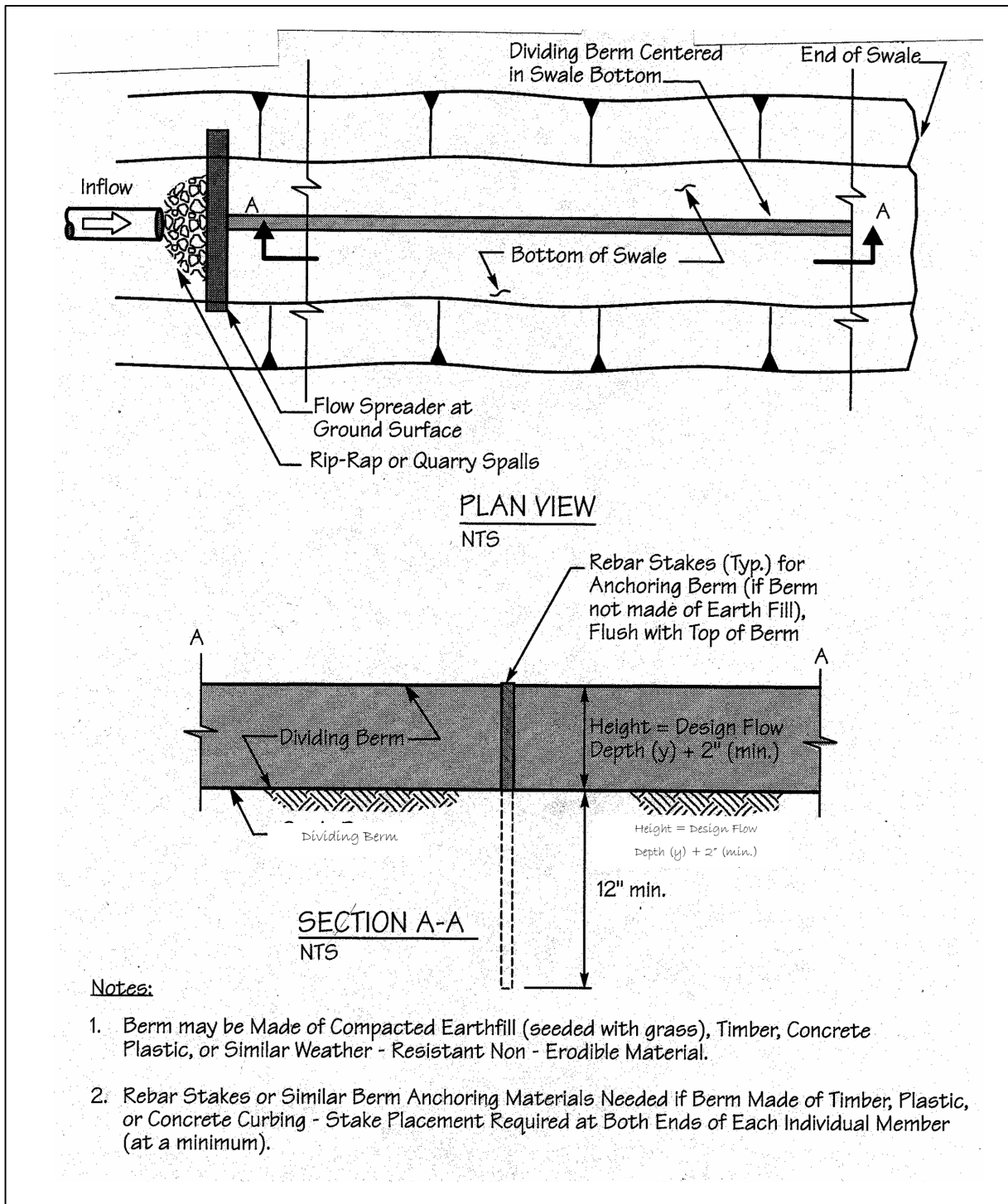


Figure 5 - 20. Biofiltration Swale Low-Flow Drain Detail



**Figure 5 - 21. Swale Dividing Berm**

#### **9.4.1.5 Soil Criteria**

- Use the following list as a guide for choosing appropriate soils for the biofiltration swale. Use at least 8-inches of the following top soil mix:
  - Sandy loam 60-90 %
  - Clay 0-10 %
  - Composted organic matter, 10-30 % (excluding animal waste, toxics)
- Use compost amended soil where practicable.
- Till to at least 8-inch depth.
- For longitudinal slopes of < 2 percent use more sand to obtain more infiltration.
- If groundwater contamination is a concern, seal the bed with clay or a geomembrane liner.

#### **9.4.1.6 Vegetation Criteria**

- See Table 5 - 11 through Table 5 - 13 for recommended grasses, wetland plants, and groundcovers.
- Select fine, turf-forming, water-resistant grasses where vegetative growth and moisture will be adequate for growth.
- Irrigate if moisture is insufficient during dry weather season.
- Use sod with low clay content and where needed to initiate adequate vegetative growth. Preferably sod should be laid to a minimum of one-foot vertical depth above the swale bottom.
- Consider sun/shade conditions for adequate vegetative growth and avoid prolonged shading of any portion not planted with shade tolerant vegetation.
- Stabilize soil areas upslope of the biofilter to prevent erosion.
- Fertilizing a biofilter shall not be allowed.

#### **9.4.1.7 Construction Criteria**

- Do not put swale into operation until exposed soil in contributing drainage area is stabilized.
- Keep erosion and sediment control measures in place until swale vegetation is established.
- Avoid compaction during construction.
- Grade biofilters to attain uniform longitudinal and lateral slopes.

**9.4.1.8 Maintenance Criteria**

Per Minimum Requirement #10, an operation and maintenance plan shall be prepared for all stormwater management facilities. See Volume 1, Appendix C, Maintenance Checklist #9 for specific maintenance requirements for biofiltration swales. Maintenance shall be a basic consideration in design and cost-determination of the stormwater management facility.

Any standing water removed during maintenance operation must be disposed of in a City approved manner. See the dewatering requirements in Volume 4 of this manual. Pretreatment may be necessary. Solids must be disposed of in accordance with state and local waste regulations.

Facilities shall be constructed such that the facility can be easily inspected by one person. This may require construction of additional inspection ports or access manholes to allow inspection acces to be opened by one person.

**Table 5 - 11: Grass Seed Mixes Suitable for Biofiltration Swale Treatment Areas<sup>a</sup>**

Mix 1		Mix 2	
75-80 percent	tall or meadow fescue	60-70 percent	tall fescue
10-15 percent	seaside/colonial bentgrass	10-15 percent	seaside/colonial bentgrass
5-10 percent	redtop	10-15 percent	meadow foxtail
		6-10 percent	alsike clover
		1-5 percent	marshfield big trefoil
		1-6 percent	redtop

a.All percentages are by weight, based on Briargreen, Inc.

**Table 5 - 12: Groundcovers & Grasses Suitable for the Upper Side Slopes of a Biofiltration Swale in Western Washington**

Groundcovers	
kinnikinnick*	<i>Arctostaphylos uva-ursi</i>
Epimedium	<i>Epimedium grandiflorum</i>
creeping forget-me-not	<i>Omphalodes verna</i>
--	<i>Euonymus lanceolata</i>
yellow-root	<i>Xanthorhiza simplissima</i>
--	<i>Genista</i>
white lawn clover	<i>Trifolium repens</i>
white sweet clover*	<i>Melilotus alba</i>
-----	<i>Rubus calycinoides</i>
Grasses (drought-tolerant, minimum mowing)	
dwarf tall fescues	<i>Festuca</i> spp. (e.g., Many Mustang, Silverado)
hard fescue	<i>Festuca ovina duriuscula</i> (e.g., Reliant, Aurora)
tufted fescue	<i>Festuca amethystina</i>
buffalo grass	<i>Buchloe dactyloides</i>
red fescue*	<i>Festuca rubra</i>
tall fescue grass*	<i>Festuca arundinacea</i>
blue oatgrass	<i>Helictotrichon sempervirens</i>
dwarf tall fescues	<i>Festuca</i> spp. (e.g., Many Mustang, Silverado)
hard fescue	<i>Festuca ovina duriuscula</i> (e.g., Reliant, Aurora)

\* Good choices for swales with significant periods of flow, such as those downstream of a detention facility.

**Table 5 - 13: Recommended Plants for Wet Biofiltration Swale**

Common Name	Scientific Name	Spacing (on center)
Shortawn foxtail	<i>Alopecurus aequalis</i>	seed
Water foxtail	<i>Alopecurus geniculatus</i>	seed
Spike rush	<i>Eleocharis spp.</i>	4 inches
Slough sedge*	<i>Carex obnupta</i>	6 inches or seed
Sawbeak sedge	<i>Carex stipata</i>	6 inches
Sedge	<i>Carex spp.</i>	6 inches
Western mannagrass	<i>Glyceria occidentalis</i>	seed
Velvetgrass	<i>Holcus mollis</i>	seed
Slender rush	<i>Juncus tenuis</i>	6 inches
Water parsley*	<i>Oenanthe sarmentosa</i>	6 inches
Hardstem bulrush	<i>Scirpus acutus</i>	6 inches
Small-fruited bulrush	<i>Scirpus microcarpus</i>	12 inches

\* Good choices for swales with significant periods of flow, such as those downstream of a detention facility. Cattail (*Typha latifolia*) is not appropriate for most wet swales because of its very dense and clumping growth habit which prevents water from filtering through the clump.

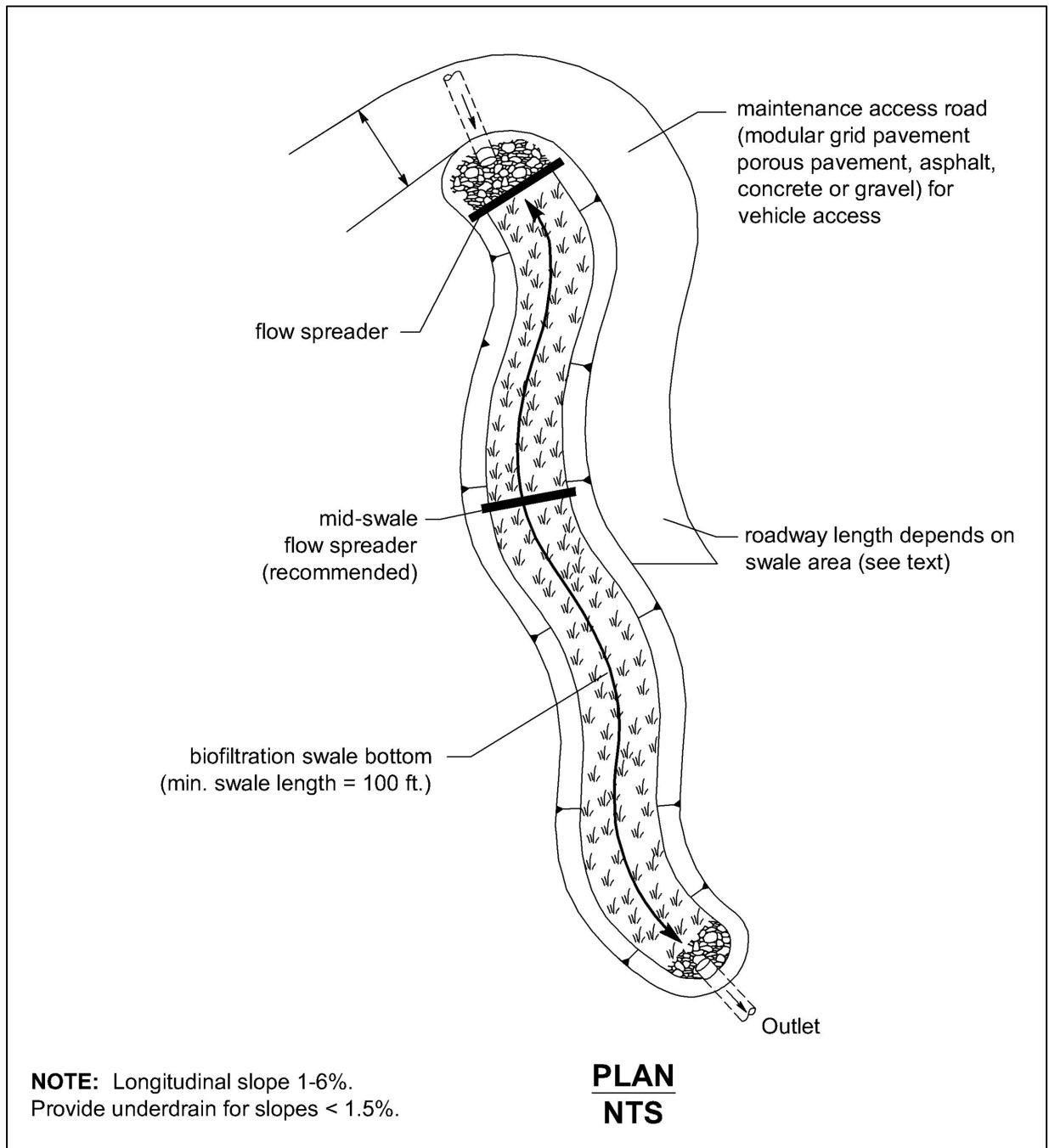


Figure 5 - 22. Biofiltration Swale Access Features

## 9.4.2 BMP T920 Wet Biofiltration Swale

### 9.4.2.1 Description

A *wet biofiltration swale* is a variation of a basic biofiltration swale for use where the longitudinal slope is slight, water tables are high, or continuous low base flow is likely to result in saturated soil conditions. Where saturation exceeds about 2 weeks, typical grasses will die. Thus, vegetation specifically adapted to saturated soil conditions is needed. Different vegetation in turn requires modification of several of the design parameters for the basic biofiltration swale.

### 9.4.2.2 Performance Objectives

To provide basic water quality treatment.

### 9.4.2.3 Applications/Limitations

Wet biofiltration swales are applied where a basic biofiltration swale is desired but not allowed or advisable because one or more of the following conditions exist:

- The swale is located on glacial till soils and is downstream of a detention pond providing flow control.
- Saturated soil conditions are likely because of seeps or base flows on the site.
- Longitudinal slopes shall be less than 2 percent.

### 9.4.2.4 Design Criteria

Use the same sizing and criteria as for basic biofiltration swales except for the following:

1. Adjust for extended wet season flow.
  - If the swale will be downstream of a detention pond or vault providing flow control, multiply the treatment area (bottom width times length) of the swale by 2, and readjust the swale length, if desired. Maintain a 5:1 length to width ratio.
2. Swale geometry.
  - The bottom width may be increased to 25 feet maximum, but a length-to-width ratio of 5:1 must be provided. No longitudinal dividing berm is needed.  
The minimum swale length is 100 feet.
  - If longitudinal slopes are greater than 2 percent, the wet swale must be stepped so that the slope within the stepped sections averages 2 percent. Steps may be made of retaining walls, log check dams, or short riprap sections. **No underdrain or low-flow drain is required.**
3. High-flow bypass
  - A high-flow bypass (i.e., an offline design) is required for flows greater than the offline water quality design flow that has been increased by 3.5. The bypass may be an open channel parallel to the wet biofiltration swale.
4. Water Depth and Base Flow
  - Design water depth shall be 4 inches for all wetland vegetation selections.
  - No underdrains or low-flow drains are required.
5. Flow Velocity, Energy Dissipation, and Flow Spreading



- No flow spreader is required.

#### 6. Access

- Access is only required to the inflow and outflow of the swale. Access along the swale is not required.
- Wheel strips may not be used for access.

#### 7. Planting Requirements

- A list of acceptable plants and recommended spacing is shown in Table 5 - 13.
- A wetland seed mix may be applied by hydroseeding, but if coverage is poor, planting of rootstock or nursery stock is required. Poor coverage is considered to be more than 30 percent bare area through the upper 2/3 of the swale after four weeks.

#### 8. Maintenance Considerations

- See Volume 1, Appendix C, Checklist #10 for specific maintenance requirements for wet biofiltration swales.

### **9.4.3 BMP T930 Continuous Inflow Biofiltration Swale**

#### **9.4.3.1 Description**

In situations where water enters a biofiltration swale continuously along the side slope rather than discretely at the head, a different design approach—the continuous inflow biofiltration swale—is needed. The basic swale design is modified by increasing swale length to achieve an equivalent average residence time.

#### **9.4.3.2 Applications**

A continuous inflow biofiltration swale is to be used when inflows are not concentrated, such as locations along the shoulder of a road without curbs. This design may also be used where frequent, small point flows enter a swale, such as through curb inlet ports spaced at intervals along a road, or from a parking lot with frequent curb cuts. In general, no inlet port shall carry more than about 10 percent of the flow.

A continuous inflow swale is not appropriate for a situation in which significant lateral flows enter a swale at some point downstream from the head of the swale. In this situation, the swale width and length must be recalculated from the point of confluence to the discharge point in order to provide adequate treatment for the increased flows.

#### **9.4.3.3 Design Criteria**

Same as specified for basic biofiltration swale except for the following:

- The design flow for continuous inflow swales must include runoff from the pervious side slopes draining to the swale along the entire swale length. Therefore, they must be online facilities.
- If only a single design flow is used, the flow rate at the outlet should be used. The goal is to achieve an average residence time through the swale of 9 minutes as calculated using the online water quality design flow rate multiplied by the ratio, K (see footnotes in Table 5 - 8). Assuming an even distribution of inflow into the side of the swale double the hydraulic residence time to a minimum of 18 minutes.
- Interior side slopes above the water quality design treatment elevation shall be planted in grass. A typical lawn seed mix or the biofiltration seed mixes are acceptable. Landscape plants or groundcovers other than grass may not be used anywhere between the runoff inflow elevation and the bottom of the swale.

## **9.4.4 BMP T940 Basic and Compost-Amended Filter Strip**

### **9.4.4.1 Description**

A basic filter strip is flat with no side slopes (Figure 5 - 23). Untreated stormwater is distributed as sheet flow across the inlet width of a biofilter strip.

### **9.4.4.2 Applications/Limitations**

The basic filter strip is typically used online and adjacent and parallel to a paved area such as parking lots, driveways, and roadways. Where a filter strip area is compost-amended to a minimum of 10% organic content in accordance with BMP L613; with hydroseeded grass maintained at 95% density and a 4-inch length by mowing and periodic re-seeding (possible landscaping with herbaceous shrubs), the filter strip serves as an Enhanced Treatment option.

### **9.4.4.3 Design Criteria for Filter strips**

- Use the Design Criteria specified in Table 5 - 8.
- Filter strips shall only receive sheet flow.
- Use curb cuts  $\geq$  12-inch wide and 1-inch above the filter strip inlet.

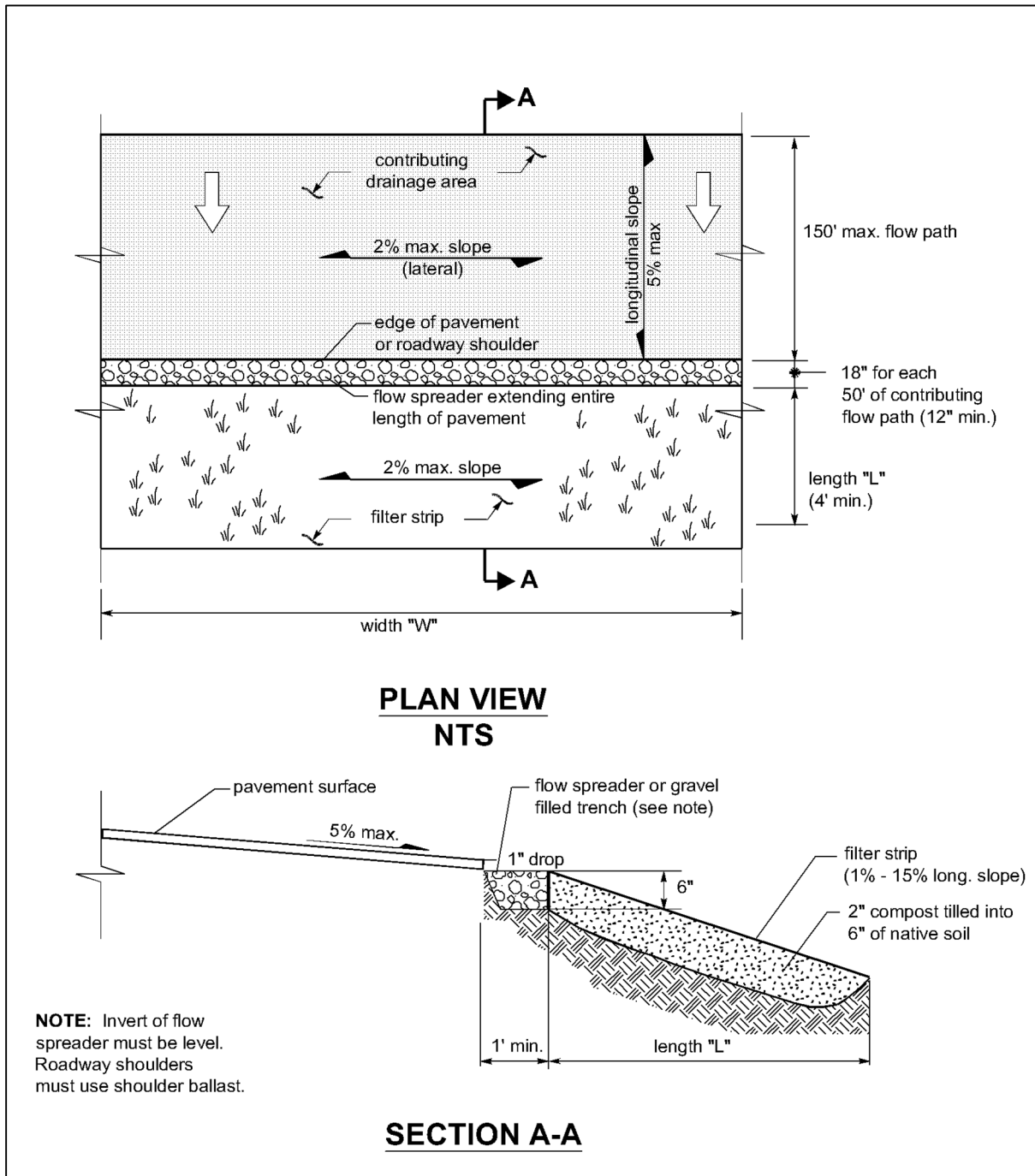


Figure 5 - 23. Typical Filter Strip

**9.4.4.4 Sizing Procedure**

1. Calculate the design flow depth using Manning's equation as follows:

$$KQ = (1.49A R^{0.67} s^{0.5})/n$$

Substituting for AR:

$$KQ = (1.49Ty^{1.67} s^{0.5})/n$$

Where:

$$Ty = A_{\text{rectangle, ft}}^2$$

y = R<sub>rectangle</sub>, design depth of flow, ft. (1 inch maximum)

Q = peak Water Quality design flow rate based on WWHM or an approved continuous simulation model, ft<sup>3</sup>/sec

K = A ratio of the peak 10-minute flow predicted by SBUH to the water quality design flow rate estimated using the WWHM. The value of K for offline systems is 3.5 and for online systems is 2.0.<sup>1</sup>

n = Manning's roughness coefficient

s = Longitudinal slope of filter strip parallel to direction of flow

T = Width of filter strip perpendicular to the direction of flow, ft.

A = Filter strip inlet cross-sectional flow area (rectangular), ft<sup>2</sup>

R = hydraulic radius, ft.

Rearranging for y:

$$y = [KQn/1.49Ts^{0.5}]^{0.6}$$

y must not exceed 1 inch

2. Calculate the design flow velocity V, ft./sec., through the filter strip:

$$V = KQ/Ty$$

V must not exceed 0.5 ft./sec

3. Calculate required length, ft., of the filter strip at the minimum hydraulic residence time, t, of 9 minutes:

$$L = tV = 540 V$$

#### 9.4.4.5 Maintenance

Per Minimum Requirement #10, an operation and maintenance plan shall be prepared for all stormwater management facilities. See Volume 1, Appendix C, Maintenance Checklist #11 for specific maintenance requirements for filter strips. Maintenance shall be a basic consideration in design and cost-determination of the stormwater management facility.

Any standing water removed during maintenance operation must be disposed of in a City approved manner. See the dewatering requirements in Volume 4 of this manual. Pretreatment may be necessary. Solids must be disposed of in accordance with state and local waste regulations.

Facilities shall be constructed such that the facility can be easily inspected by one person. This may require construction of additional inspection ports or access manholes to allow inspection access to be opened by one person.

1. As in swale design, an adjustment factor of K accounts for the differential between the Water Quality design flow rate calculated using WWHM and the SBUH design flow.

## 9.4.5 BMP T950 Narrow Area Filter Strip

### 9.4.5.1 Description

This section describes a filter strip design<sup>1</sup> for impervious areas with flowpaths of 30 feet or less that can drain along their widest dimension to grassy areas.

### 9.4.5.2 Applications/Limitations

A narrow area filter strip could be used at roadways with limited right-of-way, or for narrow parking strips. If space is available to use the basic filter strip design, that design should be used in preference to the narrow filter strip.

### 9.4.5.3 Design Criteria

Design criteria for narrow area filter strips are the same as specified for basic filter strips. The sizing of a narrow area filter strip is based on the length of flowpath draining to the filter strip and the longitudinal slope of the filter strip itself (parallel to the flowpath).

1. Determine the length of the flowpath from the upstream to the downstream edge of the impervious area draining sheet flow to the strip. Normally this is the same as the width of the paved area, but if the site is sloped, the flow path may be longer than the width of the impervious area.
2. Calculate the longitudinal slope of the filter strip (along the direction of unconcentrated flow), averaged over the total width of the filter strip.
  - The minimum slope size is 2 percent. If the slope is less than 2 percent, use 2 percent for sizing purposes.
  - The maximum allowable filter strip slope is 20 percent. If the slope exceeds 20 percent, the filter strip must be stepped so that the treatment areas between drop sections do not have a longitudinal slope greater than 20 percent. Provide erosion protection at the base and flow spreaders for the drop sections. Vertical drops along the slope must not exceed 12 inches in height. If this is not possible, a different treatment facility must be selected.
3. Select the appropriate filter strip length for the flowpath length and filter strip longitudinal slope (Steps 1 and 2 above) from the graph in Figure 5 - 24. Design the filter strip to provide this minimum length  $L$  along the entire stretch of pavement draining into it.

To use the graph, find the length of the flowpath on one of the curves (interpolate between curves as necessary). Move along the curve to the point where the design longitudinal slope of the filter strip (x-axis) is directly below. Read the filter strip length on the y-axis which corresponds to the intersection point.

---

1. This narrow area filter strip design method is included here because technical limitations exist in the basic design method which results in filter strips that are proportionately longer as the contributing drainage becomes narrower (a result that is counter-intuitive). Research by several parties is underway to evaluate filter strip design parameters. This research may lead to more stringent design requirements that would supersede the design criteria presented here

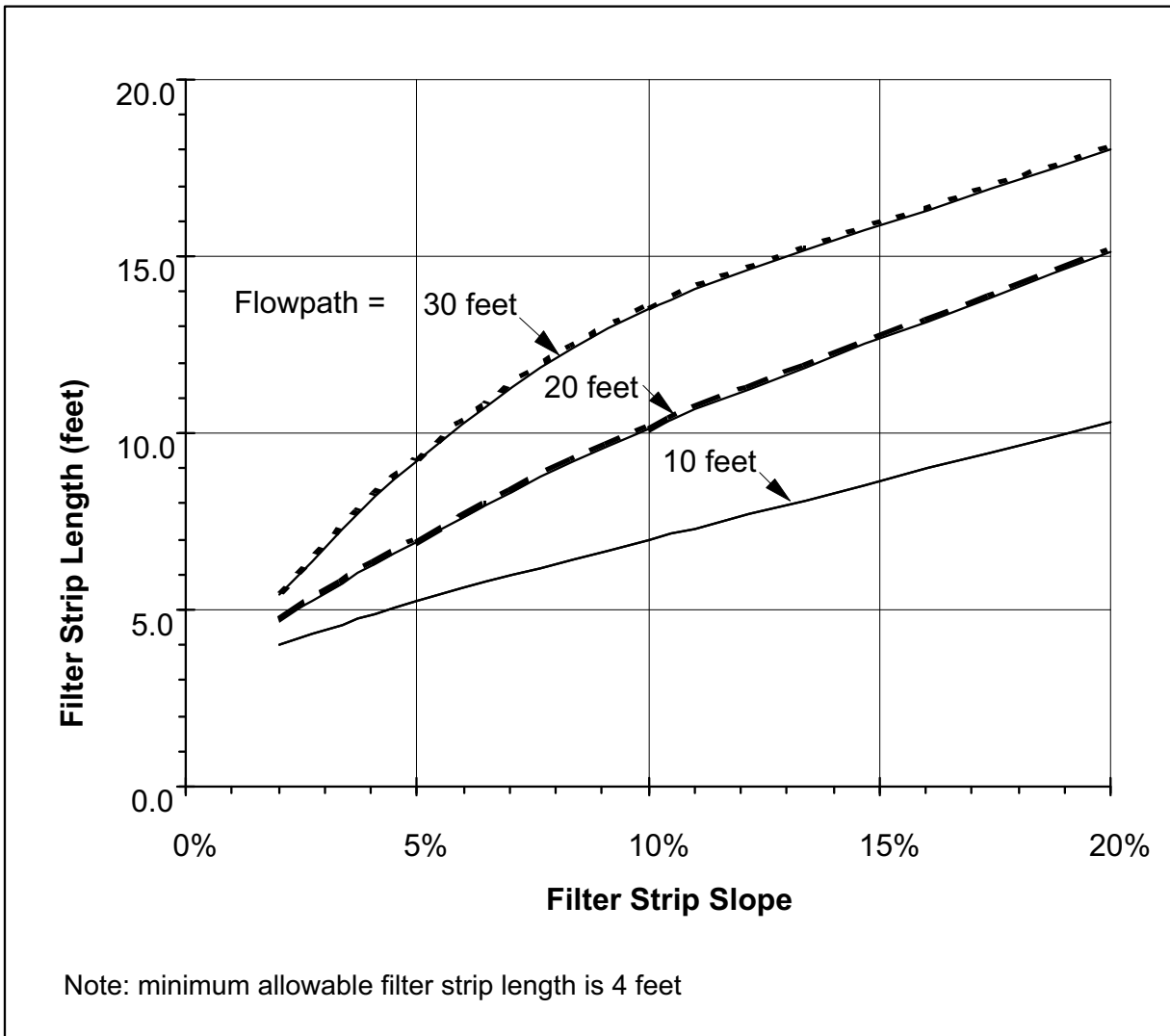


Figure 5 - 24. Filter Strip Lengths for Narrow Right-of-Way

## **Chapter 10 Wetpool Facilities**

### **10.1 Purpose**

This Chapter presents the methods, criteria, and details for analysis and design of wetponds, wetvaults, and stormwater wetlands. These facilities have as a common element, a permanent pool of water - the wetpool. Each of the wetpool facilities can be combined with detention storage in a combined facility.

### **10.2 Best Management Practices**

The following wetpool facility BMPs are discussed in this chapter:

- BMP T1010 Wetponds - Basic and Large
- BMP T1020 Wetvaults
- BMP T1030 Stormwater Wetlands
- BMP T1040 Combined Detention and Wetpool Facilities

The specific BMPs that are selected should be based on the Treatment Facility Menus discussed in Chapter 2.



## **10.2.1 BMP T1010 Wetponds - Basic and Large**

### **10.2.1.1 Description**

A wetpond is a constructed stormwater pond that retains a permanent pool of water ("wetpool") at least during the wet season. The volume of the wetpool is related to the effectiveness of the pond in settling particulate pollutants. As an option, a shallow marsh area can be created within the permanent pool volume to provide additional treatment for nutrient removal. Flow control can be provided in the "live storage" area above the permanent pool. Figure 5 - 25 and Figure 5 - 26 illustrate a typical wetpond.

### **10.2.1.2 Design Criteria**

For a basic wetpond, the wetpool volume provided shall be equal to or greater than the total volume of runoff from the water quality design storm, which is the 6-month, 24-hour storm event. Alternatively, the 91<sup>st</sup> percentile, 24-hour runoff volume predicted by WWHM can be used.

A large wetpond requires a wetpool volume at least 1.5 times larger than the total volume of runoff from the 6-month, 24-hour storm event.

Design features that encourage plug flow and avoid dead zones are:

- Dissipating energy at the inlet.
- Providing a large length-to-width ratio.
- Providing a broad surface for water exchange using a berm designed as a broad-crested weir to divide the wetpond into two cells rather than a constricted area such as a pipe.
- Maximizing the flowpath between inlet and outlet, including the vertical path, also enhances treatment by increasing residence time.

General wetpond design criteria and concepts are shown in Figure 5 - 25 and Figure 5 - 26.

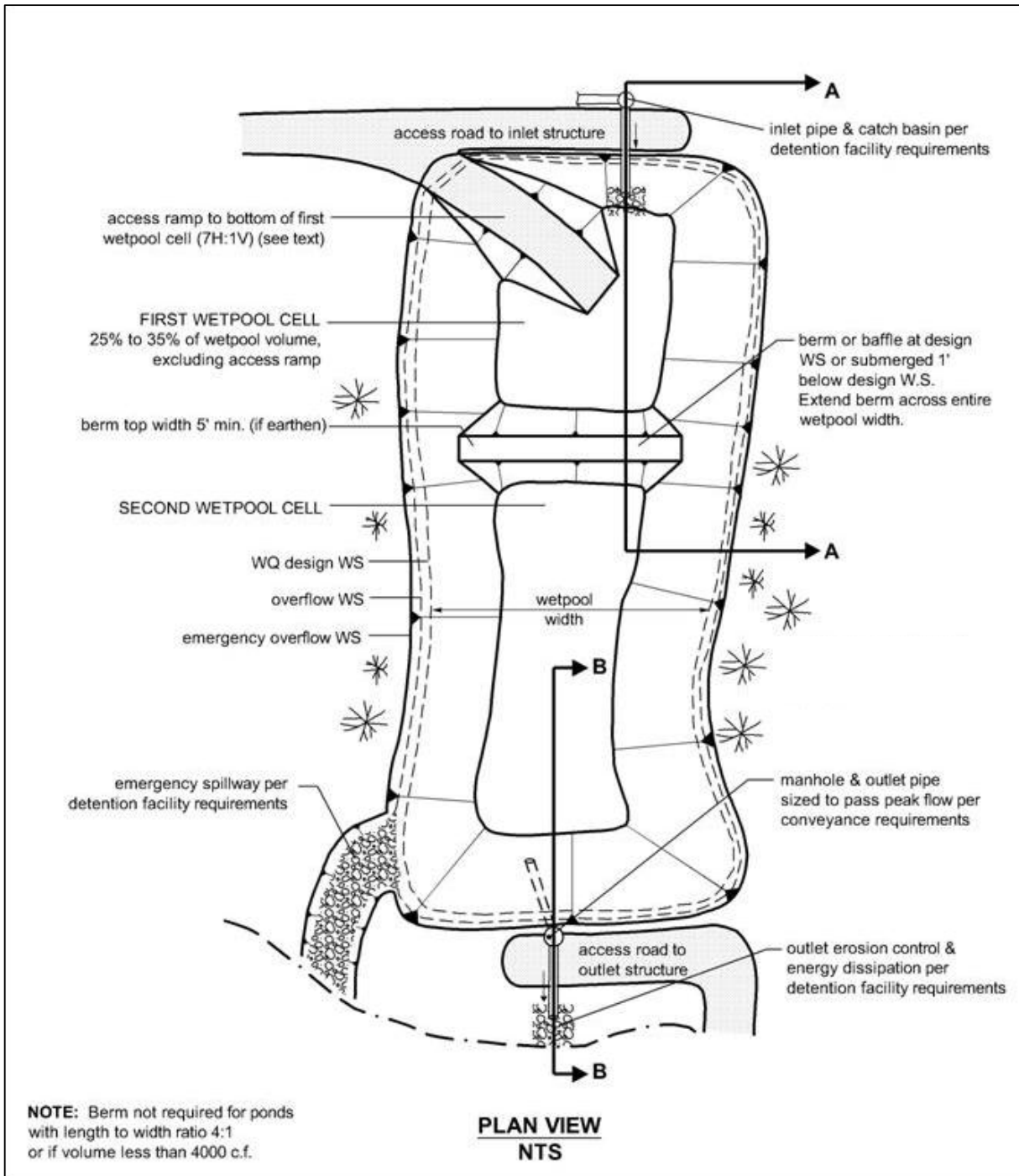


Figure 5 - 25. Wetpond (top view)

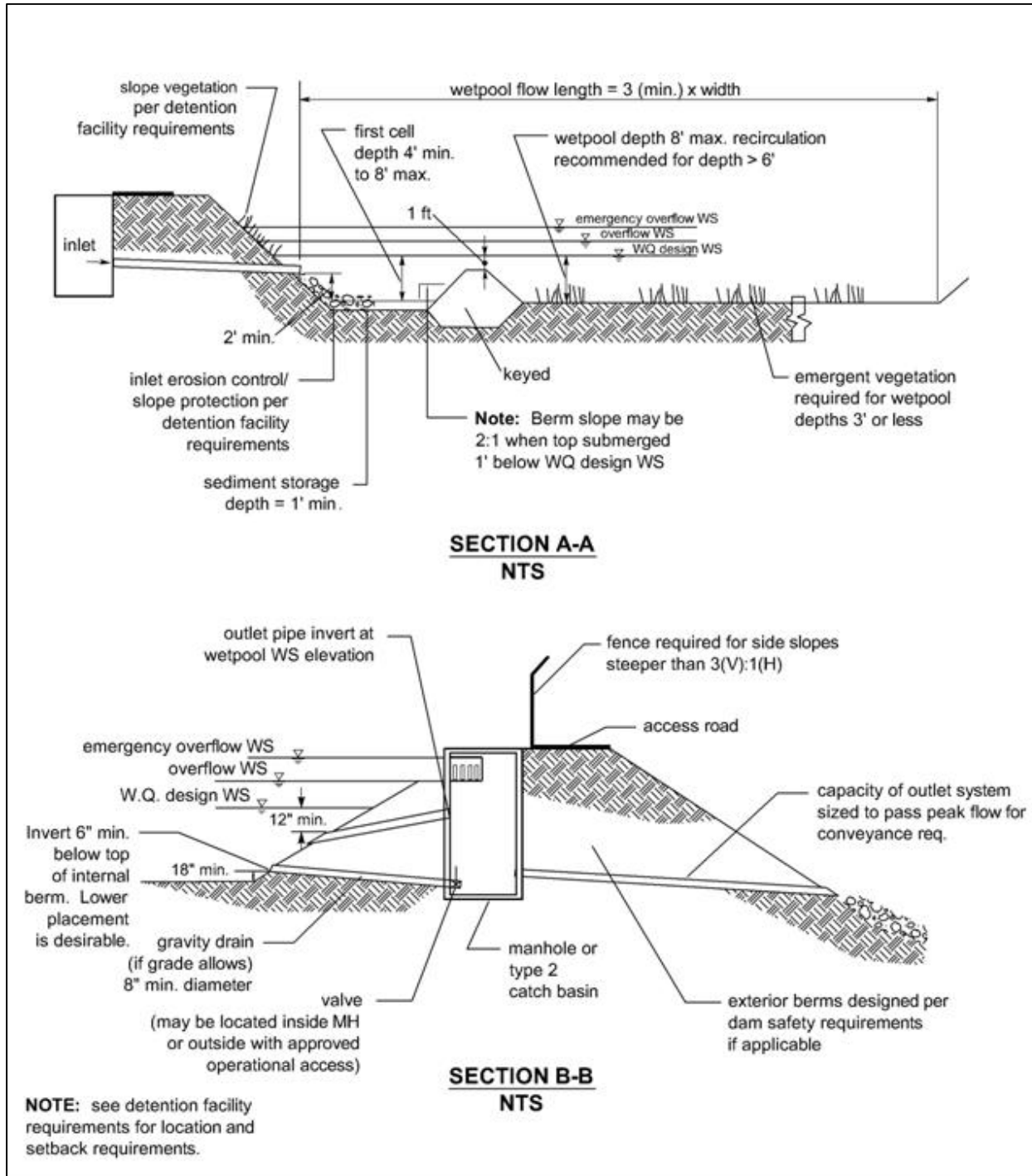


Figure 5 - 26. Wetpond (side view)

### 10.2.1.3 Sizing Procedure

Procedures for determining a wetpond's dimensions and volume are outlined below.

1. Identify required wetpool volume using the SCS (now known as NRCS) curve number equations. A basic wetpond requires a volume equal to or greater than the total volume of runoff from the 6-month, 24-hour storm event, or, alternatively, the 91<sup>st</sup> percentile, 24-hour runoff volume using WWHM. A large wetpond requires a volume at least 1.5 times the total volume of runoff from the 6-month, 24-hour storm event or 1.5 times the 91<sup>st</sup> percentile, 24-hour runoff volume using an approved continuous runoff model.

$$Qd = \frac{[P - 0.2S]^2}{P + 0.8S} \quad \text{for } P \geq 0.2S$$

and

$$Qd = 0 \quad \text{for } P < 0.2S$$

Where:

Qd = runoff depth in inches over area

P = precipitation depth in inches over area

S = potential maximum detention, in inches over area, due to infiltration, storage, etc.

The area's potential maximum depth, S, is related to its curve number, CN:

$$S = (1000 / CN) - 10$$

2. Determine wetpool dimensions. Determine the wetpool dimensions satisfying the design criteria outlined below and illustrated in Figure 5 - 25 and Figure 5 - 26. A simple way to check the volume of each wetpool cell is to use the following equation:

$$V = \frac{h(A_1 + A_2)}{2}$$

where: V = wetpool volume (ft<sup>3</sup>)

h = wetpool average depth (ft)

A<sub>1</sub> = water quality design surface area of wetpool (sf)

A<sub>2</sub> = bottom area of wetpool (sf)

3. Design pond outlet pipe and determine primary overflow water surface. The pond outlet pipe shall be placed on a reverse grade from the pond's wetpool to the outlet structure. Provide documentation on how the outlet pipe was sized. Volume 3 contains guidance for conveyance system design. Pipe sizing shall be based on backwater effects.
4. Determine wetpond dimensions.

#### 10.2.1.4 Wetpool Geometry

- Divide the wetpool into two cells separated by a baffle or berm. The first cell shall contain between 25 to 35 percent of the total wetpool volume. The baffle or berm volume shall not count as part of the total wetpool volume.
- Provide sediment storage in the first cell. The sediment storage shall have a minimum depth of 1-foot. Install a fixed sediment depth monitor in the first cell to gauge sediment accumulation unless an alternative gauging method is proposed.
- The minimum depth of the first cell shall be 4 feet, exclusive of sediment storage requirements. The depth of the first cell may be greater than the depth of the second cell.
- The maximum depth of each cell shall not exceed 8 feet (exclusive of sediment storage in the first cell). Plant pool depths of 3 feet or shallower (second cell) with emergent wetland vegetation (see planting requirements).
- Place inlets and outlets to maximize the flowpath through the facility. The ratio of flowpath length to width from the inlet to the outlet shall be at least 3:1. The **flowpath length** is defined as the distance from the inlet to the outlet, as measured at mid-depth. The **width** at mid-depth can be found as follows:  $\text{width} = (\text{average top width} + \text{average bottom width})/2$ .
- Wetponds with wetpool volumes less than or equal to 4,000 cubic feet may be single celled (i.e., no baffle or berm is required). However, it is especially important in this case that the flow path length be maximized. The ratio of flow path length to width shall be at least 4:1 in single celled wetponds, but should preferably be 5:1.
- All inlets shall enter the first cell. For multiple inlets, the length-to-width ratio shall be based on the average flowpath length for all inlets.
- Line the first cell in accordance with the liner requirements contained in Chapter 4.

#### 10.2.1.5 Berms, Baffles, and Slopes

- A berm or baffle shall extend across the full width of the wetpool, and tie into the wetpond side slopes. If the berm embankments are greater than 4 feet in height, the berm must be constructed by excavating a key with dimensions equal to 50 percent of the embankment cross-sectional height and width. This requirement may be waived if recommended by a geotechnical engineer for specific site conditions. The geotechnical analysis shall address situations in which one of the two cells is empty while the other remains full of water.
- The top of the berm may extend to the WQ design water surface or be 1-foot below the WQ design water surface. If at the WQ design water surface, berm side slopes shall be 3H:1V. Berm side slopes may be steeper (up to 2H:1V) if the berm is submerged 1-foot.
- If good vegetation cover is not established on the berm, erosion control measures shall be used to prevent erosion of the berm back-slope when the pond is initially filled.
- The interior berm or baffle may be a retaining wall provided that the design is prepared and stamped by a licensed civil engineer. If a baffle or retaining wall is used, it shall be submerged one foot below the design water surface to discourage access by pedestrians.
- Side slopes shall not exceed a slope of 3H:1V. Moderately undulating slopes are acceptable and can provide a more natural setting for the facility. In general, gentle side slopes improve the aesthetic attributes of the facility and enhance safety.

### 10.2.1.6 Embankments

Embankments that impound water must comply with the Washington State Dam Safety Regulations (Chapter 173-175 WAC). If the impoundment has a storage capacity (including both water and sediment storage volumes) greater than 10 acre-feet (435,600 cubic feet or 3.26 million gallons) above natural ground level, then dam safety design and review are required by the Department of Ecology. Contact Ecology for information about this regulation.

### 10.2.1.7 Inlet and Outlet

See Figure 5 - 25 and Figure 5 - 26 for details on the following requirements:

- Submerge the inlet to the wetpond with the inlet pipe invert a minimum of two feet from the pond bottom (not including sediment storage). The top of the inlet pipe shall be submerged at least 1-foot, if possible.
- Provide an outlet structure. Either a Type 2 catch basin with a grated opening (“jail house window”) or a manhole with a cone grate (“birdcage”) may be used (see Figure 3 - 15 for an illustration).
- The pond outlet pipe (as opposed to the manhole or type 2 catch basin outlet pipe) shall be back-sloped or have a down-turned elbow, and extend 1 foot below the WQ design water surface.
- Size the pond outlet pipe, at a minimum, to pass the online WQ design flow. The highest invert of the outlet pipe sets the WQ design water surface elevation.
- The overflow criteria for single-purpose (treatment only, not combined with flow control) wetponds are as follows:
  - The requirement for primary overflow is satisfied by either the grated inlet to the outlet structure or by a birdcage above the pond outlet structure.
  - The bottom of the grate opening in the outlet structure shall be set at or above the height needed to pass the WQ design flow through the pond outlet pipe. The grate invert elevation sets the overflow water surface elevation.
  - The grated opening and downstream conveyance shall be sized to pass the 100-year design flow. The capacity of the outlet system shall be sized to pass the peak flow for the conveyance requirements.
- Provide an emergency spillway and design it according to the requirements for detention ponds (see Volume 3, Section 7.1.3).
- The City may require a bypass/shutoff valve to enable the pond to be taken offline for maintenance purposes.
- A gravity drain for maintenance is recommended if grade allows.
  - The drain invert shall be at least 6 inches below the top elevation of the dividing berm or baffle. Deeper drains are encouraged where feasible, but must be no deeper than 18 inches above the pond bottom.
  - The drain shall be at least 8 inches (minimum) diameter and shall be controlled by a valve. Use of a shear gate is allowed only at the inlet end of a pipe located within an approved structure.
  - Provide operational access to the valve to the finished ground surface.
  - The valve location shall be accessible and well marked with 1-foot of paving placed around the box. It must also be protected from damage and unauthorized operation.

- A valve box is allowed to a maximum depth of 5 feet without an access manhole. If over 5 feet deep, an access manhole or vault is required.
- All metal parts shall be corrosion-resistant. Do not use galvanized materials.

#### **10.2.1.8 Access and Setbacks**

- All facilities shall be a minimum of 20 feet from any structure, property line, and any vegetative buffer required by the local government, and 100 feet from any septic tank/drainfield.
- All facilities shall be a minimum of 50 feet from any slope greater than 20 percent. A geotechnical report must address the potential impact of a wetpond on a slope steeper than 20% or if closer than 50 feet.
- Access is the same as for detention ponds (Volume 3).
- If the dividing berm is also used for access, it should be built to sustain loads of up to 80,000 pounds.

#### **10.2.1.9 Planting Requirements**

Planting requirements for detention ponds also apply to wetponds.

- Large wetponds intended for phosphorus control shall not be planted within the cells, as the plants will release phosphorus in the winter when they die off. The bottom and side slopes shall be stabilized to prevent erosion.
- If the second cell of a basic wetpond is 3 feet deep or shallower, the bottom area shall be planted with emergent wetland vegetation. See Table 5 - 14 for recommended emergent wetland plant species for wetponds. The recommendations in Table 5 - 14 are for all of western Washington. Local knowledge should be used to tailor this information to Tacoma as appropriate.
- Cattails (*Typha latifolia*) shall not be used because they tend to crowd out other species.
- If the wetpond discharges to a phosphorus-sensitive lake or wetland, shrubs that form a dense cover should be planted on slopes above the WQ design water surface on at least three sides. Native vegetation species shall be used in all cases.

#### **10.2.1.10 Recommended Design Features**

The following features should be incorporated into the wetpond design where site conditions allow:

- The method of construction of soil/landscape systems can cause natural selection of specific plant species. Consult a soil restoration or wetland soil scientist for site-specific recommendations. The soil formulation will impact the plant species that will flourish or suffer on the site, and the formulation should be such that it encourages desired species and discourages undesired species.
- For wetpool depths in excess of 6 feet, it is recommended that some form of recirculation be provided in the summer, such as a fountain or aerator, to prevent stagnation and low dissolved oxygen conditions.
- A flow length-to-width ratio greater than the 3:1 minimum is desirable. If the ratio is 4:1 or greater, then the dividing berm is not required, and the pond may consist of one cell rather than two. A one-cell pond must provide at least 6-inches of sediment storage depth.
- A tear-drop shape, with the inlet at the narrow end, rather than a rectangular pond is preferred since it minimizes dead zones caused by corners.

- A small amount of base flow is desirable to maintain circulation and reduce the potential for low oxygen conditions during late summer.
- Evergreen or columnar deciduous trees along the west and south sides of ponds are recommended to reduce thermal heating, except that no trees or shrubs may be planted on berms meeting the criteria of dams regulated for safety. In addition to shade, trees and shrubs also discourage waterfowl use and the phosphorus enrichment problems they cause. Trees should be set back so that the branches will not extend over the pond.
- The number of inlets to the facility should be limited; ideally there should be only one inlet. The flowpath length should be maximized from inlet to outlet for all inlets to the facility.
- The access and maintenance road could be extended along the full length of the wetpond and could double as play courts or picnic areas. Placing finely ground bark or other natural material over the road surface would render it more pedestrian friendly.
- The following design features should be incorporated to enhance aesthetics where possible:
  - Provide pedestrian access to shallow pool areas enhanced with emergent wetland vegetation. This allows the pond to be more accessible without incurring safety risks.
  - Provide side slopes that are sufficiently gentle to avoid the need for fencing (3H:1V or flatter).
  - Create flat areas overlooking or adjoining the pond for picnic tables or seating that can be used by residents. Walking or jogging trails around the pond are easily integrated into site design.
  - Include fountains or integrated waterfall features for privately maintained facilities.
  - Provide visual enhancement with clusters of trees and shrubs. On most pond sites, it is important to amend the soil before planting since ponds are typically placed well below the native soil horizon in very poor soils. Make sure dam safety restrictions against planting do not apply.
  - Orient the pond length along the direction of prevailing summer winds (typically west or southwest) to enhance wind mixing.



**Table 5 - 14: Emergent Wetland Species Recommended for Wetponds**

Species	Common Name	Notes	Maximum Depth
<b>Inundation to 1-Foot</b>			
<i>Agrostis exarata</i> <sup>(1)</sup>	Spike bent grass	Prairie to coast	2 feet
<i>Carex stipata</i>	Sawbeak sedge	Wet ground	
<i>Eleocharis palustris</i>	Spike rush	Margins of ponds, wet meadows	2 feet
<i>Glyceria occidentalis</i>	Western mannagrass	Marshes, pond margins	2 feet
<i>Juncus tenuis</i>	Slender rush	Wet soils, wetland margins	
<i>Oenanthe sarmentosa</i>	Water parsley	Shallow water along stream and pond margins; needs saturated soils all summer	
<i>Scirpus atrocinctus</i> (formerly <i>S. cyperinus</i> )	Woolgrass	Tolerates shallow water; tall clumps	
<i>Scirpus microcarpus</i>	Small-fruited bulrush	Wet ground to 18 inches depth	18 inches
<i>Sagittaria latifolia</i>	Arrowhead	Prairie to coast	
<b>Inundation 1 to 2 Feet</b>			
<i>Agrostis exarata</i> <sup>(1)</sup>	Spike bent grass	Prairie to coast	
<i>Alisma plantago-aquatica</i>	Water plantain		
<i>Eleocharis palustris</i>	Spike rush	Margins of ponds, wet meadows	
<i>Glyceria occidentalis</i>	Western mannagrass	Marshes, pond margins	
<i>Juncus effusus</i>	Soft rush	Wet meadows, pastures, wetland margins	
<i>Scirpus microcarpus</i>	Small-fruited bulrush	Wet ground to 18 inches depth	18 inches
<i>Sparganium emmersum</i>	Bur reed	Shallow standing water, saturated soils	
<b>Inundation 1 to 3 Feet</b>			
<i>Carex obnupta</i>	Slough sedge	Wet ground or standing water	1.5 to 3 feet
<i>Beckmania syzigachne</i> <sup>(1)</sup>	Western sloughgrass	Wet prairie to pond margins	
<i>Scirpus acutus</i> <sup>(2)</sup>	Hardstem bulrush	Single tall stems, not clumping	3 feet
<i>Scirpus validus</i> <sup>(2)</sup>	Softstem bulrush		
<b>Inundation Greater Than 3 Feet</b>			
<i>Nuphar polysepalum</i>	Spatterdock	Deep water	3 to 7.5 feet
<i>Nymphaea odorata</i> <sup>(1)</sup>	White waterlily	Shallow to deep ponds	6 feet

**Notes:**

(1) Non-native species. *Beckmania syzigachne* is native to Oregon. Native species are preferred.

(2) *Scirpus* tubers must be planted shallower for establishment, and protected from foraging waterfowl until established. Emerging aerial stems should project above water surface to allow oxygen transport to the roots.

Primary sources: Municipality of Metropolitan Seattle, *Water Pollution Control Aspects of Aquatic Plants*, 1990. *Hortus Northwest*, *Wetland Plants for Western Oregon*, Issue 2, 1991. Hitchcock and Cronquist, *Flora of the Pacific Northwest*, 1973.

**10.2.1.11 Construction Criteria**

- Remove sediment that has accumulated in the pond after construction in the drainage area of the pond is complete (unless used for a liner - see below).
- Sediment that has accumulated in the pond at the end of construction may be used as a liner in excessively drained soils if the sediment meets the criteria for low permeability or treatment liners in keeping with guidance given in Chapter 3. Sediment used for a soil liner must be graded to provide uniform coverage and must meet the thickness specifications in Chapter 3. The sediment must not reduce the design volume of the pond. The pond must be over-excavated initially to provide sufficient room for the sediments to serve as a liner.

**10.2.1.12 Maintenance**

Per Minimum Requirement #10, an operation and maintenance plan shall be prepared for all stormwater management facilities. See Volume 1, Appendix C, Maintenance Checklist #12 for specific maintenance requirements for wet ponds. Maintenance shall be a basic consideration in design and cost-determination of the stormwater management facility.

Any standing water removed during maintenance operation must be disposed of in a City approved manner. See the dewatering requirements in Volume 4 of this manual. Pretreatment may be necessary. Solids must be disposed of in accordance with state and local waste regulations.

Facilities shall be constructed such that the facility can be easily inspected by one person. This may require construction of additional inspection ports or access manholes to allow inspection access to be opened by one person.

## **10.2.2 BMP T1020 Wetvaults**

### **10.2.2.1 Description**

A wetvault is an underground structure similar in appearance to a detention vault, except that a wetvault has a permanent pool of water (wetpool) which dissipates energy and improves the settling of particulate pollutants (see the wetvault details in Figure 5 - 27). Being underground, the wetvault lacks the biological pollutant removal mechanisms, such as algae uptake, present in surface wetponds.

### **10.2.2.2 Applications and Limitations:**

A wetvault may be used for commercial, industrial, or roadway projects if there are space limitations precluding the use of other treatment BMPs. The use of wetvaults for residential development is highly discouraged. Combined detention and wetpools are allowed; see BMP T1040.

If oil control is required for a project, a wetvault may be combined with an API oil/water separator.

### **10.2.2.3 Design Criteria**

#### ***Sizing Procedure***

The wetpool volume for the wetvault shall be equal to or greater than the total volume of runoff from the 6-month, 24-hour storm event. Alternatively, the 91<sup>st</sup> percentile, 24-hour runoff volume estimated by WWHM may be used.

Typical design details and concepts for the wetvault are shown in Figure 5 - 27.

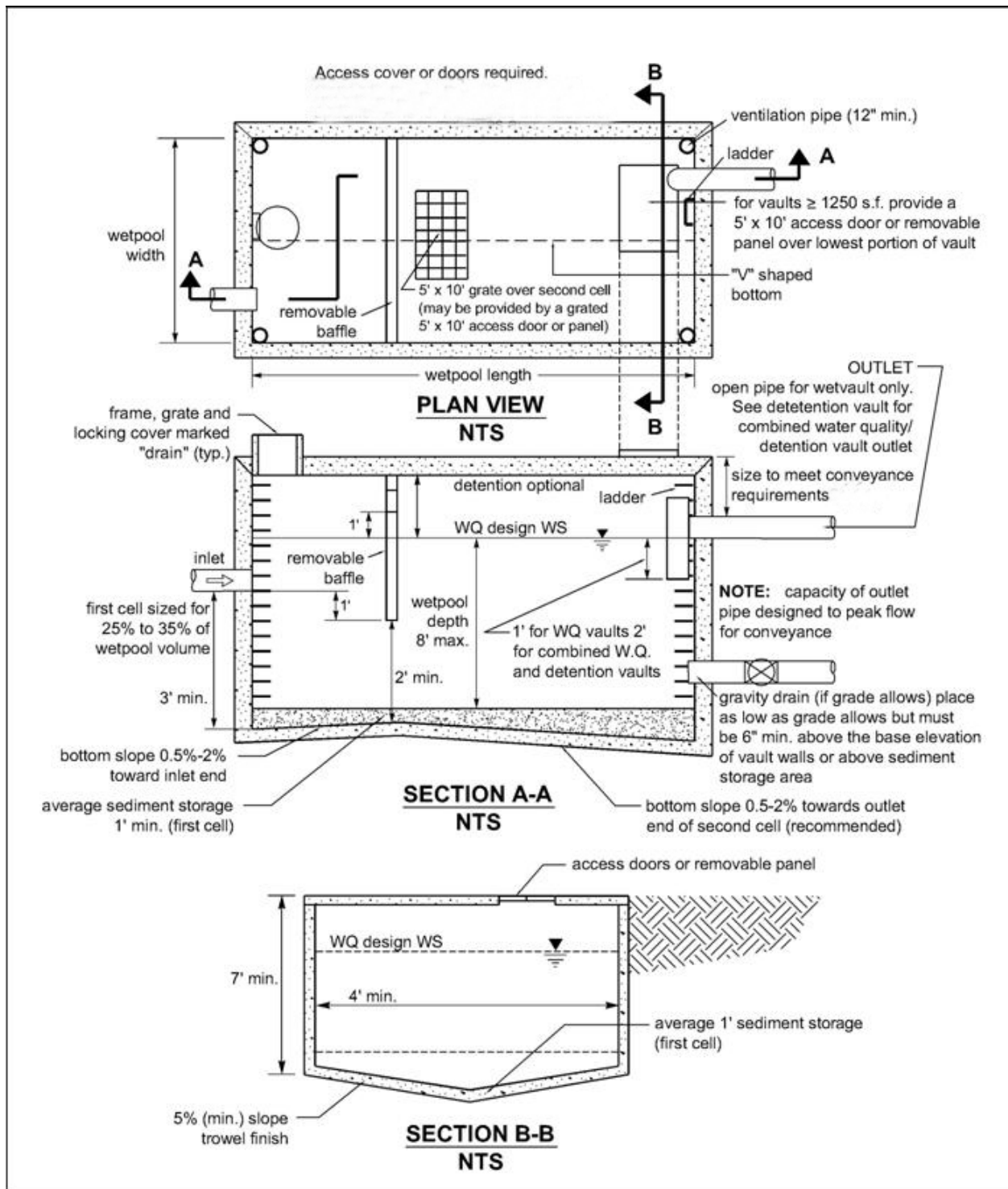


Figure 5 - 27. Wetvault

**10.2.2.4 Wetpool Geometry**

Same as specified for wetponds (see BMP T1010) except for the following two modifications:

- The sediment storage in the first cell shall be an average of 1-foot. Because of the v-shaped bottom, the depth of sediment storage needed above the bottom of the side wall is roughly proportional to vault width according to the schedule below:

Vault Width	Sediment Depth (from bottom of side wall)
15'	10"
20'	9"
40'	6"
60'	4"

- The second cell shall be a minimum of 3 feet deep since planting cannot be used to prevent re-suspension of sediment in shallow water as it can in open ponds.

**10.2.2.5 Vault Structure**

- Separate the vault into two cells by a wall or a removable baffle. If a wall is used, provide a 5-foot by 10-foot removable maintenance access for both cells. If a removable baffle is used, the following criteria apply:
  - The baffle shall extend from a minimum of 1-foot above the WQ design water surface to a minimum of 1-foot below the invert elevation of the inlet pipe.
  - The lowest point of the baffle shall be a minimum of 2 feet from the bottom of the vault, and greater if feasible.
- If the vault is less than 2,000 cubic feet (inside dimensions), or if the length-to-width ratio of the vault pool is 5:1 or greater, the baffle or wall may be omitted and the vault may be one-celled.
- Do not divide the two cells of a wetvault into additional subcells by internal walls. If internal structural support is needed, it is preferred that post and pier construction be used to support the vault lid rather than walls. Any walls used within cells must be positioned so as to lengthen, rather than divide, the flowpath.
- Slope the bottom of the first cell toward the access opening. Slope shall be between 0.5 percent (minimum) and 2 percent (maximum). The second cell may be level (longitudinally) sloped toward the outlet, with a high point between the first and second cells. Sloping the second cell towards the access opening for the first cell is also acceptable. Alternatively, access openings may be positioned a maximum of 10 feet from any location within the vault.
- Slope the vault bottom laterally a minimum of 5 percent from each side towards the center, forming a broad "v" to facilitate sediment removal. Note: More than one "v" may be used to minimize vault depth.
- The City may allow the vault bottom to be flat if removable panels are provided over the entire vault. Removable panels shall be at grade, have stainless steel lifting eyes, and weigh no more than 5 tons per panel.
- The highest point of a vault bottom must be at least 6 inches below the outlet elevation to provide for sediment storage over the entire bottom.
- Evaluate buoyancy of the vault with the results presented in design documentation.

- Wetvaults may be constructed using arch culvert sections provided the top area at the WQ design water surface is, at a minimum, equal to that of a vault with vertical walls designed with an average depth of 6 feet.
- Wetvaults shall conform to the "Materials" and "Structural Stability" criteria specified for detention vaults in Volume 3, Section 7.4.1.
- Where pipes enter and leave the vault below the WQ design water surface, they shall be sealed using water tight seals or couplers.
- Bare galvanized materials shall not be used.

#### **10.2.2.6 Inlet and Outlet**

- Submerge the inlet to the wetvault. The inlet pipe invert shall be a minimum of 3 feet from the vault bottom. Submerge the top of the inlet pipe at least 1-foot, if possible.
- Unless designed as an offline facility, the capacity of the outlet pipe and available head above the outlet pipe shall be designed to convey the 100-year design flow for developed site conditions without overtopping the vault. The available head above the outlet pipe must be a minimum of 6 inches.
- The outlet pipe shall be back-sloped or have tee section, the lower arm of which shall extend 1 foot below the WQ design water surface to provide for trapping of oils and floatables in the vault.
- Center the inlet and outlet pipes over the "V" portion of the vault.

#### **10.2.2.7 Access Requirements**

Same as for detention vaults (see Volume 3, Section 7.4.1.4), except for the following additional requirement for wetvaults:

- Provide a minimum of 50 square feet of grate over the second cell. For vaults in which the surface area of the second cell is greater than 1,250 square feet, grate 4 percent of the top. This requirement may be met by one grate or by many smaller grates distributed over the second cell area.

**NOTE:** A grated access door can be used to meet this requirement.

#### **10.2.2.8 Access Roads, Right of Way, and Setbacks**

Same as for detention vaults (see Volume 3, Section 7.4.1.4).

#### **10.2.2.9 Recommended Design Features**

The following design features should be incorporated into wetvaults where feasible, but they are not specifically required:

- The floor of the second cell should slope toward the outlet for ease of cleaning.
- The inlet and outlet should be at opposing corners of the vault to increase the flowpath.
- A flow length-to-width ratio greater than 3:1 minimum is desirable.
- Lockable grates instead of solid manhole covers are recommended to increase air contact with the wetpool.
- The number of inlets to the wetvault should be limited, and the flowpath length should be maximized from inlet to outlet for all inlets to the vault.

### **10.2.2.10 Construction Criteria**

Remove sediment that has accumulated in the vault after construction in the drainage area is complete.

### **10.2.2.11 Maintenance**

Per Minimum Requirement #10, an operation and maintenance plan shall be prepared for all stormwater management facilities. See Volume 1, Appendix C, Maintenance Checklist #14 for specific maintenance requirements for wet vaults. Maintenance shall be a basic consideration in design and cost-determination of the stormwater management facility.

Any standing water removed during maintenance operation must be disposed of in a City approved manner. See the dewatering requirements in Volume 4 of this manual. Pretreatment may be necessary. Solids must be disposed of in accordance with state and local waste regulations.

Facilities shall be constructed such that the facility can be easily inspected by one person. This may require construction of additional inspection ports or access manholes to allow inspection access to be opened by one person.

### **10.2.2.12 Modifications for Combining with a Baffle Oil/Water Separator**

If the project site is a high-use site and a wetvault is proposed, the vault may be combined with a baffle oil/water separator to meet the runoff treatment requirements with one facility rather than two.

- The sizing procedures for the baffle oil/water separator (Chapter 9) shall be run as a check to ensure the vault is large enough. If the oil/water separator sizing procedures result in a larger vault size, increase the wetvault size to match.
- An oil retaining baffle shall be provided in the second cell near the vault outlet. The baffle shall not contain a high-flow overflow, or else the retained oil will be washed out of the vault during large storms.
- The vault shall have a minimum length-to-width ratio of 5:1.
- The vault shall have a design water depth-to-width ratio of between 1:3 to 1:2.
- The vault shall be watertight and shall be coated to protect from corrosion.
- Separator vaults shall have a shutoff mechanism on the outlet pipe to prevent oil discharges during maintenance and to provide emergency shut-off capability in case of a spill. Also, provide a valve box and riser.
- Wetvaults used as oil/water separators must be offline and must bypass flows greater than the offline WQ design flow multiplied by 3.5. This will minimize the entrainment and/or emulsification of previously captured oil during very high flow events.

## **10.2.3 BMP T1030 Stormwater Treatment Wetlands**

### **10.2.3.1 Description**

Stormwater treatment wetlands are shallow man-made ponds that are designed to treat stormwater through the biological processes associated with emergent aquatic plants (see the stormwater wetland details in Figure 5 - 28 and Figure 5 - 29).

Wetlands created to mitigate disturbance impacts, such as filling of wetlands, shall not be used as stormwater treatment facilities.

### **10.2.3.2 Applications and Limitations**

The most critical factor for a successful design is the provision of an adequate supply of water for most of the year. Since water depths are shallower than in wetponds, water loss by evaporation is an important concern. Stormwater wetlands are a good WQ facility choice in areas with high winter groundwater levels.

### **10.2.3.3 Design Criteria**

Stormwater wetlands use most of the same design criteria as wetponds. However, instead of gravity settling being the dominant treatment process, pollutant removal mediated by aquatic vegetation and the microbiological community associated with that vegetation becomes the dominant treatment process. Thus when designing wetlands, water volume is not the dominant design criteria. Rather, factors which affect plant vigor and biomass are the primary concerns.

### **10.2.3.4 Sizing Procedure**

1. The design volume is the total volume of runoff from the 6-month, 24-hour storm event or, alternatively, the 91<sup>st</sup> percentile, 24-hour runoff volume using WWHM.
2. Calculate the surface area of the stormwater wetland. The surface area of the wetland shall be the same as the top area of a wetpond sized for the same site conditions. Calculate the surface area of the stormwater wetland by using the volume from Step 1 and dividing by the average water depth (use 3 feet).
3. Determine the surface area of the first cell of the stormwater wetland. Use the volume determined from Criterion 2 under "Wetland Geometry", below, and the actual depth of the first cell.
4. Determine the surface area of the wetland cell. Subtract the surface area of the first cell (Step 3) from the total surface area (Step 2).
5. Determine water depth distribution in the second cell. Decide if the top of the dividing berm will be at the surface or submerged (designer's choice). Adjust the distribution of water depths in the second cell according to Step 8 in Section 10.2.3.5. This will result in a facility that holds less volume than that determined in Step 1 above. This is acceptable.
6. Choose plants. See Table 5 - 14 for a list of plants recommended for wetpond water depth zones, or consult a wetland scientist.



### 10.2.3.5 Wetland Geometry

1. Stormwater wetlands shall consist of two cells, a presettling cell and a wetland cell.
2. The presettling cell shall contain approximately 33 percent of the wetpool volume calculated in Step 1 above.
3. The depth of the presettling cell shall be between 4 feet (minimum) and 8 feet (maximum), excluding sediment storage.
4. Provide one-foot of sediment storage in the presettling cell.
5. The wetland cell shall have an average water depth of about 1.5 feet (plus or minus 3 inches).
6. Shape the "berm" separating the two cells such that its downstream side gradually slopes to form the second shallow wetland cell (see the section view in Figure 5 - 28). Alternatively, the second cell may be graded naturalistically from the top of the dividing berm (see Step 8 below).
7. The top of the berm shall be either at the WQ design water surface or submerged 1-foot below the WQ design water surface. Correspondingly, the side slopes of the berm must meet the following criteria:
  - a. If the top of berm is at the WQ design water surface, the berm side slopes shall be no steeper than 3H:1V.
  - b. If the top of berm is submerged 1-foot, the upstream side slope may be up to 2H:1V.
8. Grade the bottom of the wetland cell in one of two ways:
  - a. Shallow evenly graded slope from the upstream to the downstream edge of the wetland cell (see Figure 5 - 28).
  - b. A "naturalistic" alternative, with the specified range of depths intermixed throughout the second cell (see Figure 5 - 29). A distribution of depths shall be provided in the wetland cell depending on whether the dividing berm is at the water surface or submerged (see 2).

The maximum depth shall be 2.5 feet in either configuration.

### 10.2.3.6 Lining Requirements

In infiltrative soils, line both cells of the stormwater wetland. To determine whether a low-permeability liner or a treatment liner is required, determine whether the following conditions will be met. If soil permeability will allow sufficient water retention, lining may be waived.

1. The second cell must retain water for at least 10 months of the year.
2. The first cell must retain at least three feet of water year-round.
3. Use a complete precipitation record when establishing these conditions. Take into account evapotranspiration losses as well as infiltration losses. Many wetland plants can adapt to periods of summer drought, so a limited drought period is allowed in the second cell. This may allow a treatment liner rather than a low permeability liner to be used for the second cell. The first cell must retain water year-round in order for the presettling function to be effective.

4. If a low permeability liner is used, place a minimum of 18 inches of native soil amended with good topsoil or compost (one part compost mixed with 3 parts native soil) over the liner. For geomembrane liners, a soil depth of 3 feet is recommended to prevent damage to the liner during planting. Hydric soils are not required.

The criteria for liners given in Chapter 4 must be observed.

#### **10.2.3.7 Inlet and Outlet**

Same as for wetponds (see BMP T1010).

#### **10.2.3.8 Access and Setbacks**

Access shall be the same as for detention ponds.

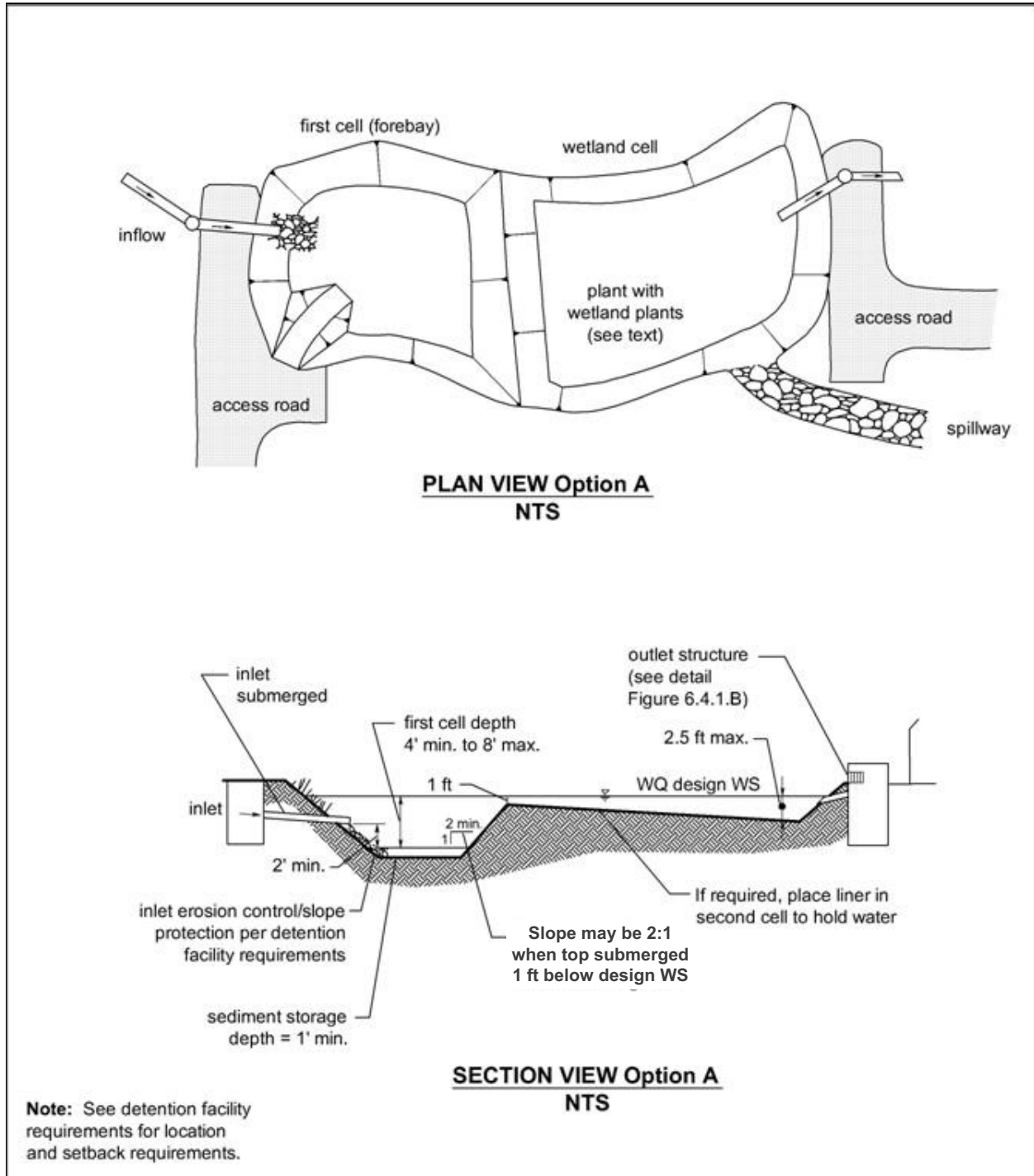


Figure 5 - 28. Stormwater Wetland – Option 1

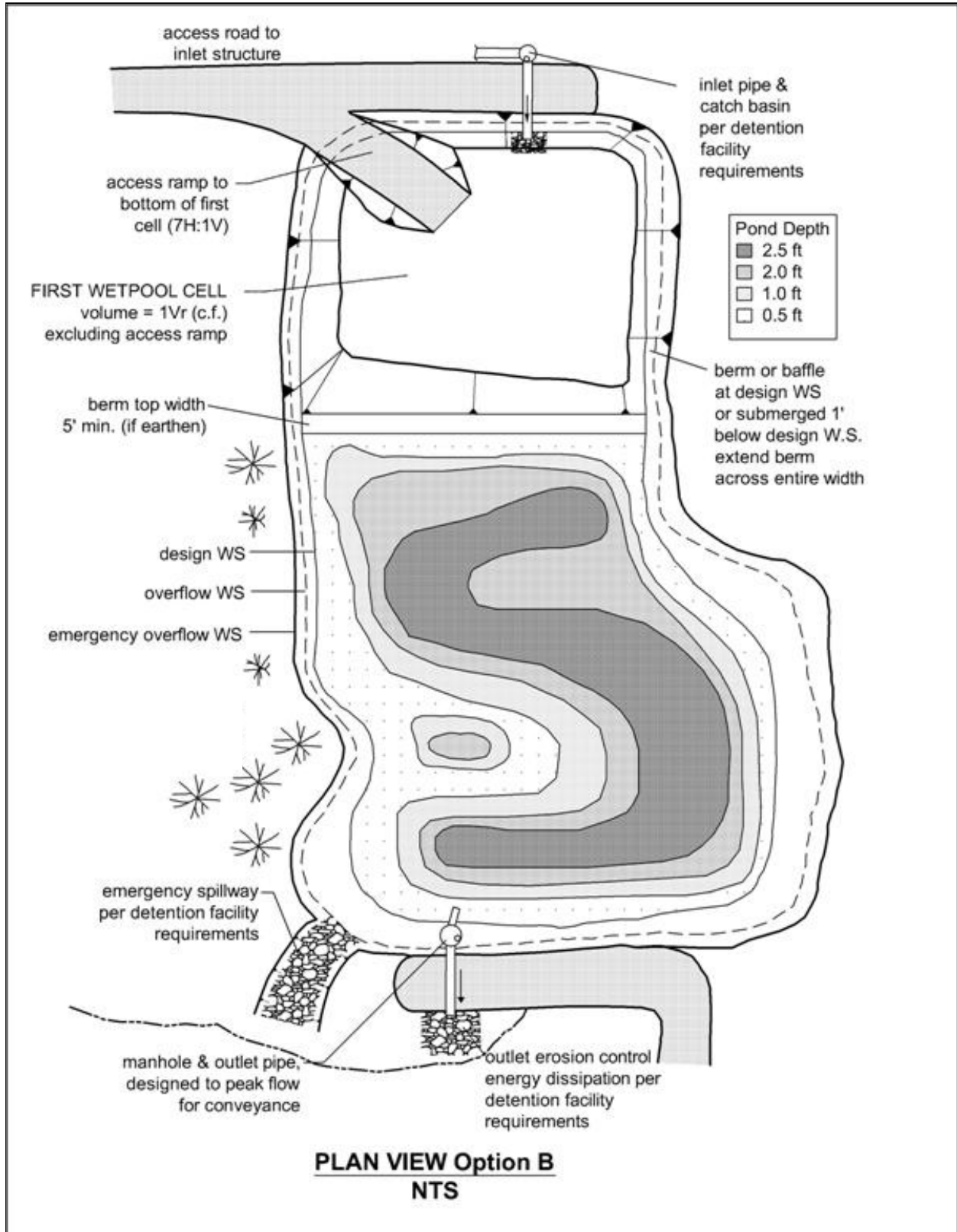


Figure 5 - 29. Stormwater Wetland – Option 2

**Table 5 - 15: Distribution of Depths in Wetland Cell**

Dividing Berm at WQ Design Water Surface		Dividing Berm Submerged 1-Foot	
Depth Range (feet)	Percent	Depth Range (feet)	Percent
0.1 to 1	25	1 to 1.5	40
1 to 2	55	1.5 to 2	40
2 to 2.5	20	2 to 2.5	20

### 10.2.3.9 Planting Requirements

Plant the wetland cell with emergent wetland plants following the recommendations given in Table 5 - 14 or the recommendations of a wetland specialist. Cattails (*Typha latifolia*) are not allowed.

### 10.2.3.10 Construction Criteria

- Construction and maintenance considerations are the same as for wetponds.
- Construction of the naturalistic alternative (Option 2) can be accomplished by first excavating the entire area to the 1.5-foot average depth. Then soil subsequently excavated to form deeper areas can be deposited to raise other areas until the distribution of depths indicated in the design is achieved.

### 10.2.3.11 Maintenance

Per Minimum Requirement #10, an operation and maintenance plan shall be prepared for all stormwater management facilities. See Volume 1, Appendix C, Maintenance Checklist #13 for specific maintenance requirements for treatment wetlands. Maintenance shall be a basic consideration in design and cost-determination of the stormwater management facility.

Any standing water removed during maintenance operation must be disposed of in a City approved manner. See the dewatering requirements in Volume 4 of this manual. Pretreatment may be necessary. Solids must be disposed of in accordance with state and local waste regulations.

Facilities shall be constructed such that the facility can be easily inspected by one person. This may require construction of additional inspection ports or access manholes to allow inspection access to be opened by one person.

## **10.2.4 BMP T1040 Combined Detention and Wetpool Facilities**

### **10.2.4.1 Description**

Combined detention and WQ wetpool facilities have the appearance of a detention facility but contain a permanent pool of water as well. The following design procedures, requirements, and recommendations cover differences in the design of the stand-alone WQ facility when combined with detention storage. The following combined facilities are addressed:

- Detention/wetpond (basic and large)
- Detention/wetvault
- Detention/stormwater wetland.

There are two sizes of the combined wetpond, a basic and a large, but only a basic size for the combined wetvault and combined stormwater wetland. The facility sizes (basic and large) are related to the pollutant removal goals. See Chapter 3 for more information about treatment performance goals.

### **10.2.4.2 Applications and Limitations:**

Combined detention and water quality facilities are efficient for sites that also have detention requirements. The water quality facility may often be placed beneath the detention facility without increasing the facility surface area. However, the fluctuating water surface of the live storage will create unique challenges for plant growth and for aesthetics alike.

The live storage component of the facility shall be provided above the seasonal high water table.

### **10.2.4.3 Design Criteria**

Typical design details and concepts for a combined detention and wetpond are shown in Figure 5 - 30 and Figure 5 - 31. The detention portion of the facility shall meet the design criteria and sizing procedures set forth in Volume 3.

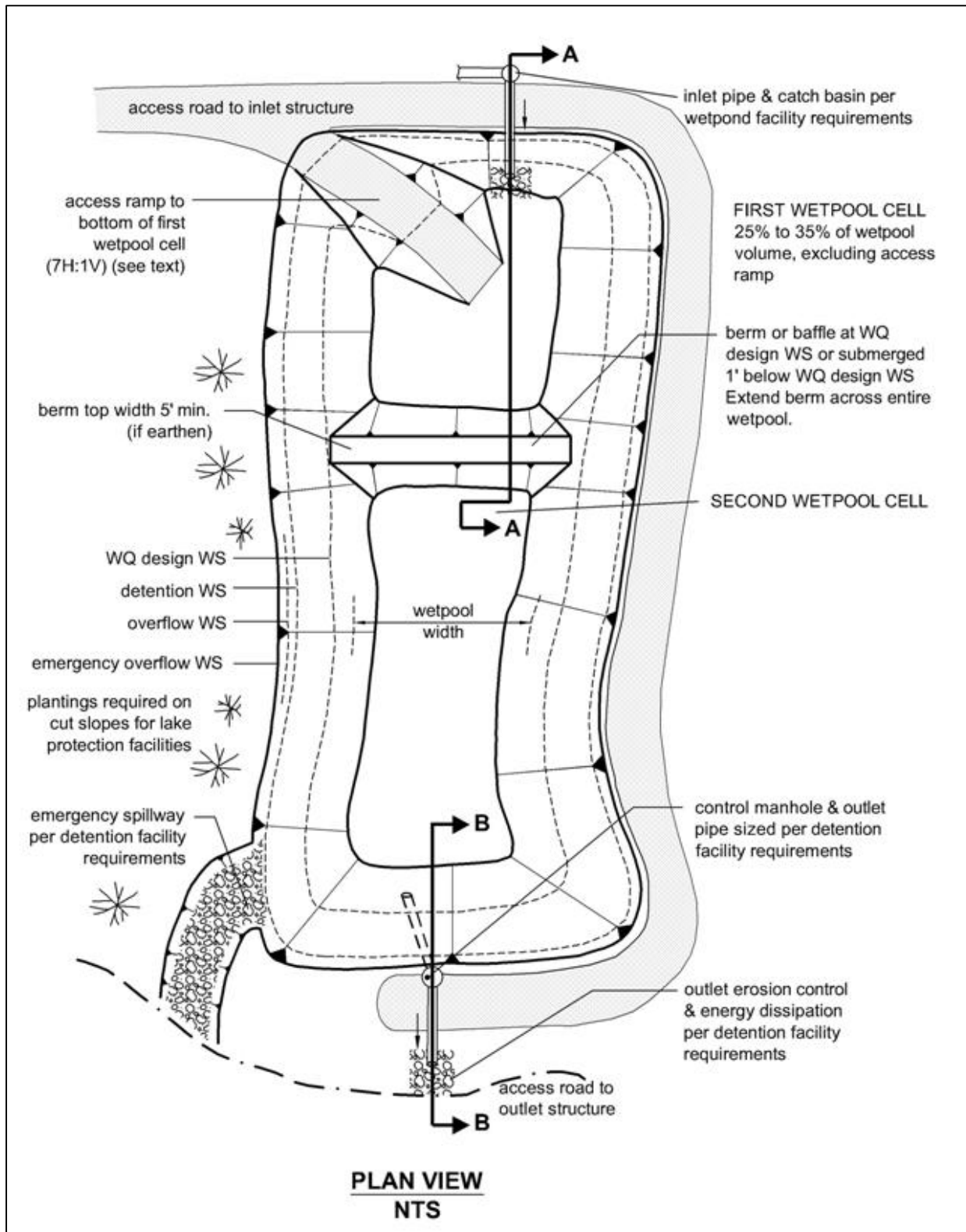


Figure 5 - 30. Combined Detention and Wetpond (top view)

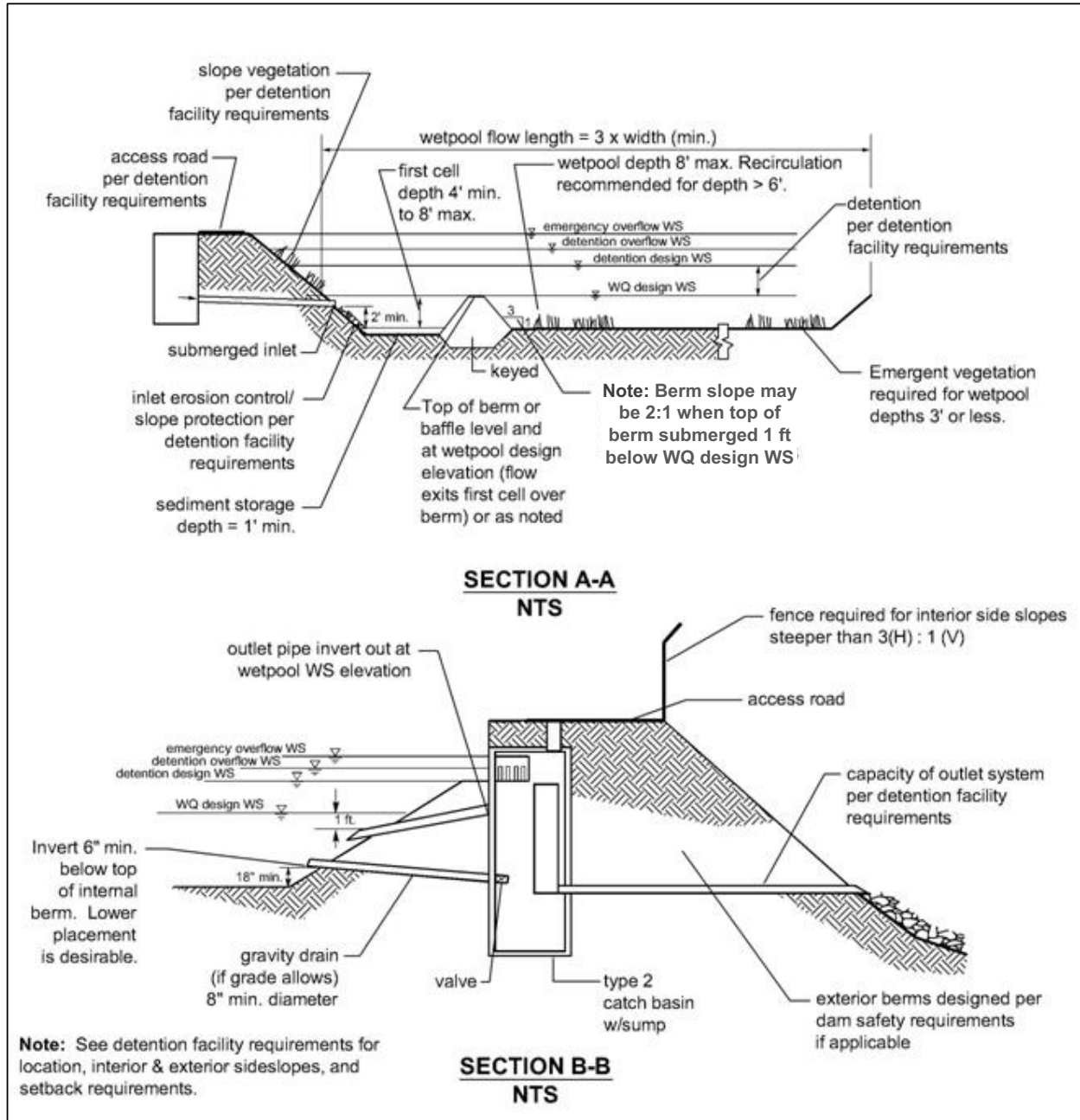


Figure 5 - 31. Combined Detention and Wetpond (side view)

#### 10.2.4.4 Sizing

The sizing for combined detention and wetponds are identical to those for wetponds and for detention facilities. The wetpool volume for a combined facility shall be equal to or greater than the total volume of runoff from the 6-month, 24-hour storm event or the 91<sup>st</sup> percentile 24-hour runoff volume estimated by WWHM. Follow the standard procedure specified in Volume 3 to size the detention portion of the pond.



#### **10.2.4.5 Detention and Wetpool Geometry**

- Do not include the wetpool and sediment storage volumes in the required detention volume.
- The "Wetpool Geometry" criteria for wetponds (see BMP T1010) shall apply with the following modifications/clarifications:
  - The permanent pool may be shallower to comprise most of the pond bottom, or deeper positioned to comprise a limited portion of the bottom. Note, having the first wetpool cell at the inlet allows for more efficient sediment management than if the cell is moved away from the inlet. Wetpond criteria governing water depth must still be met. See Figure 5 - 32 for two possibilities for wetpool cell placement.
  - The minimum sediment storage depth in the first cell is 1-foot. The 6 inches of sediment storage required for a detention pond does not need to be added to this, but 6 inches of sediment storage must be added to the second cell to comply with the detention sediment storage requirement.

#### **10.2.4.6 Berms, Baffles and Slopes**

Same as for wetponds (see BMP T1010)

#### **10.2.4.7 Inlet and Outlet**

The Inlet and Outlet criteria for wetponds shall apply with the following modifications:

- Provide a sump in the outlet structure of combined ponds.
- Design the detention flow restrictor and its outlet pipe according to the requirements for detention ponds (see Volume 3).

#### **10.2.4.8 Access and Setbacks**

The same as for wetponds.

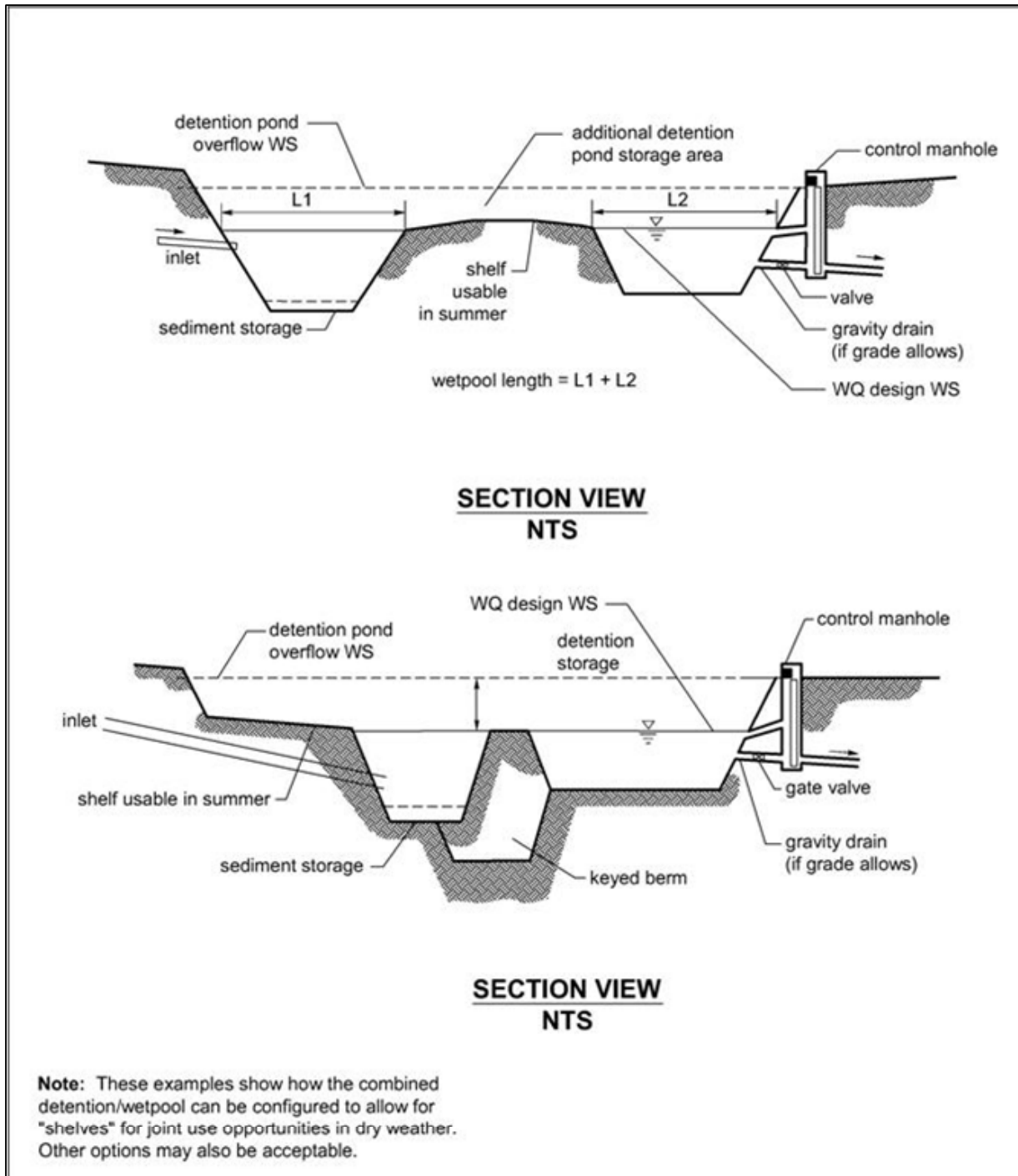
#### **10.2.4.9 Planting Requirements**

The same as for wetponds.

### **10.3 Combined Detention and Wetvault**

The sizing procedure for combined detention and wetvaults is identical to those outlined for wetvaults and for detention facilities. The design criteria for detention vaults and wetvaults must both be met, except for the following modifications or clarifications:

- The minimum sediment storage depth in the first cell shall average 1-foot. The 6 inches of sediment storage required for detention vaults do not need to be added to this, but 6 inches of sediment storage must be added to the second cell to comply with detention vault sediment storage requirements.
- The oil retaining baffle shall extend a minimum of 2 feet below the WQ design water surface.
- If a vault is used for detention as well as water quality control, the facility may not be modified to function as a baffle oil/water separator as allowed for wetvaults in BMP T1020.



**Figure 5 - 32. Alternative Configurations of Detention and Wetpool Areas**

## 10.4 Combined Detention and Stormwater Wetland

### 10.4.1 Sizing Criteria

The sizing procedure for combined detention and stormwater wetlands is identical to those outlined for stormwater wetlands and for detention facilities. Follow the procedure specified in BMP T1030 to determine the stormwater wetland size. Follow the standard procedure specified in Volume 3 to size the detention portion of the wetland.

Water Level Fluctuation Restrictions: The difference between the WQ design water surface and the maximum water surface associated with the 2-year runoff shall not be greater than 3 feet. If this restriction cannot be met, the size of the stormwater wetland must be increased. The additional area may be placed in the first cell, second cell, or both. If placed in the second cell, the additional area need not be planted with wetland vegetation or counted in calculating the average depth.

### 10.4.2 Design Criteria

The design criteria for detention ponds and stormwater wetlands must both be met, except for the following modifications or clarifications. The Wetland Geometry criteria for stormwater wetlands (see BMP T1030) shall be modified as follows:

- The minimum sediment storage depth in the first cell is 1-foot. The 6 inches of sediment storage required for detention ponds does not need to be added to this, nor does the 6 inches of sediment storage in the second cell of detention ponds need to be added.

### 10.4.3 Inlet and Outlet Criteria

The Inlet and Outlet criteria for wetponds shall apply with the following modifications:

- Provide a sump in the outlet structure of combined facilities.
- Design the detention flow restrictor and its outlet pipe according to the requirements for detention ponds (see Volume 3).

### 10.4.4 Planting Requirements

The Planting Requirements for stormwater wetlands are modified to use the following plants which are better adapted to water level fluctuations:

- |   |                |
|---|----------------|
| • Scirpus acutus (hardstem bulrush)           | 2 - 6' depth   |
| • Scirpus microcarpus (small-fruited bulrush) | 1 - 2.5' depth |
| • Sparganium emersum (burreed)                | 1 - 2' depth   |
| • Sparganium eurycarpum (burreed)             | 1 - 2' depth   |
| • Veronica sp. (marsh speedwell)              | 0 - 1' depth   |

In addition, the shrub *Spirea douglasii* (Douglas spirea) may be used in combined facilities.

## Chapter 11 Oil Water Separators

### 11.1 Purpose

Oil water separators remove oil and other water-insoluble hydrocarbons and settleable solids from stormwater runoff. This chapter provides a discussion of their application and design criteria. BMPs are described for baffle type and coalescing plate separators.

### 11.2 Description

Oil water separators are typically the American Petroleum Institute (API) (also called baffle type) (American Petroleum Institute, 1990) or the coalescing plate (CP) type using a gravity mechanism for separation. See Figure 5 - 33 and Figure 5 - 34. Oil water separators typically consist of three bays; forebay, separator section, and the afterbay. The CP separators need considerably less space for separation of the floating oil due to the shorter travel distances between parallel plates. A spill control (SC) separator (Figure 5 - 35) is a simple catch basin with a T-inlet for temporarily trapping small volumes of oil. The spill control separator is included here for comparison only and is not designed for, or to be used for, treatment purposes.

### 11.3 Applications/Limitations

This BMP is specific for discharges to the stormwater system. Oil water separators that will discharge to the sanitary sewer system shall follow the “City of Tacoma Environmental Services Source Control Oil Water Separator Policy” available at [www.cityoftacoma.org/stormwater](http://www.cityoftacoma.org/stormwater).

For low concentrations of oil, other treatments may be more applicable. These include sand filters and emerging technologies.

Without intense maintenance oil/water separators may not be sufficiently effective in achieving oil and TPH removal down to required levels.

Pretreatment should be considered if the level of total suspended solids (TSS) in the inlet flow would cause clogging or otherwise impair the long-term efficiency of the separator.

For inflows from small drainage areas (fueling stations, maintenance shops, etc.) a coalescing plate (CP) type separator is typically considered, due to space limitations. However, if plugging of the plates is likely, then a new design basis for the baffle type API separator may be considered on an experimental basis (see Section 11.6).

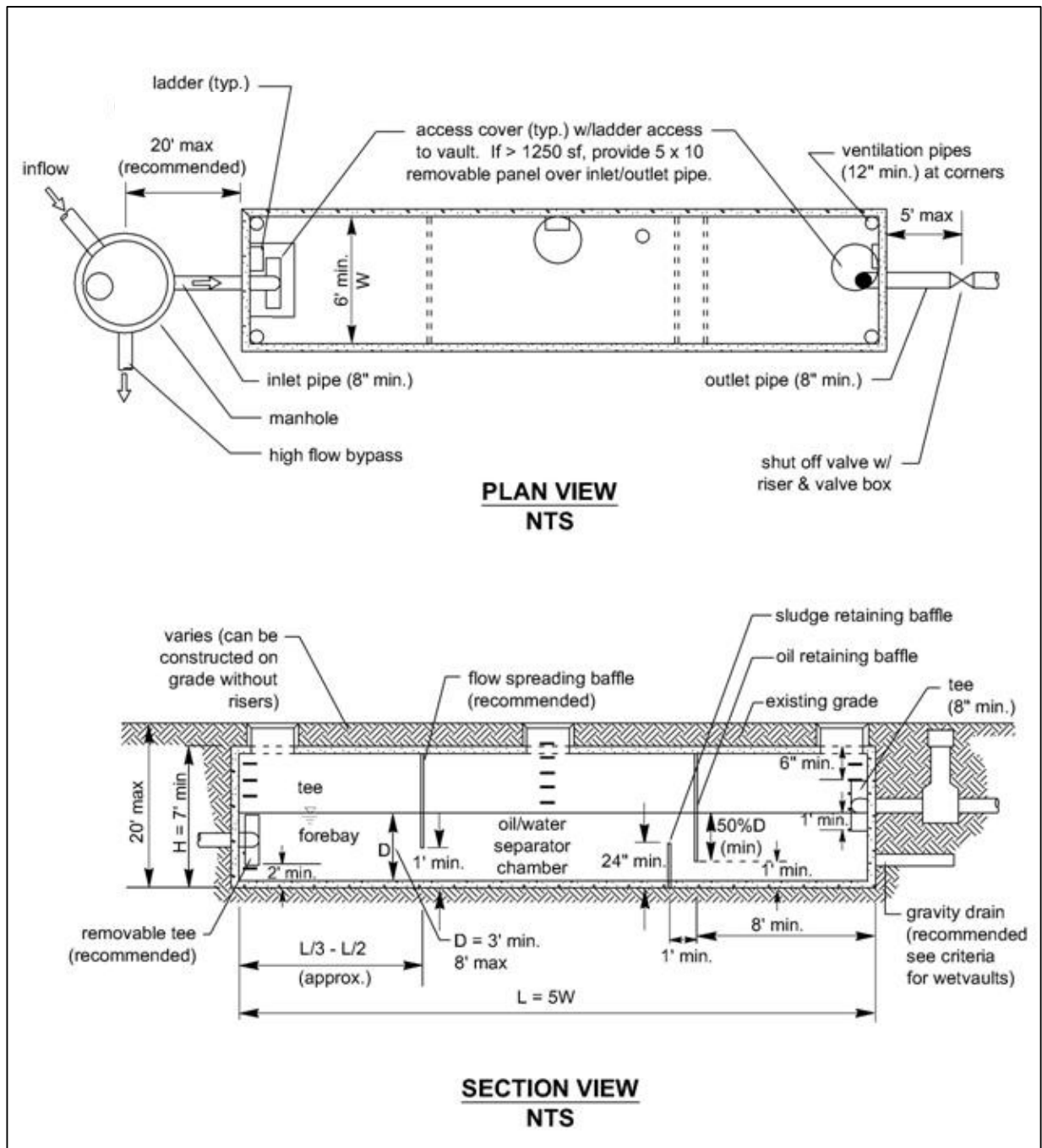


Figure 5 - 33. API (Baffle Type) Separator

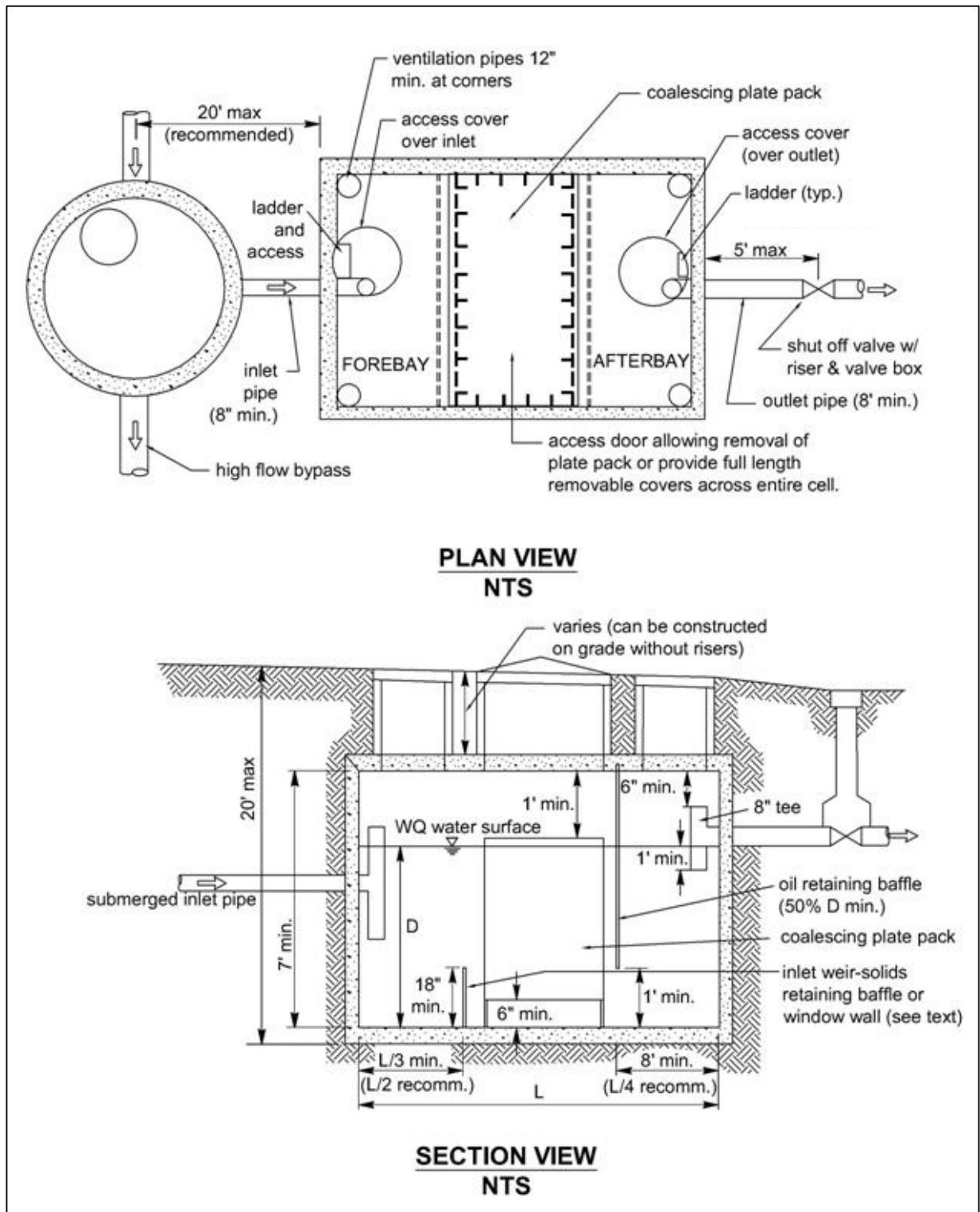
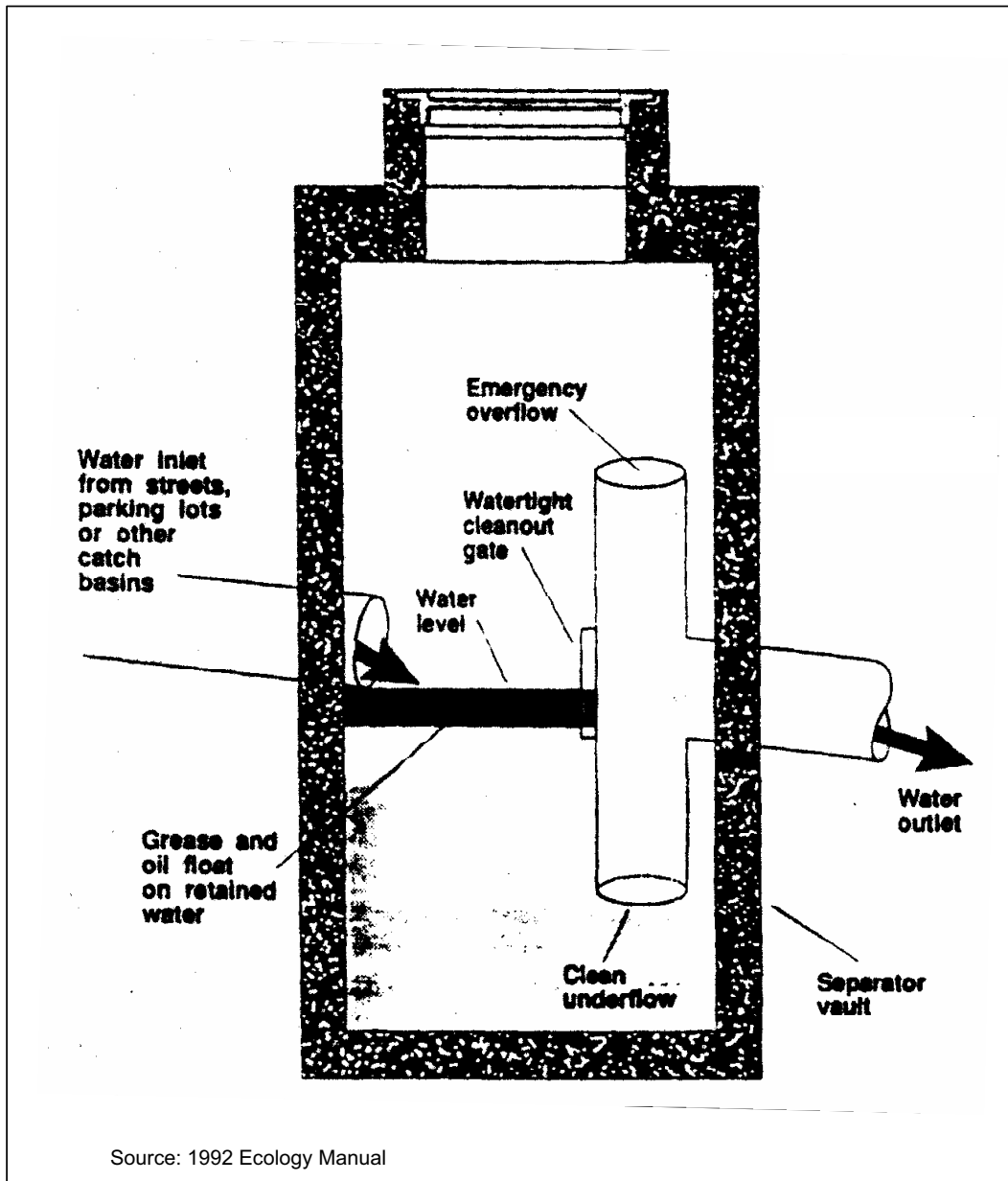


Figure 5 - 34. Coalescing Plate Separator



*Figure 5 - 35. Spill Control Separator (not for oil treatment)*

## 11.4 Site Suitability

Consider the following site characteristics:

- Sufficient land area
- Adequate TSS control or pretreatment capability
- Compliance with environmental objectives
- Adequate influent flow attenuation and/or bypass capability
- Sufficient access for operation and maintenance (O & M)

## 11.5 Design Criteria

### 11.5.1 General Considerations

The following are design criteria applicable to API and CP oil/water separators:

- If practicable, determine oil/grease (or TPH) and TSS concentrations, lowest temperature, pH, empirical oil rise rates in the runoff, and the viscosity and specific gravity of the oil. Also determine whether the oil is emulsified or dissolved. (*Washington State Department of Ecology, 2005*) Do not use oil/water separators for the removal of dissolved or emulsified oils such as coolants, soluble lubricants, glycols, and alcohols.
- Locate the separator offline and bypass the incremental portion of flows that exceed the offline 15-minute water quality design flow rate multiplied by 3.5. If it is necessary to locate the separator online, try to minimize the size of the area needing oil control, and use the online water quality design flow rate multiplied by 2.0.
- The separator shall be installed upstream of any other stormwater treatment facility.
- The separator shall be installed upstream of any pumps to prevent oil from emulsifying.
- Separators may be installed upstream or downstream of flow control facilities.
- Separator vaults shall be watertight. Pipes entering and exiting a vault below the water quality design water surface shall be sealed using a non-porous, non-shrinking vault.
- Separator vaults shall have a shutoff mechanism on the outlet pipe to prevent oil discharges during maintenance and to provide emergency shutoff capability in the event of a spill.
- Include a submerged inlet pipe with a down-turned elbow in the first bay at least two feet from the bottom. The outlet pipe shall be a Tee, sized to pass the design peak flow and placed at least 12 inches below the water surface.
- Use absorbents in the afterbay as needed.
- Use only storm drain pipes or impervious conveyances for routing oil contaminated stormwater to the oil and water separator.
- Specify appropriate performance tests after installation and shakedown, and/or certification by a professional engineer that the separator is functioning in accordance with design objectives. Expedient corrective actions must be taken if it is determined that the separator is not achieving acceptable performance levels.
- Add pretreatment for TSS that could clog the separator, or otherwise impair the long-term effectiveness of the separator.

### 11.5.2 Criteria for Baffles

- Oil retaining baffles (top baffles) shall be located at least 1/4 of the total separator length from the outlet and shall extend down at least 50% of the water depth and at least 1 foot from the separator bottom.
- Baffle height to water depth ratios shall be 0.85 for top baffles and 0.15 for bottom baffles.

### 11.5.3 Maintenance

Per Minimum Requirement #10, an operation and maintenance plan shall be prepared for all stormwater management facilities. See Volume 1, Appendix C, Maintenance Checklist #17 and #18 for specific maintenance requirements for oil water separators. Maintenance shall be a basic consideration in design and cost-determination of the stormwater management facility.



Any standing water removed during maintenance operation must be disposed of in a City approved manner. See the dewatering requirements in Volume 4 of this manual. Pretreatment may be necessary. Solids must be disposed of in accordance with state and local waste regulations.

Facilities shall be constructed such that the facility can be easily inspected by one person. This may require construction of additional inspection ports or access manholes to allow inspection access to be opened by one person.

## **11.6 Oil Water Separator BMPs**

Two BMPs are described in this section:

- BMP T1110 for baffle type separators
- BMP T1111 for coalescing plate separators

### **11.6.1 BMP T1110 API (Baffle type) Separators**

#### **11.6.1.1 Design Criteria**

- API separators shall be divided into three compartments: a forebay, an oil separation cell and an afterbay.
  - The forebay is designed primarily to trap and collect sediment, support plug flow conditions and reduce turbulence.
  - The oil separation cell traps and holds oil as it rises from the water column, and it serves as a secondary sediment collection area.
  - The afterbay provides a relatively oil-free cell before the outlet and provides a secondary oil separation area.
- The length of the forebay shall be approximately 1/3 to 1/2 the length of the vault. In addition, the surface area of the forebay must be at least 20 square feet per 10,000 square feet of impervious area draining to the separator.
- A removable flow-spreading baffle, extending from the surface to a depth of up to 1/2 the vault depth (D) is recommended to spread flows. Design guidelines for level spreaders are provided in Section 5.2 of this volume.
- A removable baffle (sediment-retaining baffle) shall be a minimum of 24 inches and located at least 1 foot from the oil-retaining baffle. A “window-wall” baffle may be used, but the area of the window opening must be at least three times greater than the area of the inflow pipe.
- A removable oil retaining baffle shall be provided and located approximately 1/4 L from the outlet wall, or a minimum of 8 feet, whichever is greater (the 8-foot minimum is for maintenance purposes). The oil-retaining baffle shall extend from the elevation of the water surface to a depth of at least 50 percent of the design water depth. Various configurations are possible, but the baffle shall be designed to minimize turbulence and entrainment of sediment.
- Baffles may be fixed rather than removable if additional entry ports and ladders are provided so that both sides of the baffle are accessible to maintenance crews.
- Baffle separator vaults shall have a minimum length-to-width ratio of 5:1.
- The design water depth (D) shall be no deeper than 8 feet unless approved by Environmental Services.

- Baffle separator vaults shall have a design water depth-to-width ratio of between 0.3 and 0.5.

### 11.6.1.2 Sizing Criteria

- Determine the oil rise rate,  $V_t$ , in cm/sec, using Stokes' Law, or empirical determination, or 0.033 ft./min. for 60 $\mu$  (micron) oil droplet size. The application of Stokes' Law to site-based oil droplet sizes and densities, or empirical rise rate determinations recognizes the need to consider actual site conditions. In those cases the design basis would not be the 60 micron droplet size and the 0.033 ft/min. rise rate.

Stokes Law equation for rise rate,  $V_t$  (cm/sec):

$$V_t = [(g)(\rho_w - \rho_o)(d^2)] / [(18 * \mu_w)]$$

Where:

$V_t$  = the rise rate of the oil droplet (cm/s or ft/sec)

$g$  = acceleration due to gravity (cm/s<sup>2</sup> or ft/s<sup>2</sup>)

$\rho_w$  = density of water at the design temperature (g/cm<sup>3</sup> or lbm/ft<sup>3</sup>)

$\rho_o$  = density of oil at the design temperature (g/cm<sup>3</sup> or lbm/ft<sup>3</sup>)

$d$  = oil droplet diameter (cm or ft)

$\mu_w$  = absolute viscosity of the water (g/cm·s or lbm/ft·s)

Use:

oil droplet diameter,  $D=60$  microns (0.006 cm)

$\rho_w = 0.999$  gm/cc. at 32° F

$\rho_o$ : Select conservatively high oil density,

For example, if diesel oil @  $\rho_o = 0.85$  gm/cc and motor oil @  $\rho_o = 0.90$  can be present then use  $\rho_o = 0.90$  gm/cc

$\eta_w = 0.017921$  poise, gm/cm-sec. at  $T_w = 32$  °F

Use the following separator dimension criteria:

- Separator water depth,  $d \geq 3 \leq 8$  feet (to minimize turbulence)
- Separator width, 6-20 feet
- Depth/width ( $d/w$ ) of 0.3-0.5

### ***For Stormwater Inflow from Drainages under 2 Acres***

Ecology modified the API criteria for treating stormwater runoff from small drainage areas (fueling stations, commercial parking lots, etc.) by using the design hydraulic horizontal velocity,  $V_h$ , for the design  $V_h/V_t$  ratio rather than the API minimum of  $V_h/V_t = 15$ . The API criteria appear applicable for greater than two acres of impervious drainage area.

**Performance verification of this design basis must be obtained during at least one wet season using the test protocol referenced in Chapter 10 for new technologies.**

The following is the sizing procedure using modified API criteria:

1. Determine  $V_t$  and select depth and width of the separator section based on above criteria.

2. Calculate the minimum residence time ( $t_m$ ) of the separator at depth  $d$ :

$$t_m = d/V_t$$

3. Calculate the horizontal velocity of the bulk fluid,  $V_h$ , vertical cross-sectional area,  $A_v$ , and actual design  $V_h/V_t$ .

$$V_h = Q/dw = Q/A_v \text{ (} V_h \text{ maximum at } < 2.0 \text{ ft/min.)}$$

$Q = (3.5)$  (offline 15 minute water quality design flow rate in  $\text{ft}^3/\text{min}$  determined by WWHM, at minimum residence time,  $t_m$ )

At  $V_h/V_t$  determine  $F$ , turbulence and short-circuiting factor API  $F$  factors range from 1.28-1.74 (see Appendix D).

4. Calculate the minimum length of the separator section,  $l(s)$ , using:

$$l(s) = FQt_m/wd = F(V_h/V_t)d$$

$$l(t) = l(f) + l(s) + l(a)$$

$$l(t) = l(t)/3 + l(s) + l(t)/4$$

Where:

$l(t)$  = total length of 3 bays

$l(f)$  = length of forebay

$l(a)$  = length of afterbay

5. Calculate  $V = l(s)wd = FQt_m$ , and  $A_h = wl(s)$

$V$  = minimum hydraulic design volume

$A_h$  = minimum horizontal area of the separator

**For Stormwater Inflow from Drainages > 2 Acres:**

Use  $V_h = 15 V_t$  and  $d = (Q/2V_h)^{1/2}$  (with  $d/w = 0.5$ ) and repeat above calculations 3- 5.

## **11.6.2 BMP T1111 Coalescing Plate (CP) Separators**

### **11.6.2.1 Design Criteria**

- Coalescing plate separators shall be divided by baffles or berms into three compartments: a forebay, an oil separation cell which houses the plate pack, and an afterbay. The forebay controls turbulence and traps and collects debris. The oil separation cell captures and holds oil. The afterbay provides a relatively oil-free exit cell before the outlet.
- The length of the forebay shall be a minimum of 1/3 the length of the vault, L (though 1/2 L is recommended). In addition, it is recommended that the surface area of the forebay be at least 20 square feet per 10,000 square feet of tributary impervious area draining to the separator. In lieu of an attached forebay, a separate grit chamber, sized to be at least 20 square feet per 10,000 square feet of tributary impervious area, may precede the oil/water separator.
- An oil-retaining baffle shall be provided. For large units, a baffle position of 0.25 L from the outlet wall is recommended. The oil-retaining baffle shall extend from the water surface to a depth of at least 50 percent of the design water depth. Various configurations are possible, but the baffle shall be designed to minimize turbulence and entrainment of sediment.
- A bottom sediment-retaining baffle shall be provided upstream of the plate pack. The minimum height of the sediment-retaining baffle shall be 18 inches. Window walls may be used, but the window opening must be a minimum of three times greater than the area of the inflow pipe.
- It is recommended that entire space between the sides of the plate pack and the vault wall be filled with a solid but lightweight removable material such as a plastic or polyethylene foam to reduce short-circuiting around the plate pack. Rubber flaps are not effective for this purpose.
- The Reynolds Number through the separator bay shall be <500 (laminar flow).
- The separator plates shall meet the following criteria:
  - Plates shall be inclined at 45° to 60° from the horizontal. This range of angles exceeds the angle of repose of many solids and therefore provides more effective droplet separation while minimizing the accumulation of solids on the individual plates.
  - Plates shall have a minimum plate spacing of 1/2 inch (perpendicular distance between plates) and have corrugations.
  - Locate plate pack at least 6 inches from the bottom of the separator for sediment storage.
  - Locate plate pack such that there is 12 inches minimum from the top of the plate pack and the bottom of the vault cover.
  - Design plates for ease of removal and cleaning with high-pressure rinse or equivalent.

**11.6.2.2 Sizing Criteria**

Calculate the projected (horizontal) surface area of plates needed using the following equation:

$$A_h = Q/Vt = [Q] / [(.00386) * ((S_w - S_o)/(\mu_w))]$$

Where

$A_h$  = horizontal surface area of the plates (ft<sup>2</sup>)

$Vt$  = rise rate of the oil droplet (ft/min)

$Q$  = design flowrate (ft<sup>3</sup>/min) The design flowrate is the offline 15-minute water quality design flowrate predicted by WWHM multiplied by 3.5.

$S_w$  = specific gravity of water at the design temperature

$S_o$  = specific gravity of oil at the design temperature

$\mu_w$  = absolute viscosity of the water (poise)



## Chapter 12 Emerging Technologies

### 12.1 Background

Traditional best management practices (BMPs) such as wetponds and filtration swales may not be appropriate in many situations due to size and space restraints or their inability to remove target pollutants. Because of this, the stormwater treatment industry emerged and new stormwater treatment devices are currently in development.

Emerging technologies are those new stormwater treatment devices that are continually being added to the stormwater treatment marketplace. These devices include both permanent and construction site treatment technologies. Many of these devices have not undergone complete performance testing so their performance claims cannot be verified.

### 12.2 Emerging Technology and the City of Tacoma

Proprietary devices are approved on a case-by-case basis.

See the “City of Tacoma Policy Regarding Proprietary Stormwater Treatment Devices” located on the City of Tacoma website for more information on preapproval requests.

### 12.3 Ecology Role in Evaluating Emerging Technologies

To aid local governments in selecting new stormwater treatment technologies the Department of Ecology (Ecology) developed the Technology Assessment Protocol – Ecology (TAPE) and Chemical Technology Assessment Protocol Ecology (CTAPE) protocols. These protocols provide manufacturers with guidance on stormwater monitoring so they may verify their performance claims.

As a part of this process Ecology:

- Posts information on emerging technologies at the emerging technologies website: <http://www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wq/stormwater/newtech/index.html>.
- Participates in all Technical Review Committee (TRC) and Chemical Technical Review Committee (CTRC) activities which include reviewing manufacturer performance data and providing recommendations on use level designations.
- Grants use level designations based on performance and other pertinent data submitted by the manufacturers and vendors.
- Provides oversight and analysis of all submittals to ensure consistency with this manual.

### 12.4 Evaluation of Emerging Technologies

Local governments should consider the following as they make decisions concerning the use of new stormwater treatment technologies in their jurisdiction:

***Remember the Goal:***

The goal of any stormwater management program or BMP is to treat and release stormwater in a manner that does not harm beneficial uses.

***Exercise Reasonable Caution:***

Before allowing a new technology for an application, the local government should review evaluation information based on the TAPE or CTAPE.

An emerging technology cannot be used for new or redevelopment unless this technology has a use level designation. Having a use level designation means that Ecology and the TRC or CTRC reviewed system performance data and believe the technology has the ability to provide the level of treatment claimed by the manufacturer.

To achieve the goals of the Clean Water Act and the Endangered Species Act, local governments may find it necessary to retrofit stormwater pollutant control systems for many existing stormwater discharges. In retrofit situations, the use of any BMP that makes substantial progress toward these goals is a step forward and Ecology encourages this. To the extent practical, the performance of BMPs used in retrofit situations should be evaluated using the TAPE or CTAPE protocols.

## **12.5 Assessing Levels of Development of Emerging Technologies**

Ecology developed use level designations to assess levels of development for emerging technologies. The use level designations are based upon the quantity, quality, and type of performance data. There are three use level designations: pilot use level designation, conditional use level designation, and general use level designation.

### ***Pilot Use Level Designation (PULD)***

For technologies that have limited performance data, the pilot use level designation allows limited use to enable field testing to be conducted. Pilot use level designations may be given based solely on laboratory performance data. Pilot use level designations apply for a specified time period only. During this time period, the proponent must complete all field testing and submit a technology evaluation report (TER) to Ecology and the TRC. Ecology will limit the number of installations to five during the pilot use level period.

Local governments may allow PULD technologies to be installed if the manufacturer agrees to conduct additional field testing based on the TAPE at all sites to obtain a general use level designation. Local governments covered by a municipal stormwater NPDES permit must notify Ecology in writing when a PULD technology is proposed. The form can be found: <http://www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wq/stormwater/newtech/PULDNOI.pdf>

### ***Conditional Use Level Designation (CULD)***

For emerging technologies that have considerable performance data that was not collected per the TAPE protocol, the CULD was established. Conditional use level designations may be given if field data has been collected by a protocol that is reasonably consistent but does not necessarily fully meet the TAPE protocol. The field data must meet the statistical goals set out in the TAPE guidelines (Appendix D). Laboratory data may be used to supplement field data. Technologies that are granted a CULD will be allowed continued use for a specified time period, during which the field testing necessary to obtain a general use level designation (GULD) must be completed and a TER must be submitted to Ecology and the TRC. Ecology will limit the number of installations to ten during the CULD period.

### ***General Use Level Designation (GULD)***

The general use level designation (GULD) confers a general acceptance for the specified applications (land uses). Technologies with a GULD may be used anywhere in Washington, subject to Ecology conditions.



## **12.6 Examples of Emerging Technologies for Stormwater Treatment and Control**

Go to the Ecology Emerging Technologies website to obtain information on technologies that have obtained a use level designation:

<http://www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wq/stormwater/newtech/index.html>

## **12.7 Maintenance**

Per Minimum Requirement #10, an operation and maintenance plan shall be prepared for all stormwater management facilities. See Volume 1, Appendix C, Maintenance Checklist #28 for specific maintenance requirements for proprietary devices. Maintenance shall be a basic consideration in design and cost-determination of the stormwater management facility.

Any standing water removed during maintenance operation must be disposed of in a City approved manner. See the dewatering requirements in Volume 4 of this manual. Pretreatment may be necessary. Solids must be disposed of in accordance with state and local waste regulations.

Facilities shall be constructed such that the facility can be easily inspected by one person. This may require construction of additional inspection ports or access manholes to allow inspection access to be opened by one person.

## Appendix A Basic Treatment Receiving Waters

### *All Salt Waterbodies*

#### *Rivers*

Baker	Anderson Creek
Bogachiel	Bear Creek
Cascade	Marblemount
Chehalis	Bunker Creek
Clearwater	Town of Clearwater
Columbia	Canadian Border
Cowlitz	Skate Creek
Elwha	Lake Mills
Green	Howard Hanson Dam
Hoh	South Fork Hoh River
Humptulips	West and East Fork Confluence
Kalama	Italian Creek
Lewis	Swift Reservoir
Muddy	Clear Creek
Nisqually	Alder Lake
Nooksack	Glacier Creek
South Fork Nooksack	Hutchinson Creek
North River	Raymond
Puyallup	Carbon River
Queets	Clearwater River
Quillayute	Bogachiel River
Quinault	Lake Quinault
Sauk	Clear Creek
Satsop	Middle and East Fork Confluence
Skagit	Cascade River
Skokomish	Vance Creek
Skykomish	Beckler River
Snohomish	Snoqualmie River
Snoqualmie	Middle and North Fork Confluence
Sol Duc	Beaver Creek
Stillaguamish	North and South Fork Confluence
North Fork Stillaguamish	Boulder River
South Fork Stillaguamish	Canyon Creek
Suiattle	Darrington
Tilton	Bear Canyon Creek
Toutle	North and South Fork Confluence
North Fork Toutle	Green River
Washougal	Washougal
White	Greenwater River
Wind	Carson
Wynoochee	Wishkah River Road Bridge

**Lakes**

Washington  
Sammamish  
Union  
Whatcom  
Silver

King  
King  
King  
Whatcom  
Cowlitz

## Appendix B Procedure for Conducting a Pilot Infiltration Test

The Pilot Infiltration Test (PIT) consists of a relatively large-scale infiltration test to better approximate infiltration rates for design of stormwater infiltration facilities. The PIT reduces some of the scale errors associated with relatively small-scale double ring infiltrometer or “stove-pipe” infiltration tests. It is not a standard test but rather a practical field procedure recommended by Ecology’s Technical Advisory Committee.

### B.1 Infiltration Test

6. Excavate the test pit to the depth of the bottom of the proposed infiltration facility. Lay back the slopes sufficiently to avoid caving and erosion during the test.
7. The horizontal surface area of the bottom of the test pit should be approximately 100 square feet. For small drainages and where water availability is a problem smaller areas may be considered as determined by the site professional.
8. Accurately document the size and geometry of the test pit.
9. Install a vertical measuring rod (minimum 5-ft. long) marked in half-inch increments in the center of the pit bottom.
10. Use a rigid 6-inch diameter pipe with a splash plate on the bottom to convey water to the pit and reduce side-wall erosion or excessive disturbance of the pond bottom. Excessive erosion and bottom disturbance will result in clogging of the infiltration receptor and yield lower than actual infiltration rates.
11. Add water to the pit at a rate that will maintain a water level between 3 and 4 feet above the bottom of the pit. A rotometer can be used to measure the flow rate into the pit. A water level of 3 to 4 feet provides for easier measurement and flow stabilization control. However, the depth should not exceed the proposed maximum depth of water expected in the completed facility.
12. Every 15-30 min, record the cumulative volume and instantaneous flow rate in gallons per minute necessary to maintain the water level at the same point (between 3 and 4 feet) on the measuring rod.
13. Add water to the pit until one hour after the flow rate into the pit has stabilized (constant flow rate) while maintaining the same pond water level (usually 17 hours).
14. After the flow rate has stabilized, turn off the water and record the rate of infiltration in inches per hour from the measuring rod data, until the pit is empty.

### B.2 Data Analysis

1. Calculate and record the infiltration rate in inches per hour in 30 minutes or one-hour increments until one hour after the flow has stabilized.

**NOTE:** Use statistical/trend analysis to obtain the hourly flow rate when the flow stabilizes. This would be the lowest hourly flow rate.

2. Apply appropriate correction factors for site heterogeneity, anticipated level of maintenance and treatment to determine the site-specific design infiltration rate (see Table 5 - 16).

**Table 5 - 16: Correction Factors to be Used with In-Situ Infiltration Measurements to Estimate Long-Term Design Infiltration Rates**

Issue	Partial Correction Factor
Site variability and number of locations tested	$CF_v = 1.5 \text{ to } 6$
Degree of long-term maintenance to prevent siltation and bio-buildup	$CF_m = 2 \text{ to } 6$
Degree of influent control to prevent siltation and bio-buildup	$CF_i = 2 \text{ to } 6$

### B.3 Example

The area of the bottom of the test pit is 8.5-ft. by 11.5-ft.

Water flow rate was measured and recorded at intervals ranging from 15 to 30 minutes throughout the test. Between 400 minutes and 1,000 minutes the flow rate stabilized between 10 and 12.5 gallons per minute or 600 to 750 gallons per hour, or an average of  $(9.8 + 12.3) / 2 = 11.1$  inches per hour.

Applying a correction factor of 5.5 for gravelly sand, the design long-term infiltration rate becomes 2 inches per hour, anticipating adequate maintenance and pretreatment.

## Appendix C Geotextile Specifications

**Table 5 - 17: Geotextile Properties for Underground Drainage**

Geotextile Property Requirements <sup>a</sup>			
Low Survivability			Moderate Survivability
Geotextile Property	Test Method	Woven/Nonwoven	Woven/Nonwoven
Grab Tensile Strength, min. in machine and x-machine direction	ASTM D4632	180 lbs/115 lbs min.	250 lbs/160 lbs min.
Grab Failure Strain, in machine and x-machine direction	ASTM D4632	<50%/>50%	<50%/>50%
Seam Breaking Strength (if seams are present)	ASTM D4632 and ASTM D4884 (adapted for grab test)	160 lbs/100 lbs min.	220 lbs/140 lbs min.
Puncture Resistance	ASTM D4833	67 lbs/40 lbs min.	80 lbs/50 lbs min.
Tear Strength, min. in machine and x-machine direction	ASTM D4533	67 lbs/40 lbs min.	80 lbs/50 lbs min.
Ultraviolet (UV) Radiation stability	ASTM D4355	50% strength retained min., after 500 hrs. in weatherometer	50% strength retained min., after 500 hrs. in weatherometer

a. All geotextile properties are minimum average roll values (i.e., the test result for any sampled roll in a lot shall meet or exceed the values shown in the table).

**Table 5 - 18: Geotextile for Underground Drainage Filtration Properties**

Geotextile Property Requirements <sup>a</sup>				
Geotextile Property	Test Method	Class A	Class B	Class C
AOS <sup>b</sup>	ASTM D4751	.43 mm max. (#40 sieve)	.25 mm max. (#60 sieve)	.18 mm max. (#80 sieve)
Water Permittivity	ASTM D4491	.5 sec -1 min.	.4 sec -1 min.	.3 sec -1 min.

a. All geotextile properties are minimum average roll values (i.e. the test result for any sampled roll in a lot shall meet or exceed the values shown in the table).

b. Apparent Opening Size (measure of diameter of the pores in the geotextile).

**Table 5 - 19: Geotextile Strength Properties for Impermeable Liner Protection**

Geotextile Property	Test Method	Geotextile Property Requirements <sup>a</sup>
Grab Tensile Strength, min. in machine and x-machine direction	ASTM D4632	250 lbs min.
Grab Failure Strain, in machine and x-machine direction	ASTM D4632	>50%
Seam Breaking Strength (if seams are present)	ASTM D4632 and ASTM D4884 (adapted for grab test)	220 lbs min.
Puncture Resistance	ASTM D4833	125 lbs min.
Tear Strength, min. in machine and x-machine direction	ASTM D4533	90 lbs min.
Ultraviolet (UV) Radiation	ASTM D4355	50% strength stability retained min., after 500 hrs. in weatherometer

a. All geotextile properties are minimum average roll values (i.e., the test result for any sampled roll in a lot shall meet or exceed the values shown in the table).

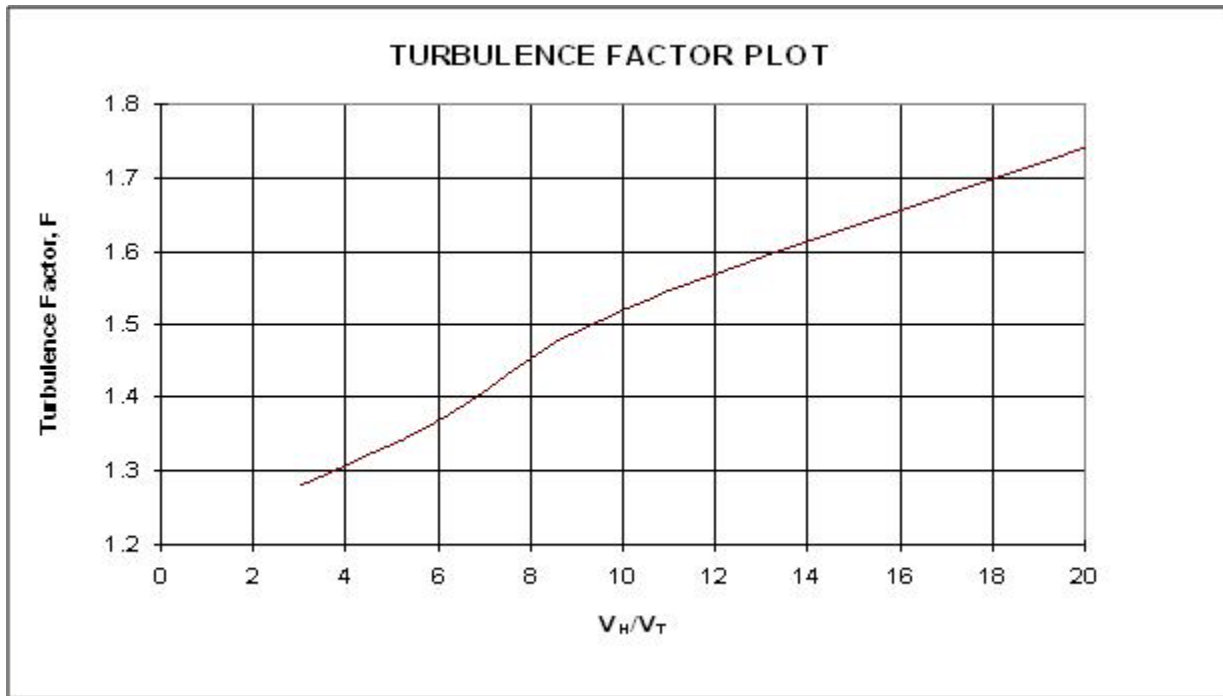
### C.1 Applications

1. For sand filter drain strip between the sand and the drain rock or gravel layers specify Geotextile Properties for Underground Drainage, moderate survivability, Class A, from Table 5 - 17 and Table 5 - 18 in the Geotextile Specifications.
2. For sand filter matting located immediately above the impermeable liner and below the drains, the function of the geotextile is to protect the impermeable liner by acting as a cushion. The specification provided in Table 5 - 19 should be used to specify survivability properties for the liner protection application. Table 5 - 18, Class C should be used for filtration properties. Only nonwoven geotextiles are appropriate for the liner protection application.
3. For an infiltration drain specify Geotextile for Underground Drainage, low survivability, Class C, from Table 5 - 17 and Table 5 - 18 in the Geotextile Specifications.
4. For a sand bed cover a geotextile fabric is placed exposed on top of the sand layer to trap debris brought in by the stormwater and to protect the sand, facilitating easy cleaning of the surface of the sand layer. However, a geotextile is not the best product for this application. A polyethylene or polypropylene geonet would be better. The geonet material should have high UV resistance (90% or more strength retained after 500 hours in the weatherometer, ASTM D4355), and high permittivity (ASTM D4491, 0.8 sec. -1 or more) and percent open area (CWO-22125, 10% or more). Tensile strength should be on the order of 200 lbs grab (ASTM D4632) or more.

Courtesy of Tony Allen, Geotechnical Engineer-WSDOT

Reference for Tables 1 and 2: Section 9-33.2 "Geotextile Properties," 1998 Standard Specifications for Road, Bridge, and Municipal Construction

## Appendix D Turbulence and Short-Circuiting Factor



V <sub>H</sub> /V <sub>T</sub>	Turbulence Factor (F <sub>T</sub> )	F = 1.2 (F <sub>T</sub> )
20	1.45	1.74
15	1.37	1.64
10	1.27	1.52
6	1.14	1.37
3	1.07	1.28

Figure 5 - 36. Recommended Values of F for Various Values of v<sub>H</sub>/V<sub>t</sub>



# Volume 6 - Low Impact Development

## Table of Contents

Purpose of this Volume . . . . .	6-1
Content and Organization of this Volume . . . . .	6-1
<b>Chapter 1 General Requirements . . . . .</b>	<b>6-2</b>
1.1 Objectives . . . . .	6-2
1.2 Site Assessment . . . . .	6-2
1.3 Site Planning and Layout . . . . .	6-2
1.4 Retain Native Vegetation . . . . .	6-2
1.5 Minimize Clearing and Grading Impacts . . . . .	6-3
<b>Chapter 2 Low Impact Development Best Management Practices . . . . .</b>	<b>6-4</b>
2.1 Application . . . . .	6-4
2.2 Best Management Practices . . . . .	6-4
2.2.1 Site Design BMPs . . . . .	6-4
2.2.2 Structural Low Impact Development BMPs . . . . .	6-4
2.2.3 Site Design BMPs . . . . .	6-5
2.2.3.1 BMP L620 Preserving Natural Vegetation . . . . .	6-5
2.2.3.2 BMP L621 Better Site Design . . . . .	6-6
2.2.4 Low Impact Development BMPS . . . . .	6-7
2.2.4.1 BMP L630 Rain Gardens . . . . .	6-7
2.2.4.2 BMP L631 Vegetated Rooftops (Green Roofs) . . . . .	6-15
2.2.4.3 BMP L632 Rainfall Re-use Systems . . . . .	6-17
2.2.4.4 BMP L633 Permeable Paving Surfaces . . . . .	6-18
2.2.4.5 BMP L634 Minimal Excavation Foundations . . . . .	6-22
2.2.4.6 BMP L635 Reverse Slope Sidewalks . . . . .	6-23





# Low Impact Development

## **Purpose of this Volume**

This volume focuses on the concept of low impact development. Low impact development is a stormwater management strategy that emphasizes conservation and use of existing natural site features, including planted and retained trees, integrated with engineered, small-scale stormwater controls to more closely mimic predevelopment hydrologic conditions.

This section should be used in conjunction with “Low Impact Development: Technical Guidance Manual for Puget Sound”, which can be found on the Puget Sound Partnership website: [www.psp.wa.gov/documents.html](http://www.psp.wa.gov/documents.html)

Volume 3 contains BMPs that are also considered low impact development techniques.

## **Content and Organization of this Volume**

Volume 6 contains two chapters:

- Chapter 1 provides an overview of the general requirements for low impact development.
- Chapter 2 provides detailed information pertaining to Best Management Practices (BMPS) for low impact development.

# Chapter 1 General Requirements

## 1.1 Objectives

The goal of low impact development is to manage stormwater generated from new development and redevelopment on-site so there will be no negative impacts to adjacent or downstream properties and no degradation to ground or surface waters.

The following are objectives for low impact design:

- Minimize the impacts of increased stormwater runoff from new development and redevelopment by maintaining peak flow frequencies and durations of the site's undisturbed hydrologic condition.
- Retain and/or restore native soils and vegetation to the maximum extent practicable.
- Retain and incorporate natural site features that promote infiltration of stormwater on the developed site.
- Manage stormwater as close to the source as possible.
- Promote groundwater recharge.
- Provide visible sustainable facilities.

## 1.2 Site Assessment

Before implementing LID practices it is necessary to perform a site assessment which includes an assessment of both on-site and off-site conditions and features. See Chapter 2 of the "Low Impact Development: Technical Guidance Manual for Puget Sound" for more information on steps for performing a site assessment.

## 1.3 Site Planning and Layout

Sites should be configured to reduce impervious surfaces and utilize natural drainage features. Chapter 3 of the "Low Impact Development: Technical Guidance Manual for Puget Sound" contains information and techniques for site planning. City of Tacoma codes must be adhered to.

## 1.4 Retain Native Vegetation

Retain native vegetation to the maximum extent practicable in order to:

- Reduce total impervious surface coverage
- Provide infiltration areas for overland flows generated in adjacent developed portions of the project
- Maintain the natural hydrology of the site.

See BMP L620 in Chapter 2 of this volume, Tree Retention and Planning BMPs in Volume 3, Chapter 5, and Chapter 4 of "Low Impact Development: Technical Guidance Manual for Puget Sound" for techniques on retaining native vegetation and trees.

## **1.5 Minimize Clearing and Grading Impacts**

- Conduct a soils analysis prior to clearing and grading to identify predevelopment soil types and infiltration capabilities.
- Keep grading to a minimum by incorporating natural topography.
- Always use appropriate erosion and sediment control techniques when clearing and grading. See Volume 2 of this manual for erosion and sediment control measures.
- Utilize techniques from Chapter 5 of “Low Impact Development: Technical Guidance Manual for Puget Sound”.

## **Chapter 2 Low Impact Development Best Management Practices**

This Chapter presents the methods for analysis and design of on-site stormwater management Best Management Practices (BMPs). Design procedures and requirements for stormwater management BMPs meeting Minimum Requirement #7, Flow Control, are contained in Volume 3.

### **2.1 Application**

Low impact development techniques should be used at every site when feasible. Using low impact development techniques may eliminate the need to install more costly flow control or water quality devices. When utilized in accordance with this manual, most low impact development techniques provide flow credits. Flow credits only apply to flow control thresholds. Flow credits do not apply to water quality thresholds.

### **2.2 Best Management Practices**

The following Low Impact Development BMPs are discussed in this Chapter:

#### **2.2.1 Site Design BMPs**

- BMP L620 Preserving Natural Vegetation
- BMP L621 Better Site Design

#### **2.2.2 Structural Low Impact Development BMPs**

- BMP L630 Bioretention Areas (Rain gardens)
- BMP L631 Vegetated Rooftops
- BMP L632 Rainfall Re-use
- BMP L633 Alternate Paving Systems
- BMP L634 Minimal Excavation Foundations
- BMP L635 Reverse Slope Sidewalks

Infiltration, dispersion, soil quality and tree retention BMPs can be found in Volume 3, Volume 5 and Volume 6.

## **2.2.3 Site Design BMPs**

### **2.2.3.1 BMP L620 Preserving Natural Vegetation**

#### ***Purpose***

Preserving natural vegetation on-site to the maximum extent practicable will minimize the impacts of development on stormwater runoff.

#### ***Applications and Limitations***

On lots that are one acre or greater, preservation of 65 percent or more of the site in natural vegetation will allow the use of full dispersion techniques presented in BMP L614. Sites that can fully disperse are not required to provide runoff treatment or flow control facilities.

#### ***Design Criteria***

- Situate the preserved area to maximize the preservation of wetlands, and to buffer stream corridors.
- Place the preserved area in a separate tract or protect through recorded easements for individual lots.
- If feasible, locate the preserved area downslope from the building sites, since flow control and water quality are enhanced by flow dispersion through duff, undisturbed soils, and native vegetation.
- Show the preserved area on all property maps and clearly mark the area during clearing and construction on the site.

#### ***Maintenance***

- Do not remove vegetation and trees from undisturbed areas, except for approved timber harvest activities and the removal of dangerous and diseased trees.

### 2.2.3.2 BMP L621 Better Site Design

#### *Purpose*

Fundamental hydrological concepts and stormwater management concepts can be applied at the site design phase that are:

- More integrated with natural topography,
- Reinforce the hydrologic cycle,
- More aesthetically pleasing, and
- Often less expensive to build.

#### *Design Criteria*

**Define Development Envelope and Protected Areas** – The first step in site planning is to define the development envelope. This is done by identifying protected areas, setbacks, easements and other site features, and by consulting applicable local standards and requirements. Site features to be protected may include important existing trees, steep slopes, erosive soils, riparian areas, or wetlands.

By keeping the development envelope compact, environmental impacts can be minimized, construction costs can be reduced, and many of the site's most attractive landscape features can be retained. In some cases, economics or other factors may not allow avoidance of all sensitive areas. In these cases, care can be taken to mitigate the impacts of development through site work and other landscape treatments.

#### *Minimize Directly Connected Impervious Areas*

Impervious areas directly connected to the storm drain system are the greatest contributors to urban nonpoint source pollution. Minimize these directly connected impervious areas. This can be done by limiting overall impervious land coverage or by infiltrating and/or dispersing runoff from these impervious areas.

- **Maximize Permeability** - Within the development envelope, many opportunities are available to maximize the permeability of new construction. These include minimizing impervious areas, paving with permeable materials, clustering buildings, and reducing the land coverage of buildings by smaller footprints. All of these strategies make more land available for infiltration and dispersion through natural vegetation.
- **Build Narrower Streets** - More than any other single element, street design has a powerful impact on stormwater quantity and quality. In residential development, streets and other transportation-related structures typically can comprise between 60 and 70 percent of the total impervious area, and, unlike rooftops, streets are almost always directly connected to the stormwater conveyance system.
- **Maximize Choices for Mobility** - Given the costs of automobile use, both in land area consumed and pollutants generated, maximizing choices for mobility is a basic principle for environmentally responsible site design. By designing residential developments to promote alternatives to automobile use, a primary source of stormwater pollution can be mitigated.
- **Use Drainage as a Design Element** - Unlike conveyance storm drain systems that hide water beneath the surface and work independently of surface topography, a drainage system for stormwater infiltration or dispersion can work with natural land forms and land uses to become a major design element of a site plan.



## 2.2.4 Low Impact Development BMPs

Low impact development BMPs are structural BMPs that can be used to manage stormwater on-site. Using LID techniques can reduce surface runoff. For each category, basic design criteria is included. The design criteria components in this manual must be used in order to obtain runoff credits. Runoff credits are considered when determining project thresholds.

The guidance provided in “Low Impact Development: Technical Guidance Manual for Puget Sound”, found on the Puget Sound Partnership website: [www.psp.wa.gov](http://www.psp.wa.gov), should also be used in design.

### 2.2.4.1 BMP L630 Rain Gardens

#### *Purpose and Definition*

Bioretention areas are shallow stormwater retention facilities designed to mimic forested systems by controlling stormwater through detention, infiltration, and evapotranspiration. Bioretention areas provide water quality treatment through sedimentation, filtration, adsorption, and phytoremediation. Bioretention facilities are integrated into the landscape to better mimic natural hydrologic conditions. Bioretention facilities may be used as a water quality facility or a water quality and flow control (retention) facility.

#### *Applicability and Limitations*

- Three feet of separation is required between the lowest elevation of the bioretention soil or any underlying gravel infiltration layer and the seasonal high groundwater elevation or other impermeable layer if the area tributary to the facility requires compliance with Minimum Requirement #6 or Minimum Requirement #7.
- For bioretention facilities with a contributing area less than the above thresholds, a minimum of 18 inches of separation is required between the lowest elevation of the bioretention soil or any underlying gravel infiltration layer and the seasonal high groundwater or other impermeable layer.
- For facilities with underdrains, the seasonal high groundwater elevation or other impermeable layer shall be below the lowest elevation of the bioretention area or underdrain collection system. Separation shall be such that groundwater will not migrate into the underdrain system.
- Bioretention facilities may meet the requirements for basic and enhanced treatment when soil is designed in accordance with the requirements below and at least 91% of the influent runoff volume modeled using WWHM or another approved continuous simulation model is infiltrated. Drawdown requirements must also be met as applicable, for water quality facilities see Volume 5, Section 7.3.4.

#### *Setback and Site Constraints*

Setback requirements are generally required by the City, uniform building code requirements, the Tacoma Pierce County Health Department, or other state regulations. Where a conflict between setbacks occurs, the City shall require compliance with the most stringent of the setback requirements from the various codes/regulations. The following are the minimum setbacks required per this manual:

- At least 100 feet from drinking water wells, and springs used for public water supplies. Infiltration facilities upgradient of drinking water wells and within 1, 5, and 10-year time of

travel zones must comply with Health Department requirements (Washington Wellhead Protection Program, DOH, Publication #331-018).

- The City of Tacoma Public Works Department and Tacoma-Pierce County Health Department developed a guidance document that provides the circumstances and requirements for approval of infiltration facilities for managing pollution-generating stormwater runoff in the South Tacoma Groundwater Protection District. The document, "Implementation of Stormwater Infiltration for Pollution-Generating Surfaces in the South Tacoma Groundwater Protection District" is available at [www.cityoftacoma.org/stormwater](http://www.cityoftacoma.org/stormwater).
- At least 10 feet from any building structure and at least 5 feet from any other structure or property line unless approved in writing by Environmental Services.
- Rain gardens designed for infiltration shall not be built on slopes steeper than 20 percent. A geotechnical analysis and report shall be required on slopes over 15% or if located within 200 feet of the top of steep slopes (40% or greater) or a landslide hazard area. More stringent setbacks may be required based upon the Tacoma Municipal Code. Rain gardens that do not infiltrate may be allowed within the setback areas with a geotechnical analysis that indicates that the facility will have no adverse impact to the slope.
- At least 10 feet from septic tanks and septic drainfields. Additional setbacks from DOH Publication 333-117 On-Site Sewage Systems, Chapter 246-272A WAC may apply. Shall not be located upstream of residential septic systems unless topography or a hydrology analysis clearly indicates that subsurface flows will not impact the drainfield.
- Environmental Services may require additional setbacks or analysis for infiltration facilities proposed to be sited within the influence of known contaminated sites or abandoned landfills.

### ***Design Criteria***

#### **Flow Entrance/Presetting**

- Flow velocity entering the facility shall be less than 1 ft/sec for the 100-year, 24-hour storm event. If 1 ft/sec can not be obtained, a designed flow dispersion or energy dissipation device may be required depending on the type of inlet and size of facility.
- Use one of the following types of flow entrances (other alternatives may be considered on a case-by-case basis):
  - Dispersed, low velocity flow across a grade or landscape area. A minimum 2-inch grade change between the edge of the contributing area and the flow entrance is required.
  - Dispersed flow across pavement or gravel and past wheel stops for parking areas. A minimum 2-inch grade change between the edge of the contributing area and the flow entrance is required. A transition zone of 1 foot shall be provided at a 2% slope. This shall include 6-inches of subgrade material (crushed rock), modular pavement, drain rock or other material acceptable to the City.
  - Dispersed curb cuts for driveway or parking lot areas. A minimum 2-inch grade change between the edge of a contributing area and the flow entrance is required. Place rock or other erosion protection material in the channel entrance to dissipate energy. A minimum 1-foot gravel pad in the bottom of the facility shall be provided.
  - Pipe flow entrance. The inlet pipe invert elevation shall be higher than the overflow elevation. Place rock or other erosion protection material at the facility entrance to dissipate energy and/or provide flow dispersion.

- Do not place plants directly in the entrance flow path as they can restrict or concentrate flows.
- Install flow diversion and erosion control measures to protect the bioretention area from sedimentation until the upstream area is stabilized.
- If the catchment area exceeds 2,000 square feet, a presettling facility may be required.

### **Cell Ponding Area**

- The surface pool drawdown time shall be less than 24 hours.
- The bottom of the ponding area shall be level.
- Side Slopes shall be no steeper than 3H:1V. Fencing may be required where determined applicable by Environmental Services.
- Bioretention sizing is based on bottom area. Once bottom area is determined, top area shall be based upon side slopes and total depth of facility.
- The minimum freeboard measured from the overflow elevation to the top of the facility shall be 2" for drainage areas less than 1,000 square feet and 6" for drainage areas 1,000 square feet or greater.
- If berming is used to achieve the minimum top elevation, maximum slope on berm shall be 3H:1V, and minimum top width of design berm shall be 1 foot. Soil for berming shall be imported bioretention soil or amended native soil compacted to a minimum of 90% dry density.

### **Overflow**

- Unless designed for full infiltration of the entire runoff volume, bioretention systems must include an overflow.
- A drain pipe installed at the designed maximum ponding elevation and connected to a downstream BMP or an approved discharge point can be used as the overflow.
- Overflows shall be designed to convey the 100-year recurrence interval flow or maximum flow that can reach the facility if a flow splitter is utilized.
- Overflow channels shall be rock-lined.
- An emergency overflow pathway shall be provided for all facilities to ensure that all potential overflows are directed into the downstream conveyance system or the public right of way.
- See Volume 3, Chapter 11 for additional guidance on rock protection.

### **Bioretention Soil Mix**

For bioretention systems to meet the requirements for basic and enhanced treatment, the following requirements must be met:

The bioretention soil mix (BSM) shall:

- Have a 60% aggregate component as represented in Table 6 - 1 below and a 40% compost component as represented in Table 6 - 2 below.

**Table 6 - 1: Bioretention Soil Mix Aggregate Component Gradation**

Aggregate Component (60% by Volume)	
Sieve Size	Percent Passing
3/8"	100
#4	95-100
#10	75-90
#40	25-40
#100	4-10
#200	2-5

- The compost component shall be stable, mature, and derived from organic waste materials including yard debris, wood wastes or other organic matter. Compost must meet the Washington State compost regulations in WAC 173-350, which is available at <http://www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/swfa/compost> and the following:
  - Have a compost component meeting the size requirements in Table 6 - 2.

**Table 6 - 2: Bioretention Soil Mix Compost Component Gradation**

Compost Component	
Sieve Size	Percent Passing
1"	99-100
5/8"	90-100
1/4"	40-90

- Have a pH between 5.5 and 8.0.
- Have a manufactured inert material (plastic, concrete, ceramics, metal, etc.) less than 1.0% by weight
- Have a organic matter content between 45 and 65 percent dry weight bases as determined by TMECC 05.07A, "Loss-On-Ignition Organic Matter Method".
- Have a soluble salt content less than 6.0 mmhos/cm tested in accordance with TMECC 04.10-A, "1.5 Slurry Method, Mass Basis".
- Have a maturity greater than 80% in accordance with TMECC 05.05-A, "Germination and Vigor".
- Have a stability at 7 or below in accordance with TMECC 05-08.B, "Carbon Dioxide Evolution Rate".
- Contain a minimum of 65% and up to 100% by volume recycled plant waste as defined in WAC 173-350-100 as "Type 1 Feedstocks." A maximum of 35% by volume of other approved organic waste as defined in WAC 173-350-100 as "Type III", including post-consumer food waste but not including biosolids, may be substituted for recycled plant waste.
- Have a carbon to nitrogen ratio of less than 25:1 as determined using TMECC 04.01 "Total Carbon" and TMECC 04.02D "Total Kjeldhal Nitrogen". A ratio up to 35:1 can be used if all plants are native species.

The Washington State Department of Ecology keeps a list of approved composting facilities in Washington at: <http://www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/swfa/compost/>

- Minimum depth of bioretention soil mix must be 18 inches.
- Contact Environmental Services for assistance in verifying bioretention soil mix suitability.

### **Underdrain**

Only install underdrains in bioretention areas if:

- Infiltration is not permitted and/or a liner is used, or
- Where infiltration rates are not adequate to meet the maximum pool drawdown time, or
- Where the facility is not utilized for infiltration.

Underdrain pipe diameter will depend on hydraulic capacity required, 6-inch minimum.

Slotting/perforations should not be less than 0.5% of drain surface unless specified otherwise by engineer.

Slots/perforations should not be smaller than the smallest aggregate of the gravel filter. AASHTO M278 pipe may be utilized.

Install hard plastic, non-corrugated, non-perforated cleanouts every 100 feet and at the end of each pipe for maintenance access.

Underdrains shall be designed with a 1 foot width of gravel filter media on either side of the underdrain pipe. A minimum of 6 inches of underdrain media shall be below the pipe and 12 inches of media shall be placed above the pipe. Use care when placing filter media atop underdrain to avoid crushing the pipe section.

For slotted pipe, filter media shall be ¾" clean aggregate (Type 26 is acceptable). For perforated pipe, filter media shall be ¾" to 1 ½" clean washed rock (Type 57 is acceptable). All filter media shall be double washed to ensure removal of fines.

Underdrains connected directly to a storm drainage structure must be non-perforated for at least 2 feet from the structure interface.

**NOTE:** Facilities with underdrains will not qualify for flow credits.

### **Soils Report**

For facilities that infiltrate and do not have an underdrain, a soils report, prepared by a soils professional, shall be required in accordance with Volume 3, Section 2.2.8 for flow control or Volume 5, Section 5.4 for water quality.

### **Planting**

- Plants must be tolerant of summer drought, ponding fluctuations, and saturated soil conditions.
- Consider rooting depth when choosing plants. Roots must not damage underground infrastructure.
- Locate slotted and perforated pipe at least 5 feet from tree roots and side sewer pipes.
- Consider adjacent plant communities and avoid potential invasive species.
- Consider aesthetics, rain gardens should blend into surrounding landscapes.

- The “Low Impact Development: Technical Guidance Manual for Puget Sound” is a good tool for selecting proper bioretention plants.
- Submit a planting plan showing the type, location and size of each plant.
- Irrigation may be required until plants are fully established and in the summer months.

**Mulch Layer**

Bioretention facilities should be designed with a mulch layer. Properly selected mulch material reduces weed establishment, regulates soil temperatures and moisture, and adds organic matter to soil.

- Mulch should be free of weed seeds, soil, roots, and other material that is not trunk or branch wood and bark. Mulch shall not include grass clippings, mineral aggregate or pure bark.
- Mulch shall be:
  - Compost in the bottom of the facilities, depth 3 inches
  - Wood chip mulch composed of shredded or chipped hardwood or softwood on side slopes, depth 4 inches.
- A dense groundcover can be used as an alternative to mulch although mulch shall be required until the dense groundcover is established.

**Modeling and Sizing**

Rain gardens may be utilized as a flow control facility, as a water quality facility, or as a combined water quality and flow control facility.

Table 6 - 3 provides sizing for on-site stormwater management. Table 6 - 3 provides the square footage of the bottom of the rain garden per 1000 square feet of impervious area.

This method of sizing can be used for rain gardens receiving runoff from pollution generating surfaces if the facility does not have to be sized to meet Minimum Requirement #6, Water Quality.

**Table 6 - 3: Sizing Table for Rain Gardens**

Native Soil Type	Rain Garden Bottom Area (square feet)
Coarse sands and cobbles	50
Medium sands	50
Fine sands, loamy sands	50
Sandy loam	50
Loam	150

**For facilities sized to meet Minimum Requirement #6, Water Quality:**

Use WWHM and model the facility as an infiltration facility with appropriate stage-storage and overflow/outflow rates. Alternatively, use the bioretention swale element available in some versions of WWHM. The tributary area, cell bottom area, and ponding depth should be iteratively sized until 91% of the runoff file volume is infiltrated. The remaining 9% of the runoff volume may be discharged through the overflow untreated or the facility may be sized to treat 100% of the

runoff volume. The surface pool drawdown time shall be 24 hours or less. Size the facility using the lowest of the following:

- The infiltration rate of the underlying soil with no correction factor applied (estimated using either method 1 or 3 as described in Volume 5, Chapter 7), or
- The infiltration rate of the bioretention soil mix as given in Table 6 - 4.

**For facilities sized to meet Minimum Requirement #7, Flow Control:**

Use WWHM and model the facility as an infiltration facility or bioretention swale with appropriate stage-storage and overflow/outflow rates. The tributary area, cell bottom area, and ponding depth should be iteratively sized until the duration curves and/or peak volumes meet the flow control requirements. The surface pool drawdown time shall be 24 hours or less. Size the facility using the lowest of the following:

- The infiltration rate of the underlying soil with no correction factor applied (estimated using either method 1 or 3 as described in Volume 3, Section 6.5), or
- The infiltration rate of the bioretention soil mix as given in Table 6 - 4.

**Table 6 - 4: Modeling Assumptions for Rain Gardens**

Variable	Assumptions
Computational Time Step	15 minutes
Inflows to Facility	Surface flow and interflow from drainage area routed to facility
Precipitation and Evaporation applied to Facility	Yes
Bioretention Soil Infiltration Rates	For sites that have a contributing area of less than 5,000 square feet of pollution-generating surfaces, less than 10,000 square feet of impervious area, and less than 3/4 acre of landscaped area, the bioretention soil infiltration rate including the factor of safety shall be 3 inches per hour. For sites above these thresholds, the bioretention soil infiltration rate including the factor of safety shall be 1.5 inches per hour.
Bioretention Soil Porosity	40%
Bioretention Soil Depths	Minimum of 18 inches
Native Soil Infiltration Rate	Measured infiltration rate with applicable safety factors. See Volume 3 for more information on infiltration rate determination.
Infiltration Across Wetted Surface Area	Only if sides slopes are 3:1 or flatter
Overflow	Overflow elevation set at maximum ponding elevation (excluding freeboard). May be modeled as weir flow over riser edge or riser notch.

Rain garden infiltration rates shall be determined as outlined in this manual based on facility function.

**General Construction Criteria**

- Do not install or excavate during soil saturation periods.
- Excavation and soil placement should be done from a backhoe operating adjacent to the facility – no heavy equipment should be operated in the facility if possible.

- If equipment must be operated within the facility, use lightweight, low ground pressure equipment and scarify the base to reduce compaction upon completion.
- Do not use fully excavated bioretention facilities for erosion and sedimentation control during construction;
  - Consider partial excavation of bioretention cells prior to construction (to within 12 inches above finished bottom grade) for use as temporary stormwater detention.
- Clogged soil and silt shall be removed during excavation to finished bottom grade prior to installing bioretention cell profile.
- Scarify sides and bottom to roughen where heavy equipment may have compacted soil.
- Ensure the bioretention facility is protected from erosion and sedimentation until all contributory areas are fully stabilized.
- If sedimentation occurs within the bioretention facility, excavate the area a minimum of 12 inches below final grade to remove sediment.

**Maintenance Criteria**

- Make provision for regular and perpetual maintenance of the bioretention facility.
- Include access for operation and maintenance in system design.
- Refer to the Bioretention Maintenance Standards included in Volume 1 Appendix D.



### **2.2.4.2 BMP L631 Vegetated Rooftops (Green Roofs)**

#### ***Purpose and Definition***

A vegetated rooftop, also known as a green roof, is a rooftop that is partially or completely covered with vegetation and a growing medium planted over a waterproofing membrane. The green roof will also contain a root repelling membrane and drainage system.

#### ***Applications and Limitations***

Vegetated rooftops offer a practical method of managing runoff in densely developed urban neighborhoods and can be engineered to achieve specific stormwater runoff control objectives.

#### ***Design Guidelines***

- Soil or growth media must have a high field capacity.
- Soil or growth media must have a saturated hydraulic conductivity of  $\geq 1$  inch/hour.
- Drainage layer must allow free drainage under the soil/growth media.
- Vegetative cover must be both drought and wet tolerant.
- There must be a waterproof membrane between the drain layer and the structural roof support.
- The maximum slope shall be 20%.
- The roof support structure shall be analyzed by a structural engineer to address the weight of the green roof, including any potential ponded water.
- An overflow system shall be included in design to safely convey the 100-year peak flow from the roof.
- The system shall include a way to drain the roof for maintenance purposes.

#### ***Flow Credits for Vegetated Roofs***

Where vegetated roofs are used, the impervious areas may be modeled based on the thickness of the soil media:

- For roofs with 3-8" of soil/growing media, model the roof as 50% till landscaped and 50% impervious.
- For roofs with  $\geq 8$ " of soil/growing media, model the roof as 50% till pasture and 50% impervious.

#### ***Maintenance Criteria***

Per Minimum Requirement #10, an operation and maintenance manual shall be prepared for all stormwater management facilities. See Volume 1, Appendix D, Maintenance Checklist #26 for specific maintenance requirements for vegetated roofs. Maintenance shall be a basic consideration in design and cost-determination of the stormwater management facility.

Any standing water removed during the maintenance operation must be disposed of in a City-approved manner. See the dewatering requirements in Volume 4 of this manual. Pretreatment may be necessary. Solids must be disposed of in accordance with state and local waste regulations.

***Resource Material***

Miller, C. and Grantley Pyke. Methodology for the Design of Vegetated Roof Covers, Proceedings of the 1999 International Water Resources Engineering Conference, Seattle, Washington.

### **2.2.4.3 BMP L632 Rainfall Re-use Systems**

#### ***Purpose and Definition***

Rainfall re-use systems are designed to collect stormwater runoff from non-pollution generating surfaces and make use of the collected water. Rainfall re-use systems are also known as rainwater harvesting systems and rainfall catchment systems.

#### ***Applications and Limitations***

Approval of the water re-use system requires approval of the appropriate state and local agencies as required for any water right.

#### ***Design Guidelines***

- If a rainwater re-use system holds more than 6 inches depth of water, it should not be accessible except for maintenance purposes.
- Design and maintain the system to minimize clogging by leaves and other debris.

#### ***Flow Credits for Rainfall Re-use Systems***

The drainage area to the rainfall re-use system does not need to be entered into the runoff model when:

- 100% of the annual average runoff volume (using WWHM) is re-used, or
- Interior uses have a monthly water balance that demonstrates adequate capacity for each month and re-use of all stored water annually.

#### ***Maintenance Criteria***

Per Minimum Requirement #10, an operation and maintenance manual shall be prepared for all stormwater management facilities. See Volume 1, Appendix D, Maintenance Checklist #24 for specific maintenance requirements for cisterns. Maintenance shall be a basic consideration in design and cost-determination of the stormwater management facility.

Any standing water removed during the maintenance operation must be disposed of in a City-approved manner. See the dewatering requirements in Volume 4 of this manual. Pretreatment may be necessary. Solids must be disposed of in accordance with state and local waste regulations.

### **2.2.4.4 BMP L633 Permeable Paving Surfaces**

#### ***Purpose and Definition***

Alternate paving surfaces include porous asphalt pavement, porous concrete, grid and lattice rigid plastic or paving blocks where the holes are filled with soil, sand, or gravel; and cast-in-place paver systems. Porous surfaces are designed to accommodate pedestrian, bicycle, and auto traffic while allowing infiltration and storage of stormwater.

Alternate paving systems may be designed with an underdrain to collect stormwater or without an underdrain as an infiltration facility.

#### ***Applications and Limitations***

- Alternate paving systems can generally be used where traditional paving surfaces are used.
- Infiltration through pervious pavement surfaces shall not be allowed with land uses that generate heavy pollutant loads. The potential sediment loading for each application should be considered when determining if the application of alternate surfaces is appropriate.
- No point discharges may be directed to porous surfaces.
- Sheet flow runoff may be directed onto a porous surface provided that the length of sheet flow across the paved section is no more than twice the length of sheet flow across the porous pavement section, and provided it is not a source of increased contamination.
- Three feet of separation is required between the lowest elevation of the pavement base material and the seasonal high groundwater elevation or other impermeable layer if the area tributary to the facility requires compliance with Minimum Requirement #6 or Minimum Requirement #7.
- For facilities with contributing areas less than the above thresholds, a minimum of 18 inches of separation is required between the lowest elevation of the base layer and the seasonal high groundwater or other impervious layer.
- For facilities with underdrains, the seasonal high groundwater elevation or other impermeable layer shall be below the lowest elevation of the base material or underdrain collection system. Separation shall be such that groundwater will not migrate into the underdrain system.

#### ***Design Criteria***

- Unless approved in writing by Environmental Services, maximum slopes for alternative paving surfaces are:
  - 5% for porous asphalt
  - 6% for porous concrete
  - 10% for interlocking pavers
  - 5-6% grid and lattice systems
- For areas with slopes over 2%, check dams may be required.
- Follow manufacturer's recommendations for design, installation, and maintenance.
- Subgrade infiltration rates less than 2.4 inches/hour and a cation exchange capacity of 5 milliequivalents CEC/100 grams dry soil (or greater) will provide water quality treatment.

- Typical cross-sections of porous paving systems consist of:
  - A top layer with either porous asphalt, porous concrete, concrete block pavers, or a plastic grid paver filled with sand topsoil or gravel.
  - An aggregate subbase with larger rock at the bottom and smaller rock directly under the top surface.
  - For open-celled paving grids and blocks, a leveling course consisting of finer aggregate.
  - A geotextile fabric
- Both gravel and soil with vegetation can be used to fill the opening in paver and rigid grid systems. Manufacturer recommendations should be followed to apply the appropriate material.
- Porous systems that use pavers shall be confined with a rigid edge system to prevent gradual movement of the paving stones.
- When pervious pavement is adjacent to standard pavement, a geomembrane liner is recommended, and may be required to protect the standard pavement subbase.
- Subgrade layer:
  - Compact the subgrade to the minimum necessary for structural stability. Do not allow heavy compaction. The subgrade should not be subject to truck traffic.
  - Use on soil types A through C.
  - Subgrade may need to be scarified prior to installation.
- Geotextile
  - Use geotextile between subgrade and base material to keep soil out of base layer.
  - The geotextile must pass water at a greater rate than the subgrade soils.
- Separation or Bottom Filter Layer (optional but recommended)
  - A layer of sand or crushed stone graded flat is recommended to promote infiltration across the surface, stabilize the base layer, protect the underlying soil from compaction, and serve as a transition between the base course and the underlying geotextile.
- Base Material

Material must be free draining. See Chapter 6 of the “Low Impact Development: Technical Guidance Manual for Puget Sound” for more detailed information.
- Wearing Layer
  - A minimum infiltration rate of 10 inches/hour is required though higher infiltration rates are desirable.
  - For *porous asphalt*, products must have adequate void space, commonly 12-20%.
  - For *porous concrete*, products must have adequate void space, commonly 15-21%.
  - For *grid/lattice systems* filled with gravel, sand, or a soil of finer particles with or without grass, fill must be at least 2”. Fill should be underlain with 6” or more of sand or gravel to provide an adequate base. Locate fill at or slightly below the top elevation

- the top elevation of the grid/lattice structure. Modular grid openings must be at least 40% of the total surface area.
- For *paving blocks*, fill spaces between blocks with 6" of free draining sand or aggregate material. Provide a minimum of 12% free draining surface area.
  - Drainage Conveyance
    - Design roads with adequate drainage conveyance facilities if the road surface was impermeable.
    - Design drainage flow paths to safely move water away from the road prism and into the roadside drainage facility for roads with base courses that extend below the surrounding grade.
  - Acceptance Test
    - Test all permeable surfaces by throwing a bucket of water on the surface. If anything runs off the surface or puddles, additional testing is necessary prior to accepting the construction.
    - As directed by Environmental Services, test with a 6" ring infiltrometer or sprinkle infiltrometer. Wet the road surface continuously for 10 minutes. Test to determine compliance with 10 inches/hour minimum infiltration rate.
    - For facilities designed to infiltrate, the bucket test shall be completed annually.
    - Test documentation shall be retained with maintenance records.

### ***Maintenance***

- Follow manufacturer's suggestions for maintenance.
- Inspect project upon completion to correct accumulation of fine material. Conduct periodic visual inspections to determine if surfaces are clogged.
- Sweep non-planted surfaces with a high-efficiency sweeper twice per year, one in autumn and one in early spring. Sweeping frequency can be reduced if infiltration rate testing indicates that a rate of 10 inches/hour or greater is being maintained.
- Maintenance records shall be retained and provided to the City upon request.

### ***Flow Credits for Alternate Paving Systems***

Flow credits for alternate paving systems are based on the base material and type of alternate surface. The following lists the possible credits that can be achieved by using alternative paving systems:

- For porous asphalt or concrete systems used as public road or public parking lot configurations where base material is laid above surrounding grade:
  - Without an underdrain, model the surface as grass over underlying soil type.
  - With an underdrain either at or below the bottom of the base layer or elevated within the base course, model the surface as impervious.
- For porous asphalt or concrete systems used as public road or public parking lot configurations where base material is laid partially or completely below surrounding grade:
  - Without an underdrain, model the surface as grass over underlying soil type or impervious surface routed to an infiltration.
  - With an underdrain at or below bottom of base layer or elevated within the base course, model the surface as impervious.
- For porous asphalt or concrete systems used at private facilities such as driveways, parking lots, walks and patios where the base material is laid below ground:
  - Without an underdrain, model the surface as 50% grass on underlying soil and 50% impervious.
  - With a pipe underdrain, model the surface as impervious.
- For grid/lattice systems and paving blocks used as public road or public parking lot where base material is laid above the surrounding grade:
  - Without an underdrain, model grid/lattice systems as grass on underlying soil and model paving blocks as 50% grass on underlying soil with 50% impervious.
  - With an underdrain, model the surface as impervious.
- For grid/lattice systems and paving blocks used as public road or public parking lot where base material is laid partially or completely below surround ground:
  - Without an underdrain, model grid/lattice systems as grass on underlying soil and model paving blocks as 50% grass with 50% impervious or model both grid/lattice systems and paving blocks as impervious surfaces routed to an infiltration basin.
  - With an underdrain, at or below bottom of the base layer, model the surface as impervious.
- With an underdrain elevated within the base course, model the surface as impervious routed to an infiltration basin.
- For grid/lattice systems and paving blocks used at private facilities (driveways, parking lots, walks, patios, etc.) where base material is laid partially or completely below surrounding ground:
  - Without an underdrain, model the surface as 50% grass and 50% impervious.
  - With an underdrain, model the surface as impervious.

### 2.2.4.5 BMP L634 Minimal Excavation Foundations

#### ***Purpose and Definition***

Minimal excavation foundation systems are those techniques that minimize disturbance to the natural soil profile within the footprint of the structure. This preserves most of the hydrologic properties of the native soil. Pin foundations are an example of a minimal excavation foundation.

#### ***Applications Limitations***

- Suitable for pier and perimeter wall configurations for residential or commercial structures up to three stories high.
- Useful for elevated paths and foot-bridges in environmentally sensitive areas.
- Heavy equipment cannot be used within or immediately surrounding the building. Terracing of the foundation area may be accomplished by tracked, blading equipment not exceeding 650 psf.

#### ***Design Criteria***

See Chapter 6 of “Low Impact Development: Technical Guidance Manual for Puget Sound” for design information.

#### ***Flow Credits for Minimal Excavation Foundation Systems***

- Where roof runoff is dispersed on the up gradient side of a structure in accordance with the design criteria in “Downspout Dispersion”, model the tributary roof area as pasture on the native soil.
- Where “step forming” is used on a slope, the square footage of roof that can be modeled as pasture must be reduced to account for lost soils. In “step forming,” the building area is terraced in cuts of limited depth. This results in a series of level plateaus on which to erect the form boards.

The following equation can be used to reduce the roof area that can be modeled as pasture.

$$A_1 - \frac{dC(0.5)}{dP} \times A_1 = A_2$$

Where:

$A_1$  = roof area draining to up gradient side of structure

$dC$  = depth of cuts into the soil profile

$dP$  = permeable depth of soil (the A horizon plus an additional few inches of the B horizon where roots permeate into ample pore space of soil).

$A_2$  = roof area that can be modeled as pasture on the native soil

- If roof runoff is dispersed down gradient of the structure in accordance with the design criteria and guidelines “Downspout Dispersion”, and there is at least 50 feet of vegetated flow path through native material or lawn/landscape area that meets the guidelines in BMP L613 of Volume 5, Chapter 5, model the tributary roof areas as landscaped area.



### **2.2.4.6 BMP L635 Reverse Slope Sidewalks**

#### ***Definition and Purpose***

Reverse slope sidewalks are sloped to drain away from the road and onto adjacent vegetated areas.

#### ***Design Criteria for Reverse Slope Sidewalks***

- There must be  $\geq 10$  feet of vegetated surface downslope that is not directly connected into the storm drainage system.
- Vegetated area receiving flow from sidewalk must be native soil or meet the guidelines in BMP L613: Post-Construction Soil Quality and Depth.
- Provide a vegetated buffer width of 10 feet of vegetation for up to 20 feet of width of paved or impervious surface. Add an additional 5 feet of width for each additional 20 feet of width or fraction thereof.

#### ***Flow Credits for Reverse Slope Sidewalks***

- Model the sidewalk area as landscaped area over the underlying soil type.



# Glossary

The following terms are provided for reference and use with this manual. They shall be superseded by any other definitions for these terms adopted by ordinance, unless they are defined in a Washington State WAC or RCW, or are used and defined as part of the Minimum Requirements for all new development and redevelopment.

<b>AASHTO classification</b>	The official classification of soil materials and soil aggregate mixtures for highway construction, used by the American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials.
<b>Absorption</b>	The penetration of a substance into or through another, such as the dissolving of a soluble gas in a liquid.
<b>Adjacent steep slope</b>	A slope with a gradient of 20 percent or steeper within five hundred feet of the site.
<b>Adjustment</b>	A variation in the application of a Minimum Requirement to a particular project. Adjustments provide equivalent environmental protection.
<b>Adsorption</b>	The adhesion of a substance to the surface of a solid or liquid; often used to extract pollutants by causing them to be attached to such adsorbents as activated carbon or silica gel. Hydrophobic, or water-repulsing adsorbents, are used to extract oil from waterways when oil spills occur. Heavy metals such as zinc and lead often adsorb onto sediment particles.
<b>Aeration</b>	The process of being supplied or impregnated with air. In waste treatment, the process used to foster biological and chemical purification. In soils, the process by which air in the soil is replenished by air from the atmosphere. In a well aerated soil, the soil air is similar in composition to the atmosphere above the soil. Poorly aerated soils usually contain a much higher percentage of carbon dioxide and a correspondingly lower percentage of oxygen.
<b>Aerobic</b>	Living or active only in the presence of free (dissolved or molecular) oxygen.
<b>Aerobic bacteria</b>	Bacteria that require the presence of free oxygen for their metabolic processes.
<b>Aggressive plant species</b>	Opportunistic species of inferior biological value that tend to out-compete more desirable forms and become dominant; applied to native species in this manual.
<b>Algae</b>	Primitive plants, many microscopic, containing chlorophyll and forming the base of the food chain in aquatic environments. Some species may create a nuisance when environmental conditions are suitable for prolific growth.

<b>Algal bloom</b>	Proliferation of living algae on the surface of lakes, streams or ponds; often stimulated by phosphate over-enrichment. Algal blooms reduce the oxygen available to other aquatic organisms.
<b>American Public Works Association (APWA)</b>	The Washington State Chapter of the American Public Works Association.
<b>Anadromous</b>	Fish that grow to maturity in the ocean and return to rivers for spawning.
<b>Anaerobic</b>	Living or active in the absence of oxygen.
<b>Anaerobic bacteria</b>	Bacteria that do not require the presence of free or dissolved oxygen for metabolism.
<b>Annual flood</b>	The highest peak discharge on average which can be expected in any given year.
<b>Antecedent moisture conditions</b>	The degree of wetness of a watershed or within the soil at the beginning of a storm.
<b>Anti-seep collar</b>	A device constructed around a pipe or other conduit and placed through a dam, levee, or dike for the purpose of reducing seepage losses and piping failures.
<b>Anti-vortex device</b>	A facility placed at the entrance to a pipe conduit structure such as a drop inlet spillway or hood inlet spillway to prevent air from entering the structure when the pipe is flowing full.
<b>Applicable BMPs</b>	As used in Volume 4, applicable BMPs are those source control BMPs that are expected to be required by local governments at new development and redevelopment sites. Applicable BMPs will also be required if they are incorporated into NPDES permits, or they are included by local governments in a stormwater program for existing facilities.
<b>Applicant</b>	The person who has applied for a development permit or approval.
<b>Appurtenances</b>	Machinery, appliances, or auxiliary structures attached to a main structure, but not considered an integral part thereof, for the purpose of enabling it to function.
<b>Aquifer</b>	A geologic stratum containing groundwater that can be withdrawn and used for human purposes.
<b>Arborescent shrubs</b>	Shrubs (woody perennials) that are tree-like but typically multi-stemmed, unable to be trained into a single stem and typically attain a height of 15 feet or less at maturity.

<b>Arterial</b>	A road or street primarily for through traffic. A major arterial connects an Interstate Highway to cities and counties. A minor arterial connects major arterials to collectors. A collector connects an arterial to a neighborhood. A collector is not an arterial. A local access road connects individual homes to a collector.
<b>As-built drawings</b>	Engineering plans which have been revised to reflect all changes to the plans which occurred during construction.
<b>As-graded</b>	The extent of surface conditions on completion of grading.
<b>BSBL</b>	See Building set back line.
<b>Background</b>	A description of pollutant levels arising from natural sources, and not due to human activities.
<b>Backwater</b>	Water upstream from an obstruction which is deeper than it would normally be without the obstruction.
<b>Baffle</b>	A device to check, deflect, or regulate flow.
<b>Bank full discharge</b>	A flow condition where streamflow completely fills the stream channel up to the top of the bank. In undisturbed watersheds, the discharge conditions occur on average every 1.5 to 2 years and controls the shape and form of natural channels.
<b>Base flood</b>	A flood having a one percent chance of being equaled or exceeded in any given year. This is also referred to as the 100-year flood.
<b>Base flood elevation</b>	The water surface elevation of the base flood. It shall be referenced to the National Geodetic Vertical Datum of 1929 (NGVD).
<b>Baseline sample</b>	A sample collected during dry-weather flow (i.e., it does not consist of runoff from a specific precipitation event).

**Basin plan**

A plan that assesses, evaluates, and proposes solutions to existing and potential future impacts to the beneficial uses of, and the physical, chemical, and biological properties of waters of the state within a basin. Basins typically range in size from 1 to 50 square miles. A plan should include but not be limited to recommendations for:

- Stormwater requirements for new development and redevelopment;
- Capital improvement projects;
- Land Use management through identification and protection of critical areas, comprehensive land use and transportation plans, zoning regulations, site development standards, and conservation areas;
- Source control activities including public education and involvement, and business programs;
- Other targeted stormwater programs and activities, such as maintenance, inspections and enforcement;
- Monitoring; and
- An implementation schedule and funding strategy.

A plan that is “adopted and implemented” must have the following characteristics:

- It must be adopted by legislative or regulatory action of jurisdictions with responsibilities under the plan;
- Ordinances, regulations, programs, and procedures recommended by the plan should be in effect or on schedule to be in effect; and,
- An implementation schedule and funding strategy that are in progress.

**Bearing capacity**

The maximum load that a material can support before failing.

**Bedrock**

The more or less solid rock in place either on or beneath the surface of the earth. It may be soft, medium, or hard and have a smooth or irregular surface.

**Bench**

A relatively level step excavated into earth material on which fill is to be placed.

**Berm**

A constructed barrier of compacted earth, rock, or gravel. In a stormwater facility, a berm may serve as a vertical divider typically built up from the bottom.

**Best management practice (BMP)**

The schedules of activities, prohibitions of practices, maintenance procedures, and structural and/or managerial practices, that when used singly or in combination, prevent or reduce the release of pollutants and other adverse impacts to waters of Washington State.

<b>Biochemical oxygen demand (BOD)</b>	An indirect measure of the concentration of biologically degradable materials present in organic wastes. The amount of free oxygen utilized by aerobic organisms when allowed to attack the organic material in an aerobically maintained environment at a specified temperature (20°C) for a specific time period (5 days), and thus stated as BOD5. It is expressed in milligrams of oxygen utilized per liter of liquid waste volume (mg/l) or in milligrams of oxygen per kilogram of waste solution (mg/kg = ppm = parts per million parts). Also called biological oxygen demand.
<b>Biodegradable</b>	Capable of being readily broken down by biological means, especially by microbial action. Microbial action includes the combined effect of bacteria, fungus, flagellates, amoebae, ciliates, and nematodes. Degradation can be rapid or may take many years depending upon such factors as available oxygen and moisture.
<b>Bioengineering</b>	The combination of biological, mechanical, and ecological concepts (and methods) to control erosion and stabilize soil through the use of vegetation or in combination with construction materials.
<b>Biofilter</b>	A designed treatment facility using a combined soil and vegetation system for filtration, infiltration, adsorption, and biological uptake of pollutants in stormwater when runoff flows over and through. Vegetation growing in these facilities acts as both a physical filter which causes gravity settling of particulates by regulating velocity of flow, and also as a biological sink when direct uptake of dissolved pollutants occurs. The former mechanism is probably the most important in western Washington where the period of major runoff coincides with the period of lowest biological activity.
<b>Biofiltration</b>	The process of reducing pollutant concentrations in water by filtering the polluted water through biological materials.
<b>Biological control</b>	A method of controlling pest organisms by means of introduced or naturally occurring predatory organisms, sterilization, the use of inhibiting hormones, or other means, rather than by mechanical or chemical means.
<b>Biological magnification</b>	The increasing concentration of a substance along succeeding steps in a food chain. Also called biomagnification.
<b>Bollard</b>	A post (may or may not be removable) used to prevent vehicular access.

<b>Bond</b>	A surety bond, cash deposit or escrow account, assignment of savings, irrevocable letter of credit or other means acceptable to or required by the manager to guarantee that work is completed in compliance with the project's drainage plan and in compliance with all local government requirements.
<b>Borrow area</b>	A source of earth fill material used in the construction of embankments or other earth fill structures.
<b>Breast height</b>	See Diameter at Breast Height.
<b>Buffer</b>	The zone contiguous with a sensitive area that is required for the continued maintenance, function, and structural stability of the sensitive area. The critical functions of a riparian buffer (those associated with an aquatic system) include shading, input of organic debris and coarse sediments, uptake of nutrients, stabilization of banks, interception of fine sediments, overflow during high water events, protection from disturbance by humans and domestic animals, maintenance of wildlife habitat, and room for variation of aquatic system boundaries over time due to hydrologic or climatic effects. The critical functions of terrestrial buffers include protection of slope stability, attenuation of surface water flows from stormwater runoff and precipitation, and erosion control.
<b>Building setback line (BSBL)</b>	A line measured parallel to a property, easement, drainage facility, or buffer boundary, that delineates the area (defined by the distance of separation) where buildings or other obstructions are prohibited (including decks, patios, outbuildings, or overhangs beyond 18 inches). Wooden or chain link fences and landscaping are allowable within a building setback line. In this manual the minimum building setback line shall be 5 feet.
<b>Capital Improvement Project or Program (CIP)</b>	A project prioritized and scheduled as a part of an overall construction program or, the actual construction program.
<b>Catch basin</b>	A chamber or well, usually built at the curb line of a street, for the admission of surface water to a sewer or subdrain, having at its base a sediment sump designed to retain grit and detritus below the point of overflow.
<b>Catchline</b>	The point where a severe slope intercepts a different, more gentle slope.
<b>Catchment</b>	Surface drainage area.
<b>Cation Exchange Capacity (CEC)</b>	The amount of exchangeable cations that a soil can adsorb at pH 7.0.



<b>Certified Erosion and Sediment Control Lead (CESCL)</b>	An individual who is knowledgeable in the principles and practices of erosion and sediment control. The CESCL must have the skills to assess: the site conditions and construction activities that could impact the quality of the stormwater; and the effectiveness of erosion and sediment control measures used to control the quality of stormwater discharges. The CESCL must have current certification through an approved erosion and sediment control training program that meets the minimum training standards established by Ecology
<b>Certified Professional in Erosion and Sediment Control (CPESC)</b>	An individual who has educational training, expertise and experience in controlling erosion and sedimentation, and has met certification standards. The CPESC shall have a current certification.
<b>Channel</b>	A feature that conveys surface water and is open to the air.
<b>Channel, constructed</b>	Channels or ditches constructed (or reconstructed natural channels) to convey surface water.
<b>Channel, natural</b>	Streams, creeks, or swales that convey surface/groundwater and have existed long enough to establish a stable route and/or biological community.
<b>Channel stabilization</b>	Erosion prevention and stabilization of velocity distribution in a channel using vegetation, jetties, drops, revetments, and/or other measures.
<b>Channel storage</b>	Water temporarily stored in channels while enroute to an outlet.
<b>Channelization</b>	Alteration of a stream channel by widening, deepening, straightening, cleaning, or paving certain areas to change flow characteristics.
<b>Check dam</b>	Small dam constructed in a gully or other small watercourse to decrease the streamflow velocity, minimize channel scour, and promote deposition of sediment.
<b>Chemical oxygen demand (COD)</b>	A measure of the amount of oxygen required to oxidize organic and oxidizable inorganic compounds in water. The COD test, like the BOD test, is used to determine the degree of pollution in water.
<b>Civil engineer</b>	A professional engineer licensed in the State of Washington in Civil Engineering.
<b>Civil engineering</b>	The application of the knowledge of the forces of nature, principles of mechanics and the properties of materials to the evaluation, design and construction of civil works for the beneficial uses of mankind.
<b>Clay lens</b>	A naturally-occurring localized area of clay which acts as an impermeable layer to runoff infiltration.

<b>Clearing</b>	The destruction and removal of vegetation by manual, mechanical, or chemical methods.
<b>Closed depression</b>	An area which is low-lying and either has no, or such a limited, surface water outlet that during storm events the area acts as a retention basin.
<b>Cohesion</b>	The capacity of a soil to resist shearing stress, exclusive of functional resistance.
<b>Coliform bacteria</b>	Microorganisms common in the intestinal tracts of man and other warm-blooded animals; all the aerobic and facultative anaerobic, gram-negative, nonspore-forming, rod-shaped bacteria which ferment lactose with gas formation within 48 hours at 35°C. Used as an indicator of bacterial pollution.
<b>Commercial agriculture</b>	Those activities conducted on lands defined in RCW 84.34.020(2), and activities involved in the production of crops or livestock for wholesale trade. An activity ceases to be considered commercial agriculture when the area on which it is conducted is proposed for conversion to a nonagricultural use or has lain idle for more than five (5) years, unless the idle land is registered in a federal or state soils conservation program, or unless the activity is maintenance of irrigation ditches, laterals, canals, or drainage ditches related to an existing and ongoing agricultural activity.
<b>Commercial sites</b>	Sites not considered residential, industrial or road-related.
<b>Compaction</b>	<p>The densification, settlement, or packing of soil in such a way that permeability of the soil is reduced. Compaction effectively shifts the performance of a hydrologic group to a lower permeability hydrologic group. For example, a group B hydrologic soil can be compacted and be effectively converted to a group C hydrologic soil in the way it performs in regard to runoff.</p> <p>Compaction may also refer to the densification of a fill by mechanical means.</p>
<b>Compensatory storage</b>	New excavated storage volume equivalent to the flood storage capacity eliminated by filling or grading within the flood fringe. Equivalent shall mean that the storage removed shall be replaced by equal volume between corresponding one-foot contour intervals that are hydraulically connected to the floodway through their entire depth.
<b>Compost</b>	Organic residue or a mixture of organic residues and soil, that has undergone biological decomposition until it has become relatively stable humus.

<b>Composted Mulch</b>	Mulch prepared from decomposed organic materials that have undergone a controlled process to minimize weed seeds. Acceptable feedstocks include, but are not limited to, yard debris, wood waste, land clearing debris, brush, and branches.
<b>Composting</b>	A controlled process of degrading organic matter by microorganisms. Present day composting is the aerobic, hemophilic decomposing of organic waste to relatively stable humus. Composting is the process of making usable, organic matter that is beneficial to plants and has converted nutrients into slow-release forms (versus mineralized water-soluble forms found in fertilizer).
<b>Comprehensive planning</b>	Planning that takes into account all aspects of water, air, and land resources and their uses and limits.
<b>Conservation district</b>	A public organization created under state enabling law as a special-purpose district to develop and carry out a program of soil, water, and related resource conservation, use, and development within its boundaries, usually a subdivision of state government with a local governing body and always with limited authority. Often called a soil conservation district or a soil and water conservation district.
<b>Constructed wetland</b>	Those wetlands intentionally created on sites that are not wetlands for the primary purpose of wastewater or stormwater treatment and managed as such. Constructed wetlands are normally considered as part of the stormwater collection and treatment system.
<b>Contour</b>	An imaginary line on the surface of the earth connecting points of the same elevation.
<b>Conveyance</b>	A mechanism for transporting water from one point to another, including pipes, ditches, and channels.
<b>Conveyance system</b>	The drainage facilities, both natural and man-made, which collect, contain, and provide for the flow of surface and stormwater from the highest points on the land down to a receiving water. The natural elements of the conveyance system include swales and small drainage courses, streams, rivers, lakes, and wetlands. The human-made elements of the conveyance system include gutters, ditches, pipes, channels, and most retention/detention facilities.
<b>Cover crop</b>	A close-growing crop grown primarily for the purpose of protecting and improving soil between periods of permanent vegetation.
<b>Created wetland</b>	Means those wetlands intentionally created from nonwetland sites to produce or replace natural wetland habitat (e.g., compensatory mitigation projects).

<b>Critical Areas</b>	At a minimum, areas which include wetlands, areas with a critical recharging effect on aquifers used for potable water, fish and wildlife habitat conservation areas, frequently flooded areas, geologically hazardous areas, including unstable slopes, and associated areas and ecosystems.
<b>Critical drainage area</b>	An area with such severe flooding, drainage and/or erosion/ sedimentation conditions that the area has been formally adopted as a Critical Drainage Area by rule under the procedures specified in an ordinance.
<b>Critical root zone (CRZ)</b>	An area equal to 1-foot radius from the base of the tree's trunk for each 1-inch of the tree's diameter at 4.5 feet above grade (diameter at breast height).
<b>Critical reach</b>	The point in a receiving stream below a discharge point at which the lowest dissolved oxygen level is reached and stream recovery begins.
<b>Crown</b>	The upper part of the tree, measured from the lowest branch, including all the branches and foliage.
<b>Culvert</b>	Pipe or concrete box structure that drains open channels, swales or ditches under a roadway or embankment. Typically with no catchbasins or manholes along its length.
<b>Cut</b>	Portion of land surface or area from which earth has been removed or will be removed by excavating; the depth below original ground surface to excavated surface.
<b>Cut-and-fill</b>	Process of earth moving by excavating part of an area and using the excavated material for adjacent embankments or fill areas.
<b>Cut slope</b>	A slope formed by excavating overlying material to connect the original ground surface with a lower ground surface created by the excavation. A cut slope is distinguished from a bermed slope, which is constructed by importing soil to create the slope.
<b>DNS</b>	See Determination of Nonsignificance.
<b>Dead storage</b>	The volume available in a depression in the ground below any conveyance system, or surface drainage pathway, or outlet invert elevation that could allow the discharge of surface and stormwater runoff.
<b>Deciduous</b>	A tree that sheds foliage at the end of the growing season.
<b>Dedication of land</b>	Refers to setting aside a portion of a property for a specific use or function.

<b>Degradation</b>	(Biological or chemical) The breakdown of complex organic or other chemical compounds into simpler substances, usually less harmful than the original compound, as with the degradation of a persistent pesticide. (Geological) Wearing down by erosion. (Water) The lowering of the water quality of a watercourse by an increase in the pollutant loading.
<b>Degraded (disturbed) wetland (community)</b>	A wetland (community) in which the vegetation, soils, and/or hydrology have been adversely altered, resulting in lost or reduced functions and values; generally, implies topographic isolation; hydrologic alterations such as hydroperiod alteration (increased or decreased quantity of water), diking, channelization, and/or outlet modification; soils alterations such as presence of fill, soil removal, and/or compaction; accumulation of toxicants in the biotic or abiotic components of the wetland; and/or low plant species richness with dominance by invasive weedy species.
<b>Denitrification</b>	The biochemical reduction of nitrates or nitrites in the soil or organic deposits to ammonia or free nitrogen.
<b>Depression storage</b>	The amount of precipitation that is trapped in depressions on the surface of the ground.
<b>Design engineer</b>	The professional civil engineer licensed in the State of Washington who prepares the analysis, design, and engineering plans for an applicant's permit or approval submittal.
<b>Design storm</b>	A prescribed hyetograph and total precipitation amount (for a specific duration recurrence frequency) used to estimate runoff for a hypothetical storm of interest or concern for the purposes of analyzing existing drainage, designing new drainage facilities or assessing other impacts of a proposed project on the flow of surface water. (A hyetograph is a graph of percentages of total precipitation for a series of time steps representing the total time during which the precipitation occurs.)
<b>Detention</b>	The release of stormwater runoff from the site at a slower rate than it is collected by the stormwater facility system, the difference being held in temporary storage.
<b>Detention facility</b>	An above or below ground facility, such as a pond or tank, that temporarily stores stormwater runoff and subsequently releases it at a slower rate than it is collected by the drainage facility system. There is little or no infiltration of stored stormwater.
<b>Detention time</b>	The theoretical time required to displace the contents of a stormwater treatment facility at a given rate of discharge (volume divided by rate of discharge).

<b>Determination of Nonsignificance (DNS)</b>	The written decision by the responsible official of the lead agency that a proposal is not likely to have a significant adverse environmental impact, and therefore an EIS is not required.
<b>Development</b>	Means new development, redevelopment, or both. See definitions for each.
<b>Diameter at breast height (DBH)</b>	Diameter of the tree trunk from 4.5 feet above the ground.
<b>Discharge</b>	Runoff leaving a new development or redevelopment via overland flow, built conveyance systems, or infiltration facilities. A hydraulic rate of flow, specifically fluid flow; a volume of fluid passing a point per unit of time, commonly expressed as cubic feet per second, cubic meters per second, gallons per minute, gallons per day, or millions of gallons per day.
<b>Dispersion</b>	Release of surface and stormwater runoff from a drainage facility system such that the flow spreads over a wide area and is located so as not to allow flow to concentrate anywhere upstream of a drainage channel with erodible underlying granular soils.
<b>Ditch</b>	A long narrow excavation dug in the earth for drainage with its top width less than 10 feet at design flow.
<b>Divide, Drainage</b>	The boundary between one drainage basin and another.
<b>Drain</b>	A buried pipe or other conduit (closed drain). A ditch (open drain) for carrying off surplus surface water or groundwater.
<b>(To) Drain</b>	To provide channels, such as open ditches or closed drains, so that excess water can be removed by surface flow or by internal flow. To lose water (from the soil) by percolation.
<b>Drainage</b>	Refers to the collection, conveyance, containment, and/or discharge of surface and stormwater runoff.
<b>Drainage basin</b>	A geographic and hydrologic subunit of a watershed.
<b>Drainage channel</b>	A drainage pathway with a well-defined bed and banks indicating frequent conveyance of surface and stormwater runoff.
<b>Drainage course</b>	A pathway for watershed drainage characterized by wet soil vegetation; often intermittent in flow.
<b>Drainage easement</b>	A legal encumbrance that is placed against a property's title to reserve specified privileges for the users and beneficiaries of the drainage facilities contained within the boundaries of the easement.
<b>Drainage pathway</b>	The route that surface and stormwater runoff follows downslope as it leaves any part of the site.

<b>Drainage review</b>	An evaluation by Plan Approving Authority staff of a proposed project's compliance with the drainage requirements in this manual or its technical equivalent.
<b>Drainage, Soil</b>	<p>As a natural condition of the soil, soil drainage refers to the frequency and duration of periods when the soil is free of saturation; for example, in well-drained soils the water is removed readily but not rapidly; in poorly drained soils the root zone is waterlogged for long periods unless artificially drained, and the roots of ordinary crop plants cannot get enough oxygen; in excessively drained soils the water is removed so completely that most crop plants suffer from lack of water. Strictly speaking, excessively drained soils are a result of excessive runoff due to steep slopes or low available water-holding capacity due to small amounts of silt and clay in the soil material. The following classes are used to express soil drainage:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Well drained - Excess water drains away rapidly and no mottling occurs within 36 inches of the surface.</li><li>• Moderately well drained - Water is removed from the soil somewhat slowly, resulting in small but significant periods of wetness. Mottling occurs between 18 and 36 inches.</li><li>• Somewhat poorly drained - Water is removed from the soil slowly enough to keep it wet for significant periods but not all of the time. Mottling occurs between 8 and 18 inches.</li><li>• Poorly drained - Water is removed so slowly that the soil is wet for a large part of the time. Mottling occurs between 0 and 8 inches.</li><li>• Very poorly drained - Water is removed so slowly that the water table remains at or near the surface for the greater part of the time. There may also be periods of surface ponding. The soil has a black to gray surface layer with mottles up to the surface.</li></ul>
<b>Drawdown</b>	Lowering of the water surface (in open channel flow), water table or piezometric surface (in groundwater flow) resulting from a withdrawal of water.
<b>Dripline</b>	The area on the ground below the tree in which the boundary is designated by an imaginary line defined by the edge of the tree's branch spread.
<b>Drop-inlet spillway</b>	Overall structure in which the water drops through a vertical riser connected to a discharge conduit.
<b>Drop spillway</b>	Overall structure in which the water drops over a vertical wall onto an apron at a lower elevation.

<b>Drop structure</b>	A structure for dropping water to a lower level and dissipating its surplus energy; a fall. A drop may be vertical or inclined.
<b>Dry weather flow</b>	The combination of groundwater seepage and allowed non-stormwater flows found in storm sewers during dry weather. Also that flow in streams during the dry season.
<b>Drywell</b>	An underground structure that disposes unwanted water. A drywell receives water from entry pipes located at the top of the facility. Typically, drywells are deeper than they are wide and they typically do not contain perforated pipe to distribute water evenly.
<b>EIS</b>	See Environmental Impact Statement.
<b>ESC</b>	Erosion and Sediment Control (Plan).
<b>Earth material</b>	Any rock, natural soil or fill and/or any combination thereof. Earth material shall not be considered topsoil used for landscape purposes. Topsoil used for landscaped purposes shall comply with ASTM D 5268 specifications. Engineered soil/landscape systems are also defined independently.
<b>Easement</b>	The legal right to use a parcel of land for a particular purpose. It does not include fee ownership, but may restrict the owners use of the land.
<b>Effective Impervious Surface</b>	Those impervious surfaces that are connected via sheet flow or discrete conveyance to a drainage system. Impervious surfaces on residential development sites are considered ineffective if the runoff is dispersed through at least one hundred feet of native vegetation in accordance with BMP L614 - "Full Dispersion," as described in Chapter 2 of Volume 6.
<b>Embankment</b>	A structure of earth, gravel, or similar material raised to form a pond bank or foundation for a road.
<b>Emergent plants</b>	Aquatic plants that are rooted in the sediment but whose leaves are at or above the water surface. These wetland plants often have high habitat value for wildlife and waterfowl, and can aid in pollutant uptake.
<b>Emergency spillway</b>	A vegetated earth channel used to safely convey flood discharges in excess of the capacity of the principal spillway.
<b>Emerging technology</b>	Treatment technologies that are currently being evaluated for performance.
<b>Energy dissipater</b>	Any means by which the total energy of flowing water is reduced. In stormwater design, they are usually mechanisms that reduce velocity prior to, or at, discharge from an outfall in order to prevent erosion. They include rock splash pads, drop manholes, concrete stilling basins or baffles, and check dams.



<b>Energy gradient</b>	The slope of the specific energy line (i.e., the sum of the potential and velocity heads).
<b>Engineered soil/landscape system</b>	<p>This is a self-sustaining soil and plant system that simultaneously supports plant growth, soil microbes, water infiltration, nutrient and pollutant adsorption, sediment and pollutant biofiltration, water interflow, and pollution decomposition. The system shall be protected from compaction and erosion. The system shall be planted and/or mulched as part of the installation.</p> <p>The engineered soil/plant system shall have the following characteristics:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Be protected from compaction and erosion.</li> <li>• Have a plant system to support a sustained soil quality.</li> <li>• Possess permeability characteristics of not less than 6.0, 2.0, and 0.6 inches/hour for hydrologic soil groups A, B, and C, respectively (per ASTM D 3385). D is less than 0.6 inches/hour.</li> <li>• Possess minimum percent organic matter of 12, 14, 16, and 18 percent (dry-weight basis) for hydrologic soil groups A, B, C, and D, respectively (per ASTM D 2974).</li> </ul>
<b>Engineering geology</b>	The application of geologic knowledge and principles in the investigation and evaluation of naturally occurring rock and soil for use in the design of civil works.
<b>Engineering plan</b>	A plan prepared and stamped by a professional civil engineer.
<b>Enhancement</b>	To raise value, desirability, or attractiveness of an environment associated with surface water.
<b>Environmental Impact Statement (EIS)</b>	A document that discusses the likely significant adverse impacts of a proposal, ways to lessen the impacts, and alternatives to the proposal. They are required by the national and state environmental policy acts when projects are determined to have significant environmental impact.
<b>Erodible granular soils</b>	Soil materials that are easily eroded and transported by running water, typically fine or medium grained sand with minor gravel, silt, or clay content. Such soils are commonly described as Everett or Indianola series soil types in the SCS classification. Also included are any soils showing examples of existing severe stream channel incision as indicated by unvegetated streambanks standing over two feet high above the base of the channel.

**Erosion**

The wearing away of the land surface by running water, wind, ice, or other geological agents, including such processes as gravitational creep. Also, detachment and movement of soil or rock fragments by water, wind, ice, or gravity. The following terms are used to describe different types of water erosion:

- **Accelerated erosion** - Erosion much more rapid than normal or geologic erosion, primarily as a result of the influence of the activities of man or, in some cases, of the animals or natural catastrophes that expose bare surfaces (e.g., fires).
- **Geological erosion** - The normal or natural erosion caused by geological processes acting over long geologic periods and resulting in the wearing away of mountains, the building up of floodplains, coastal plains, etc. Synonymous with natural erosion.
- **Gully erosion** - The erosion process whereby water accumulates in narrow channels and, over short periods, removes the soil from this narrow area to considerable depths, ranging from 1 to 2 feet to as much as 75 to 100 feet.
- **Natural erosion** - Wearing away of the earth's surface by water, ice, or other natural agents under natural environmental conditions of climate, vegetation, etc., undisturbed by man. Synonymous with geological erosion.
- **Normal erosion** - The gradual erosion of land used by man which does not greatly exceed natural erosion.
- **Rill erosion** - An erosion process in which numerous small channels only several inches deep are formed; occurs mainly on recently disturbed and exposed soils. See Rill.
- **Sheet erosion** - The removal of a fairly uniform layer of soil from the land surface by runoff.
- **Splash erosion** - The spattering of small soil particles caused by the impact of raindrops on wet soils. The loosened and spattered particles may or may not be subsequently removed by surface runoff.

**Erosion classes (soil survey)**

A grouping of erosion conditions based on the degree of erosion or on characteristic patterns. Applied to accelerated erosion, not to normal, natural, or geological erosion. Four erosion classes are recognized for water erosion and three for wind erosion.

**Erosion and sedimentation control**

Any temporary or permanent measures taken to reduce erosion; control siltation and sedimentation; and ensure that sediment-laden water does not leave the site.

<b>Erosion and sediment control facility</b>	A type of drainage facility designed to hold water for a period of time to allow sediment contained in the surface and stormwater runoff directed to the facility to settle out so as to improve the quality of the runoff.
<b>Escarpment</b>	A steep face or a ridge of high land.
<b>Estuarine wetland</b>	Generally, an eelgrass bed; salt marsh; or rocky, sandflat, or mudflat intertidal area where fresh and salt water mix. (Specifically, a tidal wetland with salinity greater than 0.5 parts per thousand, usually semi-enclosed by land but with partially obstructed or sporadic access to the open ocean).
<b>Estuary</b>	An area where fresh water meets salt water, or where the tide meets the river current (e.g., bays, mouths of rivers, salt marshes and lagoons). Estuaries serve as nurseries and spawning and feeding grounds for large groups of marine life and provide shelter and food for birds and wildlife.
<b>Eutrophication</b>	Refers to the process where nutrient over-enrichment of water leads to excessive growth of aquatic plants, especially algae.
<b>Evapotranspiration</b>	The collective term for the processes of evaporation and plant transpiration by which water is returned to the atmosphere.
<b>Evergreen</b>	A tree having foliage that persists and remains green throughout the year.
<b>Excavation</b>	The mechanical removal of earth material.
<b>Exception</b>	Relief from the application of a Minimum Requirement to a project.
<b>Exfiltration</b>	The downward movement of runoff through the bottom of an infiltration BMP into the soil layer or the downward movement of water through soil.
<b>Existing site condition</b>	Actual, legally permitted land coverage of the site at the time of proposed development.
<b>FIRM</b>	See Flood Insurance Rate Map.
<b>Fertilizer</b>	Any material or mixture used to supply one or more of the essential plant nutrient elements.
<b>Field Capacity</b>	Amount of soil moisture or water content held in soil after excess water has drained away and the rate of downward movement has materially decreased.
<b>Fill</b>	A deposit of earth material placed by artificial means.
<b>Filter fabric</b>	A woven or non-woven, water-permeable material generally made of synthetic products such as polypropylene and used in stormwater management and erosion and sediment control applications to trap sediment or prevent the clogging of aggregates by fine soil particles.

<b>Filter fabric fence</b>	A temporary sediment barrier consisting of a filter fabric stretched across and attached to supporting posts and entrenched. The filter fence is constructed of stakes and synthetic filter fabric with a rigid wire fence backing where necessary for support.
<b>Filter strip</b>	A grassy area with gentle slopes that treats stormwater runoff from adjacent paved areas before it concentrates into a discrete channel.
<b>Flocculation</b>	The process by which suspended colloidal or very fine particles are assembled into larger masses or floccules which eventually settle out of suspension. This process occurs naturally but can also be caused through the use of such chemicals as alum.
<b>Flood</b>	An overflow or inundation that comes from a river or any other source, including (but not limited to) streams, tides, wave action, storm drains, or excess rainfall. Any relatively high stream flow overtopping the natural or artificial banks in any reach of a stream.
<b>Flood control</b>	Methods or facilities for reducing flood flows and the extent of flooding.
<b>Flood control project</b>	A structural system installed to protect land and improvements from floods by the construction of dikes, river embankments, channels, or dams.
<b>Flood frequency</b>	The frequency with which the flood of interest may be expected to occur at a site in any average interval of years. Frequency analysis defines the "n-year flood" as being the flood that will, over a long period of time, be equaled or exceeded on the average once every "n" years.
<b>Flood fringe</b>	That portion of the floodplain outside of the floodway which is covered by floodwaters during the base flood; it is generally associated with slower moving or standing water rather than rapidly flowing water.
<b>Flood hazard areas</b>	Those areas subject to inundation by the base flood. Includes, but is not limited to streams, lakes, wetlands, and closed depressions.
<b>Flood Insurance Rate Map (FIRM)</b>	The official map on which the Federal Emergency Management Agency has delineated many areas of flood hazard, floodway, and the risk premium zones.
<b>Flood Insurance Study</b>	The official report provided by the Federal Emergency Management Agency that includes flood profiles and the FIRM.
<b>Flood peak</b>	The highest value of the stage or discharge attained by a flood; thus, peak stage or peak discharge.

<b>Floodplain</b>	The total area subject to inundation by a flood including the flood fringe and floodway.
<b>Flood-proofing</b>	Adaptations that ensure a structure is substantially impermeable to the passage of water below the flood protection elevation that resists hydrostatic and hydrodynamic loads and effects of buoyancy.
<b>Flood protection elevation</b>	The base flood elevation or higher as defined by the local government.
<b>Flood protection facility</b>	Any levee, berm, wall, enclosure, raise bank, revetment, constructed bank stabilization, or armoring, that is commonly recognized by the community as providing significant protection to a property from inundation by flood waters.
<b>Flood routing</b>	An analytical technique used to compute the effects of system storage dynamics on the shape and movement of flow represented by a hydrograph.
<b>Flood stage</b>	The stage at which overflow of the natural banks of a stream begins.
<b>Floodway</b>	The channel of the river or stream and those portions of the adjoining floodplains that are reasonably required to carry and discharge the base flood flow. The portions of the adjoining floodplains which are considered to be "reasonably required" is defined by flood hazard regulations.
<b>Flow control facility</b>	A drainage facility designed to mitigate the impacts of increased surface and stormwater runoff flow rates generated by development. Flow control facilities are designed either to hold water for a considerable length of time and then release it by evaporation, plant transpiration, and/or infiltration into the ground, or to hold runoff for a short period of time, releasing it to the conveyance system at a controlled rate.
<b>Flow duration</b>	The aggregate time that peak flows are at or above a particular flow rate of interest. For example, the amount of time that peak flows are at or above 50% of the 2-year peak flow rate for a period of record.
<b>Flow frequency</b>	The inverse of the probability that the flow will be equaled or exceeded in any given year (the exceedance probability). For example, if the exceedance probability is 0.01 or 1 in 100, that flow is referred to as the 100-year flow.
<b>Flow path</b>	The route that stormwater runoff follows between two points of interest.
<b>Forebay</b>	An easily maintained, extra storage area provided near an inlet of a BMP to trap incoming sediments before they accumulate in a pond or wetland BMP.

<b>Forest practice</b>	<p>Any activity conducted on or directly pertaining to forest land and relating to growing, harvesting, or processing timber, including but not limited to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Road and trail construction.</li> <li>• Harvesting, final and intermediate.</li> <li>• Precommercial thinning.</li> <li>• Reforestation.</li> <li>• Fertilization.</li> <li>• Prevention and suppression of diseases and insects.</li> <li>• Salvage of trees.</li> <li>• Brush control.</li> </ul>
<b>Forested communities (wetlands)</b>	<p>In general terms, communities (wetlands) characterized by woody vegetation that is greater than or equal to 6 meters in height; in this manual the term applies to such communities (wetlands) that represent a significant amount of tree cover consisting of species that offer wildlife habitat and other values and advance the performance of wetland functions overall.</p>
<b>Freeboard</b>	<p>The vertical distance between the design water surface elevation and the elevation of the barrier that contains the water.</p>
<b>Frequently flooded areas</b>	<p>The 100-year floodplain designations of the Federal Emergency Management Agency and the National Flood Insurance Program or as defined by the local government.</p>
<b>Frost-heave</b>	<p>The upward movement of soil surface due to the expansion of water stored between particles in the first few feet of the soil profile as it freezes. May cause surface fracturing of asphalt or concrete.</p>
<b>Frequency of storm (design storm frequency)</b>	<p>The anticipated period in years that will elapse, based on average probability of storms in the design region, before a storm of a given intensity and/or total volume will recur; thus a 10-year storm can be expected to occur on the average once every 10 years. Sewers designed to handle flows that occur under such storm conditions would be expected to be surcharged by any storms of greater amount or intensity</p>
<b>Functions</b>	<p>The ecological (physical, chemical, and biological) processes or attributes of a wetland without regard for their importance to society (see also values). Wetland functions include food chain support, provision of ecosystem diversity and fish and wildlife habitat, floodflow alteration, groundwater recharge and discharge, water quality improvement, and soil stabilization.</p>

<b>Gabion</b>	A rectangular or cylindrical wire mesh cage (a chicken wire basket) filled with rock and used as a protecting agent, revetment, etc., against erosion. Soft gabions, often used in streambank stabilization, are made of geotextiles filled with dirt, in between which cuttings are placed.
<b>Gage or gauge</b>	A device for registering precipitation, water level, discharge, velocity, pressure, temperature, etc. Also, a measure of the thickness of metal; e.g., diameter of wire, wall thickness of steel pipe.
<b>Gauging station</b>	A selected section of a stream channel equipped with a gauge, recorder, or other facilities for determining stream discharge.
<b>Geologist</b>	A person who has earned a degree in geology from an accredited college or university or who has equivalent educational training and has at least five years of experience as a practicing geologist or four years of experience and at least two years post-graduate study, research or teaching. The practical experience shall include at least three years work in applied geology and landslide evaluation, in close association with qualified practicing geologists or geotechnical professional/civil engineers.
<b>Geologically hazardous areas</b>	Areas that, because of their susceptibility to erosion, sliding, earthquake, or other geological events, are not suited to the siting of commercial, residential, or industrial development consistent with public health or safety concerns.
<b>Geometrics</b>	The mathematical relationships between points, lines, angles, and surfaces used to measure and identify areas of land.
<b>Geotechnical professional civil engineer</b>	A practicing, geotechnical/civil engineer licensed as a professional Civil Engineer with the State of Washington who has at least four years of professional employment as a geotechnical engineer in responsible charge, including experience with landslide evaluation.
<b>Grade</b>	The slope of a road, channel, or natural ground. The finished surface of a canal bed, roadbed, top of embankment, or bottom of excavation; any surface prepared for the support of construction such as paving or the laying of a conduit.
<b>(To) Grade</b>	To finish the surface of a canal bed, roadbed, top of embankment or bottom of excavation.
<b>Gradient terrace</b>	An earth embankment or a ridge-and-channel constructed with suitable spacing and an acceptable grade to reduce erosion damage by intercepting surface runoff and conducting it to a stable outlet at a stable nonerosive velocity.

<b>Grassed waterway</b>	A natural or constructed waterway, usually broad and shallow, covered with erosion-resistant grasses, used to conduct surface water from an area at a reduced flow rate. See also biofilter.
<b>Groundwater</b>	Water in a saturated zone or stratum beneath the land surface or a surface waterbody.
<b>Groundwater recharge</b>	Inflow to a groundwater reservoir.
<b>Groundwater table</b>	The free surface of the groundwater, that surface subject to atmospheric pressure under the ground, generally rising and falling with the season, the rate of withdrawal, the rate of restoration, and other conditions. It is seldom static.
<b>Gully</b>	A channel caused by the concentrated flow of surface and stormwater runoff over unprotected erodible land.
<b>Habitat</b>	The specific area or environment in which a particular type of plant or animal lives. An organism's habitat must provide all of the basic requirements for life and should be protected from harmful biological, chemical, and physical alterations.
<b>Hardpan</b>	A cemented or compacted and often clay-like layer of soil that is impenetrable by roots. Also known as glacial till.
<b>Harmful pollutant</b>	A substance that has adverse effects to an organism including immediate death, impaired reproduction, cancer or other effects.
<b>Head (hydraulics)</b>	The height of water above any plane of reference. The energy, either kinetic or potential, possessed by each unit weight of a liquid, expressed as the vertical height through which a unit weight would have to fall to release the average energy possessed. Used in various compound terms such as pressure head, velocity head, and head loss.
<b>Head loss</b>	Energy loss due to friction, eddies, changes in velocity, or direction of flow.
<b>Heavy metals</b>	Metals of high specific gravity, present in municipal and industrial wastes, that pose long-term environmental hazards. Such metals include cadmium, chromium, cobalt, copper, lead, mercury, nickel, and zinc.



<b>High-use site</b>	<p>High-use sites are those that typically generate high concentrations of oil due to high traffic turnover or the frequent transfer of oil. High-use sites include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• An area of a commercial or industrial site subject to an expected average daily traffic (ADT) count equal to or greater than 100 vehicles per 1,000 square feet of gross building area;</li> <li>• An area of a commercial or industrial site subject to petroleum storage and transfer in excess of 1,500 gallons per year, not including routinely delivered heating oil;</li> <li>• An area of a commercial or industrial site subject to parking, storage or maintenance of 25 or more vehicles that are over 10 tons gross weight (trucks, buses, trains, heavy equipment, etc.);</li> <li>• A road intersection with a measured ADT count of 25,000 vehicles or more on the main roadway and 15,000 vehicles or more on any intersecting roadway, excluding projects proposing primarily pedestrian or bicycle use.</li> </ul>
<b>Highway</b>	A main public road connecting towns and cities.
<b>Hog fuel</b>	See wood-based mulch.
<b>Horton overland flow</b>	A runoff process whereby the rainfall rate exceeds the infiltration rate, so that the precipitation that does not infiltrate flows downhill over the soil surface.
<b>HSPF</b>	<b>Hydrological Simulation Program-Fortran.</b> A continuous simulation hydrologic model that transforms an uninterrupted rainfall record into a concurrent series of runoff or flow data by means of a set of mathematical algorithms which represent the rainfall-runoff process at some conceptual level.
<b>Humus</b>	Organic matter in or on a soil, composed of partly or fully decomposed bits of plant tissue or from animal manure.
<b>Hydraulic Conductivity</b>	The quality of saturated soil that enables water or air to move through it. Also known as permeability coefficient.
<b>Hydraulic gradient</b>	Slope of the potential head relative to a fixed datum.
<b>Hydrodynamics</b>	The dynamic energy, force, or motion of fluids as affected by the physical forces acting upon those fluids.
<b>Hydrograph</b>	A graph of runoff rate, inflow rate or discharge rate, past a specific point over time.
<b>Hydrologic cycle</b>	The circuit of water movement from the atmosphere to the earth and return to the atmosphere through various stages or processes as precipitation, interception, runoff, infiltration, percolation, storage, evaporation, and transpiration.

**Hydrologic Soil Groups**

A soil characteristic classification system defined by the U.S. Soil Conservation Service in which a soil may be categorized into one of four soil groups (A, B, C, or D) based upon infiltration rate and other properties.

**Type A:** Low runoff potential. Soils having high infiltration rates, even when thoroughly wetted, and consisting chiefly of deep, well drained to excessively drained sands or gravels. These soils have a high rate of water transmission.

**Type B:** Moderately low runoff potential. Soils having moderate infiltration rates when thoroughly wetted, and consisting chiefly of moderately fine to moderately coarse textures. These soils have a moderate rate of water transmission.

**Type C:** Moderately high runoff potential. Soils having slow infiltration rates when thoroughly wetted, and consisting chiefly of soils with a layer that impedes downward movement of water, or soils with moderately fine to fine textures. These soils have a slow rate of water transmission.

**Type D:** High runoff potential. Soils having very slow infiltration rates when thoroughly wetted, and consisting chiefly of clay soils with a high swelling potential, soils with a permanent high water table, soils with a hardpan, till, or clay layer at or near the surface, soils with a compacted subgrade at or near the surface, and shallow soils or nearly impervious material. These soils have a very slow rate of water transmission.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Vladimir Novotny and Harvey Olem. *Water Quality Prevention, Identification, and Management of Diffuse Pollution*, Van Nostrand Reinhold: New York, 1994, p. 109.

**Hydrology**

The science of the behavior of water in the atmosphere, on the surface of the earth, and underground.

**Hydroperiod**

A seasonal occurrence of flooding and/or soil saturation; it encompasses depth, frequency, duration, and seasonal pattern of inundation.

**Hyetograph**

A graph of percentages of total precipitation for a series of time steps representing the total time in which precipitation occurs.

**Illicit discharge**

All non-stormwater discharges to stormwater drainage systems that cause or contribute to a violation of state water quality, sediment quality or groundwater quality standards, including but not limited to sanitary sewer connections, industrial process water, interior floor drains, car washing, and greywater systems.

**Impact basin**

A device used to dissipate the energy of flowing water. Generally constructed of concrete in the form of a partially depressed or partially submerged vessel, it may utilize baffles to dissipate velocities.

**Impervious**

Not allowing penetration.

<b>Impervious surface</b>	A hard surface area which either prevents or retards the entry of water into the soil mantle as under natural conditions prior to development. A hard surface area which causes water to run off the surface in greater quantities or at an increased rate of flow from the flow present under natural conditions prior to development. Common impervious surfaces include, but are not limited to, rooftops, walkways, patios, driveways, parking lots or storage areas, concrete or asphalt paving, gravel roads, oil mat roads, packed earthen materials, and oiled, macadam or other surfaces which similarly impede the natural infiltration of stormwater. Open, uncovered retention/detention facilities shall not be considered as impervious surfaces for the purposes of determining whether the thresholds for application of minimum requirements are exceeded. Open, uncovered retention/detention facilities shall be considered impervious surfaces for purposes of runoff modeling.
<b>Impoundment</b>	A natural or man-made containment for surface water.
<b>Improvement</b>	Streets (with or without curbs or gutters), sidewalks, crosswalks, parking lots, water mains, sanitary and storm sewers, drainage facilities, street trees and other appropriate items.
<b>Indirect connections</b>	Stormwater discharges that do not discharge directly into a waterbody, but travel through other conveyance systems before reaching that waterbody.
<b>Industrial activities</b>	Material handling, transportation, or storage; manufacturing; maintenance; treatment; or disposal. Areas with industrial activities include plant yards, access roads and rail lines used by carriers of raw materials, manufactured products, waste material, or by-products; material handling sites; refuse sites; sites used for the application or disposal of process waste waters; sites used for the storage and maintenance of material handling equipment; sites used for residual treatment, storage, or disposal; shipping and receiving areas; manufacturing buildings; storage areas for raw materials, and intermediate and finished products; and areas where industrial activity has taken place in the past and significant materials remain and are exposed to stormwater.
<b>Industrial sites</b>	Those sites required to obtain the National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (NPDES) Industrial Stormwater General Permit coverage in accordance with 40 CFR 122.26. These sites include industrial areas that manufacture, process, or store raw materials.
<b>Infiltration</b>	Means the downward movement of water from the surface to the subsoil.

<b>Infiltration facility (or system)</b>	A drainage facility designed to use the hydrologic process of surface and stormwater runoff soaking into the ground, commonly referred to as a percolation, to dispose of surface and stormwater runoff.
<b>Infiltration rate</b>	The rate, usually expressed in inches/hour, at which water moves downward (percolates) through the soil profile. Short-term infiltration rates may be inferred from soil analysis or texture or derived from field measurements. Long-term infiltration rates are affected by variability in soils and subsurface conditions at the site, the effectiveness of pretreatment or influent control, and the degree of long-term maintenance of the infiltration facility.
<b>Ingress/egress</b>	The points of access to and from a property.
<b>Inlet</b>	A form of connection between surface of the ground and a drain or sewer for the admission of surface and stormwater runoff.
<b>Insecticide</b>	A substance, usually chemical, that is used to kill insects.
<b>Interception (Hydraulics)</b>	The process by which precipitation is caught and held by foliage, twigs, and branches of trees, shrubs, and other vegetation. Often used for "interception loss" or the amount of water evaporated from the precipitation intercepted.
<b>Interflow</b>	That portion of rainfall that infiltrates into the soil and moves laterally through the upper soil horizons until intercepted by a stream channel or until it returns to the surface for example, in a roadside ditch, wetland, spring or seep. Interflow is a function of the soil system depth, permeability, and water-holding capacity.
<b>Intermittent stream</b>	A stream or portion of a stream that flows only in direct response to precipitation. It receives little or no water from springs and no long-continued supply from melting snow or other sources. It is dry for a large part of the year, ordinarily more than three months.
<b>Invasive weedy plant species</b>	Opportunistic species of inferior biological value that tend to out-compete more desirable forms and become dominant; applied to non-native species in this manual.
<b>Invert</b>	The lowest point on the inside of a sewer or other conduit.
<b>Invert elevation</b>	The vertical elevation of a pipe or orifice in a pond that defines the water level.
<b>Isopluvial map</b>	A map with lines representing constant depth of total precipitation for a given return frequency.
<b>Lag time</b>	The interval between the center of mass of the storm precipitation and the peak flow of the resultant runoff.

<b>Lake</b>	An area permanently inundated by water in excess of two meters deep and greater than 20 acres in size as measured at the ordinary high water marks.
<b>Land disturbing activities</b>	Land disturbing activities are as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Structural development, including construction or installation of a building or other structure.</li> <li>• Creation of impervious surfaces.</li> <li>• Subdivisions, short subdivisions, and binding site plans as defined and applied in Chapter 58.17 RCW.</li> <li>• Class IV-general forest practices that are conversions from timber land to other uses.</li> <li>• Conversion of surfaces (example - conversion of native or uncultivated vegetation to lawn/landscaped).</li> </ul>
<b>Landslide</b>	Episodic downslope movement of a mass of soil or rock that includes but is not limited to rockfalls, slumps, mudflows, and earthflows. For the purpose of these rules, snow avalanches are considered to be a special case of landsliding.
<b>Landslide hazard areas</b>	Those areas subject to a severe risk of landslide.
<b>Leachable materials</b>	Those substances that, when exposed to rainfall, measurably alter the physical or chemical characteristics of the rainfall runoff. Examples include erodible soils, uncovered process wastes, manure, fertilizers, oil substances, ashes, kiln dust, and garbage dumpster leakage.
<b>Leachate</b>	Liquid that has percolated through soil and contains substances in solution or suspension.
<b>Leaching</b>	Removal of the more soluble materials from the soil by percolating waters.
<b>Legume</b>	A member of the legume or pulse family, <u>Leguminosae</u> , one of the most important and widely distributed plant families. The fruit is a "legume" or pod. Includes many valuable food and forage species, such as peas, beans, clovers, alfalfas, sweet clovers, and vetches. Practically all legumes are nitrogen-fixing plants.
<b>Level pool routing</b>	The basic technique of storage routing used for sizing and analyzing detention storage and determining water levels for ponding water bodies. The level pool routing technique is based on the continuity equation: $\text{Inflow} - \text{Outflow} = \text{Change in storage}$ .

<b>Level spreader</b>	A temporary ESC device used to spread out stormwater runoff uniformly over the ground surface as sheet flow (i.e., not through channels). The purpose of level spreaders is to prevent concentrated, erosive flows from occurring, and to enhance infiltration.
<b>LID</b>	See Low impact development.
<b>Local government</b>	Any county, city, town, or special purpose district having its own incorporated government for local affairs.
<b>Low flow channel</b>	An incised or paved channel from inlet to outlet in a dry basin which is designed to carry low runoff flows and/or baseflow, directly to the outlet without detention.
<b>Low impact development</b>	A stormwater management strategy that emphasizes conservation and the use of existing natural site features, including planted and retained trees, integrated with engineered, small-scale stormwater controls to more closely mimic predevelopment hydrologic conditions.
<b>Low permeable liner</b>	A layer of compacted till or clay, or a geomembrane.
<b>Lowest floor</b>	The lowest enclosed area (including basement) of a structure. An area used solely for parking of vehicles, building access, or storage, in an area other than a basement area, is not considered a building's lowest floor, provided that the enclosed area meets all of the structural requirements of the flood hazard standards.
<b>MDNS</b>	A Mitigated Determination of Nonsignificance (See DNS and Mitigation).
<b>Maintenance</b>	Repair and maintenance includes activities conducted on currently serviceable structures, facilities, and equipment that involves no expansion or use beyond that previously existing and resulting in no significant adverse hydrologic impact. It includes those usual activities taken to prevent a decline, lapse, or cessation in the use of structures and systems and includes replacement of dysfunctioning facilities, including cases where environmental permits require replacing an existing structure with a different type structure, as long as the functioning characteristics of the original structure are not changed. For example, replacing a collapsed, fish blocking, round culvert with a new box culvert under the same span, or width, of roadway. For further details on the application of this manual to various road management functions, please see Volume 1, Section 3.2.1.

**Manning's equation** An equation used to predict the velocity of water flow in an open channel or pipelines:

$$V = \frac{1.486R^{2/3}S^{1/2}}{n}$$

where:

V is the mean velocity of flow in feet per second

R is the hydraulic radius in feet

S is the slope of the energy gradient or, for assumed uniform flow, the slope of the channel in feet per foot; and

n is Manning's roughness coefficient or retardance factor of the channel lining.

**Mass wasting** The movement of large volumes of earth material downslope.

**Master drainage plan** A comprehensive drainage control plan intended to prevent significant adverse impacts to the natural and manmade drainage system, both on and off-site.

**Mature tree** A tree that has achieved at least 75% of its full canopy growth or a tree that is over 15 years of age.

**Mature tree spread** Crown diameter at maturity.

**Mean annual water level fluctuation** Derived as follows:

- (1) Measure the maximum water level (e.g., with a crest stage gage, Reinelt and Horner 1990) and the existing water level at the time of the site visit (e.g., with a staff gage) on at least eight occasions spread through a year.
- (2) Take the difference of the maximum and existing water level on each occasion and divide by the number of occasions.

**Mean depth** Average depth; cross-sectional area of a stream or channel divided by its surface or top width.

**Mean velocity** The average velocity of a stream flowing in a channel or conduit at a given cross-section or in a given reach. It is equal to the discharge divided by the cross-sectional area of the reach.

**Measuring weir** A shaped notch through which water flows are measured. Common shapes are rectangular, trapezoidal, and triangular.

**Mechanical analysis** The analytical procedure by which soil particles are separated to determine the particle size distribution.

**Mechanical practices** Soil and water conservation practices that primarily change the surface of the land or that store, convey, regulate, or dispose of runoff water without excessive erosion.

<b>Metals</b>	Elements, such as mercury, lead, nickel, zinc and cadmium, which are of environmental concern because they do not degrade over time. Although many are necessary nutrients, they are sometimes magnified in the food chain, and they can be toxic to life in high enough concentrations. They are also referred to as heavy metals.
<b>Microbes</b>	The lower trophic levels of the soil food web. They are normally considered to include bacteria, fungi, flagellates, amoebae, ciliates, and nematodes. These in turn support the higher trophic levels, such as mites and earthworms. Together they are the basic life forms that are necessary for plant growth. Soil microbes also function to bioremediate pollutants such as petroleum, nutrients, and pathogens.
<b>Mitigation</b>	To lessen known impacts to the environment. Mitigation should be conducted in the following order of preference: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Avoiding the impact altogether by not taking a certain action or part of an action;</li> <li>(2) Minimizing impacts by limiting the degree or magnitude of the action and its implementation, by using appropriate technology, or by taking affirmative steps to avoid or reduce impacts;</li> <li>(3) Rectifying the impact by repairing, rehabilitating or restoring the affected environment;</li> <li>(4) Reducing or eliminating the impact over time by preservation and maintenance operations during the life of the action; and</li> <li>(5) Compensating for the impact by replacing, enhancing, or providing substitute resources or environments.</li> </ol>
<b>Modification, modified (wetland)</b>	A wetland whose physical, hydrological, or water quality characteristics have been purposefully altered for a management purpose, such as by dredging, filling, forebay construction, and inlet or outlet control.
<b>Monitor</b>	To systematically and repeatedly measure something in order to track changes.
<b>Monitoring</b>	The collection of data by various methods for the purposes of understanding natural systems and features, evaluating the impacts of development proposals on such systems, and assessing the performance of mitigation measures imposed as conditions of development.
<b>Multifamily sites</b>	Sites defined as multifamily in TMC 13.06.
<b>NGPE</b>	See Native Growth Protection Easement.
<b>NGVD</b>	National Geodetic Vertical Datum.



<b>NPDES</b>	The National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System as established by the Federal Clean Water Act.
<b>National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (NPDES)</b>	The part of the federal Clean Water Act, which requires point source dischargers to obtain permits. These permits are referred to as NPDES permits and, in Washington State, are administered by the Washington State Department of Ecology
<b>Native Growth Protection Easement (NGPE)</b>	An easement granted for the protection of native vegetation within a sensitive area or its associated buffer. The NGPE shall be recorded on the appropriate documents of title and filed with the County Records Division.
<b>Native vegetation</b>	Vegetation comprised of plant species, other than noxious weeds, that are indigenous to the coastal region of the Pacific Northwest and which reasonably could have been expected to naturally occur on the site. Examples include trees such as Douglas fir, Western Hemlock, Western Red Cedar, Alder, Big-leaf Maple, and Vine Maple; shrubs such as willow, elderberry, salmonberry and salal; and herbaceous plants such as sword fern, foam flower, and fireweed.
<b>Natural Area</b>	Land on which the existing plants arose naturally, or were planted intentionally to mimic natural processes.
<b>Natural location</b>	Means the location of those channels, swales, and other non-manmade conveyance systems as defined by the first documented topographic contours existing for the subject property, either from maps or photographs, or such other means as appropriate. In the case of outwash soils with relatively flat terrain, no natural location of surface discharge may exist.
<b>New development</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Land disturbing activities</li> <li>• Structural development, including construction or installation of a building or other structure.</li> <li>• Creation of impervious surface, including <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◦ Extending the pavement edge without increasing the size of the road prism</li> <li>◦ Paving gravel shoulders</li> <li>◦ Upgrading from dirt to gravel, asphalt or concrete</li> <li>◦ Upgrading from gravel to asphalt or concrete</li> <li>◦ Upgrading from bituminous surfaces treatment (“chip seal”) to asphalt or concrete</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Subdivision, short subdivision and binding site plans, as defined and applied in Chapter 58.17 RCW.</li> </ul> <p>Projects meeting the definition of redevelopment shall not be considered new development.</p>

<b>Nitrate (NO<sub>3</sub>)</b>	A form of nitrogen which is an essential nutrient to plants. It can cause algal blooms in water if all other nutrients are present in sufficient quantities. It is a product of bacterial oxidation of other forms of nitrogen, from the atmosphere during electrical storms and from fertilizer manufacturing.
<b>Nitrification</b>	The biochemical oxidation process by which ammonia is changed first to nitrites and then to nitrates by bacterial action, consuming oxygen in the water.
<b>Nitrogen, Available</b>	Usually ammonium, nitrite, and nitrate ions, and certain simple amines available for plant growth. A small fraction of organic or total nitrogen in the soil is available at any time.
<b>Nonpoint source pollution</b>	Pollution that enters a waterbody from diffuse origins on the watershed and does not result from discernible, confined, or discrete conveyances.
<b>Normal depth</b>	The depth of uniform flow. This is a unique depth of flow for any combination of channel characteristics and flow conditions. Normal depth is calculated using Manning's Equation.
<b>NRCS Method</b>	See SCS Method.
<b>Nutrients</b>	Essential chemicals needed by plants or animals for growth. Excessive amounts of nutrients can lead to degradation of water quality and algal blooms. Some nutrients can be toxic at high concentrations.
<b>Off-line facilities</b>	Water quality treatment facilities to which stormwater runoff is restricted to some maximum flow rate or volume by a flow-splitter.
<b>Offsite drainage</b>	Any area lying upstream of the site that drains onto the site and any area lying downstream of the site to which the site drains.
<b>Off-system storage</b>	Facilities for holding or retaining excess flows over and above the carrying capacity of the stormwater conveyance system, in chambers, tanks, lagoons, ponds, or other basins that are not a part of the subsurface sewer system.
<b>Oil/water separator</b>	A vault, usually underground, designed to provide a quiescent environment to separate oil from water.
<b>On-line facilities</b>	Water quality treatment facilities which receive all of the stormwater runoff from a drainage area. Flows above the water quality design flow rate or volume are passed through at a lower percent removal efficiency.
<b>Onsite drainage</b>	Drainage originating within the site.
<b>Onsite Stormwater Management BMPs</b>	Site development techniques that serve to infiltrate, disperse, and retain stormwater runoff on-site.

<b>Operational BMPs</b>	Operational BMPs are a type of Source Control BMP. They are schedules of activities, prohibition of practices, and other managerial practices to prevent or reduce pollutants from entering stormwater. Operational BMPs include formation of a pollution prevention team, good housekeeping, preventive maintenance procedures, spill prevention and clean-up, employee training, inspections of pollutant sources and BMPs, and record keeping. They can also include process changes, raw material/product changes, and recycling wastes.
<b>Ordinary high water mark</b>	<p>The term ordinary high water mark means the line on the shore established by the fluctuations of water and indicated by physical characteristics such as a clear, natural line impressed on the bank; shelving; changes in the character of soil destruction on terrestrial vegetation, or the presence of litter and debris; or other appropriate means that consider the characteristics of the surrounding area.</p> <p>The ordinary high water mark will be found by examining the bed and banks of a stream and ascertaining where the presence and action of waters are so common and usual, and so long maintained in all ordinary years, as to mark upon the soil a character distinct from that of the abutting upland, in respect to vegetation. In any area where the ordinary high water mark cannot be found, the line of mean high water shall substitute. In any area where neither can be found, the channel bank shall be substituted. In braided channels and alluvial fans, the ordinary high water mark or substitute shall be measured so as to include the entire stream feature.</p>
<b>Organic matter</b>	Organic matter as decomposed animal or vegetable matter. It is measured by ASTM D 2974. Organic matter is an important reservoir of carbon and a dynamic component of soil and the carbon cycle. It improves soil and plant efficiency by improving soil physical properties including drainage, aeration, and other structural characteristics. It contains the nutrients, microbes, and higher-form soil food web organisms necessary for plant growth. The maturity of organic matter is a measure of its beneficial properties. Raw organic matter can release water-soluble nutrients (similar to chemical fertilizer). Beneficial organic matter has undergone a humification process either naturally in the environment or through a composting process.
<b>Orifice</b>	An opening with closed perimeter, usually sharp-edged, and of regular form in a plate, wall, or partition through which water may flow, generally used for the purpose of measurement or control of water.
<b>Outlet</b>	Point of water disposal from a stream, river, lake, tidewater, or artificial drain.

<b>Outlet channel</b>	A waterway constructed or altered primarily to carry water from man-made structures, such as terraces, tile lines, and diversions.
<b>Outwash soils</b>	Soils formed from highly permeable sands and gravels.
<b>Overflow</b>	A device that allows the portion of flow above which can be handled to discharge downstream.
<b>Overflow rate</b>	Detention basin release rate divided by the surface area of the basin. It can be thought of as an average flow rate through the basin.
<b>Overtopping</b>	To flow over the limits of a containment or conveyance element.
<b>Particle Size</b>	The effective diameter of a particle as measured by sedimentation, sieving, or micrometric methods.
<b>Peak discharge</b>	The maximum instantaneous rate of flow during a storm, usually in reference to a specific design storm event.
<b>Peak-shaving</b>	Controlling post-development peak discharge rates to pre-development levels by providing temporary detention in a BMP.
<b>Percolation</b>	The movement of water through soil.
<b>Percolation rate</b>	The rate, often expressed in minutes/inch, at which clear water, maintained at a relatively constant depth, will seep out of a standardized test hole that has been previously saturated. The term percolation rate is often used synonymously with infiltration rate (short-term infiltration rate).
<b>Permanent Stormwater Control (PSC) Plan</b>	A plan which includes permanent BMPs for the control of pollution from stormwater runoff after construction and/or land disturbing activity has been completed.
<b>Permeable soils</b>	Soil materials with a sufficiently rapid infiltration rate so as to greatly reduce or eliminate surface and stormwater runoff. These soils are generally classified as SCS hydrologic soil types A and B.
<b>Person</b>	Any individual, partnership, corporation, association, organization, cooperative, public or municipal corporation, agency of the state, or local government unit, however designated.
<b>Perviousness</b>	Related to the size and continuity of void spaces in soils; related to a soil's infiltration rate.
<b>Pesticide</b>	A general term used to describe any substance - usually chemical - used to destroy or control organisms; includes herbicides, insecticides, algicides, fungicides, and others. Many of these substances are manufactured and are not naturally found in the environment. Others, such as pyrethrum, are natural toxins that are extracted from plants and animals.

<b>pH</b>	A measure of the alkalinity or acidity of a substance which is conducted by measuring the concentration of hydrogen ions in the substance. A pH of 7.0 indicates neutral water. A 6.5 reading is slightly acid.
<b>Physiographic</b>	Characteristics of the natural physical environment (including hills).
<b>Plan Approval Authority</b>	The Plan Approval Authority is defined as that department within a local government that has been delegated authority to approve stormwater site plans.
<b>Planned unit development (PUD)</b>	A special classification authorized in some zoning ordinances, where a unit of land under control of a single developer may be used for a variety of uses and densities, subject to review and approval by the local governing body. The locations of the zones are usually decided on a case-by-case basis.
<b>Plat</b>	A map or representation of a subdivision showing the division of a tract or parcel of land into lots, blocks, streets, or other divisions and dedications.
<b>Plunge pool</b>	A device used to dissipate the energy of flowing water that may be constructed or made by the action of flowing. These facilities may be protected by various lining materials.
<b>Point discharge</b>	The release of collected and/or concentrated surface and stormwater runoff from a pipe, culvert, or channel.
<b>Point of compliance</b>	The location at which compliance with a discharge performance standard or a receiving water quality standard is measured.
<b>Pollution</b>	Contamination or other alteration of the physical, chemical, or biological properties, of waters of the state, including change in temperature, taste, color, turbidity, or odor of the waters, or such discharge of any liquid, gaseous, solid, radioactive or other substance into any waters of the state as will or is likely to create a nuisance or render such waters harmful, detrimental or injurious to the public health, safety or welfare, or to domestic, commercial, industrial, agricultural, recreational, or other legitimate beneficial uses, or to livestock, wild animals, birds, fish or other aquatic life.

**Pollution-generating  
impervious surface  
(PGIS)**

Those impervious surfaces considered to be a significant source of pollutants in stormwater runoff. Such surfaces include those which are subject to: vehicular use; industrial activities (as further defined in this glossary); or storage of erodible or leachable materials, wastes, or chemicals, and which receive direct rainfall or the run-on or blow-in of rainfall. Erodible or leachable materials, wastes, or chemicals are those substances which, when exposed to rainfall, measurably alter the physical or chemical characteristics of the rainfall runoff. Examples include erodible soils that are stockpiled, uncovered process wastes, manure, fertilizers, oily substances, ashes, and kiln dust. Metal roofs are also considered to be PGIS unless they are coated with an inert, non-leachable material (e.g., baked-on enamel coating).

A surface, whether paved or not, shall be considered subject to vehicular use if it is regularly used by motor vehicles. The following are considered regularly-used surfaces: roads, non-vegetated road shoulders, bike lanes within the traveled lane of a roadway, driveways, parking lots, unfenced fire lanes, vehicular equipment storage yards, and airport runways.

The following are not considered regularly-used surfaces: paved bicycle pathways separated from and not subject to drainage from roads for motor vehicles, fenced fire lanes, and infrequently used maintenance access roads.

**Pollution-generating  
pervious surface  
(PGPS)**

Any non-impervious surface subject to use of pesticides and fertilizers or loss of soil. Typical PGPS include lawns, landscaped areas, golf courses, parks, cemeteries, and sports fields

**Predeveloped  
Condition**

The native vegetation and soils that existed at a site prior to the influence of Euro-American settlement. The pre-developed condition shall be assumed to be forested land cover unless reasonable, historic information is provided that indicates the site was prairie prior to settlement.

**Prediction**

For the purposes of this document an expected outcome based on the results of hydrologic modeling and/or the judgment of a trained professional civil engineer or geologist.

**Pretreatment**

The removal of material such as solids, grit, grease, and scum from flows prior to physical, biological, or physical treatment processes to improve treatability. Pretreatment may include screening, grit removal, settling, oil/water separation, or application of a Basic Treatment BMP prior to infiltration.

<b>Priority peat systems</b>	Unique, irreplaceable fens that can exhibit water pH in a wide range from highly acidic to alkaline, including fens typified by Sphagnum species, <u>Ledum groenlandicum</u> (Labrador tea), <u>Drosera rotundifolia</u> (sundew), and <u>Vaccinium oxycoccos</u> (bog cranberry); marl fens; estuarine peat deposits; and other moss peat systems with relatively diverse, undisturbed flora and fauna. Bog is the common name for peat systems having the Sphagnum association described, but this term applies strictly only to systems that receive water income from precipitation exclusively.
<b>Professional civil engineer</b>	A person registered with the state of Washington as a professional engineer in civil engineering.
<b>Project</b>	Any proposed action to alter or develop a site. The proposed action of a permit application or an approval, which requires drainage review.
<b>Project site</b>	That portion of a property, properties, or right of way subject to land disturbing activities, new impervious surfaces, or replaced impervious surfaces. On-site and associated off-site improvements shall be added together when determining if a project site exceeds a threshold. Environmental Services shall make the final determination of the project site.
<b>Properly Functioning Soil System (PFSS)</b>	Equivalent to engineered soil/landscape system. This can also be a natural system that has not been disturbed or modified.
<b>Puget Sound basin</b>	Puget Sound south of Admiralty Inlet (including Hood Canal and Saratoga Passage); the waters north to the Canadian border, including portions of the Strait of Georgia; the Strait of Juan de Fuca south of the Canadian border; and all the lands draining into these waters as mapped in Water Resources Inventory Areas numbers 1 through 19, set forth in WAC 173-500-040.
<b>R/D</b>	See retention/detention facility.
<b>Rare, threatened, or endangered species</b>	Plant or animal species that are regional relatively uncommon, are nearing endangered status, or whose existence is in immediate jeopardy and is usually restricted to highly specific habitats. Threatened and endangered species are officially listed by federal and state authorities, whereas rare species are unofficial species of concern that fit the above definitions.
<b>Rational method</b>	A means of computing storm drainage flow rates (Q) by use of the formula $Q = CIA$ , where C is a coefficient describing the physical drainage area, I is the rainfall intensity and A is the area.
<b>Reach</b>	A length of channel with uniform characteristics.

<b>Receiving waters</b>	Bodies of water or surface water systems to which surface runoff is discharged via a point source of stormwater or via sheet flow.
<b>Recharge</b>	The addition of water to the zone of saturation (i.e., an aquifer).
<b>Recommended BMPs</b>	As used in Volume 4, recommended BMPs are those BMPs that are not expected to be mandatory by local governments at new development and redevelopment sites. However, they may improve pollutant control efficiency, and may provide a more comprehensive and environmentally effective stormwater management program.
<b>Redevelopment</b>	On a site that is already substantially developed (has 35% or more of existing impervious surface coverage): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The creation or addition of impervious surfaces</li> <li>• The expansion of a building footprint or addition or replacement of a structure</li> <li>• Structural development including construction, installation or expansion of a building or other structure</li> <li>• Replacement of impervious surface that is not part of a routine maintenance activity</li> <li>• Land disturbing activities</li> </ul>
<b>Regional</b>	An action (here, for stormwater management purposes) that involves more than one discrete property.
<b>Regional stormwater facility</b>	A stormwater facility designed to correct existing surface water runoff problems of a basin or sub-basin.
<b>Release rate</b>	The computed peak rate of surface and stormwater runoff from a site.
<b>Removed impervious surface</b>	Areas where the impervious surface covering (i.e. building, pavement, gravel, etc.) has been removed, the soil has been amended in accordance with the BMP L613 (Volume 6, Section 2.2.0.3) and the area is left as a permanent pervious surface (landscaping, natural areas) and planted with native vegetation including evergreen trees. Removed impervious surfaces are not required to be added to the impervious area totals to determine compliance with Minimum Requirements #6, #7 and #8.
<b>Replaced impervious surface</b>	For structures, the removal and replacement of any exterior impervious surfaces or foundation. For other impervious surfaces, the removal down to bare soil or base course, or repairing the base and replacement.
<b>Residential</b>	Single family residences, duplexes and triplexes.



<b>Residential density</b>	The number of dwelling units per unit of surface area. Net density includes only occupied land. Gross density includes unoccupied portions of residential areas, such as roads and open space.
<b>Restoration</b>	Actions performed to reestablish wetland functional characteristics and processes that have been lost by alterations, activities, or catastrophic events in an area that no longer meets the definition of a wetland
<b>Retention</b>	The process of collecting and holding surface and stormwater runoff with no surface outflow.
<b>Retention/detention facility (R/D)</b>	A type of drainage facility designed either to hold water for a considerable length of time and then release it by evaporation, plant transpiration, and/or infiltration into the ground; or to hold surface and stormwater runoff for a short period of time and then release it to the surface and stormwater management system.
<b>Retrofitting</b>	The renovation of an existing structure or facility to meet changed conditions or to improve performance.
<b>Return frequency</b>	A statistical term for the average time of expected interval that an event of some kind will equal or exceed given conditions (e.g., a stormwater flow that occurs every 2 years)
<b>Rhizome</b>	A modified plant stem that grows horizontally underground.
<b>Riffles</b>	Fast sections of a stream where shallow water races over stones and gravel. Riffles usually support a wider variety of bottom organisms than other stream sections.
<b>Rill</b>	A small intermittent watercourse with steep sides, usually only a few inches deep. Often rills are caused by an increase in surface water flow when soil is cleared of vegetation.
<b>Riprap</b>	A facing layer or protective mound of rocks placed to prevent erosion or sloughing of a structure or embankment due to flow of surface and stormwater runoff.
<b>Riparian</b>	Pertaining to the banks of streams, wetlands, lakes, or tidewater.
<b>Riser</b>	A vertical pipe extending from the bottom of a pond BMP that is used to control the discharge rate from a BMP for a specified design storm.
<b>Road Related Project</b>	A project whose objective is the construction or maintenance of a road. Roads built as a requirement for permit issuance are not included in this category.
<b>Rodenticide</b>	A substance used to destroy rodents.

<b>Runoff</b>	Water originating from rainfall and other precipitation that is found in drainage facilities, rivers, streams, springs, seeps, ponds, lakes and wetlands as well as shallow groundwater. As applied in this manual, it also means the portion of rainfall or other precipitation that becomes surface flow and interflow.
<b>SCS</b>	Soil Conservation Service (now the Natural Resources Conservation Service), U.S. Department of Agriculture
<b>SCS Method</b>	A single-event hydrologic analysis technique for estimating runoff based on the Curve Number method. The Curve Numbers are published by NRCS <i>in Urban Hydrology for Small Watersheds. 55 TR. June 1976</i> . With the change in name to the Natural Resource Conservation Service, the method may be referred to as the NRCS Method.
<b>SEPA</b>	See State Environmental Policy Act.
<b>Salmonid</b>	A member of the fish family <u>Salmonidae</u> . Chinook, coho, chum, sockeye and pink salmon; cutthroat, brook, brown, rainbow, and steelhead trout; Dolly Varden, kokanee, and char are examples of salmonid species.
<b>Sand filter</b>	A man-made depression or basin with a layer of sand that treats stormwater as it percolates through the sand and is discharged via a central collector pipe
<b>Saturation point</b>	In soils, the point at which a soil or an aquifer will no longer absorb any amount of water without losing an equal amount.
<b>Scour</b>	Erosion of channel banks due to excessive velocity of the flow of surface and stormwater runoff.
<b>Sediment</b>	Fragmented material that originates from weathering and erosion of rocks or unconsolidated deposits, and is transported by, suspended in, or deposited by water.
<b>Sedimentation</b>	The depositing or formation of sediment.
<b>Sensitive emergent vegetation communities</b>	Assemblages of erect, rooted, herbaceous vegetation, excluding mosses and lichens, at least some of whose members have relatively narrow ranges of environmental requirements, such as hydroperiod, nutrition, temperature, and light. Examples include fen species such as sundew and, as well as a number of species of Carex (sedges).
<b>Sensitive life stages</b>	Stages during which organisms have limited mobility or alternatives in securing the necessities of life, especially including reproduction, rearing, and migration periods.

<b>Sensitive scrub-shrub vegetation communities</b>	Assemblages of woody vegetation less than 6 meters in height, at least some of whose members have relatively narrow ranges of environmental requirements, such as hydroperiod, nutrition, temperature, and light. Examples include fen species such as Labrador tea, bog laurel, and cranberry.
<b>Settleable solids</b>	Those suspended solids in stormwater that separate by settling when the stormwater is held in a quiescent condition for a specified time.
<b>Sheet erosion</b>	The relatively uniform removal of soil from an area without the development of conspicuous water channels.
<b>Sheet flow</b>	Runoff that flows over the ground surface as a thin, even layer, not concentrated in a channel.
<b>Shoreline development</b>	The proposed project as regulated by the Shoreline Management Act. Usually the construction over water or within a shoreline zone (generally 200 feet landward of the water) of structures such as buildings, piers, bulkheads, and breakwaters, including environmental alterations such as dredging and filling, or any project which interferes with public navigational rights on the surface waters.
<b>Short circuiting</b>	The passage of runoff through a BMP in less than the design treatment time.
<b>Siltation</b>	The process by which a river, lake, or other waterbody becomes clogged with sediment. Silt can clog gravel beds and prevent successful salmon spawning.
<b>Site</b>	The legal boundaries of a parcel or parcels of land that is (are) subject to new development or redevelopment. For road projects, the length of the project site and the right-of-way boundaries define the site.
<b>Slope</b>	Degree of deviation of a surface from the horizontal; measured as a numerical ratio, percent, or in degrees. Expressed as a ratio, the first number is the horizontal distance (run) and the second is the vertical distance (rise), as 2:1. A 2:1 slope is a 50 percent slope. Expressed in degrees, the slope is the angle from the horizontal plane, with a 90° slope being vertical (maximum) and 45° being a 1:1 or 100 percent slope.
<b>Sloughing</b>	The sliding of overlying material. It is the same effect as caving, but it usually occurs when the bank or an underlying stratum is saturated or scoured.
<b>Soil</b>	The unconsolidated mineral and organic material on the immediate surface of the earth that serves as a natural medium for the growth of land plants. See also topsoil, engineered soil/landscape system, and properly functioning soil system.

<b>Soil group, hydrologic</b>	A classification of soils by the Soil Conservation Service into four runoff potential groups. The groups range from A soils, which are very permeable and produce little or no runoff, to D soils, which are not very permeable and produce much more runoff.
<b>Soil horizon</b>	A layer of soil, approximately parallel to the surface, which has distinct characteristics produced by soil-forming factors.
<b>Soil profile</b>	A vertical section of the soil from the surface through all horizons, including C horizons.
<b>Soil structure</b>	The relation of particles or groups of particles which impart to the whole soil a characteristic manner of breaking; some types are crumb structure, block structure, platy structure, and columnar structure.
<b>Soil permeability</b>	The ease with which gases, liquids, or plant roots penetrate or pass through a layer of soil.
<b>Soil stabilization</b>	The use of measures such as rock lining, vegetation or other engineering structures to prevent the movement of soil when loads are applied to the soil.
<b>Soil Texture Class</b>	The relative proportion, by weight, of particle sizes, based on the USDA system, of individual soil grains less than 2 mm equivalent diameter in a mass of soil. The basic texture classes in the approximate order of increasing proportions of fine particles include: sand, loamy sand, sandy loam, loam, silt loam, silt, clay loam, sandy clay, silty clay, and clay.
<b>Sorption</b>	The physical or chemical binding of pollutants to sediment or organic particles.
<b>Source control BMP</b>	A structure or operation that is intended to prevent pollutants from coming into contact with stormwater through physical separation of areas or careful management of activities that are sources of pollutants. This manual separates source control BMPs into two types. <i>Structural source control BMPs</i> are physical, structural, or mechanical devices or facilities that are intended to prevent pollutants from entering stormwater. <i>Operational BMPs</i> are non-structural practices that prevent or reduce pollutants from entering stormwater. See Volume 4 for details.
<b>Spill control device</b>	A Tee section or turn down elbow designed to retain a limited volume of pollutant that floats on water, such as oil or antifreeze. Spill control devices are passive and must be cleaned-out for the spilled pollutant to actually be removed.

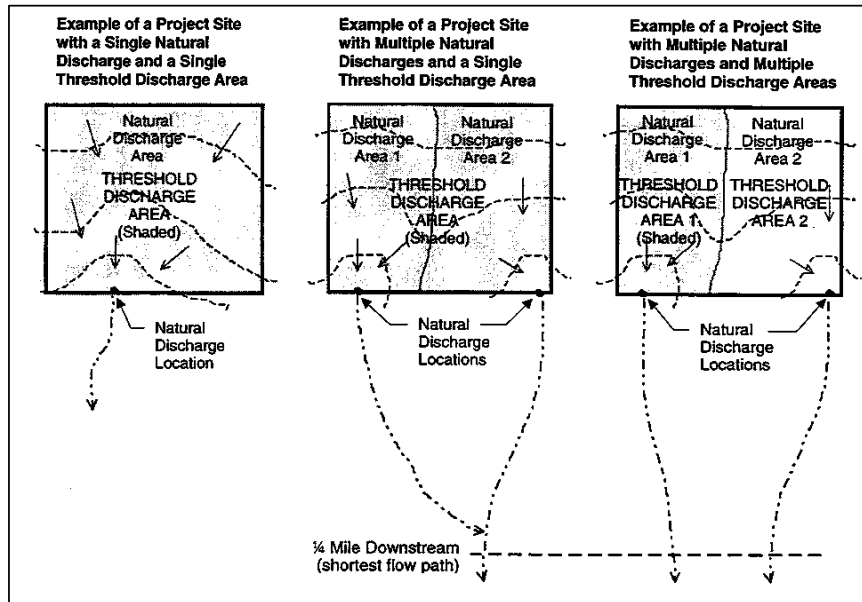
<b>Spillway</b>	A passage such as a paved apron or channel for surplus water over or around a dam or similar obstruction. An open or closed channel, or both, used to convey excess water from a reservoir. It may contain gates, either manually or automatically controlled, to regulate the discharge of excess water.
<b>State Environmental Policy Act (SEPA) RCW 43.21C</b>	The Washington State law intended to minimize environmental damage. SEPA requires that state agencies and local governments consider environmental factors when making decisions on activities, such as development proposals over a certain size and comprehensive plans. As part of this process, environmental documents are prepared and opportunities for public comment are provided.
<b>Steep slope</b>	<p>Slopes of 40 percent gradient or steeper within a vertical elevation change of at least ten feet. A slope is delineated by establishing its toe and top, and is measured by averaging the inclination over at least ten feet of vertical relief. For the purpose of this definition:</p> <p>The toe of a slope is a distinct topographic break in slope that separates slopes inclined at less than 40% from slopes 40% or steeper. Where no distinct break exists, the toe of a steep slope is the lower-most limit of the area where the ground surface drops ten feet or more vertically within a horizontal distance of 25 feet; AND</p> <p>The top of a slope is a distinct topographic break in slope that separates slopes inclined at less than 40% from slopes 40% or steeper. Where no distinct break exists, the top of a steep slope is the upper-most limit of the area where the ground surface drops ten feet or more vertically within a horizontal distance of 25 feet.</p>
<b>Storage routing</b>	A method to account for the attenuation of peak flows passing through a detention facility or other storage feature.
<b>Storm drains</b>	The enclosed conduits that transport surface and stormwater runoff toward points of discharge (sometimes called storm sewers).
<b>Storm drain system</b>	Refers to the system of gutters, pipes, streams, or ditches used to carry surface and stormwater from surrounding lands to streams, lakes, or Puget Sound.
<b>Storm frequency</b>	The time interval between major storms of predetermined intensity and volumes of runoff for which storm sewers and other structures are designed and constructed to handle hydraulically without surcharging and backflooding, e.g., a 2-year, 10-year or 100-year storm.

<b>Storm sewer</b>	A sewer that carries stormwater and surface water, street wash and other wash waters or drainage, but excludes sewage and industrial wastes. Also called a storm drain.
<b>Stormwater</b>	That portion of precipitation that does not naturally percolate into the ground or evaporate, but flows via overland flow, interflow, pipes and other features of a stormwater drainage system into a defined surface waterbody, or a constructed infiltration facility.
<b>Stormwater drainage system</b>	Constructed and natural features which function together as a system to collect, convey, channel, hold, inhibit, retain, detain, infiltrate, divert, treat or filter stormwater.
<b>Stormwater facility</b>	A constructed component of a stormwater drainage system, designed or constructed to perform a particular function, or multiple functions. Stormwater facilities include, but are not limited to, pipes, swales, ditches, culverts, street gutters, detention ponds, retention ponds, constructed wetlands, infiltration devices, catch basins, oil/water separators, and biofiltration swales.
<b>Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington (Stormwater Manual)</b>	The manual prepared by Ecology which contains BMPs to prevent, control or treat pollution in stormwater and reduce other stormwater-related impacts to waters of the State. The Stormwater Manual is intended to provide guidance on measures necessary in western Washington to control the quantity and quality of stormwater runoff from new development and redevelopment. This manual is equivalent to the Ecology manual and must be used for projects located within the City of Tacoma.
<b>Stormwater Program</b>	Either the Basic Stormwater Program or the Comprehensive Stormwater Program (as appropriate to the context of the reference) called for under the Puget Sound Water Quality Management Plan
<b>Stormwater Site Plan</b>	The comprehensive report containing all of the technical information and analysis necessary for regulatory agencies to evaluate a proposed new development or redevelopment project for compliance with stormwater requirements. Contents of the Stormwater Site Plan will vary with the type and size of the project, and individual site characteristics. It includes a Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan (Construction SWPPP) and a Permanent Stormwater Control Plan (PSC Plan). Guidance on preparing a Stormwater Site Plan is contained in Volume 1, Chapter 4.
<b>Stream gauging</b>	The quantitative determination of stream flow using gages, current meters, weirs, or other measuring instruments at selected locations. See Gauging station.

<b>Streambanks</b>	The usual boundaries, not the flood boundaries, of a stream channel. Right and left banks are named facing downstream.
<b>Streams</b>	Those areas where surface waters flow sufficiently to produce a defined channel or bed. Lands and waters contained within a channel which supports hydrophytes and where the substrate is predominantly undrained hydric soils, nonsoil and/or is saturated with water or covered by water each growing season. The channel or bed need not contain water year-round. This definition is not meant to include irrigation ditches, canals, stormwater runoff devices or other entirely artificial watercourses unless they are used to convey streams naturally occurring prior to construction. Those topographic features that resemble streams but have no defined channels (i.e. swales) shall be considered streams when hydrologic and hydraulic analyses done pursuant to a development proposal predict formation of a defined channel after development.
<b>Structure</b>	Any manmade item. Examples include catch basins, manholes, buildings, decks, etc.
<b>Structural source control BMPs</b>	Physical, structural, or mechanical devices or facilities that are intended to prevent pollutants from entering stormwater. Structural source control BMPs typically include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Enclosing and/or covering the pollutant source (building or other enclosure, a roof over storage and working areas, temporary tarp, etc.).</li><li>• Segregating the pollutant source to prevent run-on of stormwater, and to direct only contaminated stormwater to appropriate treatment BMPs.</li></ul>
<b>Stub-out</b>	A short length of pipe provided for future connection to a storm drainage system.
<b>Subbasin</b>	A drainage area that drains to a water-course or waterbody named and noted on common maps and which is contained within a basin.
<b>Subcatchment</b>	A subdivision of a drainage basin (generally determined by topography and pipe network configuration).
<b>Subdrain</b>	A pervious backfilled trench containing stone or a pipe for intercepting groundwater or seepage.
<b>Subgrade</b>	A layer of stone or soil used as the underlying base for a BMP.

<b>Subsoil</b>	The B horizons of soils with distinct profiles. In soils with weak profile development, the subsoil can be defined as the soil below the plowed soil (or its equivalent of surface soil), in which roots normally grow. Although a common term, it cannot be defined accurately. It has been carried over from early days when "soil" was conceived only as the plowed soil and that under it as the "subsoil."
<b>Substrate</b>	The natural soil base underlying a BMP.
<b>Surcharge</b>	The flow condition occurring in closed conduits when the hydraulic grade line is above the crown of the sewer.
<b>Surface and stormwater</b>	Water originating from rainfall and other precipitation that is found in drainage facilities, rivers, streams, springs, seeps, ponds, lakes, and wetlands as well as shallow groundwater.
<b>Surface and stormwater management system</b>	Drainage facilities and any other natural features that collect, store, control, treat and/or convey surface and stormwater.
<b>Suspended solids</b>	Organic or inorganic particles that are suspended in and carried by the water. The term includes sand, mud, and clay particles (and associated pollutants) as well as solids in stormwater.
<b>Swale</b>	A shallow drainage conveyance with relatively gentle side slopes, generally with flow depths less than one foot.
<b>TMC</b>	Tacoma Municipal Code
<b>Terrace</b>	An embankment or combination of an embankment and channel across a slope to control erosion by diverting or storing surface runoff instead of permitting it to flow uninterrupted down the slope.
<b>Threshold Discharge Area</b>	<p>An onsite area draining to a single natural or constructed discharge location or multiple natural discharge locations that converge within one-quarter mile downstream (as determined by the shortest flowpath). The examples in Figure G - 1 illustrate this definition.</p> <p>The purpose of this definition is to clarify how the thresholds of this manual are applied to project sites with multiple discharge points.</p>





**Figure G - 1. Threshold Discharge Area**

<b>Tightline</b>	A continuous length of pipe that conveys water from one point to another (typically down a steep slope) with no inlets or collection points in between.
<b>Tile, Drain</b>	Pipe made of burned clay, concrete, or similar material, in short lengths, usually laid with open joints to collect and carry excess water from the soil.
<b>Tile drainage</b>	Land drainage by means of a series of tile lines laid at a specified depth and grade.
<b>Till</b>	A layer of poorly sorted soil deposited by glacial action that generally has very low infiltration rates.
<b>Time of concentration</b>	The time period necessary for surface runoff to reach the outlet of a subbasin from the hydraulically most remote point in the tributary drainage area.
<b>Topography</b>	General term to include characteristics of the ground surface such as plains, hills, mountains, degree of relief, steepness of slopes, and other physiographic features.
<b>Topsoil</b>	Topsoil shall be per ASTM D5268 standard specification, and water permeability shall be 0.6 inches per hour or greater. Organic matter shall have not more than 10 percent of nutrients in mineralized water-soluble forms. Topsoil shall not have phytotoxic characteristics.
<b>Total dissolved solids</b>	The dissolved salt loading in surface and subsurface waters.

<b>Total Petroleum Hydrocarbons (TPH)</b>	<p>A large family of chemical compounds that come from crude oil. Two types important to stormwater include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• TPH-Gx: The qualitative and quantitative method (extended) for volatile (“gasoline”) petroleum products in water; and</li> <li>• TPH-Dx: The qualitative and quantitative method (extended) for semi-volatile (“diesel”) petroleum products in water.</li> </ul>
<b>Total solids</b>	<p>The solids in water, sewage, or other liquids, including the dissolved, filterable, and nonfilterable solids. The residue left when the moisture is evaporated and the remainder is dried at a specified temperature, usually 130°C.</p>
<b>Total suspended solids</b>	<p>That portion of the solids carried by stormwater that can be captured on a standard glass filter.</p>
<b>Total Maximum Daily Load (TMDL) – Water Cleanup Plan</b>	<p>A calculation of the maximum amount of a pollutant that a waterbody can receive and still meet water quality standards, and an allocation of that amount to the pollutant’s sources. A TMDL (also known as a Water Cleanup Plan) is the sum of the allowable loads of a single pollutant from all contributing point and nonpoint sources. The calculation must include a margin of safety to ensure that the waterbody can be used for the purposes the State has designated. The calculation must also account for seasonable variation in water quality. Water quality standards are set by states, territories, and tribes. They identify the uses for each waterbody, for example, drinking water supply, contact recreation (swimming), and aquatic life support (fishing), and the scientific criteria to support that use. The Clean Water Act, Section 303, establishes the water quality standards and TMDL programs.</p>
<b>Toxic</b>	<p>Poisonous, carcinogenic, or otherwise directly harmful to life.</p>
<b>Tract</b>	<p>A legally created parcel of property designated for special nonresidential and noncommercial uses.</p>
<b>Transplanting</b>	<p>The process of relocating and planting an existing plant into a landscape. Note: Trees are considered plants.</p>
<b>Trash rack</b>	<p>A structural device used to prevent debris from entering a spillway or other hydraulic structure.</p>
<b>Travel time</b>	<p>The estimated time for surface water to flow between two points of interest.</p>
<b>Treatment BMP</b>	<p>A BMP that is intended to remove pollutants from stormwater. A few examples of treatment BMPs are detention ponds, oil/water separators, biofiltration swales, and constructed wetlands.</p>

<b>Treatment liner</b>	A layer of soil that is designed to slow the rate of infiltration and provide sufficient pollutant removal so as to protect groundwater quality.
<b>Treatment train</b>	A combination of two or more treatment facilities connected in series.
<b>Trunk main</b>	Public stormwater drainage pipes equal to or greater than 36 inches and installed at a minimum slope of 0.5% Some 36-inch mains may be installed at less than the minimum slope. These shall not be considered trunk mains.
<b>Turbidity</b>	Dispersion or scattering of light in a liquid, caused by suspended solids and other factors; commonly used as a measure of suspended solids in a liquid.
<b>Uncultivated vegetation</b>	Vegetation, including but not limited to, all annuals, woody and herbaceous perennials such as shrubs, vines or trees that are not regularly or systematically maintained through any combination of the following: pruning, mowing, watering, trimming, fertilizing and any other activity intended to ensure public safety and assist vegetation to achieve full environmental and landscape function.
<b>Underdrain</b>	Plastic pipes with holes drilled through the top, installed on the bottom of an infiltration BMP, which are used to collect and remove excess runoff.
<b>Underground utilities</b>	Underground lines which serve the public with various utilities. They are typically located in trenches. Dry utilities include such lines as telephone, cable, electric and gas lines. Wet utilities include storm lines, fire lines, domestic water lines and sewer lines.
<b>Undisturbed buffer</b>	A zone where development activity shall not occur, including logging, and/or the construction of utility trenches, roads, and/or surface and stormwater facilities.
<b>Undisturbed low gradient uplands</b>	Forested land, sufficiently large and flat to infiltrate surface and storm runoff without allowing the concentration of water on the surface of the ground.
<b>Unstable slopes</b>	Those sloping areas of land which have in the past exhibited, are currently exhibiting, or will likely in the future exhibit, mass movement of earth.
<b>Unusual biological community types</b>	Assemblages of interacting organisms that are relatively uncommon regionally.
<b>Urbanized area</b>	Areas designated and identified by the U.S. Bureau of Census according to the following criteria: an incorporated place and densely settled surrounding area that together have a maximum population of 50,000.

<b>U.S. EPA</b>	The United States Environmental Protection Agency.
<b>Values</b>	Wetland processes or attributes that are valuable or beneficial to society (also see Functions). Wetland values include support of commercial and sport fish and wildlife species, protection of life and property from flooding, recreation, education, and aesthetic enhancement of human communities.
<b>Variance</b>	See Exception.
<b>Vegetated flowpath</b>	A route with established vegetation measured from the downspout or dispersion system discharge point to the downstream property line, stream, wetland or other impervious surface. For flow credits, this path must contain undisturbed native landscape or lawn landscape meeting BMP L613: Post Construction Soil Quality and Depth. In the South Tacoma Groundwater Protection District, dispersion will only be allowed where the flowpath meets BMP L613: Post Construction Soil Quality and Depth.
<b>Vegetation</b>	All organic plant life growing on the surface of the earth.
<b>Waterbody</b>	Surface waters including rivers, streams, lakes, marine waters, estuaries, and wetlands.
<b>Water Cleanup Plan</b>	See Total Maximum Daily Load.
<b>Water quality</b>	A term used to describe the chemical, physical, and biological characteristics of water, usually in respect to its suitability for a particular purpose.
<b>Water quality design storm</b>	The 24-hour rainfall amount with a 6-month return frequency. Commonly referred to as the 6-month, 24-hour storm.
<b>Water quality standards</b>	Minimum requirements of purity of water for various uses; for example, water for agricultural use in irrigation systems should not exceed specific levels of sodium bicarbonate, pH, total dissolved salts, etc. In Washington, the Department of Ecology sets water quality standards.
<b>Watershed</b>	A geographic region within which water drains into a particular river, stream, or body of water. Watersheds can be as large as those identified and numbered by the State of Washington Water Resource Inventory Areas (WRIAs) as defined in Chapter 173-500 WAC.
<b>Water table</b>	The upper surface or top of the saturated portion of the soil or bedrock layer, indicates the uppermost extent of groundwater.
<b>Weir</b>	Device for measuring or regulating the flow of water.
<b>Weir notch</b>	The opening in a weir for the passage of water.

<b>Wetlands</b>	Those areas that are inundated or saturated by surface or groundwater at a frequency and duration sufficient to support, and that under normal circumstances do support, a prevalence of vegetation typically adapted for life in saturated soil conditions. Wetlands generally include swamps, marshes, bogs, and similar areas. Wetlands do not include those artificial wetlands intentionally created from nonwetland sites, including, but not limited to, irrigation and drainage ditches, grass-lined swales, canals, detention facilities, wastewater treatment facilities, farm ponds, and landscape amenities, or those wetlands created after July 1, 1990, that were unintentionally created as a result of the construction of a road, street, or highway. Wetlands may include those artificial wetlands intentionally created from nonwetland areas to mitigate the conversion of wetlands. (Waterbodies not included in the definition of wetlands as well as those mentioned in the definition are still waters of the state.)
<b>Wetland edge</b>	Delineation of the wetland edge shall be based on the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers <u>Wetlands Delineation Manual</u> , Technical Report Y-87-1, U.S. Army Engineers Waterways Experiment Station, Vicksburg, Miss. (1987)
<b>Wetponds and wetvaults</b>	Drainage facilities for water quality treatment that contain permanent pools of water that are filled during the initial runoff from a storm event. They are designed to optimize water quality by providing retention time in order to settle out particles of fine sediment to which pollutants such as heavy metals absorb, and to allow biologic activity to occur that metabolizes nutrients and organic pollutants
<b>Zoning ordinance</b>	An ordinance based on the police power of government to protect the public health, safety, and general welfare. It may regulate the type of use and intensity of development of land and structures to the extent necessary for a public purpose. Requirements may vary among various geographically defined areas called zones. Regulations generally cover such items as height and bulk of buildings, density of dwelling units, off-street parking, control of signs, and use of land for residential, commercial, industrial, or agricultural purposes. A zoning ordinance is one of the major methods for implementation of a comprehensive plan.

